

FRANCIS D.K.
CHING
CORKY BINGGELI

INTERIOR
DESIGN
ILLUSTRATED

THIRD EDITION

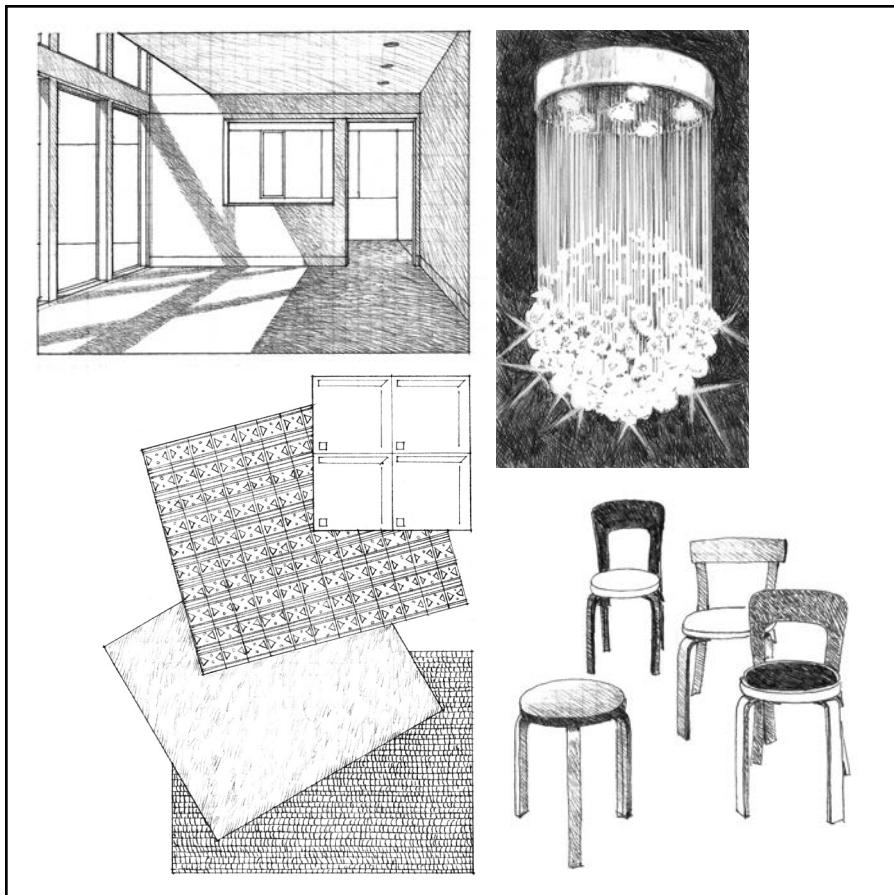




www.ARQUIFUTURA.com

INTERIOR DESIGN ILLUSTRATED

Third Edition



Francis D.K. Ching • Corky Binggeli



John Wiley & Sons, Inc.

This book is printed on acid-free paper. 

Copyright © 2012 by John Wiley & Sons, Inc. All rights reserved

Published by John Wiley & Sons, Inc., Hoboken, New Jersey

Published simultaneously in Canada

No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, scanning or otherwise, except as permitted under Section 107 or 108 of the 1976 United States Copyright Act, without either the prior written permission of the Publisher, or authorization through payment of the appropriate per-copy fee to the Copyright Clearance Center, 222 Rosewood Drive, Danvers, MA 01923, (978) 750-8400, fax (978) 750-4470, or on the web at www.copyright.com. Requests to the Publisher for permission should be addressed to the Permissions Department, John Wiley & Sons, Inc., 111 River Street, Hoboken, NJ 07030, (201) 748-6011, fax (201) 748-6008, e-mail: permcoordinator@wiley.com.

Limit of Liability/Disclaimer of Warranty: While the publisher and author have used their best efforts in preparing this book, they make no representations or warranties with respect to the accuracy or completeness of the contents of this book and specifically disclaim any implied warranties of merchantability or fitness for a particular purpose. No warranty may be created or extended by sales representatives or written sales materials. The advice and strategies contained herein may not be suitable for your situation. You should consult with a professional where appropriate. Neither the publisher nor author shall be liable for any loss of profit or any other commercial damages, including but not limited to special, incidental, consequential, or other damages.

For general information on our other products and services or for technical support, please contact our Customer Care Department within the United States at 800-762-2974, outside the United States at (317) 572-3993 or fax (317) 572-4002.

Wiley also publishes its books in a variety of electronic formats. Some content that appears in print may not be available in electronic books.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Ching, Frank, 1943-

Interior design illustrated / Francis D.K. Ching, Corky Binggeli. -- 3rd ed.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-118-09071-8 (pbk.); 978-1-118-17525-5 (ebk); 978-1-118-17526-2 (ebk); 978-1-118-18173-7 (ebk); 978-1-118-18174-4 (ebk); 978-1-118-18175-1 (ebk)

1. Interior architecture. 2. Space (Architecture) 3. Interior decoration--History--21st century. I.

Binggeli, Corky. II. Title.

NA2850.C45 2012

729--dc23

2011028221

Printed in the United States of America.

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

CONTENTS

Preface	v
1 Interior Space	1
2 Interior Design	35
3 A Design Vocabulary.....	83
4 Interior Building Elements	147
5 Interior Environmental Systems.....	219
6 Lighting and Acoustics	247
7 Finish Materials	287
8 Furnishings.....	317
Appendix.....	353
Glossary	361
Bibliography.....	365
Index	367

PREFACE

We spend the majority of our lives indoors, in the interior spaces created by the structures and shells of buildings. These spaces provide the physical context for much of what we do, and give substance and life to the architecture that houses them. This introductory text is a visual study of the nature and design of these interior settings.

The purpose of this primer is to introduce to students of interior design those fundamental elements that make up our interior environments. It outlines the characteristics of each element and presents the choices we have in selecting and arranging them into design patterns. In making these choices, emphasis is placed on basic design principles and how design relationships determine the functional, structural, and aesthetic qualities of interior spaces.

This third edition retains the organizational scheme of the second edition, with text and illustrations updated and added to cover sustainable materials, water and energy usage, indoor air quality considerations, and recent developments in computer technology. The section on lighting reflects current design practice, lamp and fixture styles, and energy conservation. The coverage of furnishings responds to changes in the work environment and bariatric design. New residential topics include aging in place and visitability. Standards and codes incorporate current International Code Council (ICC) and Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) requirements. Finally, the Bibliography has been updated and a Glossary added.

This exploration of the ways and means of developing interior spaces begins with space itself, for it is the prime material with which the interior designer must work.

Chapter 1—Interior Space proceeds from a general discussion of architectural space to the particular characteristics of interior space in three dimensions and introduces the components of a building.

Chapter 2—Interior Design outlines a method for translating programmatic needs and requirements into three-dimensional design decisions.

Chapter 3—A Design Vocabulary explores the fundamental elements and principles of visual design and applies each of them to the unique field of interior design.

Chapter 4—Interior Building Elements describes the major categories of interior elements and discusses how each affects the functional and aesthetic development of interior spaces.

Chapter 5—Interior Environmental Systems outlines the environmental control systems that must be integrated with a building's structure and the layout of the interior spaces.

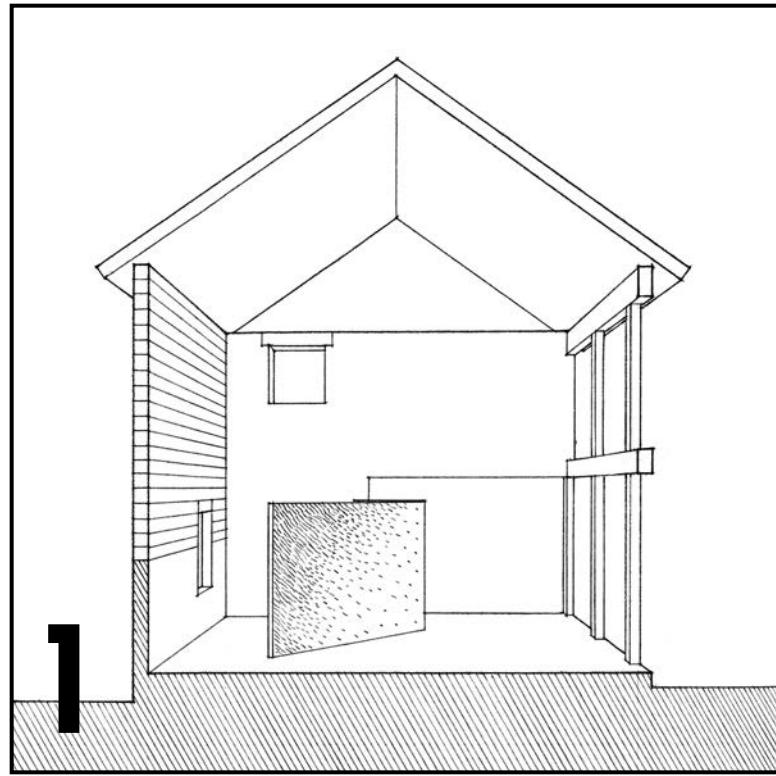
Chapter 6—Lighting and Acoustics addresses the lively and ever-present interaction of light and sound with the interior environment.

Chapter 7—Finish Materials introduces the palette used by interior designers to modify the architectural elements of interior spaces.

Chapter 8—Furnishings discusses basic types of movable and built-in components within the built environment.

Since interior design is to a great extent a visual art, drawings are used extensively in this book to convey information, express ideas, and outline possibilities. Some of the illustrations are quite abstract; others are more specific and particular. All of them, however, should be viewed essentially as diagrams that serve to demonstrate design principles or to clarify the relationships existing among the elements of a design.

The goal of interior design education is to prepare students to be responsible, well-informed, skilled professionals who make beautiful, safe, and comfortable spaces that respect the earth and its resources. The field of interior design encompasses both visual and functional design, as well as basic knowledge of building materials, construction, and technology. This introduction to interior design is therefore broad in scope. The intent, nevertheless, is to treat the subject with clarity, make it as accessible as possible, and stimulate further in-depth study and research.

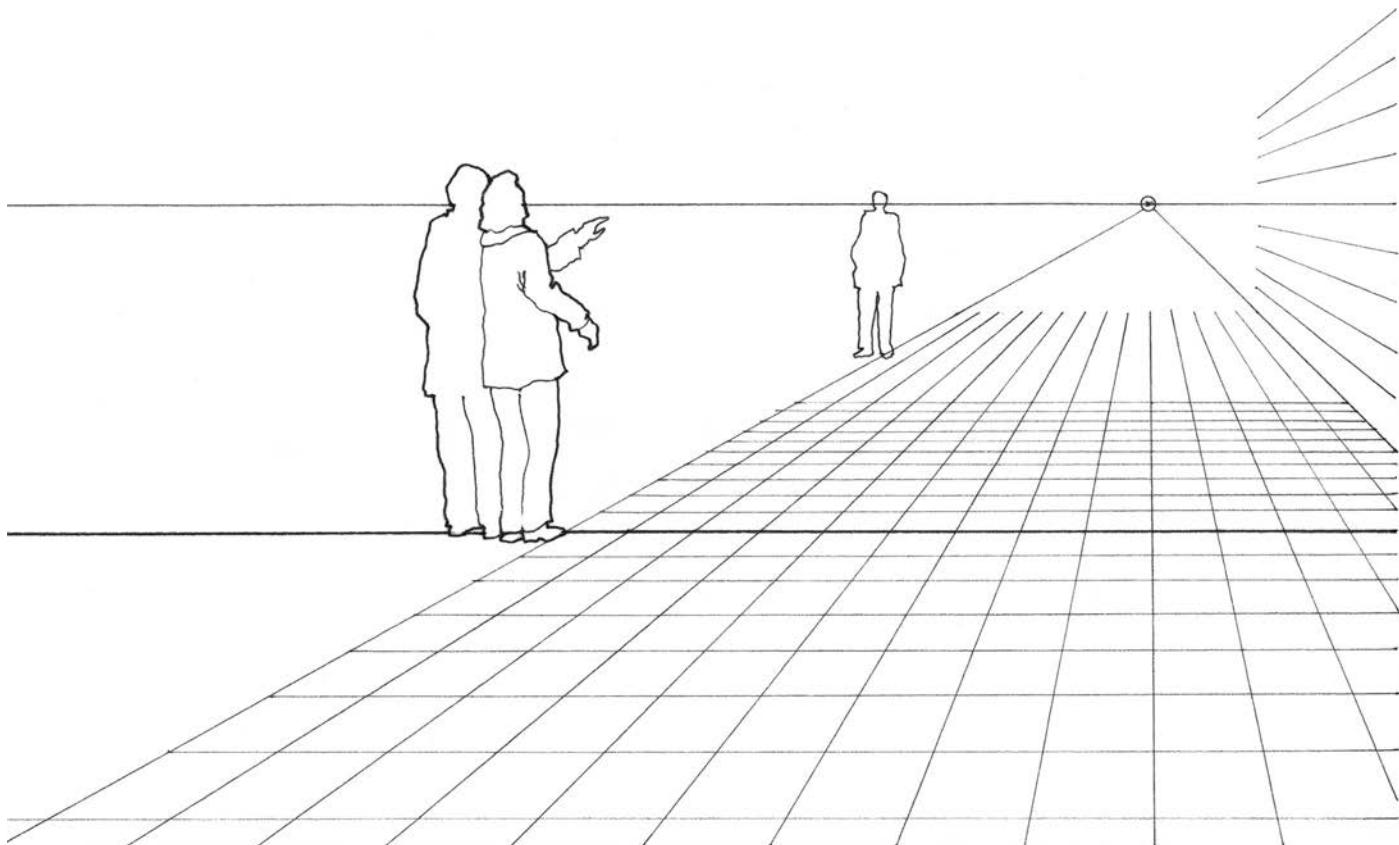


Interior Space

Space is a prime ingredient in the designer's palette and the quintessential element in interior design. Through the volume of space we not only move; we see forms, hear sounds, feel gentle breezes and the warmth of the sun, and smell the fragrances of flowers in bloom. Space inherits the sensual and aesthetic characteristics of the elements in its field.

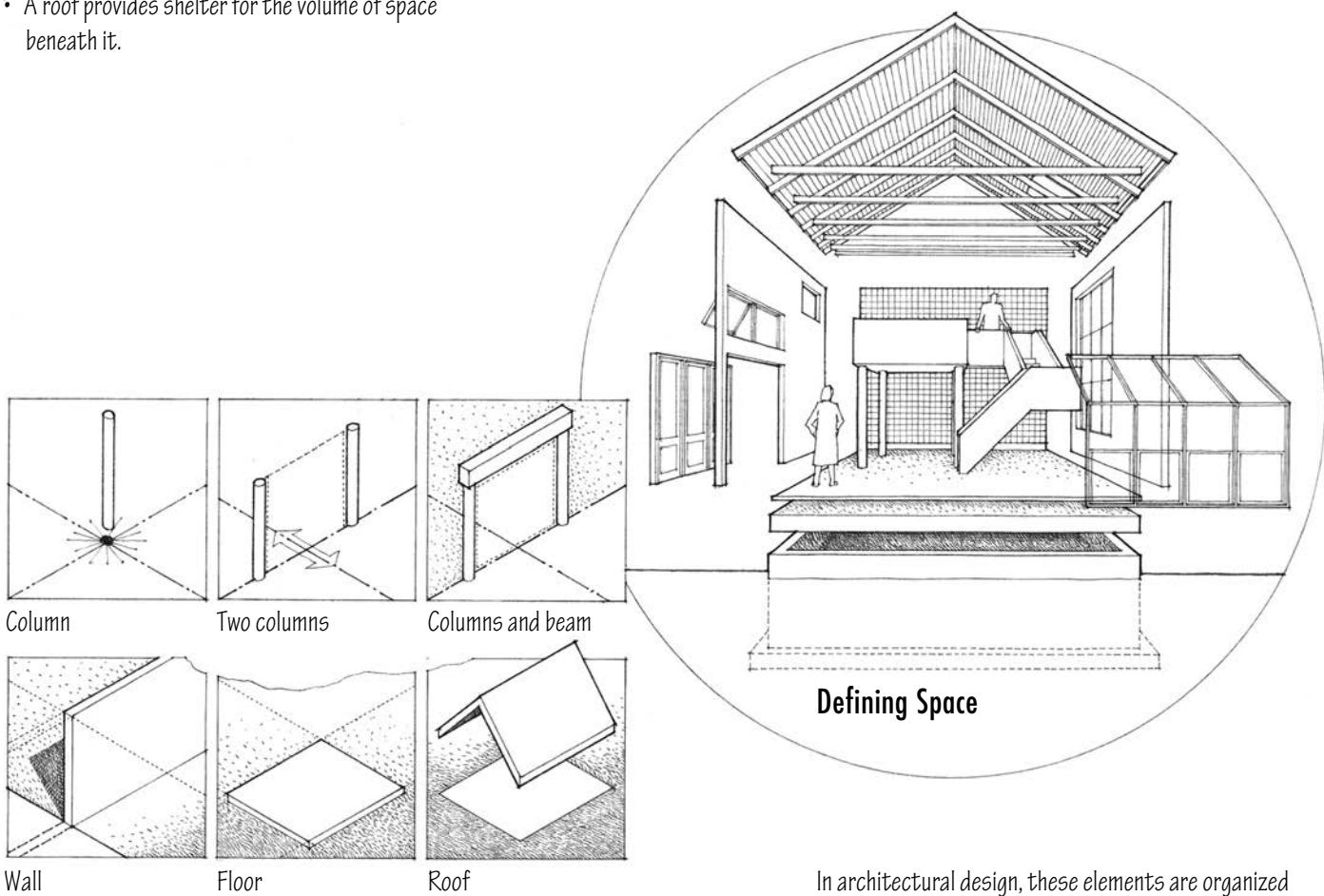
Space

Space is not a material substance like stone and wood. It is inherently formless and diffuse. Universal space has no defining borders. Once an element is placed in its field, however, a visual relationship is established. As other elements are introduced into the field, multiple relationships are established between the space and the elements, as well as among the elements themselves. Space is formed by our perception of these relationships.



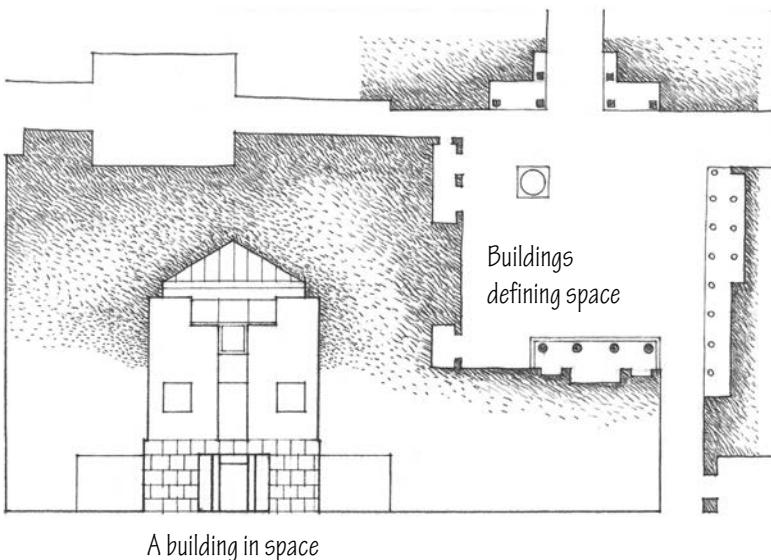
The geometric elements—point, line, plane, and volume—can be arranged to articulate and define space. In architecture, these fundamental elements become linear columns and beams, planar walls, floors, and roofs.

- A column marks a point in space and makes it visible in three dimensions.
- Two columns define a spatial membrane through which we can pass.
- When supporting a beam, the columns delineate the edges of a transparent plane.
- A wall, an opaque plane, marks off a portion of amorphous space and separates here from there.
- A floor defines a field of space with territorial boundaries.
- A roof provides shelter for the volume of space beneath it.



In architectural design, these elements are organized to give a building form, differentiate between inside and outside, and define the boundaries of interior space.

EXTERIOR SPACE

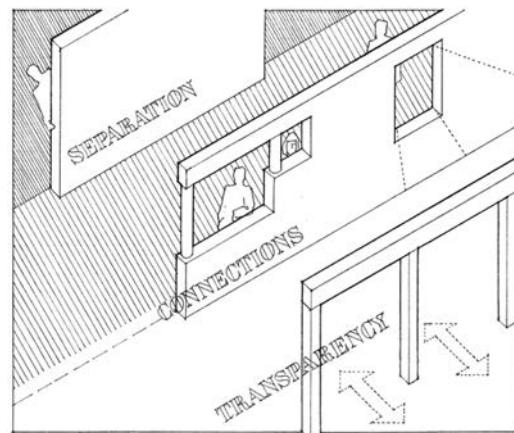
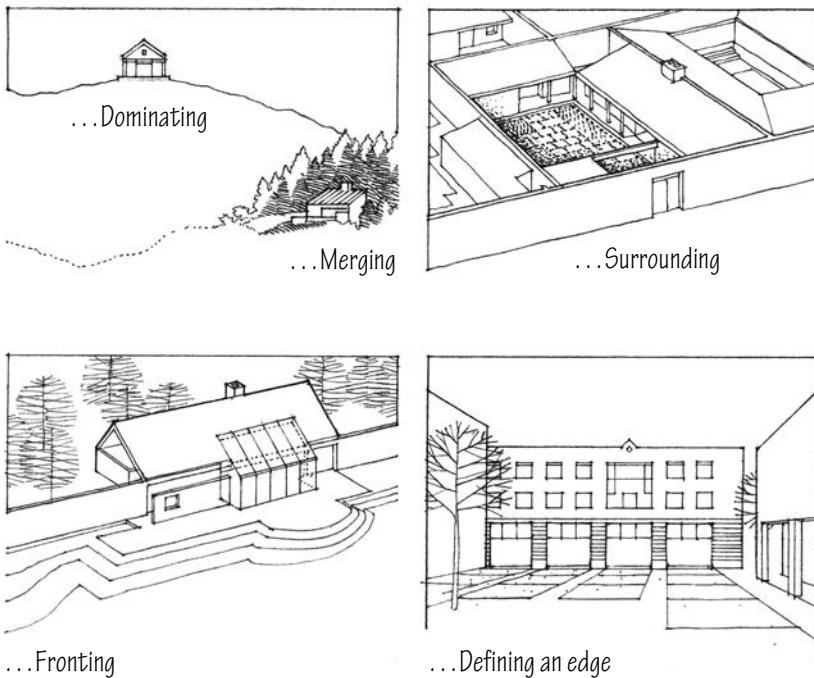


A building's form, scale, and spatial organization are the designer's response to a number of conditions—functional planning requirements, technical aspects of structure and construction, economic realities, and expressive qualities of image and style. In addition, the architecture of a building should address the physical context of its site and the exterior space.

A building can be related to its site in several ways. It can merge with its setting or dominate it. It can surround and capture a portion of exterior space. One of its faces can be made to address a feature of its site or define an edge of exterior space. In each case, due consideration should be given to the potential relationship between interior and exterior space, as defined by the nature of a building's exterior walls.

Buildings affect and are affected by conditions of their sites and the wider environment. Selecting and developing sites to reduce site disturbance, stormwater runoff, heat island effects, and light pollution contribute to *sustainable design*.

Buildings



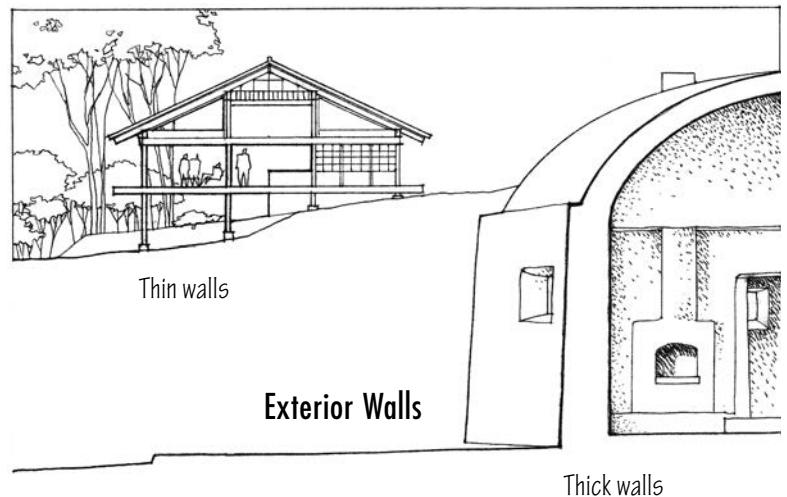
Exterior Walls

A building's exterior walls constitute the interface between our interior and exterior environments. In defining both interior and exterior space, they determine the character of each. They may be thick and heavy, expressing a clear distinction between a controlled interior environment and the exterior space from which it is isolated. They may be thin, or even transparent, and attempt to merge inside and outside.

Windows and doorways, the openings that penetrate a building's exterior walls, are the spatial transitions between exterior and interior space. Their scale, character, and composition often tell us something about the nature of the interior spaces that lie between them.

Special transitional spaces, belonging to both the outside world and the inside, can be used to mediate between the two environments. Familiar examples include a porch, a veranda, or an arcaded gallery.

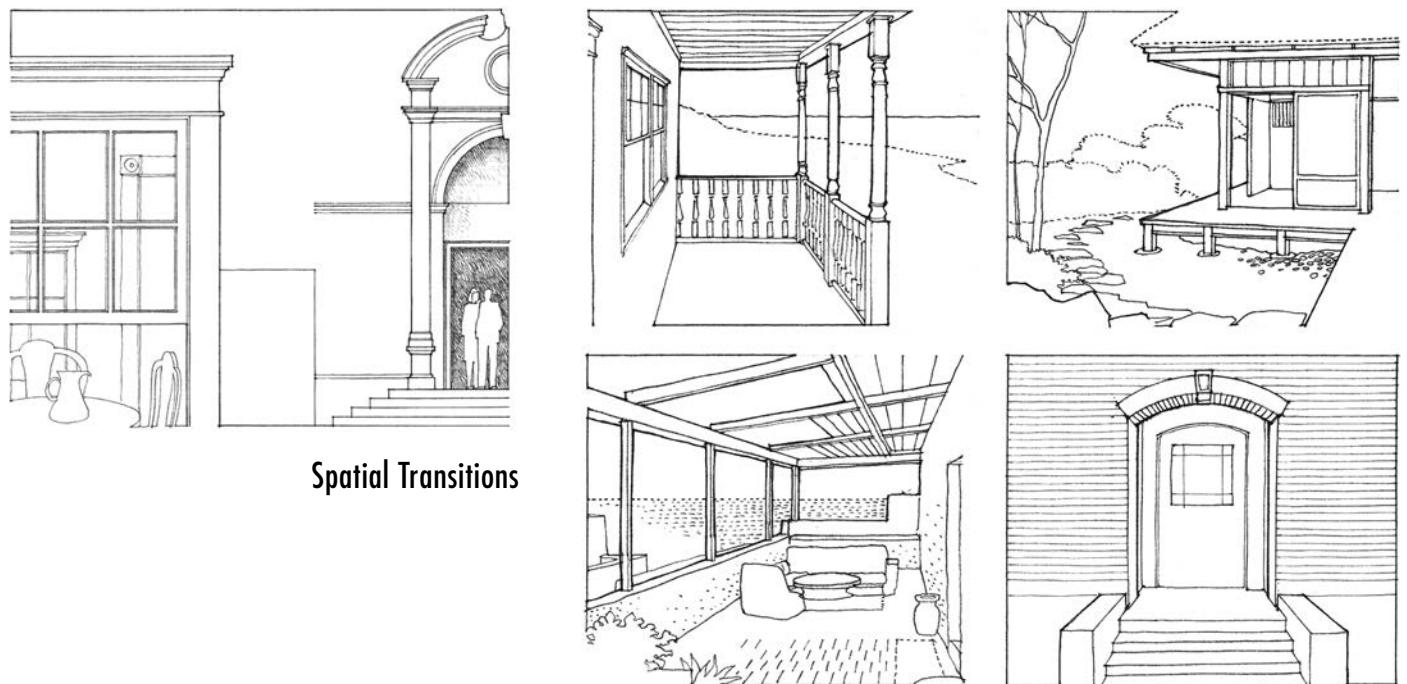
Many single-family residences have steps at all entrances that present barriers to people with physical disabilities. *Visitability* is a movement to construct new homes so that they can be readily lived in and visited by people with mobility impairments.



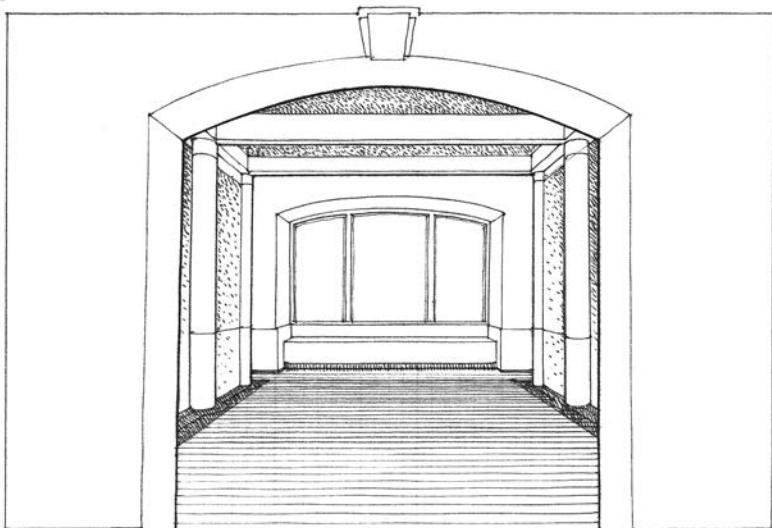
Thin walls

Exterior Walls

Thick walls



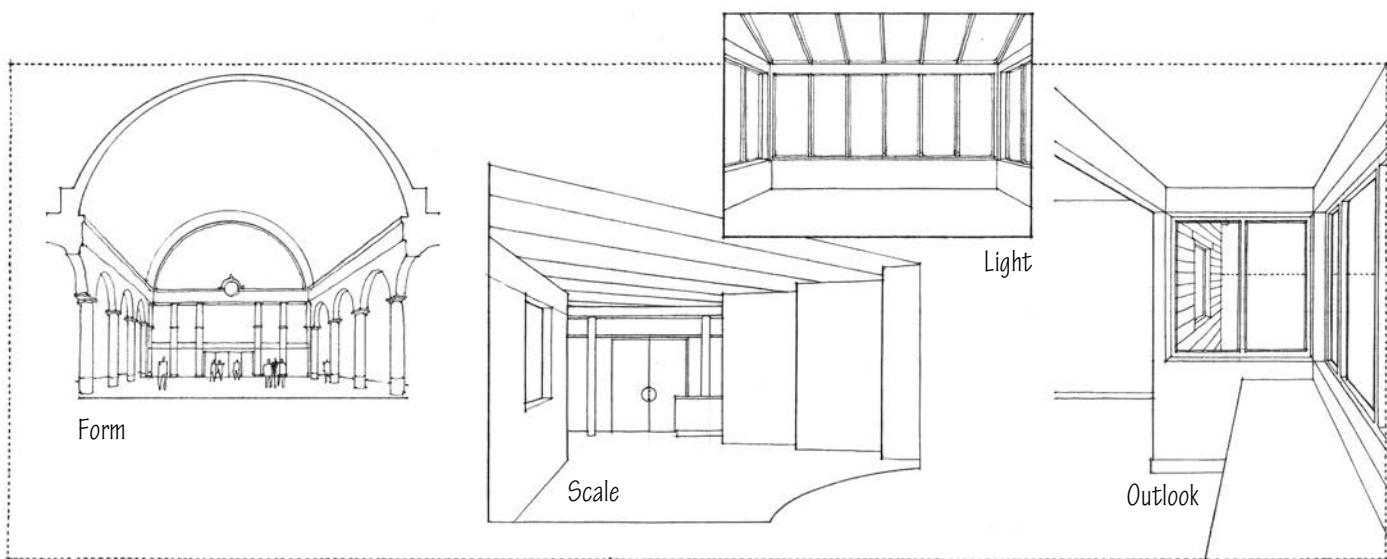
INTERIOR SPACE



Entrances mark the transition from here to there.

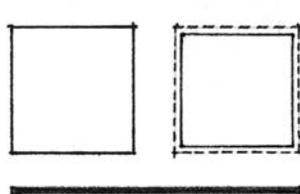
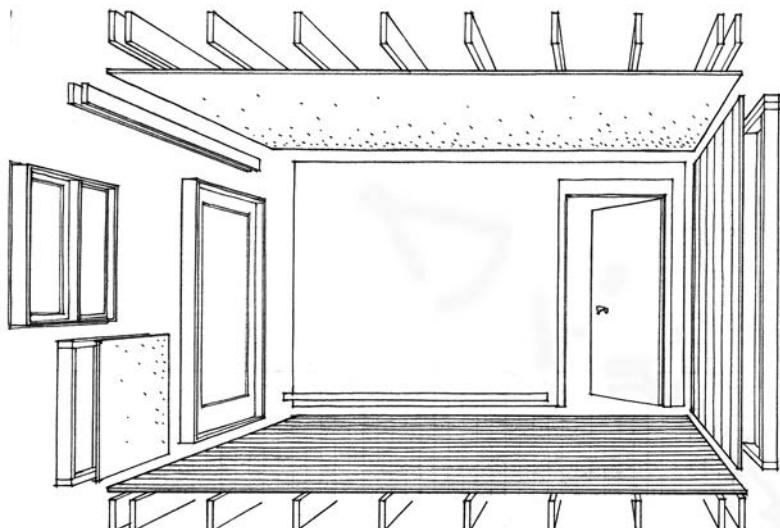
Upon entering a building, we sense shelter and enclosure. This perception is due to the bounding floor, wall, and ceiling planes of interior space. These are the architectural elements that define the physical limits of rooms. They enclose space, articulate its boundaries, and separate it from adjoining interior spaces and the outside.

Floors, walls, and ceilings do more than mark off a simple quantity of space. Their form, configuration, and pattern of window and door openings also imbue the defined space with certain spatial or architectural qualities. We use terms such as grand hall, loft space, sun room, and alcove not simply to describe how large or small a space is, but also to characterize its scale and proportion, its quality of light, the nature of its enclosing surfaces, and the way it relates to adjacent spaces.

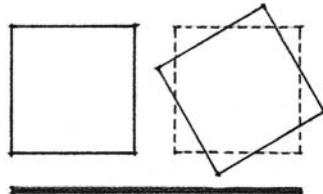


Spatial Qualities

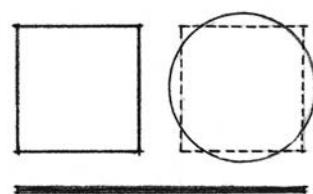
Interior design necessarily goes beyond the architectural definition of space. In planning the layout, furnishing, and enrichment of a space, the interior designer should be acutely aware of its architectural character as well as its potential for modification and enhancement. The design of interior spaces requires, therefore, an understanding of how they are formed by the building systems of *structure* and *enclosure*. With this understanding, the interior designer can effectively elect to work with, continue, or even offer a counterpoint to the essential qualities of an architectural space.



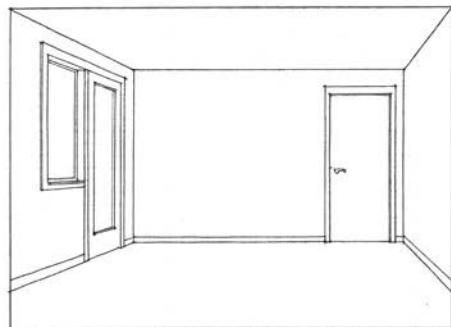
Continuation



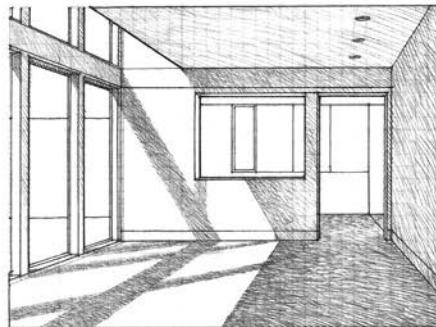
Contrast



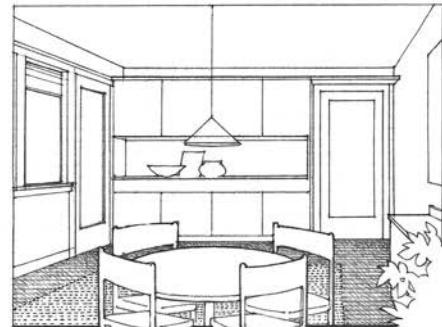
Counterpoint



The basic shell



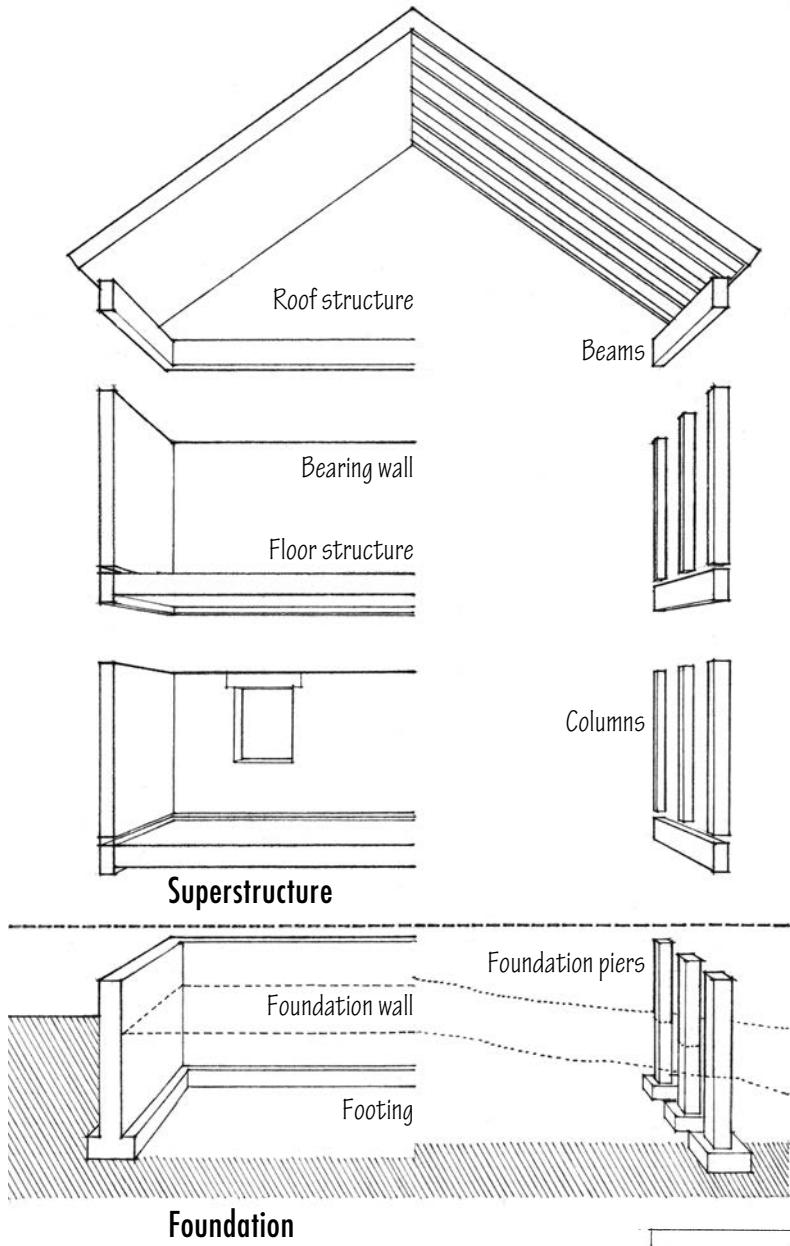
...modified architecturally



...or through interior design

Interior Space

STRUCTURING SPACE



Buildings typically consist of physical systems of structure, enclosure, and building services equipment.

Structural Systems

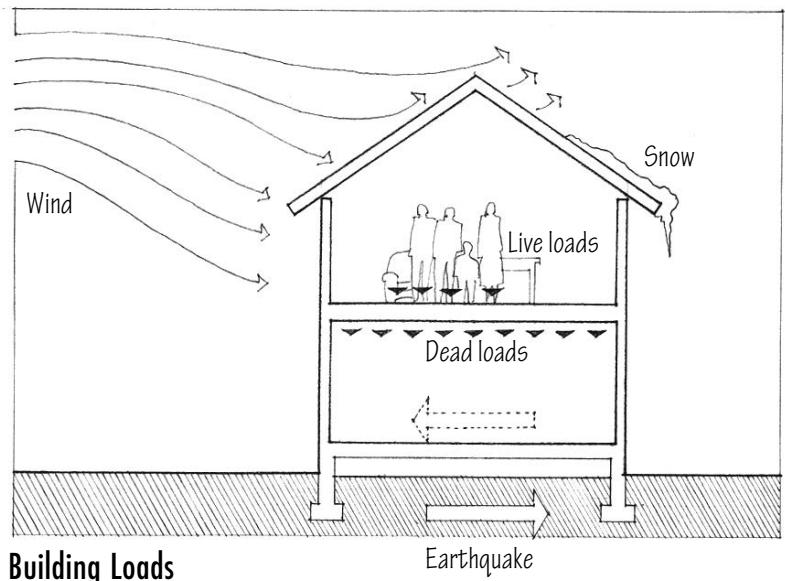
- The **superstructure** is the vertical extension of the foundation system and consists of the columns, beams, and load-bearing walls that support the floor and roof structures.
- The **foundation system** is the substructure that forms the base of a building, anchors it firmly to the ground, and supports the building elements and spaces above.

These systems must work together to support the following types of loads:

Dead Loads: How a building is constructed determines its dead load, which is a static vertical load comprising the weight of its structural and nonstructural components, including any equipment permanently attached to the structure.

Live Loads: How a building is used determines its live load, which is a movable or moving load comprising the weight of its occupants and any mobile equipment and furnishings. In cold climates, collected snow and water impose an additional live load on a building.

Dynamic Loads: Where a building is located determines its potential loading from the dynamic forces of wind and earthquake.



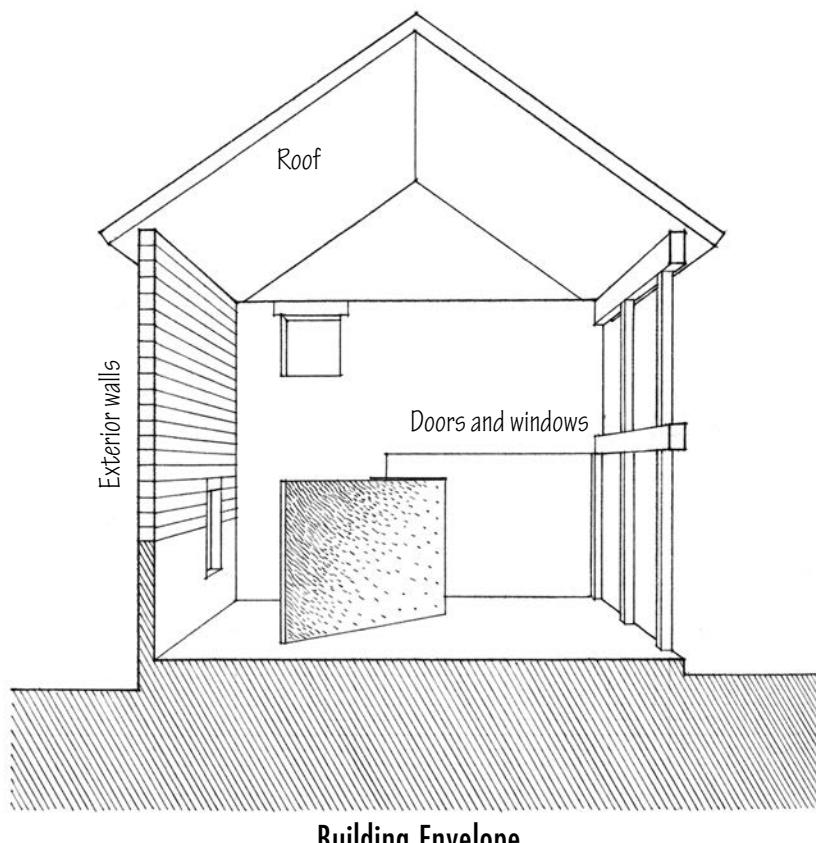
Building Loads

Enclosure System

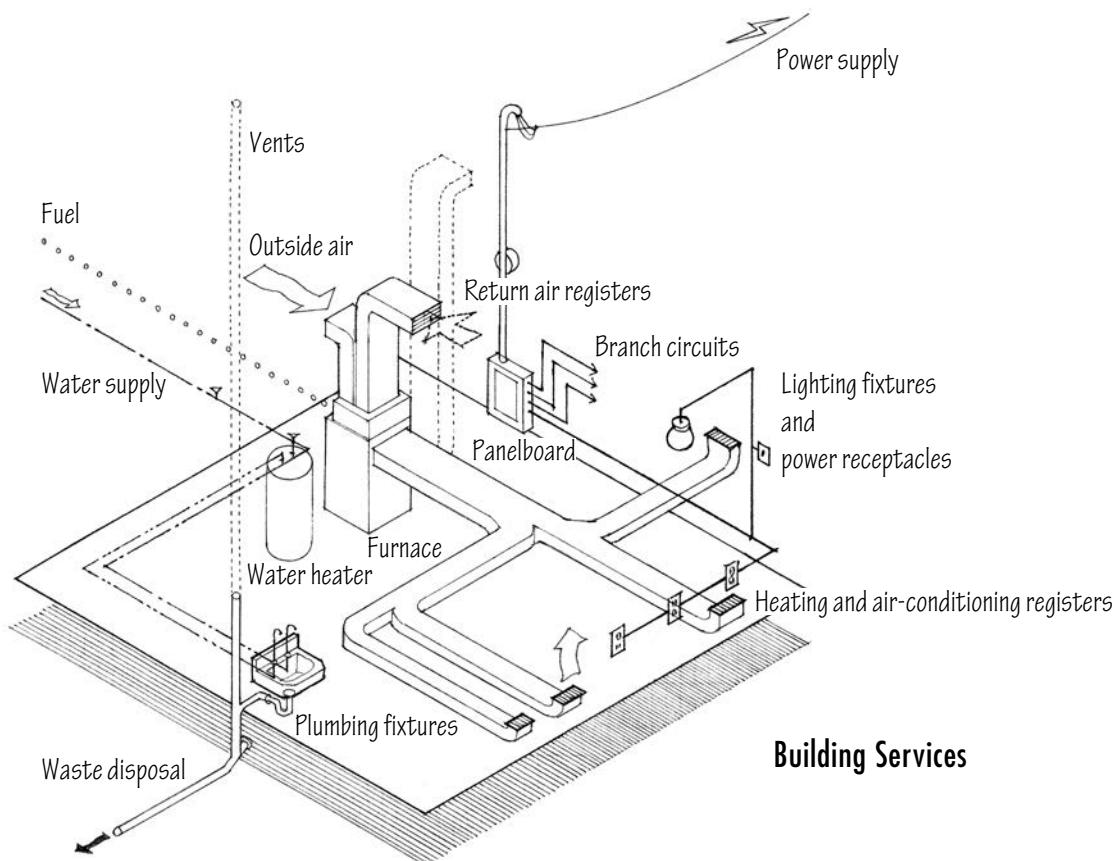
- The building envelope consists of exterior walls, windows, doors, and roof, which protect and shelter interior spaces from the exterior environment.
- Interior walls, partitions, and ceilings subdivide and define interior space. Many of these components are nonstructural in nature and carry no loads other than their own weight.

Building Services

- Mechanical systems provide essential services to a building, such as the heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning of interior spaces.
- Plumbing systems supply water suitable for consumption and firefighting and dispose of sanitary waste.
- Electrical systems control and safely distribute power for lighting, equipment, security, communication, and vertical transportation.

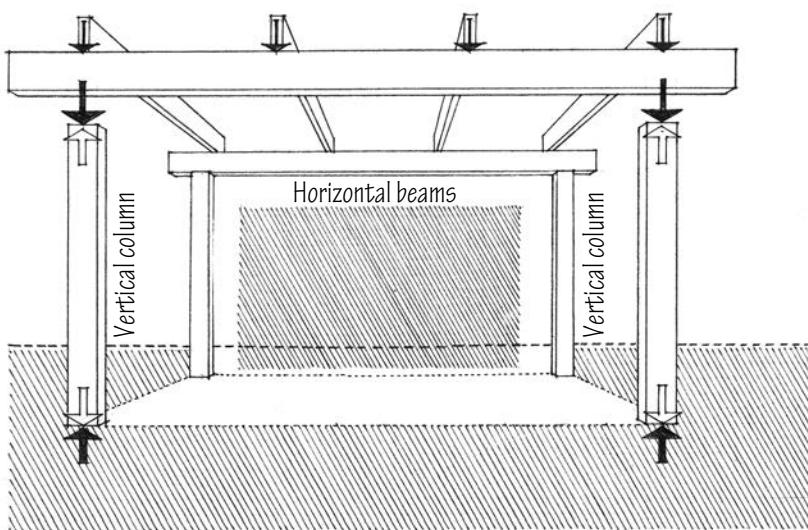


Building Envelope



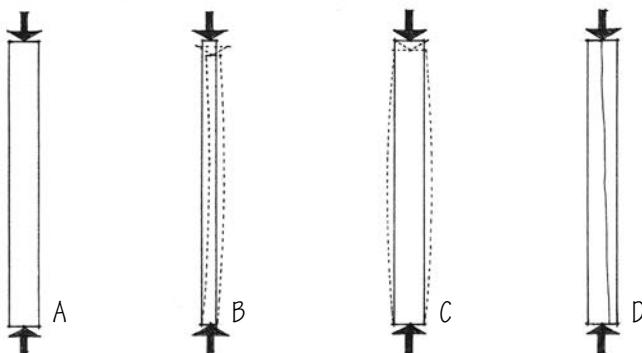
Building Services

STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS

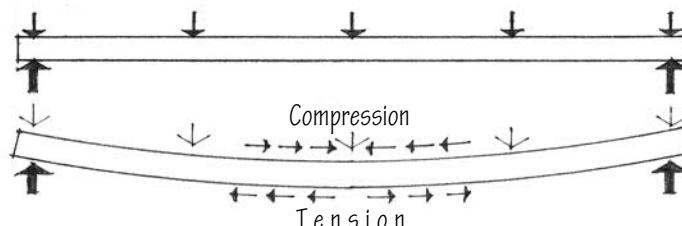


A building's structural system is formed according to the geometry of its materials and the way they react to the forces applied to them. This structural form and geometry, in turn, influence the dimensions, proportion, and arrangement of the interior spaces within the building volume.

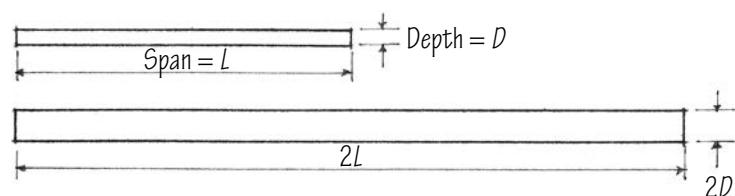
The two basic linear structural elements are the column and the beam. A *column* is a vertical support that transmits compressive forces downward along its shaft. The thicker a column is in relation to its height, the greater its load-bearing capacity and its ability to resist buckling resulting from off-center loading or *lateral forces*.



- A. Columns are subject to compression.
- B. Slender columns are susceptible to buckling.
- C. Thick columns may compress, or
- D. In the case of timber or concrete, they may split or fracture.



Beams are subject to bending.

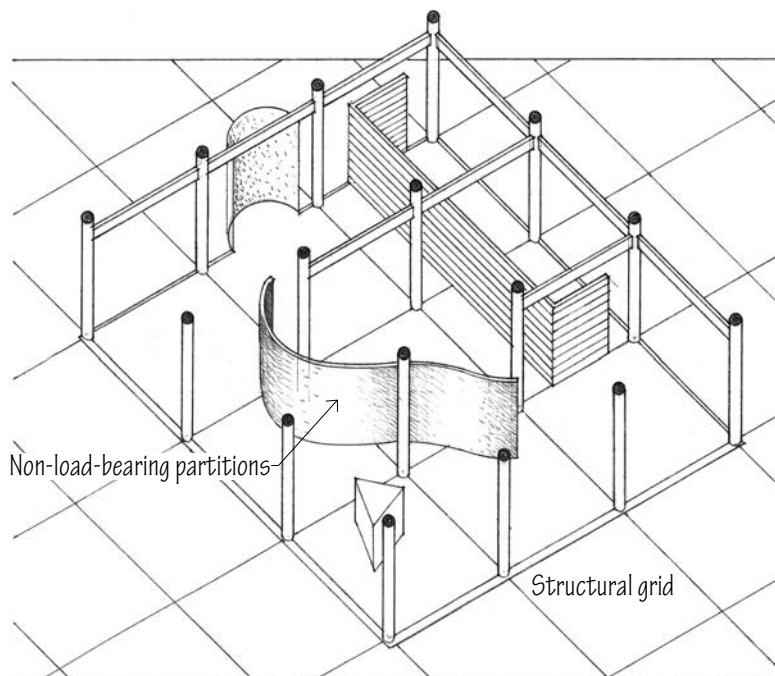
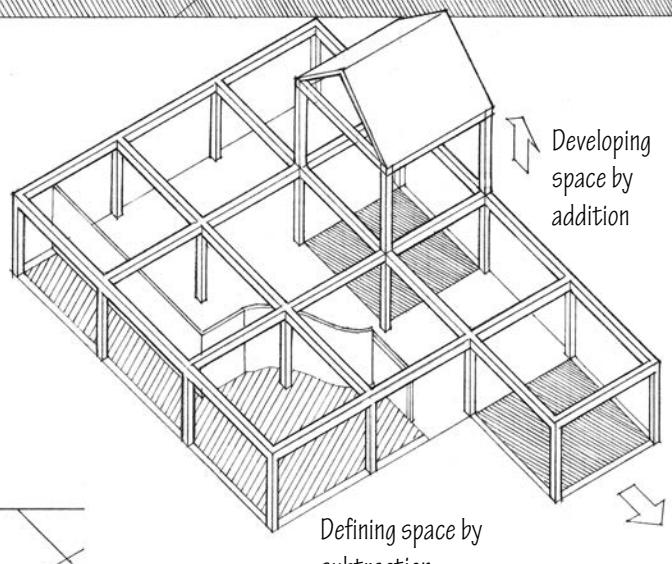
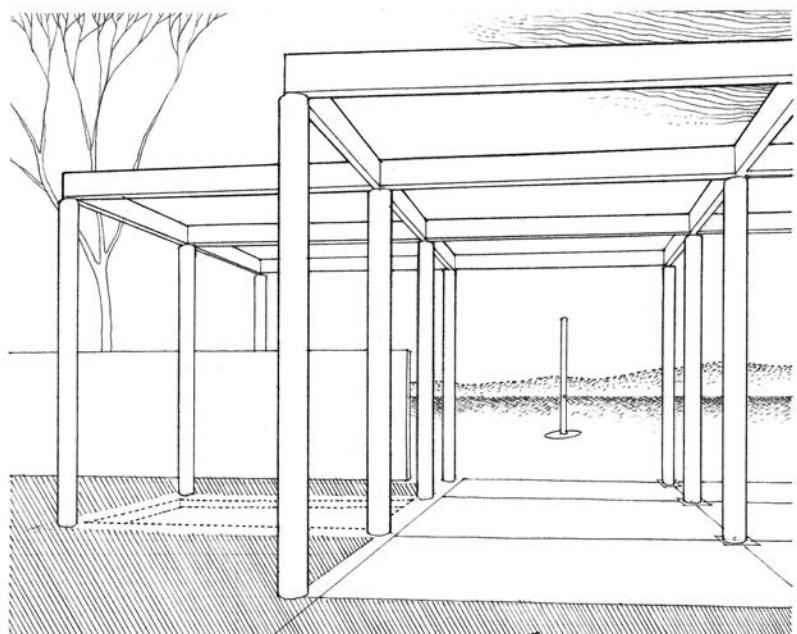


Increasing a beam's depth enables it to span greater distances.

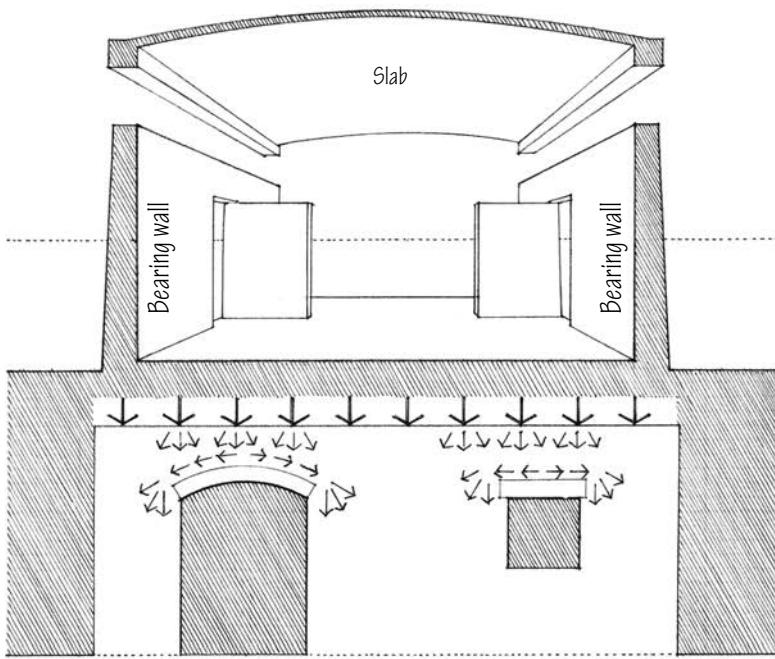
Columns mark points in space and provide a measure for its horizontal divisions. Beams make structural and visual connections across space between their supports. Together, columns and beams form a skeletal framework around interconnected volumes of space.

A linear structural system may suggest a grid layout of repetitive spaces, but floor, wall, and ceiling planes are necessary for the support and enclosure of interior space. Floor and ceiling planes, which define the vertical limits of space, may consist of planar slabs or a hierarchical arrangement of *girders* (large primary beams) and *beams* and *joists* (a series of smaller, parallel beams). Walls and partitions need not be load-bearing and do not have to be aligned with the columns of a structural frame, except where serving as *shear walls* and providing for lateral stability. They are free to define the horizontal dimensions of space according to need, desire, or circumstance.

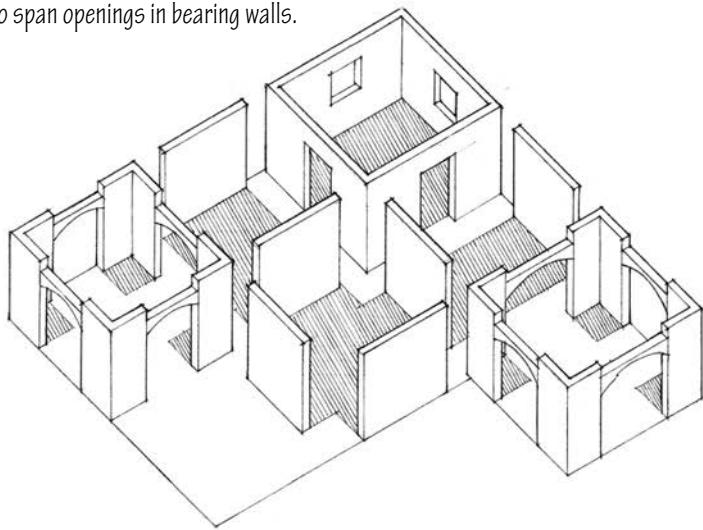
Linear structural systems are cumulative by nature and eminently flexible. They allow for growth, change, and the adaptation of individual spaces to their specific uses.



PLANAR STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS



Small beams or lintels are required to span openings in bearing walls.



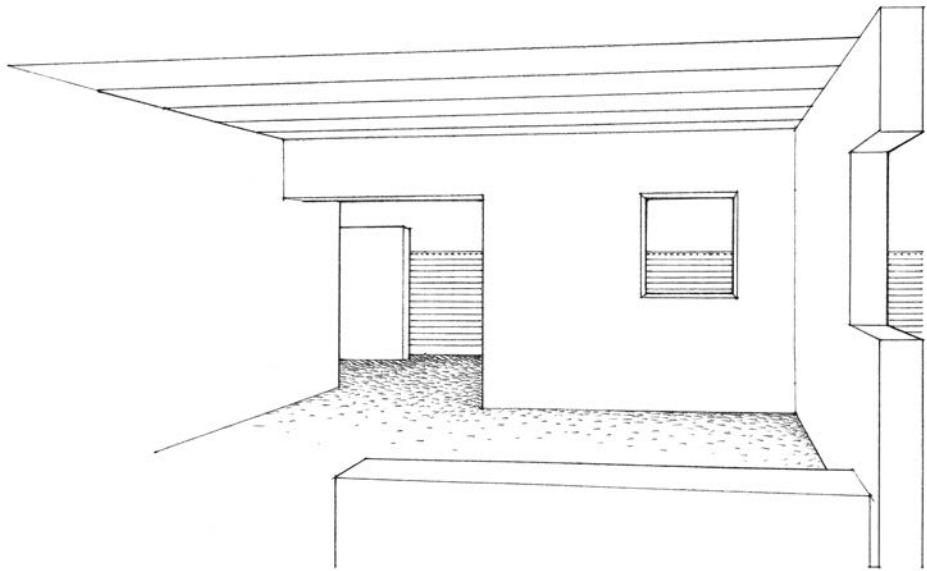
Varying degrees of spatial enclosure are possible with walls, depending on the size and location of openings within their planes.

The two principal types of planar structural elements are the *load-bearing wall* and the horizontal slab. A bearing wall acts as a long, thin column in transmitting compressive forces to its support or foundation.

Window and door openings within a bearing wall tend to weaken its structural integrity. Any opening must be spanned by an arch or a short beam called a *lintel* to support the wall load above and allow compressive stresses to flow around the opening to adjacent sections of the wall.

A common pattern for bearing walls is a parallel layout spanned by floor joists and roof rafters, or by horizontal slabs. For lateral stability, *pilasters* and cross walls are often used to help brace bearing walls.

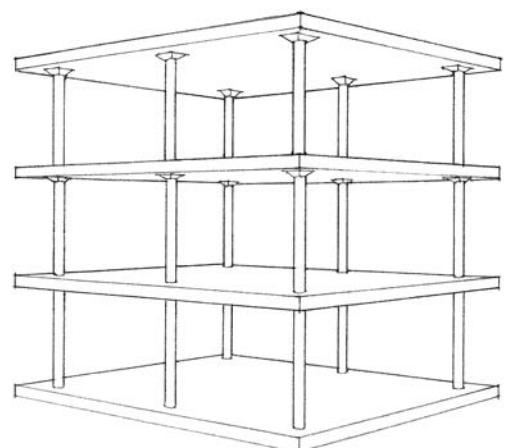
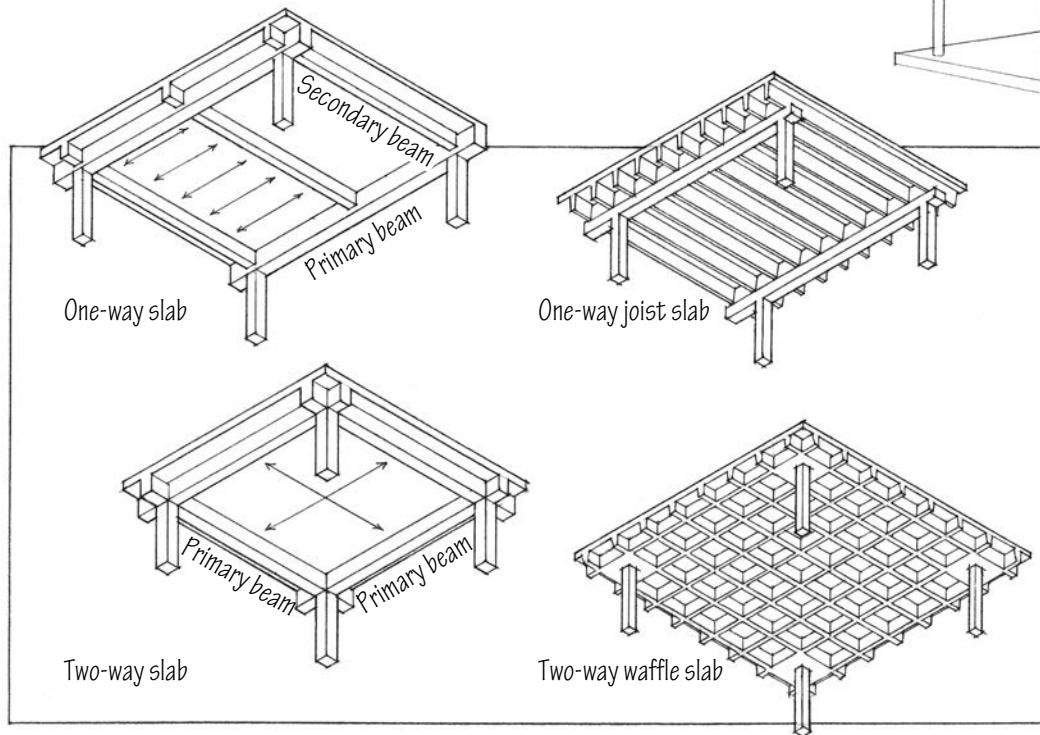
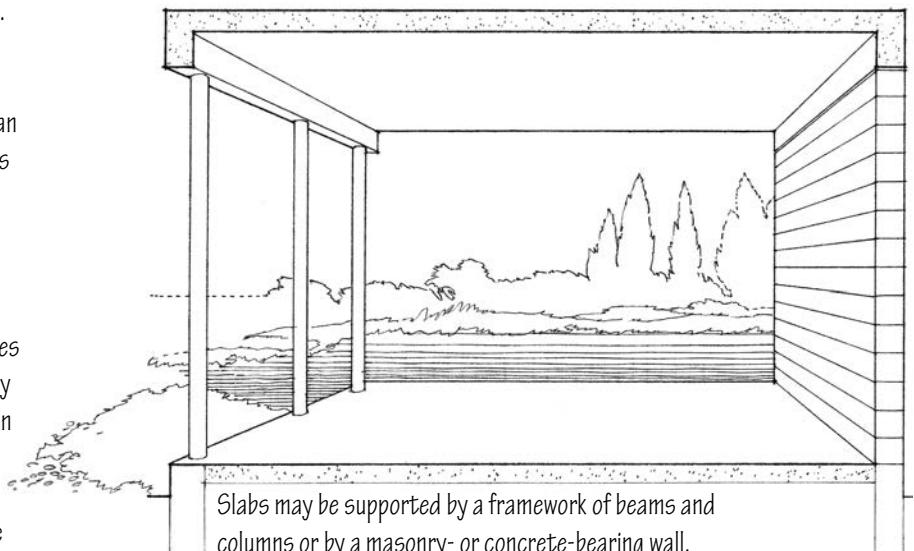
While linear structural elements outline the edges of spatial volumes, planar elements such as bearing walls define the physical limits of space. They provide a real sense of enclosure and privacy as well and serve as barriers against the elements.



A slab is a horizontal, rigid, usually monolithic plate. A common example is a reinforced concrete slab. A slab is able to support both concentrated and distributed loads because the resulting stresses can fan out across the plane of the slab and take various paths to the slab supports.

When supported along two edges, a slab can be considered a wide, shallow beam extending in one direction. Supported along four sides, a slab becomes a two-way structural element. For greater efficiency and reduced weight, a slab can be modified in section to incorporate ribs.

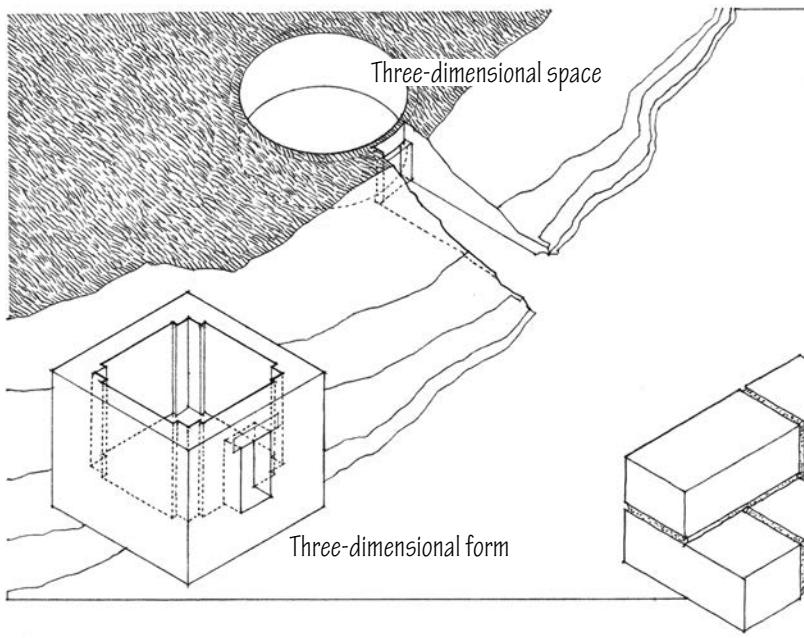
When integrally connected with reinforced concrete columns, flat slabs can be supported without beams. They form horizontal layers of space punctuated only by the shafts of the supporting columns.



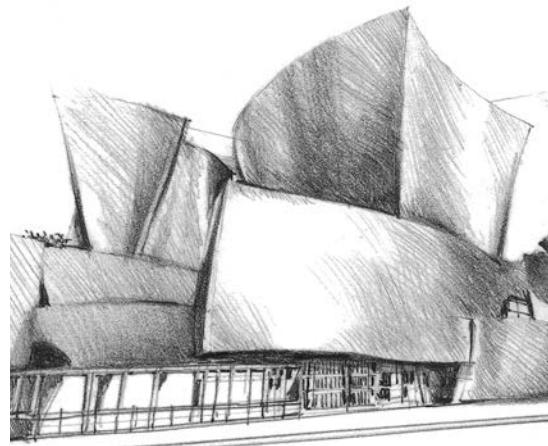
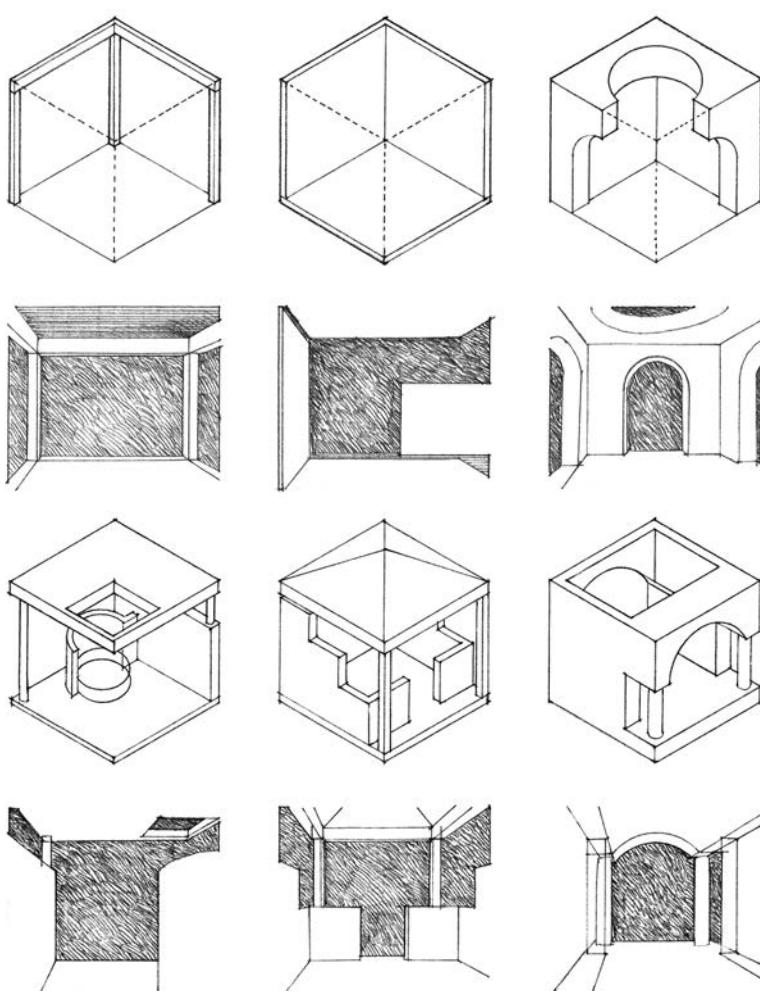
Two-way flat slabs thickened at their column supports define horizontal layers of space.

Types of Slabs

VOLUMETRIC STRUCTURAL SYSTEMS



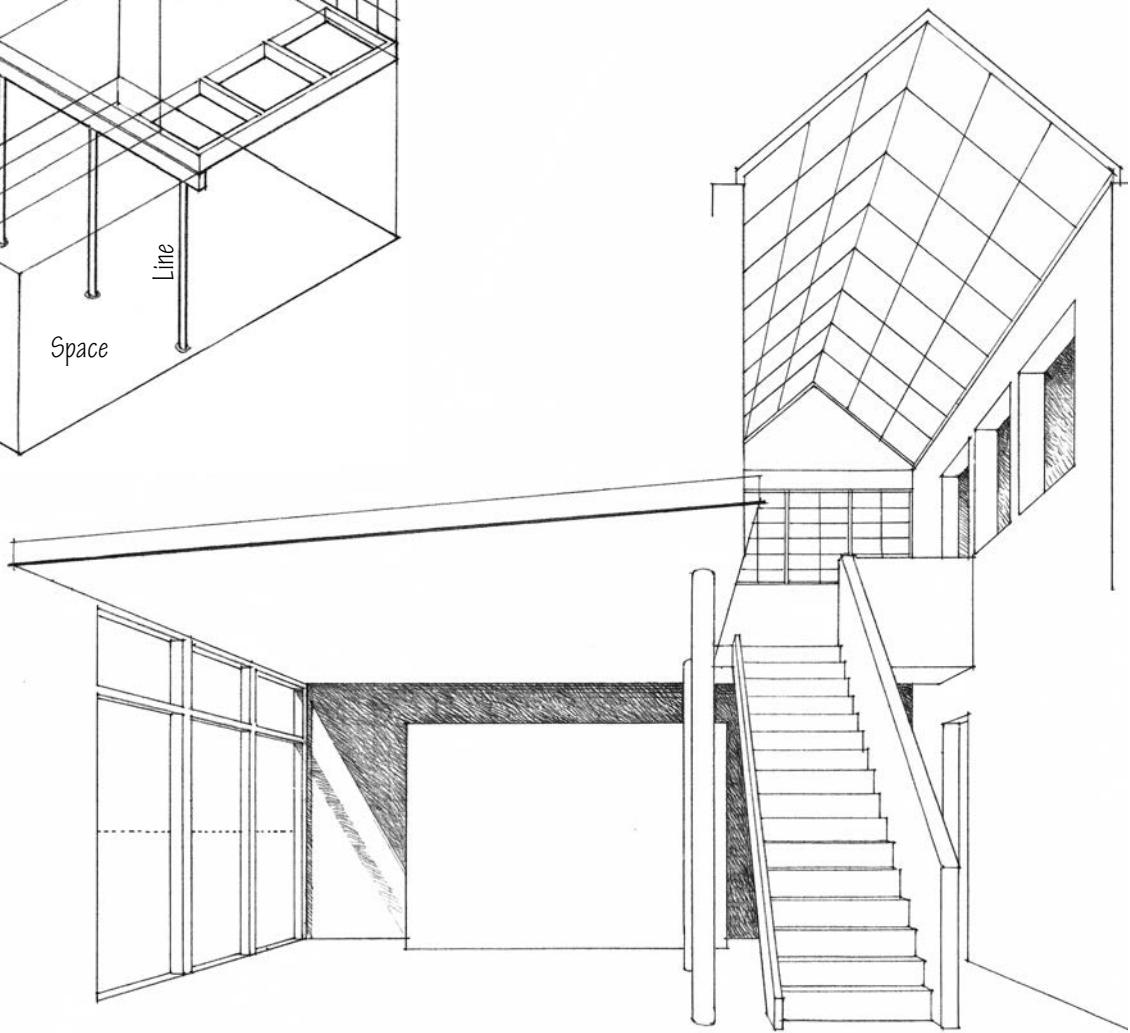
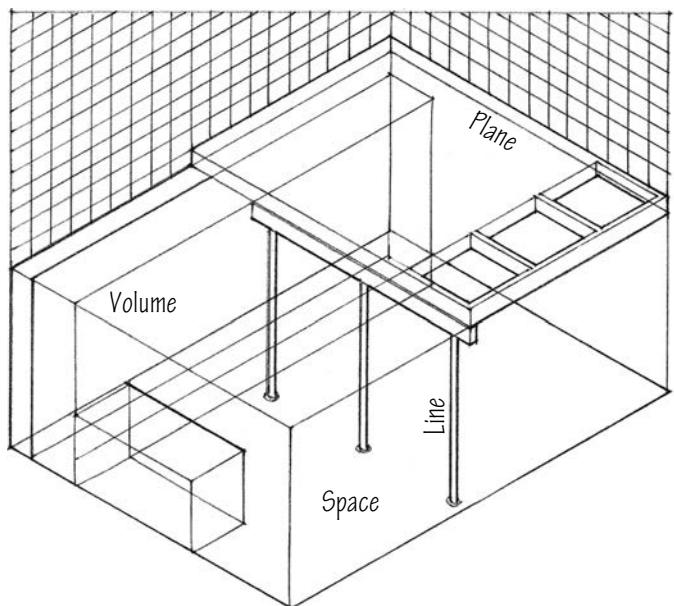
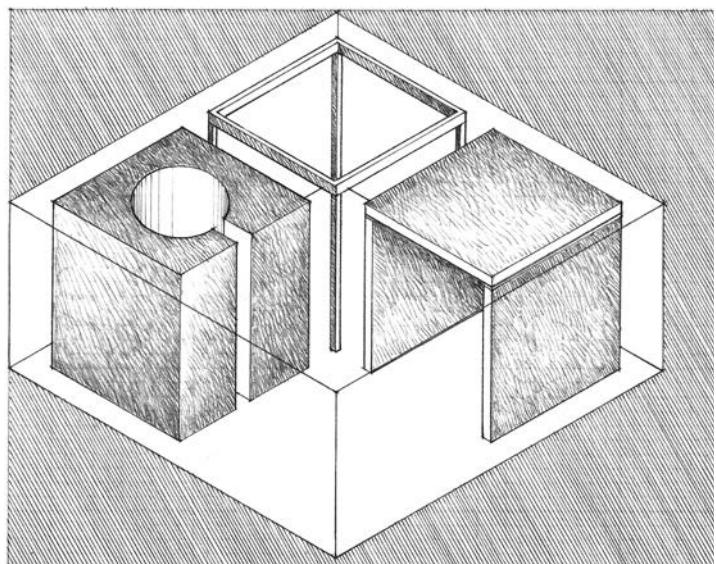
A volumetric structural system consists of a three-dimensional mass. The mass of the material occupies the void of space. Out of the mass is carved the volume of interior space. The efficiency of engineering methods and the strength of modern building materials have limited the use of pure volumetric structural systems, although three-dimensional computer design is changing this. At a small scale, stone and clay masonry units can be seen to be volumetric structural elements. At a larger scale, any building that encloses interior space can be viewed as a three-dimensional structure that must have strength in width, length, and depth.



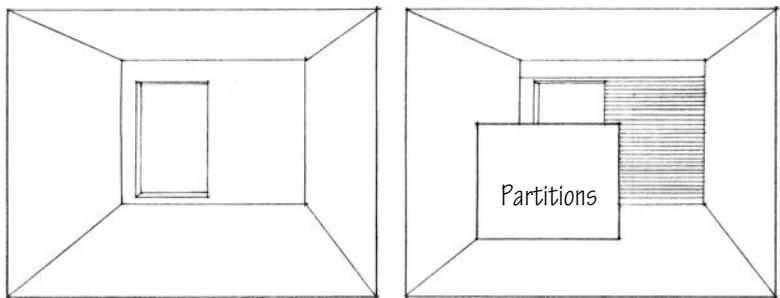
Walt Disney Concert Hall, Los Angeles, California,
Frank Gehry, 2003

Composite systems combine linear, planar, and volumetric elements into three-dimensional compositions of form and space.

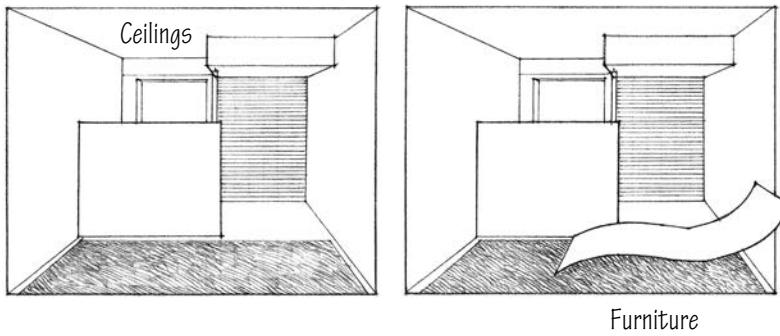
Most structural systems are in fact composites of linear, planar, and volumetric elements. No one system is superior to all others in all situations. For the structural designer, each presents advantages and disadvantages, depending on the size, location, and intended use of a building. An interior designer should be aware of the character of the interior spaces each system defines.



SHAPING INTERIOR SPACE

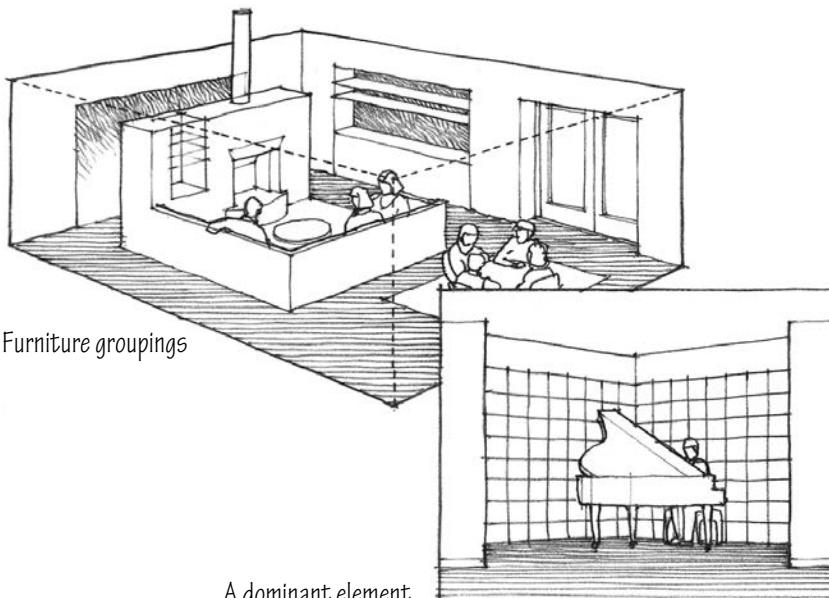


Although a building's structural system sets up the basic form and pattern of its interior spaces, these spaces are ultimately structured by the elements of interior design. The term "structure" is not used here in the sense of physical support. It refers to the selection and arrangement of interior elements such that their visual relationships define and organize the interior space of a room.

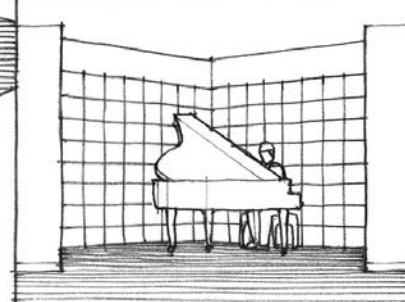


Non-load-bearing partitions and suspended ceilings are often used to define or modify space within the structural framework or shell of a building.

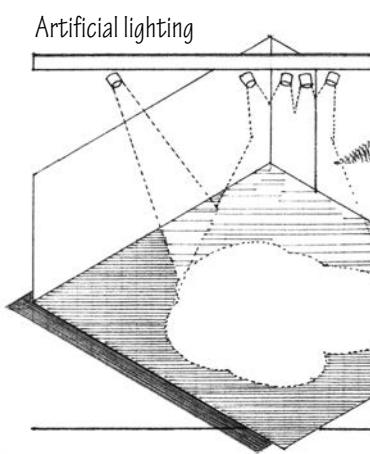
The color, texture, and pattern of wall, floor, and ceiling surfaces affect our perception of their relative positions in space and our awareness of the room's dimensions, scale, and proportion.



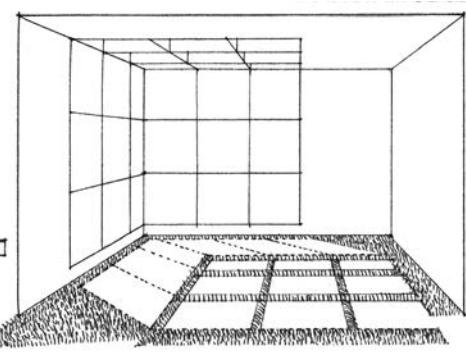
Furniture groupings



A dominant element



Artificial lighting



Daylighting

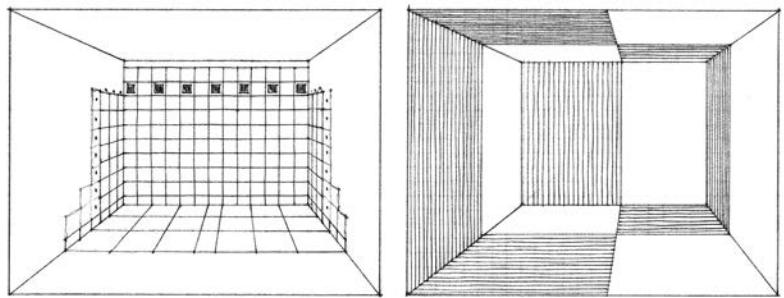
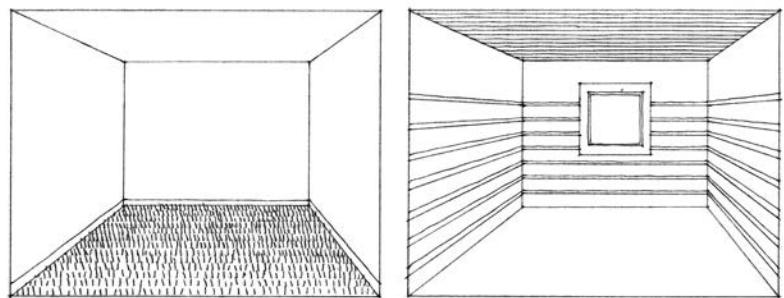
Structuring Space with Interior Design Elements

Within a large space, the form and arrangement of furnishings can divide areas, provide a sense of enclosure, and define spatial patterns.

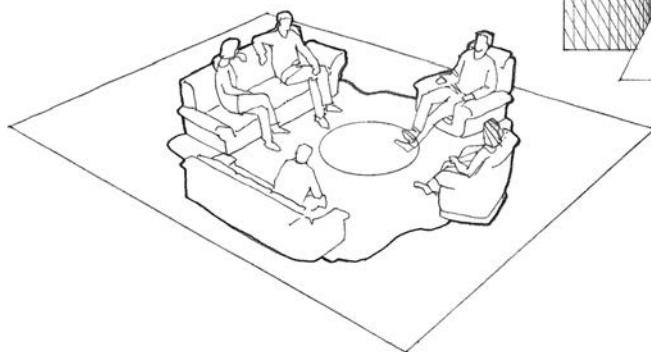
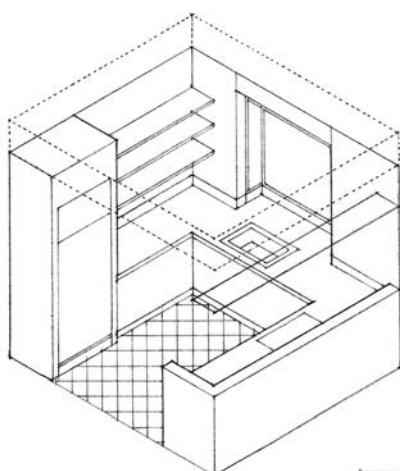
Lighting, and the light and dark patterns it creates, can call our attention to one area of a room, deemphasize others, and thereby create divisions of space.

Even the acoustic nature of a room's surfaces can affect the apparent boundaries of a space. Soft, absorbent surfaces muffle sounds and can diminish our awareness of the physical dimensions of a room. Hard surfaces that reflect sounds within a room help to define its physical boundaries. Echoes can suggest a large volume.

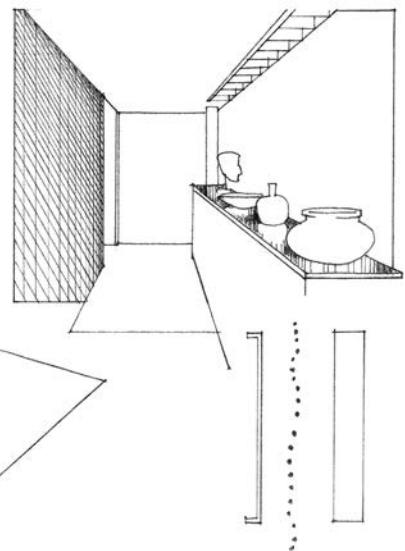
Finally, space is structured by the way we use it. The nature of our activities and the rituals we develop in performing them influence how we plan, arrange, and organize interior space.



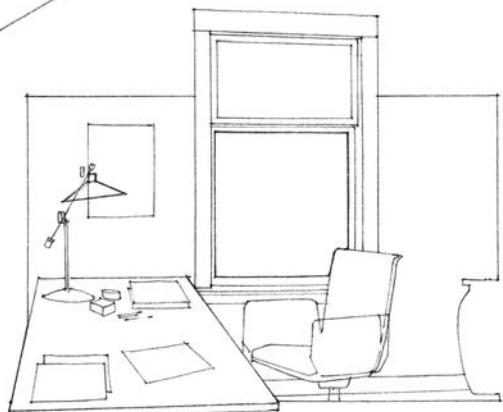
Color, texture, and pattern



Communication

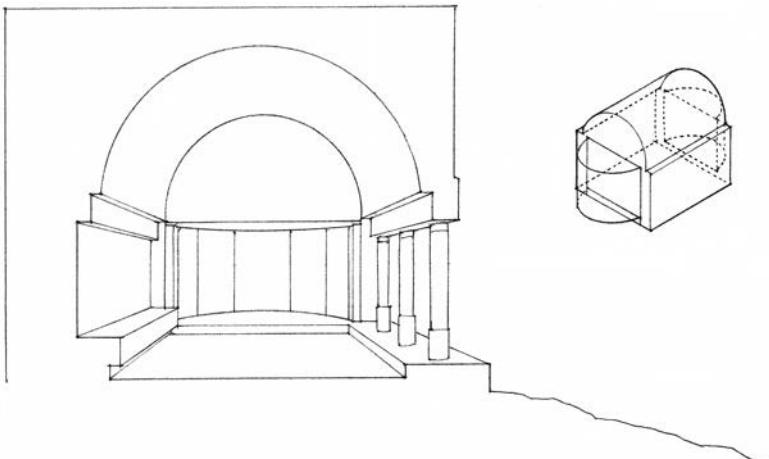


Movement



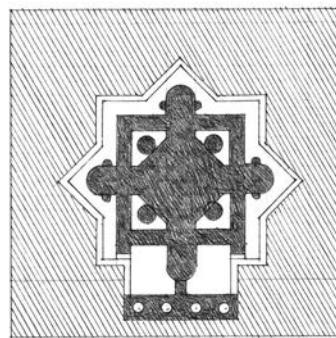
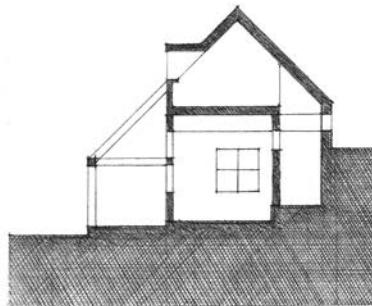
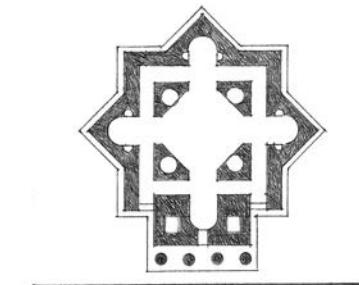
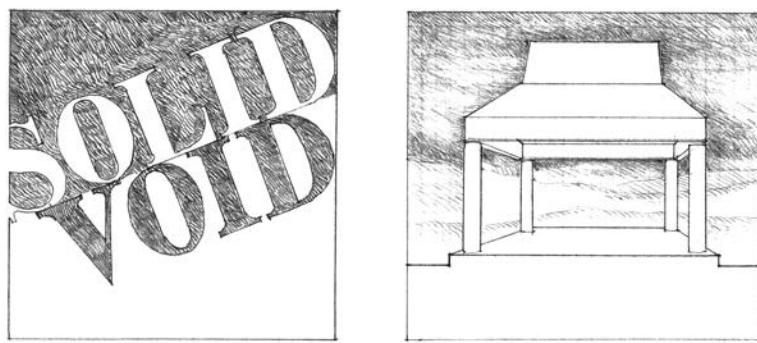
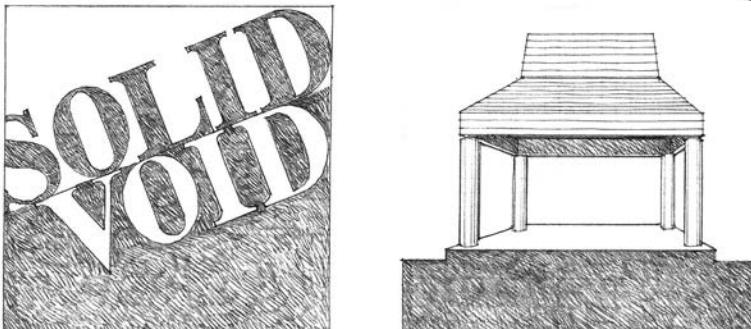
Individual and group activities

SPATIAL FORM



Interior spaces are formed first by a building's structural system, further defined by wall and ceiling planes, and related to other spaces by windows and doorways. Every building has a recognizable pattern of these elements and systems. Each pattern has an inherent geometry that molds or carves out a volume of space into its likeness.

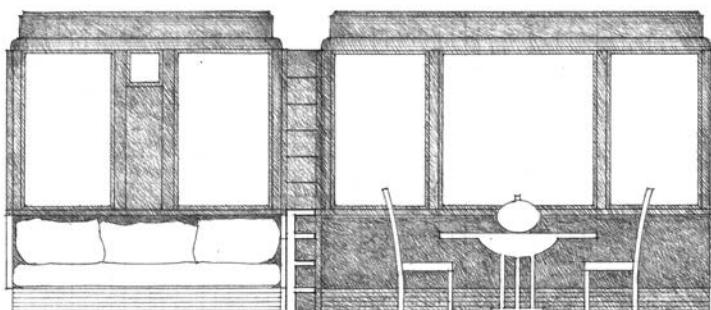
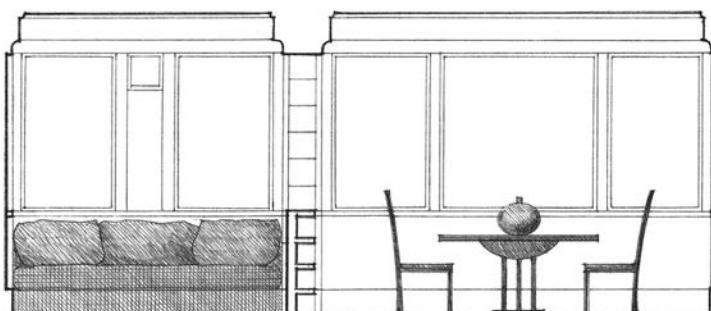
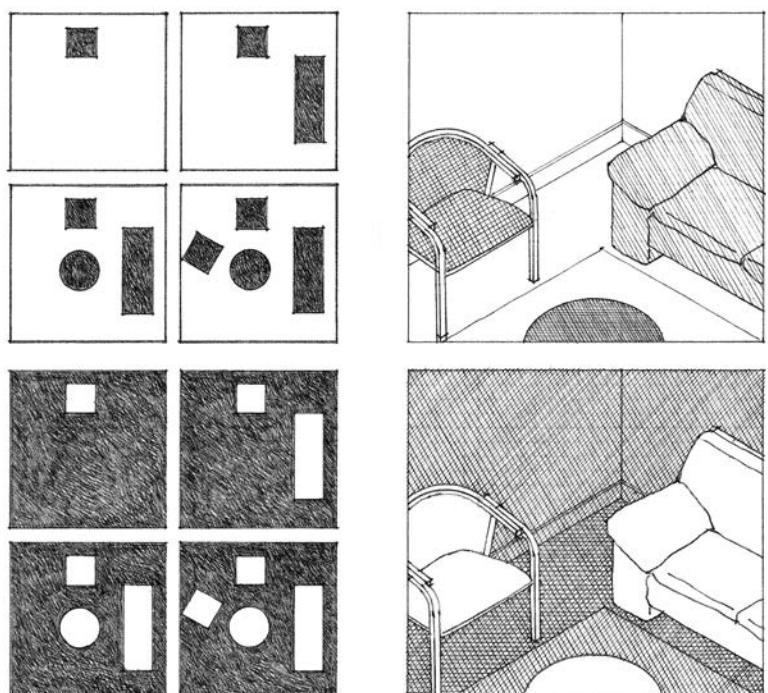
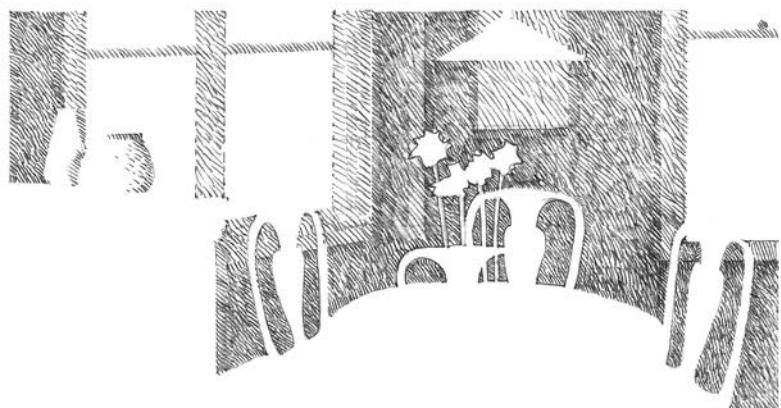
It is useful to be able to read this *figure-ground* relationship between the form of space-defining elements and that of the space defined. Either the structure or the space can dominate this relationship. Whichever appears to dominate, we should be able to perceive the other as an equal partner in the relationship.



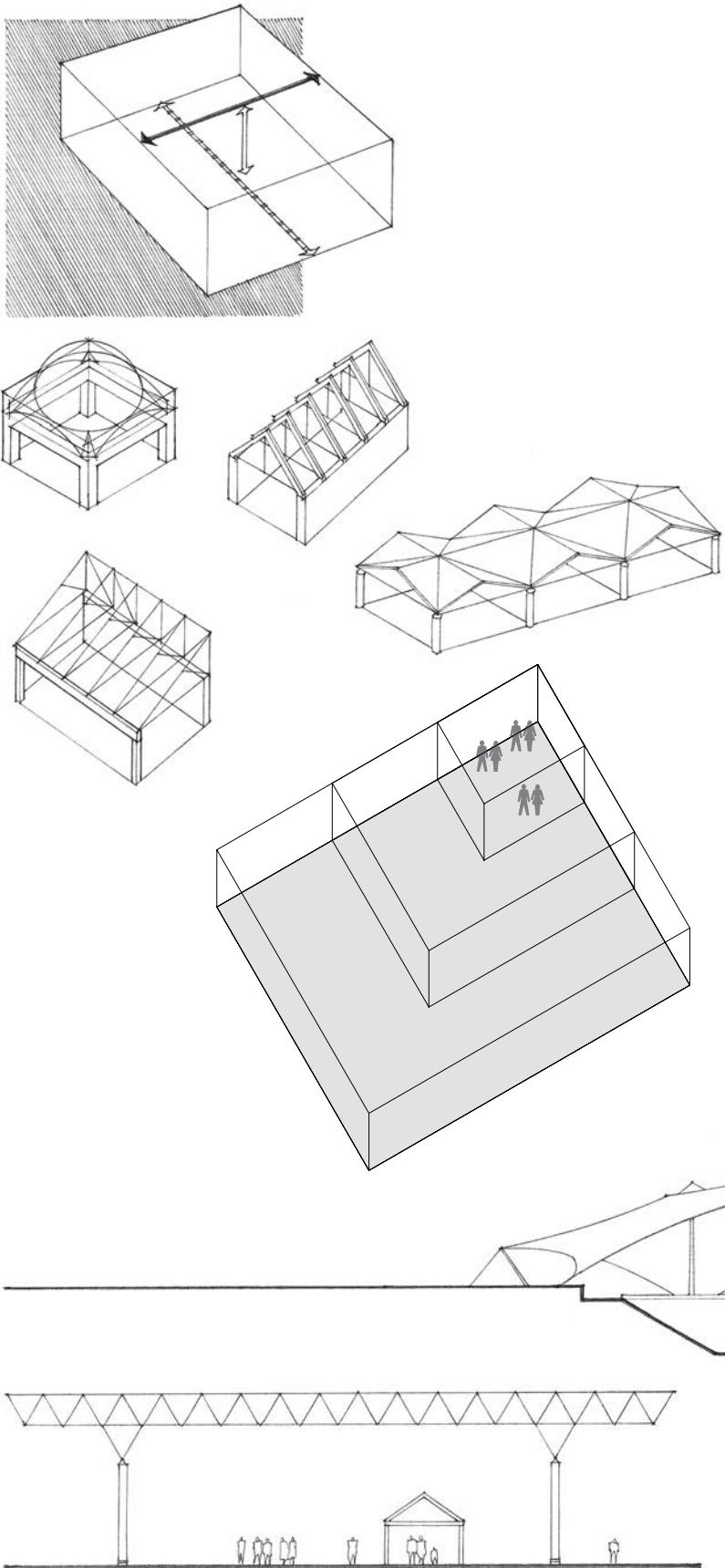
It is equally useful to see the alternating figure-ground dominance occurring as interior design elements, such as tables and chairs, are introduced and arranged within an interior space.

When a chair is placed in a room, it not only occupies space, it also creates a spatial relationship between itself and the surrounding enclosure. We should see more than the form of the chair. We should also recognize the form of the space surrounding the chair after it has filled some of the void.

As more elements are introduced into the pattern, the spatial relationships multiply. The elements begin to organize into sets or groups, each of which not only occupies space but also defines and articulates the spatial form.



SPATIAL DIMENSIONS



The dimensions of interior space, like spatial form, are directly related to the nature of a building's structural system—the strength of its materials and the size and spacing of its members. The dimensions of a space, in turn, determine a room's proportion and scale and influence the way it is used.

One horizontal dimension of space, its width, has traditionally been limited by the materials and techniques used to span it. Today, given the necessary economic resources, almost any architectural structure is technically possible. Wood or steel beams and concrete slabs can span up to 30 feet (9 m). Wood or steel trusses can span even farther, up to 100 feet (30 m) or more. Longer roof spans are possible with space frames and a variety of curved structures, such as domes, suspension systems, and membranes supported by air pressure.

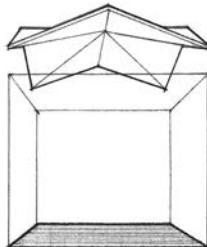
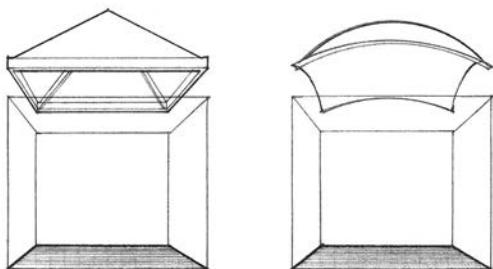
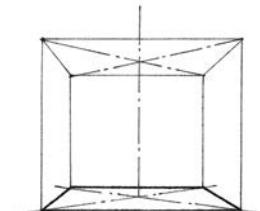
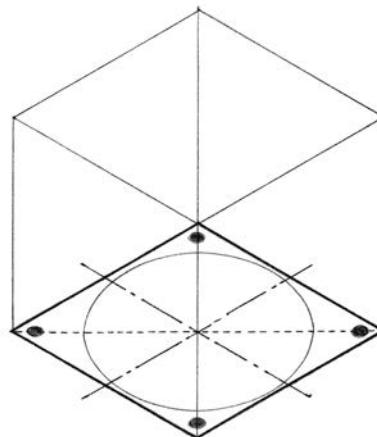
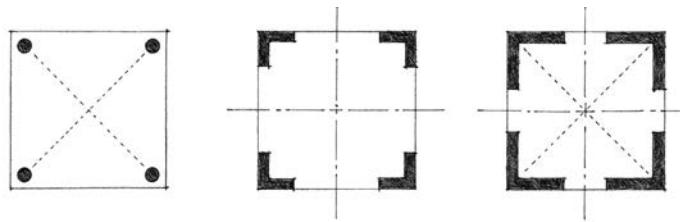
Within the bounds of structural necessity, the width of an interior space should be established by the requirements of those who use the space and their need to set boundaries for themselves and their activities.

Building designers have traditionally developed spatial relationships by sketching and model building. Computer-aided design (CAD) and building information management (BIM) software systems are changing the way that building designers work. These computer technologies allow designers to build interactive three-dimensional computer models of buildings, and to coordinate building systems as they design.

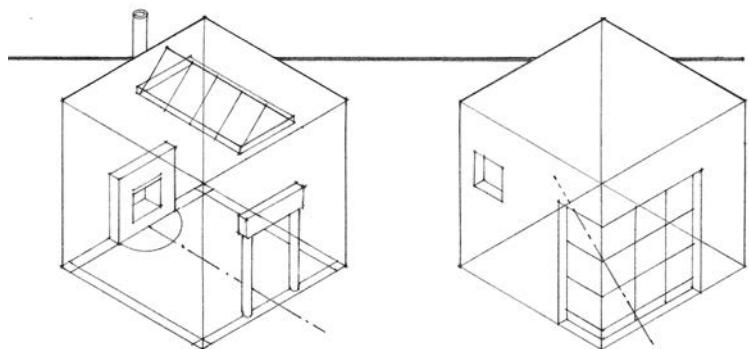
The other horizontal dimension of space, its length, is limited by desire and circumstance. Together with width, the length of a space determines the proportion of a room's plan shape.

A square room, where the length of the space equals its width, is static in quality and often formal in character. The equality of the four sides focuses our attention in on the room's center. This centrality can be enhanced or emphasized by covering the space with a pyramidal or dome structure.

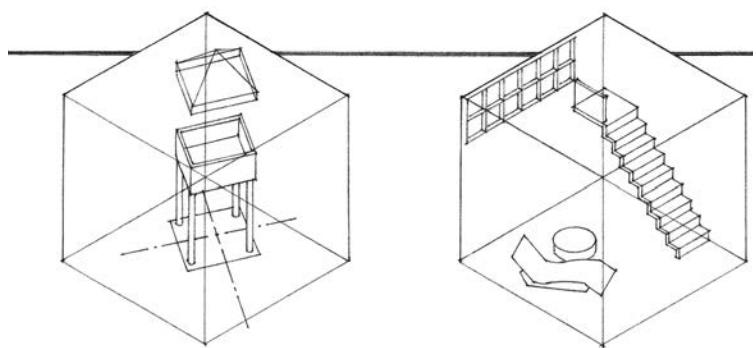
To deemphasize the centrality of a square room, the form of the ceiling can be made asymmetrical, or one or more of the wall planes can be treated differently from the others.



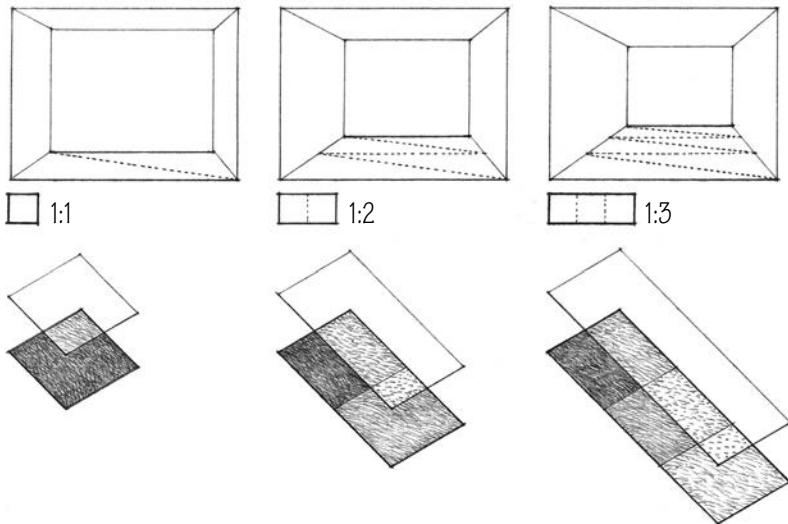
Pyramids, domes, and similar roof forms can emphasize the centrality of square spaces.



The placement of architectural elements, such as windows and stairways, can deemphasize the centrality of square spaces.



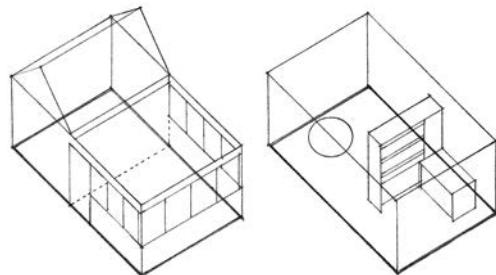
RECTANGULAR SPACES



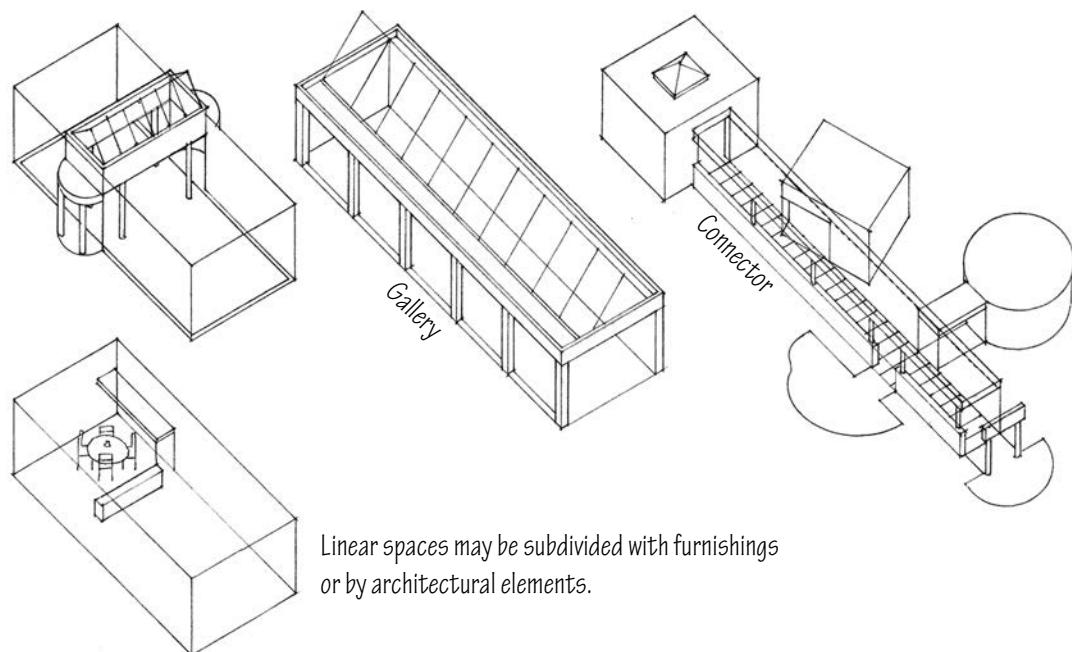
Square rooms are rare and distinctive. More often, a room will have a length greater than its width. A rectangular space, normally spanned across its width, is eminently flexible. Its character and usefulness are determined not only by its proportion of width to length, but also by the configuration of its ceiling, the pattern of its windows and doorways, and its relationship to adjacent spaces.

When the length of a space is greater than twice its width, it tends to dominate and control the room's layout and use. Given sufficient width, the space can be divided into a number of separate but related areas.

A space whose length greatly exceeds its width encourages movement along its long dimension. This characteristic of linear spaces makes them suitable for use as gallery spaces or as connectors of other spaces.

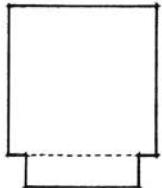


Horizontal dimensions alone do not determine the ultimate qualities and usefulness of a space. They only suggest opportunities for development.

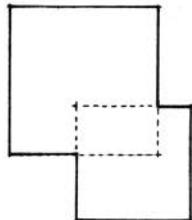


Linear spaces may be subdivided with furnishings or by architectural elements.

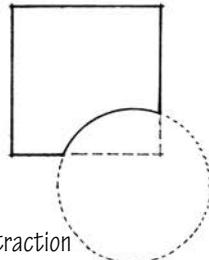
Both square and rectangular spaces can be altered by addition or subtraction, or by merging with adjacent spaces. These modifications can be used to create an alcove space or to reflect an adjoining element or site feature.



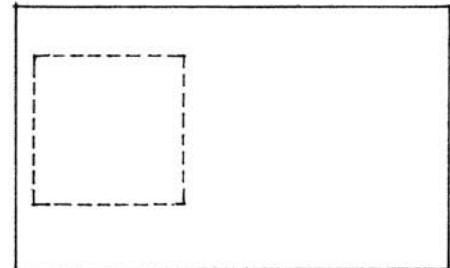
Extension



Addition

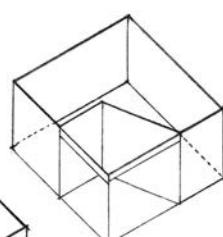
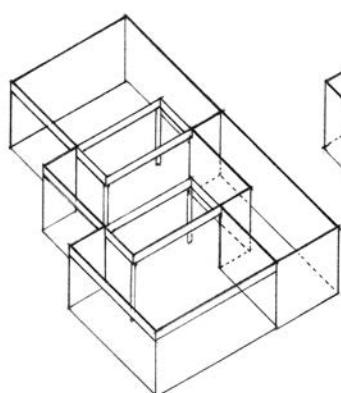
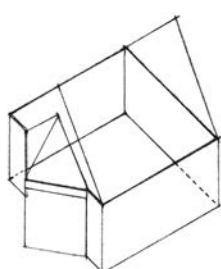
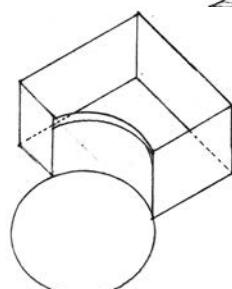
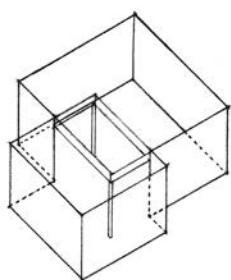
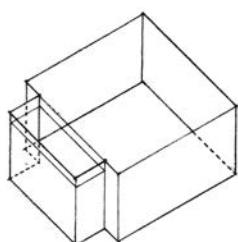
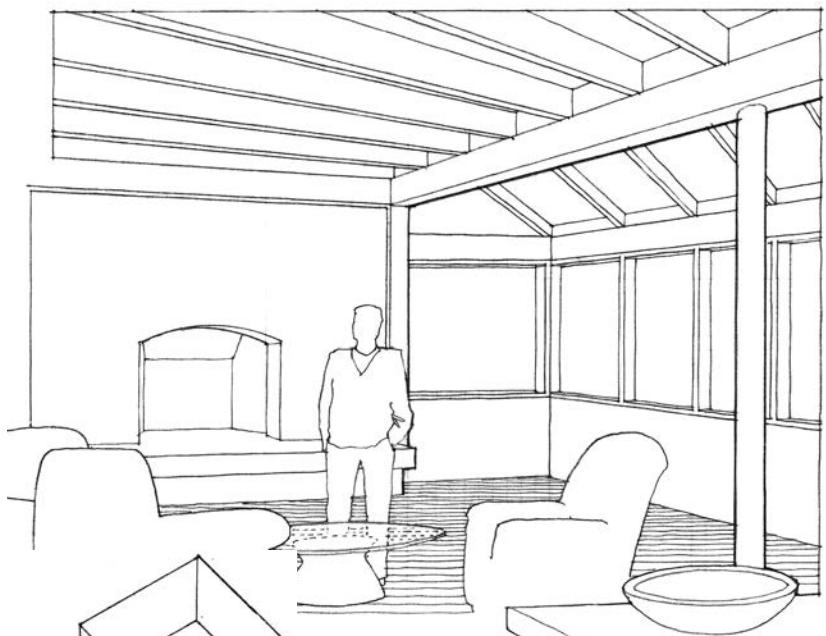


Subtraction

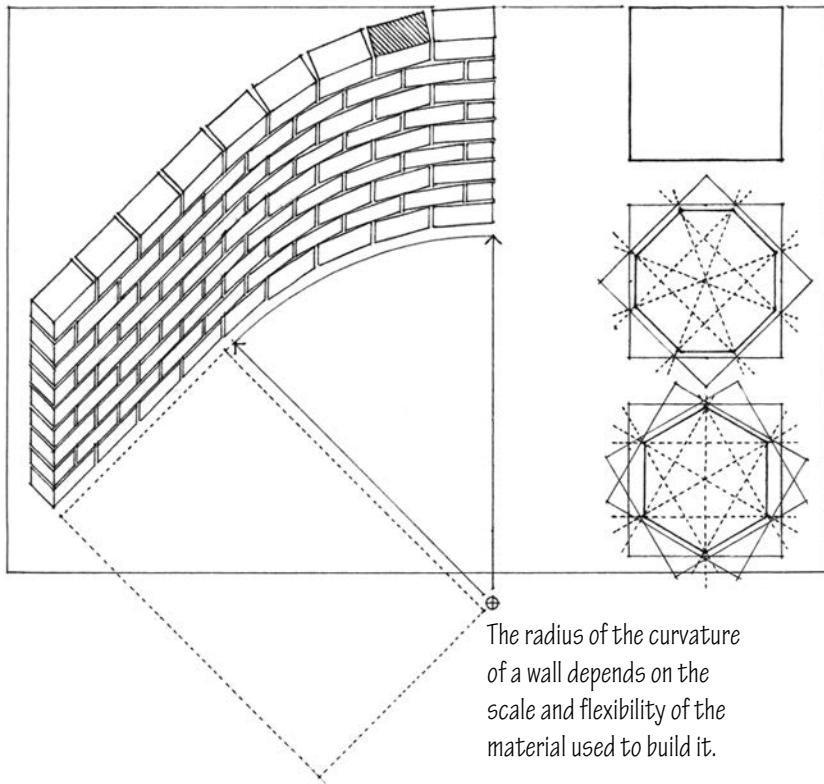


Merging

Altering Space



CURVILINEAR SPACES

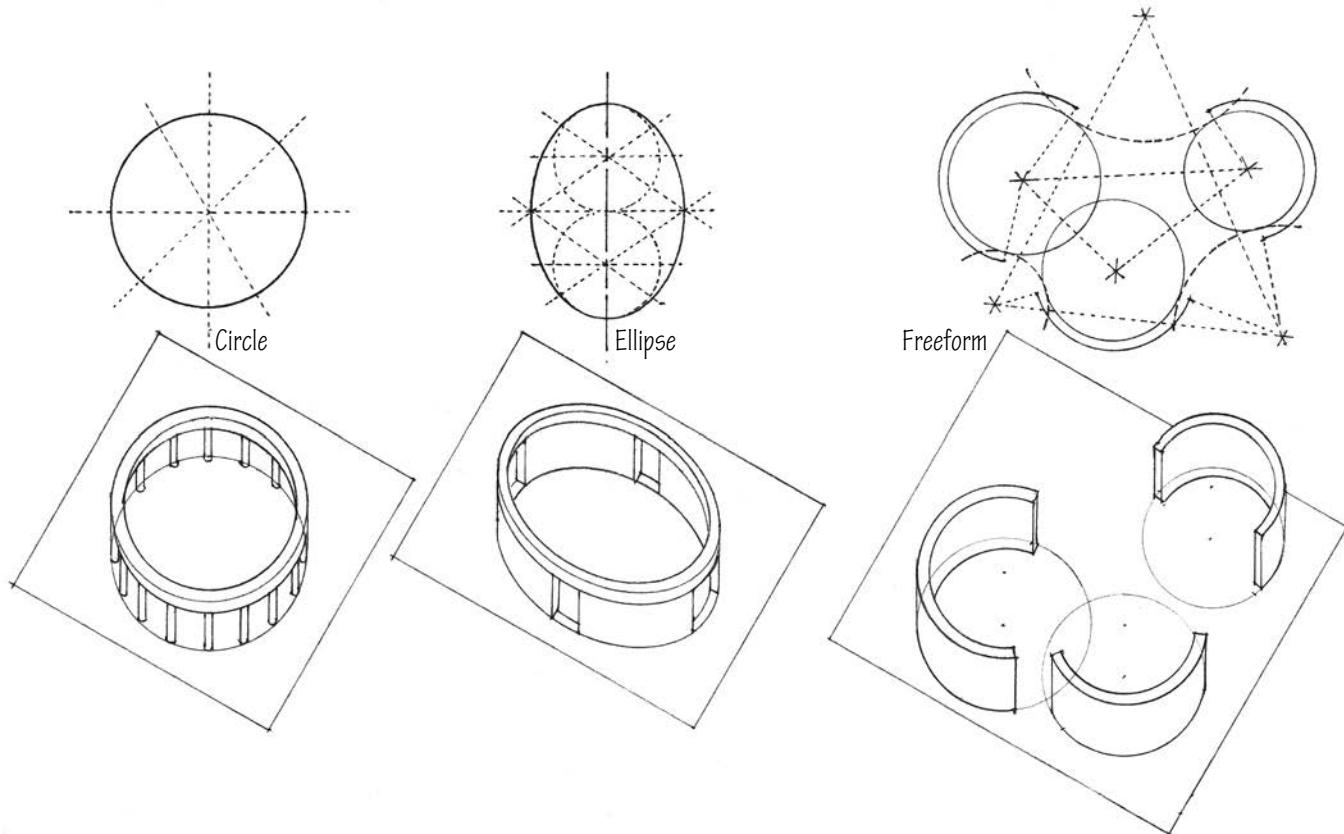


The nature of building materials and the techniques used to assemble them have established rectangular spaces as the norm. Curvilinear spaces are exceptional and usually reserved for special circumstances.

The simplest curvilinear space is a circular one. It is compact and self-centering. Although it creates a focus on its center, a circular space also relates to the surrounding space equally in all directions. It has no front, back, or sides, unless these are defined by other elements.

An elliptical space is more dynamic, having two centers and unequal axes.

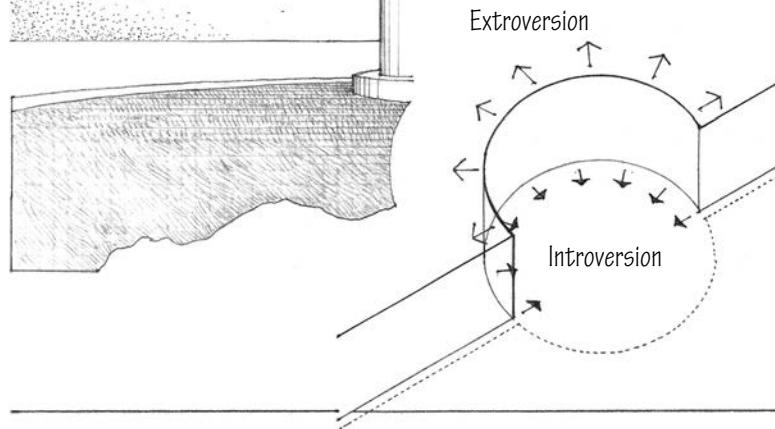
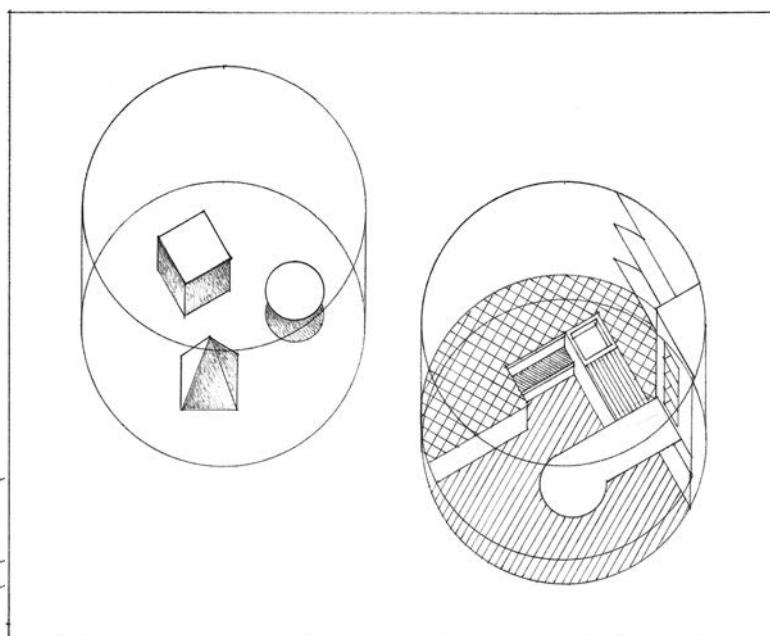
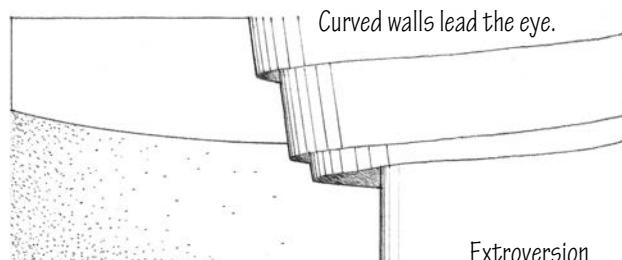
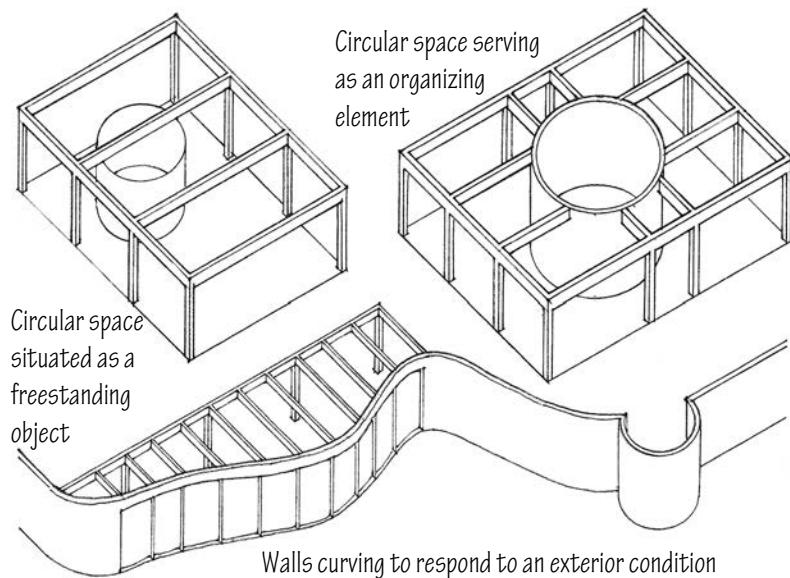
Other curvilinear spaces can be seen as transformations of circular or elliptical spaces that have been combined in an overlapping manner. The use of three-dimensional computer modeling is increasing the ease of designing complex curves.



Within a rectilinear context, a curvilinear space is highly visible. Its contrasting geometry can be used to express the importance or uniqueness of its function. It can define a freestanding volume within a larger space. It can serve as a central space about which other rooms are gathered. It can articulate the edge of a space and reflect an exterior condition of the building site.

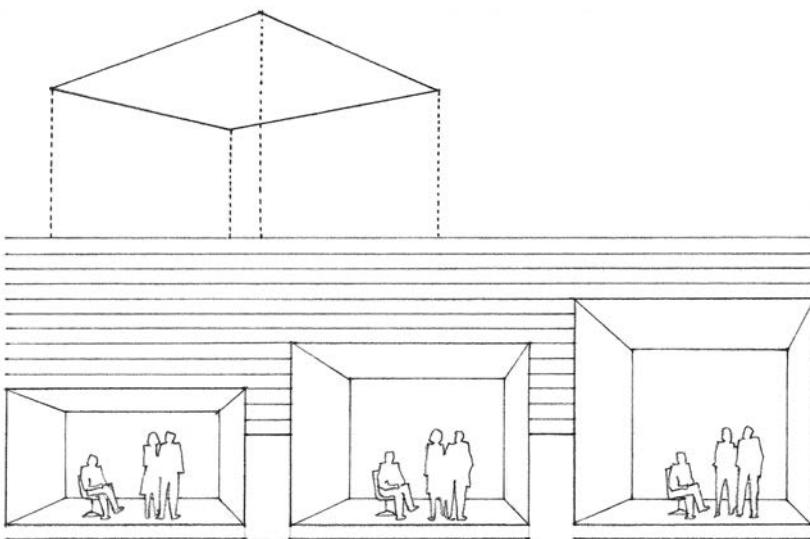
Curved walls are dynamic and visually active, leading our eyes along their curvature. The concave aspect of a curved wall encloses and focuses space inward, while its convex aspect pushes space outward.

An important consideration when we are dealing with a curvilinear space is the integration of furniture and other interior elements into its volume. One way of resolving conflicting geometries is to arrange interior forms as freestanding objects within the curvilinear space. Another is to integrate the form of built-in furniture and fixtures with the curved boundaries of the space.



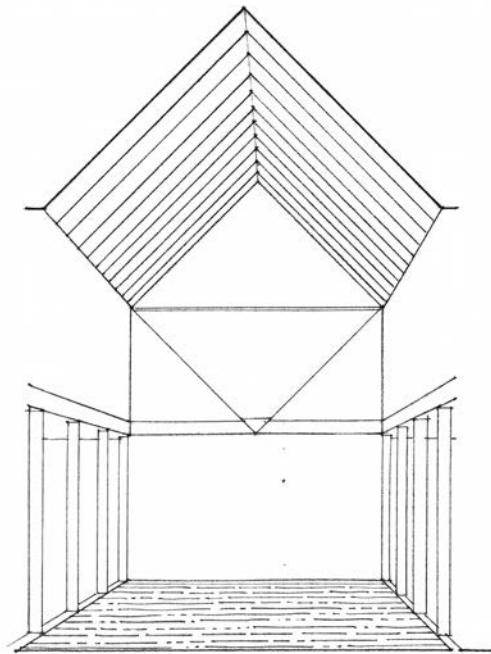
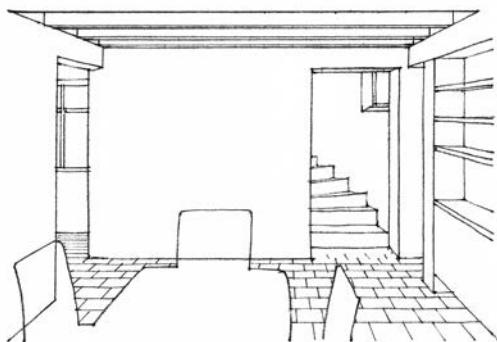
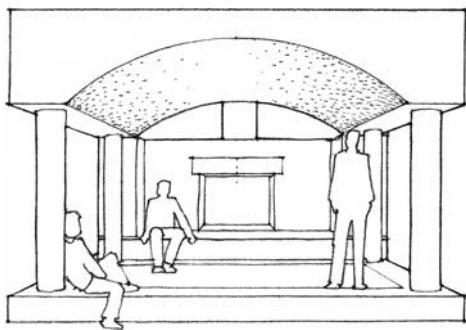
Furnishings may be placed as freestanding objects within a curvilinear space or be integrated within the curved forms.

THE VERTICAL DIMENSION OF SPACE



The third dimension of interior space, its height, is established by the ceiling plane. This vertical dimension is as influential as the horizontal dimensions of a space in forming the spatial quality of a room.

While our perception of a room's horizontal dimensions is often distorted by the foreshortening of perspective, we can more accurately sense the relationship between the height of a space and our own body height. A measurable change in the height of a ceiling seems to have a greater effect on our impression of a space than a similar change in its width or length.

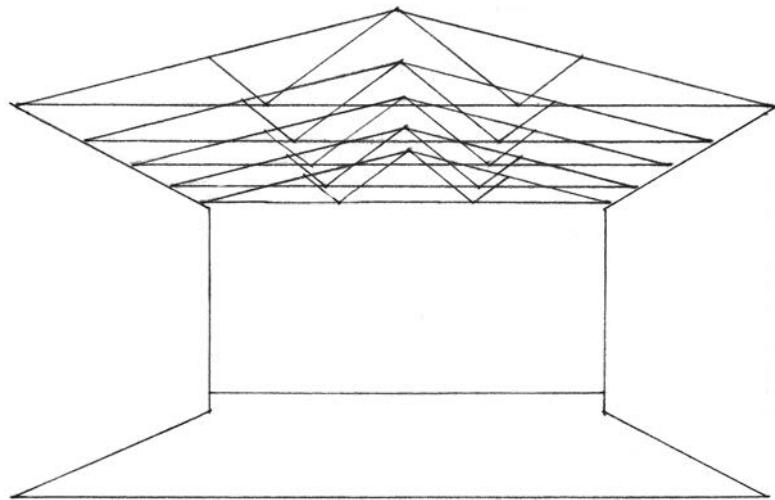


Varying the ceiling height can have a powerful effect on the perceived scale of a space.

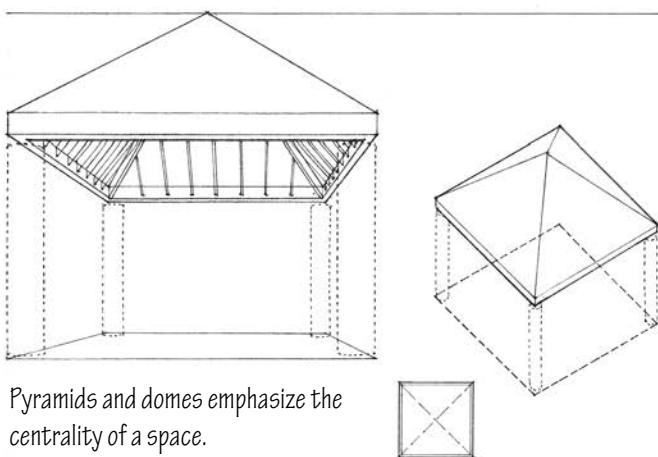
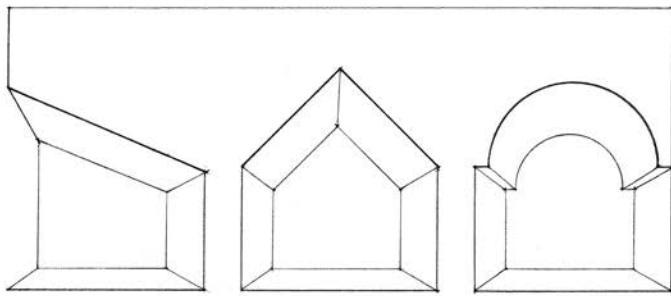
High ceilings are often associated with feelings of loftiness or grandeur. Low ceilings may connote cavelike coziness and intimacy. However, our perception of the scale of a space is affected not by the height of the ceiling alone, but by its relationship to the width and length of the space as well.

A ceiling defined by the floor plane of the room above it is typically flat. A ceiling created by a roof structure can reflect its form and the manner in which it spans the space. *Shed, gable, and vaulted ceiling forms give direction to space, while domed and pyramidal ceilings emphasize the center of a space.*

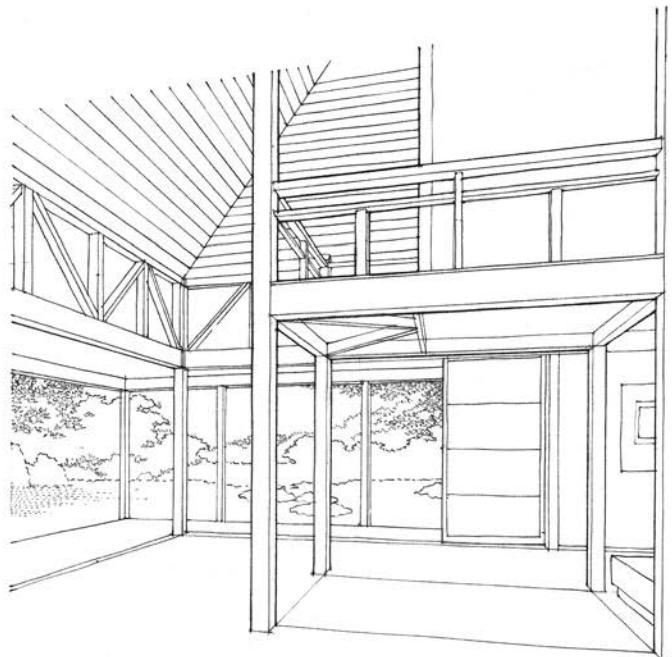
Lowering part of a ceiling can foster intimacy, modify acoustics, or add visual texture. Interior soffits, canopies, and clouds can be used to partially lower a ceiling at its perimeter, or over areas of interest.



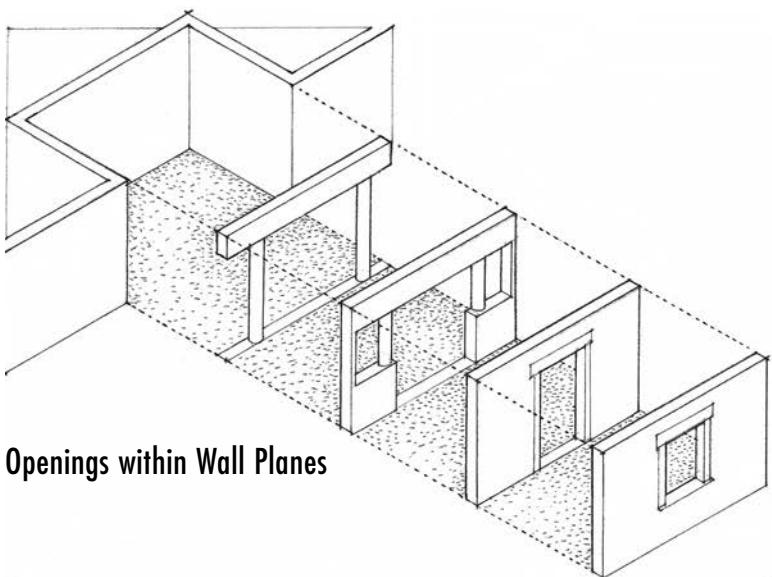
The roof structure can sometimes be left exposed, giving texture, pattern, and depth to the ceiling plane.



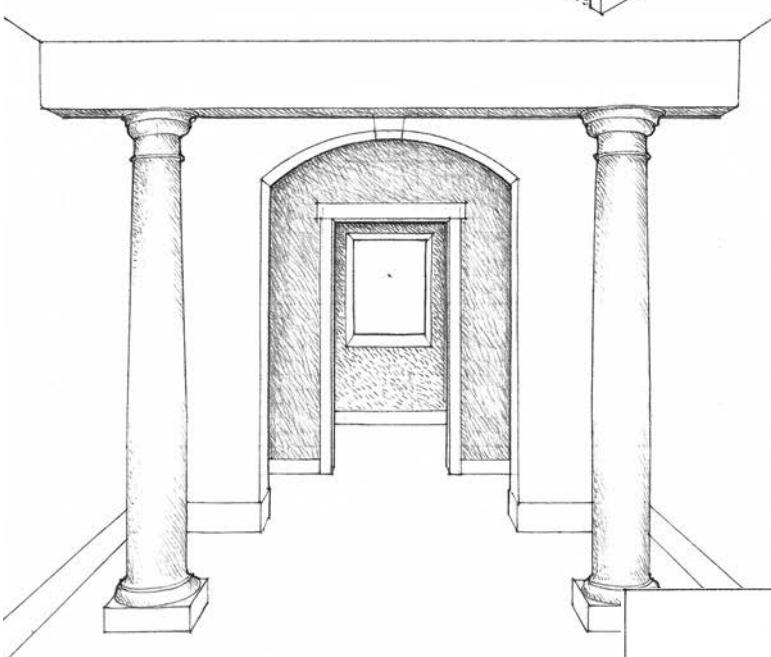
Pyramids and domes emphasize the centrality of a space.



SPATIAL TRANSITIONS

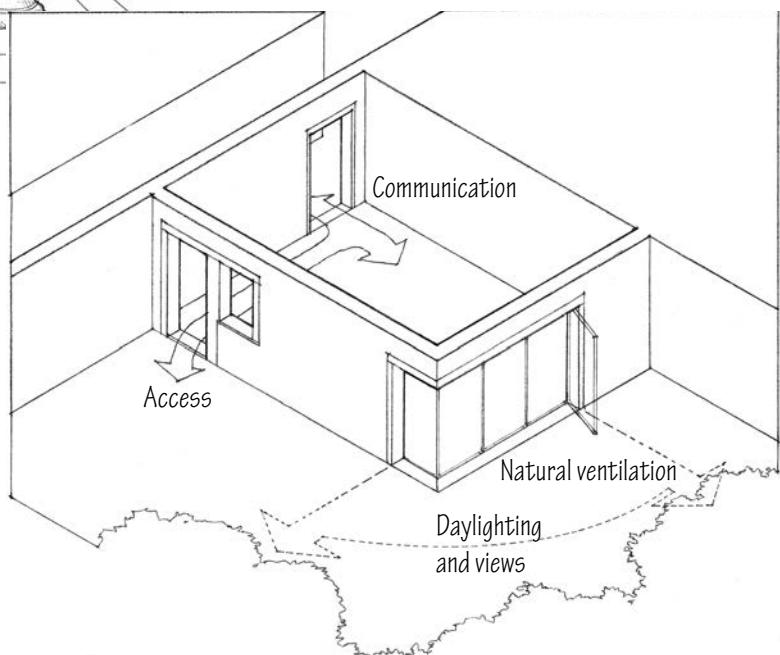


Openings within Wall Planes



Although individual spaces may be designed and formed for a certain purpose or to house certain activities, they are gathered together within a building's enclosure because they are functionally related to one another, are used by a common group of people, or share a common purpose. How interior spaces are related to one another is determined not only by their relative position in a building's spatial pattern, but also by the nature of the spaces that connect them and the boundaries they have in common.

Floor, wall, and ceiling planes serve to define and isolate a portion of space. Of these, the wall plane, being perpendicular to our normal line of sight, has the greatest effect as a spatial boundary. It limits our visual field and serves as a barrier to our movement. Openings created within the wall plane for windows and doorways reestablish contact with the surrounding spaces from which the room was originally cut.

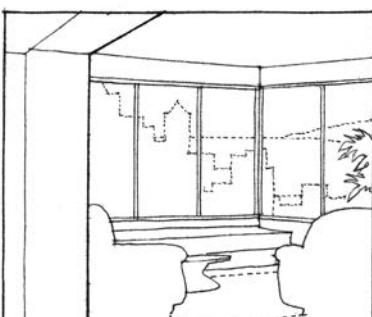
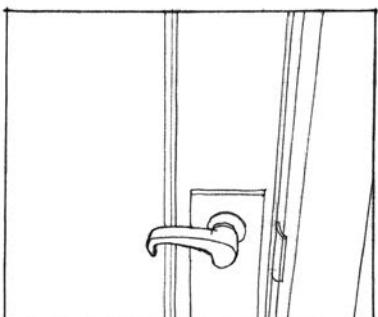
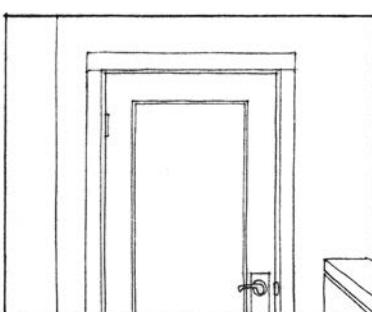
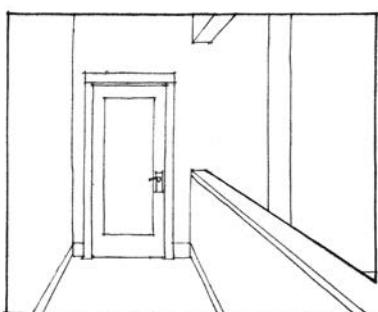
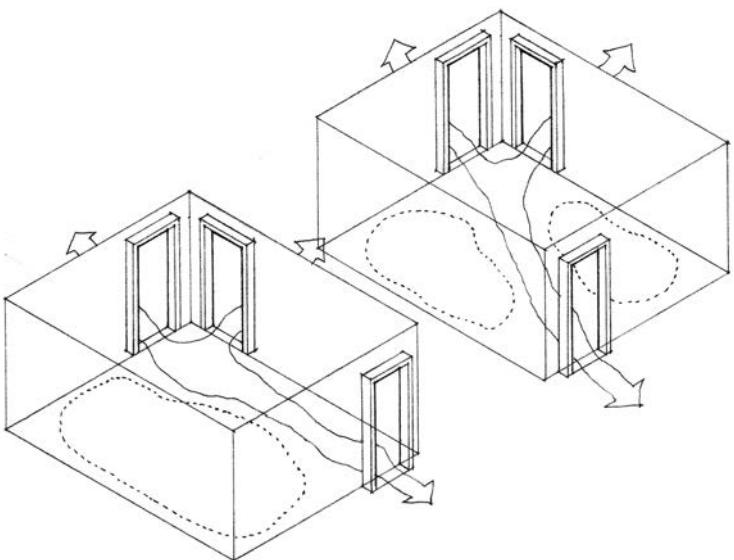
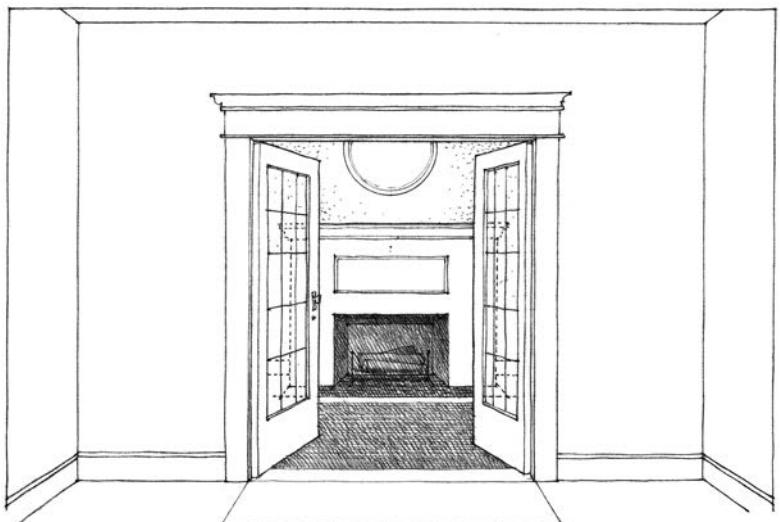


Doorways provide physical access from one space to another. When closed, they shut a room off from adjacent spaces. When open, they establish visual, spatial, and acoustical links between spaces. Large open doorways erode the integrity of a room's enclosure and strengthen its connection with adjacent spaces or the outdoors.

The thickness of the wall separating two spaces is exposed at a doorway. This depth determines the degree of separation we sense as we pass through the doorway from one space to another. The scale and treatment of the doorway itself can also provide visual clues to the nature of the space being entered.

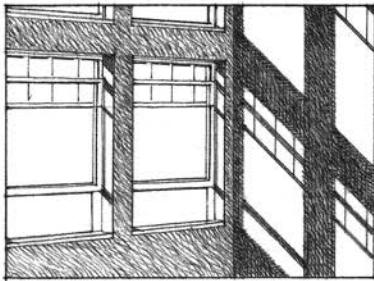
The number and location of doorways along a room's perimeter affect our pattern of movement within the space, and the ways we may arrange its furnishings and organize our activities.

The widths of door openings affect the ease of movement for people and furnishings. A 36-inch (914-mm) wide doorway is reduced to about 32 inches (813 mm) when the thickness of the open door and that of its hardware are taken into consideration. Clear openings of less than 32 inches (813 mm) become barriers to standard wheelchairs, affecting accessibility, visibility, and aging-in-place.

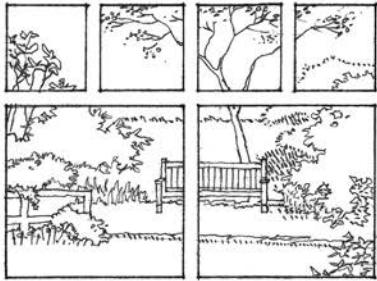


Doorway locations affect our patterns of movement and activities within a room.

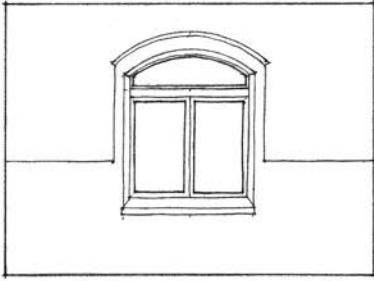
WINDOWS



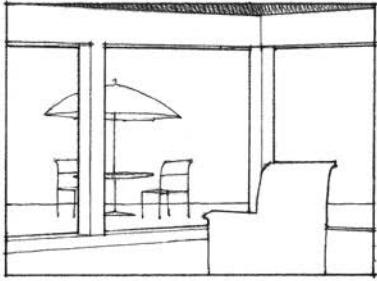
Daylighting



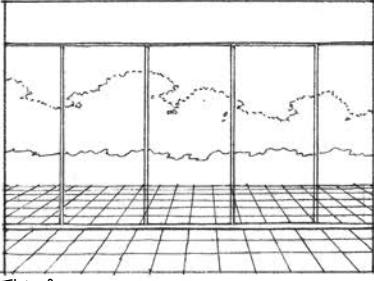
Framing views



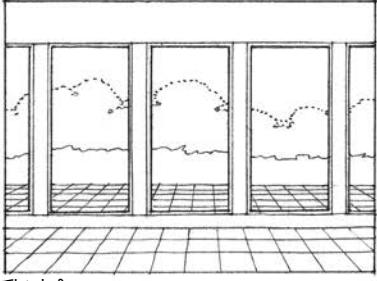
Degree of enclosure



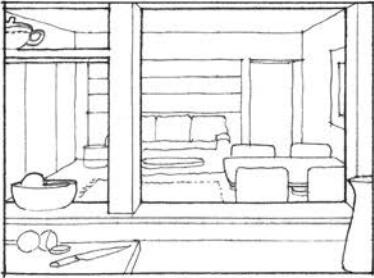
...or transparency



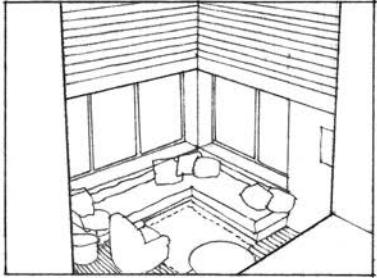
Thin frame



Thick frame



Interior windows

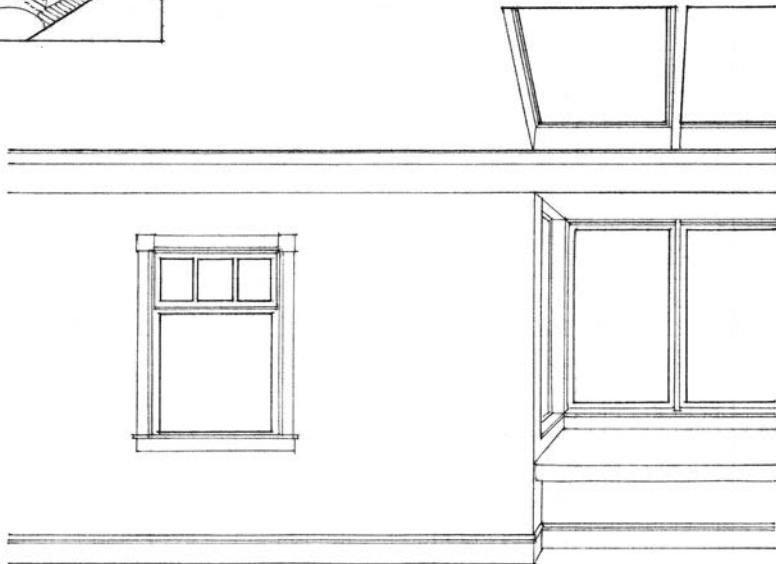


...Connecting spaces

Windows let light and air into the interior spaces of buildings and provide views of the outdoors, or from one space to another. Their size and placement, relative to the wall plane in which they occur, also affect the degree of separation between an interior space and the exterior environment. Views to the outside and *natural ventilation* are important elements in sustainable design.

Windows framed within a wall plane attract our attention with their brightness and outlook but maintain the enclosure provided by the wall. Large windows and glass walls attempt, at least visually, to merge indoor and outdoor space. The visual treatment of the window frames in each case can either emphasize or minimize the perceived limits of interior space.

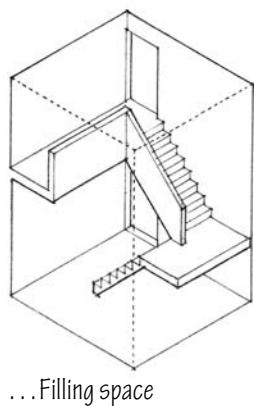
Interior windows can, in a similar manner, visually expand a room beyond its physical boundaries and allow it to become an integral part of the surrounding interior space.



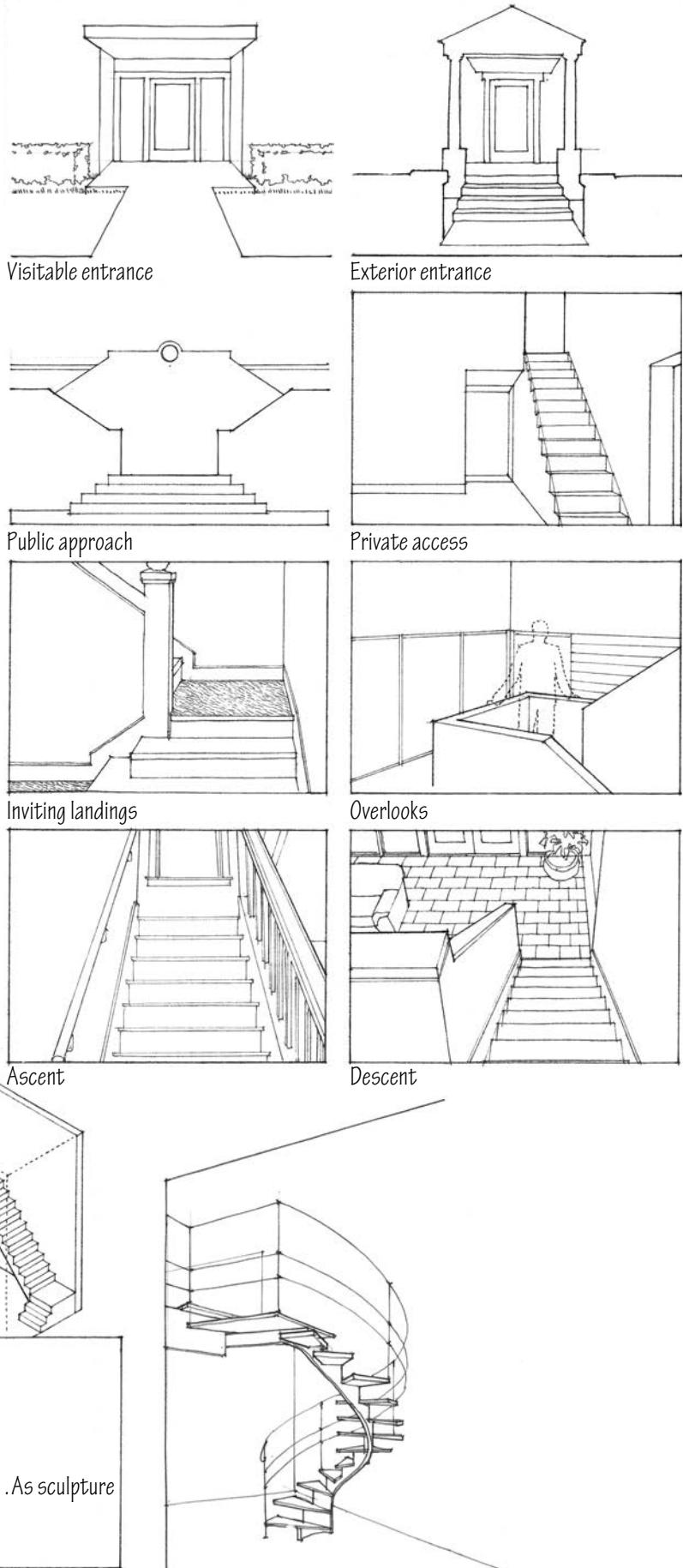
Stairways are also important forms of spatial transitions between rooms. An exterior set of steps leading to a building's entrance can serve to separate private domain from public passage and enhance the act of entry into a transitional space such as a porch or terrace. Entrances without steps support visibility and aging-in-place.

Interior stairways connect the various levels of a building. The manner in which they perform this function shapes our movement in space—how we approach a stairway, the pace and style of our ascent and descent, and what we have an opportunity to do along the way. Wide, shallow steps can serve as an invitation, while a narrow, steep stairway may lead to more private places. Landings that interrupt a flight of steps can allow a stairway to change direction and give us room for pause, rest, and outlook.

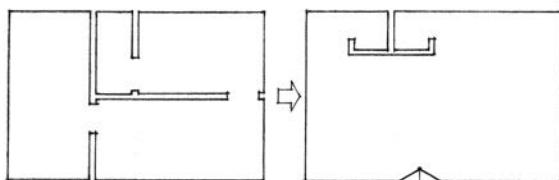
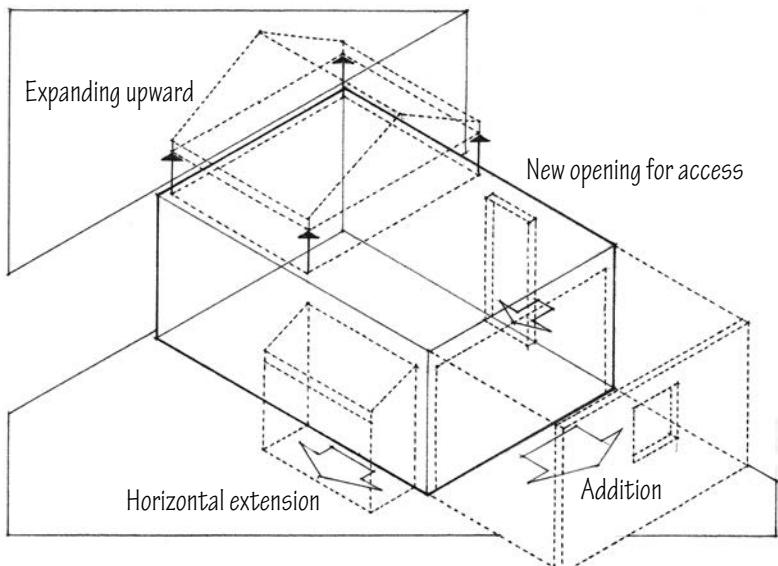
The space a stairway occupies can be considerable, but its form can be fit into an interior in several ways. It can fill and provide a focus for a space, run along one of its edges, or wrap around a room. It can be woven into the boundaries of a space or be extended into a series of terraces.



Stairways

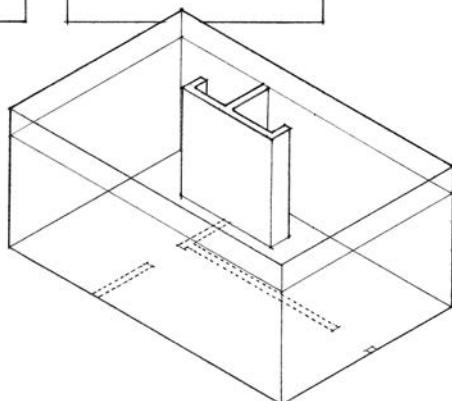


MODIFYING SPACE



Rearranging Space

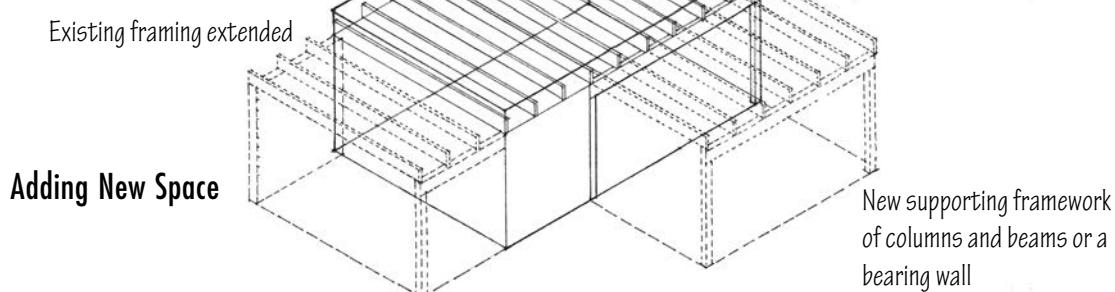
Reconfiguring an existing space requires removing walls and constructing new ones.



The architectural planning and design for a new building take into account the nature of the activities to be housed; the spatial requirements for form, scale, and light; and the desired relationships among the various interior spaces. When an existing building is to be used for activities other than those for which it was originally intended, however, activity requirements must be matched with the existing conditions. Where a misfit occurs, a modification of the existing spaces may be required.

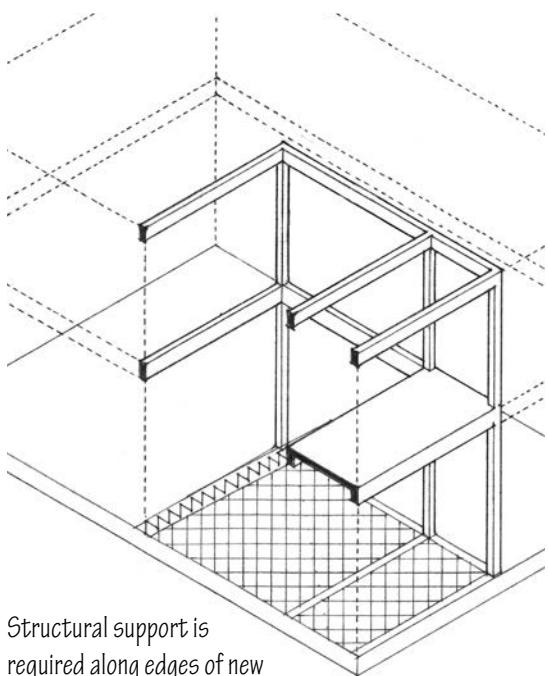
Two major types of alteration can be considered. The first involves structural changes in the boundaries of interior space and is more permanent in nature than the second. The second type of alteration involves nonstructural modifications and enhancement accomplished through interior design.

A structural change may involve removing or adding walls to alter the shape and rearrange the pattern of existing spaces, or to add on new space. When making such alterations, it is extremely important to understand the distinction between load-bearing walls and non-load-bearing partitions. It is, therefore, always advisable to consult a professional engineer or architect when making structural changes to a space.

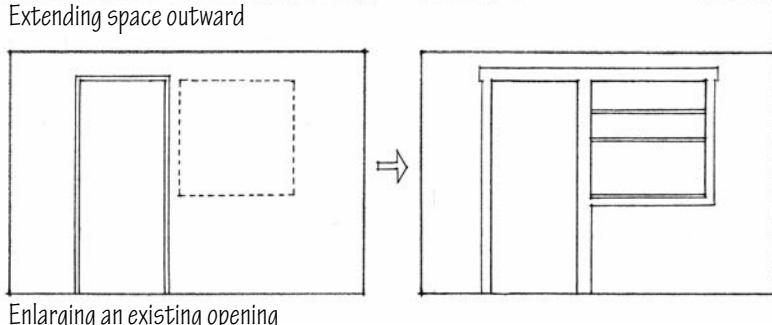
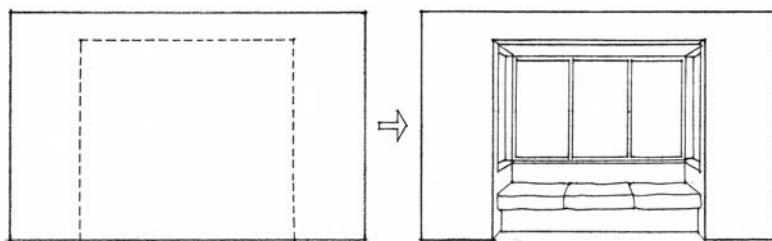


Within the boundaries of a space, the existing pattern of openings can also be altered. Windows may be enlarged or added for better daylighting or to take advantage of a view. A doorway may be moved or added for better access to a room space or to improve the movement paths within the space. A large doorway may be created to merge two adjacent spaces. Any new or enlarged opening in a load-bearing wall requires a lintel or header sized to carry the wall load above the opening.

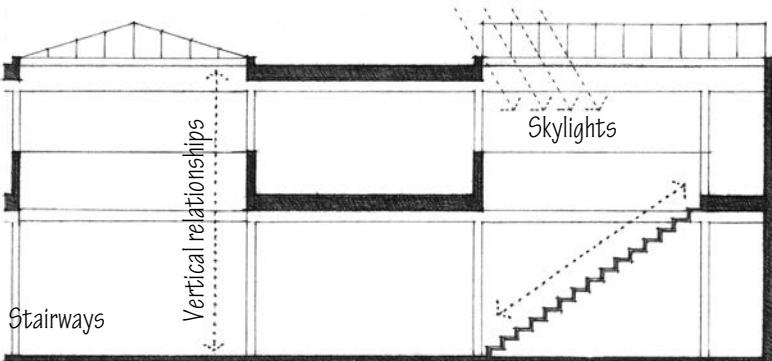
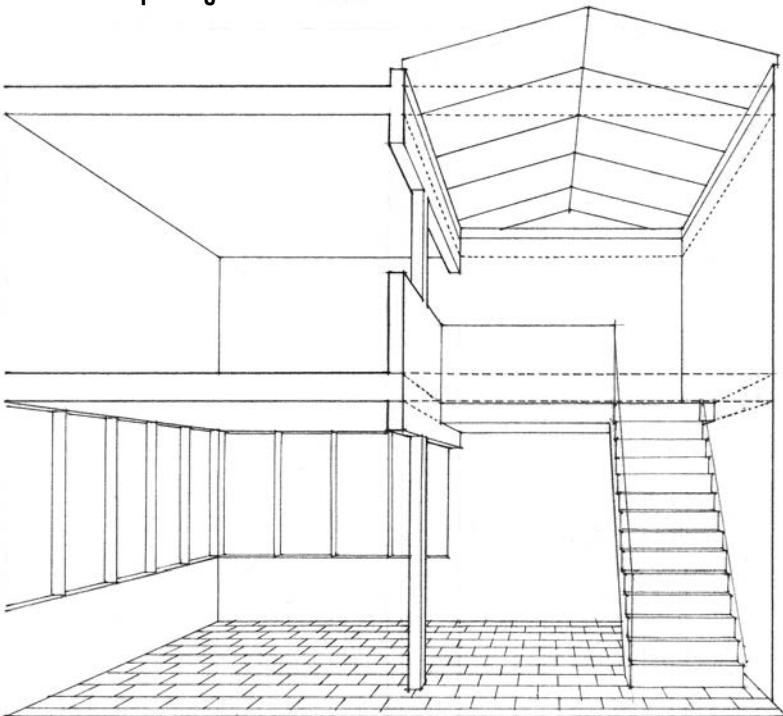
To add a stairway, daylight a space with skylights, or create a vertical relationship between two levels of space, structural changes in the floor or ceiling plane may be required. Alterations in these horizontal structures of a building may require that the edges of any new openings be reinforced and supported by a system of beams, columns, posts, or bearing walls.



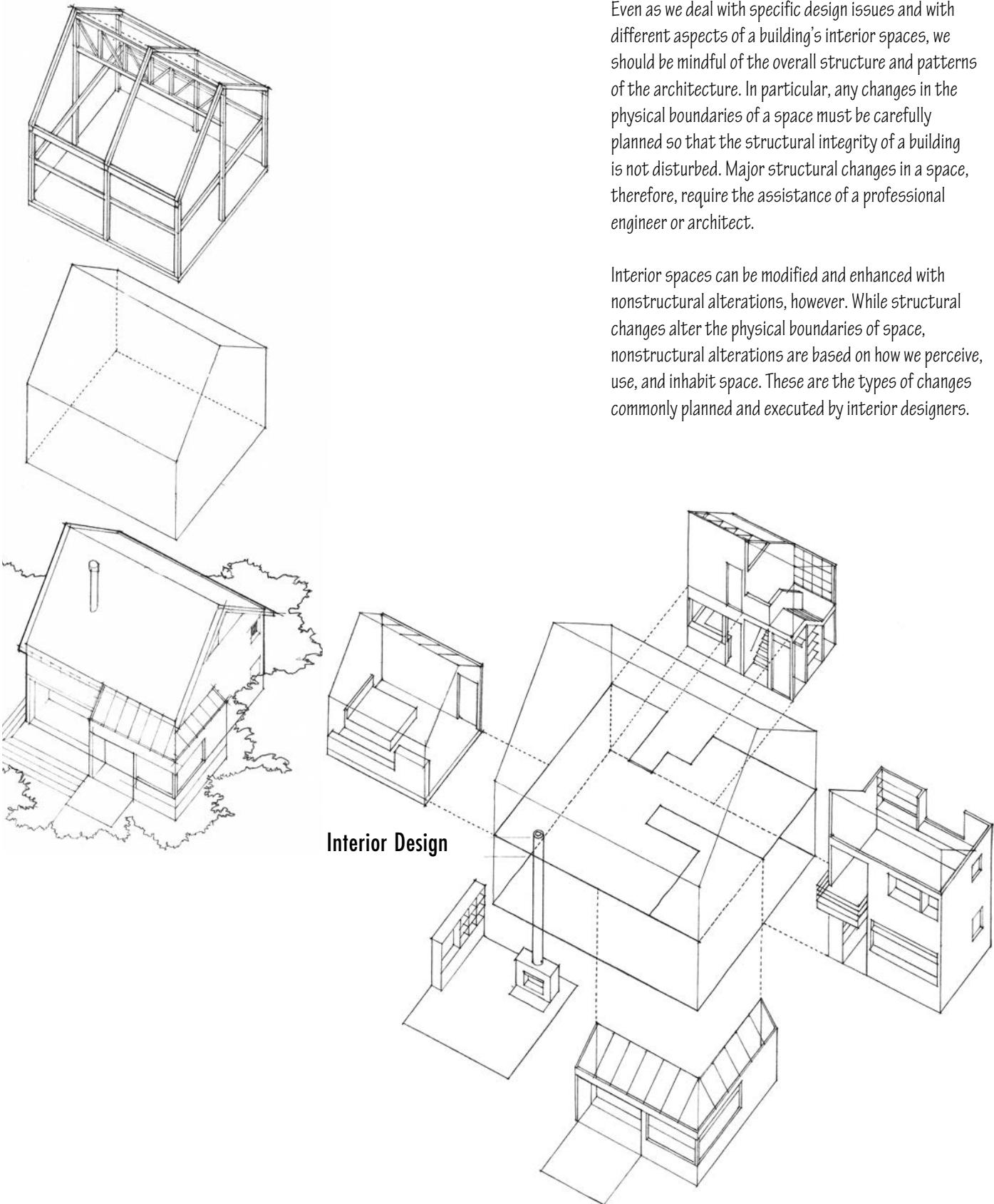
Vertical Expansion



New Wall Openings

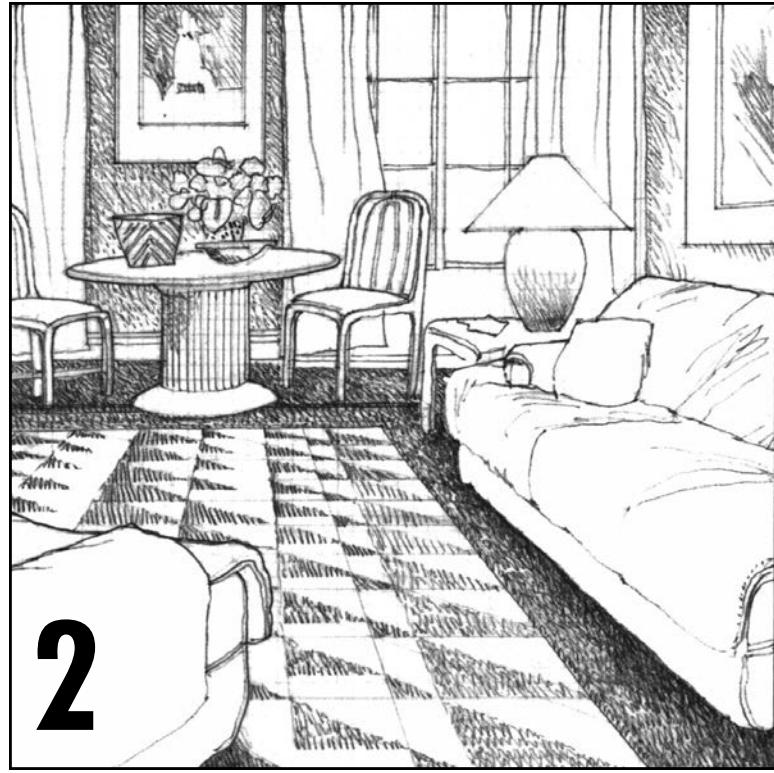


INTERIOR DESIGN



Even as we deal with specific design issues and with different aspects of a building's interior spaces, we should be mindful of the overall structure and patterns of the architecture. In particular, any changes in the physical boundaries of a space must be carefully planned so that the structural integrity of a building is not disturbed. Major structural changes in a space, therefore, require the assistance of a professional engineer or architect.

Interior spaces can be modified and enhanced with nonstructural alterations, however. While structural changes alter the physical boundaries of space, nonstructural alterations are based on how we perceive, use, and inhabit space. These are the types of changes commonly planned and executed by interior designers.



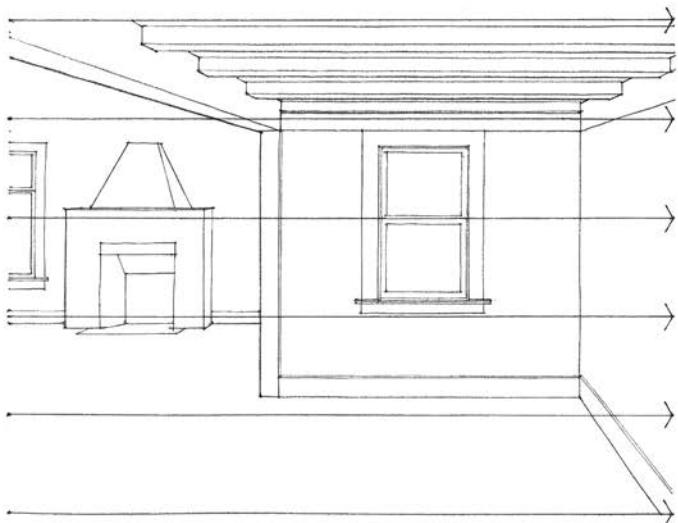
2

Interior Design

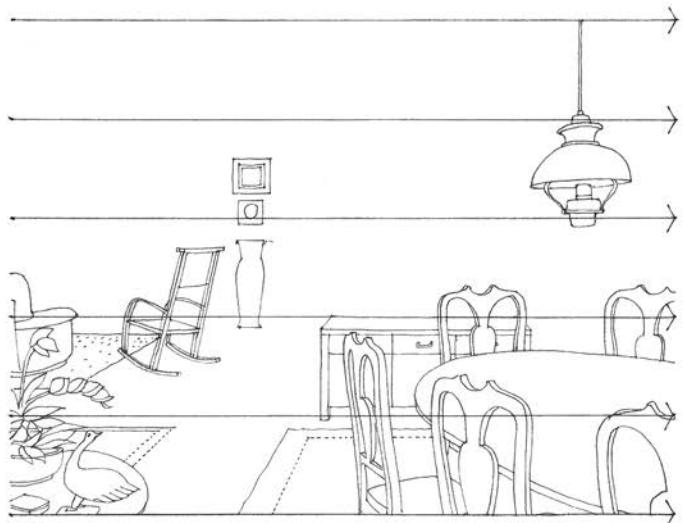
Interior design is the planning, layout, and design of the interior spaces within buildings. These physical settings satisfy our basic need for shelter and protection, set the stage for and influence the shape of our activities, nurture our aspirations, express the ideas that accompany our actions, and affect our outlook, mood, and personality. The purpose of interior design, therefore, is the functional improvement, aesthetic enrichment, and psychological enhancement of the quality of life in interior spaces.

The Planning, Layout, and Design

of the Parts

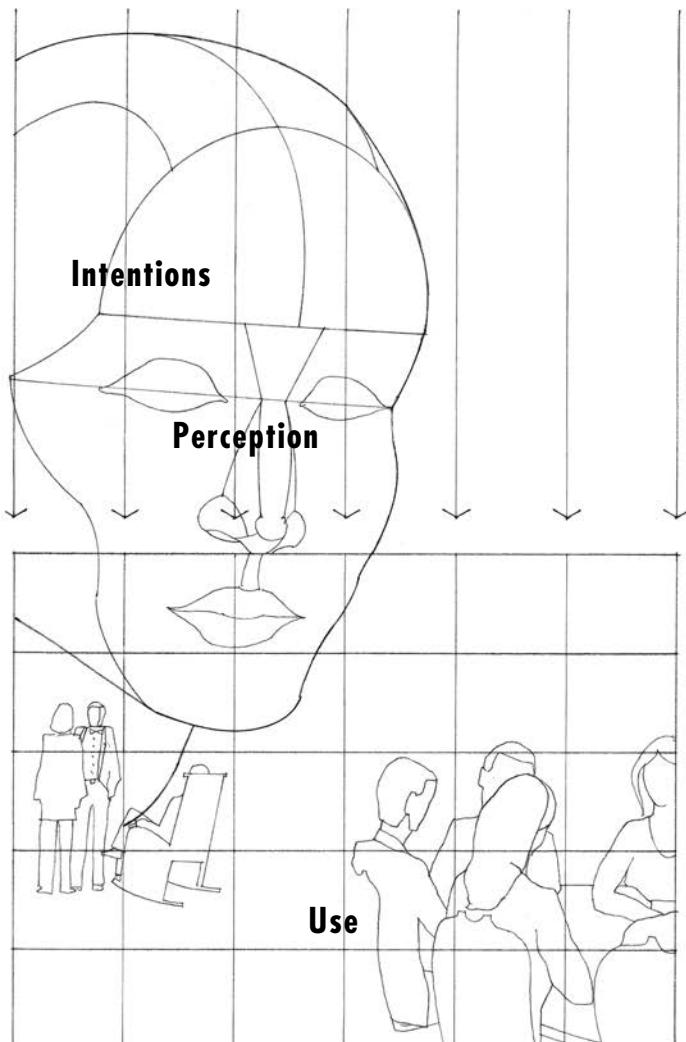


The Architectural Context



Interior Elements

The purpose of any design is to organize its parts into a coherent whole in order to achieve certain goals. In interior design, selected elements are arranged into three-dimensional patterns according to functional, aesthetic, and behavioral guidelines. The relationships among the elements established by these patterns ultimately determine the visual qualities and functional fitness of an interior space and influence how we perceive and use it.

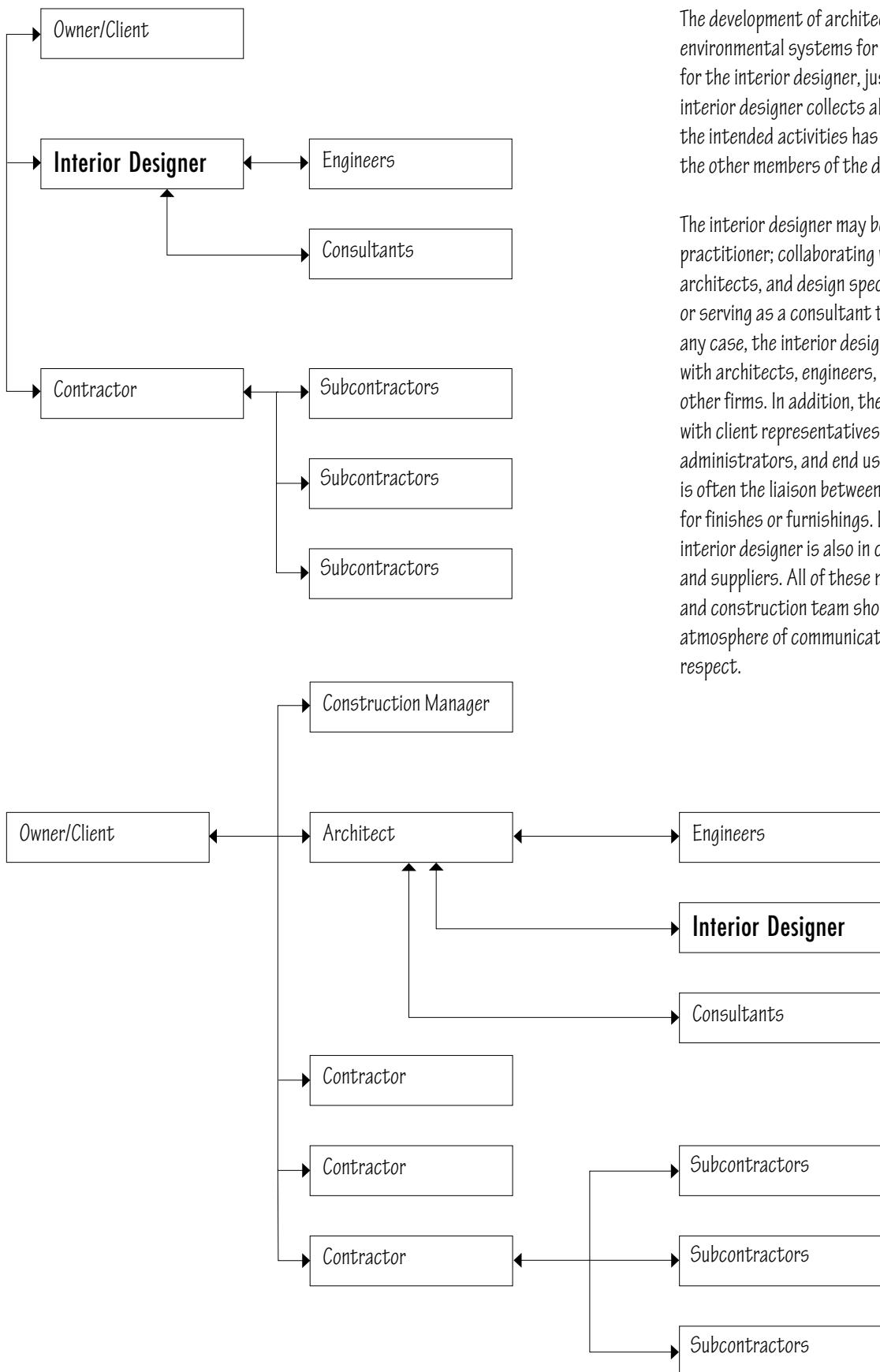


into a Whole



The Interior Environment

THE DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION TEAM



The development of architectural forms and environmental systems for any building has implications for the interior designer, just as the information the interior designer collects about the client, the space, and the intended activities has implications for the work of the other members of the design team.

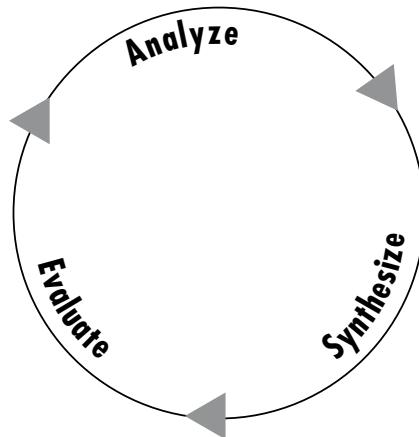
The interior designer may be working as a sole practitioner; collaborating with other designers, architects, and design specialists in a larger design firm; or serving as a consultant to an architectural firm. In any case, the interior designer is likely to have contact with architects, engineers, and other consultants in other firms. In addition, the interior designer will work with client representatives, including facilities managers, administrators, and end users. The interior designer is often the liaison between the client and the sources for finishes or furnishings. During construction, the interior designer is also in contact with contractors and suppliers. All of these members of the design and construction team should strive to maintain an atmosphere of communication, cooperation, and mutual respect.

We determine which elements to use and how to arrange them into patterns through the process of design.

Although presented as a linear series of steps, the design process is more often a cyclical, iterative one in which a sequence of careful analysis, synthesis, and evaluation of available information, insights, and possible solutions is repeated until a successful fit between what exists and what is desired is achieved.

Steps in the Design Process

- Define Problem
- Formulate Program
- Develop Concept
- Assess Alternatives
- Make Design Decisions
- Develop and Refine Design
- Implement Design
- Reevaluate Completed Design

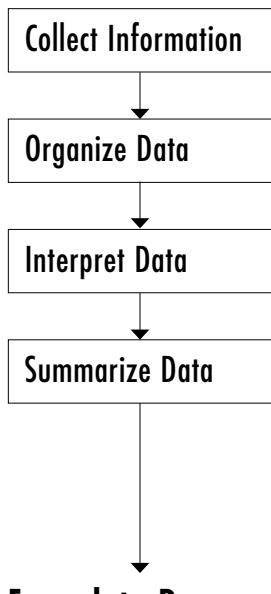


The design problem is first defined. The ability to define and understand the nature of the design problem is an essential part of the solution. This definition should specify how the design solution should perform and what goals and objectives will be met.

Define Problem

- [] Identify client needs.
 - Who, what, when, where, how, why?
- [] Set preliminary goals.
 - Functional requirements
 - Aesthetic image and style
 - Psychological stimulus and meaning

ANALYSIS



An analysis of the problem requires that it be broken down into parts, that issues be clarified, and that values be assigned to the various aspects of the problem.

Analysis also involves gathering relevant information that would help us to understand the nature of the problem and develop appropriate responses. From the outset, it is worthwhile to know the limitations that will help shape the design solution. Any givens—what can change and what cannot be altered—should be determined. Any financial, legal, or technical constraints that will impinge on the design solution should be noted.

Through the design process, a clearer understanding of the problem should emerge. New information may develop that could alter our perception of the problem and its solution. The analysis of a problem, therefore, often continues throughout the design process.

[] What exists?

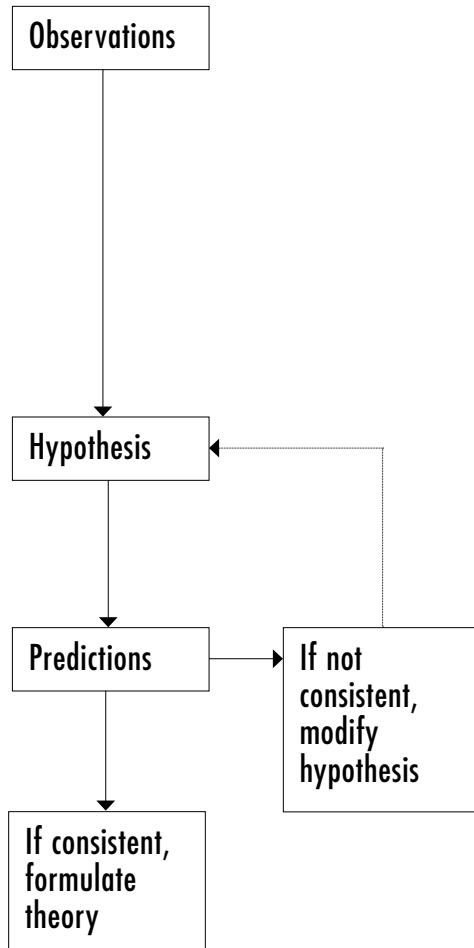
- Collect and analyze relevant information.
- Document physical/cultural context.
- Describe existing elements.

[] What is desired?

- Identify user needs and preferences.
- Clarify goals.
- Develop matrices, charts, and adjacency diagrams.

[] What is possible?

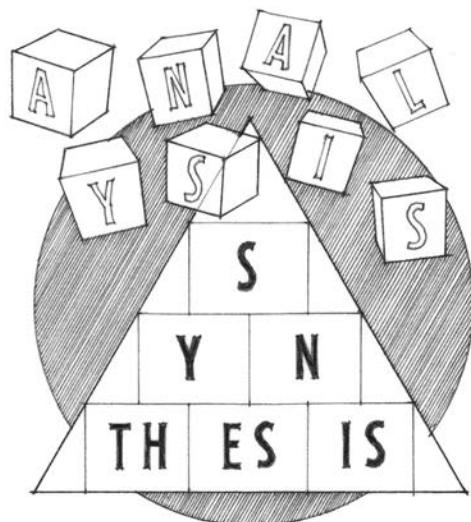
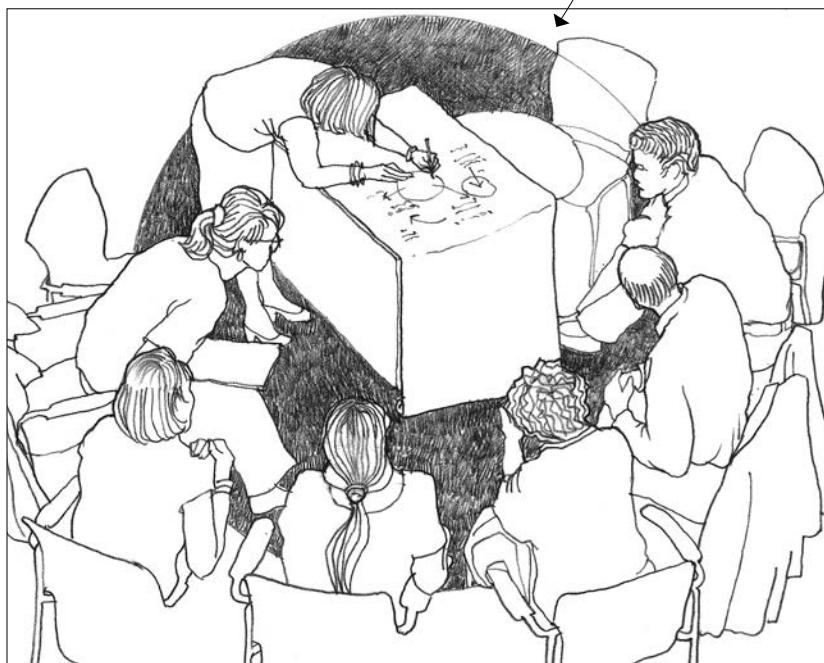
- What can be altered...what cannot?
- What can be controlled...what cannot?
- What is allowed...what is prohibited?
- Define limits: time, economic, legal, and technical.



From the analysis of the problem and its parts, we can begin to formulate possible solutions. This requires synthesizing—bringing together and integrating—responses to the various issues and aspects of the problem into coherent solutions. Design requires rational thought based on knowledge and arrived at through experience and research. Evidence-based design seeks to create better design outcomes by basing decisions on credible research. Also playing important roles in the design process are intuition and imagination, which add the creative dimension to the otherwise rational design process.

There are several approaches one can take to generate ideas and synthesize possible design solutions, including:

- Isolate one or more key issues of value or importance, and develop solutions around them.
- Study analogous situations that could serve as models for developing possible solutions.
- Develop ideal solutions for parts of the problem, which could be integrated into whole solutions and tempered by the reality of what exists.



Develop Concept

[] Brainstorm ideas.

- Diagram major functional and spatial relationships.
- Assign values to key issues or elements.
- Search for ways to combine several good ideas into a single better one.
- Manipulate the parts to see how a change might affect the whole.
- Look at the situation from different points of view.

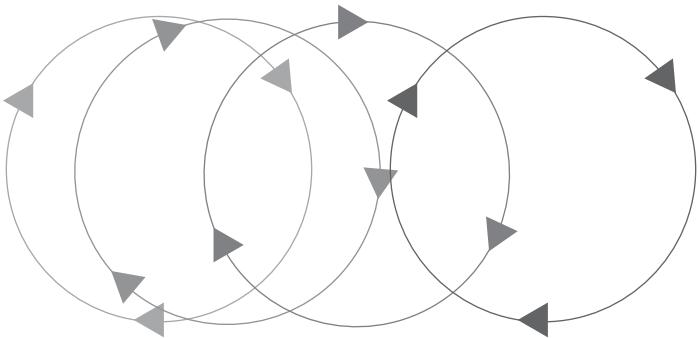
[] Draft a concept statement.

- Verbalize the principal design ideas in a concise manner.

[] Develop schematic designs.

- Establish major functional and spatial relationships.
- Show relative sizes and shapes of important features.
- Develop several alternatives for comparative study.

EVALUATION



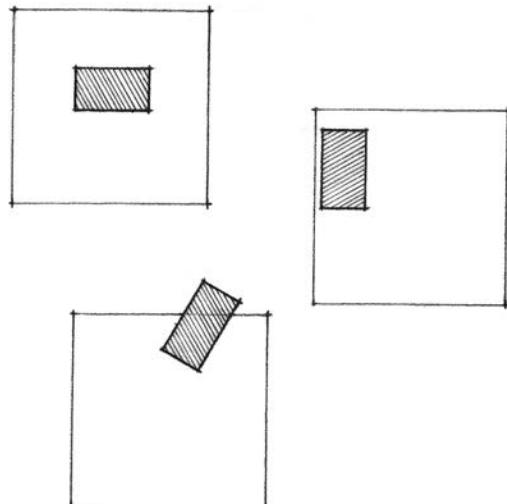
Design requires a critical view of alternatives and careful weighing of the strengths and weaknesses of each proposal until the best possible fit between problem and solution is achieved. Within a range of possible solutions, each must be evaluated according to the criteria set forth in the problem statement and further clarified in the problem analysis. Successive explorations of the problem and the evaluation of alternative solutions should help narrow the choices for design development. While the initial stages of the design process encourage divergent thinking about the problem, the design development phase requires a convergent focus on a specific design solution.

Assess Alternatives

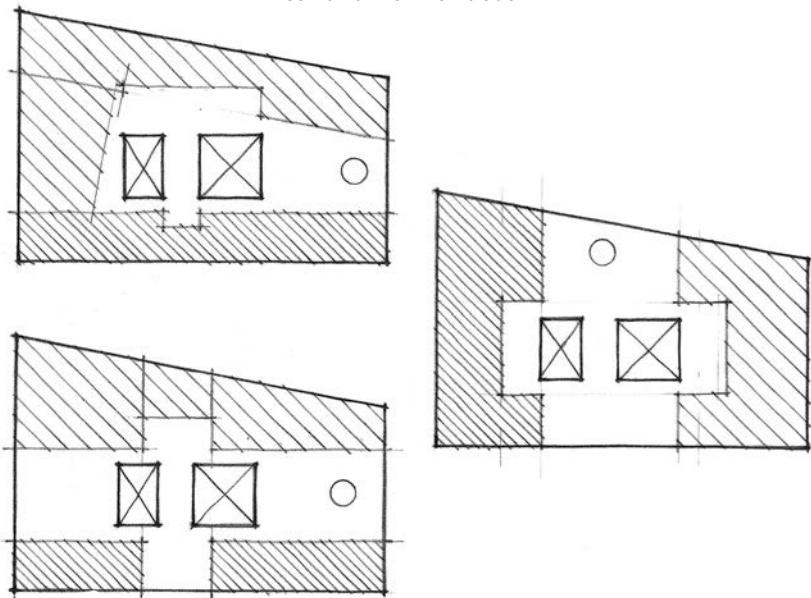
- [] Compare each alternative with design goals.
- [] Weigh the benefits and strengths of each alternative against the costs and liabilities.
- [] Rank alternatives in terms of suitability and effectiveness.

Make Design Decisions

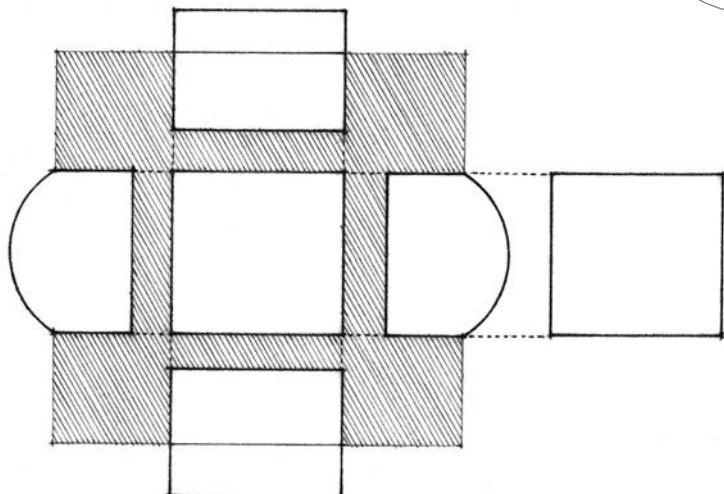
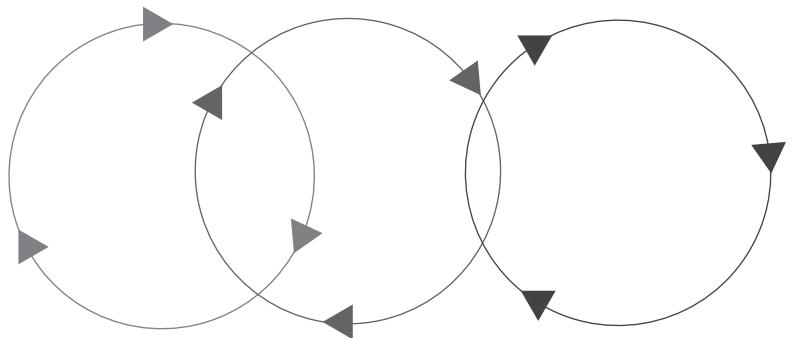
- [] Combine the best design elements into the final design.
 - Draw preliminary plans.
 - Construct scale drawings.
 - Show important interior architectural details (e.g., walls, windows, built-in elements).
 - Show furniture if appropriate.
 - Computer design software may combine these steps.
- [] Make preliminary material selections.
 - Develop alternative color and finish schemes.
 - Collect material samples.
- [] Make preliminary furniture and lighting selections.
- [] Prepare a presentation to the client for feedback and preliminary approval.



Test and Refine Ideas



Once a final decision has been made, the design proposal is developed, refined, and prepared for implementation. This includes the production of construction drawings and specifications and other services related to purchasing, construction, and supervision.



Develop and Refine Design

- [] Develop plans, elevations, sections, and details.
- [] Develop specifications for interior finish materials, furnishings, and lighting.

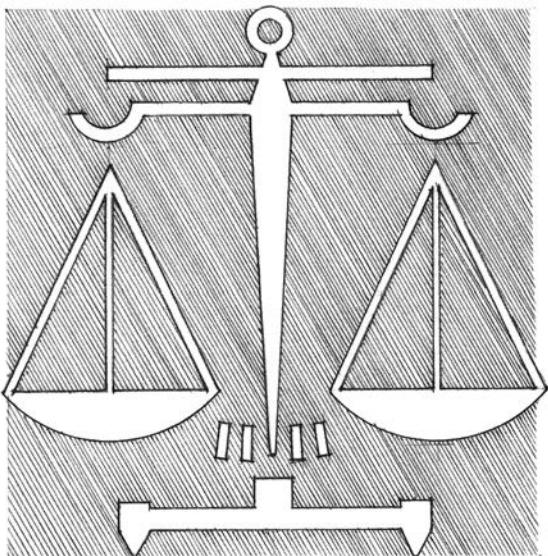
Implement Design

- [] Prepare construction drawings.
- [] Finalize specifications for interior finish materials, furnishings, and lighting.

Reevaluate Completed Design

- [] Perform design reviews.
- [] Coordinate with architect, engineers, and consultants.
- [] Solicit client feedback.
- [] Perform post-occupancy evaluation.

No design process is complete until a design solution that has been implemented is evaluated for its effectiveness in solving a given problem. This critical appraisal of a completed design can build up our knowledge base, sharpen our intuition, and provide valuable lessons that may be applied in future work.



One of the idiosyncrasies of the design process is that it does not always lead simply and inevitably to a single, obvious, correct answer. In fact, there is often more than one solution to a design problem. How then can we judge whether a design is good or bad?

A design may be good in the judgment of the designer, the client, or the people who experience and use the design for any of several reasons:

- Because it functions well—it works.
- Because it is affordable—it is economical, efficient, and durable.
- Because it looks good—it is aesthetically pleasing.
- Because it recreates a feeling remembered from another time and place—it carries meaning.

At times, we may judge a design to be good because we feel it follows current design trends or because of the impression it will make on others—it is in fashion, or it enhances our status.

As these reasons suggest, there are several meanings that can be conveyed by a design. Some operate at a level generally understood and accepted by the general public. Others are more readily discerned by specific groups of people. Successful designs usually operate at more than one level of meaning and thus appeal to a wide range of people.

A good design, therefore, should be understandable to its audience. Knowing why something was done helps to make a design comprehensible. If a design does not express an idea, communicate a meaning, or elicit a response, either it will be ignored or it will appear to be a bad design.

In defining and analyzing a design problem, one also develops goals and criteria by which the effectiveness of a solution can be measured. Regardless of the nature of the interior design problem being addressed, there are several criteria with which we should be concerned.

Function and Purpose

First, the design must satisfy its intended function and fulfill its purpose.

Utility, Economy, and Sustainability

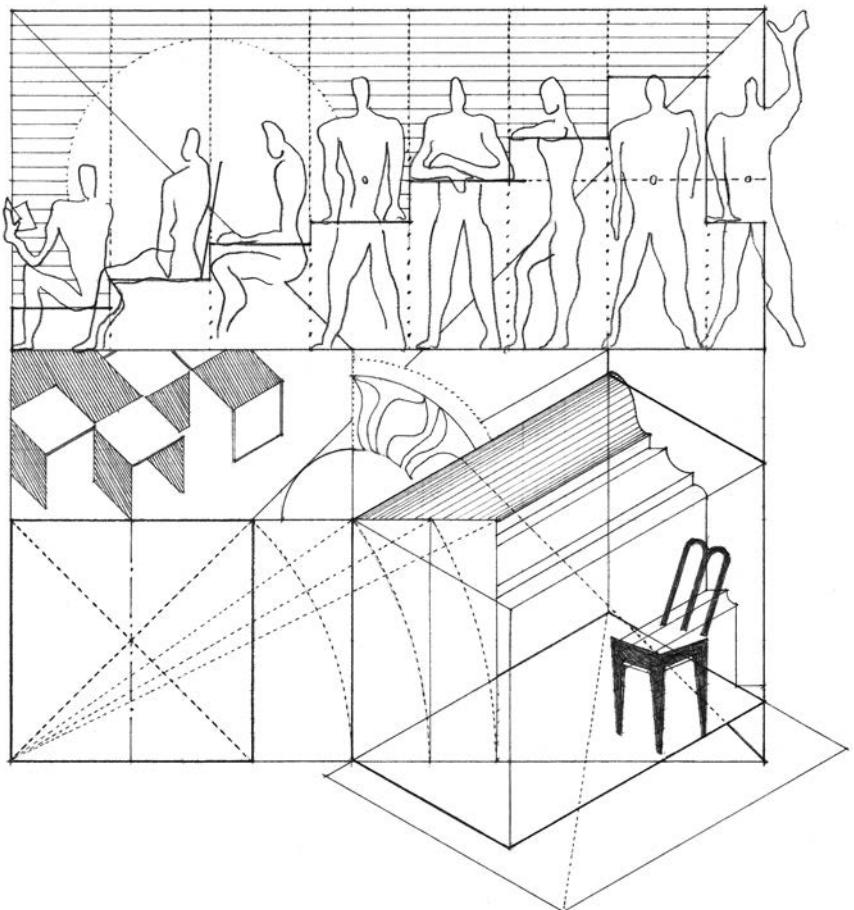
Second, a design should exhibit utility, honesty, economy, and sustainability in its selection and use of materials.

Form and Style

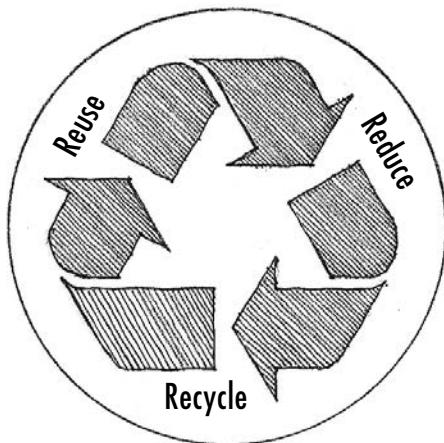
Third, the design should be aesthetically pleasing to the eye and our other senses.

Image and Meaning

Fourth, the design should project an image and promote associations that carry meaning for the people who use and experience it.

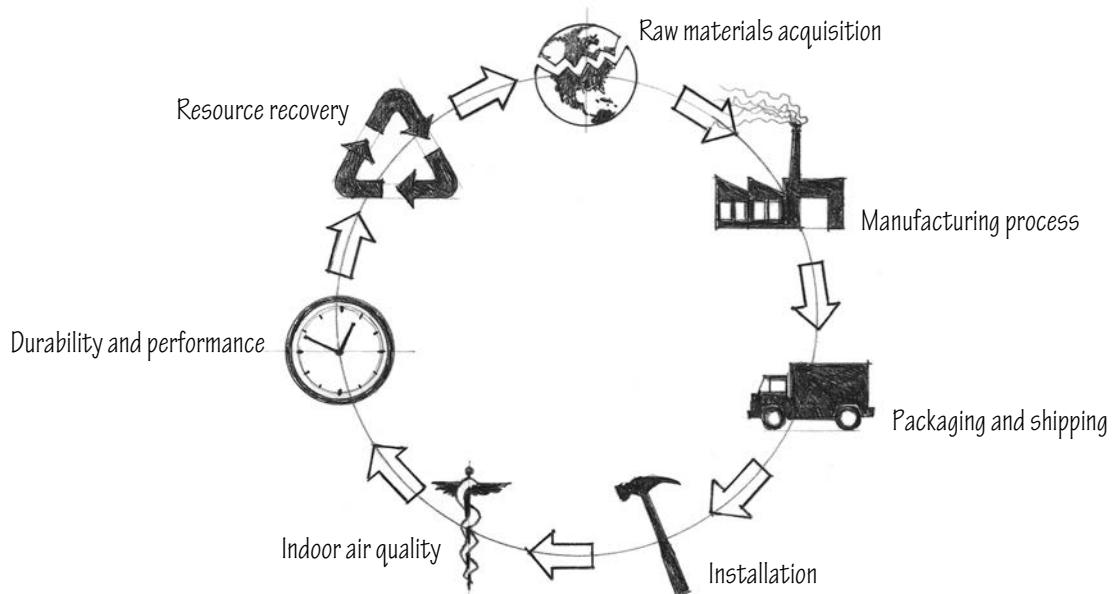


SUSTAINABLE DESIGN



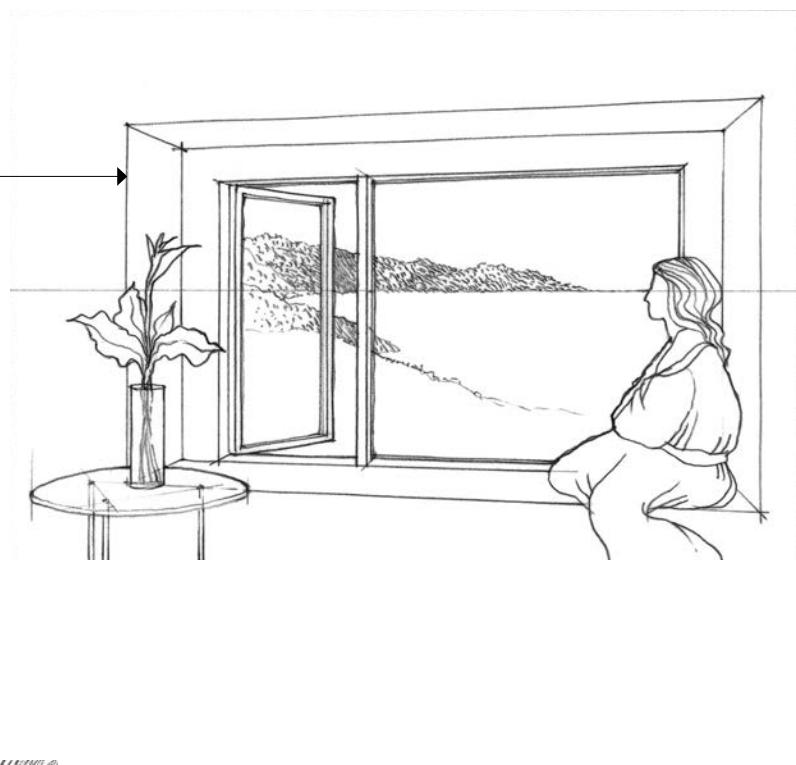
Buildings use large amounts of materials and energy for their construction and operation. Sustainable design seeks to produce buildings that use energy and natural resources efficiently throughout their lives. Sustainable architecture strives to find architectural solutions that protect both the natural environment and the myriad forms of life on earth. Simply put, sustainable design strategies for building interiors include the following:

- Reduce, reuse, and recycle materials.
- Evaluate environmental and health impacts, from acquisition of raw materials through end-of-use recovery.
- Design for energy efficiency.

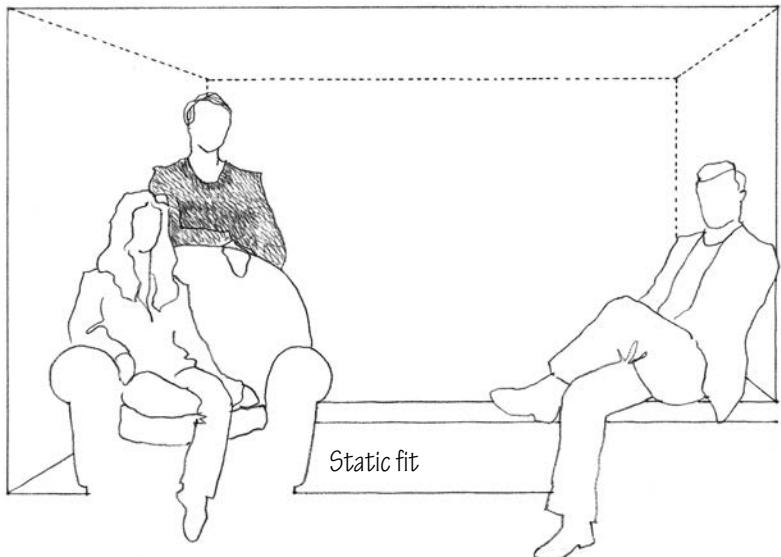


Interior designers can support sustainable design in the following ways:

- Reduce energy use by specifying efficient lighting and equipment.
- Design to facilitate daylight, views, and fresh air.
- Design for disassembly, so that materials can be taken apart and recycled.
- Limit the use of *potable* (drinkable) water in toilets and sinks.
- Select interior finishes and materials made from rapidly renewable, salvaged, refurbished, or recycled materials from local sources.
- Choose low volatile organic compound (VOC)-emitting products and installation materials.
- Specify products from manufacturers who minimize energy, water, and raw material consumption.
- Avoid waste in manufacturing, packaging, and installation.



HUMAN FACTORS

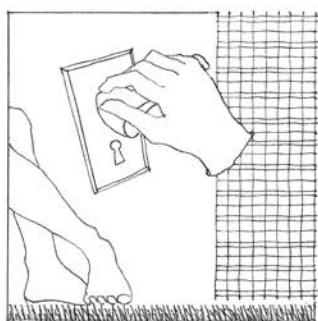
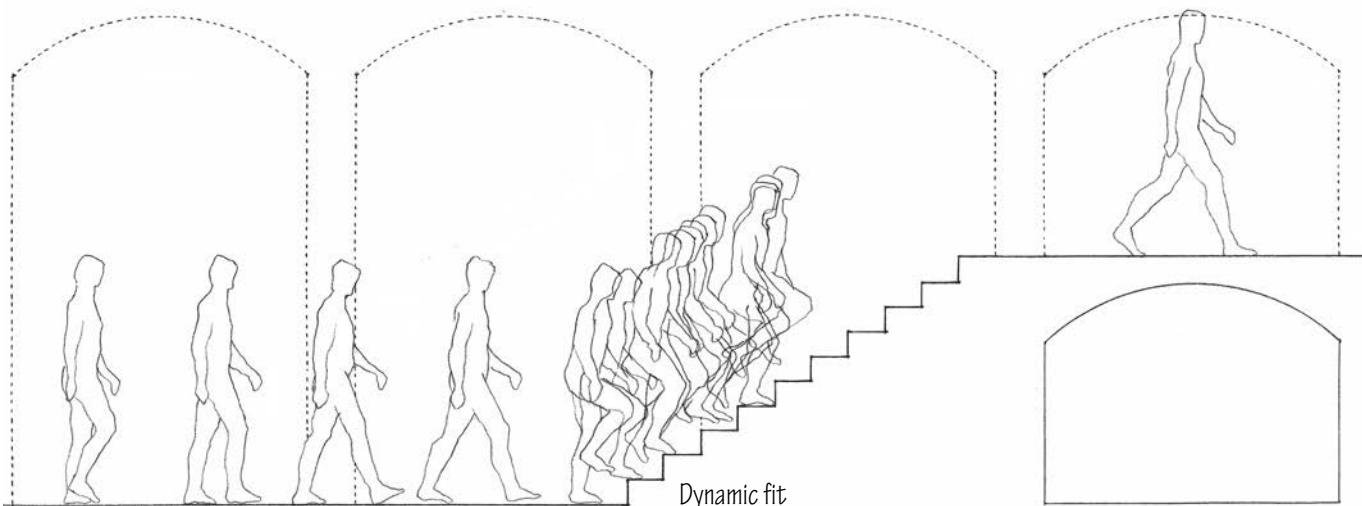


The interior spaces of buildings are designed as places for human movement, activity, and repose. There should be, therefore, a fit between the form and dimensions of interior space and our own body dimensions. This fit can be a static one, as when we sit in a chair, lean against a railing, or nestle within an alcove.

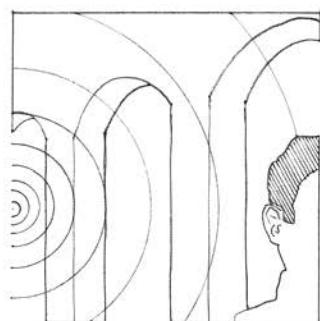
There can also be a dynamic fit, as when we enter a building's foyer, walk up a stairway, or move through the rooms and halls of a building.

A third type of fit is the way space accommodates our need to maintain appropriate social distances and to control our personal space.

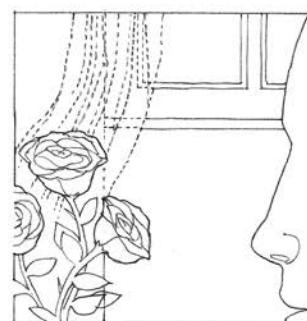
In addition to these physical and psychological dimensions, space also has tactile, auditory, olfactory, and thermal characteristics that influence how we feel and what we do within it.



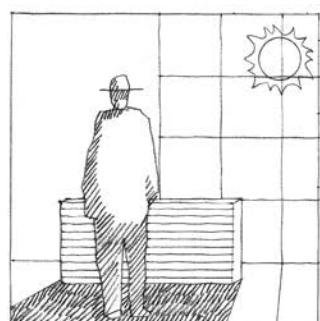
Touch



Hearing



Smell



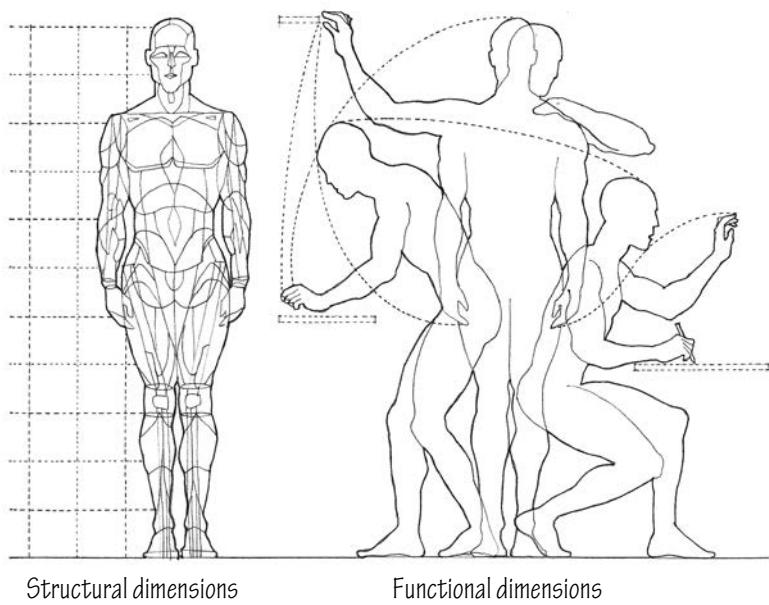
Heat

Our body dimensions, and the way we move through and perceive space, are prime determinants of architectural and interior design. In the following section, basic human dimensions are illustrated for standing, sitting, and reaching. Dimensional guidelines are also given for group activities, such as dining or conversing.

There is a difference between the structural dimensions of our bodies and those dimensional requirements that result from the way we reach for something on a shelf, sit down at a table, walk down a set of stairs, or interact with other people. These are functional dimensions that vary according to the nature of the activity engaged in and the social situation.

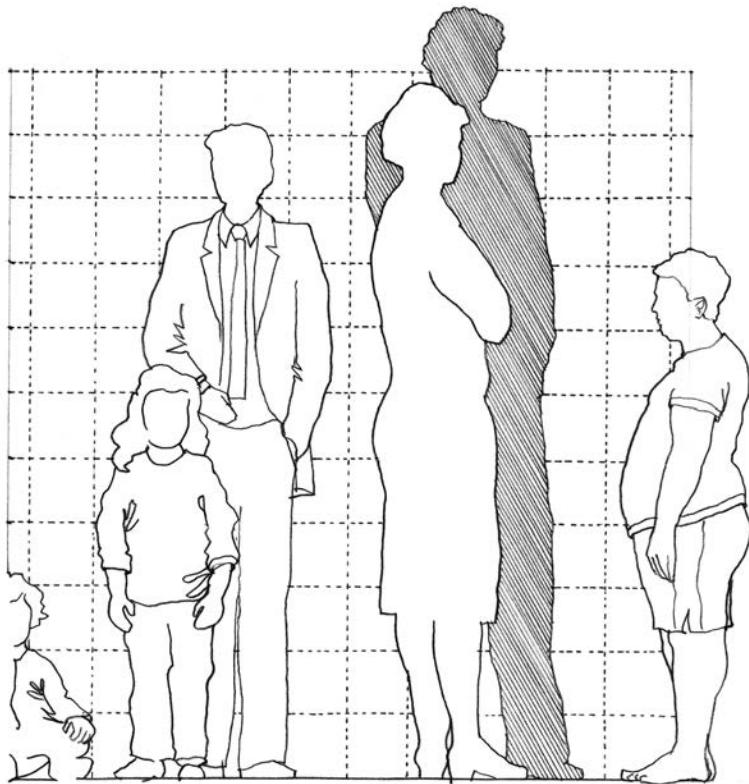
Always exercise caution when you use any set of dimensional tables or illustrations such as those on the following pages. These are based on typical or average measurements that may have to be modified to satisfy specific user needs. Variations from the norm will always exist as a result of the differences between men and women, among various age and genetic groups, and from one individual to the next.

Most people will experience different physical ranges and abilities as they grow and age, and with changes in weight, height, and physical fitness. These changes over time affect how an interior environment will fit or accommodate the user. *Bariatric* design and design for aging-in-place are two ways that interiors can accommodate these conditions.

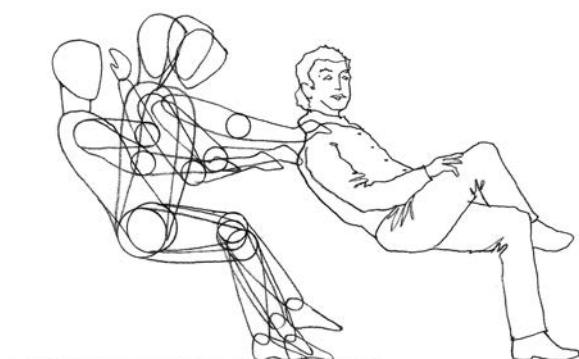


Structural dimensions

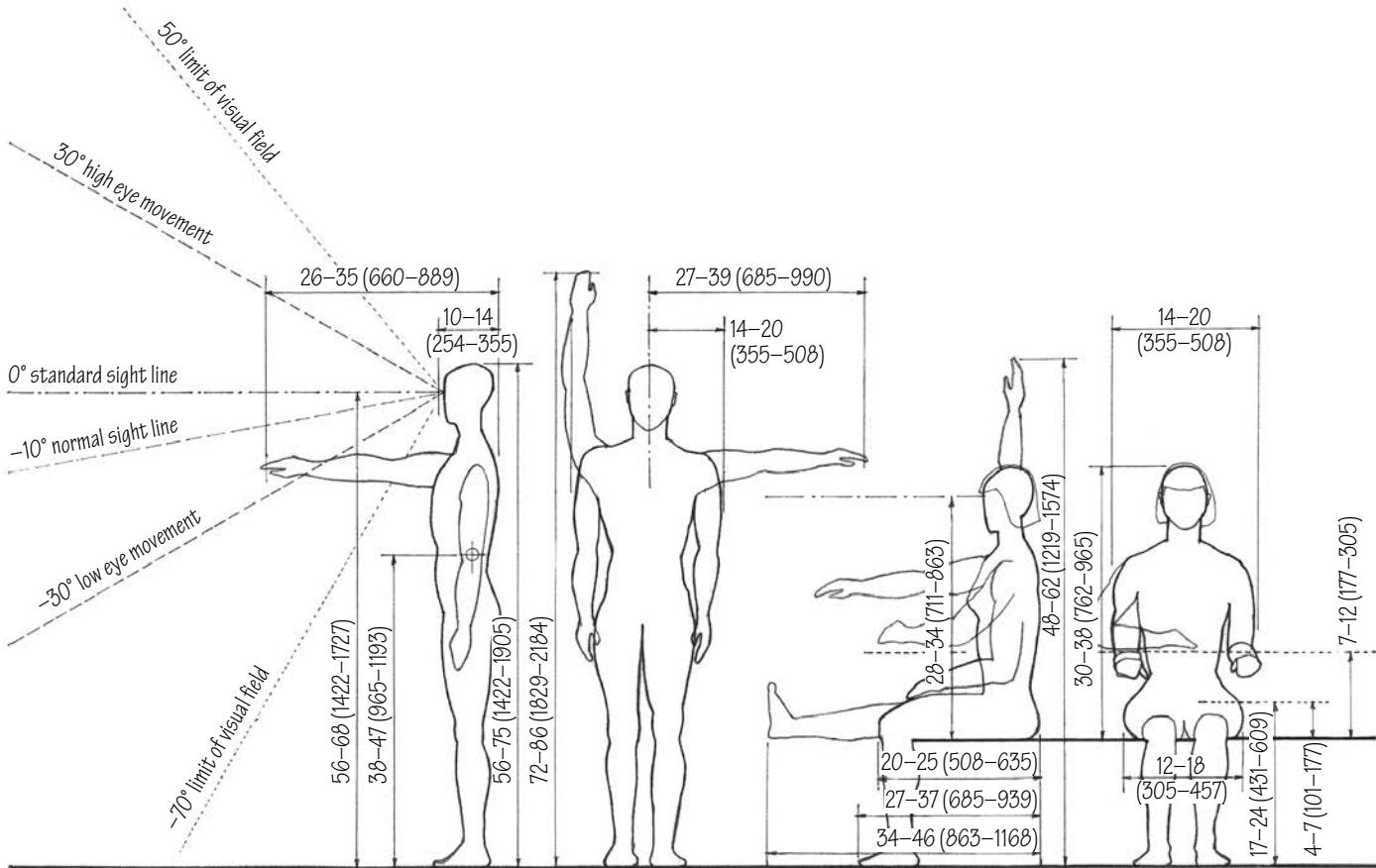
Functional dimensions



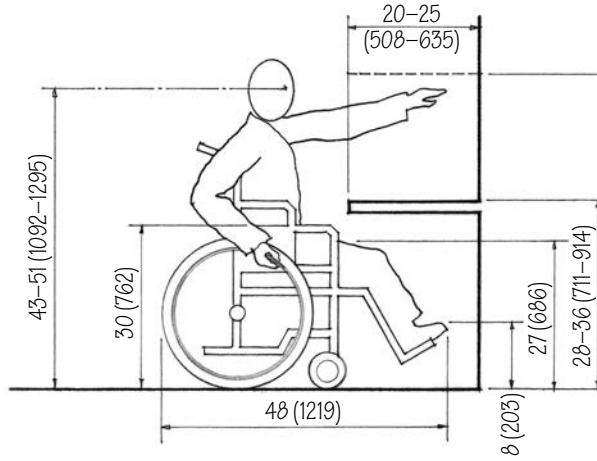
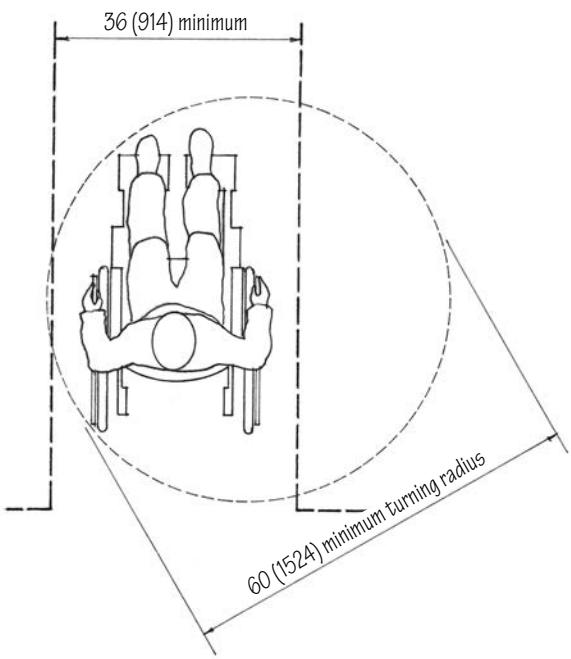
Individual variations and abilities



HUMAN DIMENSIONS



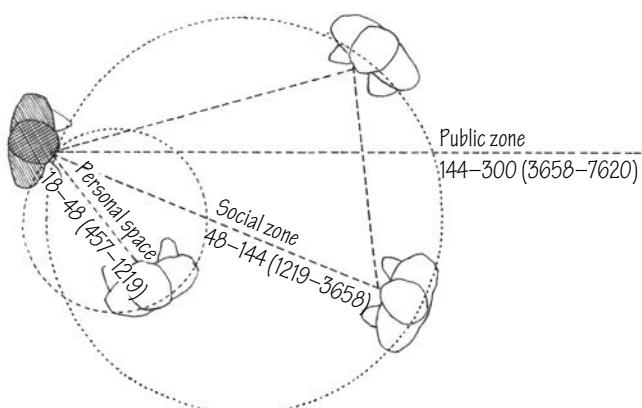
Unless otherwise specified, dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).



Human beings share with animals a perception of the appropriate uses of the space around their bodies, which varies between various groups and cultures and among individuals within a group. This is a person's territorial space. Others are allowed to penetrate these areas only for short periods of time. The presence of other people, objects, and the immediate environment can expand or contract our sense of personal space. The invasion of an individual's personal space can affect the person's feelings and reactions to everything around him or her.

Intimate Zone

- Allows physical contact; invasion by a stranger can result in discomfort.



Personal Space

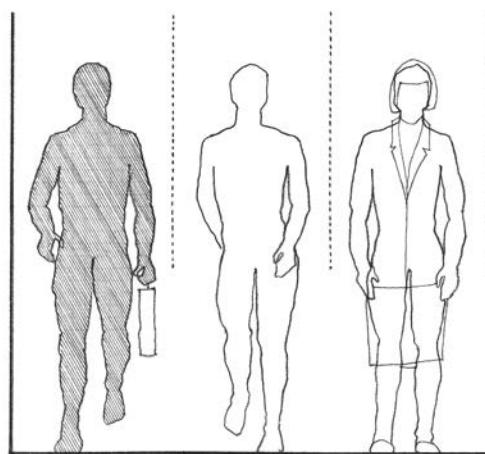
- Allows friends to come close and possibly penetrate inner limit briefly; conversation at low voice levels is possible.

Social Zone

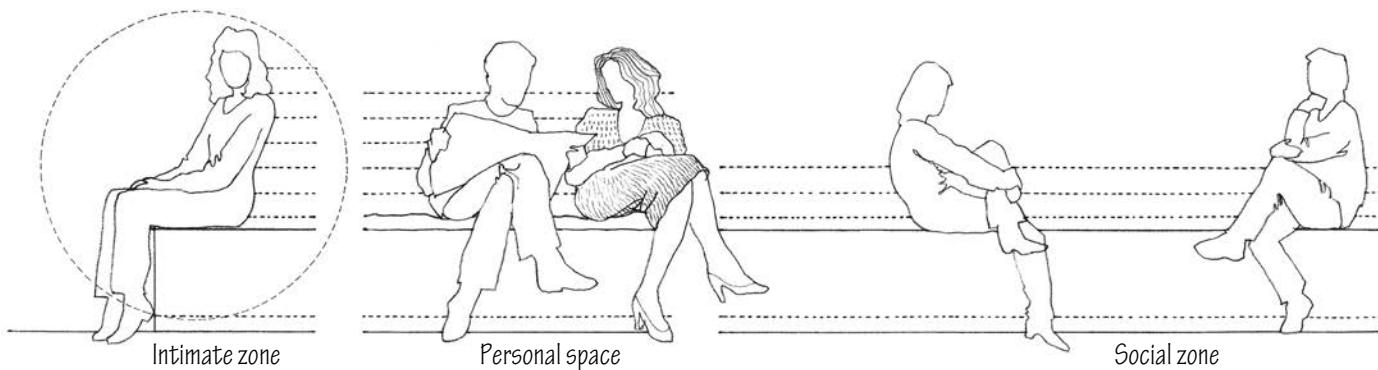
- Appropriate for informal, social, and business transactions; conversation occurs at normal to raised voice levels.

Public Zone

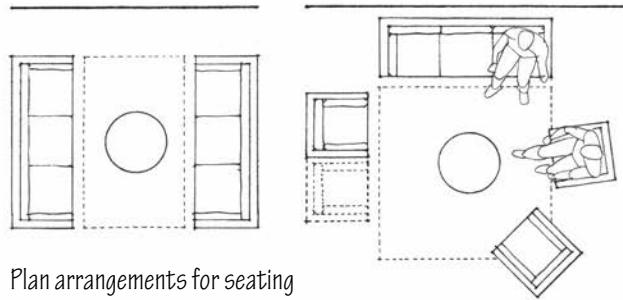
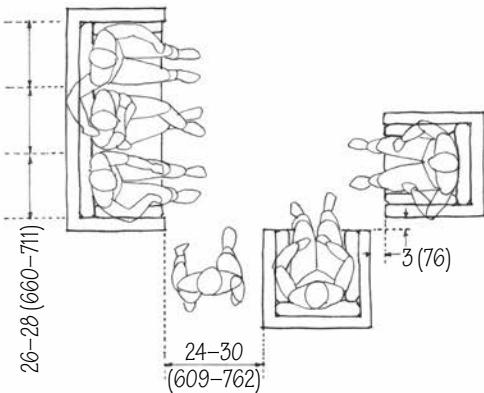
- Acceptable for formal behavior and hierarchical relationships; louder voice levels with clearer enunciation are required for communication.



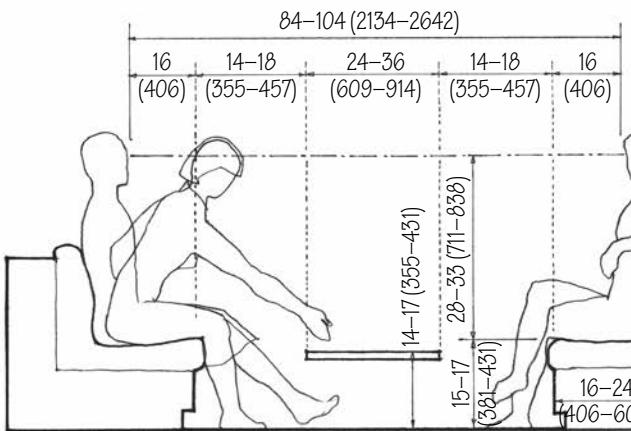
Space for movement varies from 30–36 (762–914) for a single person to 72–96 (1829–2438) for three people walking abreast.



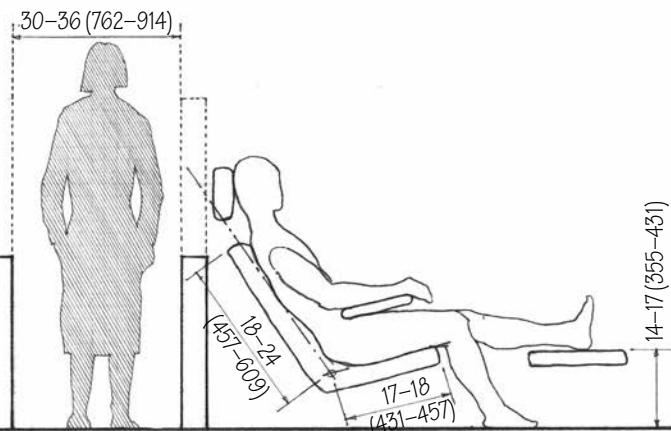
FUNCTIONAL DIMENSIONS



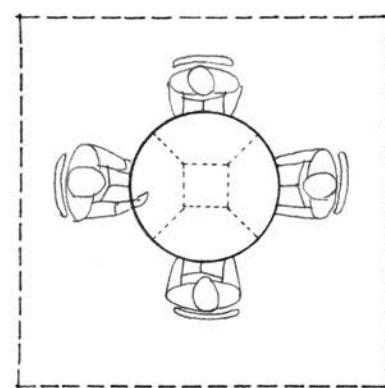
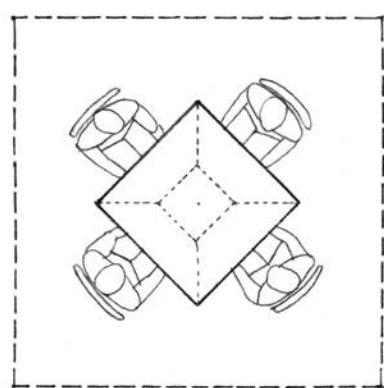
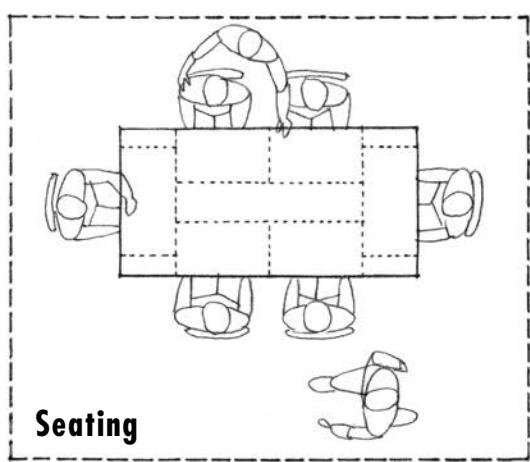
Plan arrangements for seating



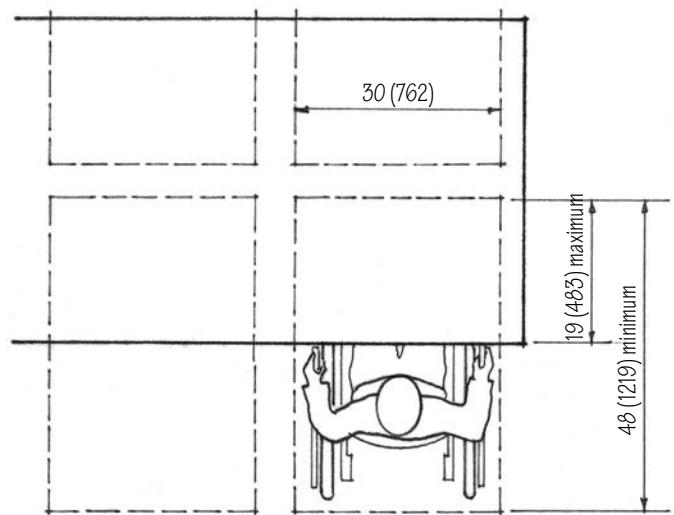
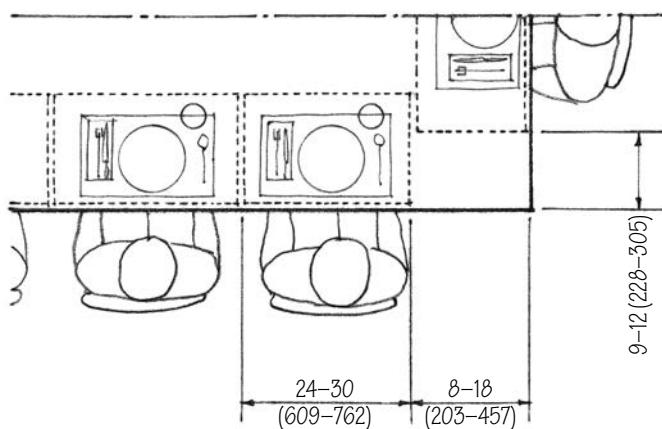
Distance zones affect furniture arrangements.



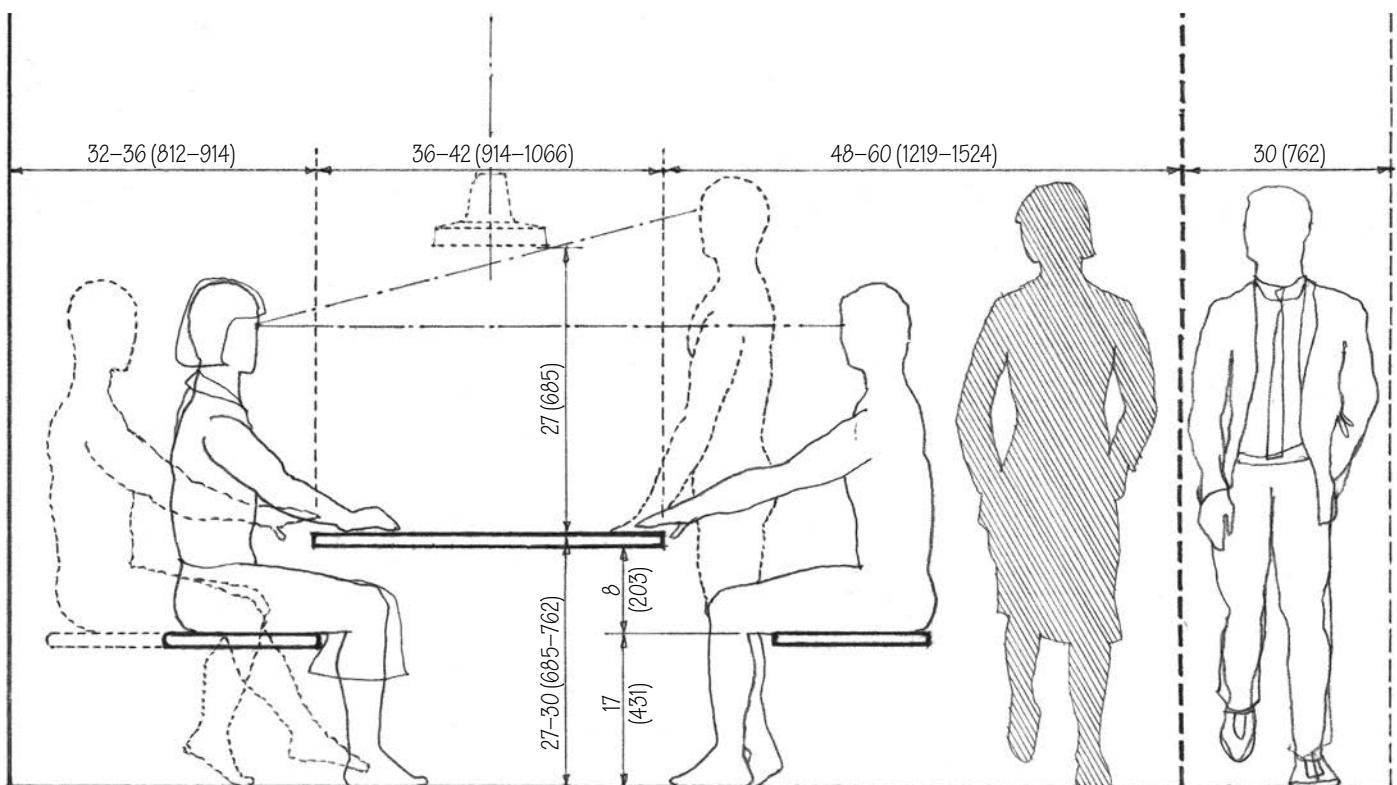
Passage Lounge chair



Plan arrangements for dining tables

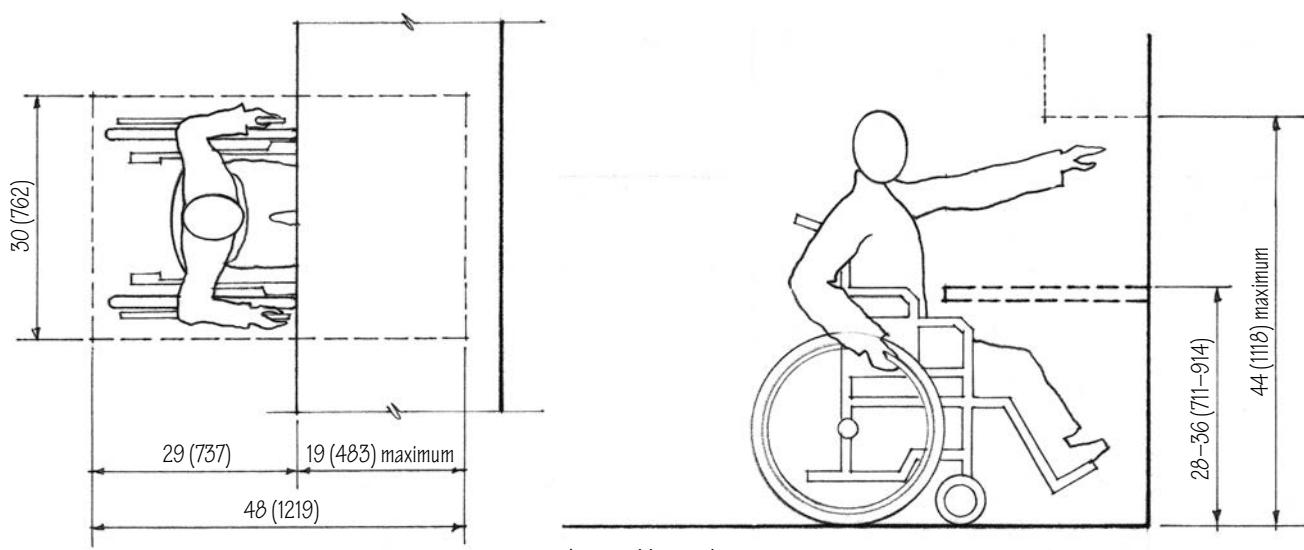
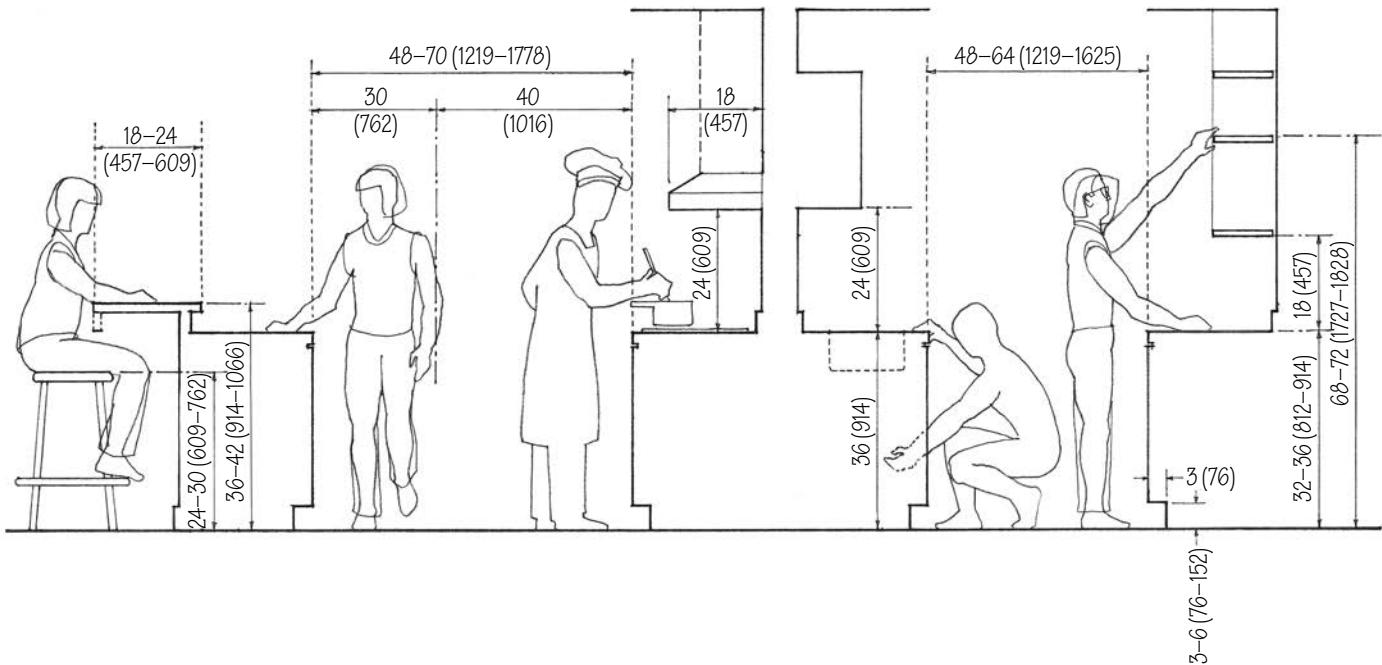
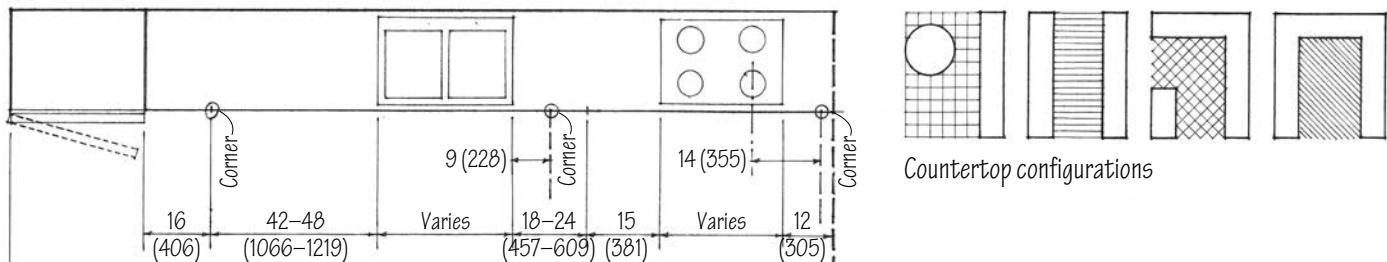


Accessible seating at tables

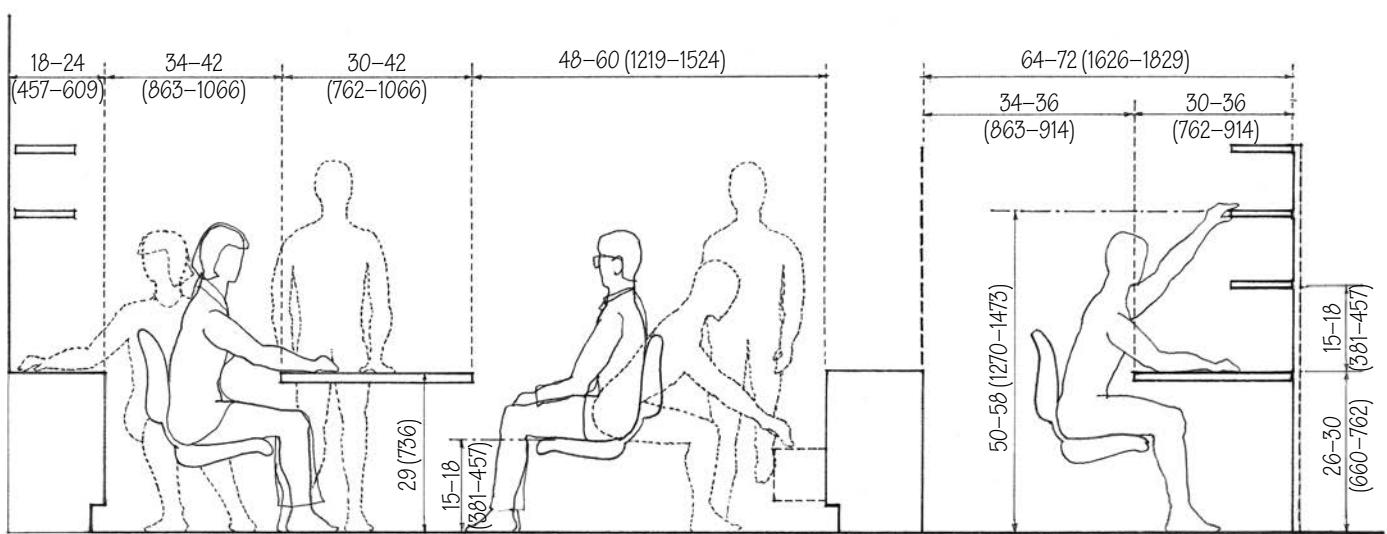
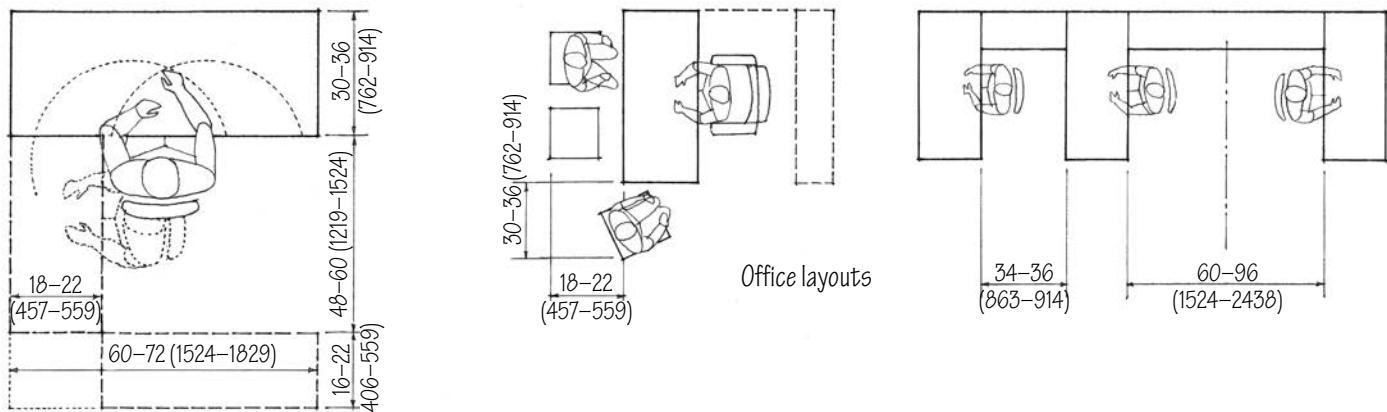


Dining

FUNCTIONAL DIMENSIONS

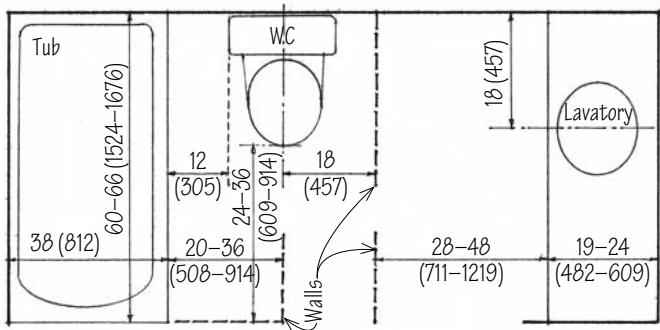


Kitchen Layouts



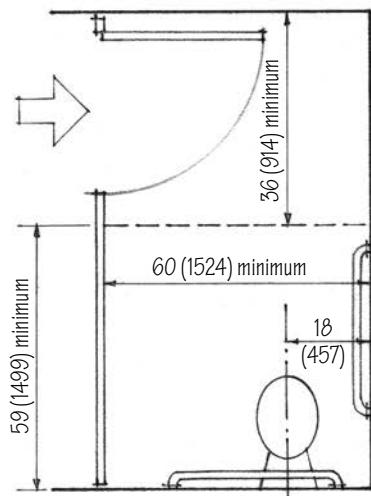
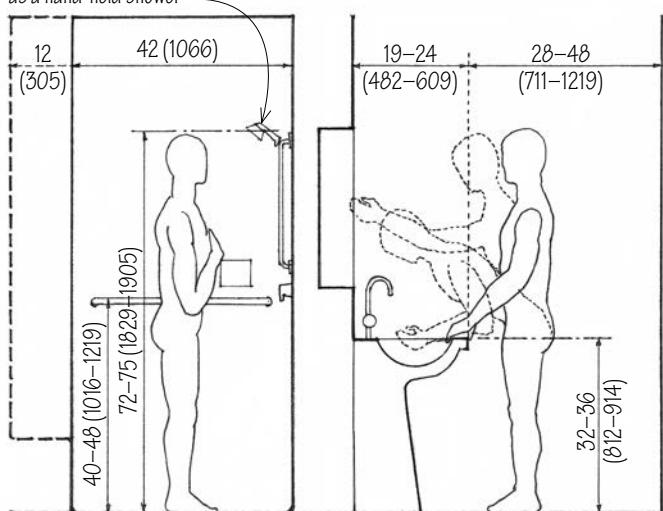
Workstations

FUNCTIONAL DIMENSIONS

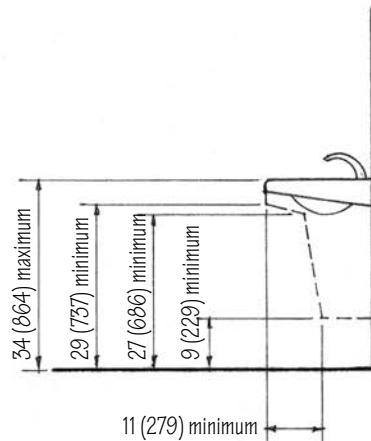


Shower spray unit with a hose at least 60" (1524 mm)

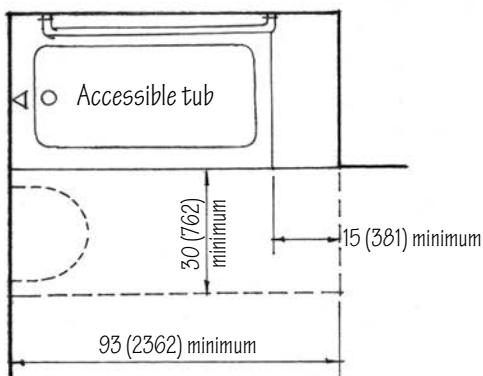
long that can be used both as a fixed shower head and
as a hand-held shower



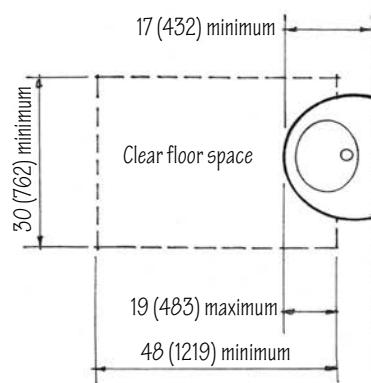
Accessible toilet stall



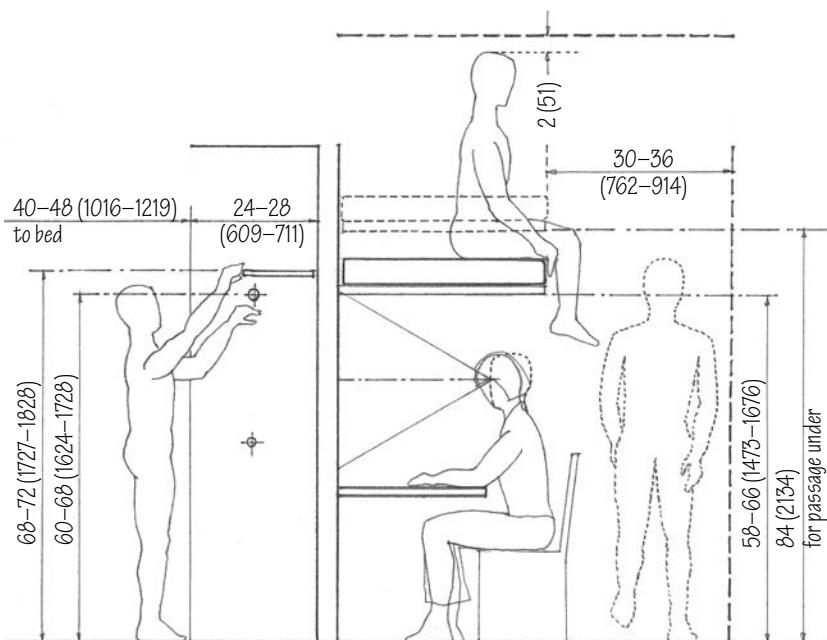
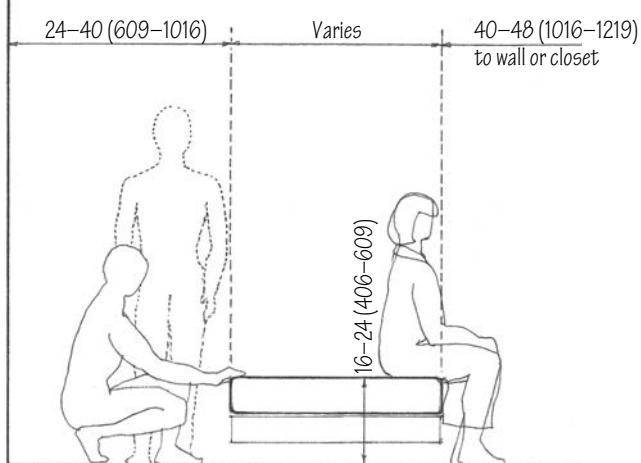
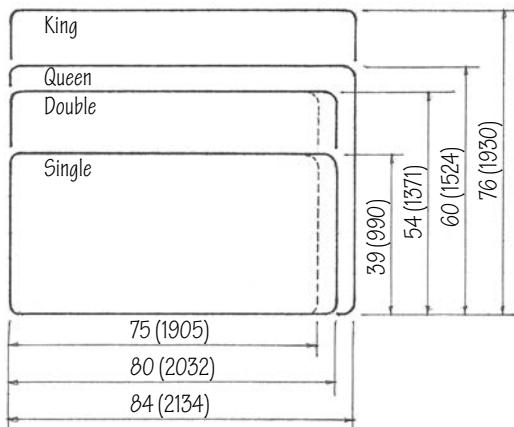
Accessible lavatory



Bathing



Accessible lavatory



Sleeping

89 (2261) Extended reach
84 (2134) Institutional door height

80 (2032) Residential door height
75 (1905) Shower head
70–92 (1778–2337) Extended reach

54–71 (1372–1803) Focus point of view

58 (1473) Thermostat
55 (1397) See over

48 (1219) Wall switch plate
45 (1143) Door push bar

42 (1067) Handrail
42–45 (1067–1143) Bar height
36 (914) Countertop; doorknob
31 (787) Lavatory rim
29 (736) Desk height

17 (431) Seat height
14 (355) Coffee table

4–7 (102–178) Stair riser
3 (76) Minimum toe clearance

Heights

A prime criterion for judging the success of an interior design is whether or not it is functional. Function is the most fundamental level of design. We design to improve the functioning of interior spaces and make the tasks and activities performed within them more convenient, comfortable, and pleasurable. The proper functioning of a design is, of course, directly related to the purposes of those who inhabit and use it, as well as to their physical dimensions and abilities.

USER REQUIREMENTS

[] Identify users.

- Individuals
- User groups
- User characteristics
- Age groups

To understand, and ultimately to fulfill, the function and purpose of an interior space, it is necessary for the designer to analyze carefully the user and activity requirements for that space. The following outline can help the designer program these requirements, translate these needs into forms and patterns, and integrate them into the spatial context.

[] Identify needs.

- Specific individual needs and abilities
- Group needs and abilities

[] Establish territorial requirements.

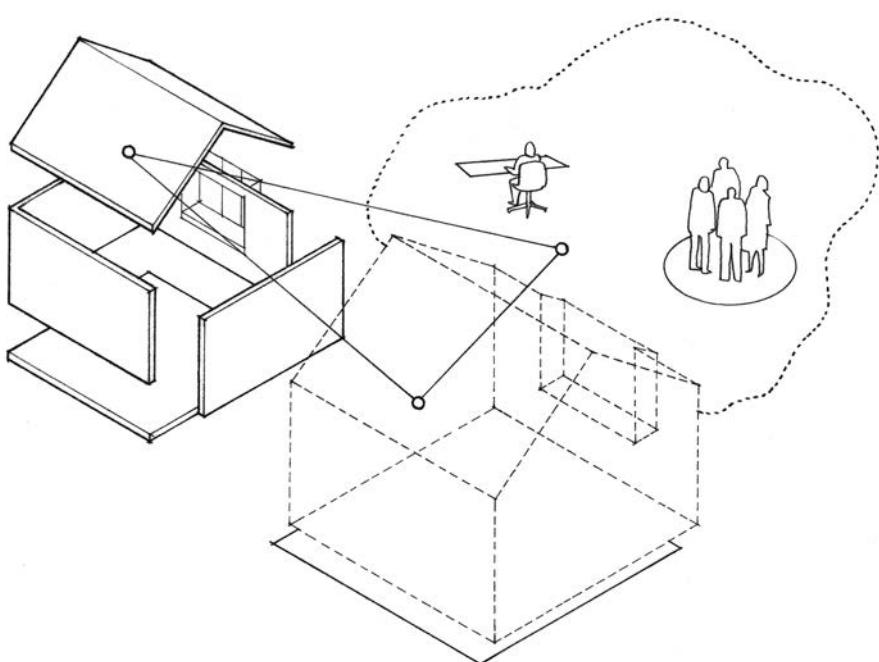
- Personal space
- Privacy
- Interaction
- Access
- Security

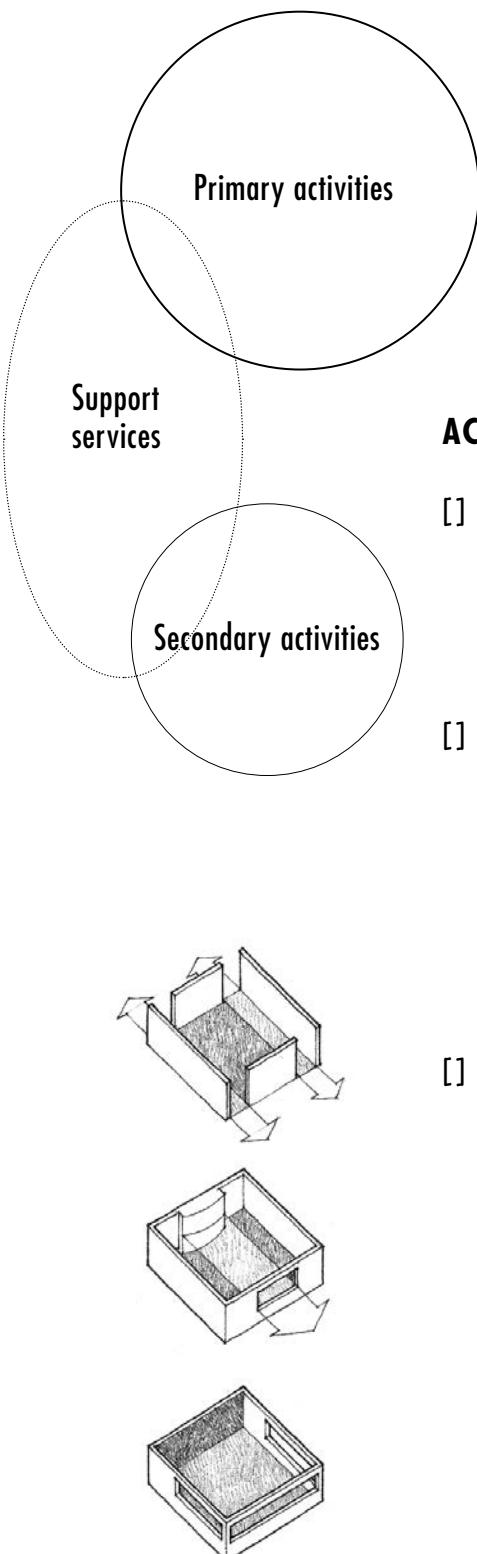
[] Determine preferences.

- Favored objects
- Favorite colors
- Special places
- Special interests

[] Research environmental concerns.

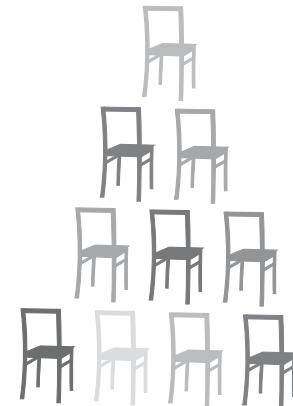
- Energy efficiency
- Daylight, views, and fresh air
- Reduce, reuse, recycle
- Water conservation
- Sustainable materials and manufacturing processes
- Low VOC-emitting products
- Decreased waste





ACTIVITY REQUIREMENTS

- [] Identify primary and secondary activities.
 - Name and function of primary activity
 - Names and functions of secondary or related activities
- [] Analyze nature of the activities.
 - Active or passive
 - Noisy or quiet
 - Public, small group, or private
 - Compatibility of activities if space is to be used for more than one activity
 - Frequency of use
 - Times of day or night use
- [] Determine requirements.
 - Privacy and enclosure
 - Access
 - Accessibility
 - Flexibility
 - Light
 - Acoustic quality
 - Security
 - Maintenance and durability



FURNISHING REQUIREMENTS

- [] Determine furnishings and equipment for each activity.
 - Number, type, and style of:
 - Seating
 - Tables
 - Work surfaces
 - Storage and display units
 - Accessories
- [] Identify other special equipment required.
 - Lighting
 - Electrical
 - Mechanical
 - Plumbing
 - Data and communications
 - Security
 - Fire safety
- [] Establish quality requirements of furnishings.
 - Comfort
 - Safety
 - Variety
 - Flexibility
 - Style
 - Durability and maintenance
 - Sustainability
- [] Develop possible arrangements.
 - Functional groupings
 - Tailored arrangements
 - Flexible arrangements

Space Planning

The form of a building's structure and enclosure affects the character of the spaces within. Space planning involves the efficient and productive use of these spaces, fitting living patterns to the architectural patterns of the space.

The term "space planning" is often used to refer to the specific task of planning and designing large-scale spaces for commercial and retail businesses. In this narrow sense, space planners program client needs, study user activities, and analyze spatial requirements. The results of such planning are then used in the architectural design of new construction or for negotiating the leasing of existing commercial spaces.

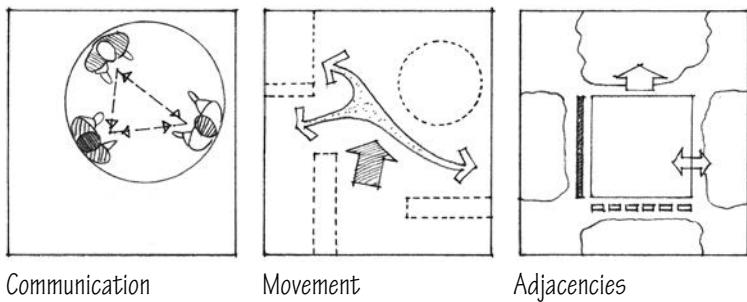
SPACE ANALYSIS

[] Document existing or proposed space.

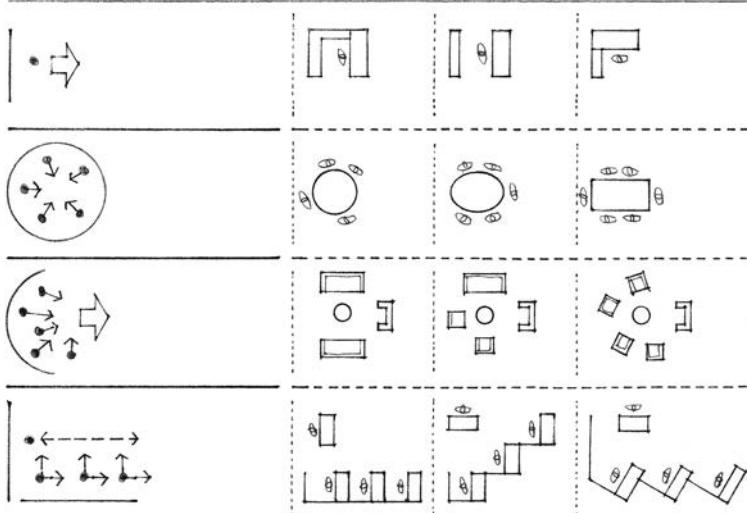
- Measure and draw base plans, sections, and interior elevations.
- Photograph existing space.

[] Analyze space.

- Orientation and site conditions of space
- Form, scale, and proportion of space
- Doorway locations, points of access, and the circulation paths they suggest
- Windows and the light, views, and ventilation they afford
- Wall, floor, and ceiling materials
- Significant architectural details
- Location of plumbing, electrical, and mechanical fixtures and outlets
- Possible architectural modifications
- Elements for possible reuse, including finishes and furnishings



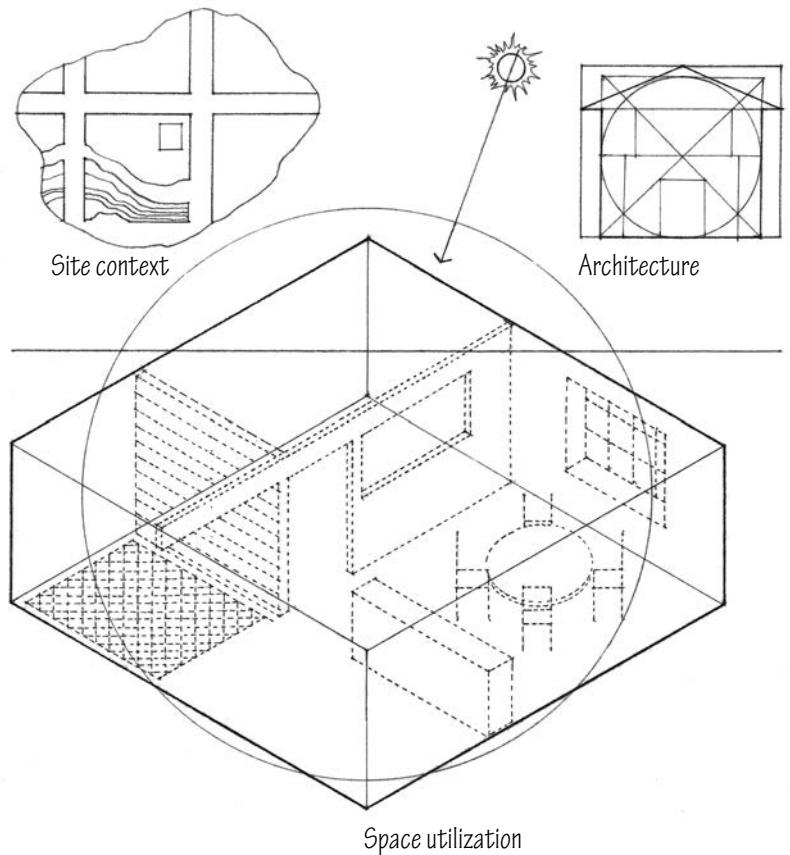
Communication Movement Adjacencies



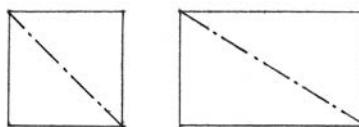
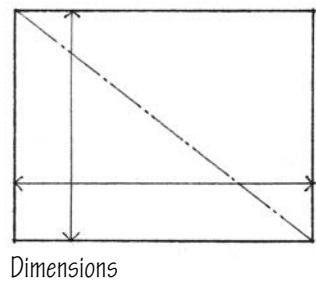
Furniture requirements and arrangements

In a broader sense, all interior designers are involved in the planning and layout of interior spaces, whether small or large, residential or commercial. Once a design program has been outlined and developed from an analysis of the client's or users' needs, the design task is to allocate the available or desired interior spaces properly for the various required activities.

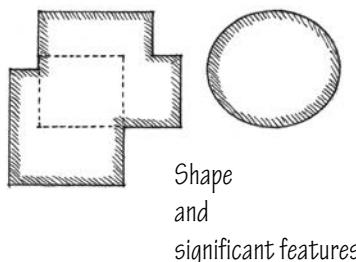
Area requirements can be estimated from an analysis of the number of people served, the furnishings and equipment they require, and the nature of the activity that will go on in each space. These area requirements can then be translated into rough blocks of space and related to each other and to the architectural context in a functional and aesthetic manner.



Analysis of User Requirements + Existing or Proposed Spaces... Integration



Proportions



DESIRED QUALITIES

[] Determine appropriate spatial qualities compatible with client's or users' needs or wishes.

- Feeling, mood, or atmosphere
- Image and style
- Degree of spatial enclosure
- Comfort and security
- Quality of light
- Focus and orientation of space
- Color and tone
- Textures
- Acoustical environment
- Thermal environment
- Flexibility and projected length of use

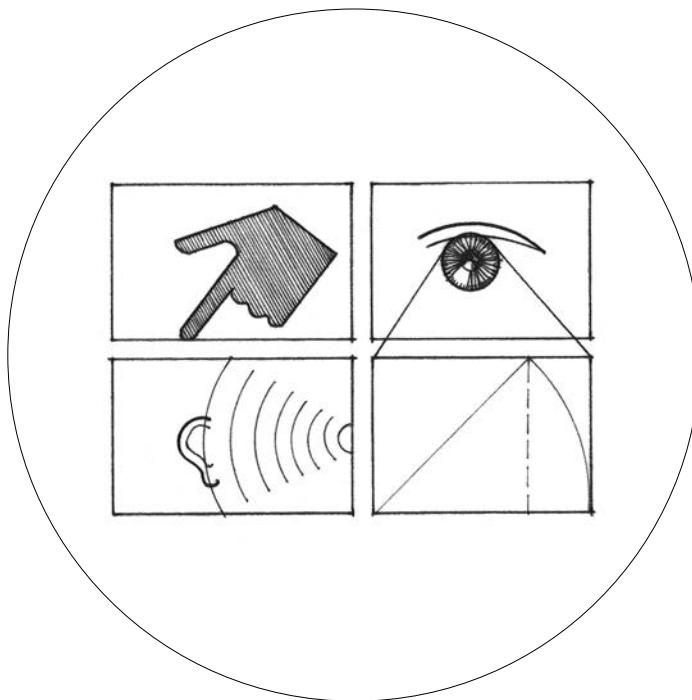
DESIRED RELATIONSHIPS ➔

[] Determine desired relationships between:

- Related activity areas
- Activity areas and space for movement
- Room and adjacent spaces
- Room and the outside

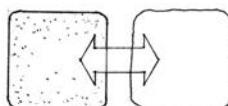
[] Determine desired zoning of activities.

- Organization of activities into groups or sets according to compatibility and use



Whether collaborating on the design of a new building or planning the remodeling of an existing structure, the interior designer strives for a proper fit between the demands of activities and the architectural nature of the spaces that house them.

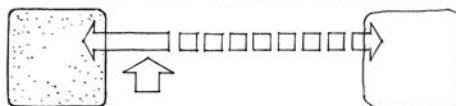
Certain activities may need to be closely related or adjacent to each other, while others may be more distant or isolated for privacy. Some activities may require easy access, while others may need controlled entries and exits. Daylighting and natural ventilation may be priorities for some areas, while others may not need to be located near exterior windows. Some activities may have specific spatial requirements, while others may be more flexible or be able to share a common space.



Which activities should be closely related?



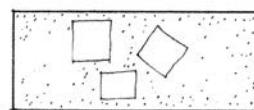
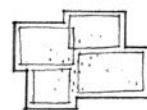
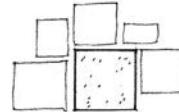
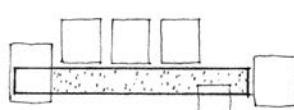
Which activities can be isolated by enclosure or distance?



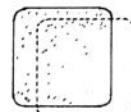
What degree of accessibility is required?



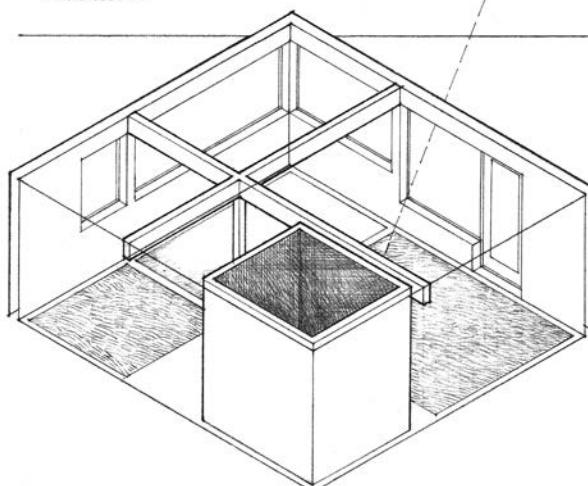
Are there specific proportional requirements?



Do activity relationships suggest a spatial pattern?

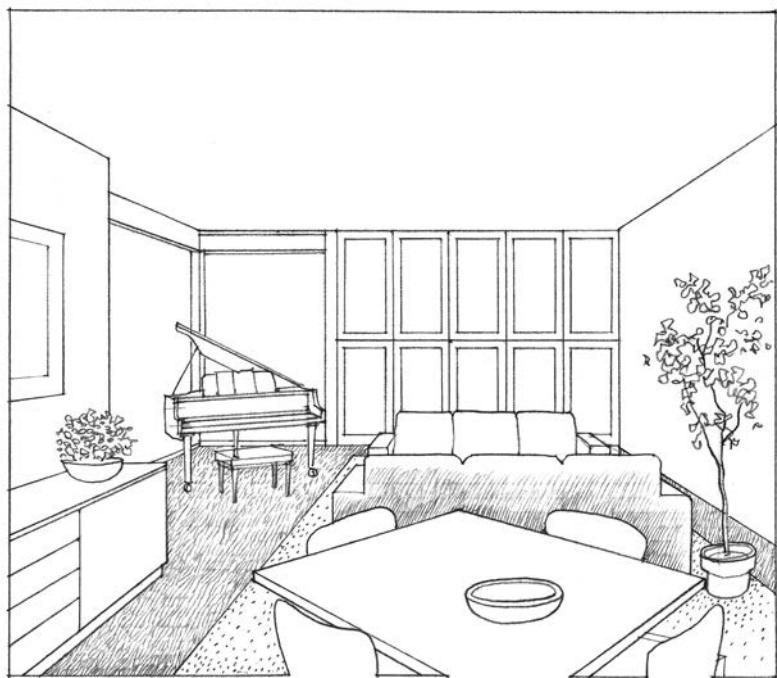


Can any activities share the same space?



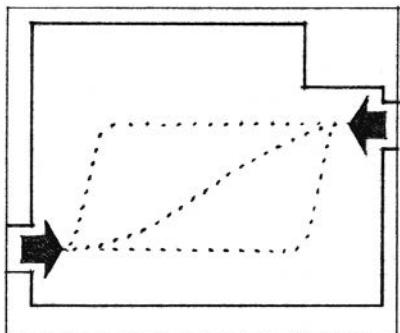
Which activities require daylighting and ventilation?

FITTING TO THE SPACE

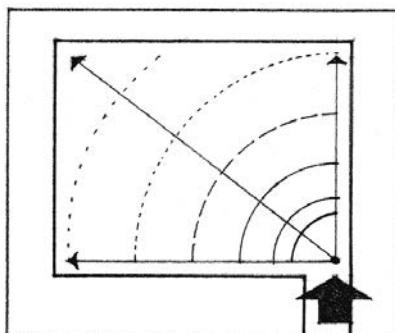


As interior areas are organized—on the basis of considerations developed during programming, along with considerations of the building site and adjacent structures—the architect will begin to develop the shape and form of a new building.

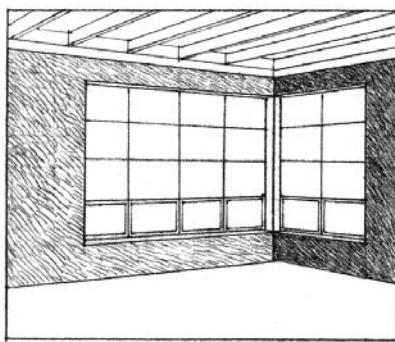
Whether a space is situated within an existing structure or is contemplated in a newly designed building, it usually provides clues for the interior designer as to how it can best be utilized. The entries into a space may define a pattern of movement that divides the area into certain zones. Some zones may be more easily accessed than others. Some may be large enough to accommodate group activities, while others are not. Some may have access to exterior windows or skylights for daylighting or ventilation; others may be internally focused. Some may include a natural center of interest, such as a view window or a fireplace.



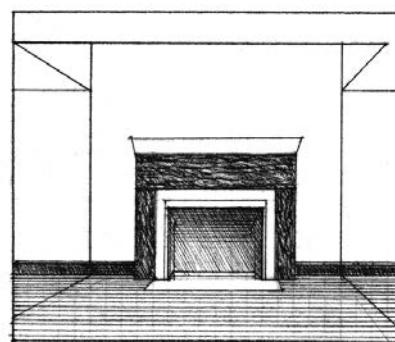
Possible paths of movement



Accessibility of zones

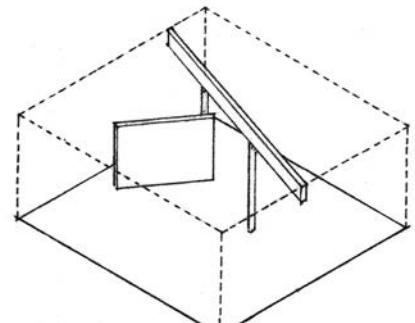
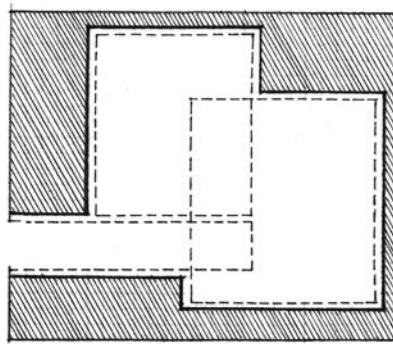


External outlook

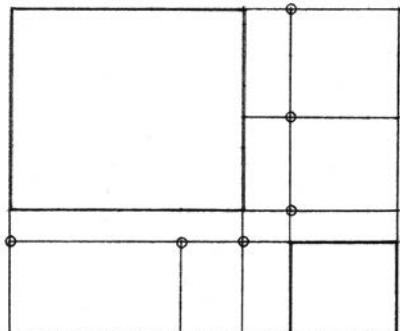


Internal focus

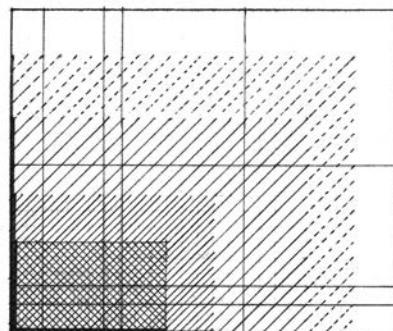
The zoning of a space may be suggested by the shape of its enclosure or by the architecture. Doorways suggest paths of movement and establish access to certain zones. The daylighting afforded by windows or skylights should influence the placement of activities. An external outlook or an internal focus might suggest how a space could be organized.



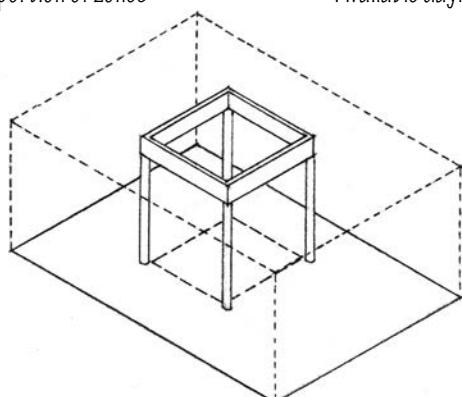
Divisions suggested by room shape or by the architecture



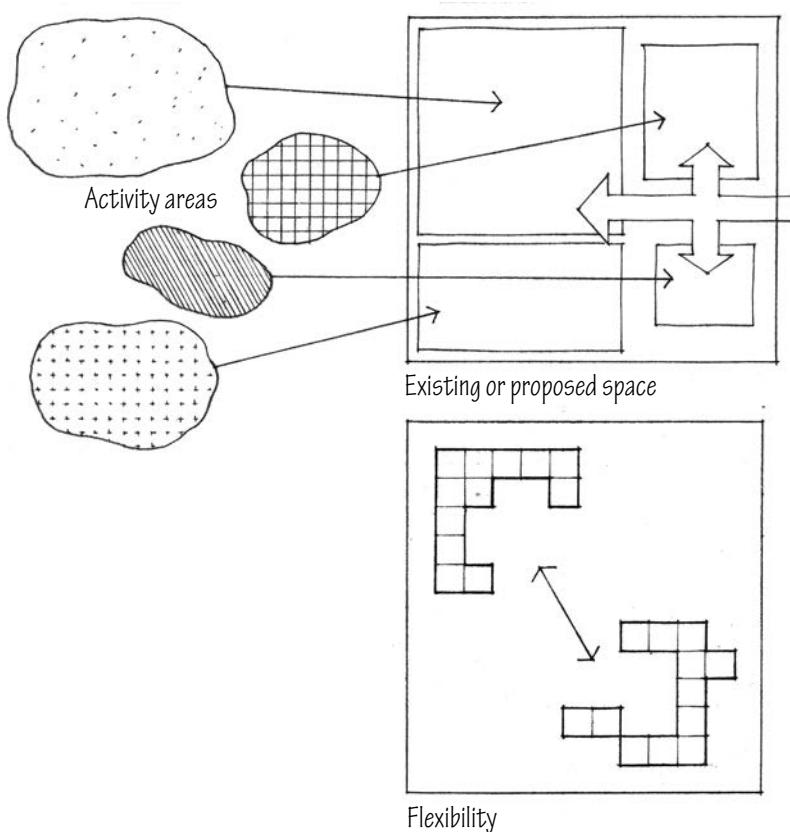
Size and proportion of zones



Available daylight



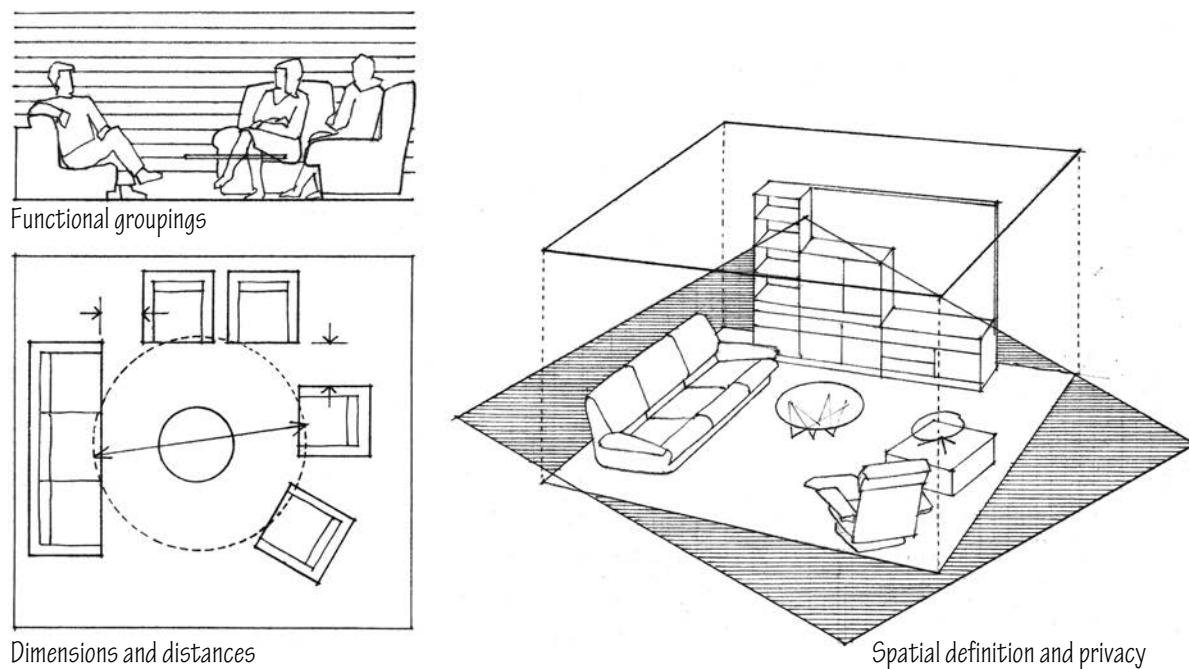
PLAN ARRANGEMENTS

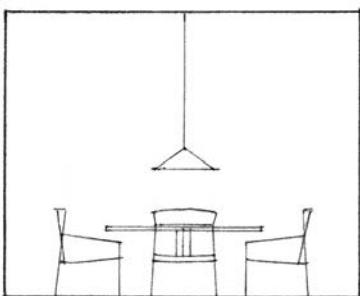


From the preceding activity and space analyses, one can begin to match the space requirements of each activity to the characteristics of the available spaces. The design task then shifts to selecting furnishings, finishes, and lighting and arranging them into three-dimensional patterns within the given spatial boundaries. These arrangements of shapes and forms in space should respond both to functional and aesthetic criteria.

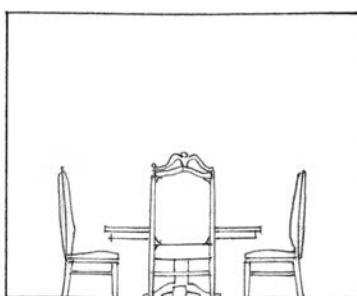
Function

- Activity-specific grouping of furniture
- Workable dimensions and clearances
- Appropriate social distances
- Suitable visual and acoustical privacy
- Adequate flexibility or adaptability
- Appropriate lighting and other building services





Scalar relationship to space



Aesthetics

- Appropriate scale to space function
- Visual grouping: unity with variety
- Figure-ground reading
- Three-dimensional composition: rhythm, harmony, balance
- Appropriate orientation toward light, view, or an internal focus
- Shape, color, texture, and pattern

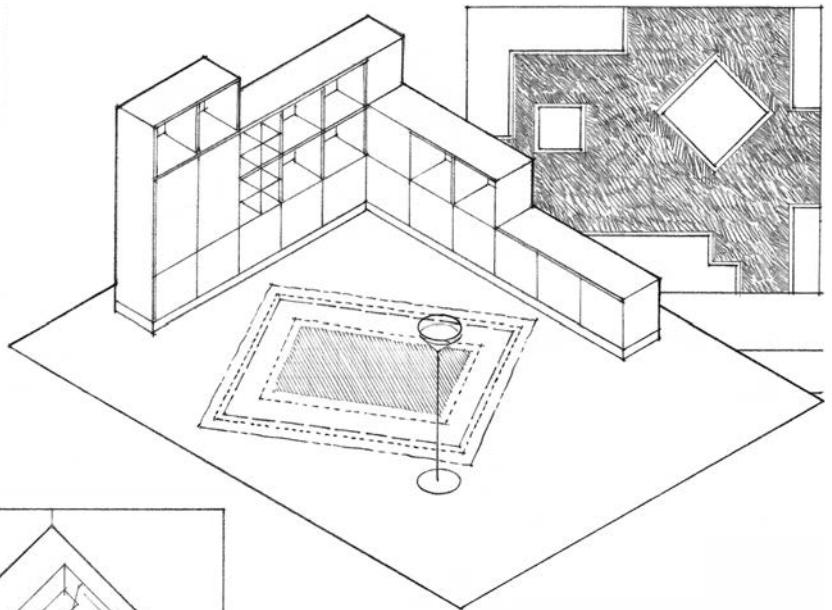
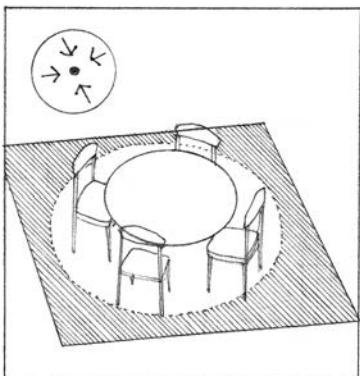
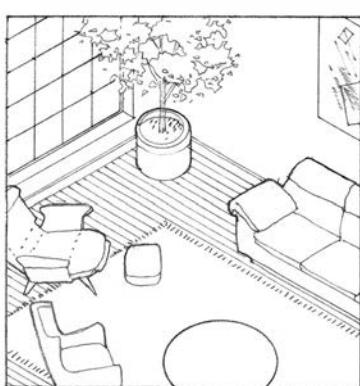
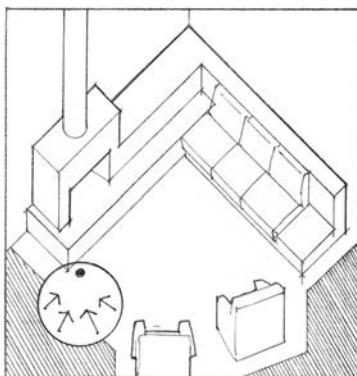


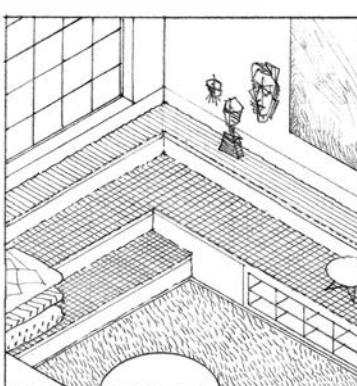
Figure-ground patterns

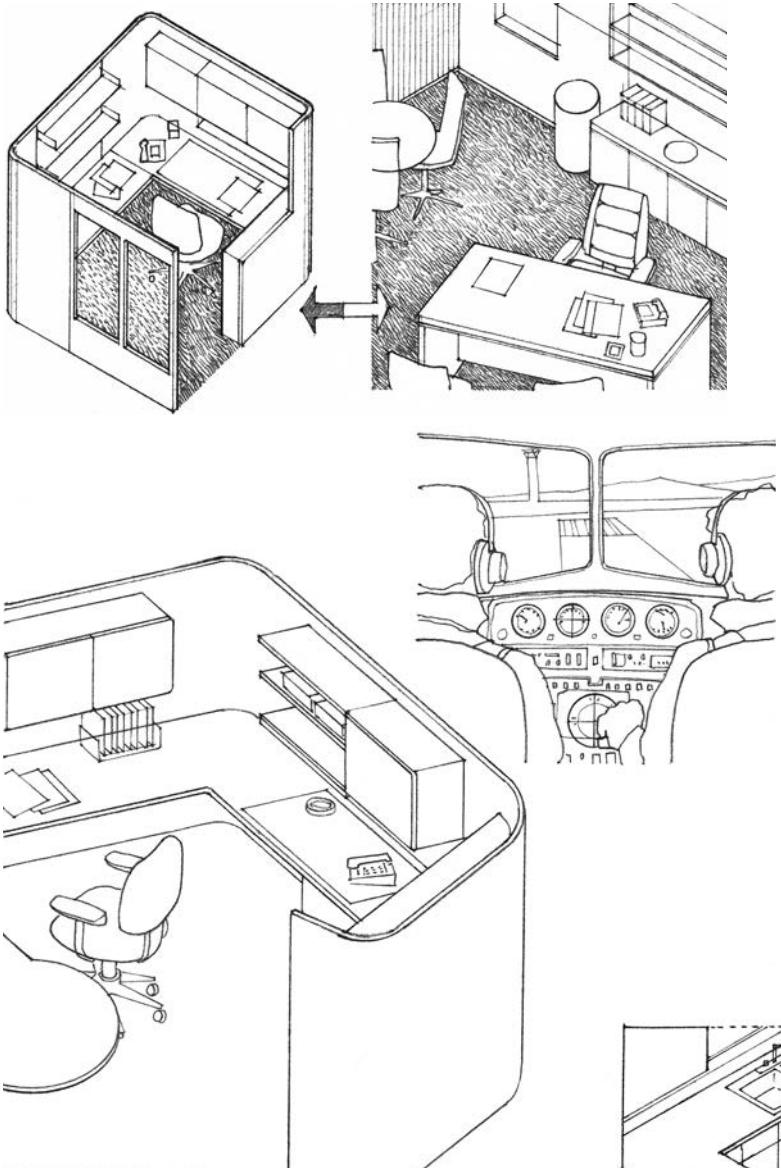


Grouping and orientation



Objects in space or merging with space





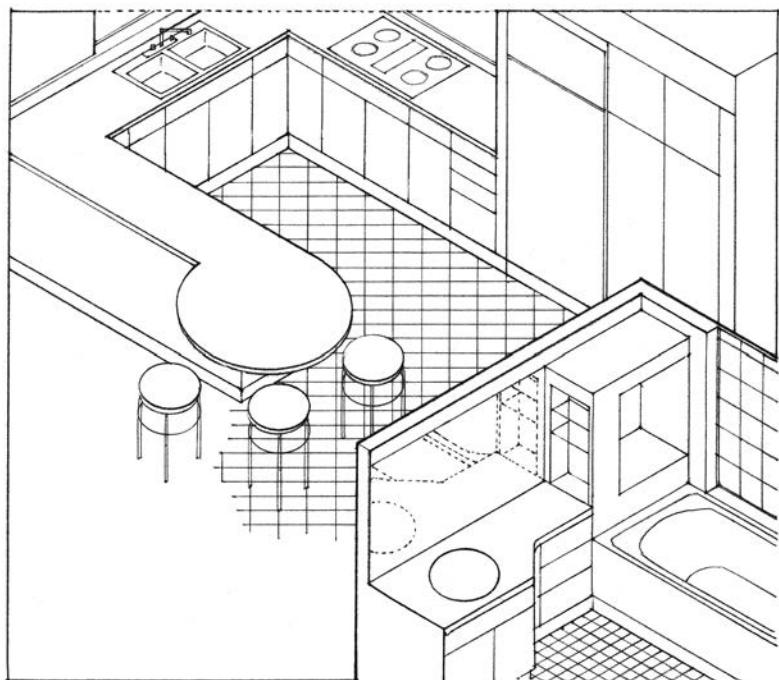
Tight-fit or tailored arrangements require careful study and analysis of functional relationships.

Tight Fit

Plan arrangements can be generally classified into two broad categories—tight fit and loose fit—according to how each uses the available space. The first exhibits a close correspondence between furniture and equipment. This may be particularly appropriate when space is at a premium or when functional efficiency is important. It is important that a tight-fit arrangement be laid out with great care for its intended use; however, it may not be readily adaptable to other uses.

A tight-fit arrangement usually employs modular or unit furniture components that can be combined in a number of ways to form integrated, often multifunctional, assemblies. Such assemblies utilize space efficiently and leave a maximum amount of floor area around them. A tailored arrangement of modular furniture can also be used to define a space within a larger volume for greater privacy or intimacy.

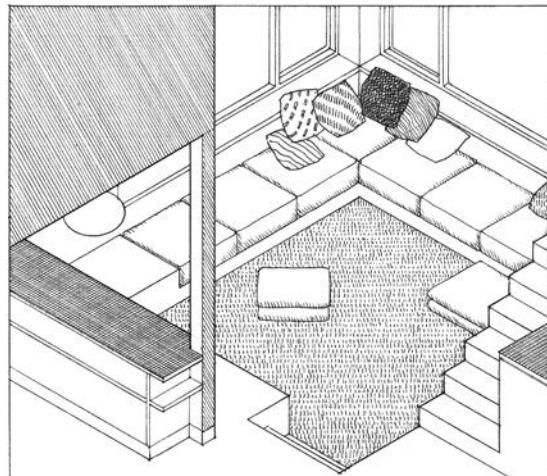
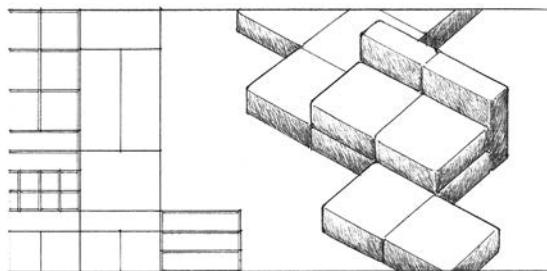
Carried to an extreme, a tight fit arrangement can be built in place and become a permanent extension of a room's architecture. Like modular and unit arrangements, built-in furniture utilizes space efficiently, conveys an orderly and unified appearance, and mitigates visual clutter in a space.



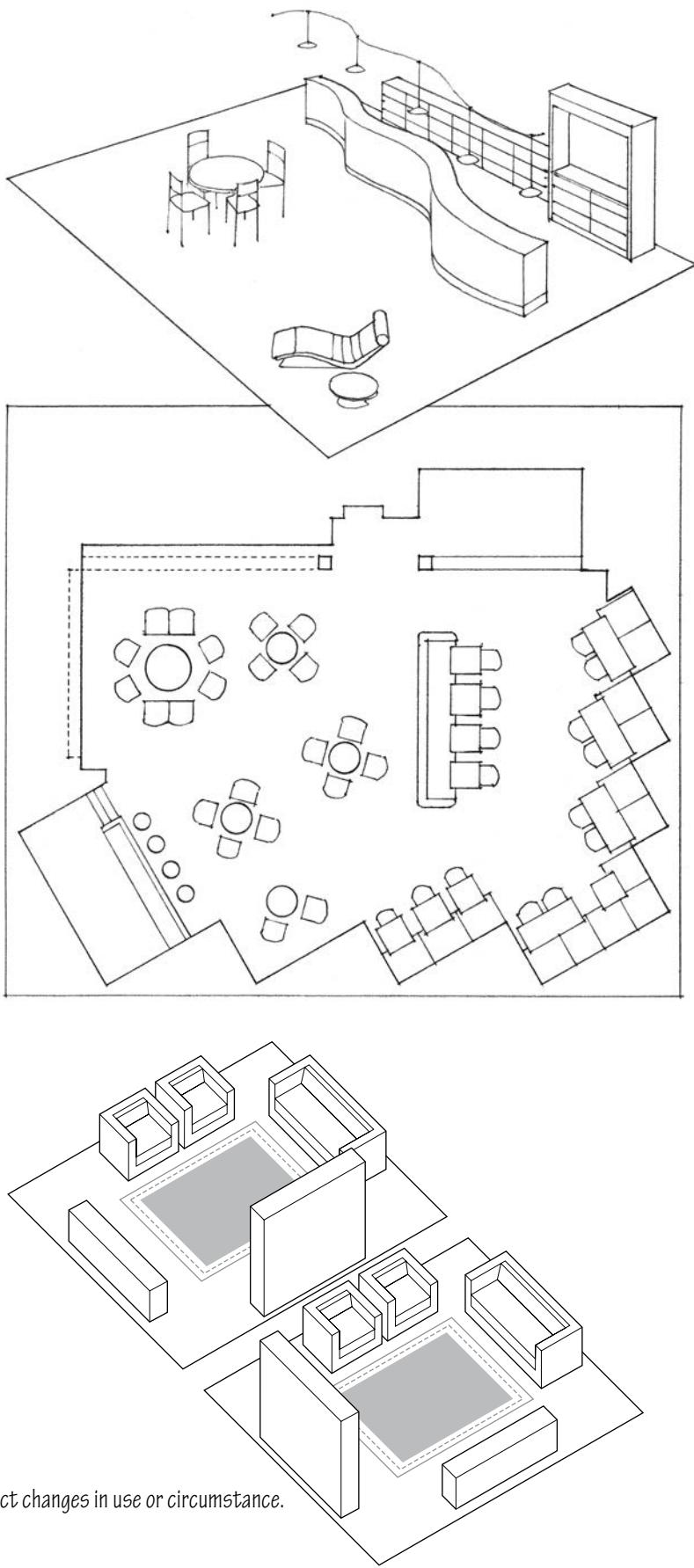
Loose Fit

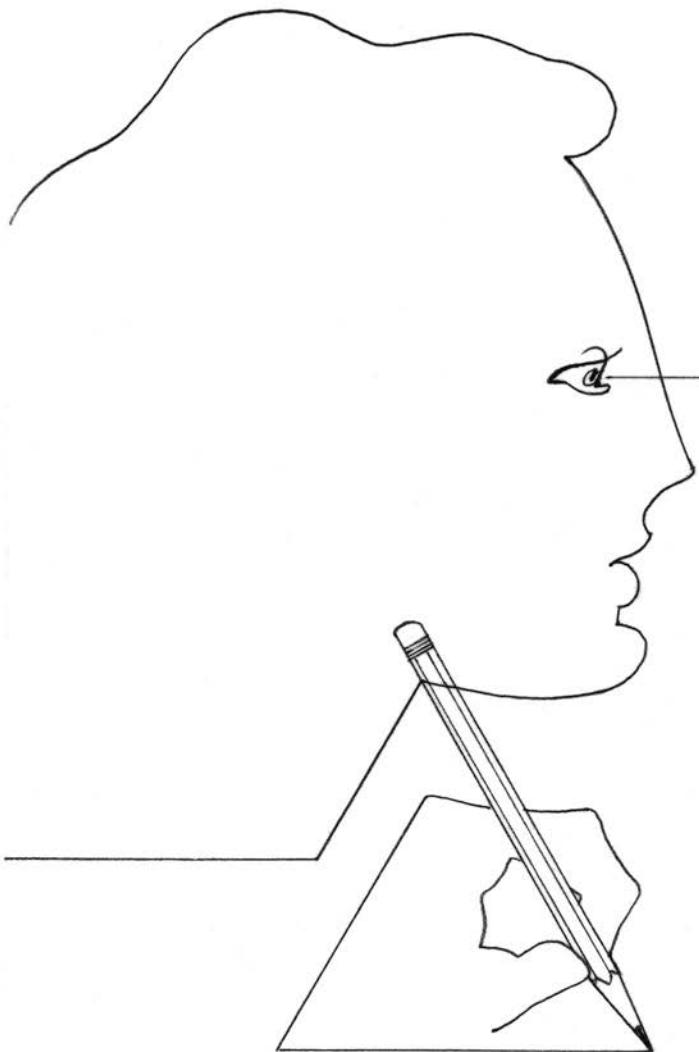
A second, more common type of plan arrangement exhibits a looser fit between function and space. Loose-fit arrangements are desirable for the flexibility and diversity they afford.

Most rooms with a loose-fit arrangement can accommodate a variety of uses, especially if the furniture used can be easily moved and rearranged. This inherent flexibility in adapting to changes in use or circumstance makes a loose-fit arrangement the more common method for laying out furniture in a space. It also offers the opportunity for a greater mix of furniture types, sizes, and styles to be selected over time to suit almost any design situation.



Modular furnishings are flexible and utilize space efficiently.



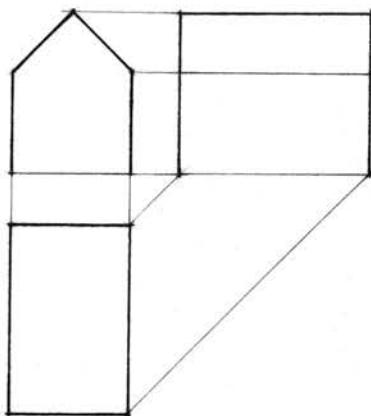


Designers use drawings in many ways. The presentation drawings executed at the end of a design project are used to persuade the client, peers, or the general public of the merits of a design proposal. Construction or working drawings are required to provide graphic instructions for the production or building of a project. However, designers use both the process and products of drawing in other ways as well. In design, the role of drawing expands to include recording what exists, working out ideas, and speculating and planning for the future. Throughout the design process, we use drawings to guide the development of an idea from concept to proposal to constructed reality.

Whether executed with a pen or pencil on paper or with a computer and graphic or computer-aided design (CAD) software, the graphic representation of design ideas is particularly useful in the early stages of the design process. Drawing a design idea on paper enables us to explore and clarify it in much the same way as we form and order a thought by putting it into words. Making design ideas concrete and visible enables us to act on them. We can analyze them, see them in a new light, combine them in new ways, and transform them into new ideas.

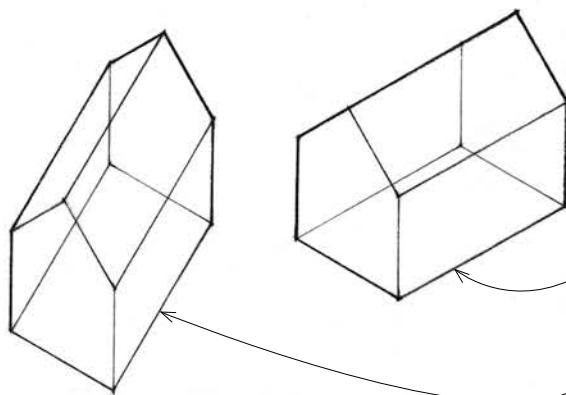
The development of three-dimensional CAD programs that present well-developed images during the design process has aided the visualization of designs. However, impressive images should not deter careful analysis and investigation of alternatives. Many interior designers find that they can concentrate on the synthesis of design ideas more easily with paper and a pen or pencil, without the distraction and restraints of operating the computer software. Remember that loose sketches can evolve into explorations of alternative design schemes. Analyze your ideas, synthesize the good ones, and evaluate the results. Then refine them into preliminary designs for further evaluation and development.

The central task of architectural drawing is representing three-dimensional forms, constructions, and spatial environments on a two-dimensional surface. Three distinct types of drawing systems have evolved over time to accomplish this mission: *multiview*, *paraline*, and *perspective* drawings. These visual systems of representation constitute a formal graphic language that is governed by a consistent set of principles.



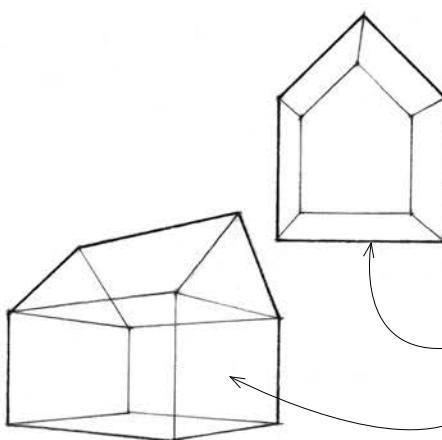
Multiview Drawings

- Plans, sections, and elevations
- A related series of *orthographic projections*



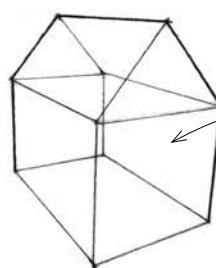
Paraline Drawings

- Axonometric projections, including isometrics, dimetrics, and trimetrics
- Oblique projections, including elevation obliques and plan obliques



Perspective Drawings

- Perspective projections
- One-point perspective
- Two-point perspective

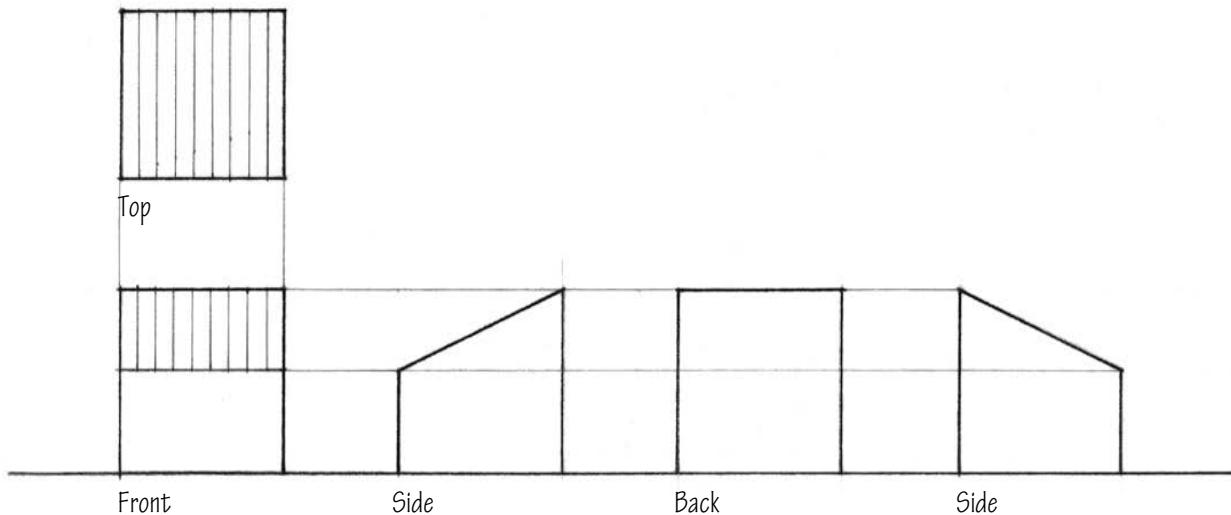
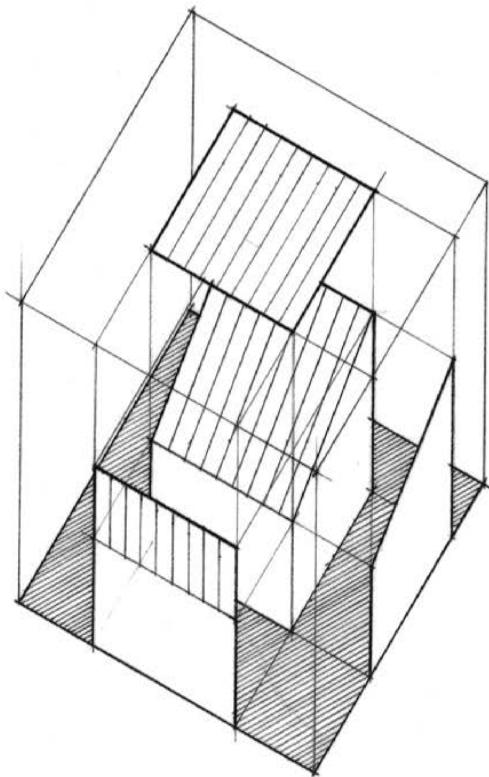


- Three-point perspective

MULTIVIEW DRAWINGS

Multiview drawings comprise the drawing types we know as plans, elevations, and sections. Each is an orthographic projection of a particular aspect of an object or construction. In orthographic projection, parallel projectors meet the picture plane at right angles. Therefore, the orthographic projection of any feature or element that is parallel to the picture plane remains true in size, shape, and configuration. This gives rise to the principal advantage of multiview drawings—the ability to locate points precisely, gauge the length and slope of lines, and describe the shape and extent of planes.

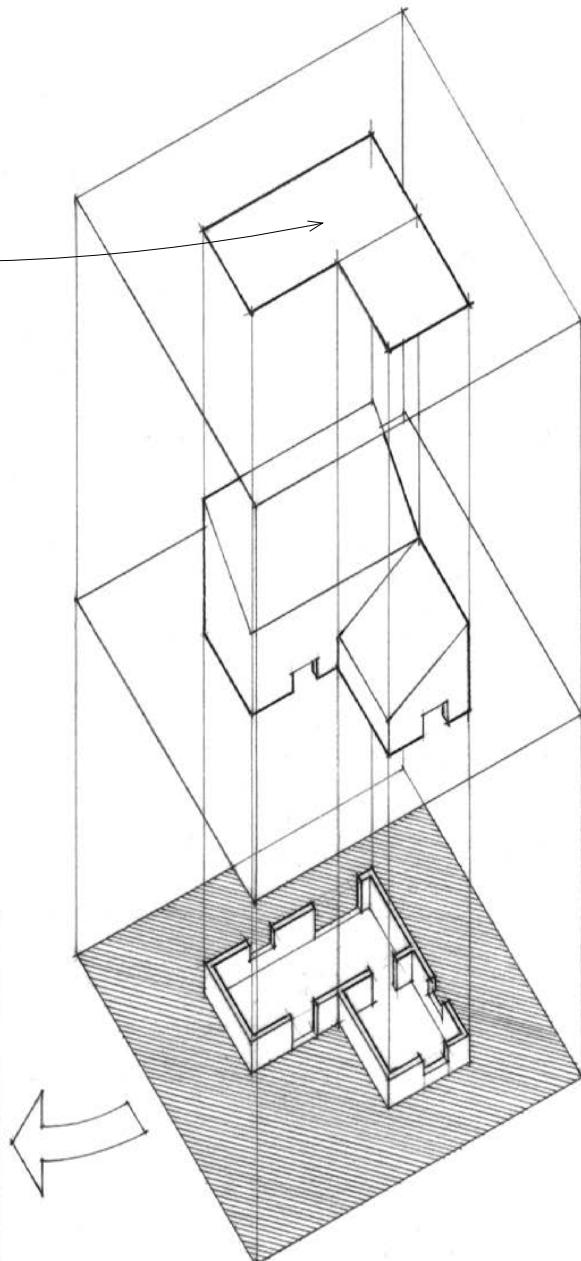
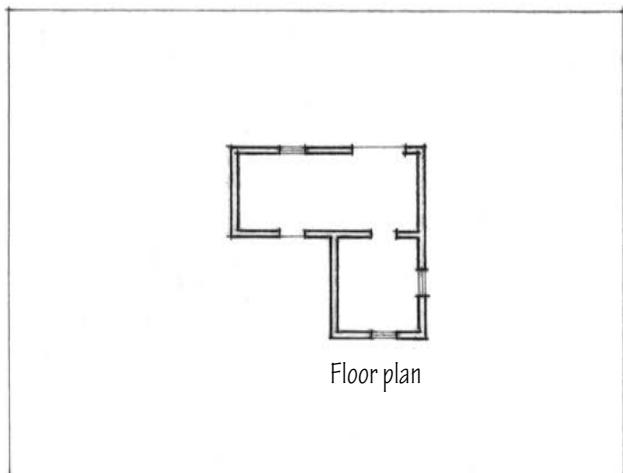
A single multiview drawing can reveal only partial information about an object or construction. There is an inherent ambiguity of depth because the third dimension is flattened onto the picture plane. Whatever depth we read in a solitary plan, section, or elevation must be inferred from such graphic depth cues as hierarchical line weights and contrasting tonal values. Although a sense of depth can be inferred, it can be known with certainty only by looking at additional views. We, therefore, require a series of distinct but related views to describe fully the three-dimensional nature of a form or composition—hence the term “multiview.”



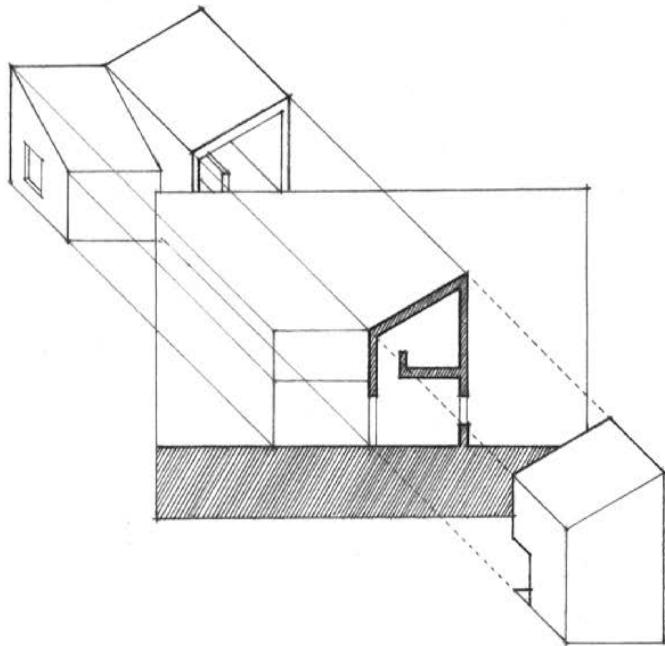
A plan is an orthographic projection of an object, structure, or composition on a horizontal plane.

A *floor plan* represents a section through a building or portion of a building after a horizontal slice is made, usually at about four feet (about 1.2 m) above the floor, and the upper part is removed.

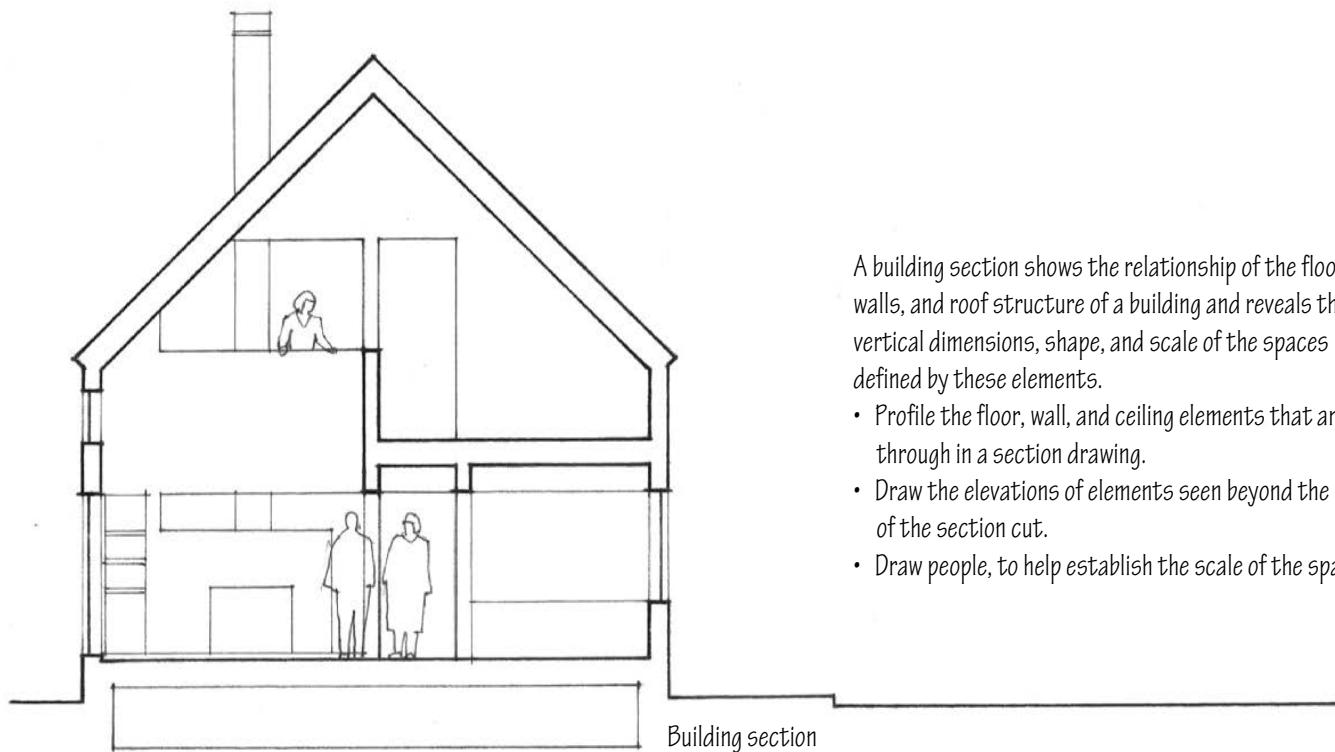
- Profile the thicknesses of walls and columns that are cut through.
- Note the locations and sizes of doors and windows.



SECTIONS



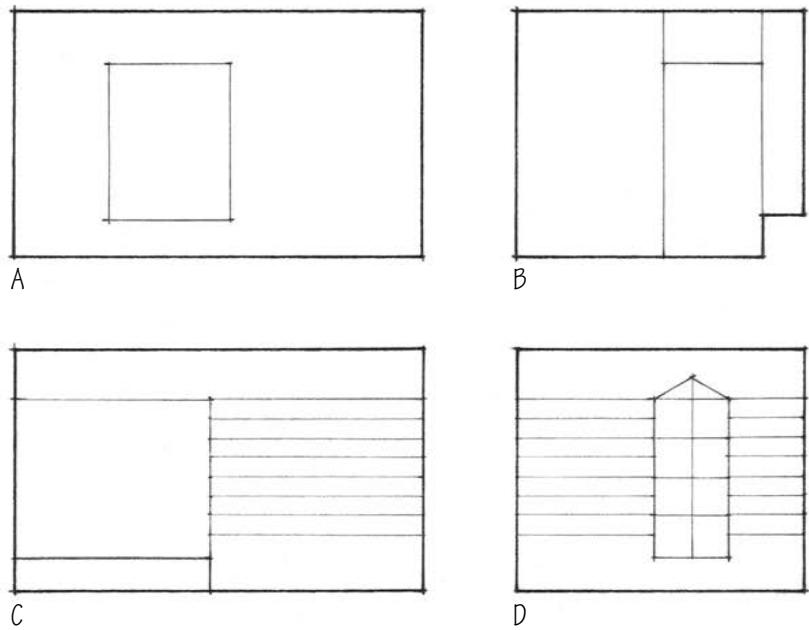
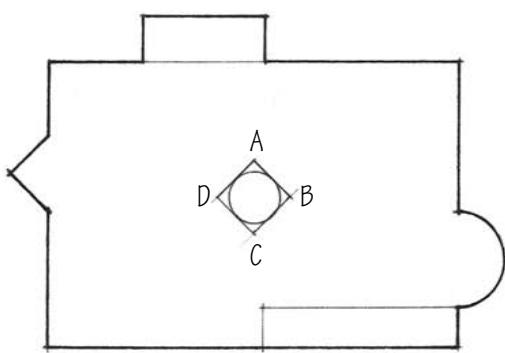
A *section* is an orthographic projection of an object or structure as it would appear if cut through by a vertical plane to show its internal configuration.



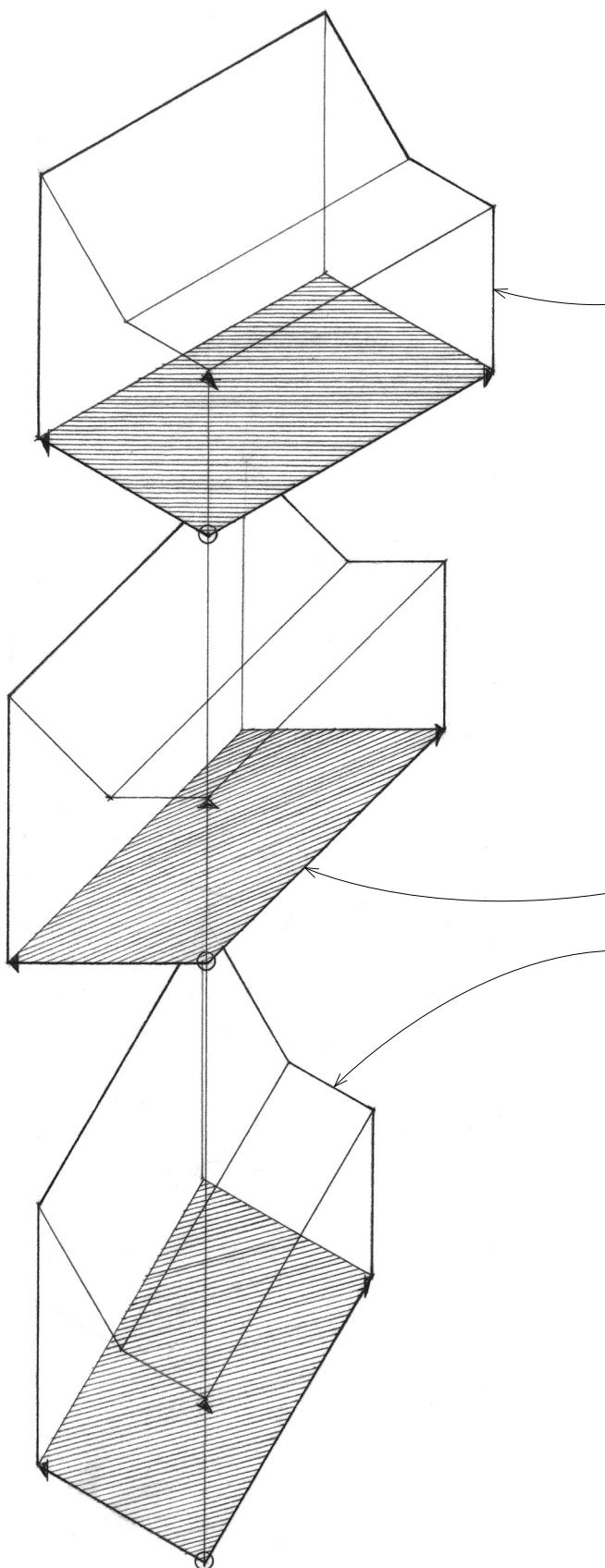
A building section shows the relationship of the floors, walls, and roof structure of a building and reveals the vertical dimensions, shape, and scale of the spaces defined by these elements.

- Profile the floor, wall, and ceiling elements that are cut through in a section drawing.
- Draw the elevations of elements seen beyond the plane of the section cut.
- Draw people, to help establish the scale of the space.

Interior elevations are orthographic projections of the significant interior walls of a building. While normally included in the drawing of building sections, they may stand alone to study and present highly detailed spaces, such as kitchens, bathrooms, and stairways. In this case, instead of profiling the section cut, we emphasize the boundary line of the interior wall surfaces.



Interior elevation



Paraline drawings convey the three-dimensional nature of a form or construction in a single pictorial view. They include axonometric projections—a subset of orthographic projections, the most common of which is the isometric projection—as well as the entire class of oblique projections.

Axonometric Projections

- Isometrics—The three principal axes make equal angles with the picture plane.
- Dimetrics—Two of the three principal axes make equal angles with the picture plane.
- Trimetrics—The three principal axes make unequal angles with the picture plane.

Oblique Projections

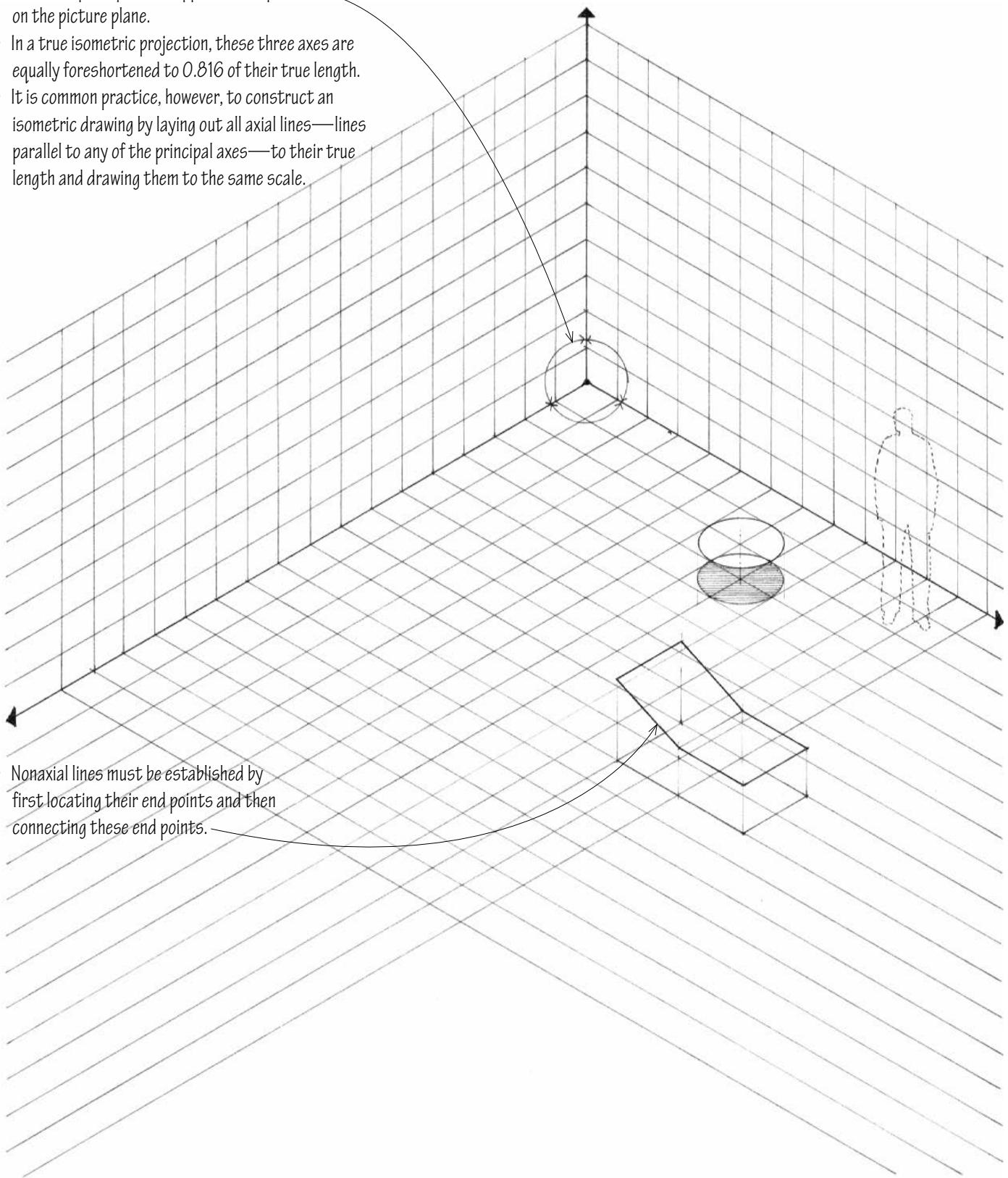
- Elevation obliques—A principal vertical face is oriented parallel to the picture plane.
- Plan obliques—A principal horizontal face is oriented parallel to the picture plane.

In all paraline drawings—both axonometrics and obliques:

- Parallel lines in the subject remain parallel in the drawn view.
- All dimensions parallel to any of the three principal axes can be measured and drawn to scale.

Isometrics are axonometric projections of objects or structures inclined to the picture plane in such a way that the three principal axes are equally foreshortened.

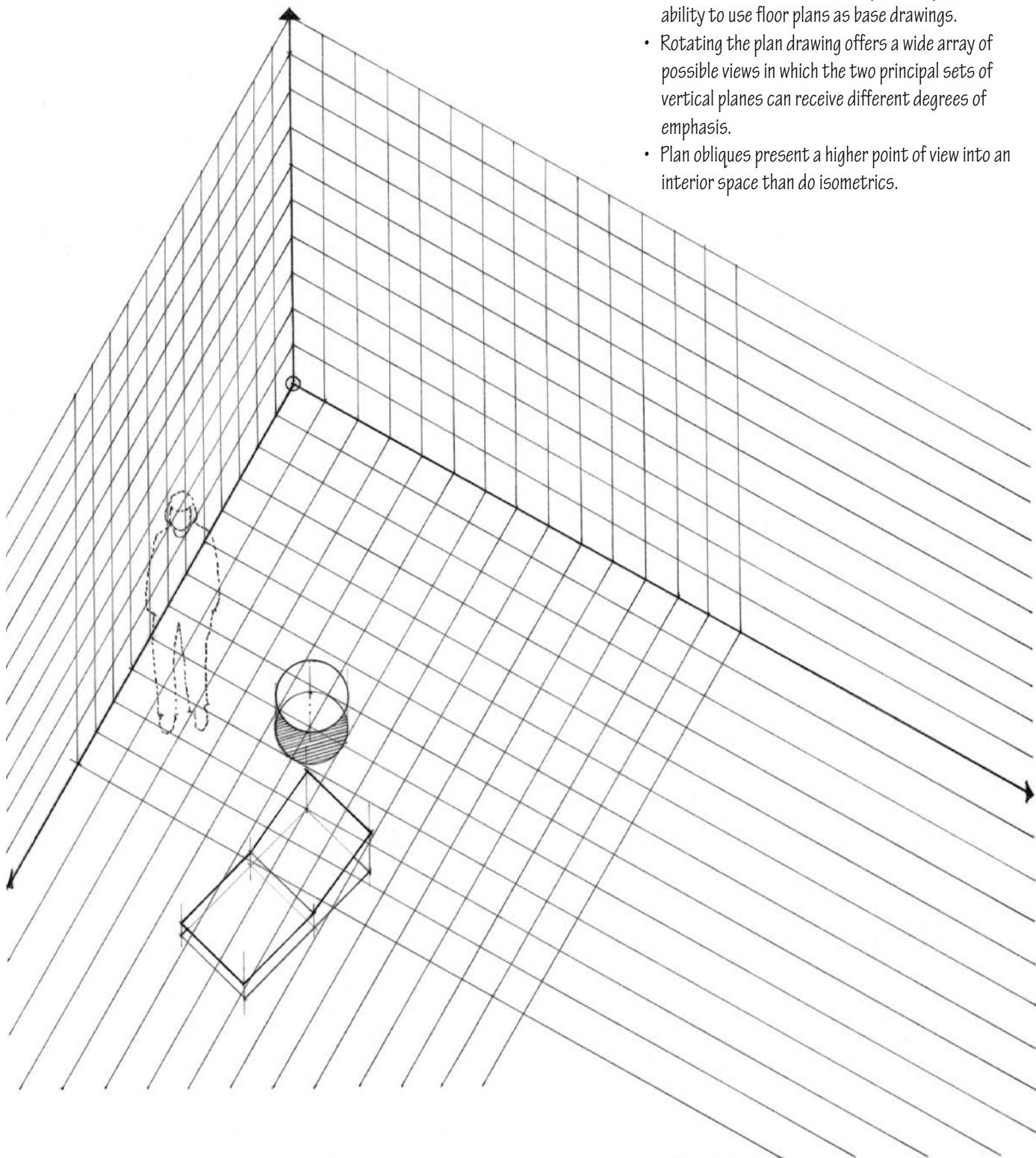
- The three principal axes appear 120° apart on the picture plane.
- In a true isometric projection, these three axes are equally foreshortened to 0.816 of their true length.
- It is common practice, however, to construct an isometric drawing by laying out all axial lines—lines parallel to any of the principal axes—to their true length and drawing them to the same scale.



PLAN OBLIQUES

Plan obliques orient the horizontal planes of the subject parallel to the picture plane. These horizontal planes therefore reveal their true size and shape, while the two prime sets of vertical planes are foreshortened.

- An advantage in constructing plan obliques is the ability to use floor plans as base drawings.
- Rotating the plan drawing offers a wide array of possible views in which the two principal sets of vertical planes can receive different degrees of emphasis.
- Plan obliques present a higher point of view into an interior space than do isometrics.

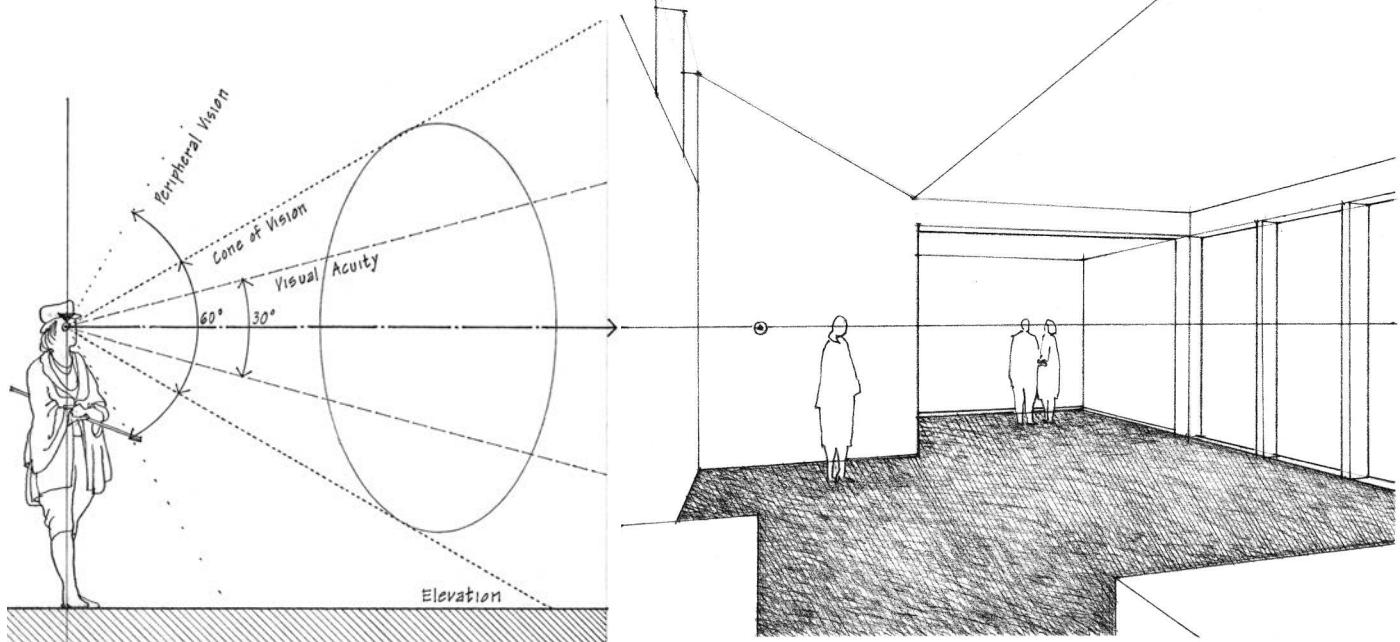
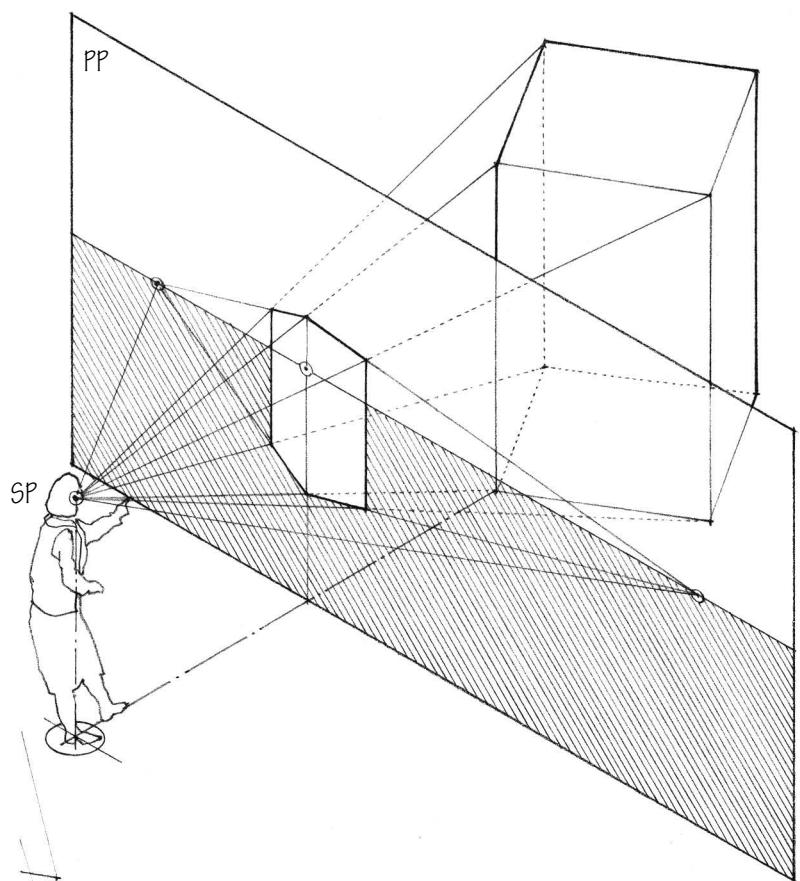


Perspective projection portrays a three-dimensional form or construction by projecting all of its points to a picture plane (PP) through the use of straight lines that converge at a fixed point that represents a single eye of the observer. While we normally see through both eyes in what is termed binocular vision, perspective projection assumes that we view a three-dimensional subject or scene through a single eye, which we call the station point (SP).

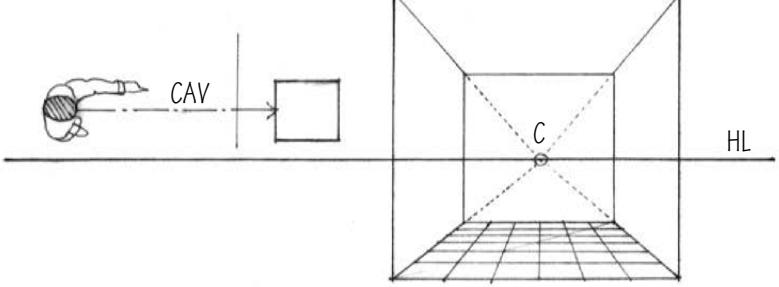
Multiview and paraline drawings utilize parallel projectors, and the projected size of an element remains the same regardless of its distance from the picture plane. The converging projectors or sightlines in a perspective drawing, however, alter the apparent size of a line or plane according to its distance from the picture plane and the observer. In other words, converging sightlines reduce the size of distant objects.

The primary use of perspective drawings in design is to convey an experiential view of space and spatial relationships.

3D computer modeling programs, while following the mathematical principles of perspective, can easily create distorted perspective views. Keeping the central portion of a subject or scene within a reasonable 60° cone of vision is critical to avoiding such distortion.

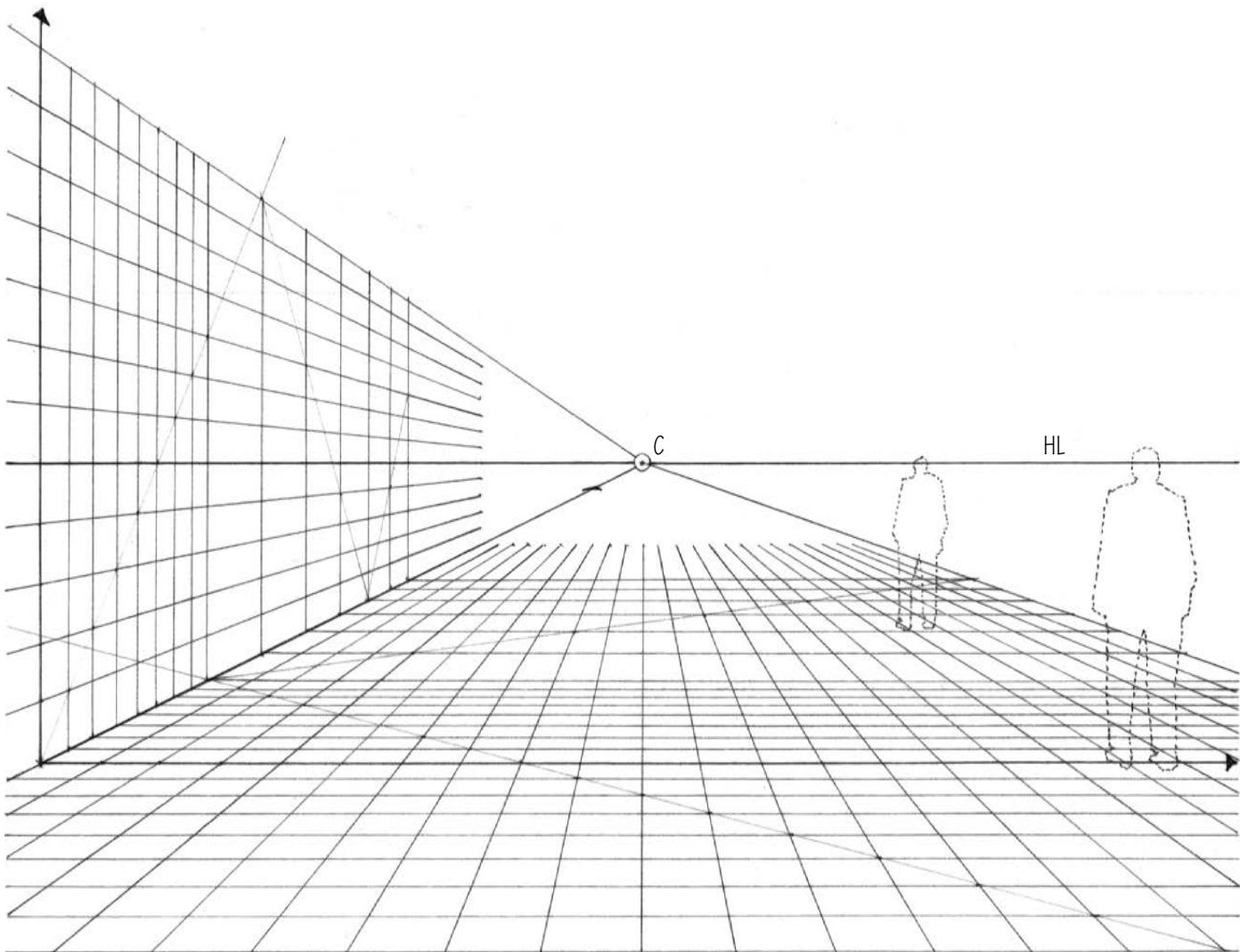


ONE-POINT PERSPECTIVES



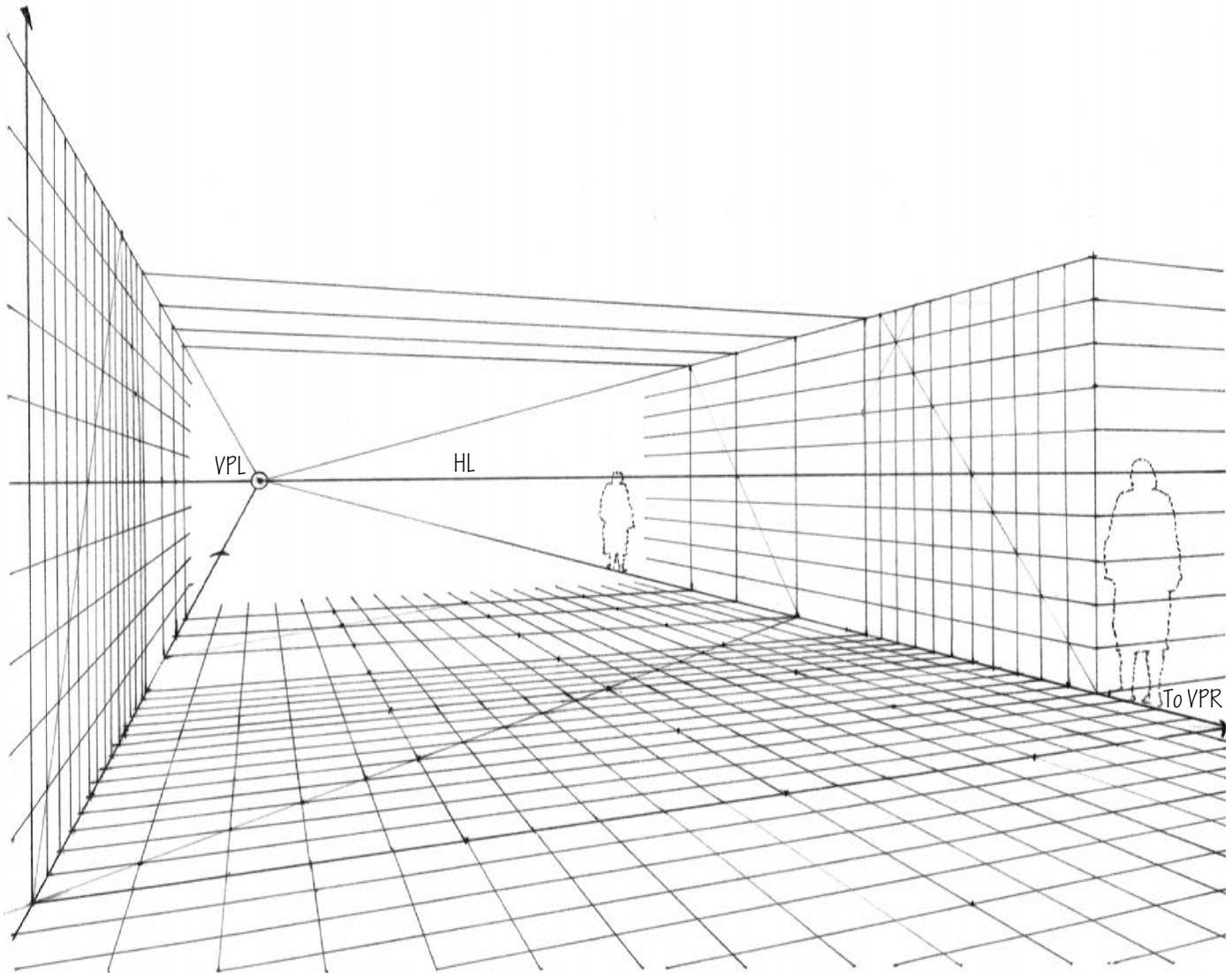
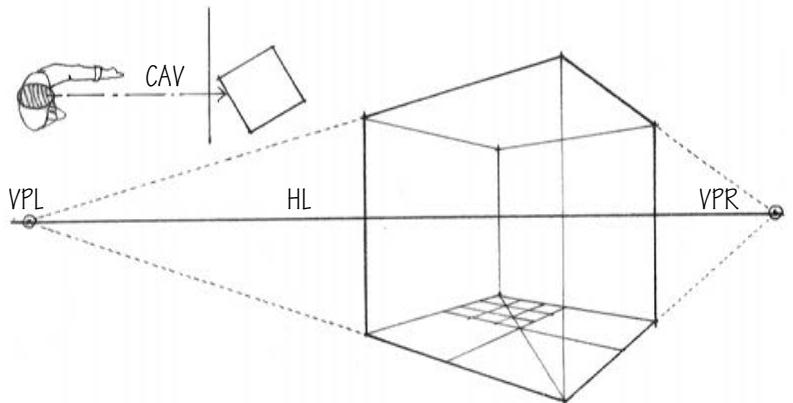
If we view a cube with our central axis of vision (CAV) perpendicular to one of its faces, all of the cube's vertical lines are parallel with the picture plane and remain vertical. Horizontal lines that are parallel to the PP and perpendicular to the CAV remain horizontal. Lines parallel to the CAV, however, will appear to converge at a single point on the horizon line (HL), the center of vision (C).

One-point perspectives are particularly effective in depicting interior spaces because the display of three bounding faces provides a clear sense of enclosure.

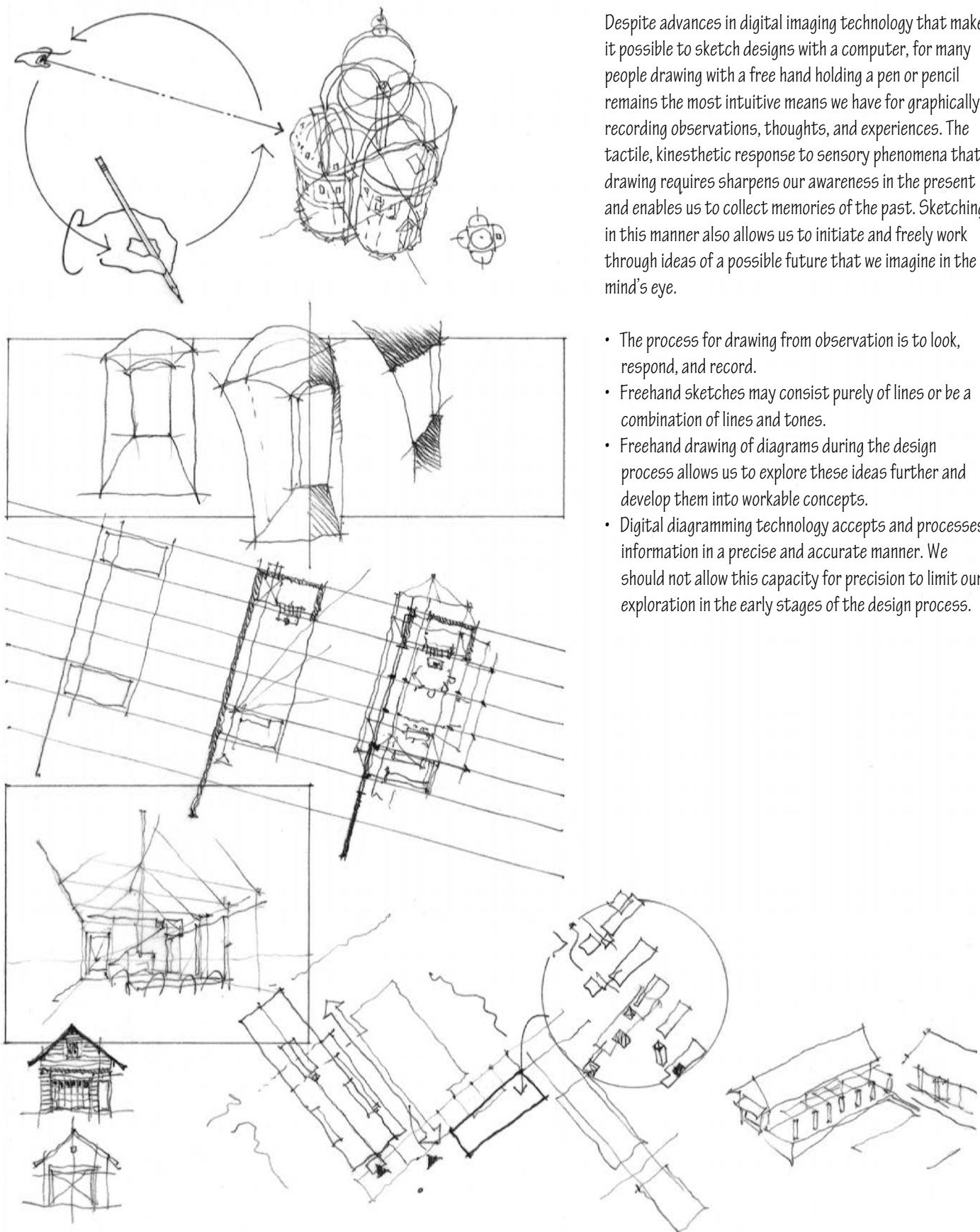


If we shift our view of a cube so that we view it obliquely, but keep our CAV horizontal, then the cube's vertical lines will remain vertical. The two sets of horizontal lines, however, are now oblique to the PP and will appear to converge, one set to a left vanishing point (VPL) and the other to a right vanishing point (VPR). These are the two points referred to in two-point perspective.

The pictorial effect of a two-point perspective varies with the observer's angle of view. In depicting interior spaces, a two-point perspective is most effective when the angle of view approaches that of a one-point perspective. Any perspective view that displays three bounding faces of a spatial volume provides the clear sense of enclosure inherent in interior spaces.

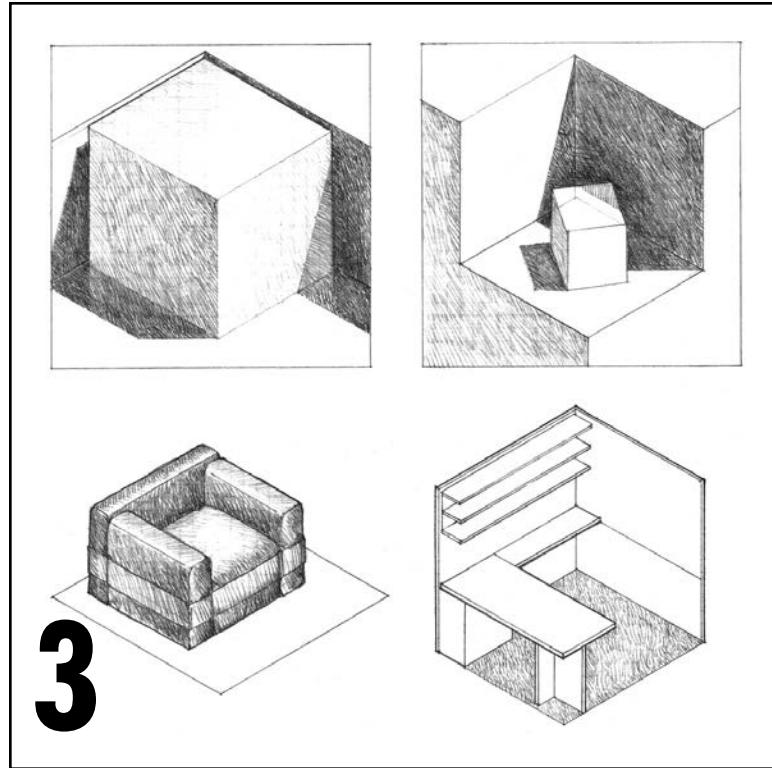


FREEHAND SKETCHING



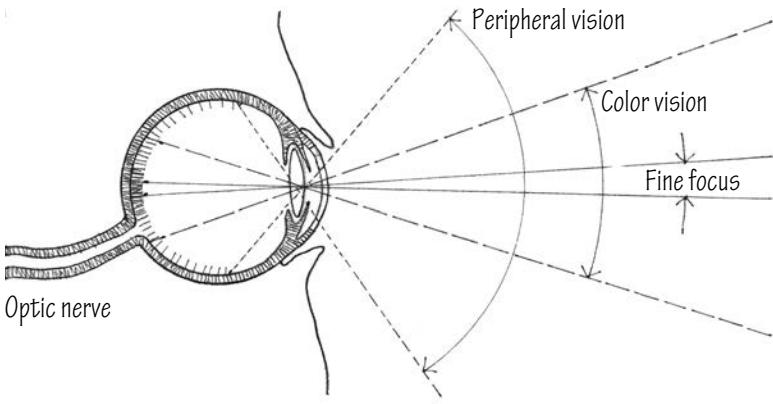
Despite advances in digital imaging technology that make it possible to sketch designs with a computer, for many people drawing with a free hand holding a pen or pencil remains the most intuitive means we have for graphically recording observations, thoughts, and experiences. The tactile, kinesthetic response to sensory phenomena that drawing requires sharpens our awareness in the present and enables us to collect memories of the past. Sketching in this manner also allows us to initiate and freely work through ideas of a possible future that we imagine in the mind's eye.

- The process for drawing from observation is to look, respond, and record.
- Freehand sketches may consist purely of lines or be a combination of lines and tones.
- Freehand drawing of diagrams during the design process allows us to explore these ideas further and develop them into workable concepts.
- Digital diagramming technology accepts and processes information in a precise and accurate manner. We should not allow this capacity for precision to limit our exploration in the early stages of the design process.



3

A Design Vocabulary



Our ability to focus on and perceive detail is restricted to a fairly narrow cone of vision. In surveying our visual field, our eyes continually move, scan, focus, and refocus to discover visual information. To make sense of what we see, the brain interprets the visual data gathered by our eyes and assembles the information into visual patterns that we can recognize and understand.

The normal process of perception is utilitarian and geared toward recognition. When we see a chair, we recognize it to be a chair if its form and configuration fit a pattern established by chairs we have seen and used in the past. If we look carefully, however, we will also be able to perceive the chair's specific shape, size, proportion, color, texture, and material. This ability to see beyond recognition and utility is extremely important to designers. We must continually strive to see and be conscious of the specific visual characteristics of things and how they relate to and interact with each other to form the aesthetic quality of our visual environments.

A Design Vocabulary

Form

Shape

Color

Texture

Light

Proportion

Scale

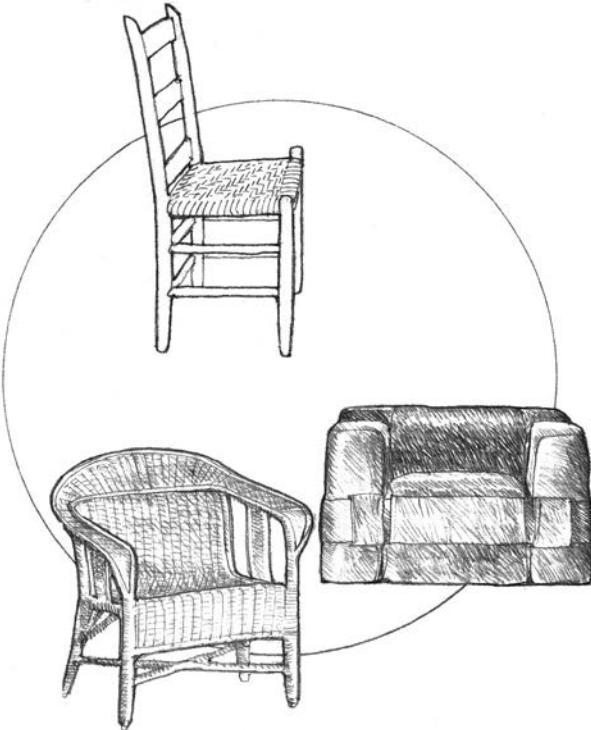
Balance

Harmony

Unity and Variety

Rhythm

Emphasis



Our perception of the visual shape, size, color, and texture of things is affected by the optical environment in which we see them and the relationships we can discern between them and their visual setting. If our visual field were undifferentiated, we would be unable to identify anything. As a perceptible change in tonal value, color, and texture occurred, however, we would begin to discern an object or figure as differentiated from its background. To read the lines, shapes, and forms of objects in our field of vision, therefore, we must first perceive contrast between them and their background.

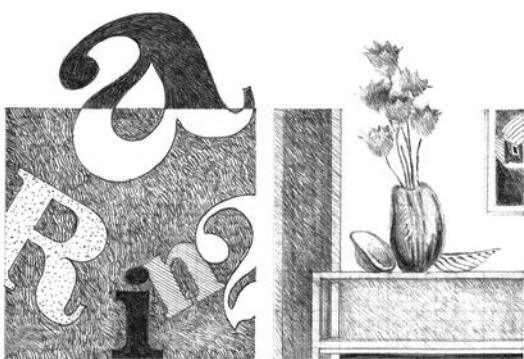
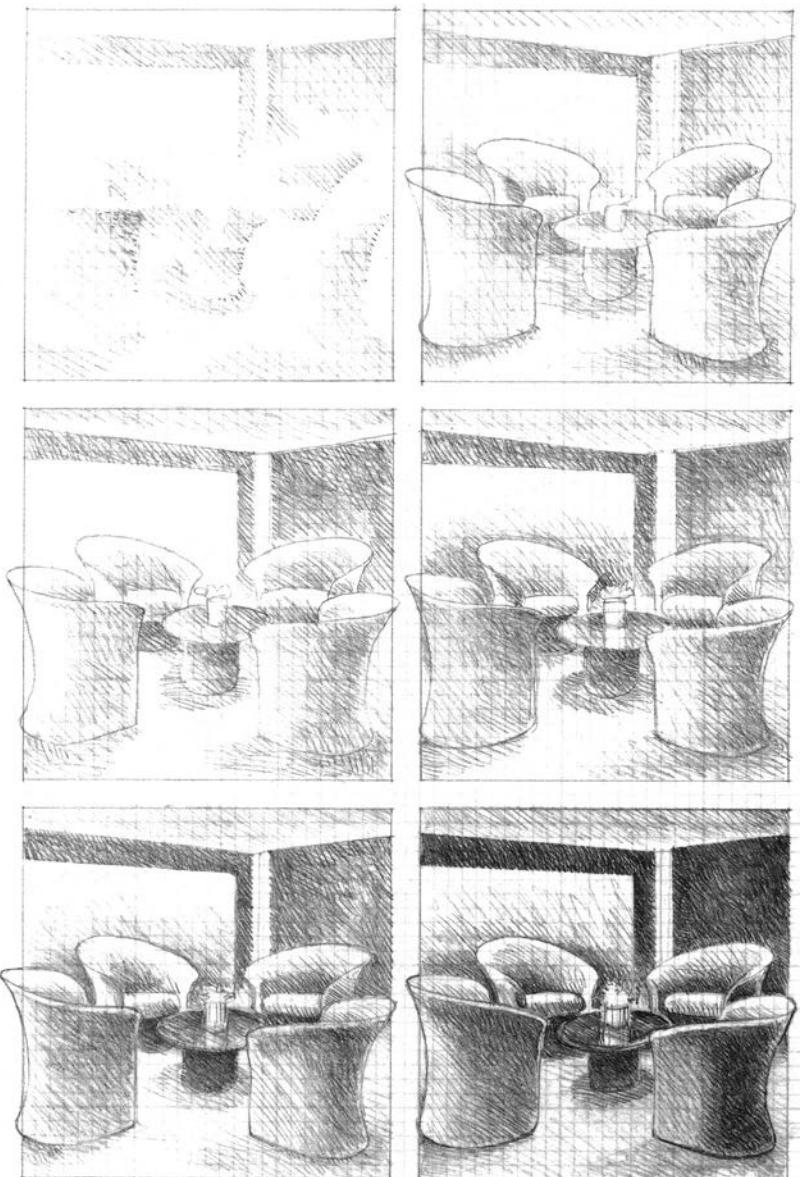
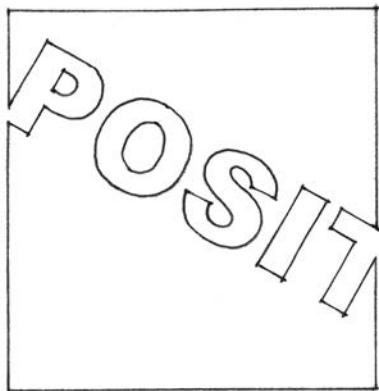
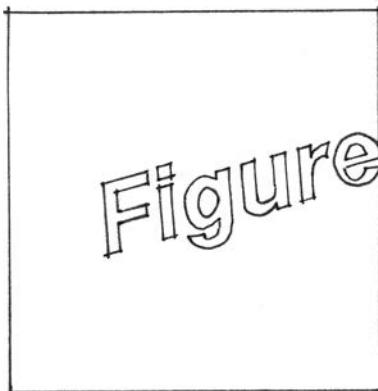


Figure-ground relationships

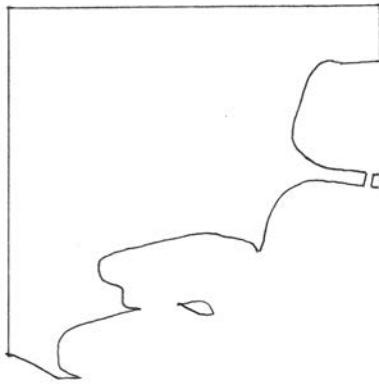
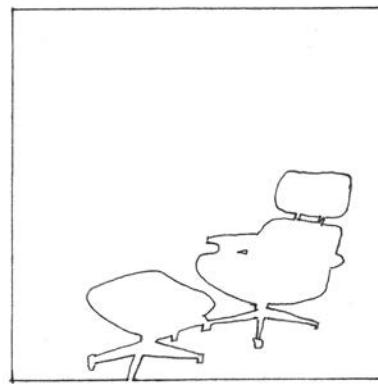


Visual contrast

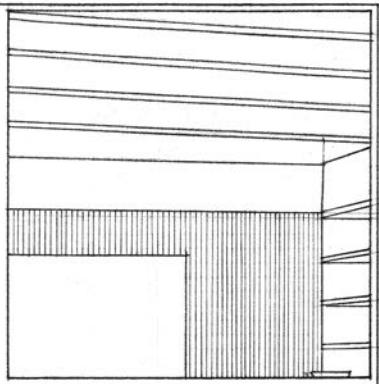
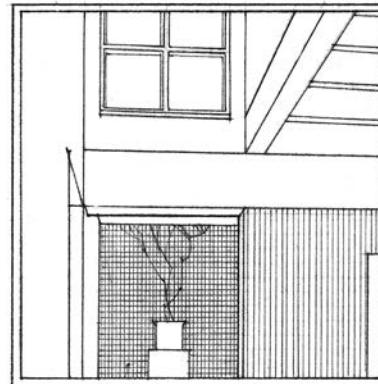
FIGURE-GROUND



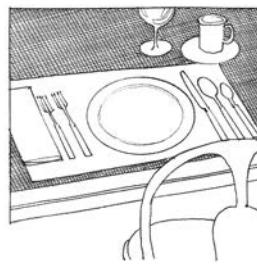
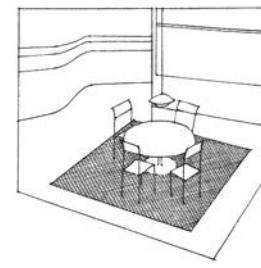
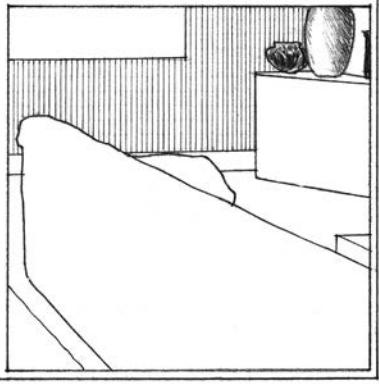
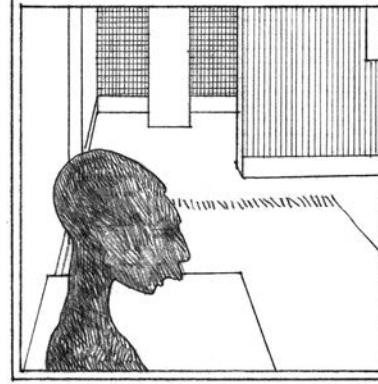
Those elements that appear to stand out from or in front of their background are called figures. In addition to tonal value contrast, what distinguishes a figure from its background is its shape and size relative to its field. While a figure shares a common border with its background, it has a more distinct and recognizable shape that makes it appear as an object. Figures are sometimes referred to as positive elements—having a positive shape—while backgrounds are described as negative or neutral elements—lacking a clear or discernible shape.



Figures are most discernible when surrounded by a generous amount of space or background. When the size of a figure is such that it crowds its background, the background can develop its own distinct shape and interact with the shape of the figure. At times, an ambiguous figure-ground relationship can occur wherein elements in a composition can be seen alternately, but not simultaneously, as both figure and ground.



Our visual world is, in reality, a composite image constructed from a continuous array of figure-ground relationships. In interior design, these relationships can be seen to exist at several scales, depending on one's point of view.



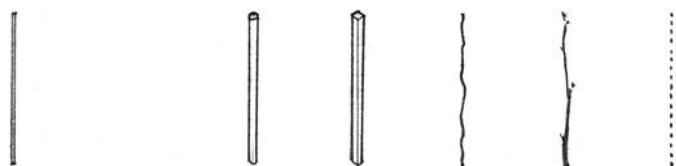
Form refers to the shape and structure of something, as distinguished from its substance or material. The *point* is the generator of all form. As a point moves, it leaves a trace of a *line*—the first dimension. As the line shifts in direction, it defines a *plane*—a two-dimensional element. The plane, extended in a direction oblique or perpendicular to its surface, forms a three-dimensional *volume*.

Point, line, plane, and volume—these are the primary elements of form. All visible forms are, in reality, three-dimensional. In describing form, these primary elements differ according to their relative dimensions of length, width, and depth—a matter of proportion and scale.

Point



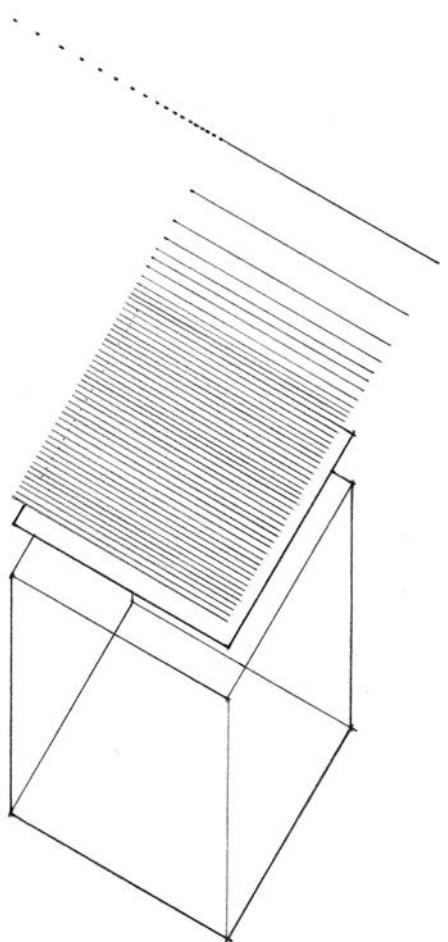
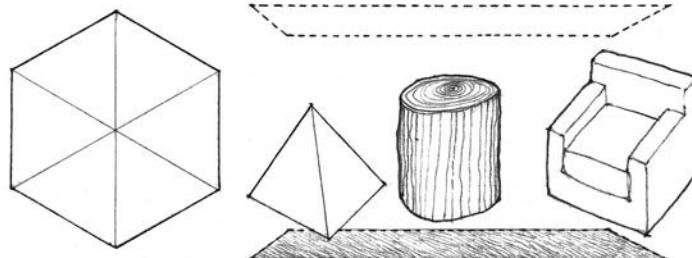
Line



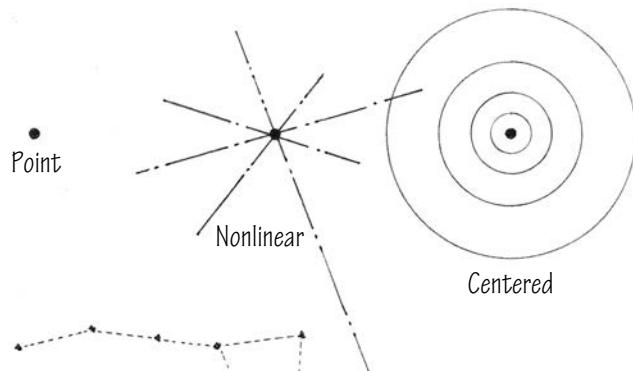
Plane



Volume



POINT



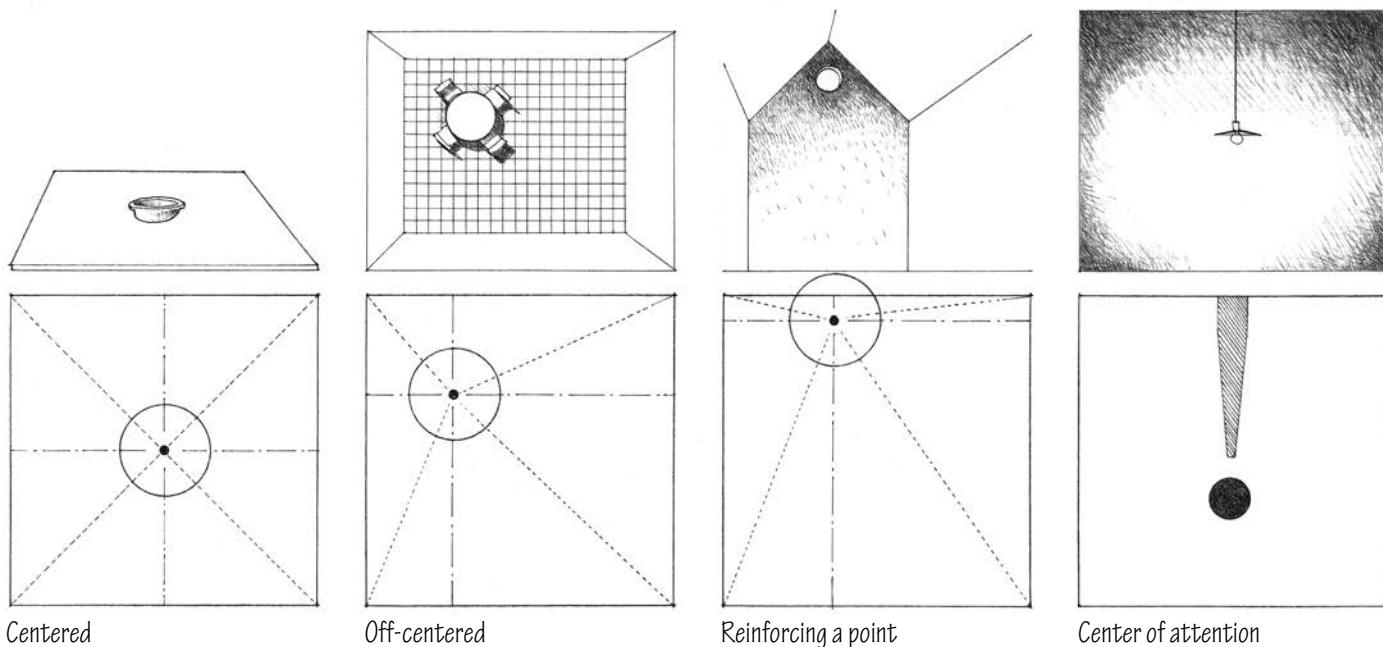
Multiple points define lines and shapes.

Relatively small shapes can read as points.

A point marks a location in space. Conceptually, it has no length, width, or depth. It is, therefore, static and directionless. As the prime generator of form, a point can mark the end of a line, the intersection of two lines, or the corner where the lines of a plane or volume meet.

As a visible form, a point is most commonly manifested as a dot, a circular shape that is small relative to its field. Other shapes can also be seen as point forms if sufficiently small, compact, and nondirectional.

When at the center of a field or space, a point is stable and at rest, and capable of organizing other elements about itself. When moved off-center, it retains its self-centering quality but becomes more dynamic. Visual tension is created between the point and its field. Point-generated forms, such as the circle and the sphere, share this self-centering quality of the point.

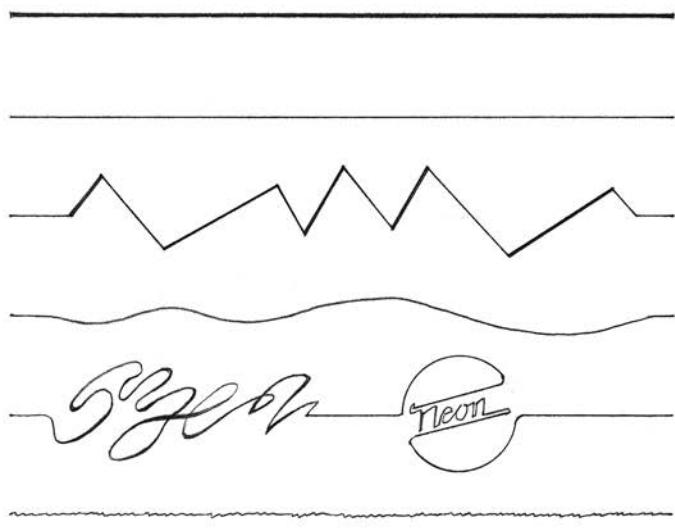
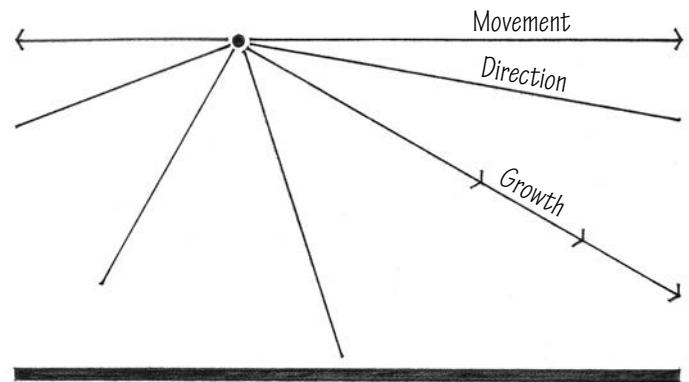


Point-generated forms, such as the circle and the sphere, are self-centering.

A point extended becomes a line. Conceptually, a line has only one dimension, length. In reality, a line's length visually dominates whatever thickness it must have to be visible. Unlike a point, which is static and directionless, a line is capable of expressing movement, direction, and growth.

As visible forms, lines may vary in weight and character. Whether bold or delicate, taut or limp, graceful or jagged, a line's visual character is due to our perception of its length-to-width ratio, its contour, and its degree of continuity.

A line can also be implied by two points. Carried further, the simple repetition of similar elements, if continuous enough, can define a line with significant textural qualities.



★ ★

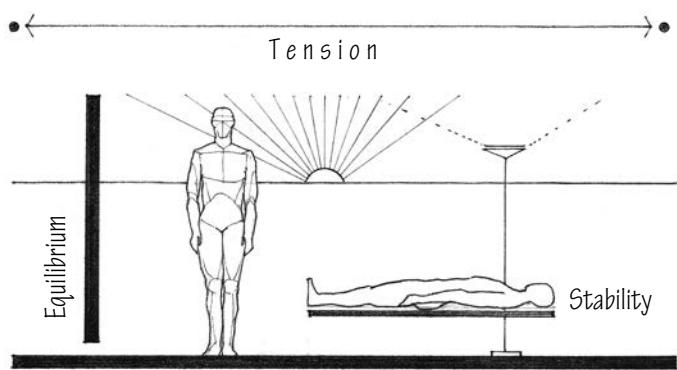
a line of type can be seen as a line with textural qual

~ ~



Lines can vary in weight, contour, and texture.

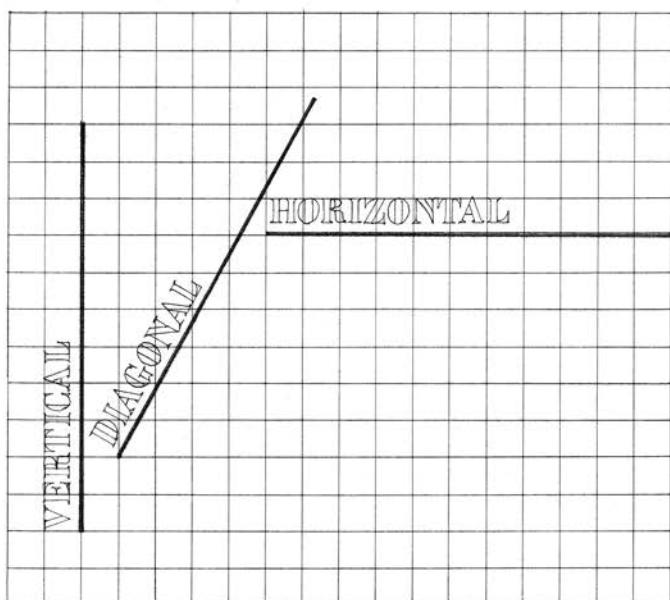
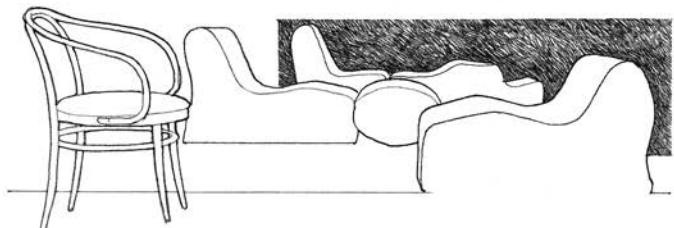
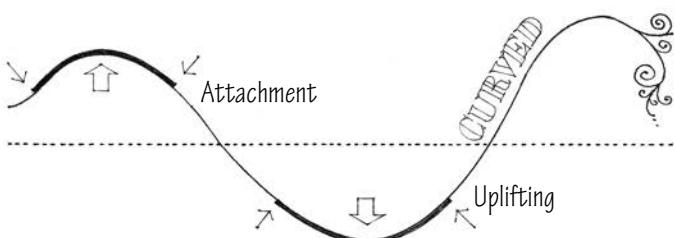
LINE



A straight line represents the tension that exists between two points. An important characteristic of a straight line is its direction. A horizontal line can represent stability, repose, or the plane upon which we stand or move. In contrast to this, a vertical line can express a state of equilibrium with the force of gravity.

Diagonal lines, deviations from the horizontal and the vertical, can be seen as rising or falling. In either case, they imply movement and are visually active and dynamic.

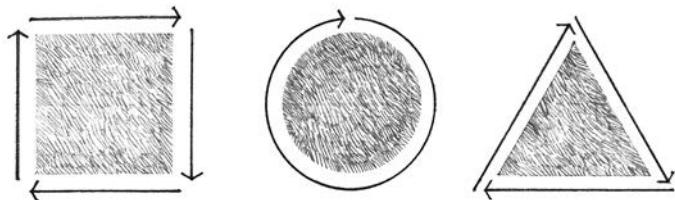
A curved line represents movement deflected by lateral forces. Curved lines tend to express gentle movement. Depending on their orientation, they can be uplifting or represent solidity and attachment to the earth. Small curves can express playfulness, energy, or patterns of biological growth.



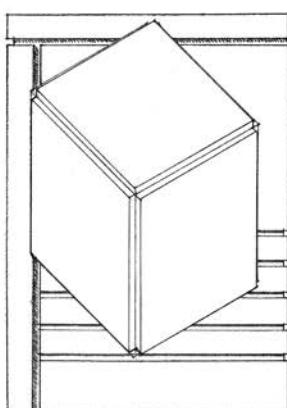
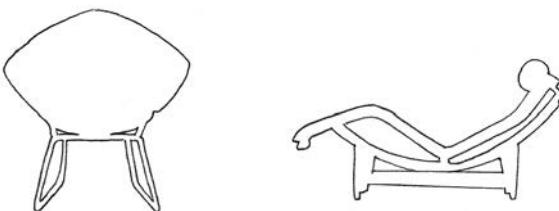
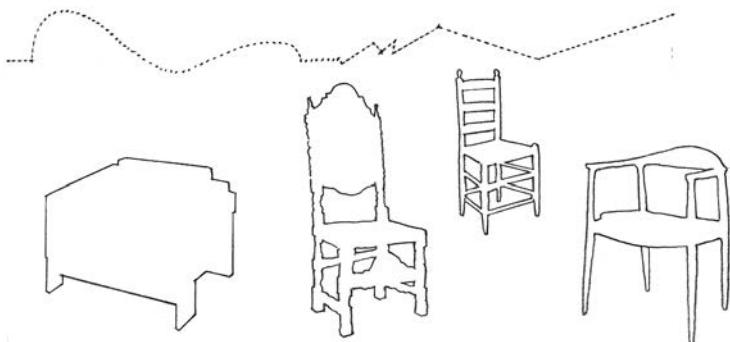
Line is an essential element in the formation of any visual construction. Without lines, we would not be able to define *shape*—that characteristic by which we generally recognize things. Lines describe the edges of shape and separate it from the space around it. In addition, the contours of these lines imbue the shape with their expressive qualities.

In addition to describing shape, lines can articulate the edges of planes and the corners of volumes. These lines can be expressed either by the absence of material—reveals and recessed joints—or by the application of trim.

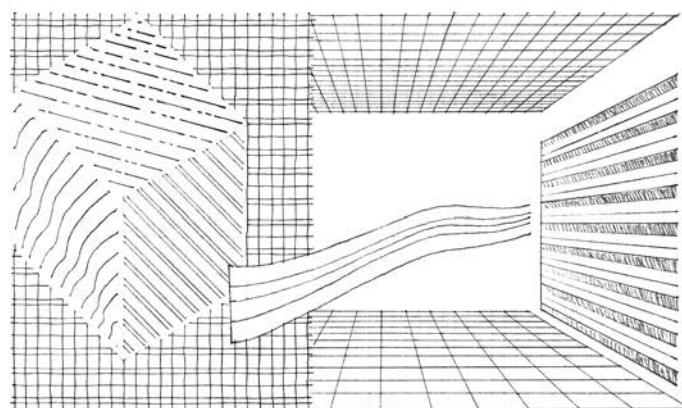
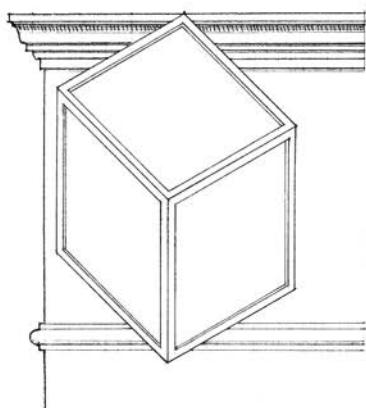
Lines can also be used to create texture and patterns on the surfaces of forms.



Lines defining shapes



Lines articulating edges

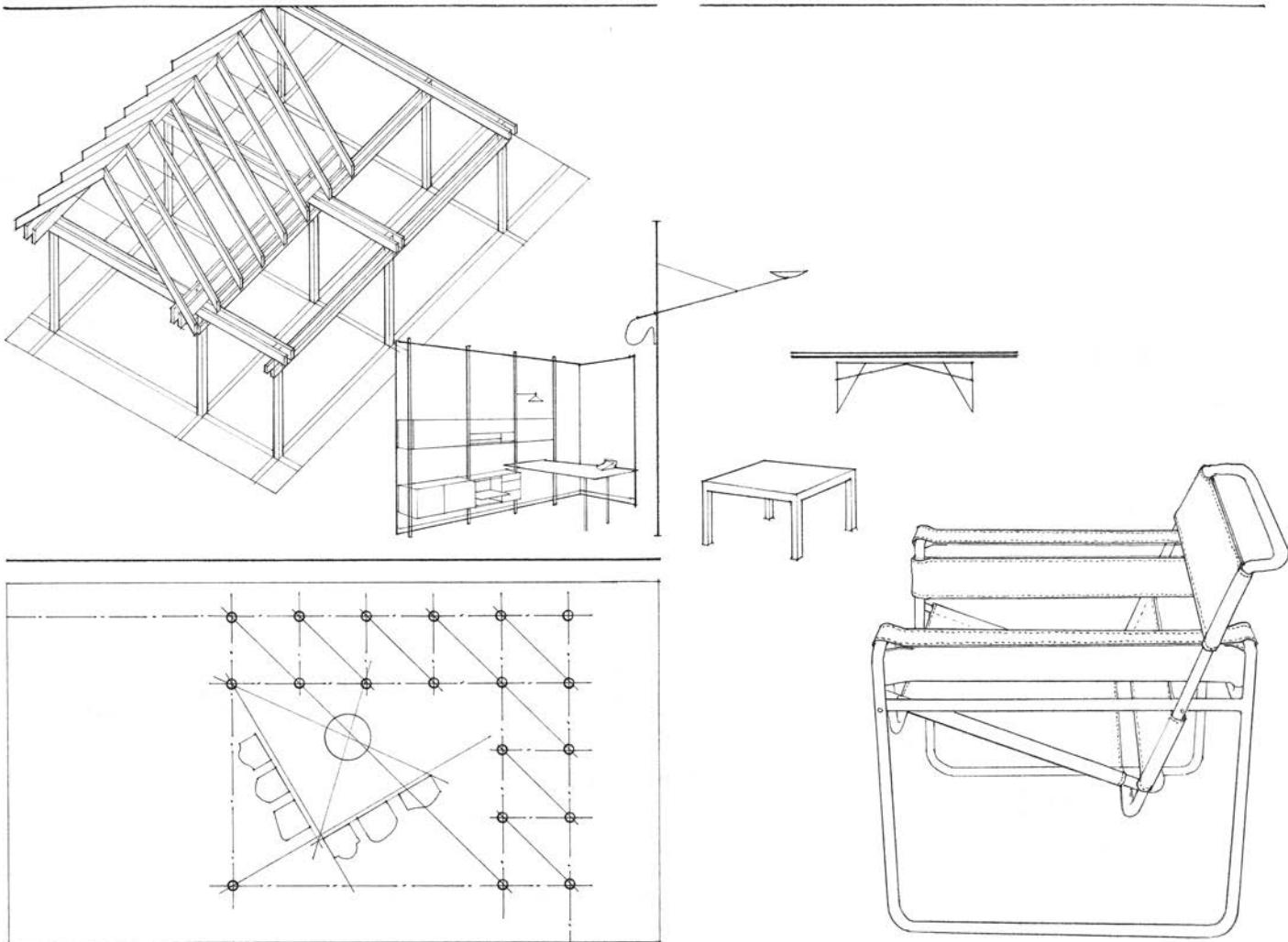


Lines creating textures and patterns

LINEAR FORMS

Linear forms have traditionally been used to provide vertical support, to span and express movement across space, and to define the edges of spatial volumes. This structural role of linear elements can be seen at the scale of architecture and interior space, and in furnishings.

Within the design process itself, lines are used as regulating devices to express relationships and establish patterns among design elements.



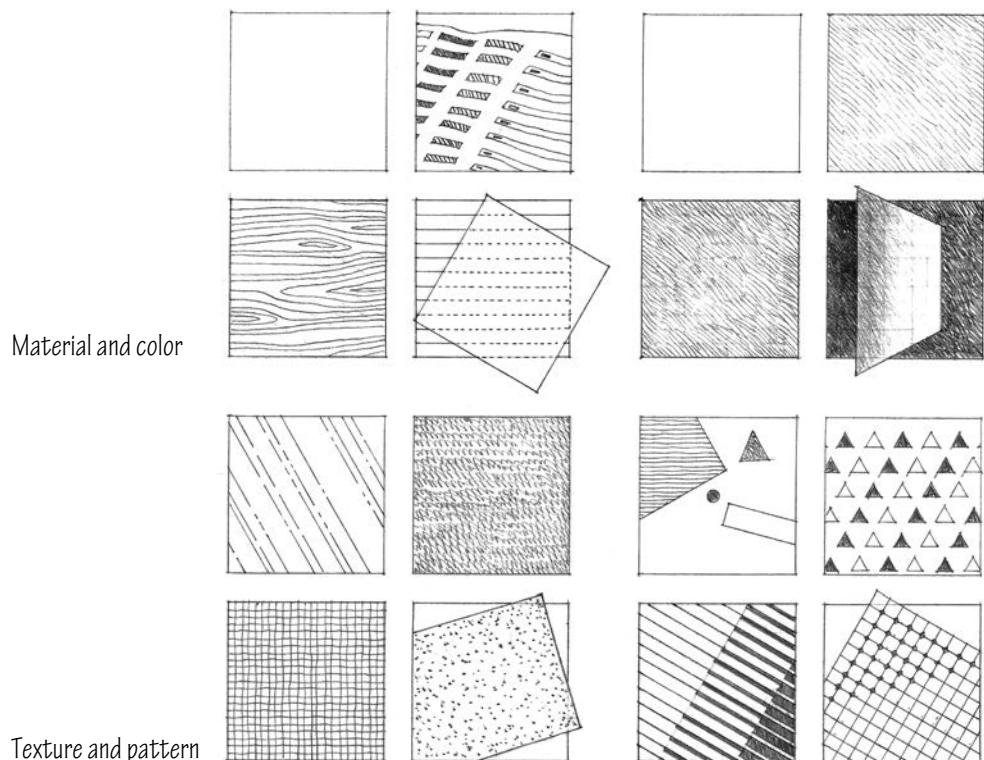
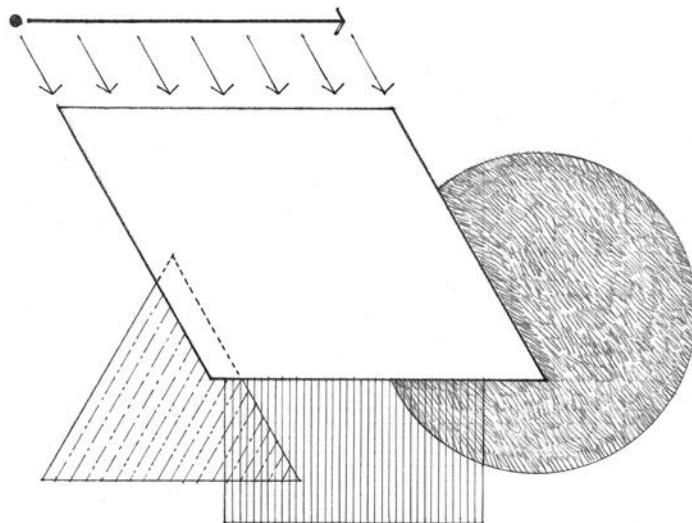
We often use lines to regulate relationships in drawing and design.

A line shifted in a direction other than its intrinsic direction defines a plane. Conceptually, a plane has two dimensions—width and length—but no depth. In reality, a plane's width and length dominate whatever thickness it must have to be visible.

Shape is the primary characteristic of a plane. It is described by the contour of the lines defining the edges of the plane. Since our perceptions of a plane's shape can be distorted by perspective, we see the true shape of a plane only when we view it frontally.

In addition to shape, planar forms have significant surface qualities of material, color, texture, and pattern. These visual characteristics affect the qualities of a plane:

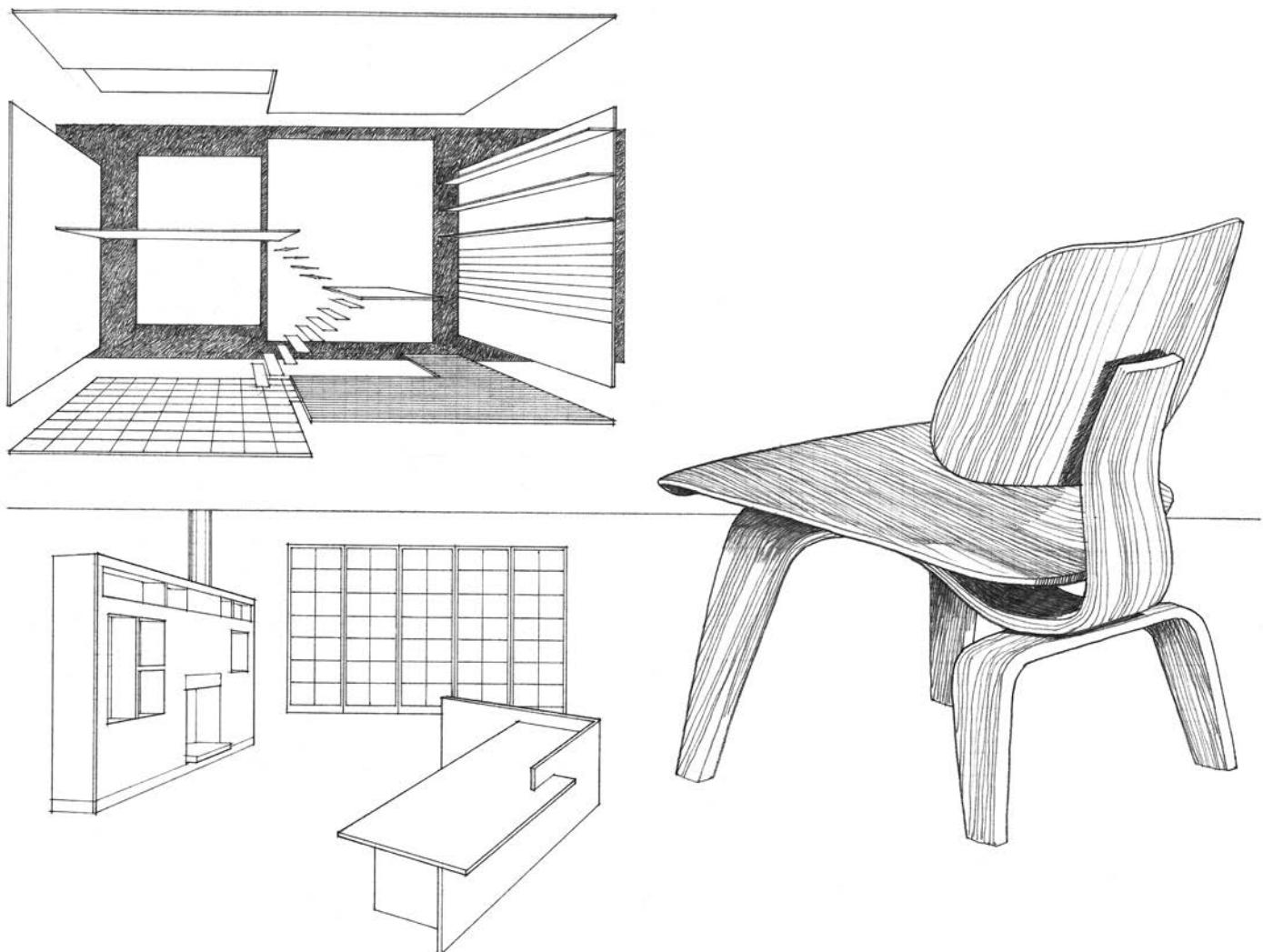
- Visual weight and stability
- Perceived size, proportion, and position in space
- Light reflectivity
- Tactile characteristics
- Acoustic properties



Planar elements have surface characteristics of material, color, texture, and pattern.

PLANAR FORMS

Planar forms are fundamental elements of architecture and interior design. Floor, wall, and ceiling or roof planes serve to enclose and define three-dimensional volumes of space. Their specific visual characteristics and their relationships in space determine the form and character of the space they define. Within these spaces, furnishings and other interior design elements can also be seen to consist of planar forms.

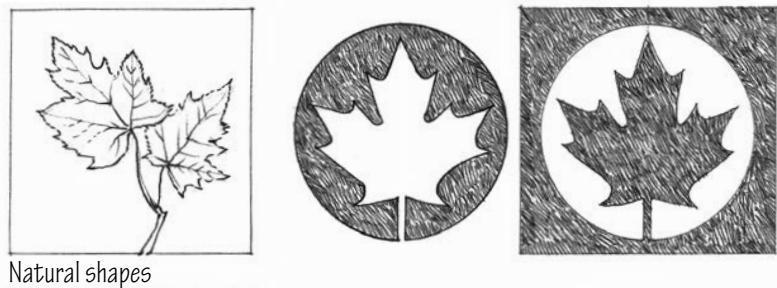


Shape is the primary means by which we distinguish one form from another. It may refer to the contour of a line, the outline of a plane, or the boundary of a three-dimensional mass. In each case, shape is defined by the specific configuration of the lines or planes that separates a form from its background or surrounding space.

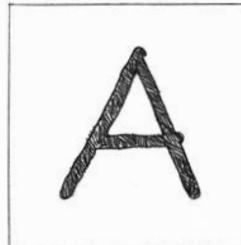
There are several broad categories of shapes. Natural shapes represent the images and forms of our natural world. These shapes may be abstracted, usually through a process of simplification, and still retain the essential characteristics of their natural sources.

Nonobjective shapes make no obvious reference to a specific object or to a particular subject matter. Some nonobjective shapes may result from a process, such as calligraphy, and carry meaning as symbols. Others may be geometric and elicit responses based on their purely visual qualities.

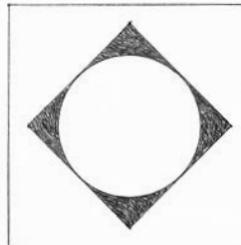
Geometric shapes dominate the built environment of both architecture and interior design. There are two separate and distinct types of geometric shapes—rectilinear and curvilinear. In their most regular form, curvilinear shapes are circular, while rectilinear shapes include the series of polygons that can be inscribed within a circle. Of these, the most significant geometric shapes are the circle, the triangle, and the square. Extended into the third dimension, these primary shapes generate the sphere, the cylinder, the cone, the pyramid, and the cube.



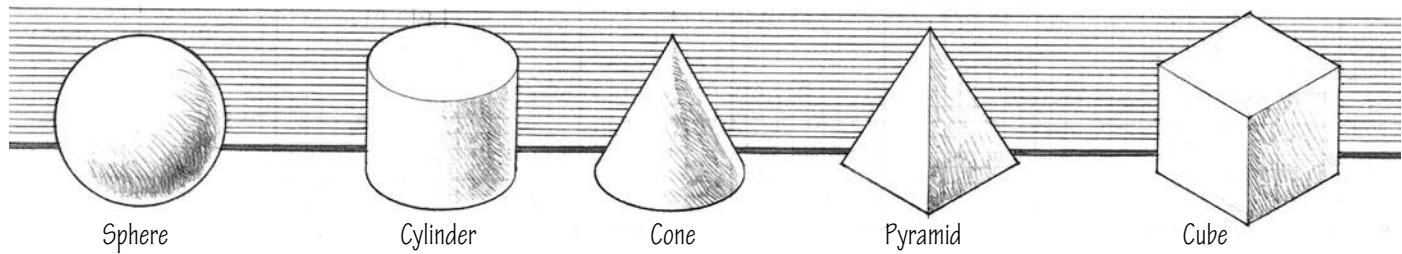
Natural shapes



Nonobjective shapes



Geometric shapes



Sphere

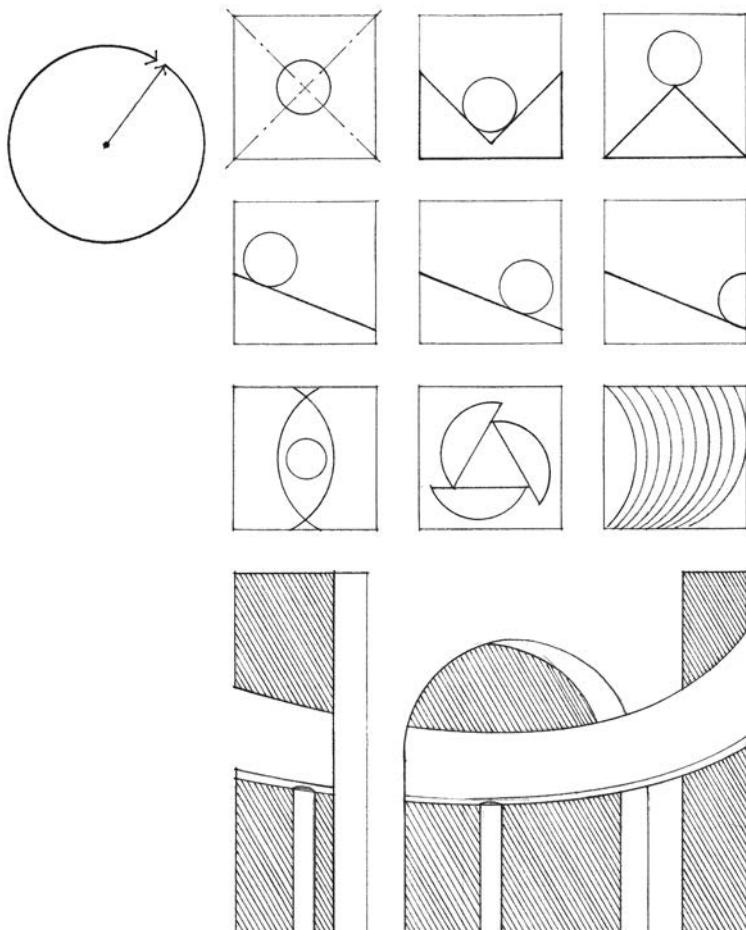
Cylinder

Cone

Pyramid

Cube

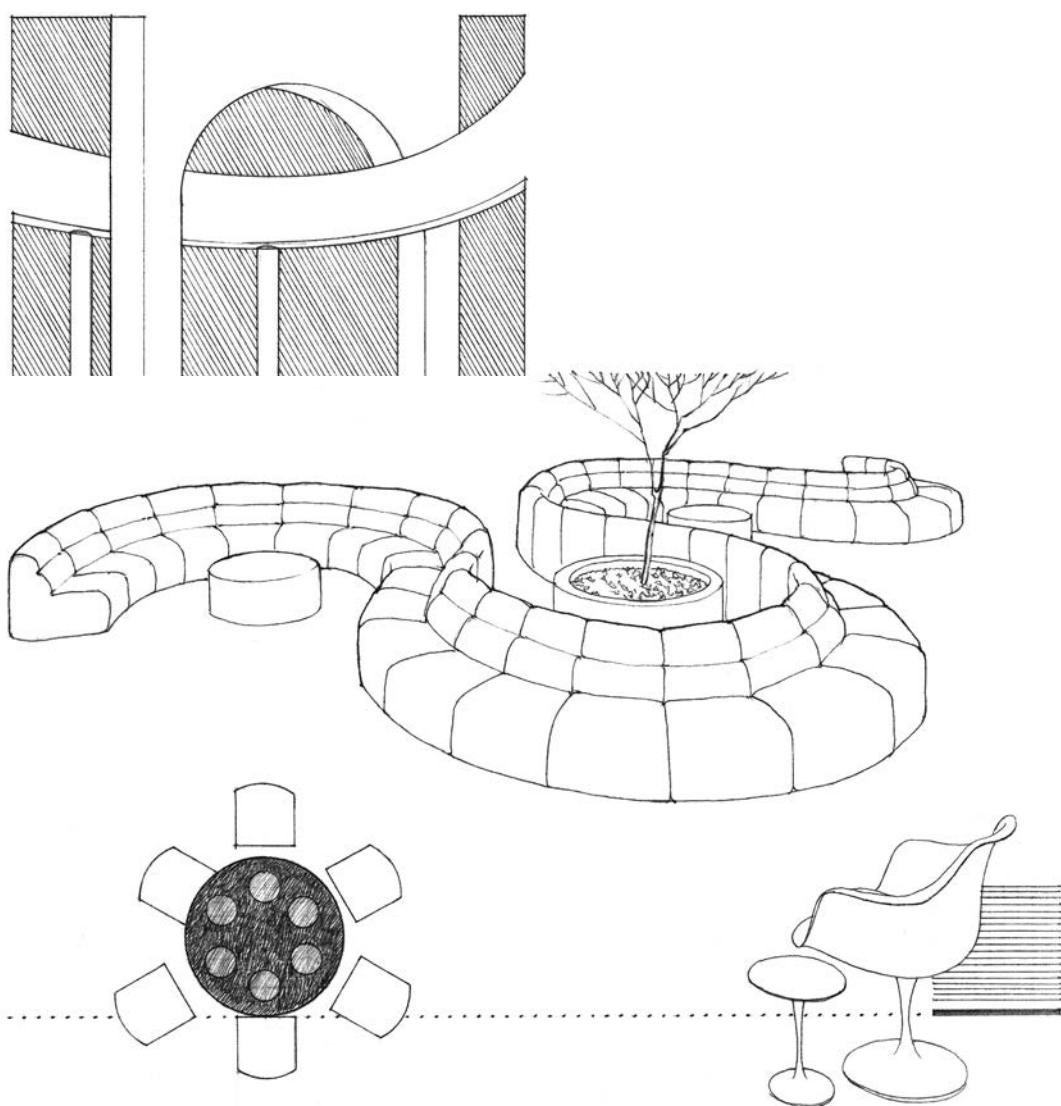
CIRCLE



The circle is a compact, introverted shape that has its center point as its natural focus. It represents unity, continuity, and economy of form.

A circular shape is normally stable and self-centering in its environment. When associated with other lines and shapes, however, a circle can appear to have motion.

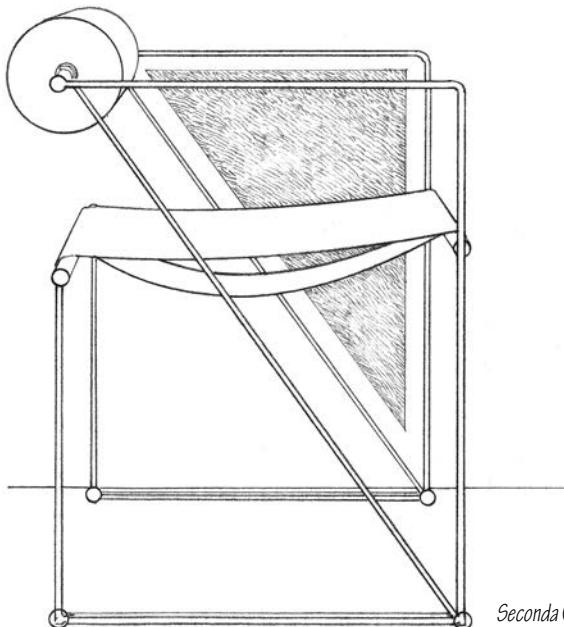
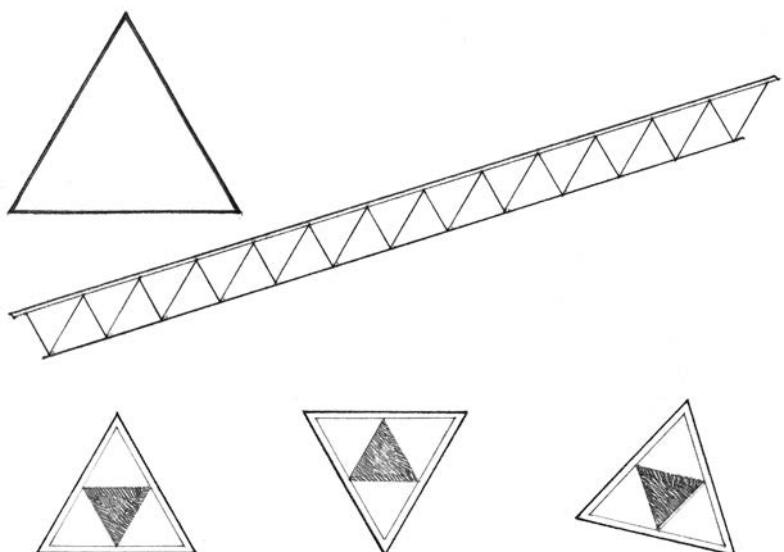
Other curvilinear lines and shapes can be seen to be fragments or combinations of circular shapes. Whether regular or irregular, curvilinear shapes are capable of expressing softness of form, fluidity of movement, or the nature of biological growth.



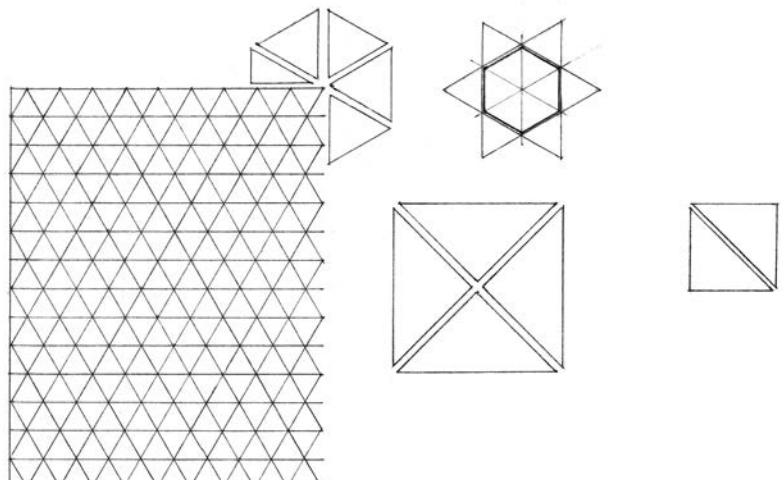
The triangle represents stability. Triangular shapes and patterns are often used in structural systems, since their configuration cannot be altered without bending or breaking one of their sides.

From a purely visual point of view, a triangular shape is perceived as stable when resting on one of its sides. When tipped to stand on one of its points, however, the triangular shape becomes dynamic. It can exist in a precarious state of balance or imply motion, as it tends to fall over onto one of its sides.

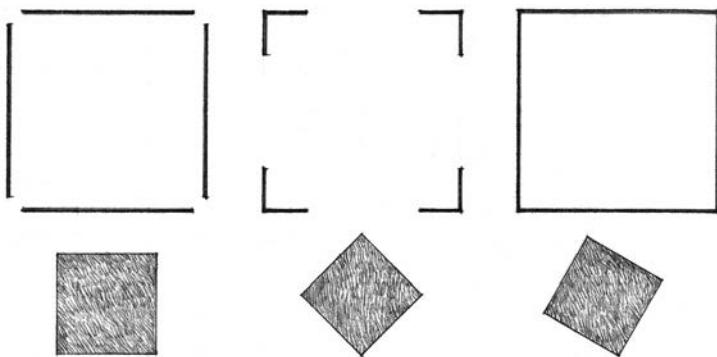
The dynamic quality of a triangular shape is also due to the angular relationships of its three sides. Because these angles can vary, triangles are more flexible than squares and rectangles. In addition, triangles can be conveniently combined to form any number of square, rectangular, and other polygonal shapes.



Seconda Chair, 1982: Mario Botta



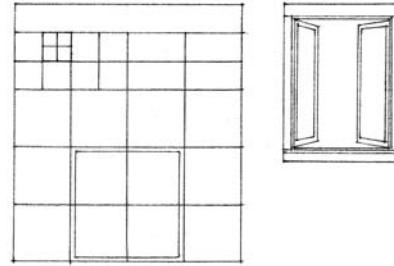
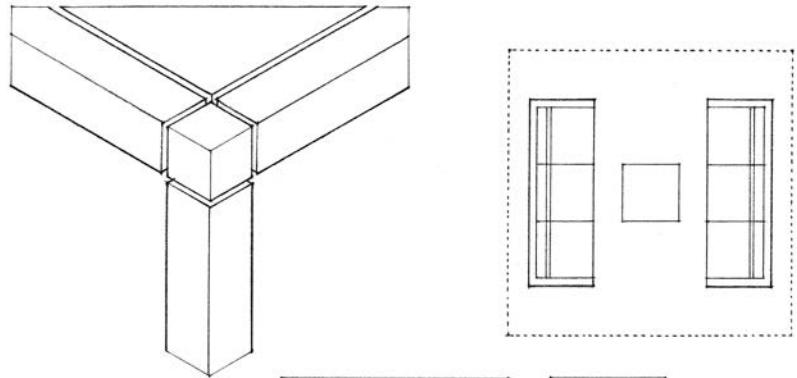
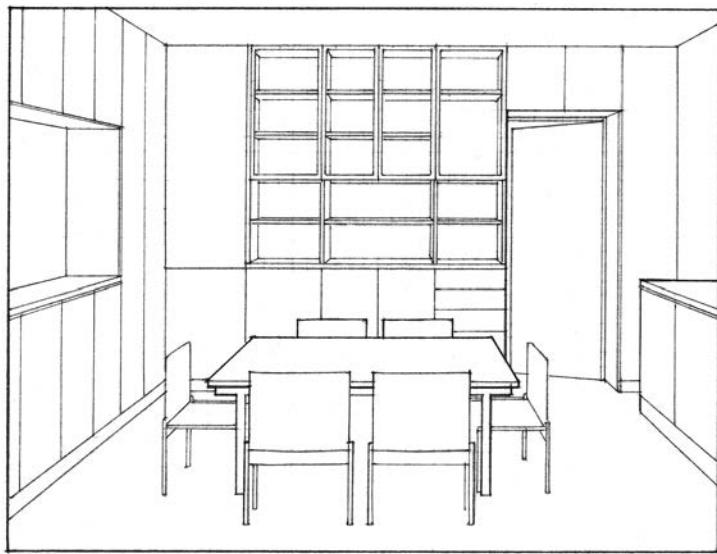
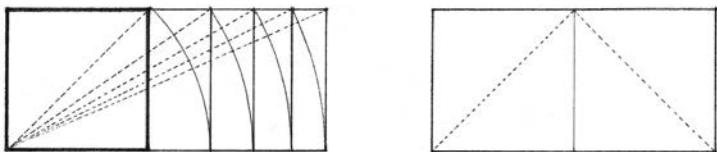
SQUARE



The square represents the pure and the rational. The equality of its four sides and its four right angles contributes to its regularity and visual clarity.

A square shape has no preferred or dominant direction. Like the triangle, the square is a stable, tranquil figure when resting on one of its sides, but becomes dynamic when standing on one of its corners.

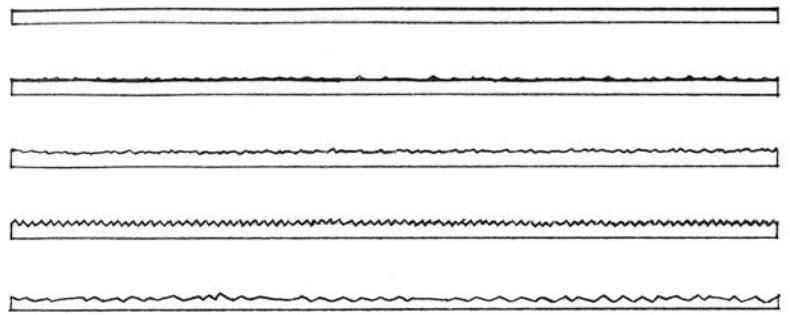
All other rectangles can be considered to be variations of the square with the addition of width or length. While the clarity and stability of rectangular shapes can lead to visual monotony, variety can be introduced by varying their size, proportion, color, texture, placement, or orientation.



Texture is the specific quality of a surface that results from its three-dimensional structure. Texture is most often used to describe the relative smoothness or roughness of a surface. It can also be used to describe the characteristic surface qualities of familiar materials, such as the roughness of stone, the grain of wood, and the weave of a fabric.

There are two basic types of texture. Tactile texture is real and can be felt by touch; visual texture is seen by the eye. All tactile textures provide visual texture as well. Visual texture, on the other hand, may be illusory or real.

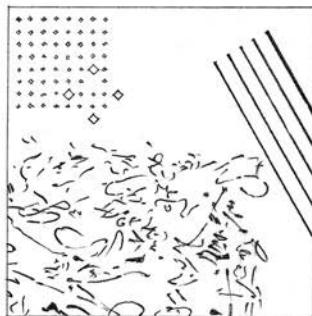
Our senses of sight and touch are closely intertwined. As our eyes read the visual texture of a surface, we often respond to its apparent tactile quality without actually touching it. We base these physical reactions to the textural qualities of surfaces on previous associations with similar materials.



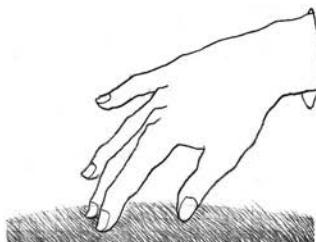
Texture refers to the three-dimensional structure of a surface.



Physical texture

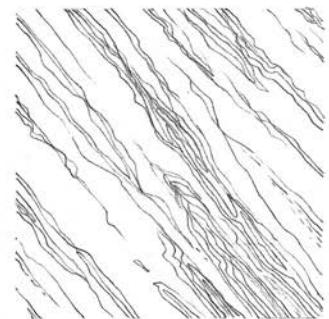
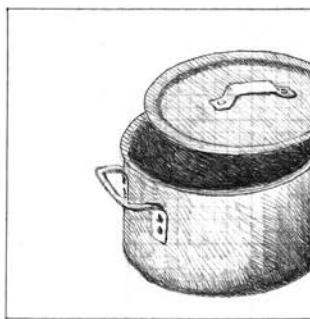
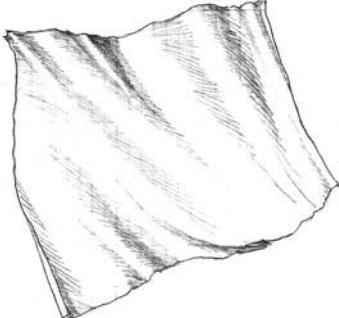


Visual texture

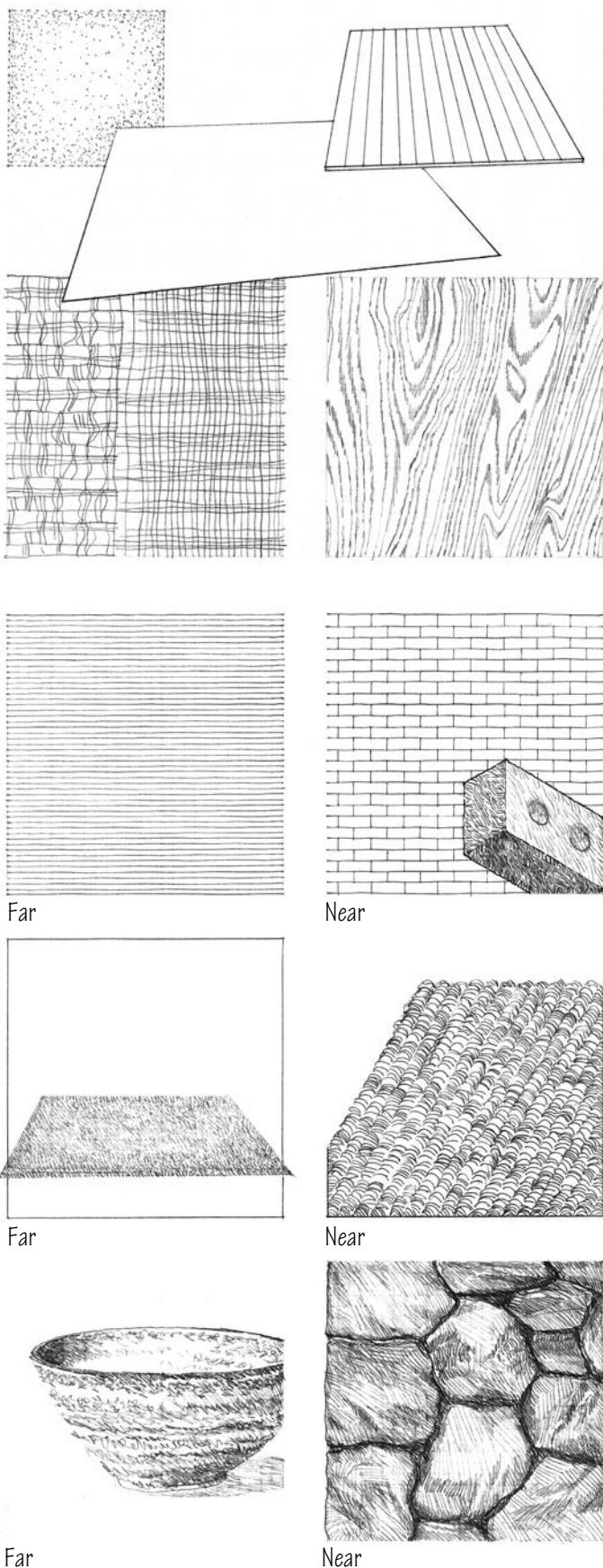


Material texture

Texture is intertwined with our senses of sight and touch.



TEXTURE AND SCALE



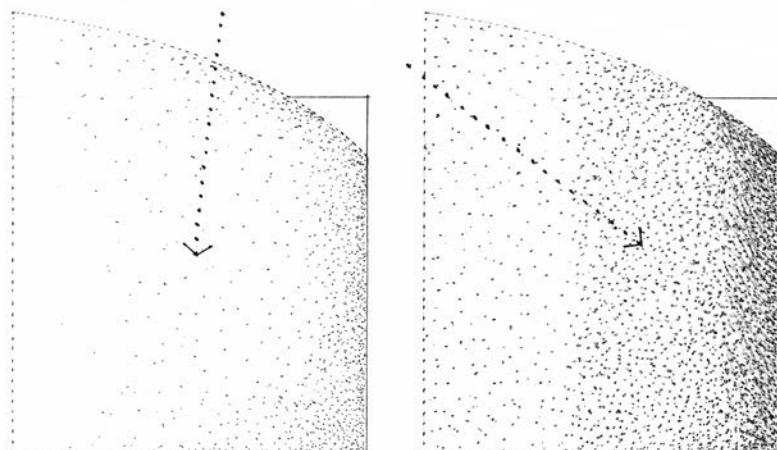
Scale, viewing distance, and light are important modifying factors in our perception of textures and the surfaces they articulate.

All materials have some degree of texture, but the finer the scale of a textural pattern is, the smoother it will appear to be. Even coarse textures, when seen from a distance, can appear to be relatively smooth. Only upon closer viewing will the texture's coarseness become evident.

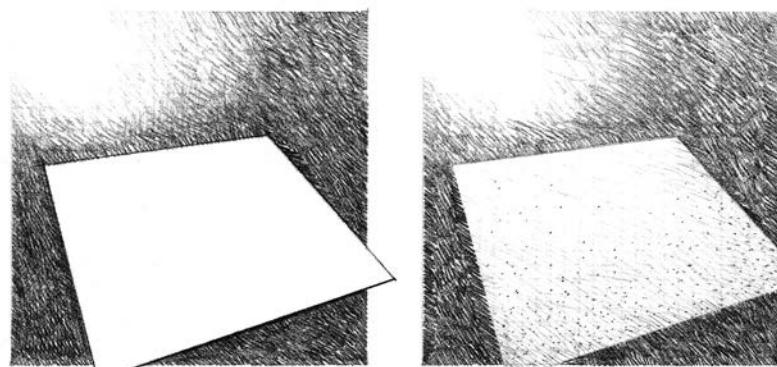
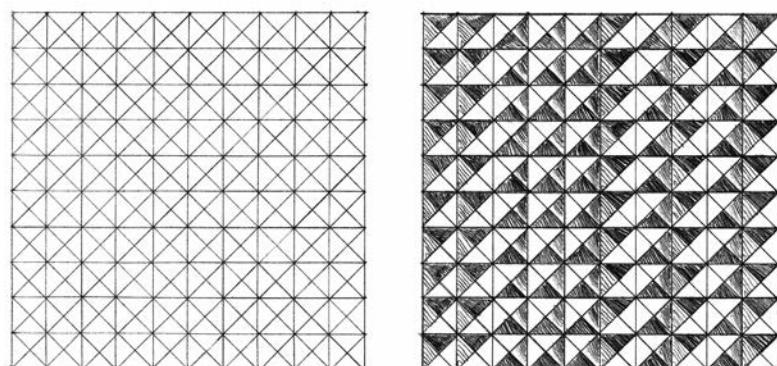
The relative scale of a texture can affect the apparent shape and position of a plane in space. Textures with a directional grain can accentuate a plane's length or width. Coarse textures can make a plane appear closer, reduce its scale, and increase its visual weight. In general, textures tend to fill the space in which they exist visually.

Light influences our perception of texture and, in turn, is affected by the texture it illuminates. Direct light falling across a surface with physical texture will enhance its visual texture. Diffused lighting deemphasizes physical texture and can even obscure its three-dimensional structure.

Smooth, shiny surfaces reflect light brilliantly, appear sharply in focus, and attract our attention. Surfaces with a matte or medium-rough texture absorb and diffuse light unevenly and, therefore, appear less bright than similarly colored but smoother surfaces. Very rough surfaces, when illuminated with direct lighting, cast distinct shadow patterns of light and dark.

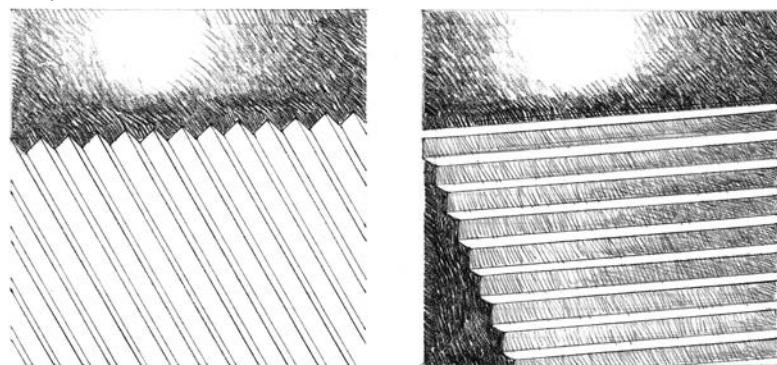


Lighting direction affects our reading of texture.

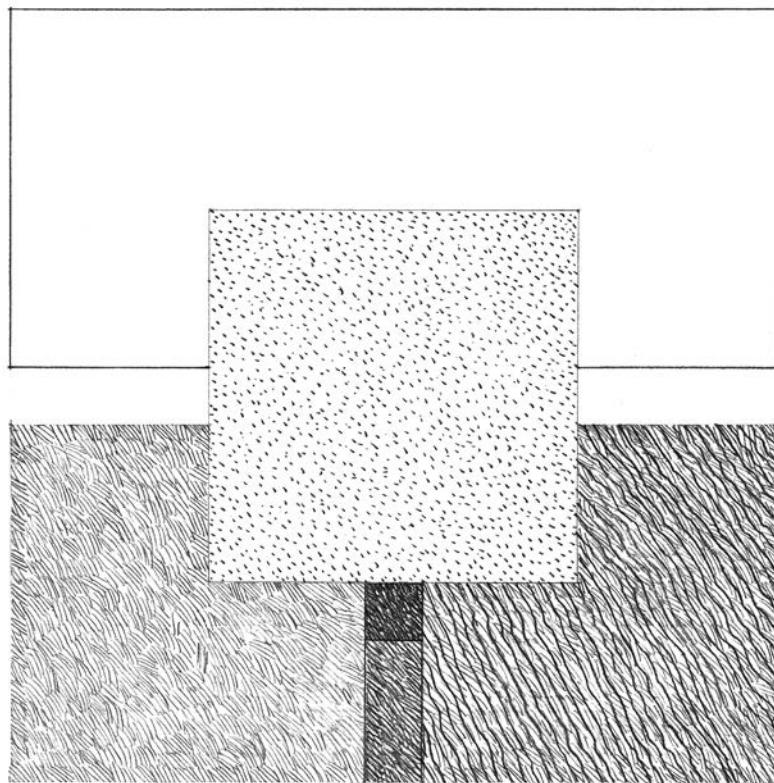


Shiny surfaces reflect.

Matte surfaces diffuse.



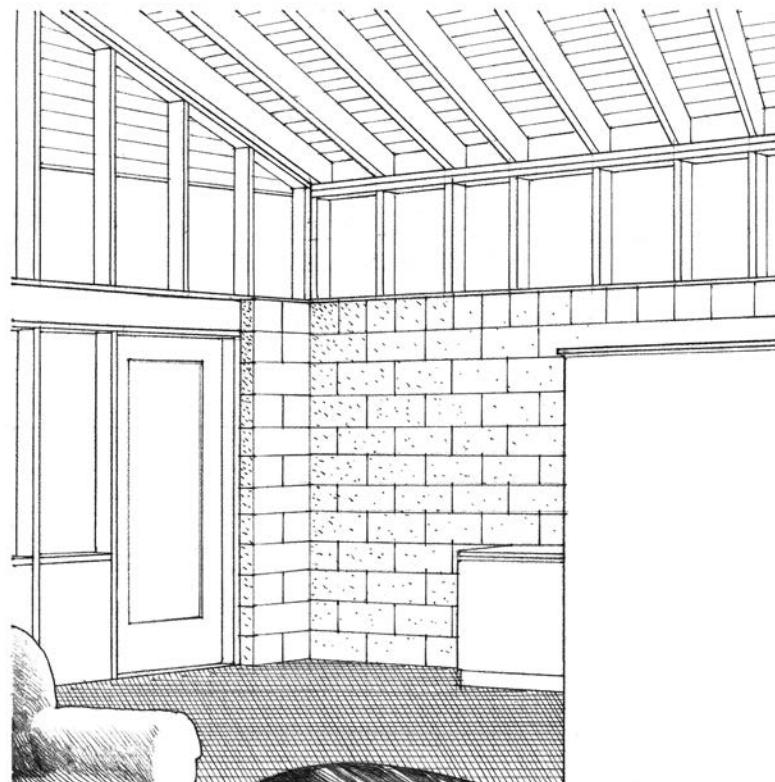
TEXTURE AND CONTRAST



Contrast affects the apparent strength or subtlety of adjacent textures.

Contrast influences how strong or subtle a texture will appear to be. A texture seen against a uniformly smooth background will appear more obvious than when placed in juxtaposition with a similar texture. When seen against a coarser background, the texture will appear to be finer and reduced in scale.

Finally, texture is a factor in the maintenance of the materials and surfaces of a space. Smooth surfaces show dirt and wear but are relatively easy to clean, while rough surfaces may conceal dirt but may also be more difficult to maintain.

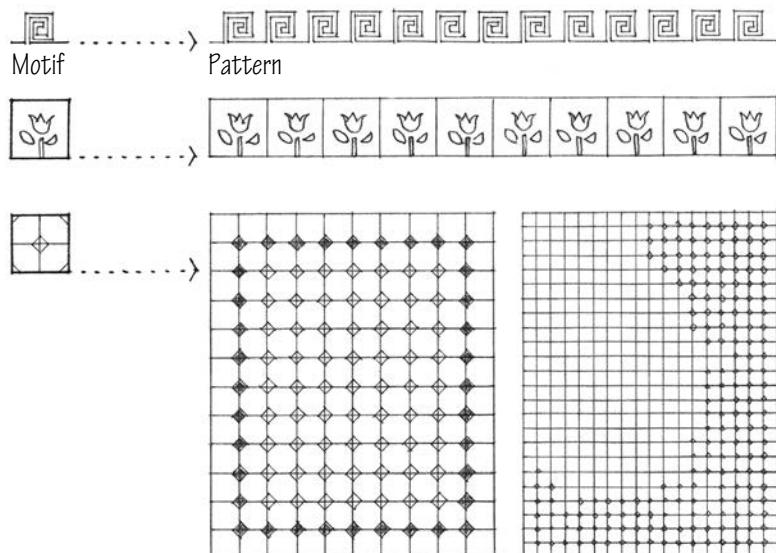


Texture can also result from the manner in which materials are assembled in construction.

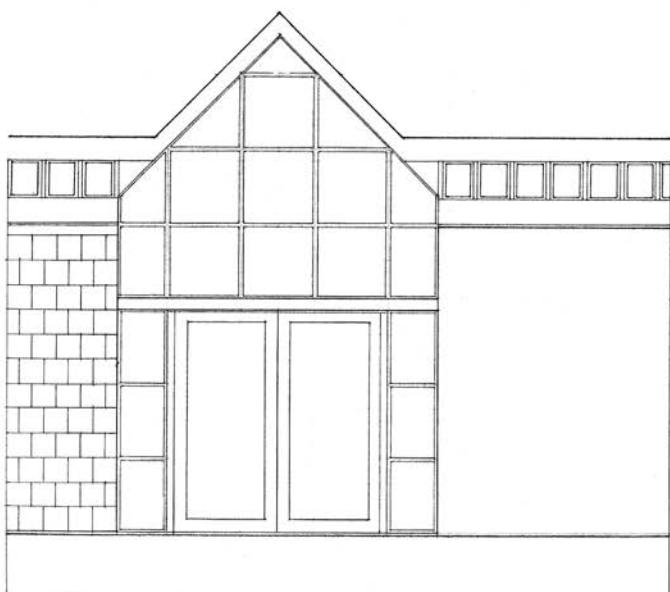
Texture and pattern are closely related design elements. Pattern is the decorative design or ornamentation of a surface that is almost always based on the repetition of a *motif*—a distinctive and recurring shape, form, or color in a design.

The repetitive nature of a pattern often gives the ornamented surface a textural quality as well. When the elements that create a pattern become so small that they lose their individual identity and blend together, they become more texture than pattern.

A pattern may be integral or applied. An integral pattern results from the intrinsic nature of a material and the way it is processed, fabricated, or assembled. An applied pattern is added to a surface after it is fabricated or built.



A pattern reduced in scale becomes texture.

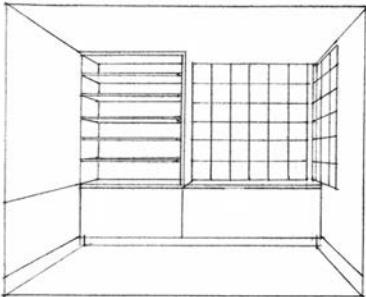


Integral patterns

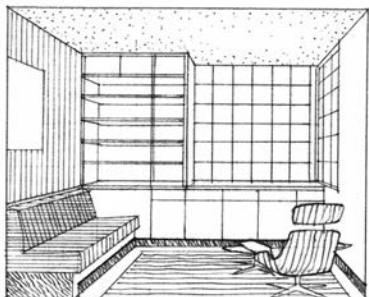


Applied patterns

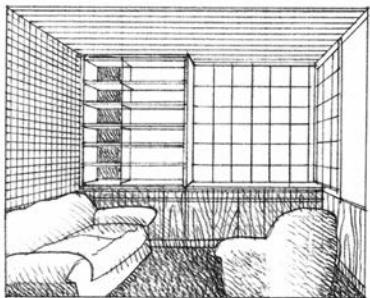
TEXTURE AND SPACE



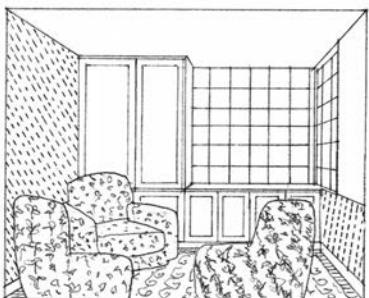
Minimal texture



Textured



Texture filling space

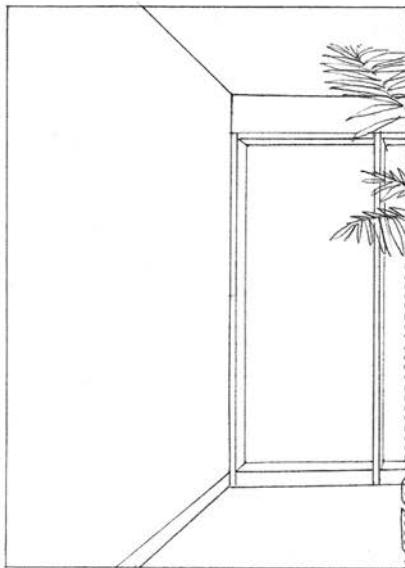


Competing textures

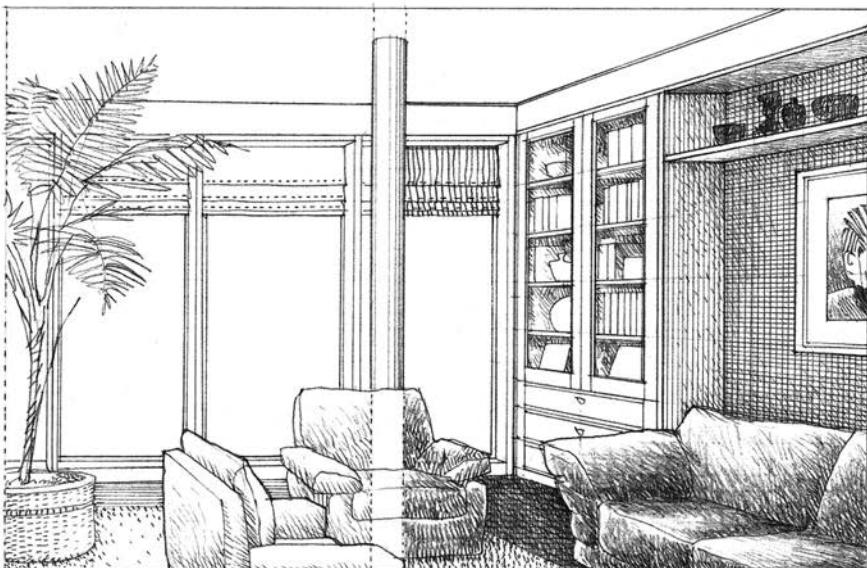
Texture is an intrinsic characteristic of the materials we use to define, furnish, and embellish interior space. How we combine and compose differing textures is just as important as the composition of color and light, and should suit the desired character and use of a space.

The scale of a textural pattern should be related to the scale of a space and its major surfaces, as well as to the size of secondary elements within the space. Since texture tends to visually fill space, any textures used in a small room should be subtle or used sparingly. In a large room, texture can be used to reduce the scale of the space or to define a more intimate area within it.

A room with little textural variation can be bland. Combinations of hard and soft, even and uneven, and shiny and dull textures can be used to create variety and interest. In the selection and distribution of textures, moderation should be exercised and attention paid to their ordering and sequence. Harmony among contrasting textures can be sustained if they share a common trait, such as degree of light reflectance or visual weight.



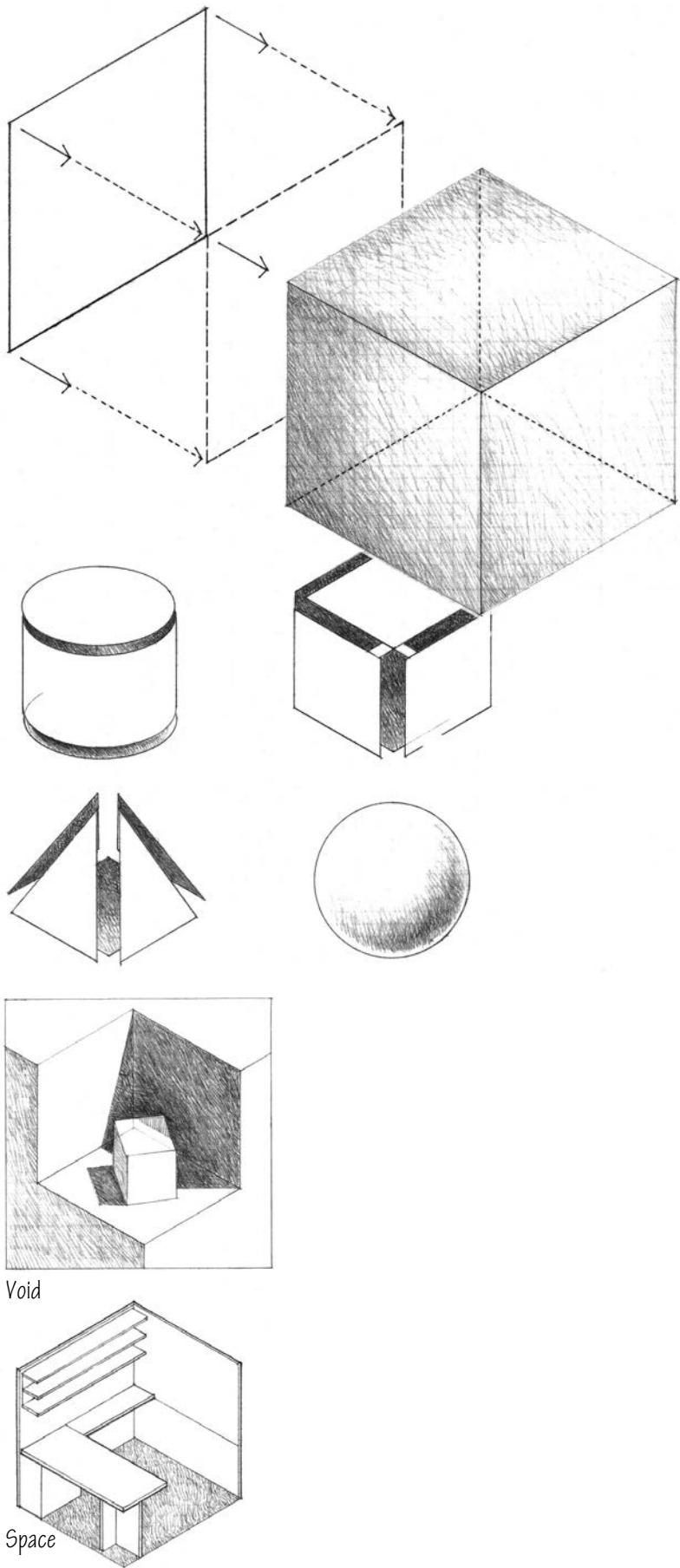
Increasing textures in a room from left to right



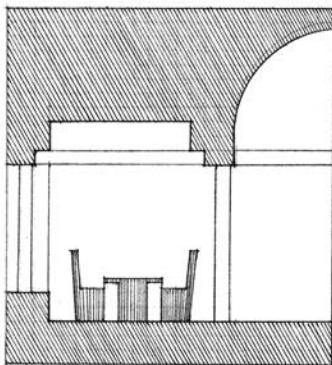
A plane extended in a direction other than along its surface forms a volume. Conceptually and in reality, a volume exists in three dimensions.

Form is the term we use to describe the contour and overall structure of a volume. The specific form of a volume is determined by the shapes and interrelationships of the lines and planes that describe its boundaries.

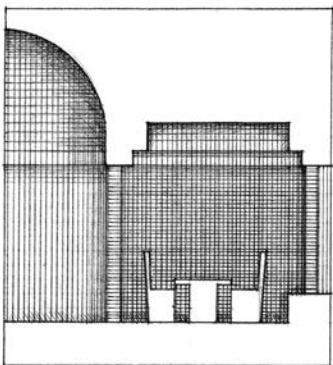
As the three-dimensional element of architectural and interior design, a volume can be either a solid (space displaced by the mass of a building or building element) or a void (space contained and defined by wall, floor, and ceiling or roof planes). It is important to perceive this duality of containment versus displacement, especially when reading orthographic plans, elevations, and sections.



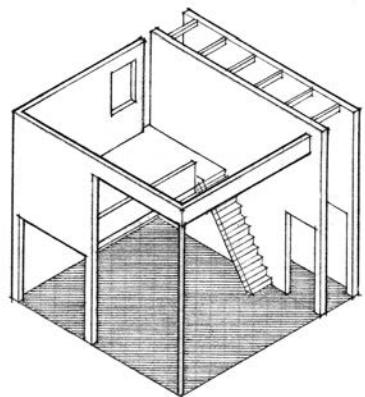
SOLIDS AND VOIDS



Form



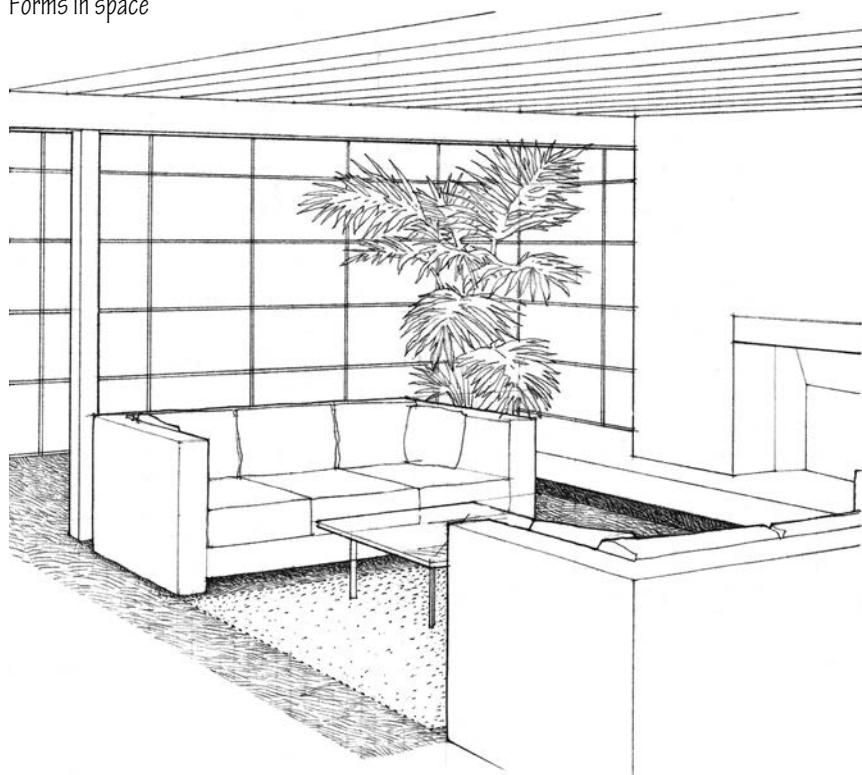
Space



Form and space

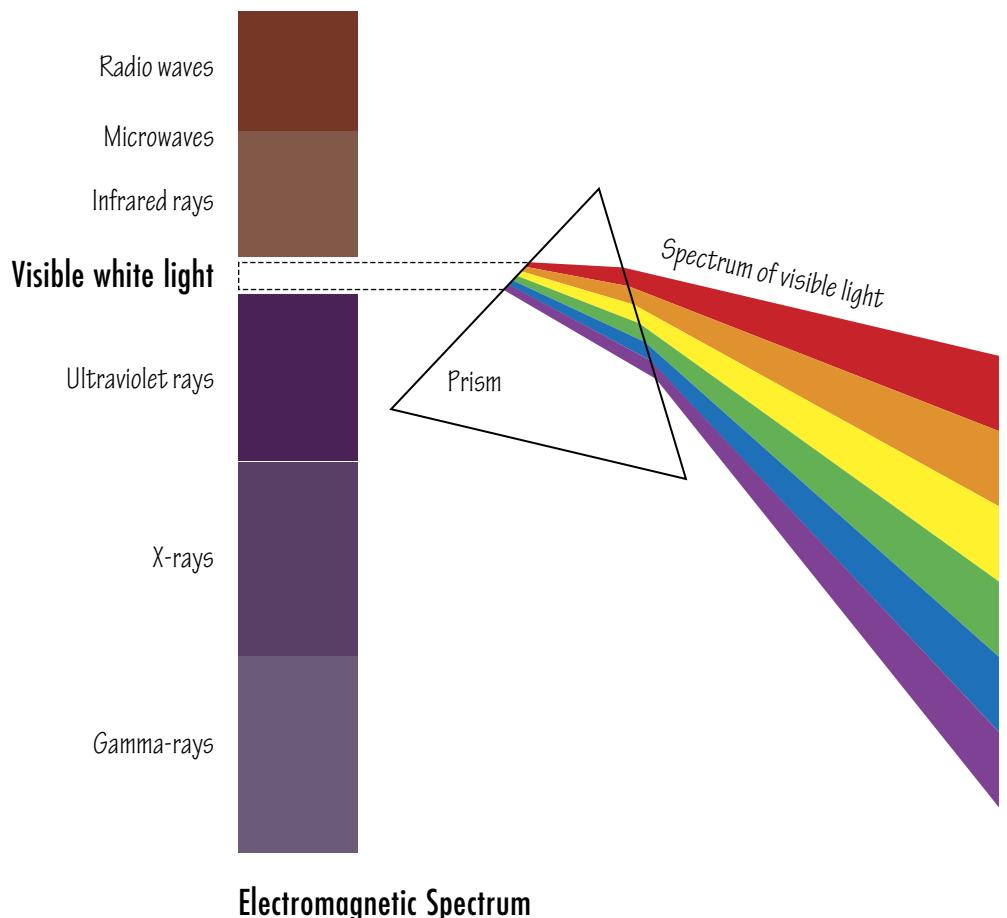


Forms in space

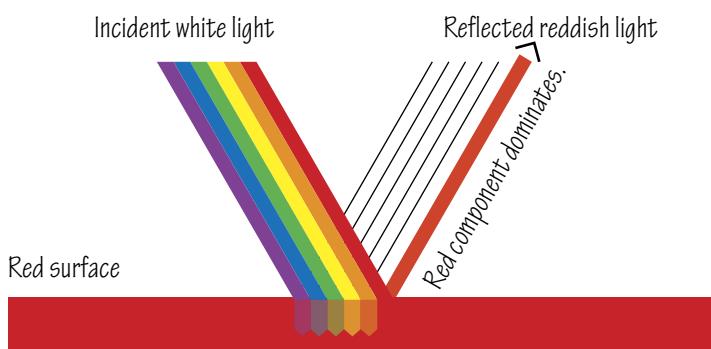


Color, like shape and texture, is an inherent visual property of all form. We are surrounded by color in our environmental settings. The colors we attribute to objects find their source in the light that illuminates and reveals form and space. Without light, color does not exist.

The science of physics deals with color as a property of light. Within the visible spectrum of light, color is determined by wavelength. Starting at the longest wavelength with red, we proceed through the spectrum of orange, yellow, green, blue, and violet to arrive at the shortest visible wavelengths. When these colored lights are present in a light source in approximately equal quantities, they combine to produce white light—light that is apparently colorless.

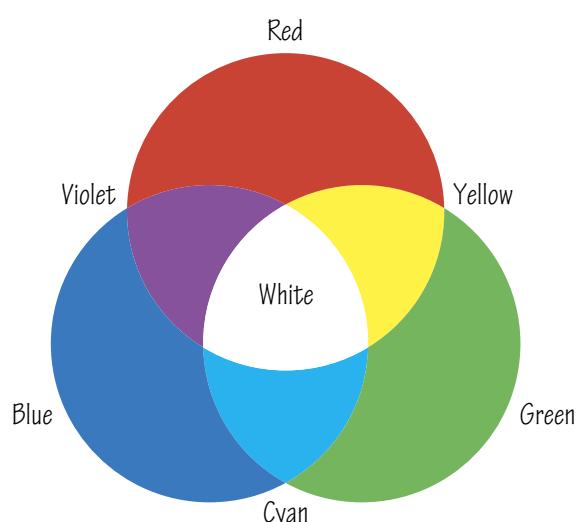


COLOR



When white light falls on an opaque object, selective absorption occurs. The surface of the object absorbs certain wavelengths of light and reflects others. Our eyes apprehend the color of the reflected light as the color of the object.

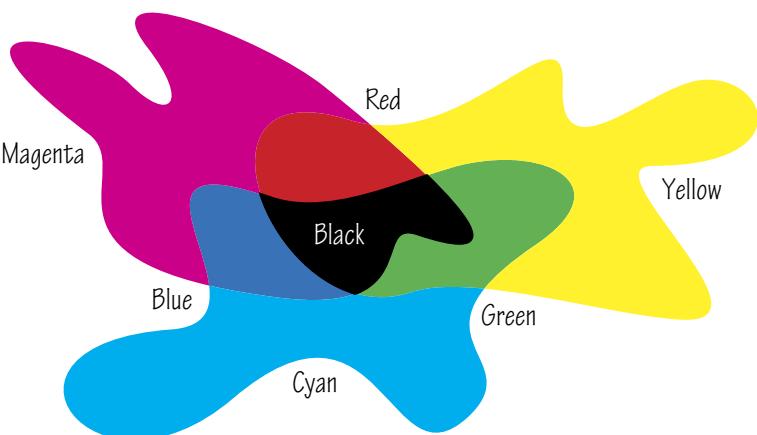
White light is composed of the entire spectrum of colored lights. Some light sources—such as some electric lamps or light reflected off a colored wall—may not be well balanced and thus lack part of the spectrum. This lack of certain colors will make a surface illuminated by such light appear to lack those colors.



Colored lights combine by additive mixing.

Which wavelengths or bands of light are absorbed and which are reflected as object color is determined by the pigmentation of a surface. A red surface appears red because it absorbs most of the blue and green light falling on it and reflects the red part of the spectrum; a blue surface absorbs the reds. Similarly, a black surface absorbs the entire spectrum; a white surface reflects all of it.

A surface has the natural pigmentation of its material. This coloration can be altered with the application of paints, stains, or dyes that contain color *pigments*. While colored light is additive in nature, color pigments are subtractive. Each pigment absorbs certain proportions of white light. When pigments are mixed, their absorptions combine to subtract various colors of the spectrum. The colors that remain determine the *hue*, *value*, and *intensity* of the mixed pigment.



Pigment colors combine by subtractive mixing.

It is important for interior designers to remember that the colors they see on their computer screens are colored light, while colors in printed materials and samples are pigments. For accuracy, they should rely on physical color samples viewed in the light in which they will be used.

Color has three dimensions:

Hue

The attribute by which we recognize and describe a color, such as red or yellow.



Value

The degree of lightness or darkness of a color in relation to white and black.



Saturation

The brilliance or dullness of a color; this depends on the amount of hue in a color.

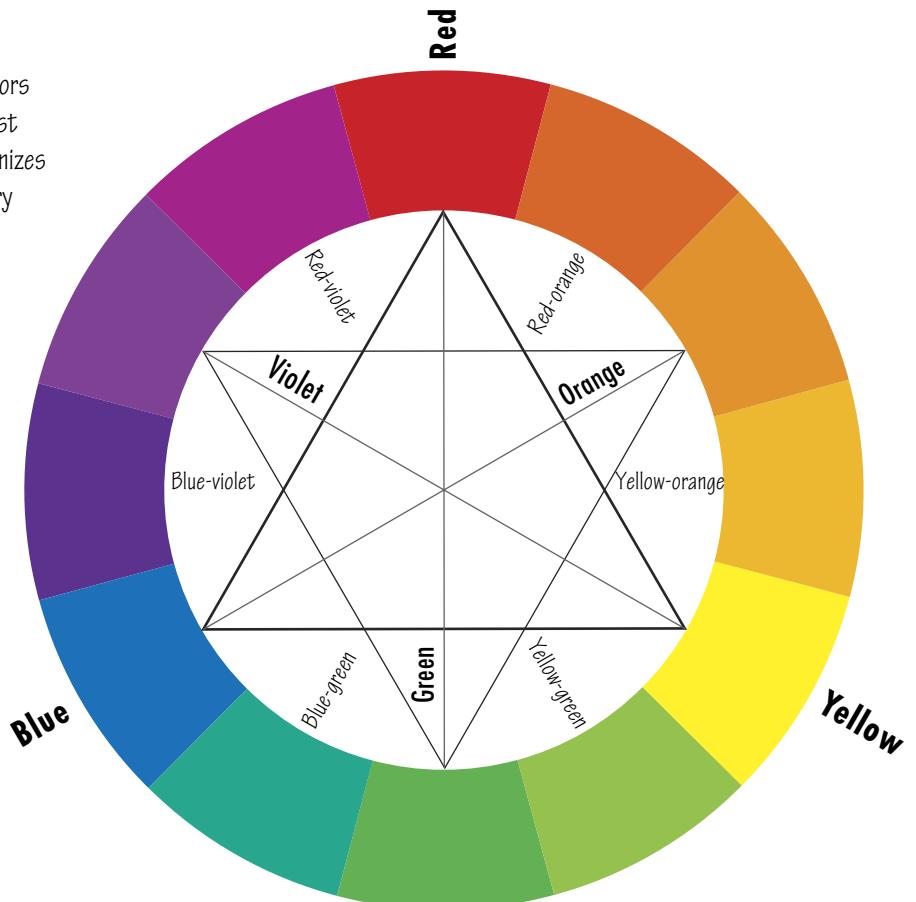


All of these attributes of color are interrelated. Each principal hue has a normal value. Pure yellow, for example, is lighter in value than pure blue. If white, black, or a complementary hue is added to a color to lighten or darken its value, its *saturation* will be diminished as well. It is difficult to adjust one attribute of a color without simultaneously altering the other two.

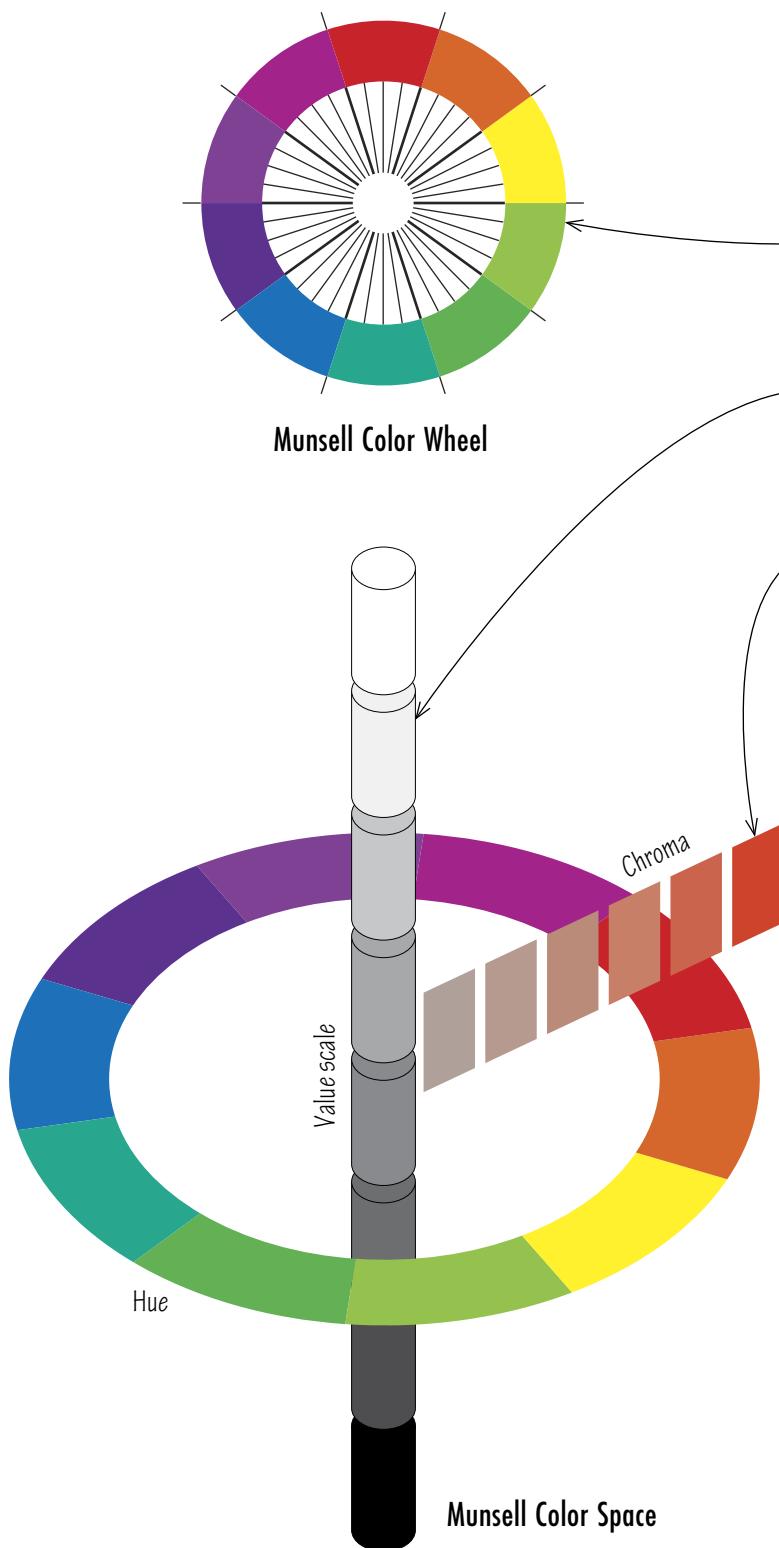
A number of color systems attempt to organize colors and their attributes into a visible order. The simplest type, such as the Brewster/Prang color wheel, organizes color pigments into primary, secondary, and tertiary hues.

The primary hues are red, yellow, and blue.

The secondary hues are orange, green, and violet. The tertiary hues are red-orange, yellow-orange, yellow-green, blue-green, blue-violet, and red-violet.



COLOR SYSTEMS



A more comprehensive system for the accurate specification and description of color is the Munsell system, developed by Albert H. Munsell. The system arranges colors into three orderly scales of uniform visual steps, according to their attributes of hue, value, and chroma (intensity).

The Munsell system is based on five principal hues and five intermediate hues. These ten major hues are arranged horizontally in a circle.

Extending vertically through the center of the hue circle is a scale of neutral gray values, graded in ten equal visual steps from black to white.

Radiating out from the vertical scale of values are equal steps of chroma, or intensity. The number of steps will vary according to the attainable saturation of each color's hue and value.

With this system, a specific color can be identified with the following notation: Hue Value/Chroma, or H V/C. For example, 5R 5/14 would indicate a pure red at middle value and maximum chroma.

Although the ability to accurately communicate the hue, value, and intensity of a specific color without an actual sample is important in science, commerce, and industry, color names and notations cannot adequately describe the visual sensation of color. Actual color samples, seen in the light in which they will be used, are essential in the design of a color scheme.

With the advent of color computer monitors and printers, the need for a universal language of color communication has become even more pressing. Interior designers often must indicate a color to be used uniformly in paints, textiles, graphic design materials, and other media.

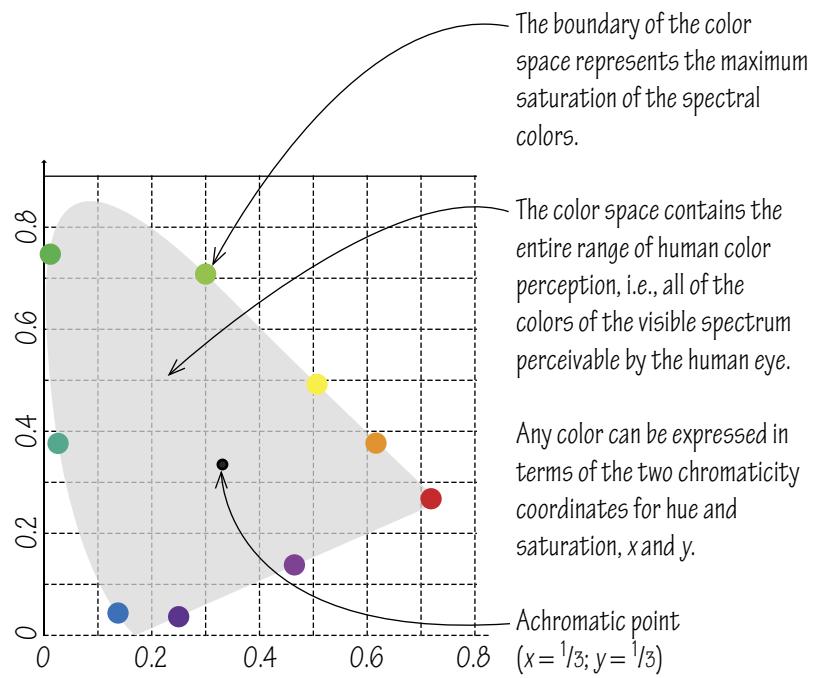
Commission Internationale de l'Eclairage (CIE) standards are based on the precise measurement of light waves reflected by a surface, factored by sensitivity curves that have been measured for the human eye. Although cumbersome to use, CIE standards are specified by most American furniture manufacturers.

Color maps, such as the color space developed by Munsell and described earlier, allow color communication between any two individuals with the same map.

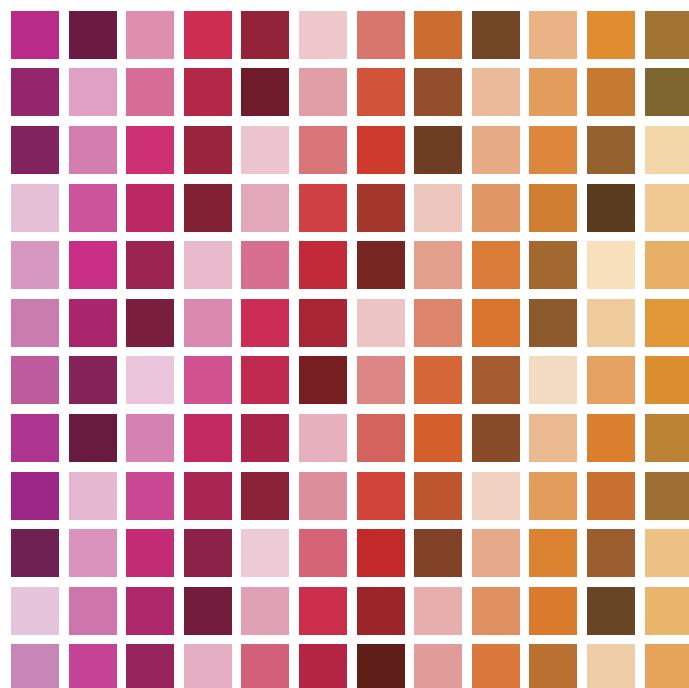
Systems such as Pantone® for architecture and interiors provide the interior designer with a way to specify, communicate, and manage color choices for a wide variety of materials, both online and offline.

Other available tools are electronic color analyzers, which identify color data from samples, and color viewing lights, which simulate varied lighting conditions. Electronic color analysis is commonly used for paint matching. Color may be mixed at the point of sale to match almost any color sample.

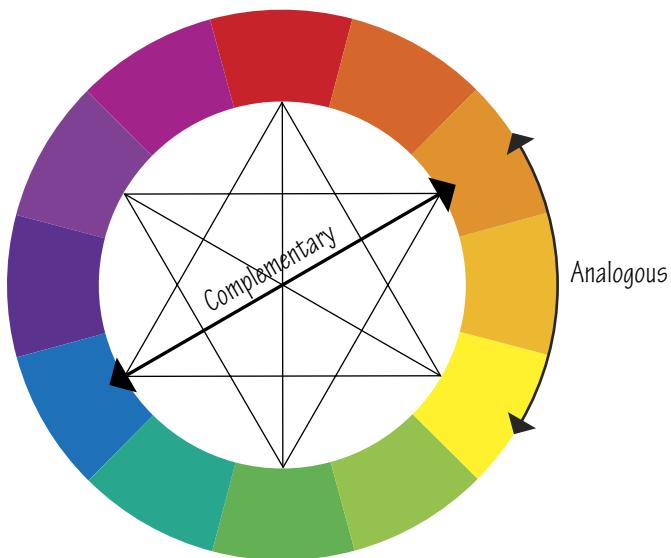
A Sampling of
Pantone® Color Swatches



CIE Chromaticity Diagram



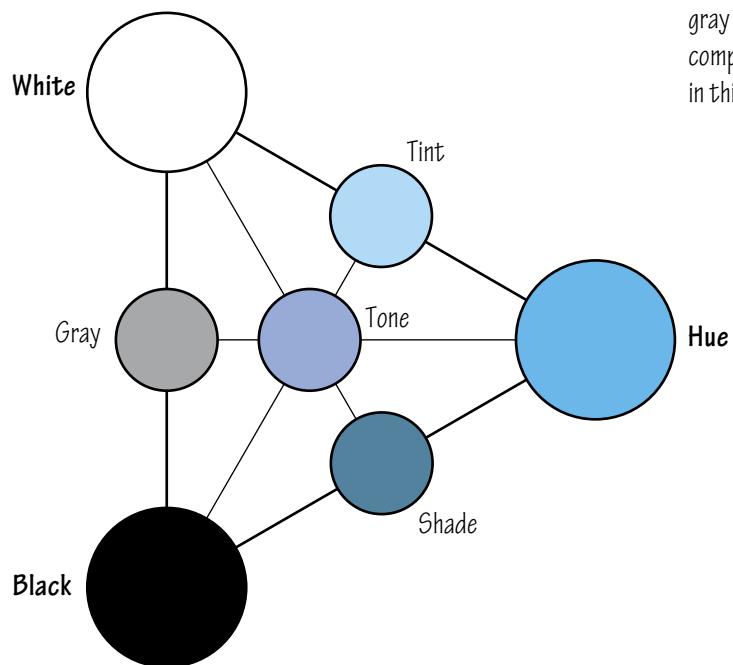
COLOR PIGMENTS



Object colorants, such as paints and dyes, are means to modify the color of the illuminating light, changing what we interpret to be the color of the object. In mixing the pigments of paints and dyes, each of the attributes of color can be altered.

The hue of a color can be changed by mixing it with other hues. When neighboring or analogous hues on the color wheel are mixed, harmonious and closely related hues are created. In contrast to this, mixing *complementary hues*, those hues directly opposite each other on the color wheel, produces neutral hues.

The value of a color can be raised by adding white and lowered by adding black. Lightening a hue's normal value by adding white creates a *tint* of that hue; darkening the hue's normal value with black creates a *shade* of the hue. A normally high-value color, such as yellow, is capable of more shades than tints, while a low-value color, such as red, is able to have more tints than shades.



The intensity of a color can be strengthened by adding more of the dominant hue. It can be lowered by mixing gray with the color or by adding to the color its complementary hue. Hues that are grayed or neutralized in this manner are often called tones.

Apparent changes in an object's color can result from the effects of light and from the juxtaposition of surrounding or background colors. These factors are especially important to the interior designer, who must carefully consider how the colors of elements in an interior space interact and how they are rendered by the light illuminating them.

Light of a particular hue, other than white, is rarely used for general illumination. However, not all sources of what we consider white light are spectrally well balanced. Incandescent bulbs cast a warm glow, while some fluorescents cast a cool light. Daylight, too, can be warm or cool, depending on the time of day and the direction from which it comes. Even the color of a large reflecting surface can alter the light within an interior space.

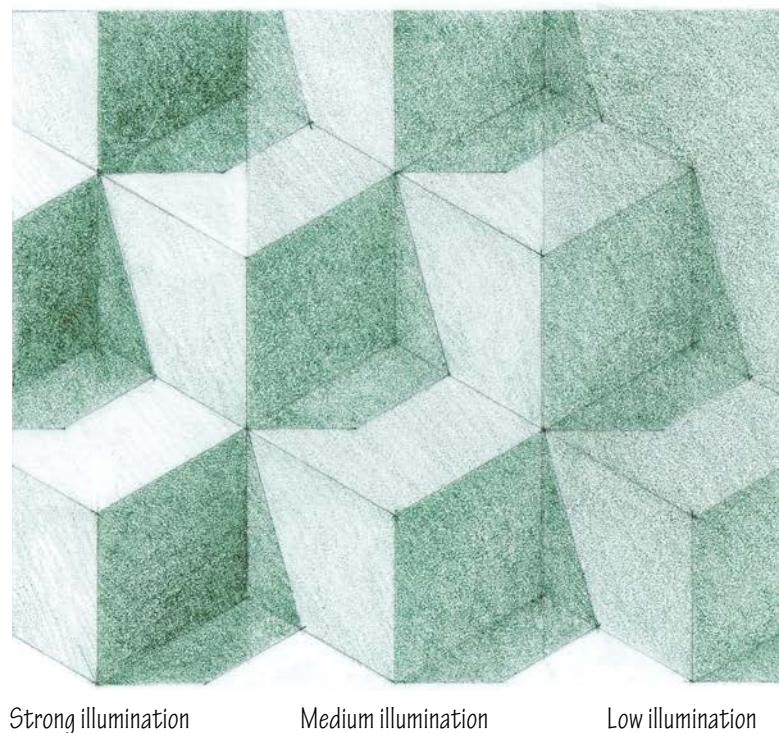
Warm light tends to accentuate warm colors and neutralize cool hues, while cool light intensifies cool colors and weakens warm hues. If light is altered with a particular hue, it will raise the intensity of colors of that hue and neutralize colors of a complementary hue.

The apparent value of a color can also be altered by the amount of light used to illuminate it. Lowering the amount of illumination will darken a color's value and neutralize its hue. Raising the lighting level will lighten the color's value and enhance its intensity. However, high levels of illumination can also tend to make colors appear less saturated, or washed out.

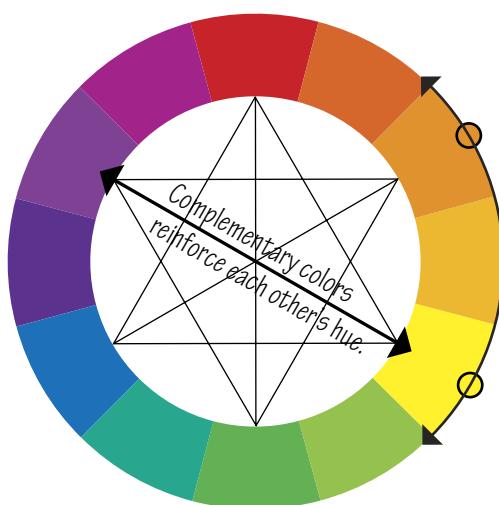
The natural fluctuations of light in an interior setting can alter colors in subtle ways. A color may also look different depending on its angle to the viewer. It is always best to test colors in the environment in which they are to be viewed, under both daylight and nighttime conditions.



Conditions affecting the rendition of colors in an interior space



SIMULTANEOUS CONTRAST

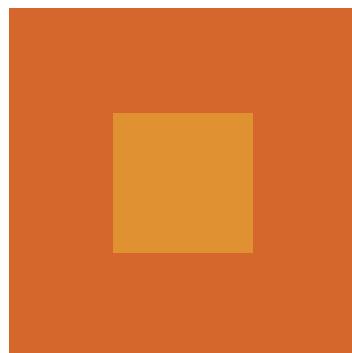
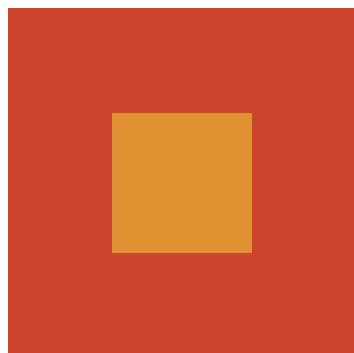
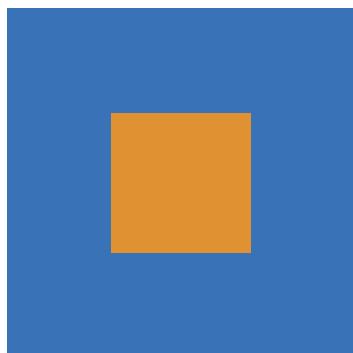


Analogous colors push each other toward the other's complement.

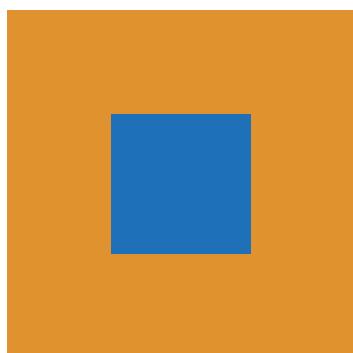
Although mixing two complementary color pigments results in a neutralized or grayed hue, placing them next to each other can produce the opposite effect. In the phenomenon known as simultaneous contrast, the eye tends to generate a color's complementary hue and project it as an afterimage on adjacent colors. Thus, two complementary colors placed side by side tend to heighten each other's saturation and brilliance without an apparent change in hue.

When the two colors are not complementary, each will alter the other with its own complement and shift it toward that hue. The result is that the two colors are pushed farther apart in hue.

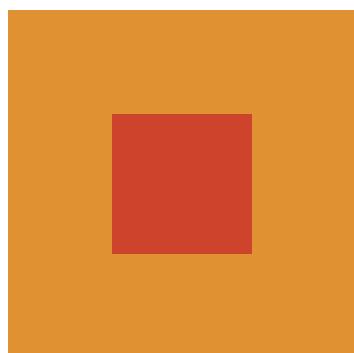
Simultaneous contrast in hue is most easily perceived when two colors are fairly uniform in value. If one color is much lighter or darker than the other, the effects of contrasting values become more noticeable.



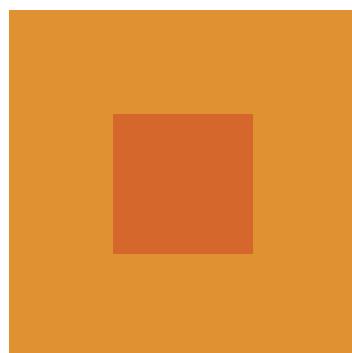
Simultaneous Contrast



Complementary colors



Analogous colors; contrasting values

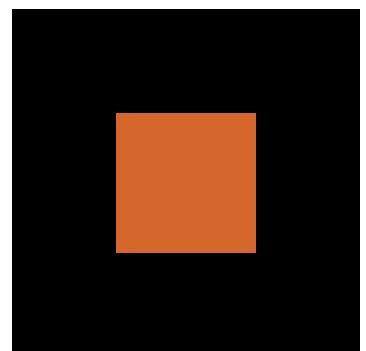
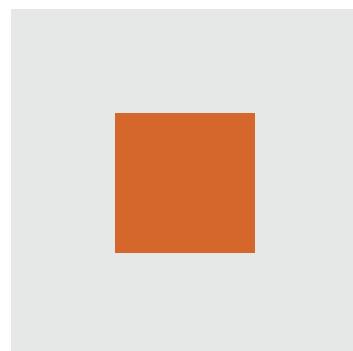


Analogous colors; similar values

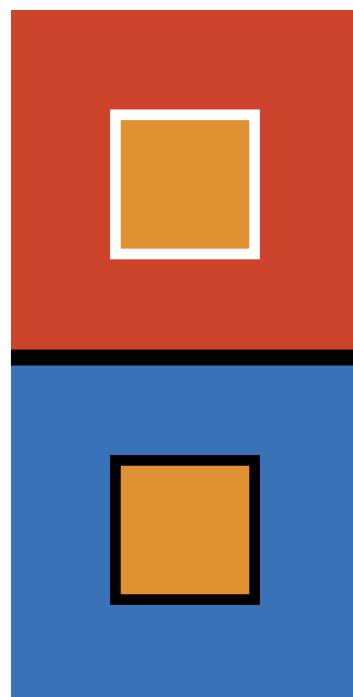
Simultaneous contrast also affects the apparent value of a color, which can be made to appear lighter or darker according to the value of its background color. A light color will tend to deepen a dark color, while a dark color will tend to brighten a light color.

Both black and white have a visible effect on colors brought into contact with them. Surrounding colors with black tends to make them richer and more vibrant, while outlining with white often has the opposite effect. A large area of white will reflect light onto adjacent colors, while thin white lines tend to spread and alter the hues they separate.

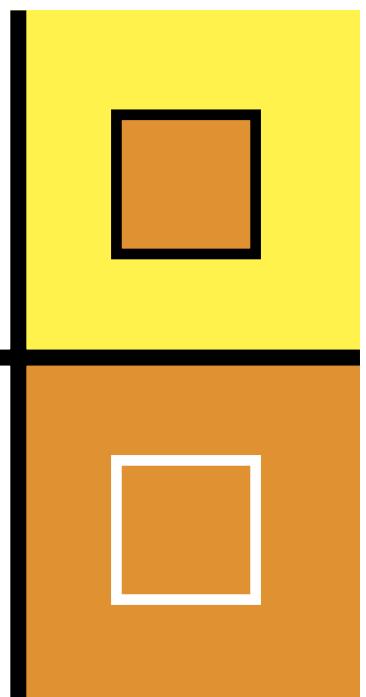
The effects of contrasting hues and values depend on areas large enough to be perceived as separate colors. If the areas are small and closely spaced, the eye does not have enough time to adjust to their differences and mixes the colors optically. The effects of optical mixing are often used in the weaving of textiles to create an impression of many hues and values with a limited number of colored yarns or threads.



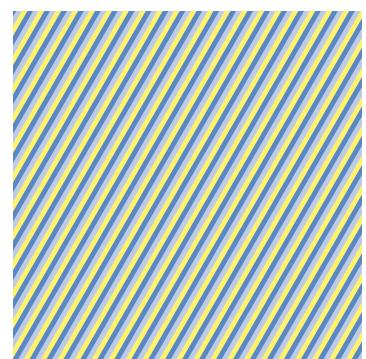
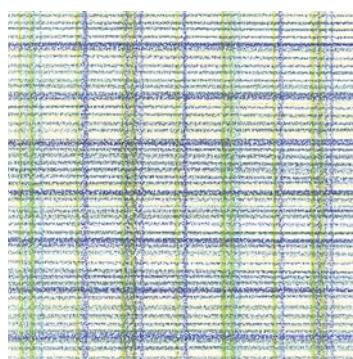
Contrasting values alter perceived values.

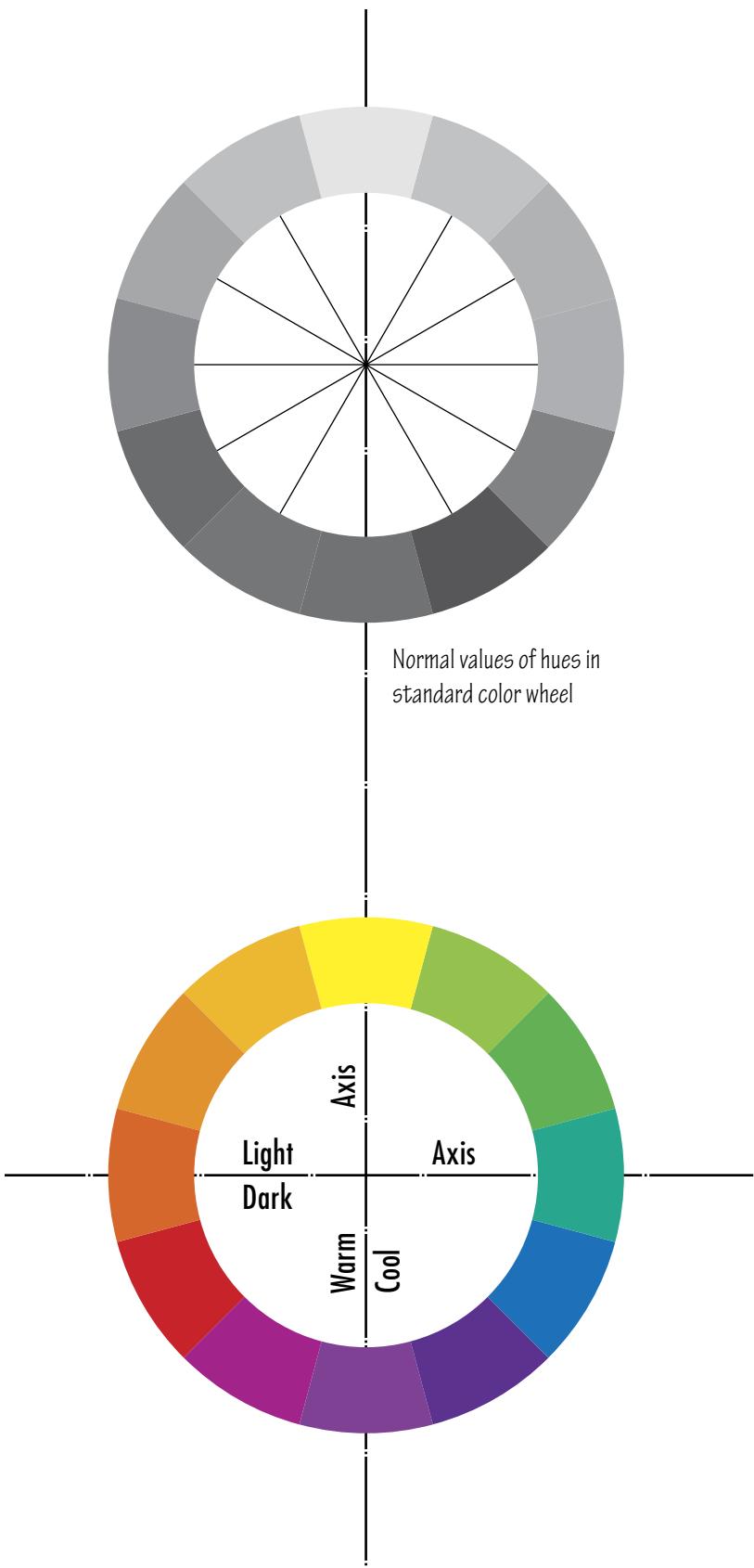


Effect of outlining colors with white or black



Optical mixing occurs when dots or strokes of colors merge to produce more blended hues.





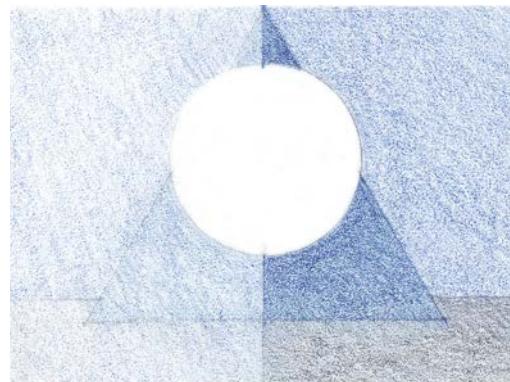
In addition to understanding how colors interact and alter one another's attributes, the interior designer must consider how color affects our perception of form and the dimensions and qualities of interior space.

Colors are often divided into warm and cool categories. Reds, oranges, and yellows are considered to be warm colors that advance. Blues, greens, and violets are considered cooler and tend to recede. Neutrals, such as grays and off-whites, may be either warm (brownish) or cool (bluish).

The warmth or coolness of a color's hue, along with its relative value and degree of saturation, determines the visual force with which it attracts our attention, brings an object into focus, and creates a sense of space. The following generalizations summarize some of these effects of color.

Warm hues and high intensities are said to be visually active and stimulating, while cool hues and low intensities are more subdued and relaxing. Light values tend to be cheerful, middle values undemanding, and dark values somber.

Bright, saturated colors and any strong contrasts attract our attention. Grayed hues and middle values are less forceful. Contrasting values, in particular, make us aware of shapes and forms. Contrasting hues and saturations can also define shape, but if they are too similar in value, the definition they afford will be less distinct.



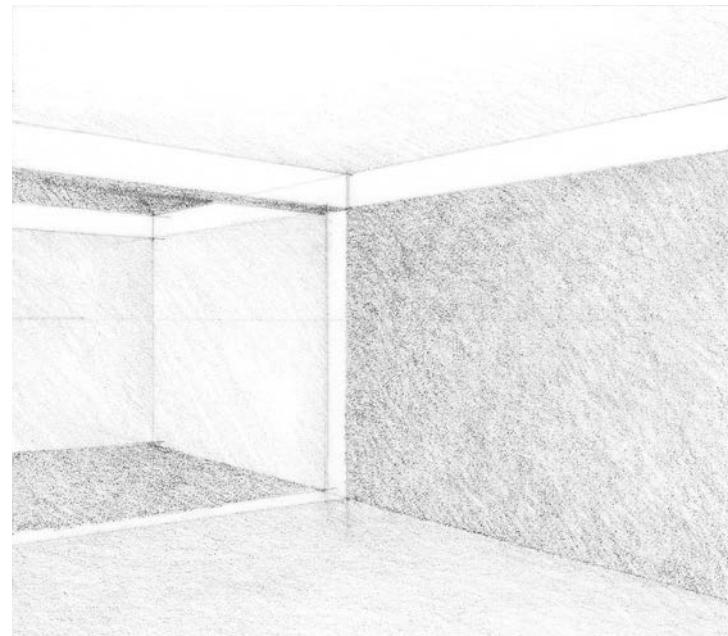
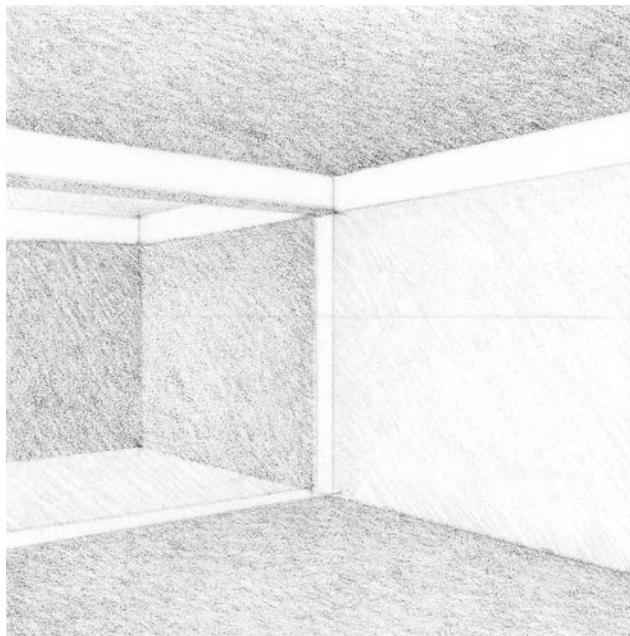
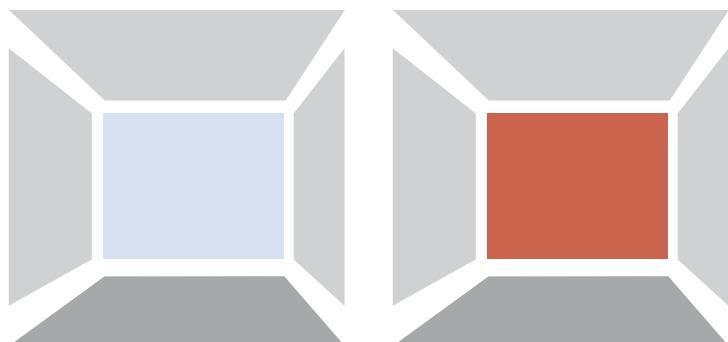
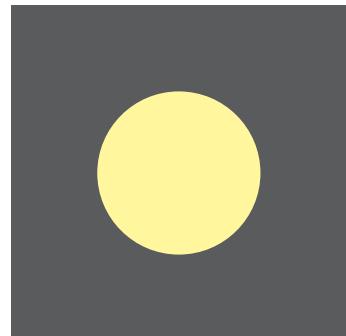
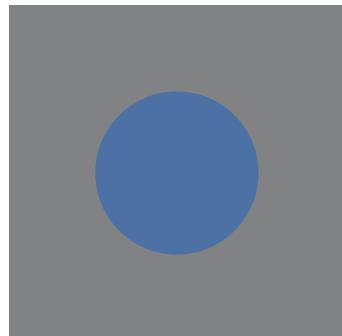
Value contrast aids in our perception of shape.

Deep, cool colors appear to contract. Light, warm colors tend to expand and increase the apparent size of an object, especially when seen against a dark background.

When used on an enclosing plane of a space, light values, cool hues, and grayed colors appear to recede and increase apparent distance. They can therefore be used to enhance the spaciousness of a room and increase its apparent width, length, or ceiling height.

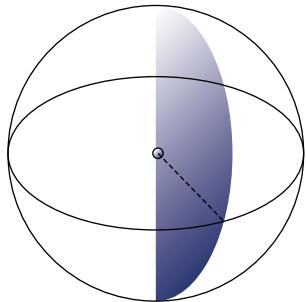
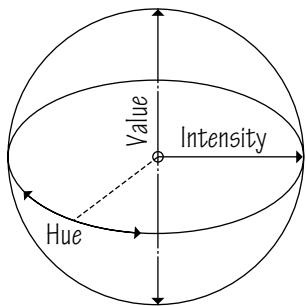
Warm hues appear to advance. Dark values and saturated colors suggest nearness. These traits can be used to diminish the scale of a space or, in an illusory way, shorten one of a room's dimensions.

These color generalizations have complex interrelationships. For example, although blue is considered cool and red warm, a vibrant electric blue may not strike us as cooler than a soft rose. Our emotional reactions to color vary with our personal experiences and cultural associations. In addition, favored color combinations are subject to fashion trends, with certain color palettes closely tied to specific times or places.

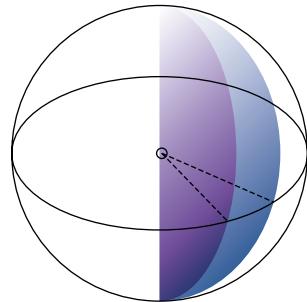


The effect of values on spatial boundaries

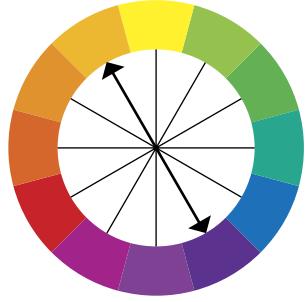
COLOR SCHEMES



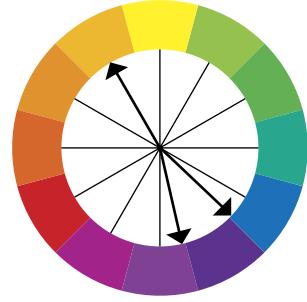
Monochromatic color schemes vary the value of a single hue.



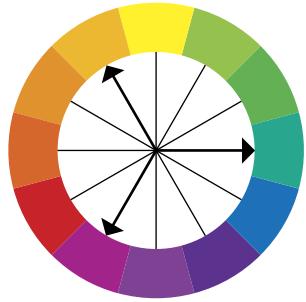
Analogous color schemes use two or more hues from the same quarter of the color wheel.



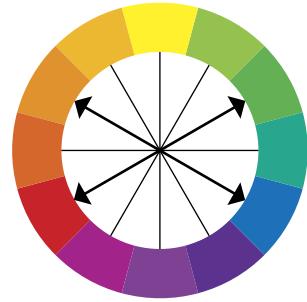
Complementary color schemes use two hues on opposite sides of the color wheel.



Split complementary color schemes combine one hue with the two hues adjacent to its complement.



Triadic color schemes use colors located at three equidistant points on the color wheel.



Contrasting hue schemes are based on complementary or triadic color combinations.

Although each of us may have favorite colors and a distinct dislike of others, there is no such thing as a good or bad color. Some colors are simply in or out of fashion at a given time; others may be appropriate or inappropriate given a specific color scheme. The suitability of a color depends ultimately on how and where it is used and how it fits into the palette of a color scheme.

Manufacturers design color series for paints that suggest compatible color selections. These series may be scientifically built on gradations of pigments; based on references to nature, fabrics, or other materials; or developed to reflect emotional, historic, or similar associations.

If colors are like the notes of a musical scale, then color schemes are like musical chords, structuring color groups according to certain visual relationships among their attributes of hue, value, and intensity. The color schemes shown here are based on the hue relationships within a color group.

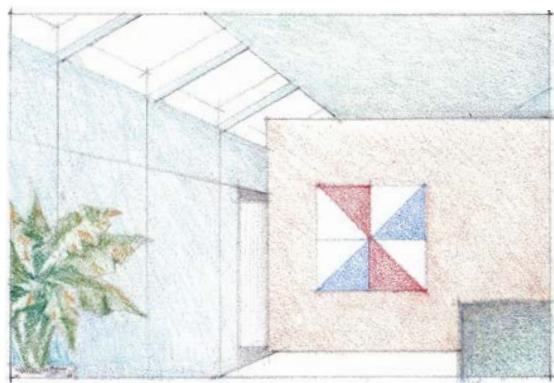
There are two broad categories of hue schemes, related and contrasting. Related hue schemes, based on either a single hue or a series of analogous hues, promote harmony and unity. Variety can be introduced by varying value and intensity, by including small amounts of other hues as accents, or by bringing shape, form, and texture into play.

Contrasting hue schemes, based on complementary or triadic color combinations, are inherently more rich and varied, since they always include both warm and cool hues.

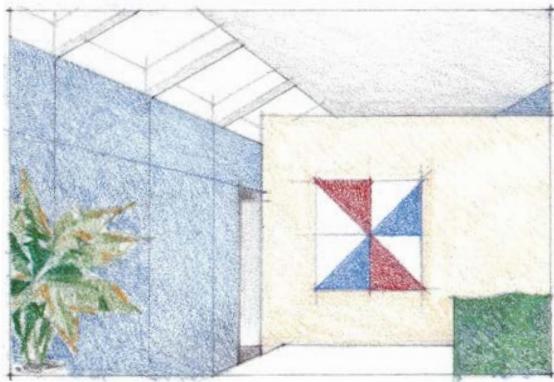
Hue schemes merely outline the approaches one can take in organizing a combination of hues. In designing a color scheme, other color relationships must also be considered.

The color triangle developed by Faber Birren illustrates how modified colors—tints, tones, and shades—may be related in a harmonious sequence. The triangle is based on the three basic elements: pure color, white, and black. They combine to create the secondary forms of tint, shade, gray, and tone. Any of the bold-line paths illustrated here define a harmonious sequence, since each involves a series of visually related elements.

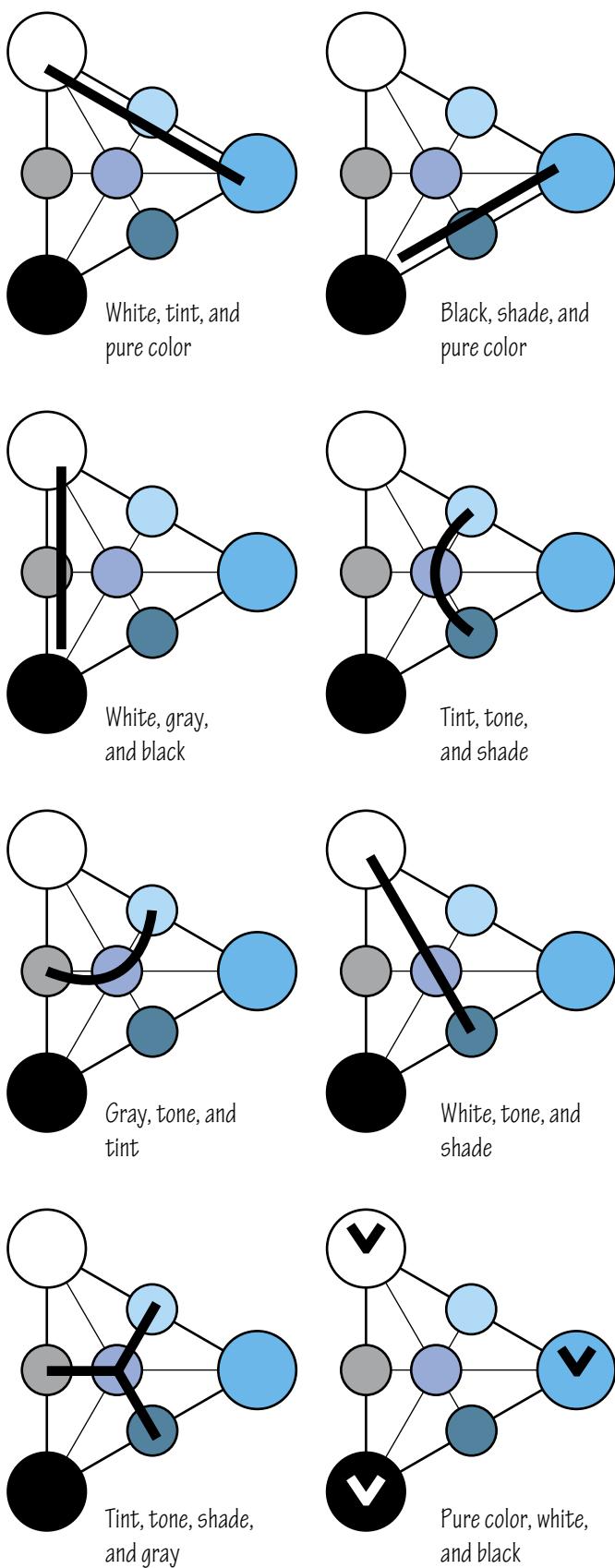
Ultimately, whether a color scheme is lively and exuberant or restful and quiet will depend on the chromatic and tonal values of the hues chosen. Large intervals between the colors and values will create lively contrasts and dramatic effects. Small intervals will result in more subtle contrasts and patterns.



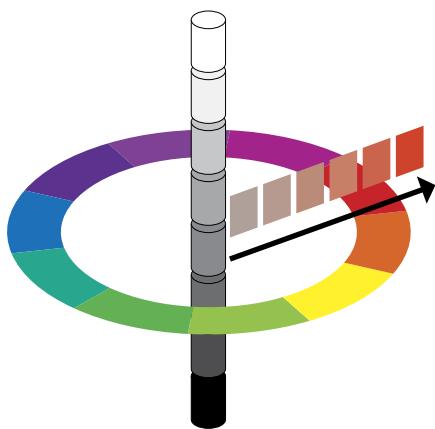
Small intervals



Large intervals



CHROMATIC DISTRIBUTION

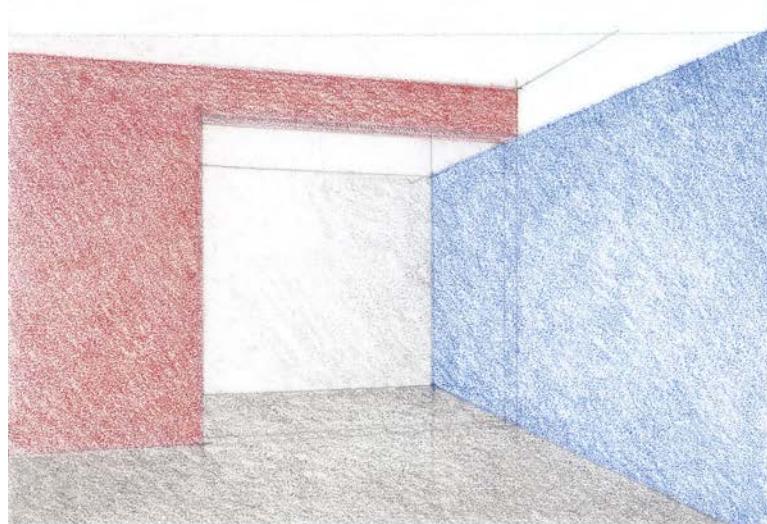
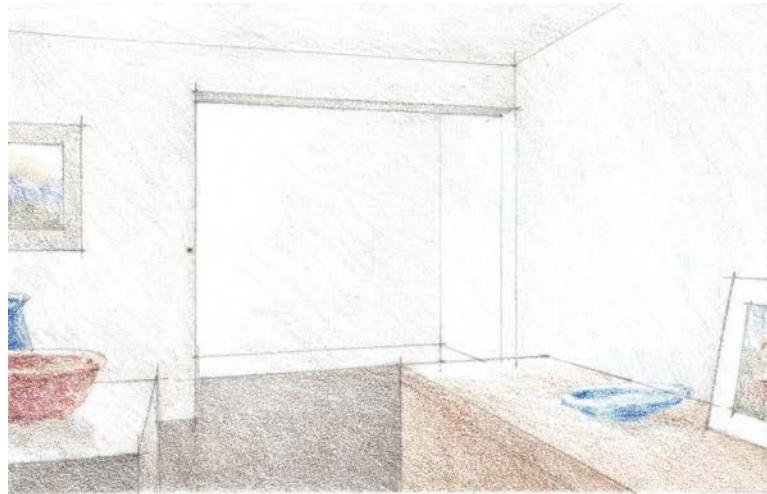


In developing a color scheme for an interior space, one must consider carefully the chromatic and tonal key to be established and the distribution of the colors. The scheme must not only satisfy the purpose and use of the space but also take into account its architectural character.

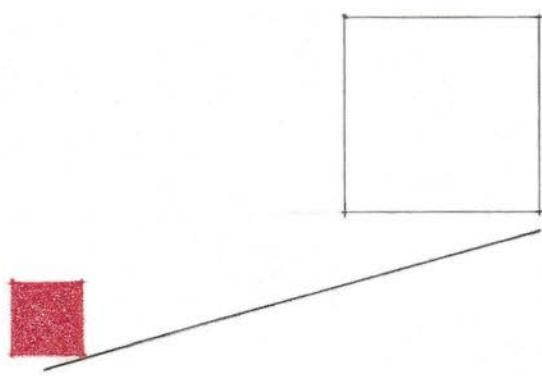
Decisions must be made regarding the major planes of an interior space and how color might be used to modify their apparent size, shape, scale, and distance. Which elements will form the background, middle ground, and foreground? Are there architectural or structural features that should be accentuated, or undesirable elements to be minimized?

Usually, the largest surfaces of a room—its floor, walls, and ceiling—have the most neutral values. Against this background, secondary elements such as large pieces of furniture or area rugs can have greater chromatic intensity. Finally, accent pieces, accessories, and other small-scale elements can have the strongest chroma for balance and to create interest.

Neutral color schemes are the most flexible. For a more dramatic effect, the main areas of a room can be given the more intense values, while secondary elements have lesser intensity. Large areas of intense color should be used with caution, particularly in a small room. They reduce the apparent distance and can be visually demanding.

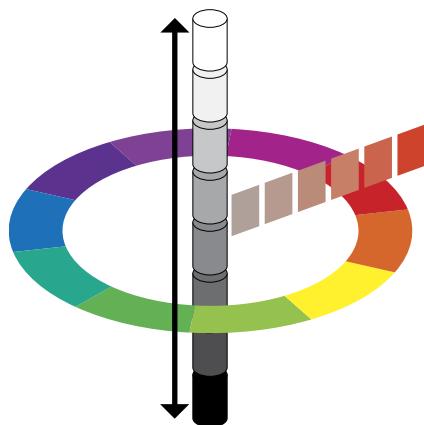


Large areas of intense color can be both dramatic and visually demanding.

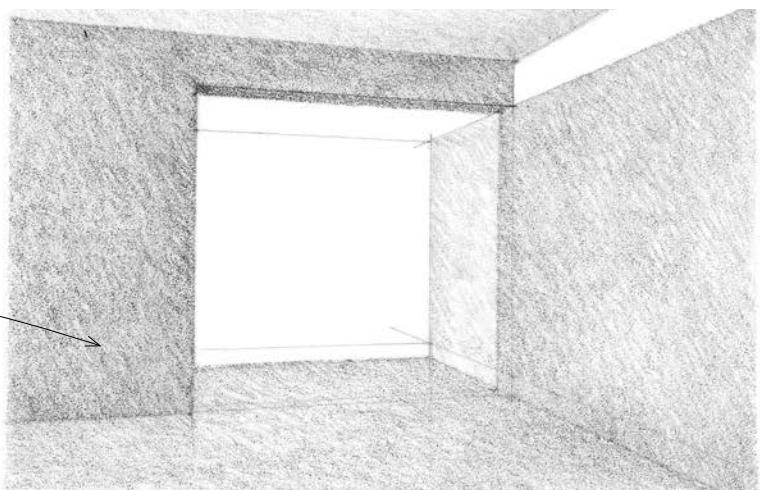


Balance large neutral areas with smaller areas of stronger intensity.

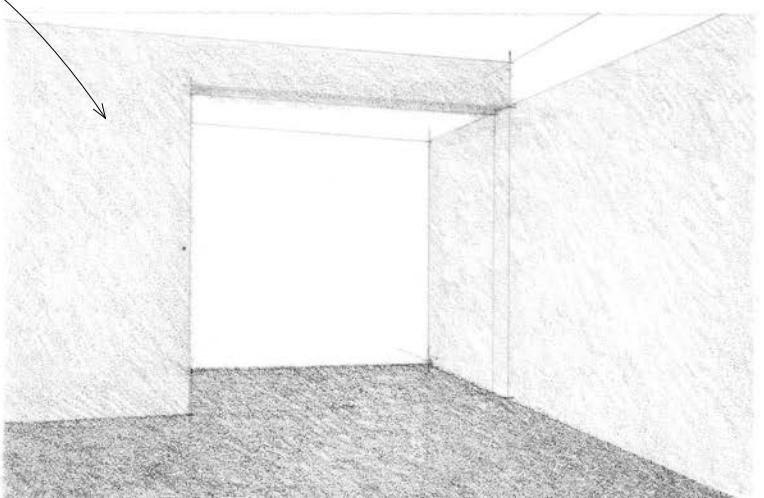
Of equal importance to chromatic distribution is tonal distribution, the pattern of lights and darks in a space. It is generally best to use varying amounts of light and dark values with a range of middle values to serve as transitional tones. Avoid using equal amounts of light and dark unless a fragmented effect is desired.



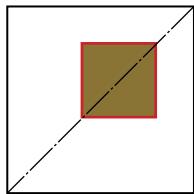
Typically, large areas of light value are offset by smaller areas of medium and dark values. This use of light values is particularly appropriate when the efficient use of available light is important. Dark color schemes can absorb much of the light within a space, resulting in a significant loss of illumination and an increase in energy use for lighting.



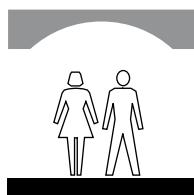
Another way of distributing values is to follow the pattern of nature. In this tonal sequence, the floor plane has the darkest value, surrounding walls are in the middle to light range, and the ceiling is fairly light.



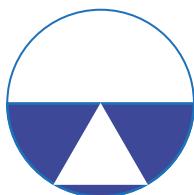
Of course, the distribution of values and their degree of contrast will also depend on the size, shape, and scale of the space. Because light values tend to recede while dark values advance, their placement can modify our perception of these spatial dimensions.



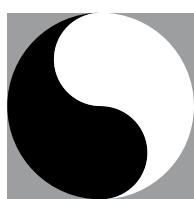
Proportion



Scale



Balance



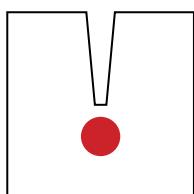
Harmony



Unity and Variety



Rhythm

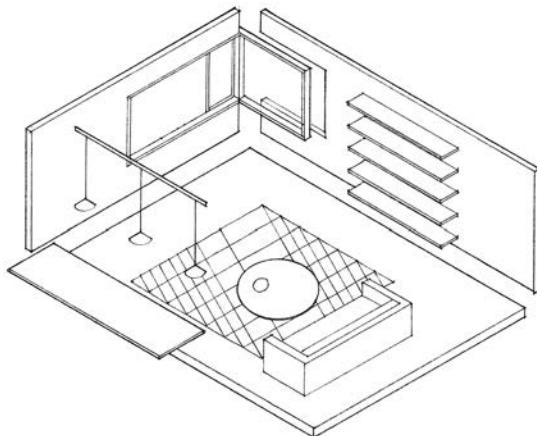


Emphasis

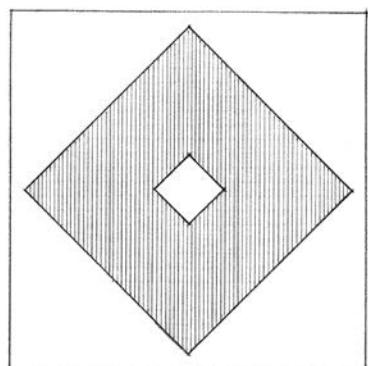
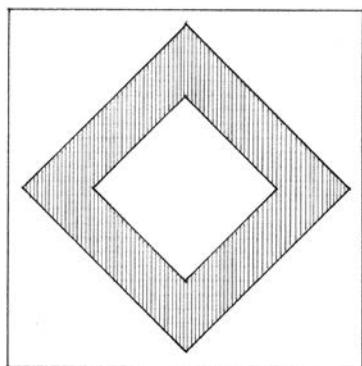
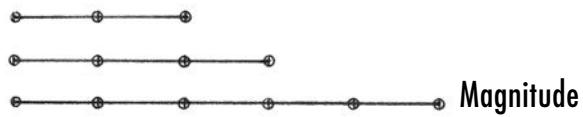
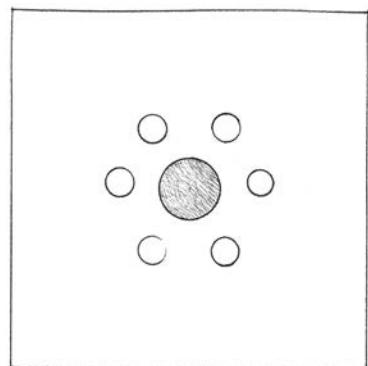
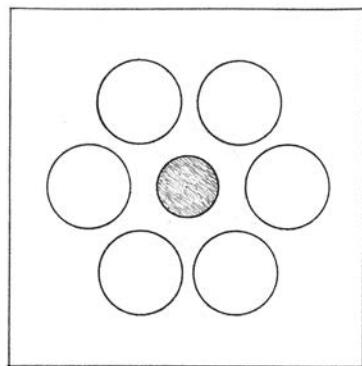
Interior design involves the selection of interior design elements and their arrangement within a spatial enclosure to satisfy functional and aesthetic requirements. This arrangement of elements in a space involves pattern making. No one single part or element in a space stands alone. In a design pattern, all of the parts, elements, or pieces depend on one another for their visual impact, function, and meaning.

The visual relationships established among the interior design elements in a space are ordered by proportion, scale, balance, harmony, unity and variety, rhythm, and emphasis. These design principles are not intended to be hard and fast rules, but rather guidelines to the possible ways design elements can be arranged into recognizable patterns. Ultimately, we must learn to judge the appropriateness of a pattern, its visual role in a space, and its meaning to the users of the space. These principles, however, can help develop and maintain a sense of visual order among the design elements of a space, while accommodating their intended use and function.

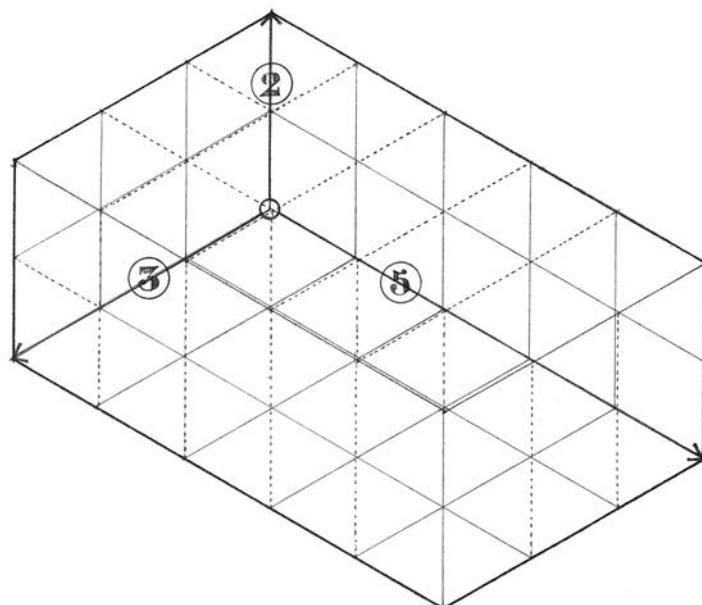
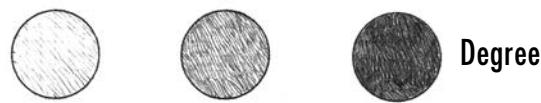
→ Arranging Design Patterns



Proportion refers to the relationship of one part to another or to the whole, or between one object and another. This relationship may be one of magnitude, quantity, or degree.



The apparent size of an object is influenced by the relative sizes of other objects in its environment.

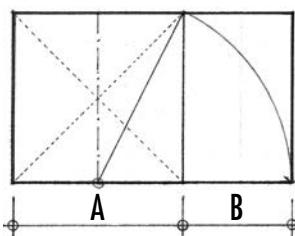


When dealing with forms in space, one must consider proportion in three dimensions.

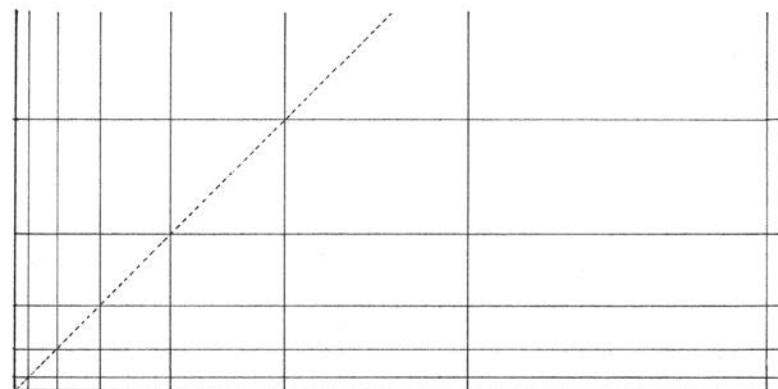
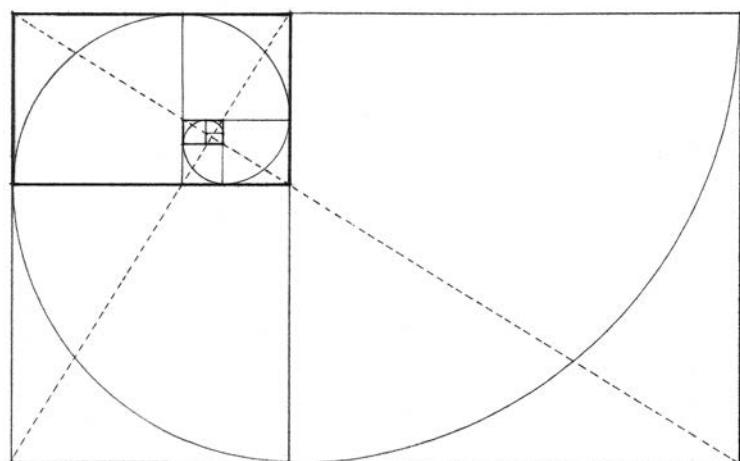
PROPORTIONING SYSTEMS

Ratio A:B A / B

Proportion A:B:C $A / B = B / C$



Golden Section: $B / A = A / (A + B)$



1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55...

In the course of history, a number of mathematical or geometric methods have been developed to determine the ideal proportion of things. These proportioning systems go beyond functional and technical determinants in an attempt to establish a measure of beauty—an aesthetic rationale for the dimensional relationships among the parts and elements of a visual construction.

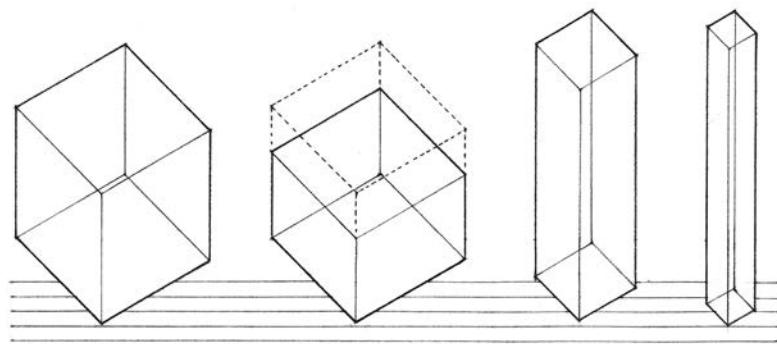
According to Euclid, an ancient Greek mathematician, a ratio refers to the quantitative comparison of two similar things, while proportion refers to the equality of ratios. Underlying any proportioning system, therefore, is a characteristic ratio, a permanent quality that is transmitted from one proportion to another.

Perhaps the most familiar proportioning system is the *golden section* established by the ancient Greeks. It defines the unique relationship between two unequal parts of a whole in which the ratio between the smaller and greater parts is equal to the ratio between the greater part and the whole.

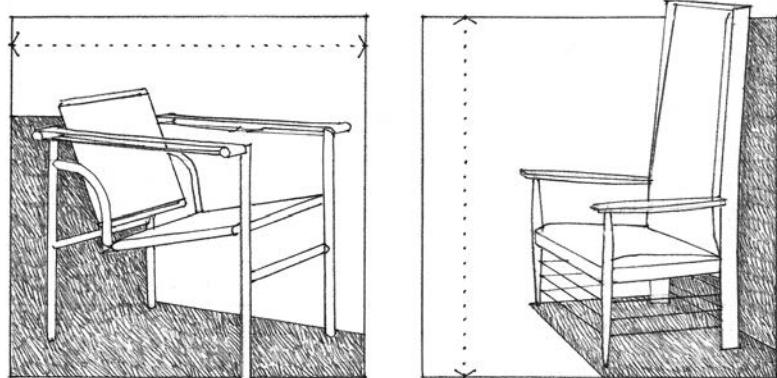
The Fibonacci series is a progression of whole numbers wherein each term is the sum of the preceding two. The ratio between two consecutive terms approximates the golden section.

Although often defined in mathematical terms, a proportioning system establishes a consistent set of visual relationships among the parts of a composition. It can be a useful design tool for promoting unity and harmony. However, our perception of the physical dimensions of things is often imprecise. The foreshortening of perspective, viewing distance, or even cultural bias can distort our perception.

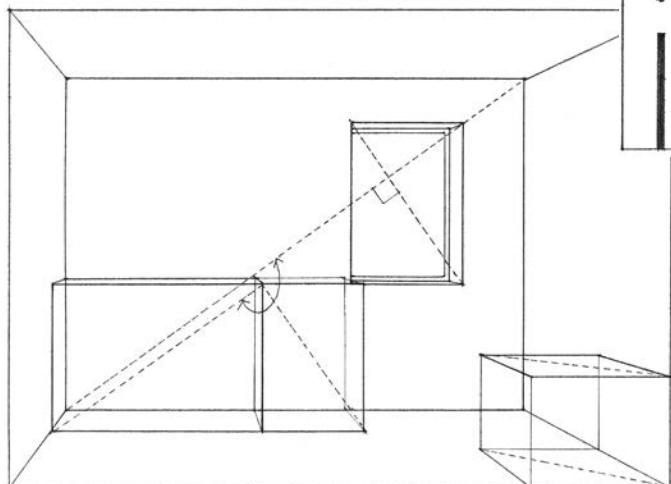
The matter of proportion is primarily one of critical visual judgment. In this respect, significant differences in the relative dimensions of things are important. Ultimately, a proportion will appear to be correct for a given situation when we sense that neither too little nor too much of an element or characteristic is present.



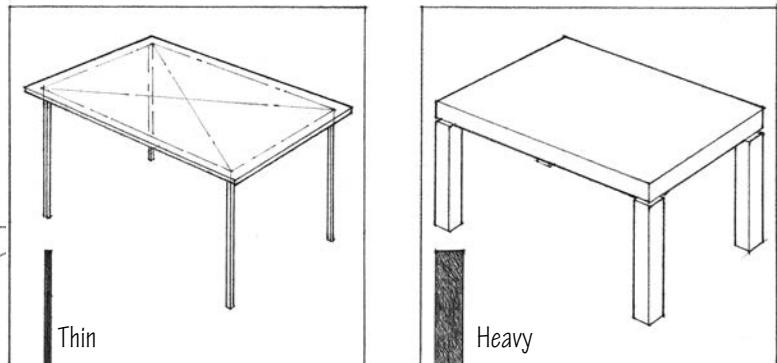
These forms vary significantly in their proportions.



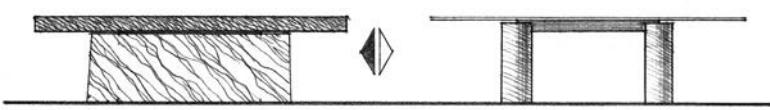
Pieces of furniture may differ significantly in their proportions.



Diagonals that are parallel or perpendicular to each other indicate that the rectangles they bisect have similar proportions.

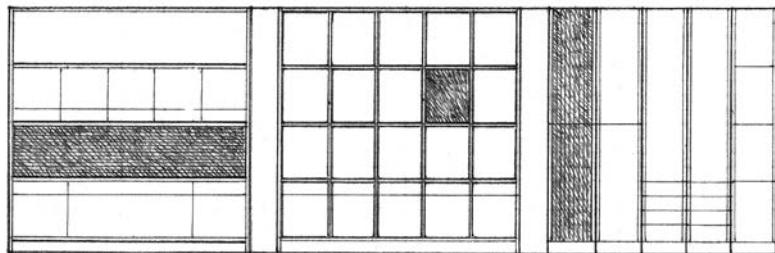
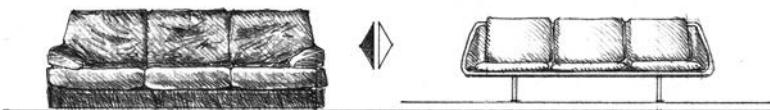


PROPORTIONAL RELATIONSHIPS

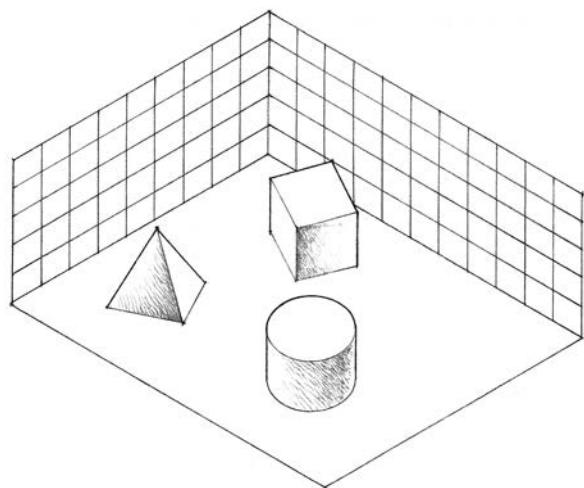


In interior design, we are concerned with the proportional relationships between the parts of a design element, between several design elements, and between the elements and the spatial form and enclosure.

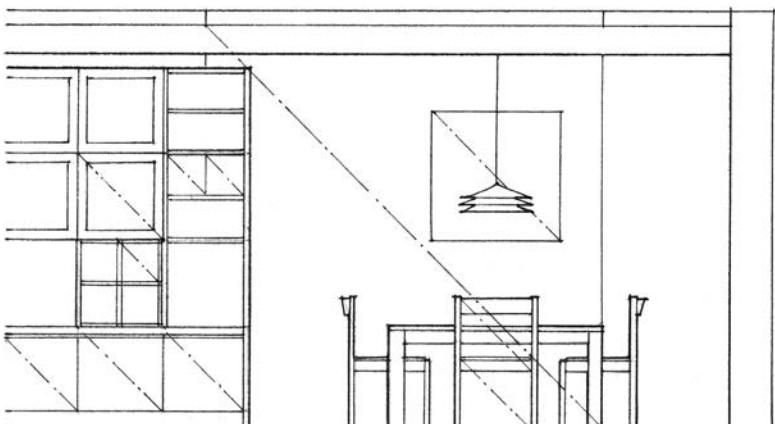
Proportional Differences



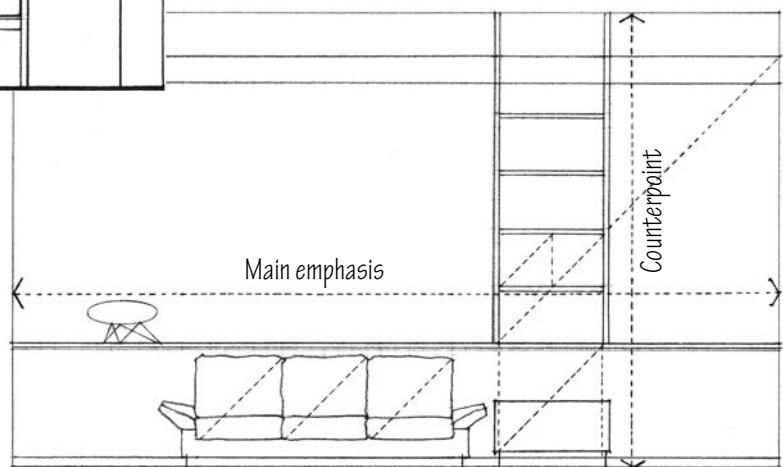
Between parts of an element



Between elements and the spatial enclosure



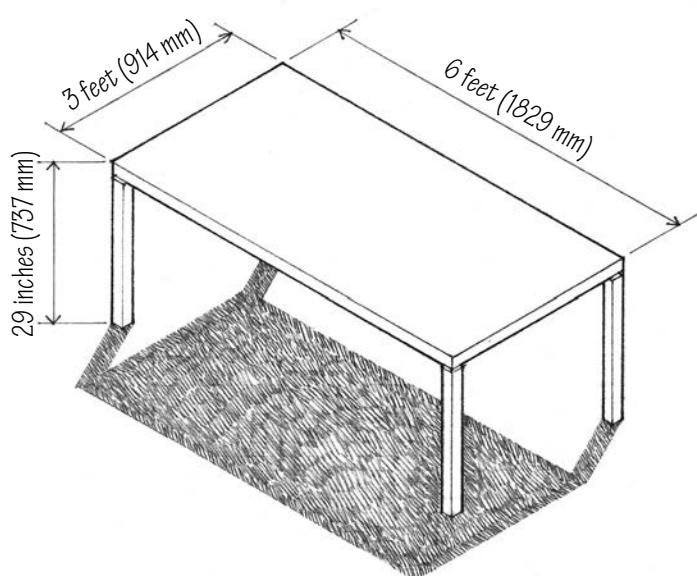
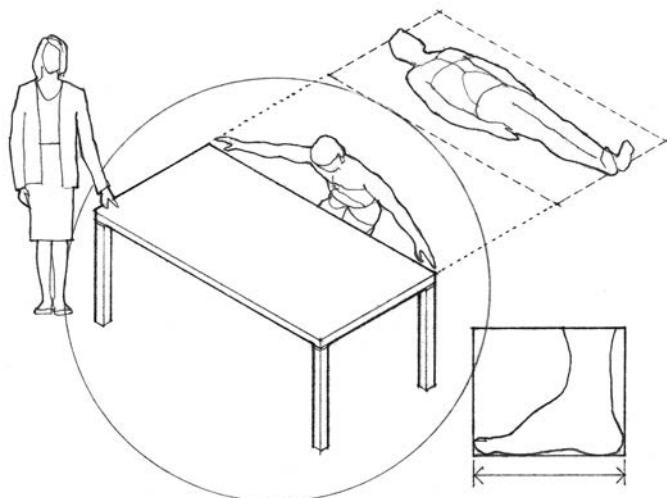
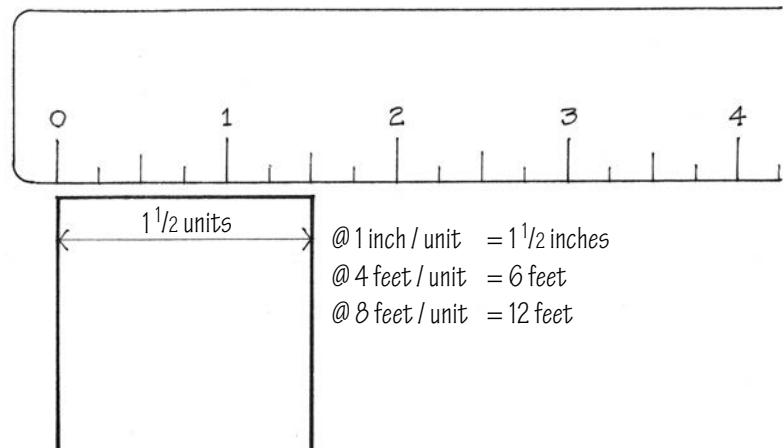
Between elements



The design principle of scale is related to proportion.

Both proportion and scale deal with the relative sizes of things. If there is a difference, proportion pertains to the relationships between the parts of a composition, while scale refers specifically to the size of something, relative to some known standard or recognized constant.

Mechanical scale is the calculation of something's physical size according to a standard system of measurement. For example, we can say that a table is, according to the U.S. Customary System, 3 feet wide, 6 feet long, and 29 inches high. If we are familiar with this system and with objects of similar size, we can visualize how big the table is. Using the International System of Units (the metric system), the same table would measure 914 mm wide, 1829 mm long, and 737 mm high.

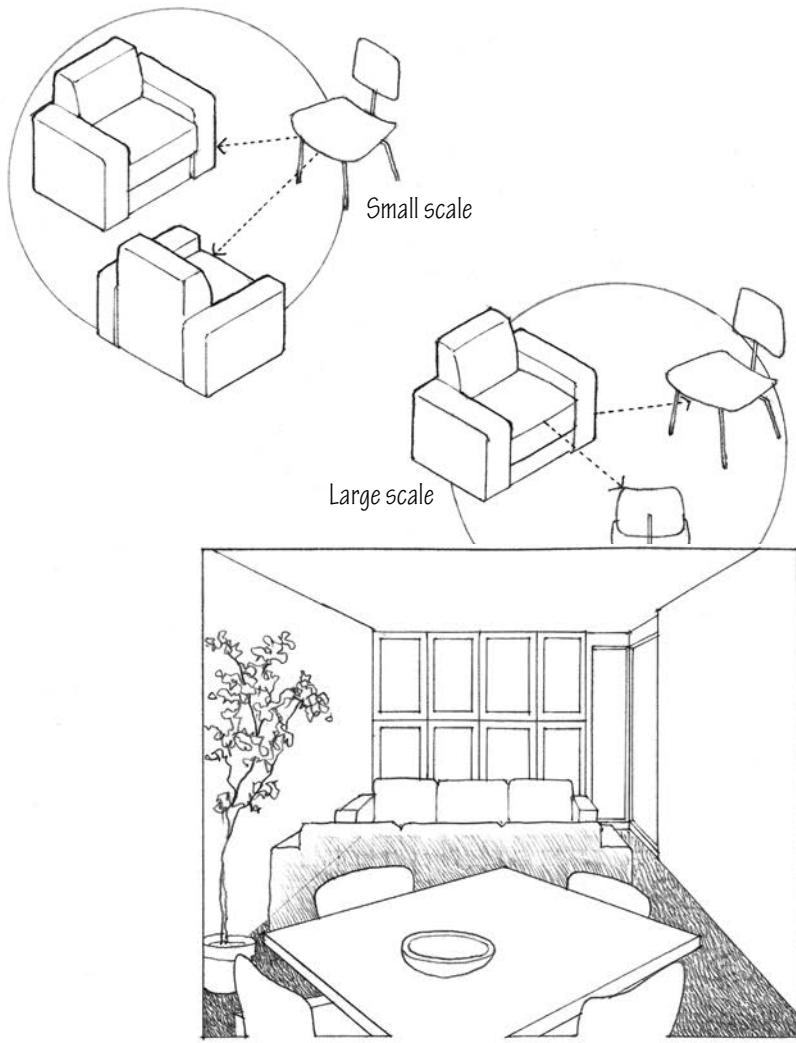


Our bodies can serve as a system of measurement.

Mechanical Scale

Size relative to an accepted standard of measurement.

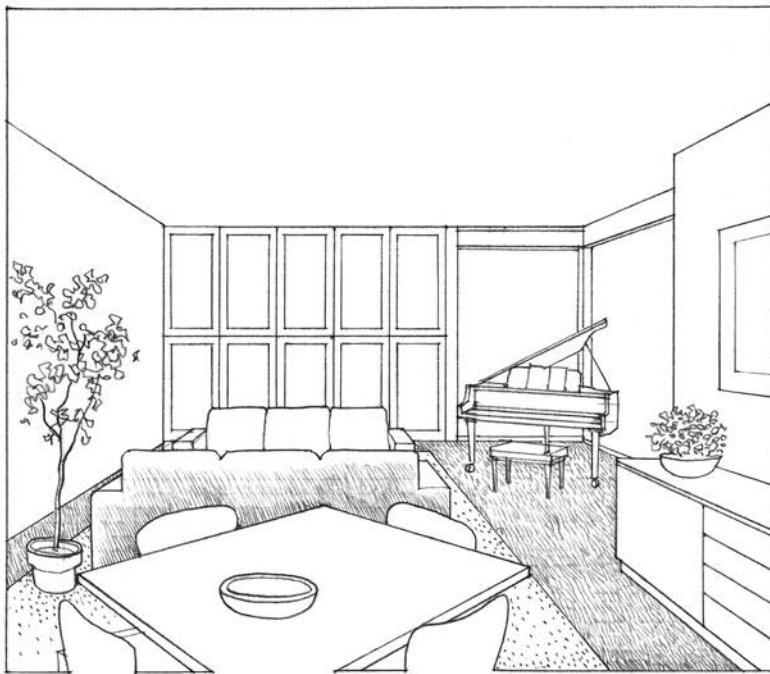
VISUAL SCALE



Visual scale refers to the size something appears to have when measured against other things around it. Thus, an object's scale is often a judgment we make based on the relative or known sizes of nearby or surrounding elements. For example, the aforementioned table can appear to be in scale or out of scale with a room, depending on the relative size and proportions of the space.

We can refer to something as being small scale if we are measuring it against other things that are generally much larger. Similarly, an object can be considered to be large scale if it is grouped with relatively small items, or if it appears to be larger than what is considered normal or average.

Small-scale space or large-scale furniture



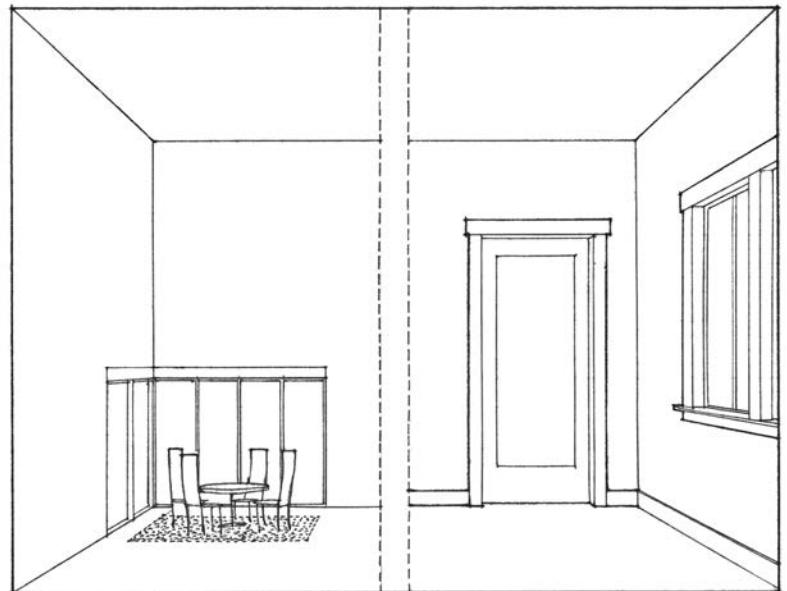
Visual Scale

Size relative to other objects in the environment or to the surrounding space

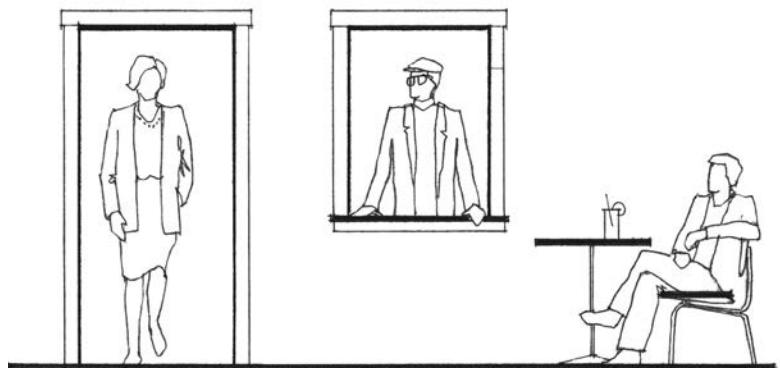
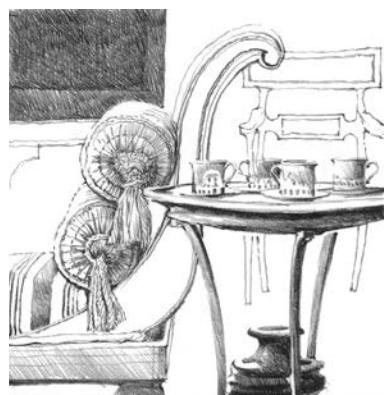
Human scale refers to the feeling of bigness something gives us. If the dimensions of an interior space or the sizes of elements within it make us feel small, we can say they lack human scale. If, on the other hand, the space does not dwarf us, or if the elements offer a comfortable fit with our dimensional requirements of reach, clearance, or movement, we can say they are human in scale.

Most of the elements we use to ascertain human scale are those whose dimensions we have become accustomed to through contact and use. These include doorways, stairs, tables, counters, and various types of seating. These elements can be used to humanize a space that would otherwise lack human scale.

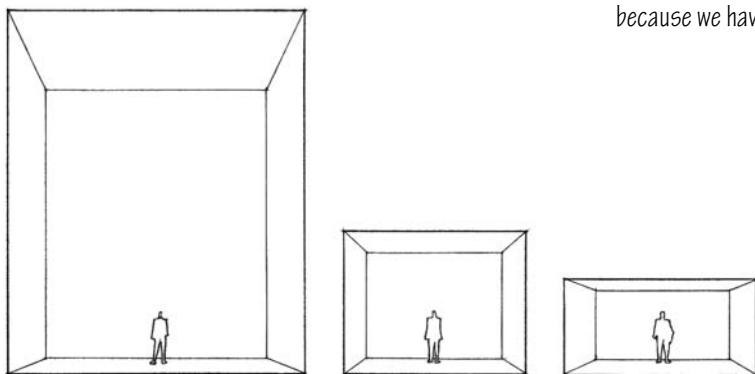
Interior details near eye level can be used to bring the scale of an architectural space down to human size. For example, a chair rail along a wall creates a visual line at roughly hand height. Similarly, moderately scaled artwork and accessories can help make an imposing space feel more comfortable.



We can judge the scale of a space by the relative size of the interior elements within it.



We often use doorways, windowsills, tables, and chairs to discern human scale because we have become accustomed to their dimensions.

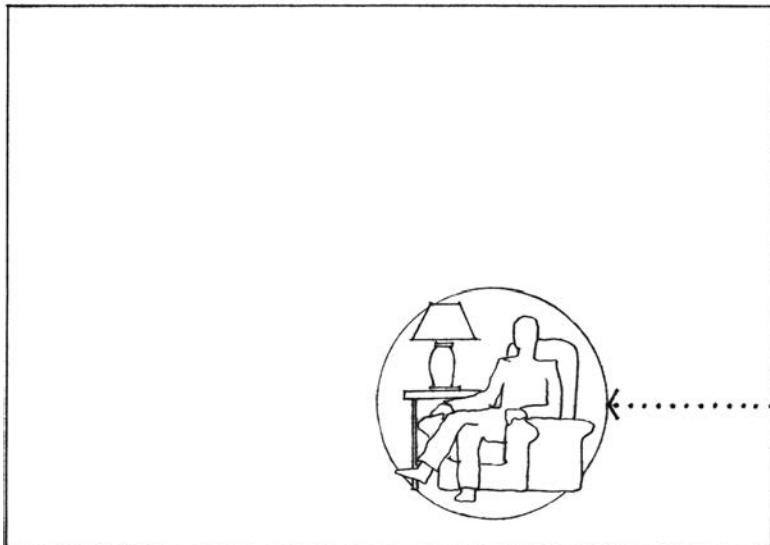


Human Scale

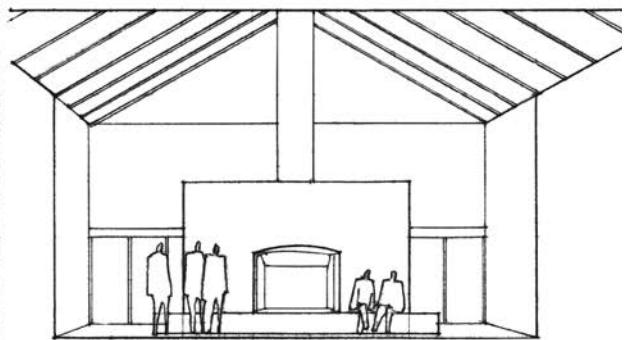
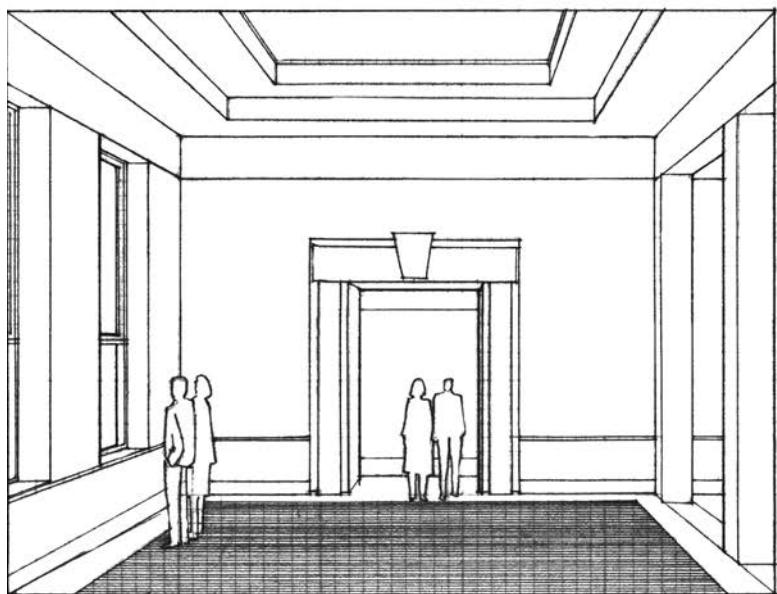
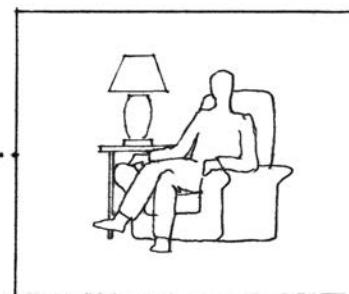
The feeling of smallness or bigness a space or an interior element gives us

SCALE RELATIONSHIPS

The issue of scale in an interior space is not limited to one set of relationships. Interior elements can be related simultaneously to the whole space, to each other, and to those people who use the space. It is not unusual for some elements to have a normal, orderly scale relationship but have an exceptional scale when compared to other elements. Unusually scaled elements can be used to attract attention or create and emphasize a focal point.



A set of scale relationships can exist within a larger context.



Doorways and windows may be scaled to the dimensions of a space while sill heights and wainscots retain a human scale.

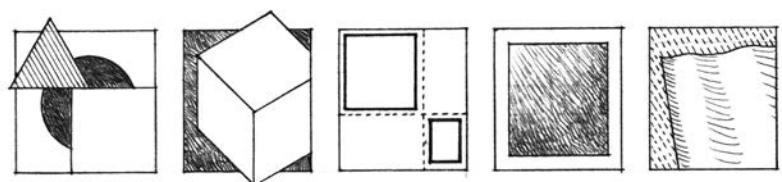
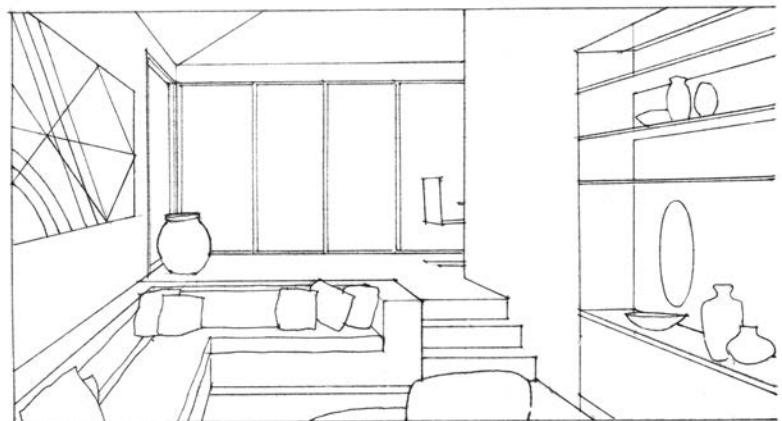
Interior spaces—and their elements of enclosure, furnishings, lighting, and accessories—often include a mix of shapes, sizes, colors, and textures. The organization of these elements is a response to functional needs and aesthetic desires. At the same time, these elements should be arranged to achieve visual balance—a state of equilibrium among the visual forces projected by the elements.

Each element in the ensemble of interior space has specific characteristics of shape, form, size, color, and texture. These characteristics, along with the factors of location and orientation, determine the visual weight of each element and how much attention each will attract in the overall pattern of space.

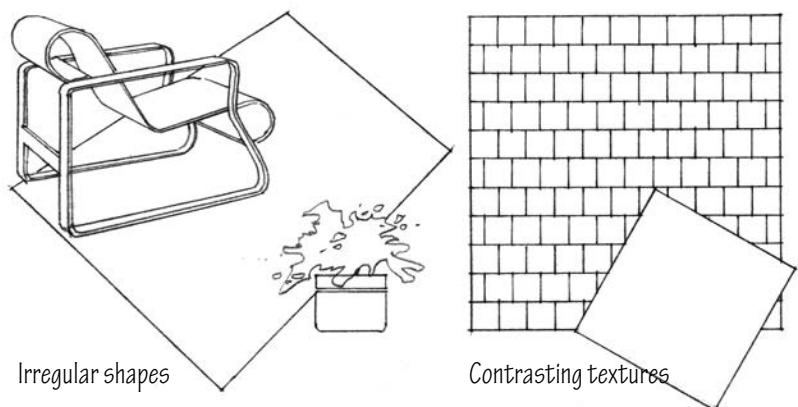
Characteristics that will enhance or increase the visual weight of an element—and attract our attention—are:

- Irregular or contrasting shapes
- Bright colors and contrasting textures
- Large dimensions and unusual proportions
- Elaborate details

Attracting attention with...

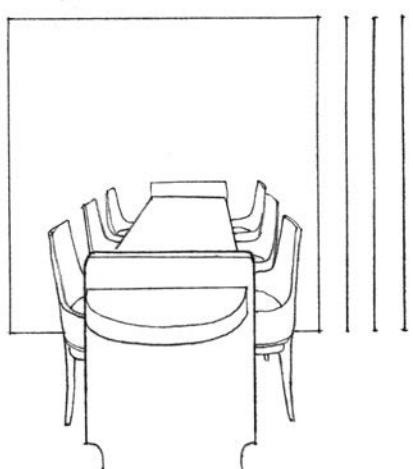


Interiors: A mix of shapes, colors, and textures

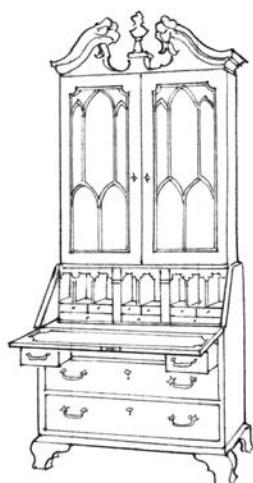


Irregular shapes

Contrasting textures

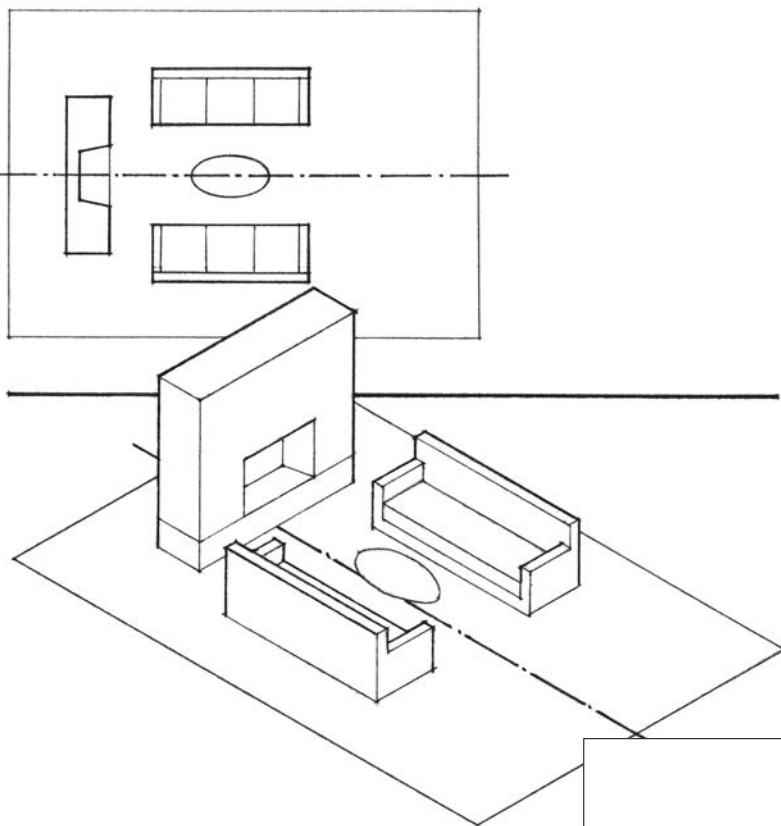


Unusual proportions

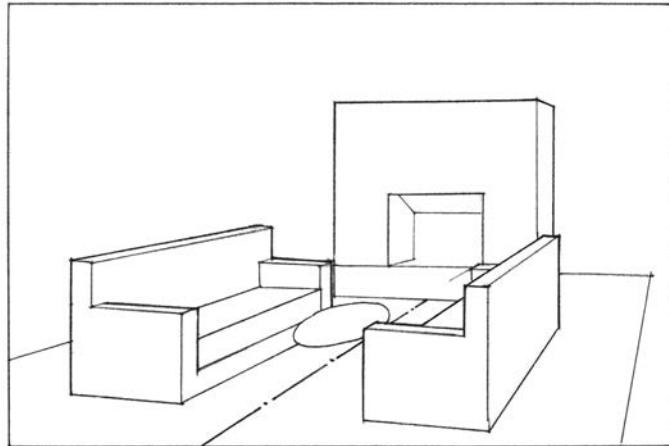
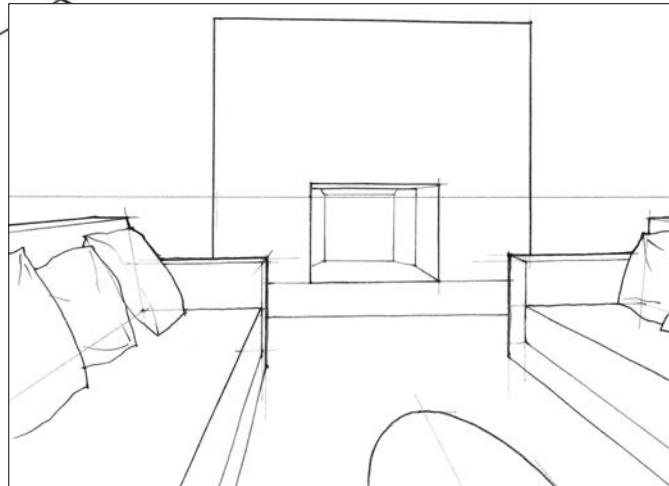


Elaborate details

VISUAL BALANCE



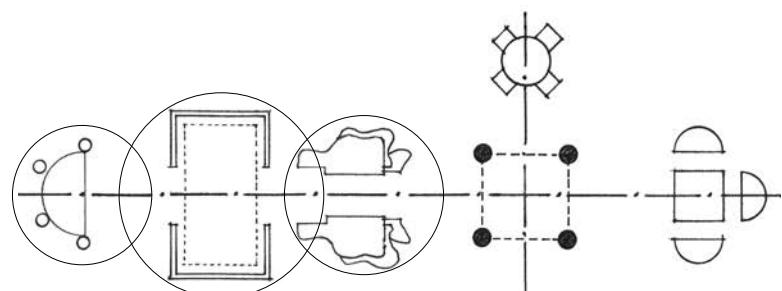
Our perception of a room and the composition of its elements is altered as we use it and move through its space. Our perspective varies as our point of view shifts from here to there. A room also undergoes changes as it is illuminated by the light of day and by lighting fixtures at night, occupied by people and paraphernalia, and modified over time. The visual balance among the elements in a space should therefore be considered in three dimensions and be strong enough to withstand the changes brought about through time and use.



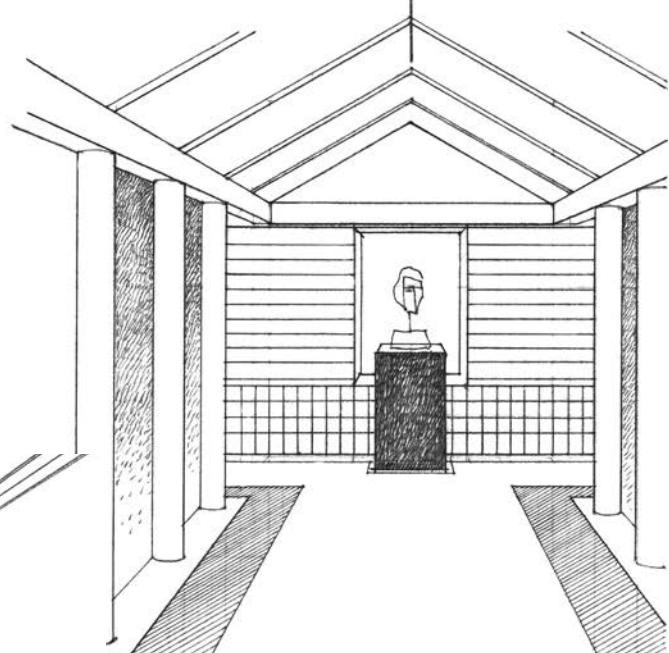
Visual balance must be considered in three dimensions.

There are three types of visual balance: symmetrical, radial, and asymmetrical. Symmetrical balance results from the arrangement of identical elements, corresponding in shape, size, and relative position, about a common line or axis. It is also known as axial or bilateral symmetry.

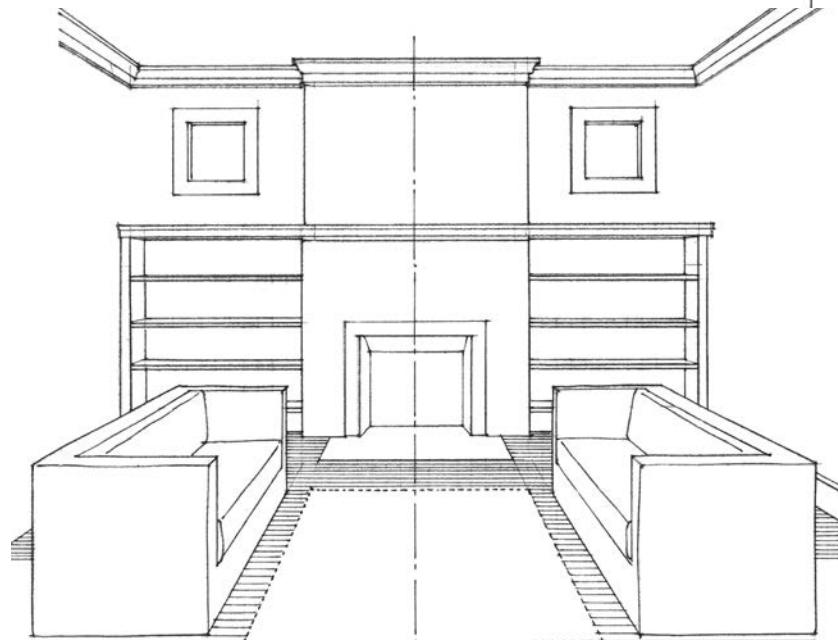
Symmetrical balance most often results in a quiet, restful, and stable equilibrium that is readily apparent, especially when oriented on a vertical plane. Depending on its spatial relationships, a symmetrical arrangement can either emphasize its central area or focus attention on the terminations of its axis.



A number of symmetrical groupings can be arranged along an axis to form larger symmetrical organizations.

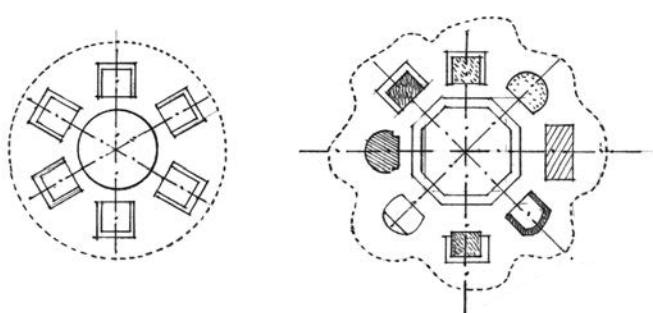


Focus on termination of an axis



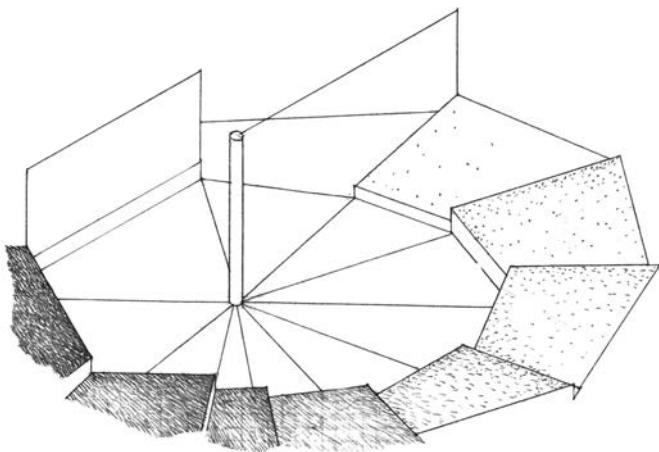
Focus on the middle ground

RADIAL BALANCE

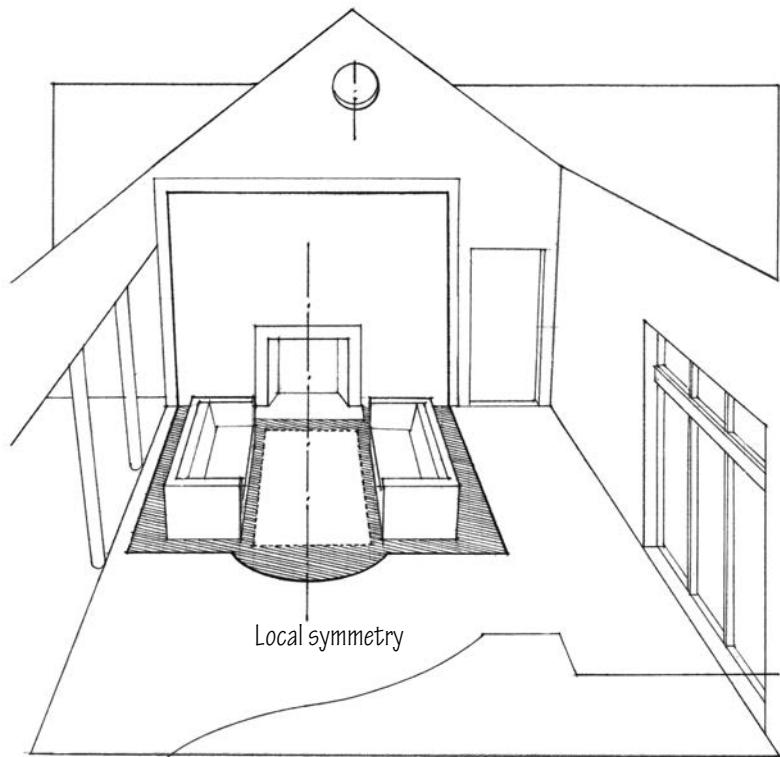


Symmetry is a simple yet powerful device to establish visual order. If carried far enough, it can impose a strict formality on an interior space. Total symmetry, however, is often undesirable or difficult to achieve because of function or circumstance.

It is often possible or desirable to arrange one or more parts of a space in a symmetrical manner and produce local symmetry. Symmetrical groupings within a space are easily recognized and have a quality of wholeness that can serve to simplify or organize the room's composition.

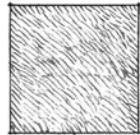


The second type of balance, radial balance, results from the arrangement of elements about a center point. It produces a centralized composition that stresses the middle ground as a focal point. The elements can focus inward toward the center, face outward from the center, or simply be placed about a central element.

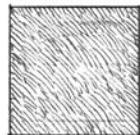


Asymmetry is recognized as the lack of correspondence in size, shape, color, or relative position among the elements of a composition. While a symmetrical composition requires the use of pairs of identical elements, an asymmetrical composition incorporates dissimilar elements.

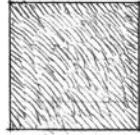
To achieve an occult or optical balance, an asymmetrical composition must take into account the visual weight or force of each of its elements and employ the principle of leverage in their arrangement. Elements that are visually forceful and attract our attention—unusual shapes, bright colors, dark values, variegated textures—must be counterbalanced by less forceful elements that are larger or placed farther away from the center of the composition.



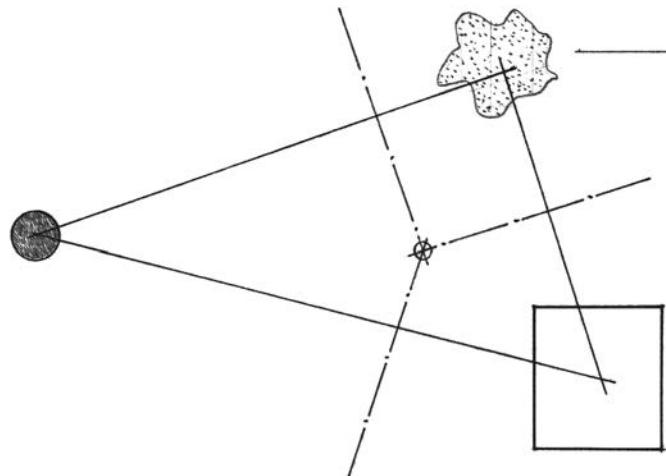
Dark values



Unusual shapes

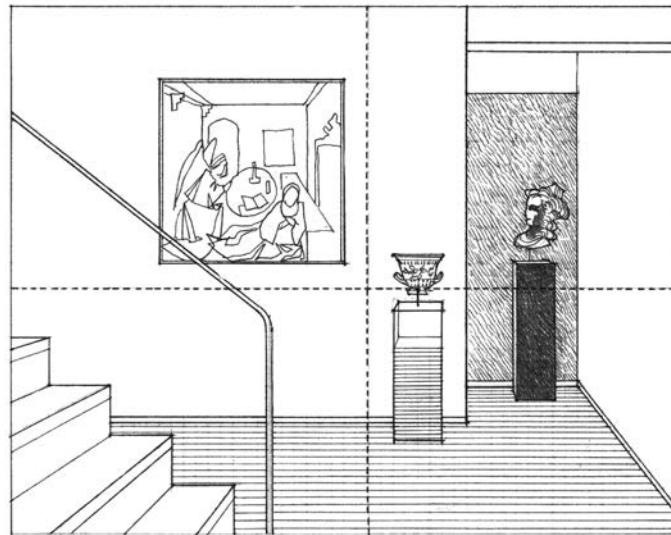
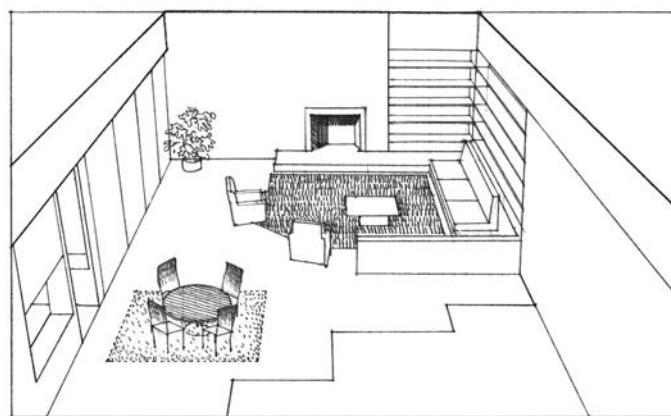
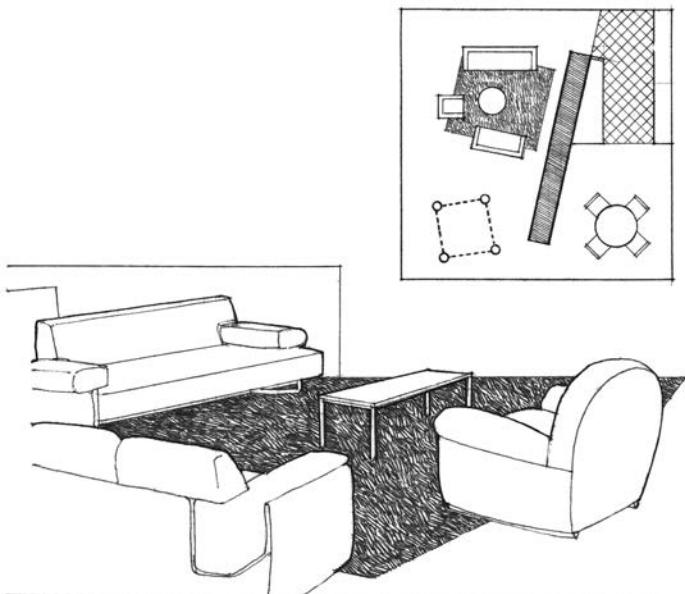
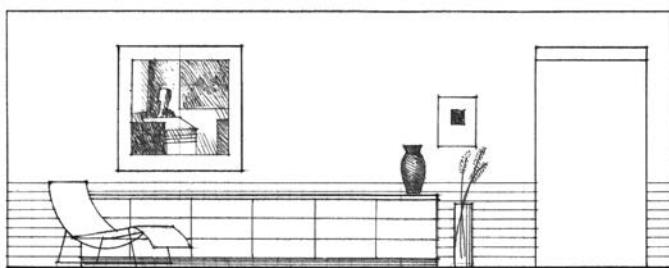


Variegated texture

HEAVY**Light**

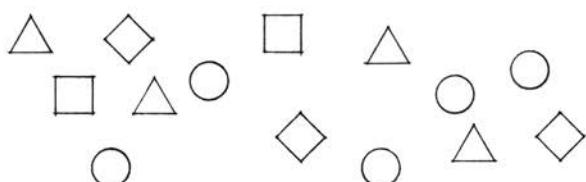
ASYMMETRICAL BALANCE

Asymmetrical balance is not as obvious as symmetry and is often more visually active and dynamic. It is capable of expressing movement, change, even exuberance. It is also more flexible than symmetry and can adapt more readily to varying conditions of function, space, and circumstance.

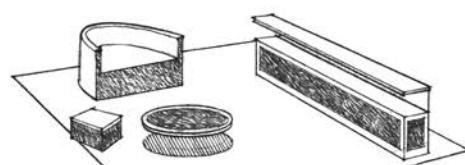


Harmony can be defined as consonance, or the pleasing agreement of parts or combination of parts in a composition. While balance achieves unity through the careful arrangement of both similar and dissimilar elements, the principle of harmony involves the careful selection of elements that share a common trait or characteristic, such as shape, color, texture, or material. It is the repetition of a common trait that produces unity and visual harmony among the elements in an interior setting.

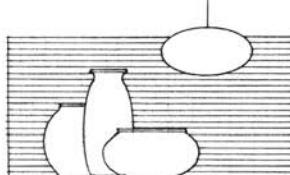
Sharing a Common Trait



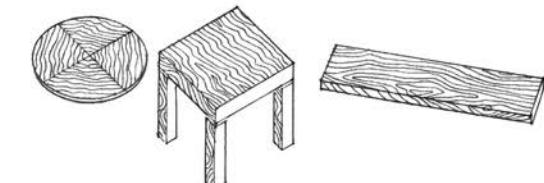
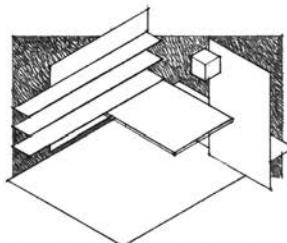
A common size



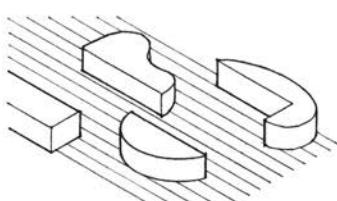
Similar colors and values



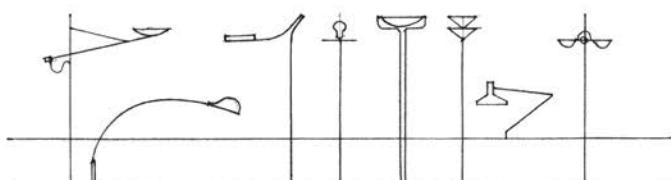
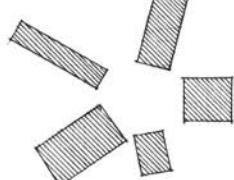
A common shape



Similar materials



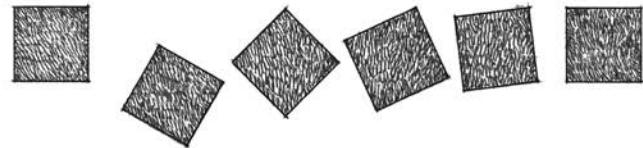
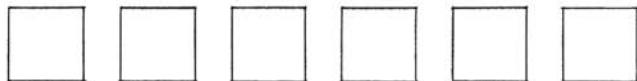
A similar orientation



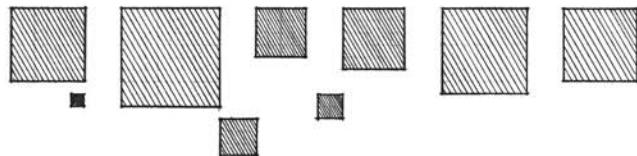
Similar detail characteristics

Harmony, when carried too far in the use of elements with similar traits, can result in a unified but uninteresting composition. Variety, on the other hand, when carried to an extreme for the sake of interest, can result in visual chaos. It is the careful and artistic tension between order and disorder—between unity and variety—that enlivens harmony and creates interest in an interior setting.

Introducing Variety

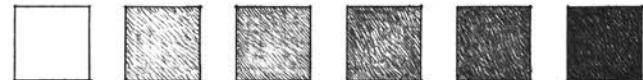
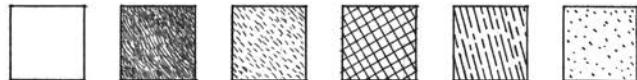


Given a set of identical shapes, variety can be introduced by:



Varying size

Varying detail characteristics



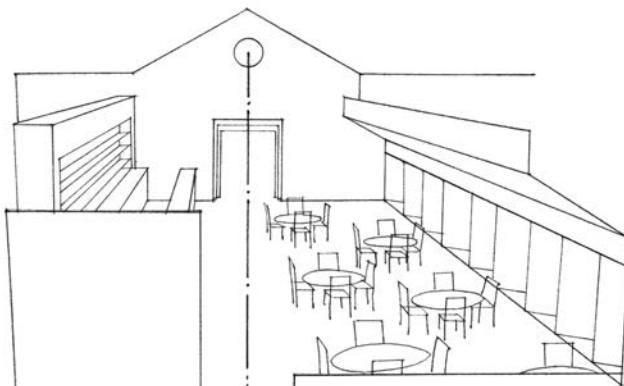
Varying texture

Varying color

It is important to note that the principles of balance and harmony, in promoting unity, do not exclude the pursuit of variety and interest. Rather, the means for achieving balance and harmony are intended to include in their patterns the presence of dissimilar elements and characteristics.

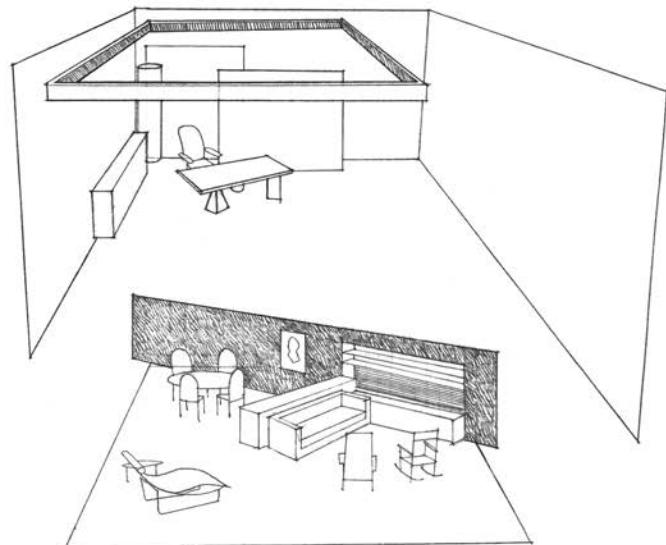
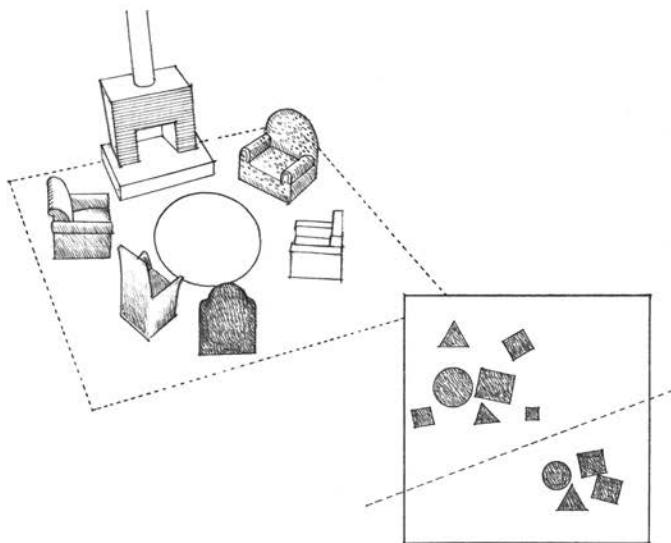
For example, asymmetrical balance produces equilibrium among elements that differ in size, shape, color, or texture. The harmony produced by elements that share a common characteristic permits the same elements to also have a variety of unique, individual traits.

Another method for organizing a number of dissimilar elements is to arrange them in close proximity to one another. We tend to read such a grouping as an entity, to the exclusion of other elements farther away. To further reinforce the visual unity of the composition, continuity of line or contour can be established among the elements' shapes.

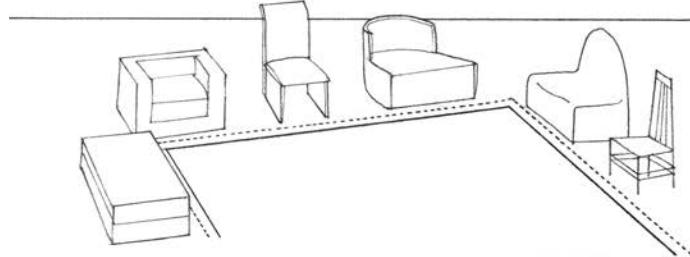


Asymmetrical schemes can organize a variety of shapes, colors, and textures into their layouts.

Grouping related to an overhead plane

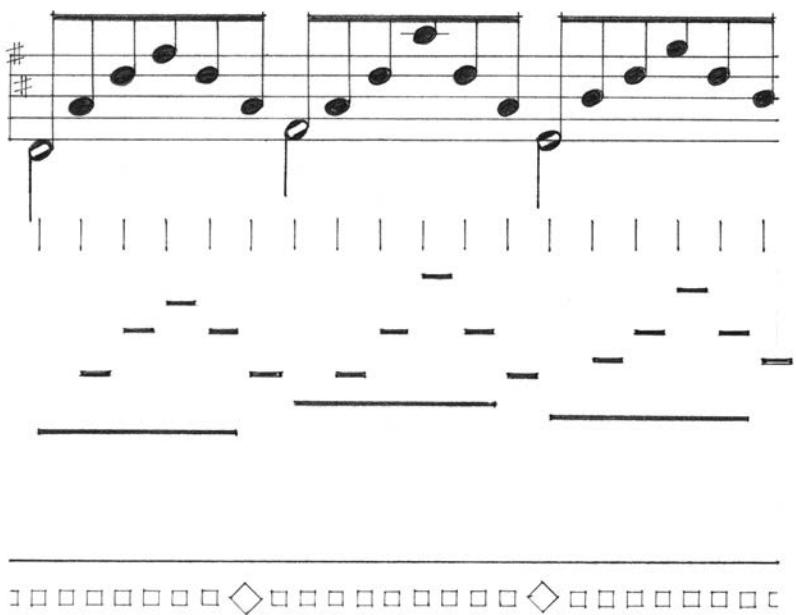


Foreground elements organized by a common backdrop



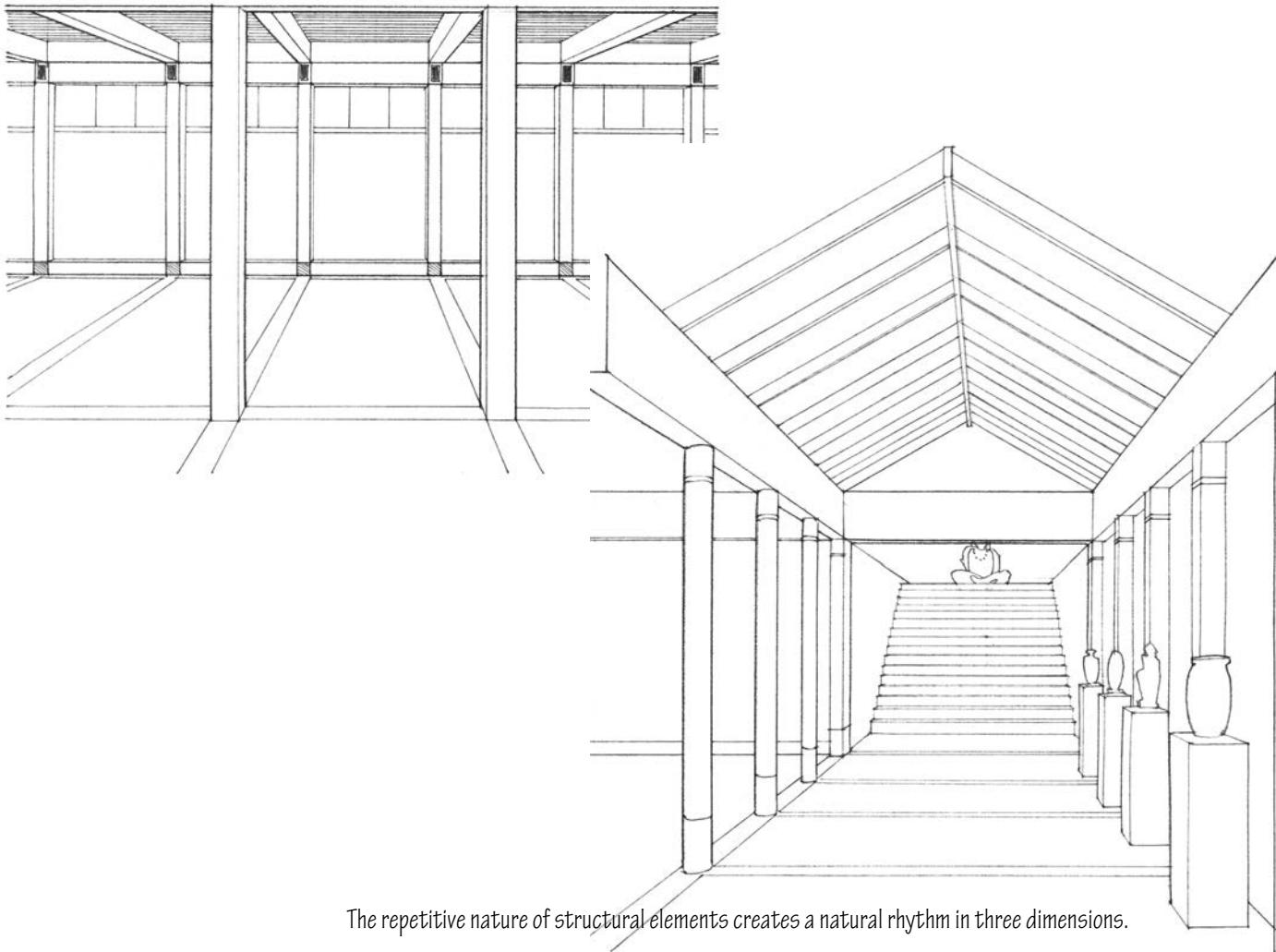
Dissimilar elements can be organized by grouping them in close proximity or by relating them to a common line or plane.

RHYTHM



The design principle of *rhythm* is based on the repetition of elements in space and time. This repetition not only creates visual unity but also induces a rhythmic continuity of movement that a viewer's eyes and mind can follow along a path, within a composition, or around a space.

The simplest form of repetition consists of the regular spacing of identical elements along a linear path. Although this pattern can be quite monotonous, it can also be useful in establishing a background rhythm for foreground elements or in defining a textured line, border, or trim.

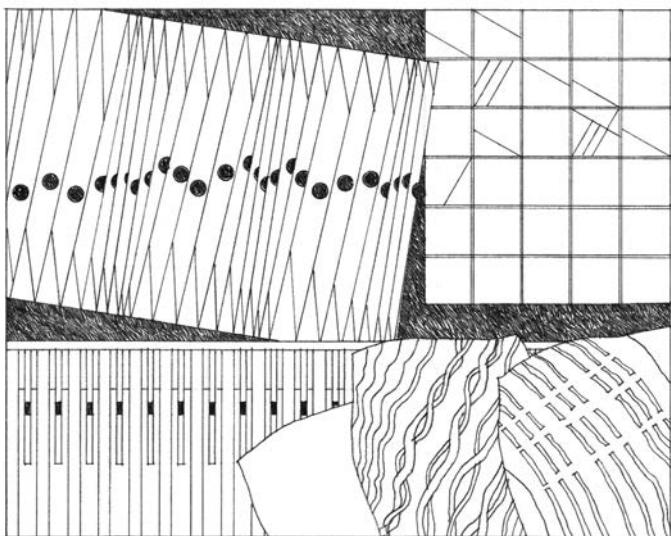


The repetitive nature of structural elements creates a natural rhythm in three dimensions.

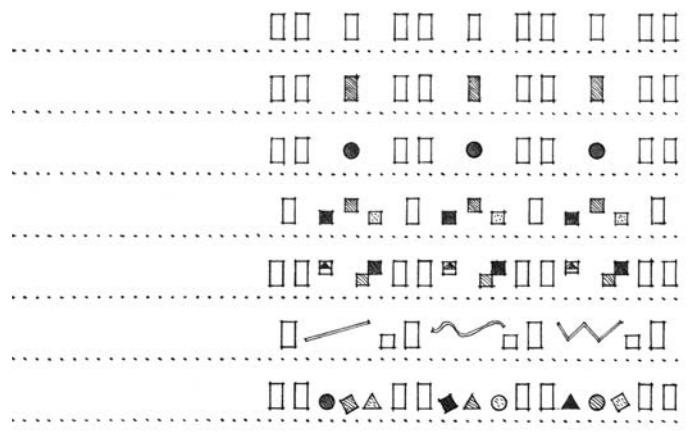
More intricate patterns of rhythm can be produced by taking into account the tendency for elements to be visually related by their proximity to one another or their sharing of a common trait.

The spacing of the recurring elements, and thus the pace of the visual rhythm, can be varied to create sets and subsets and to emphasize certain points in the pattern. The resulting rhythm may be graceful and flowing or crisp and sharp. The contour of the rhythmic pattern and the shape of the individual elements can further reinforce the nature of the sequence.

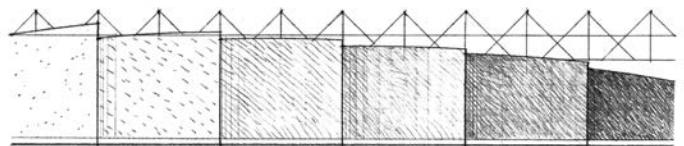
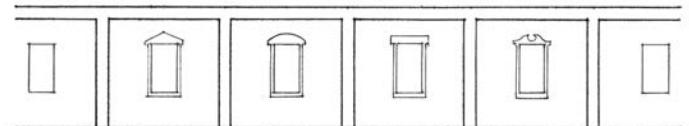
Although the recurring elements must, for continuity, share a common trait, they can vary in shape, detail, color, or texture. These differences, whether subtle or distinct, create visual interest and can introduce other levels of complexity. An alternating rhythm can be superimposed over a more regular one, or the variations can be progressively graded in size or color value to give direction to the sequence.



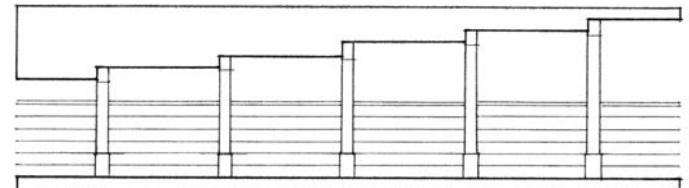
Rhythm existing at the detail level



Detail variations in rhythm



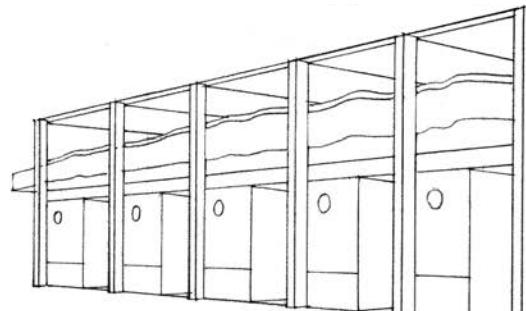
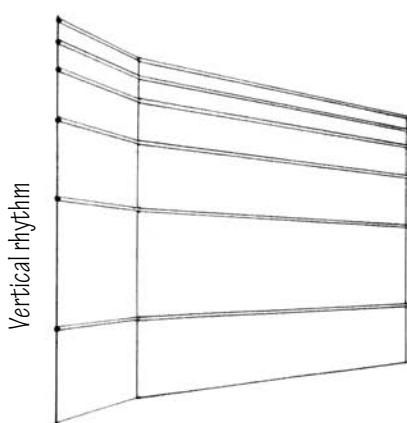
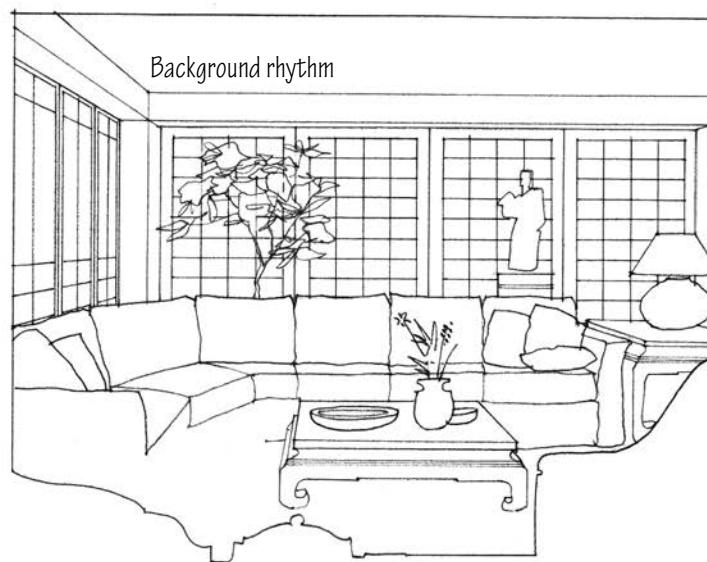
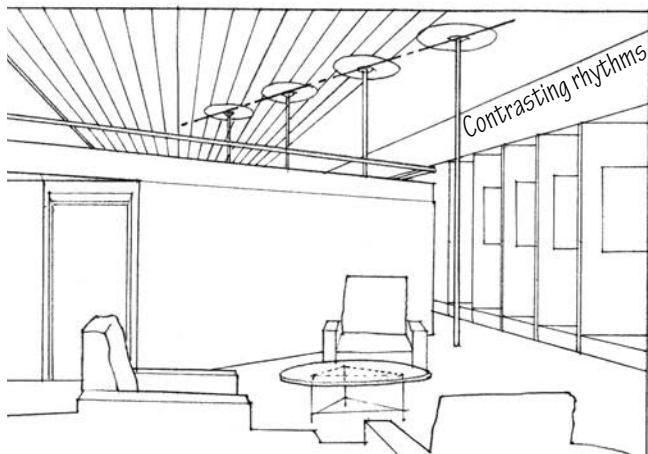
Gradation in value or color



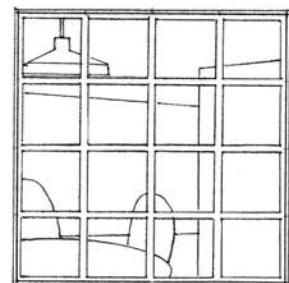
Gradation in size

VISUAL RHYTHM

Visual rhythm is most easily recognized when the repetition forms a linear pattern. Within an interior space, however, nonlinear sequences of shape, color, and texture can provide subtler rhythms that may not be immediately obvious to the eye.

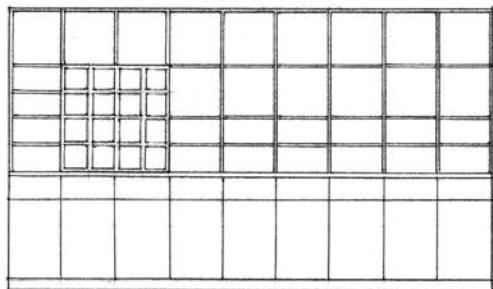
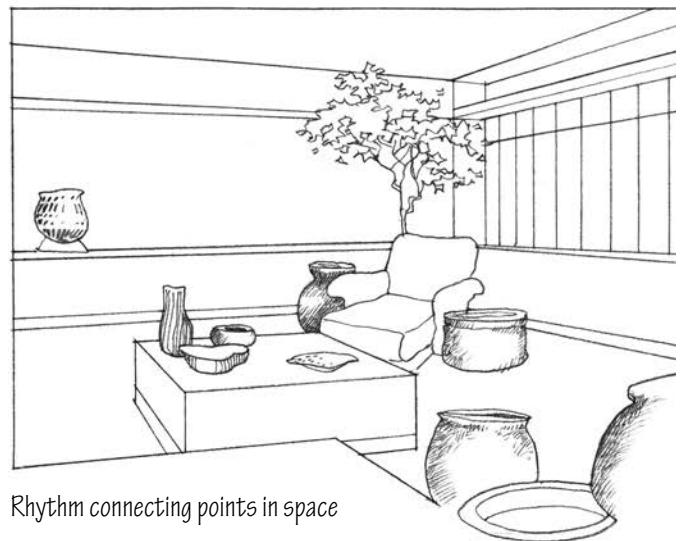
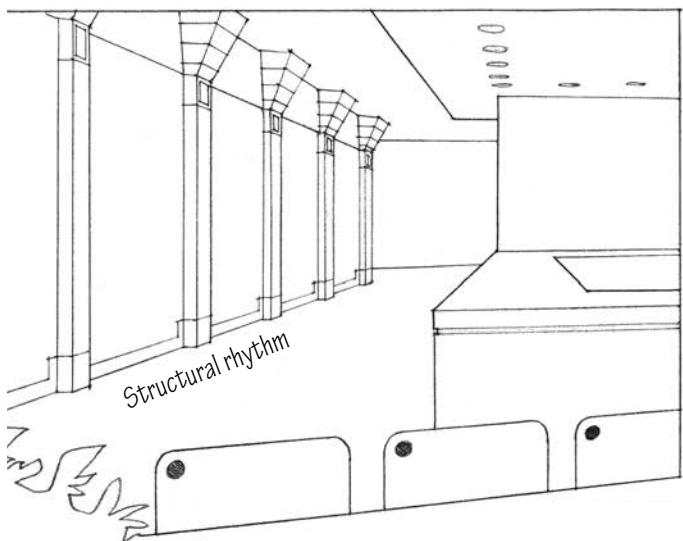


Layered rhythms

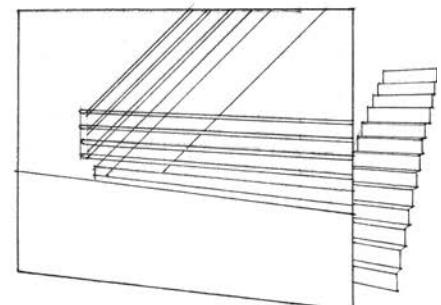
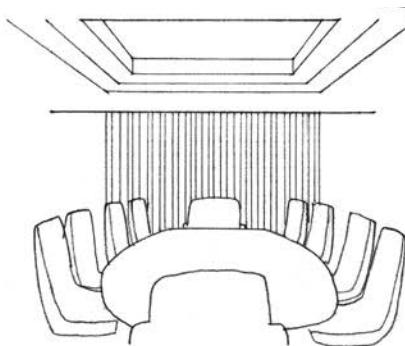


Foreground rhythm

Rhythm may refer to the movement of our bodies as we advance through a sequence of spaces. Rhythm incorporates the fundamental notion of repetition as a device to organize forms and spaces in architecture. Beams and columns repeat themselves to form repetitive structural bays and modules of space. Spaces often recur to accommodate similar or repetitive functional requirements in the building program.

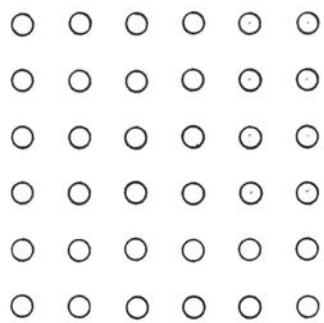


Vertical and horizontal rhythms

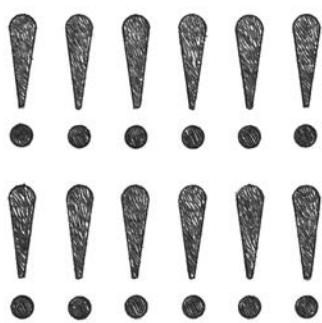


The manner in which stairways and railings express movement naturally results in rhythmic patterns.

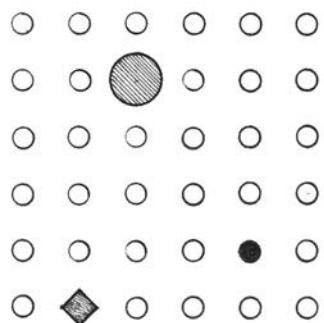
EMPHASIS



No dominant elements...
no emphasis



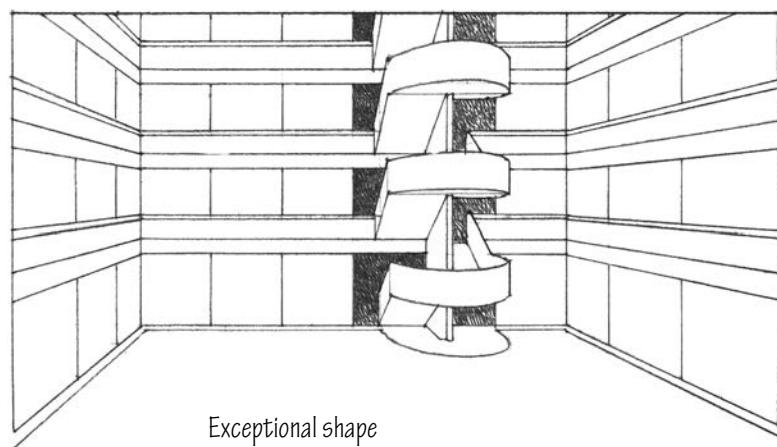
Too many dominant elements...
no emphasis



Points of emphasis can be created by
a perceptible contrast in size, shape,
color, or tonal value.



Exceptional size



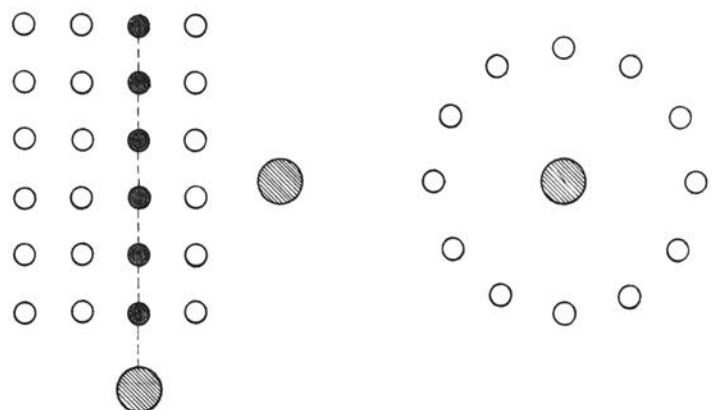
Exceptional shape

The principle of *emphasis* assumes the coexistence of dominant and subordinate elements in the composition of an interior setting. A design without any dominant elements would be bland and monotonous. If there are too many assertive elements, the design will be cluttered and chaotic, detracting from what may be important. Each part of a design should be given proper significance according to its degree of importance in the overall scheme.

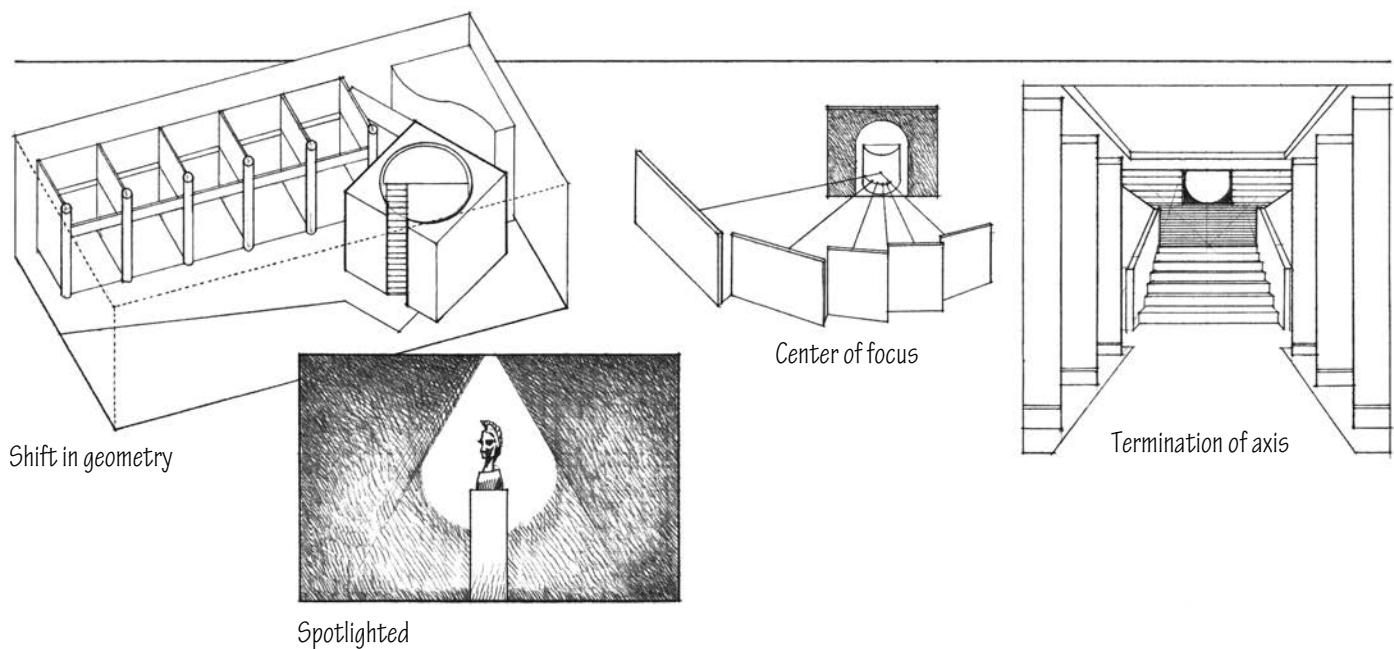
An important element or feature can be given visual emphasis by endowing it with significant size, a unique shape, or a contrasting color, value, or texture. In each case, a discernible contrast must be established between the dominant element or feature and the subordinate aspects of the space. Such contrast will attract our attention by interrupting the normal pattern of the composition.

An element or feature can also be visually emphasized by its strategic position and orientation in a space. It can be centered within the space or serve as the centerpiece of a symmetrical organization. In an asymmetric composition, it can be offset or isolated from the rest of the elements. It can be the termination of a linear sequence or a path of movement.

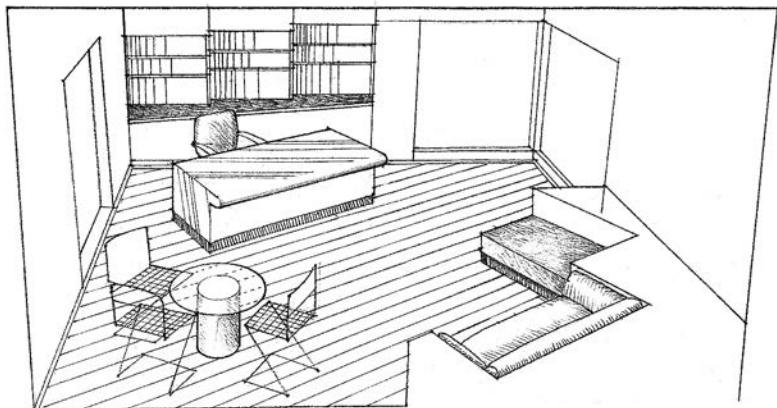
To further enhance its visual importance, an element can be oriented to contrast with the normal geometry of the space and the other elements within it. It can be illuminated in a special manner. The lines of secondary and subordinate elements can be arranged to focus our attention on the significant element or feature.



Points of emphasis can be created by the strategic positioning of important elements.

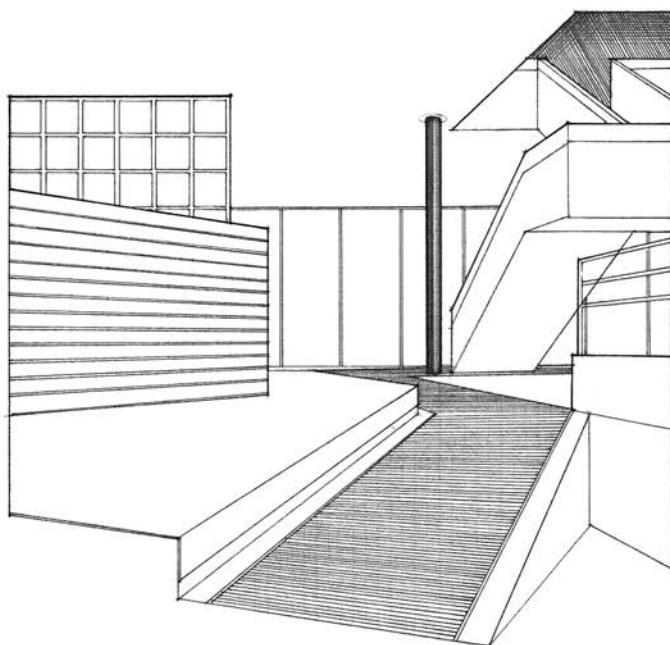
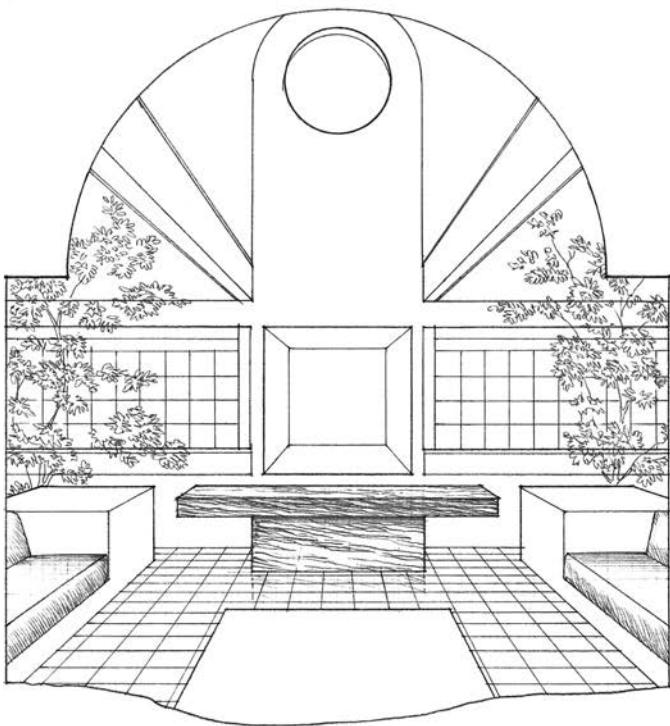
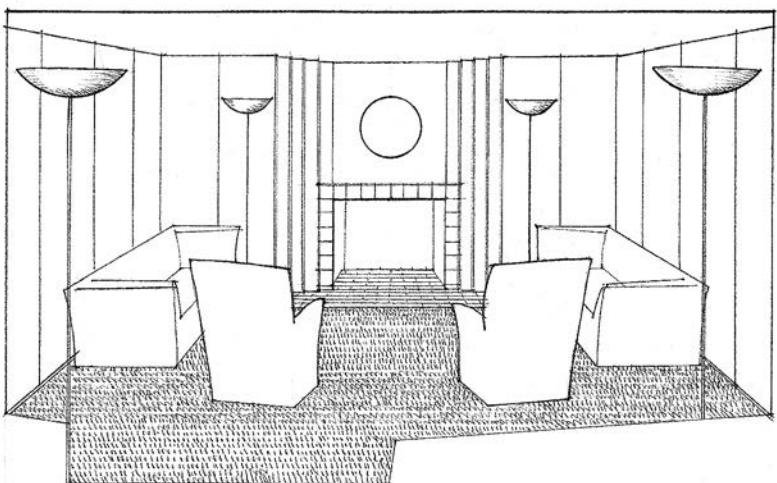


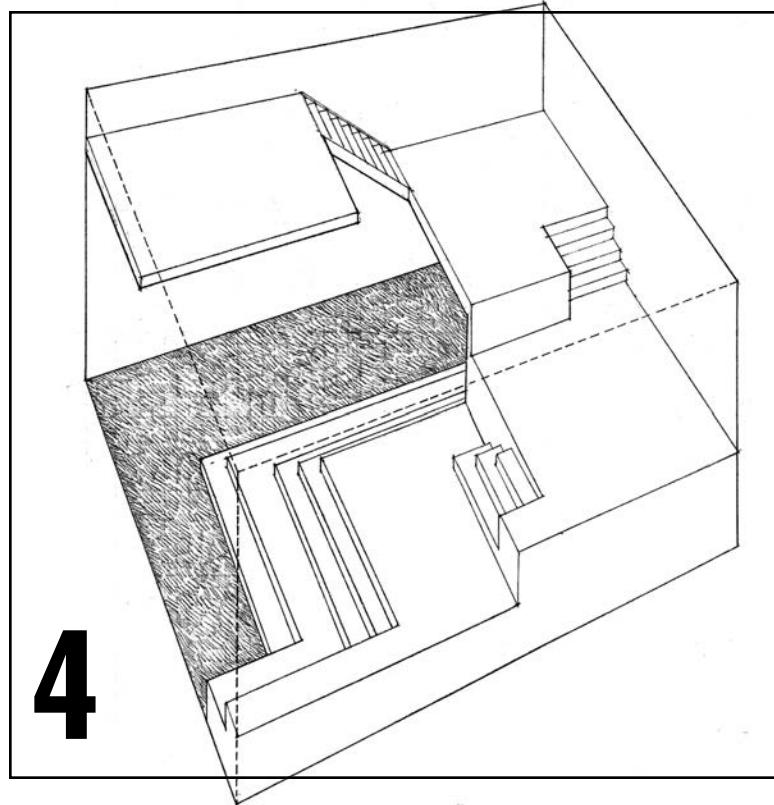
DEGREES OF EMPHASIS



Just as there may be varying degrees of importance among the elements in an interior setting, there can also be varying degrees of emphasis. Once the significant elements or features are established, a strategy for orchestrating the subordinate elements must be devised to enhance the dominant ones.

A room's focal points should be created with some subtlety and restraint. They should not be so visually dominant that they cease to be integral parts of the overall design. Secondary points of emphasis—visual accents—can often help knit together dominant and subordinate elements. Following the principle of harmony, related shapes, colors, and values can also help retain unity of design.

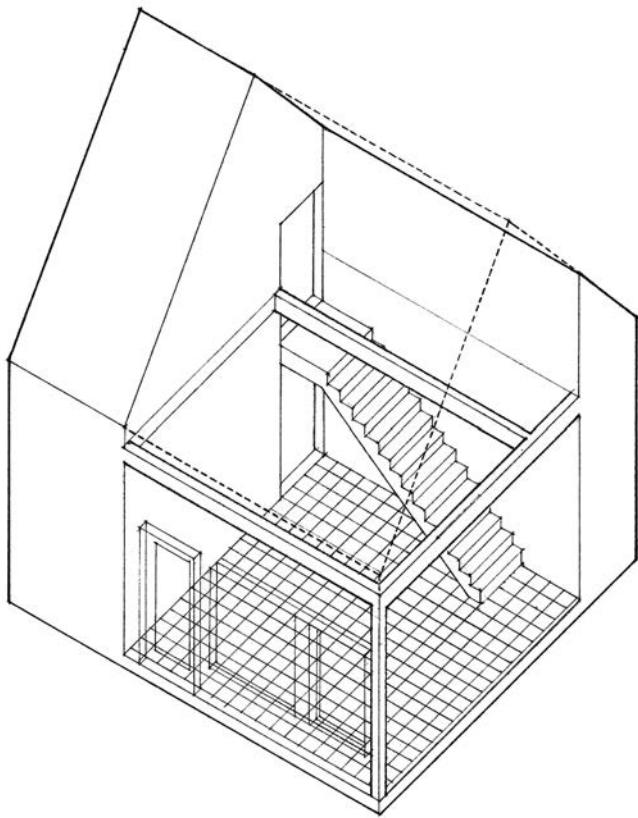




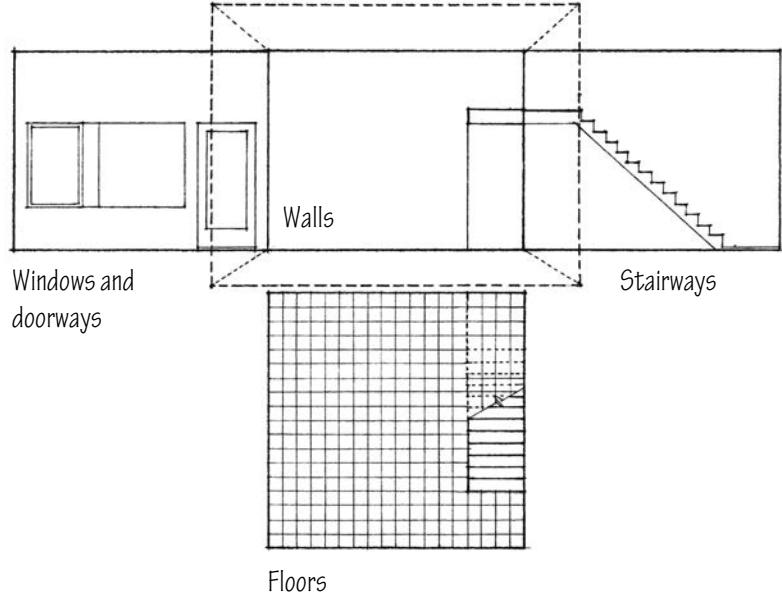
4

Interior Building Elements

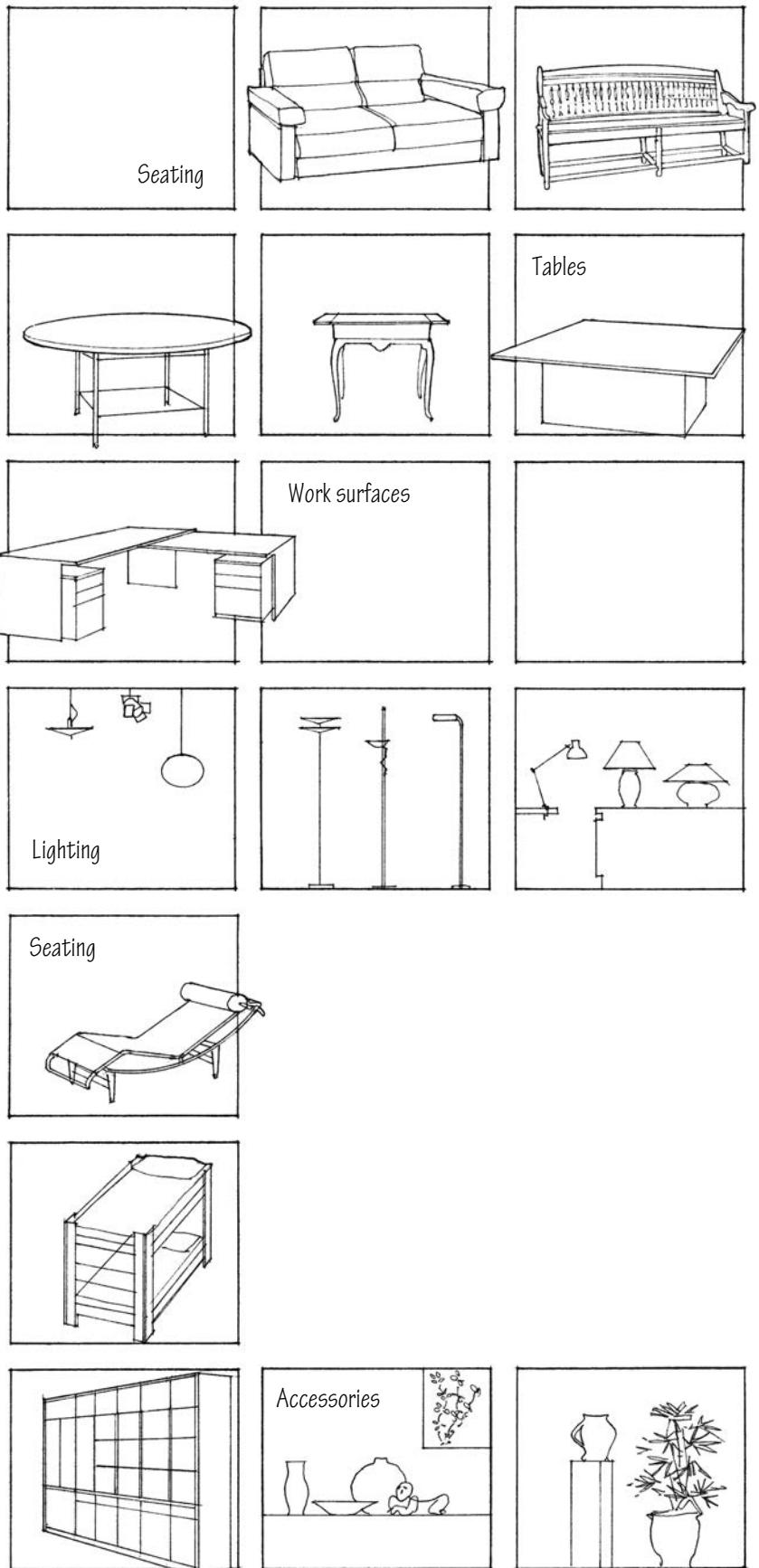
Interior spaces within buildings are defined by the architectural elements of structure and enclosure, such as columns, walls, floors, and roofs. These elements give a building its form, carve out a portion of infinite space, and set up a pattern of interior spaces. This chapter outlines the major elements of interior design with which we develop, modify, and enhance these interior spaces and make them habitable—that is, functionally fit, aesthetically pleasing, and psychologically satisfying for our activities.



INTERIOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

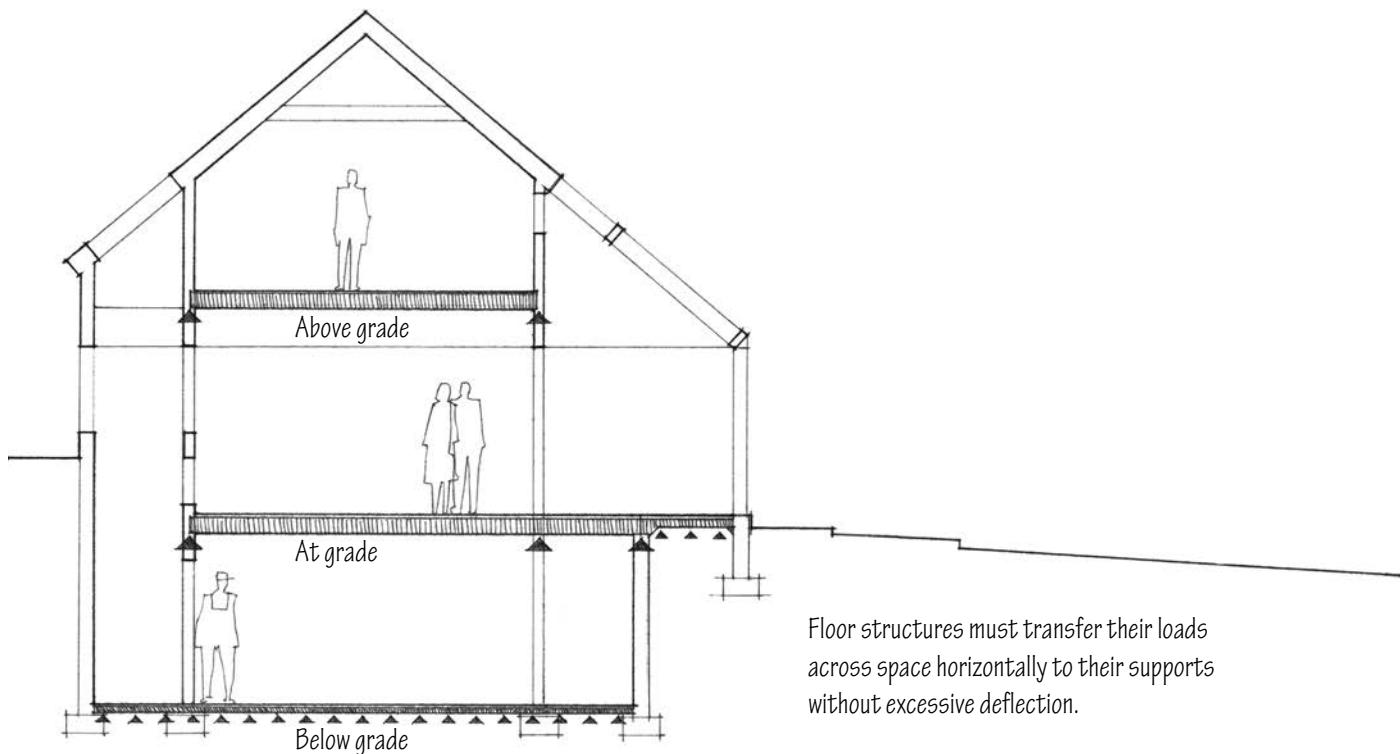
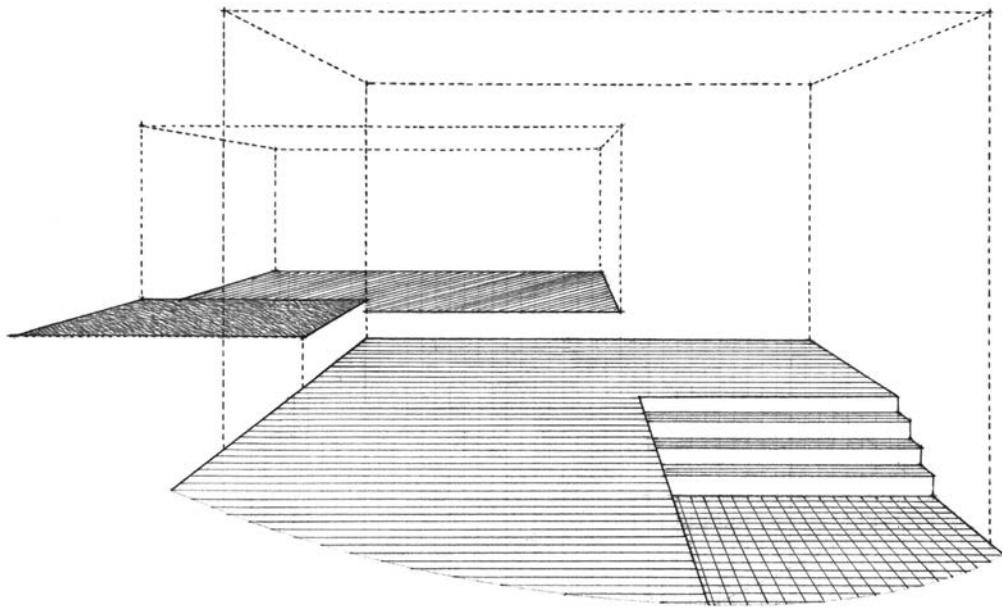


These design elements, and the choices they represent, are the interior designer's palette. The manner in which we select and manipulate these elements into a spatial, visual, and sensory pattern will affect not only the function and use of a space but also its expressive qualities of form and style.



FLOORS

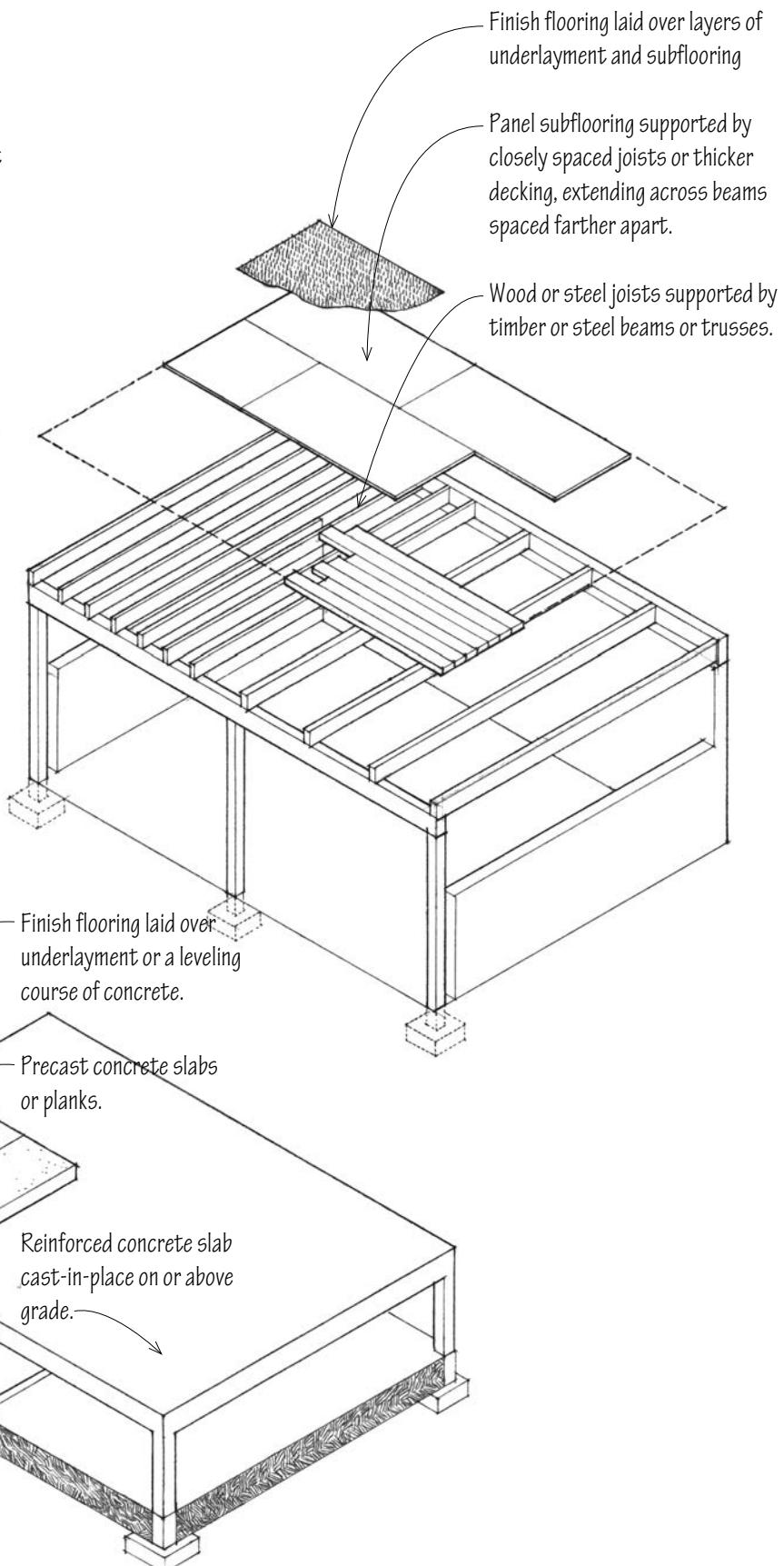
Floors are the flat, level base planes of interior space. As the platforms that support our interior activities and furnishings, they must be structured to carry the resulting loads safely. Their surfaces must be durable enough to withstand continual use and wear.



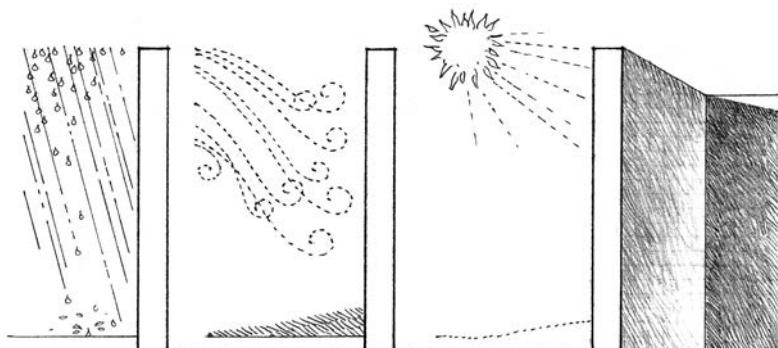
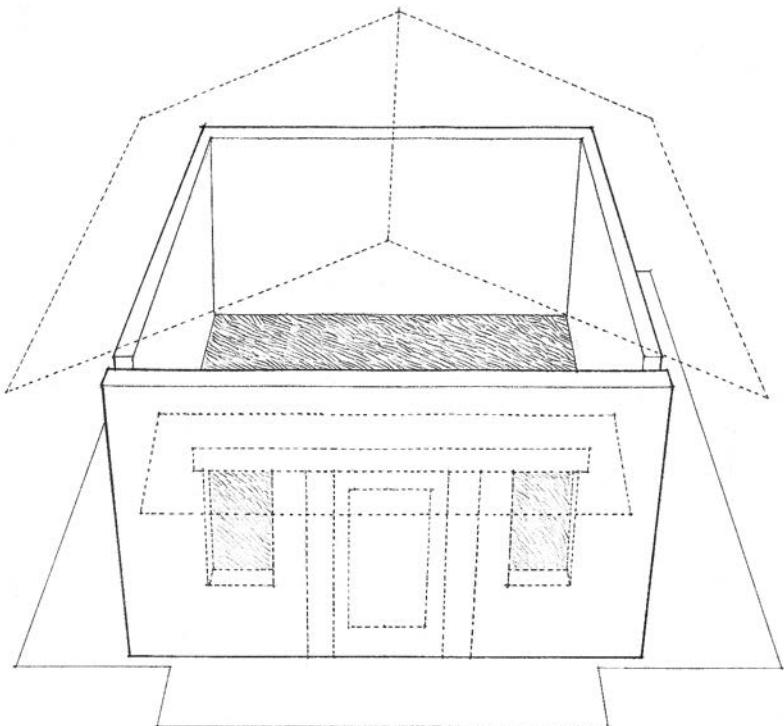
A floor may be constructed of a series of parallel beams or joists overlaid with a subfloor—a structural material such as plywood sheathing, concrete planks, or steel decking capable of spanning the beams or joists. The subfloor and beams or joists are secured so that they act together as a structural unit in resisting stresses and transferring loads to their supports.

A floor may also consist of a monolithic, steel-reinforced concrete slab capable of extending in one or two directions. The form of a slab's underside often reflects the manner in which it extends across space and transfers its loads. Instead of being cast monolithically in place, a slab can also be precast as planks.

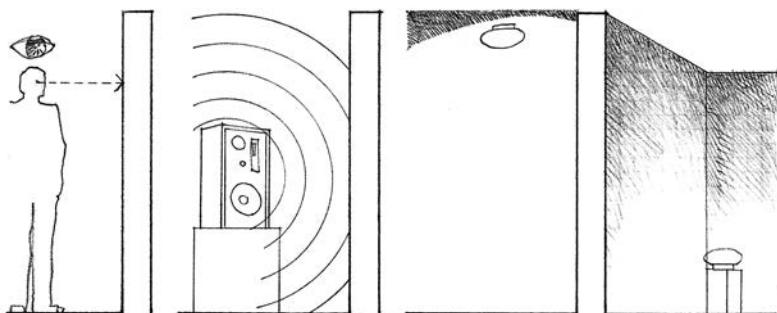
Whether a floor structure is a monolithic slab or a framed assembly, its surface must be smooth, level, and dense enough to receive the finish flooring material. To compensate for any roughness or unevenness, a layer of underlayment or a cement topping may be required for some flooring materials.



WALLS



Exterior walls control the passage of air, heat, moisture, water vapor, and sound.



Interior walls control the passage of sound, heat, and light.

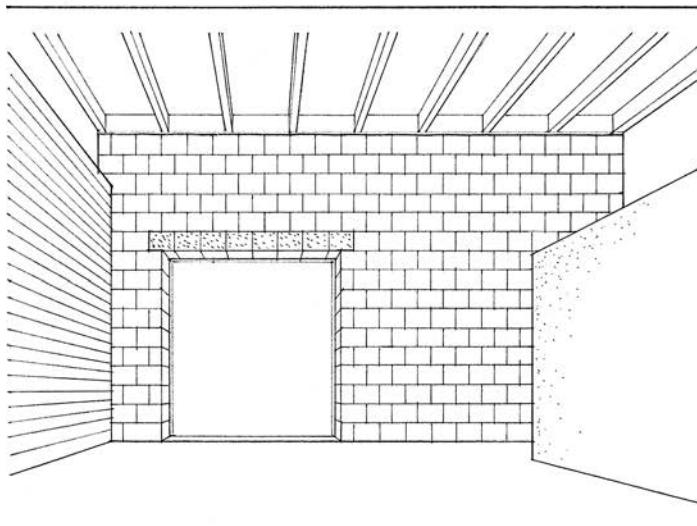
Walls are essential architectural elements of any building. They have traditionally served as structural supports for above-grade floors, ceilings, and roofs. They form the facades of buildings. They enclose, separate, and protect the interior spaces they create.

The exterior walls of a building must control the passage of air, heat, moisture, water vapor, and sound. The exterior skin, whether applied or integral to the wall structure, must also be able to withstand the effects of sun, wind, and rain.

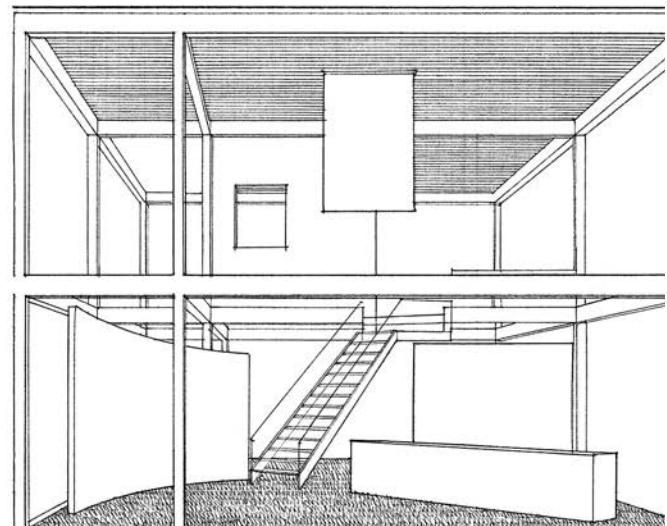
Interior walls subdivide the interior spaces of a building, provide privacy for these spaces, and control the passage of sound, heat, and light from one space to the next. An interior wall dividing a room or part of a building into separate areas is referred to as a partition.

Both exterior and interior walls may be load-bearing structures of homogeneous or composite construction designed to support imposed loads from floors and roofs. They may also consist of a framework of columns and beams with nonstructural panels attached to or filling in between them.

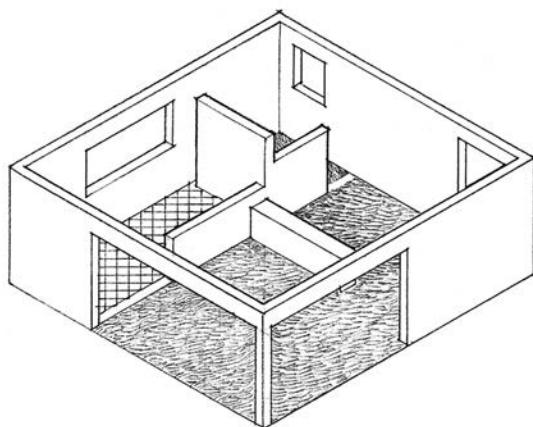
Architectural and mechanical system elements must meet code requirements for *seismic* design that focus on protecting people from falling objects and preserving egress routes. Seismic design affects the heights, reinforcement, and connections of interior and exterior walls.



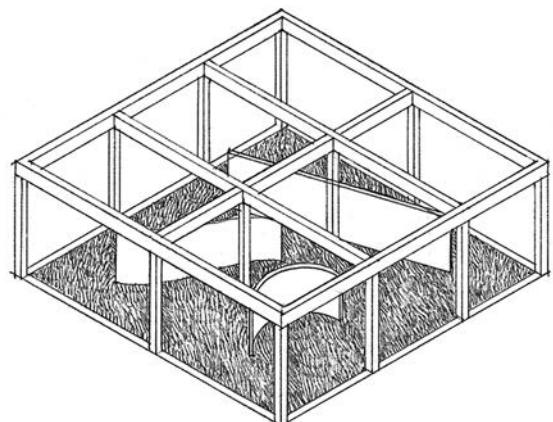
Load-bearing walls define the boundaries of space.



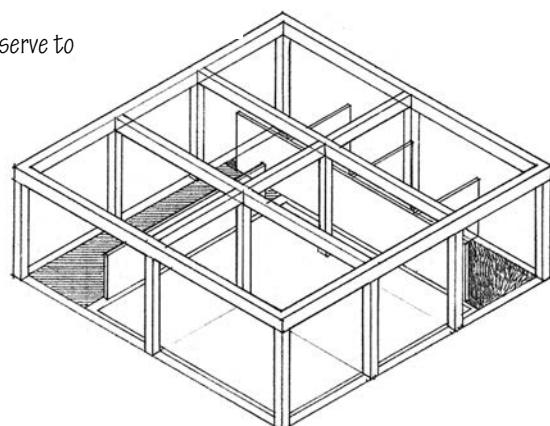
Columns and beams imply the edges of interior space.



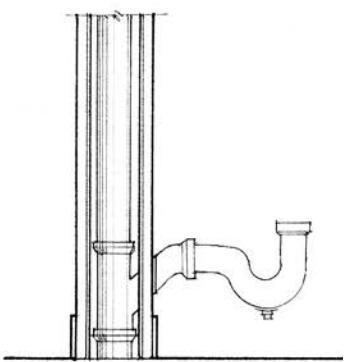
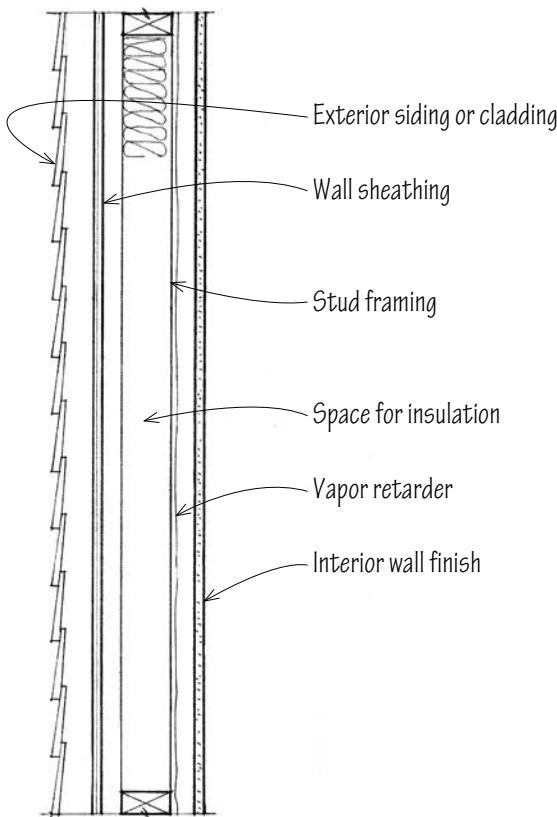
Nonbearing walls and partitions serve to subdivide larger interior spaces.



A structural framework of columns and beams establishes a grid of interconnected spaces. Within this grid, partitions can define spaces as required.



WALL CONSTRUCTION

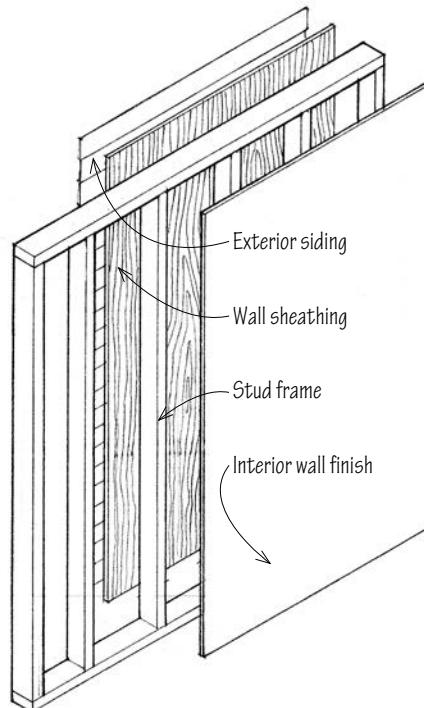


The cavities formed by the stud frame can accommodate thermal and acoustic insulation, vapor retarders, and the distribution of mechanical and electrical services and outlets.

Stud-framed walls may be constructed of wood or metal studs tied together by sole and top plates. Onto this frame are laid one or more layers of a sheet material, such as plywood or gypsum board, that stiffens the plane of the wall.

The sheet material may serve as the finish of interior walls, but more often it serves as a support for a separate layer of finish material. Exterior cladding of siding, shingles, or stucco must be weather resistant. Interior wall surfaces do not have to withstand climatic elements and therefore can be selected from a wide range of materials.

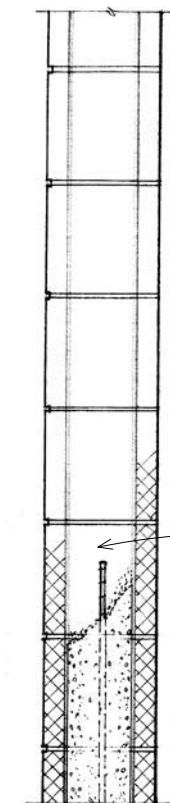
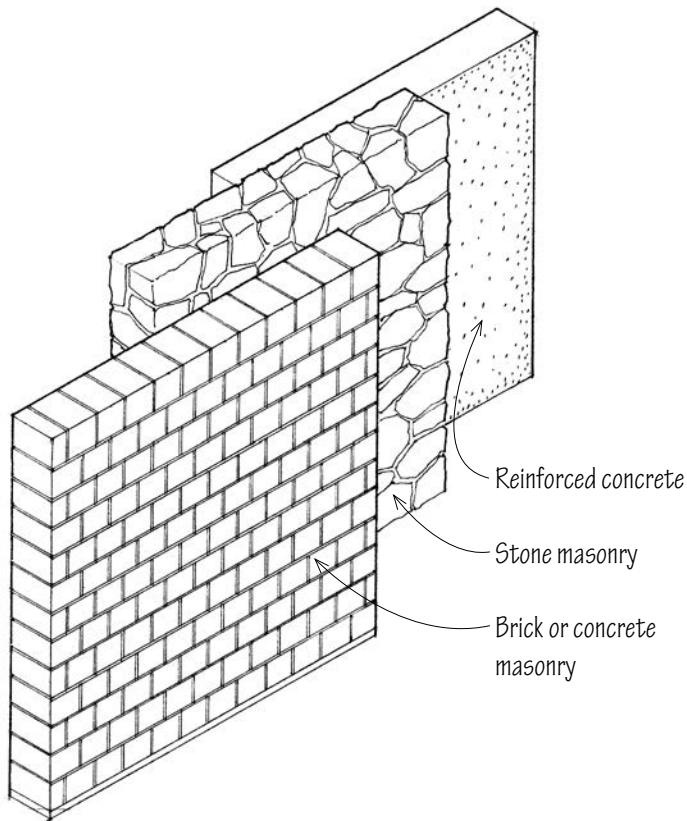
Stud-framed walls are flexible in form because of the workability of the relatively small pieces and the variety of means of fastening available.



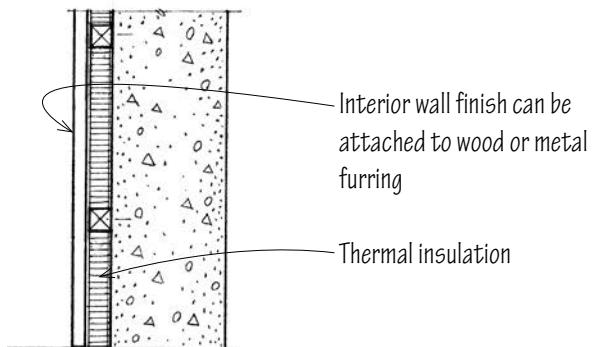
Concrete and masonry walls are typically load-bearing and qualify as noncombustible construction. They forcefully define the physical boundaries of space and are more difficult to alter than framed walls.

Concrete and masonry walls are usually thicker than stud-framed walls because they depend on their mass for their strength and stability. Cavities between wythes (vertical sections one unit in thickness) of masonry deter the passage of moisture and water vapor, and are often used to accommodate thermal insulation.

Concrete and masonry walls may be left exposed. Because of their attractive color and texture, stone and brick are almost always left exposed as the finish wall surface. Concrete and concrete masonry walls can be constructed with attractive colors and textures. If a separate finish is desired, an intermediate layer of supporting *lath* or *furring* may be required.



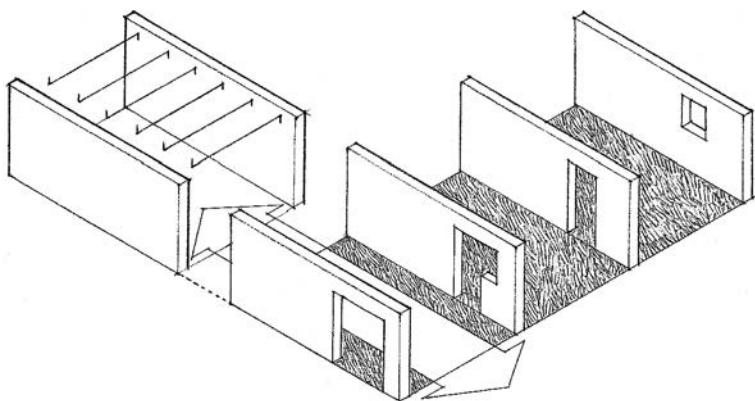
Core spaces of masonry walls can be used for concrete grout and steel reinforcement.



Interior wall finish can be attached to wood or metal furring

Thermal insulation

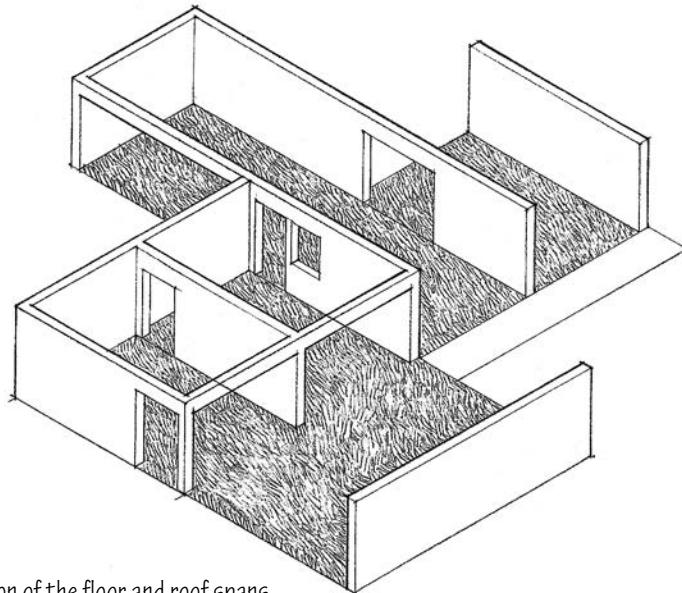
LOAD-BEARING WALLS



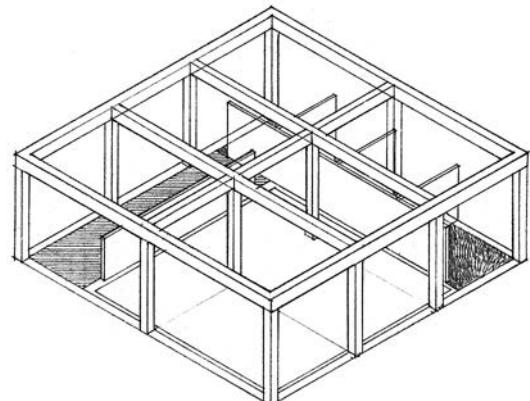
It makes sense to lay out load-bearing walls in a parallel series to support one-way floor and roof structures.

The pattern of load-bearing walls should be coordinated with the spans of the floor and roof structures they support. This structure will begin to dictate the possible sizes, shapes, and layouts of interior spaces.

When the size and shape requirements of interior spaces and the activities they house do not correspond well with a firm pattern of structural walls, a structural framework of columns and beams can be used. Nonstructural walls and partitions can then freely define and enclose interior spaces as required. This is often done in commercial, multistory, and other buildings where flexibility in the layout of spaces is desirable.



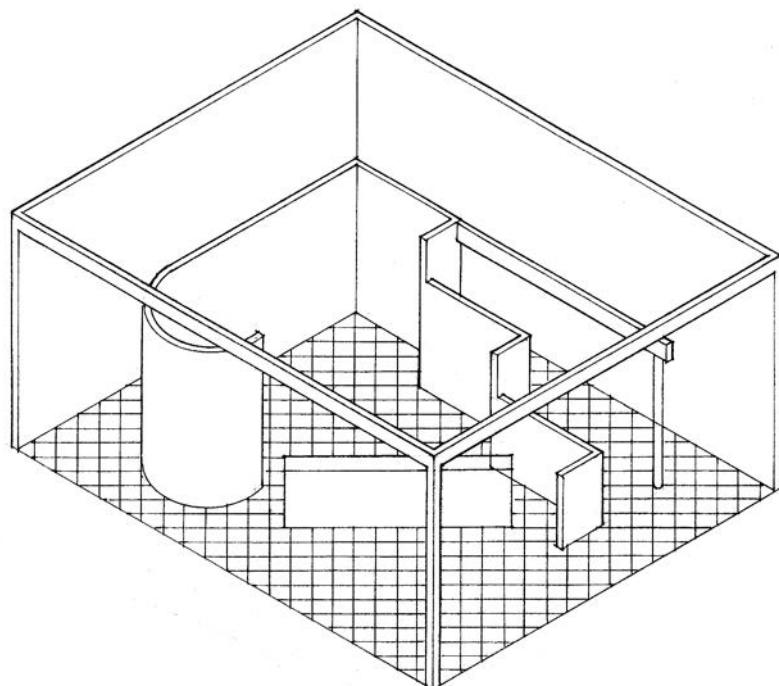
Changing the direction of the floor and roof spans, or using two-way systems, can lead to more complex spatial relationships.



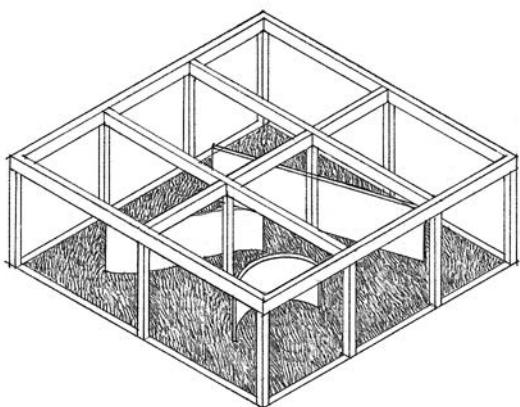
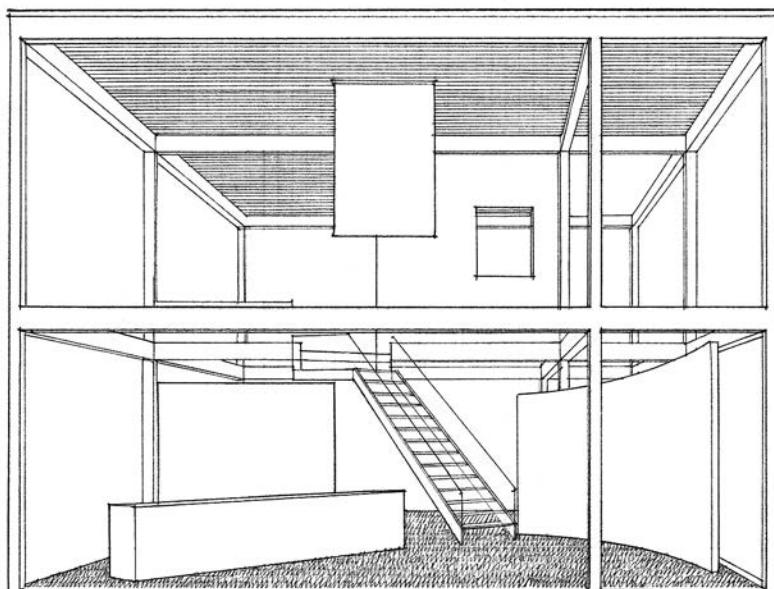
Although a column-and-beam structural system suggests a succession of interconnected volumes, the spaces themselves can be organized in harmony with or as a counterpoint to the grid of the structural framework.

Nonstructural walls need to support only themselves and any attachments. They therefore offer more possibilities than do load-bearing walls in shaping and enclosing space.

A nonstructural wall can stop short of the ceiling or adjacent walls and allow the flow of air and light from one space to the next. Spatial continuity between two areas can be reinforced, while some degree of visual—but not necessarily acoustical—privacy is maintained.

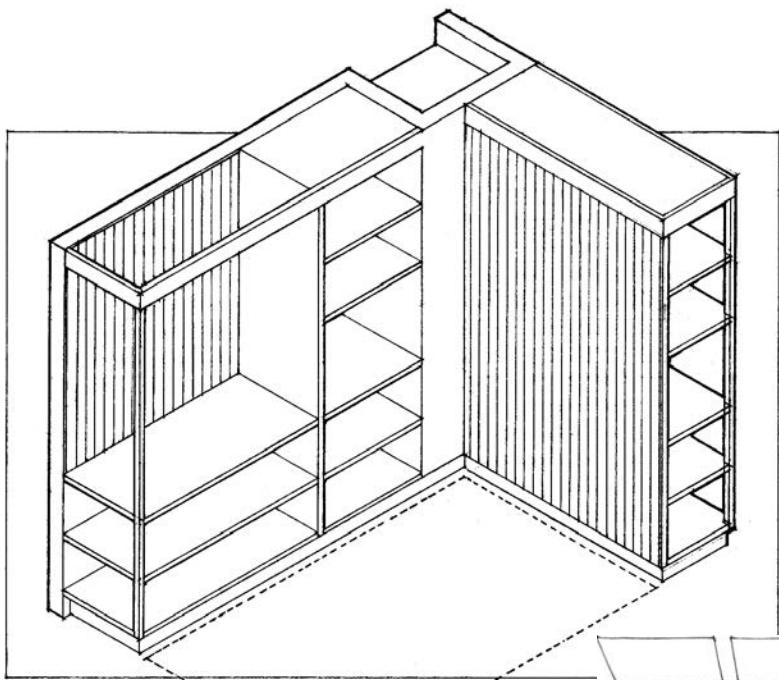


Nonbearing walls or partitions most commonly are supported by the floor system. They can also be secured to columns or bearing-wall structures, or they can be hung from the ceiling or roof structure. Whether freestanding on the floor or hung from above, nonbearing walls should be stabilized against lateral forces.



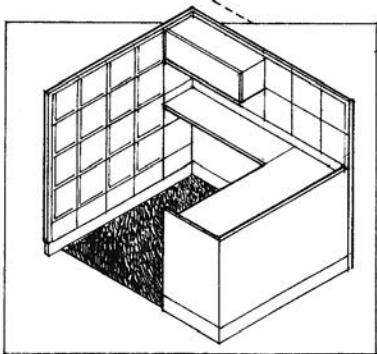
Nonbearing partitions may be attached to or fill in the spaces in the structural frame. The metal or glass curtainwall systems often used in commercial and institutional buildings are examples of exterior non-load-bearing walls.

FREESTANDING PARTITIONS

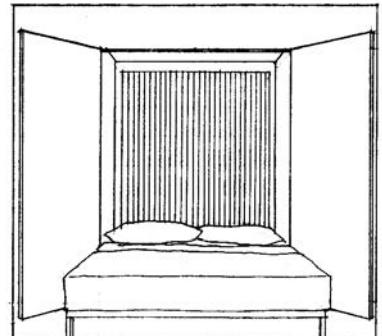
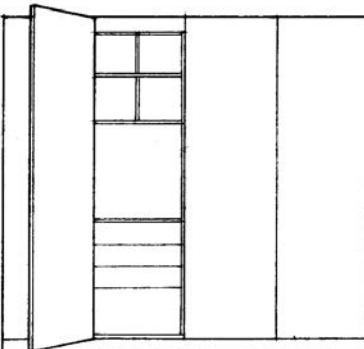
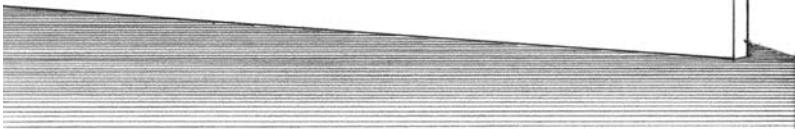
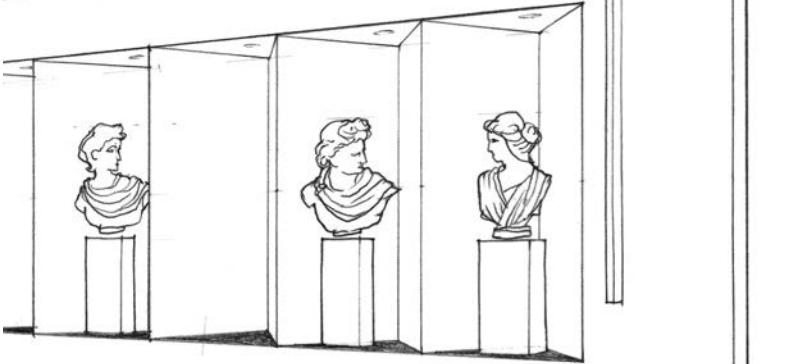
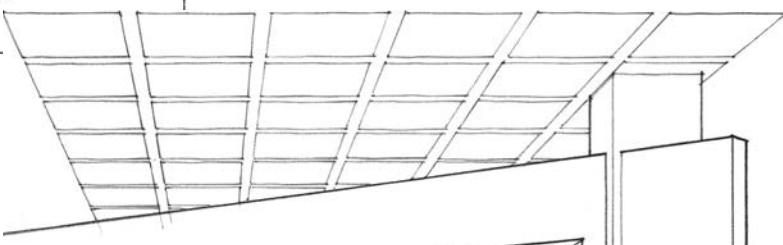


Freestanding walls that stop short of the ceiling and do not connect to adjacent walls on either end require support for lateral stability. Stability may be achieved by utilizing L- and U-shaped configurations or by tying the walls to the structure of the ceiling or adjacent walls.

Instead of being strictly a background element in interior space, a wall can also be structured to support furnishing elements, such as seating, shelving, work surfaces, and lighting. A wall can also incorporate these elements into its thickness and become itself a piece of furniture.



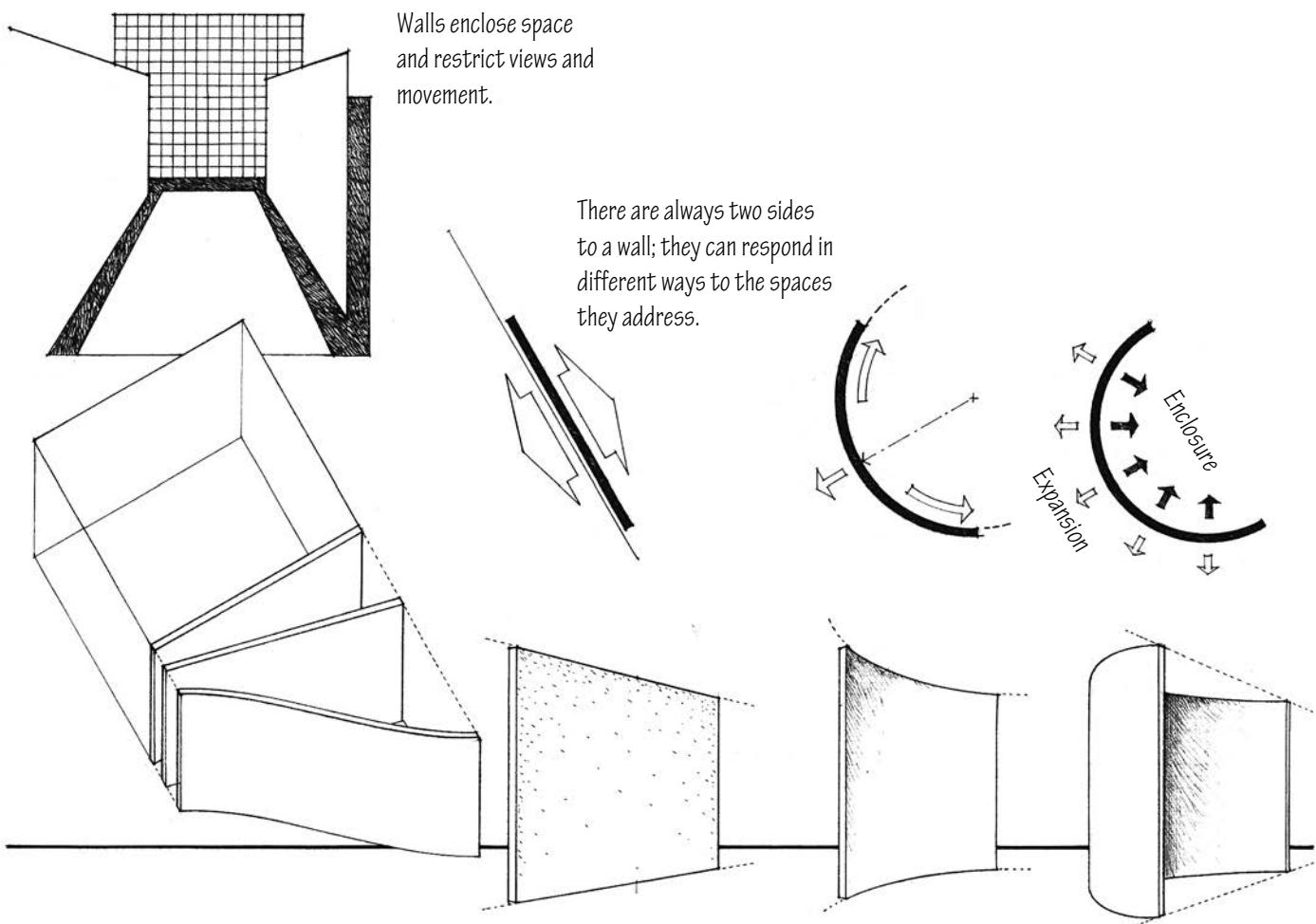
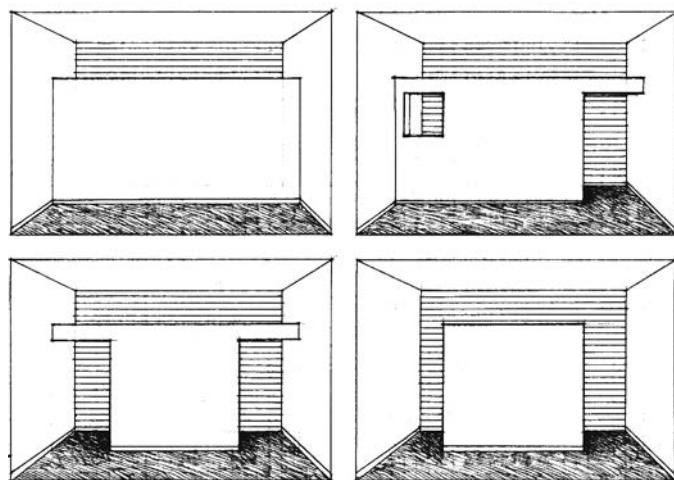
Vertically oriented furniture elements can function as walls if they are freestanding and are double-sided or have finished backs.



Freestanding walls may be made deep to incorporate spaces within their thickness.

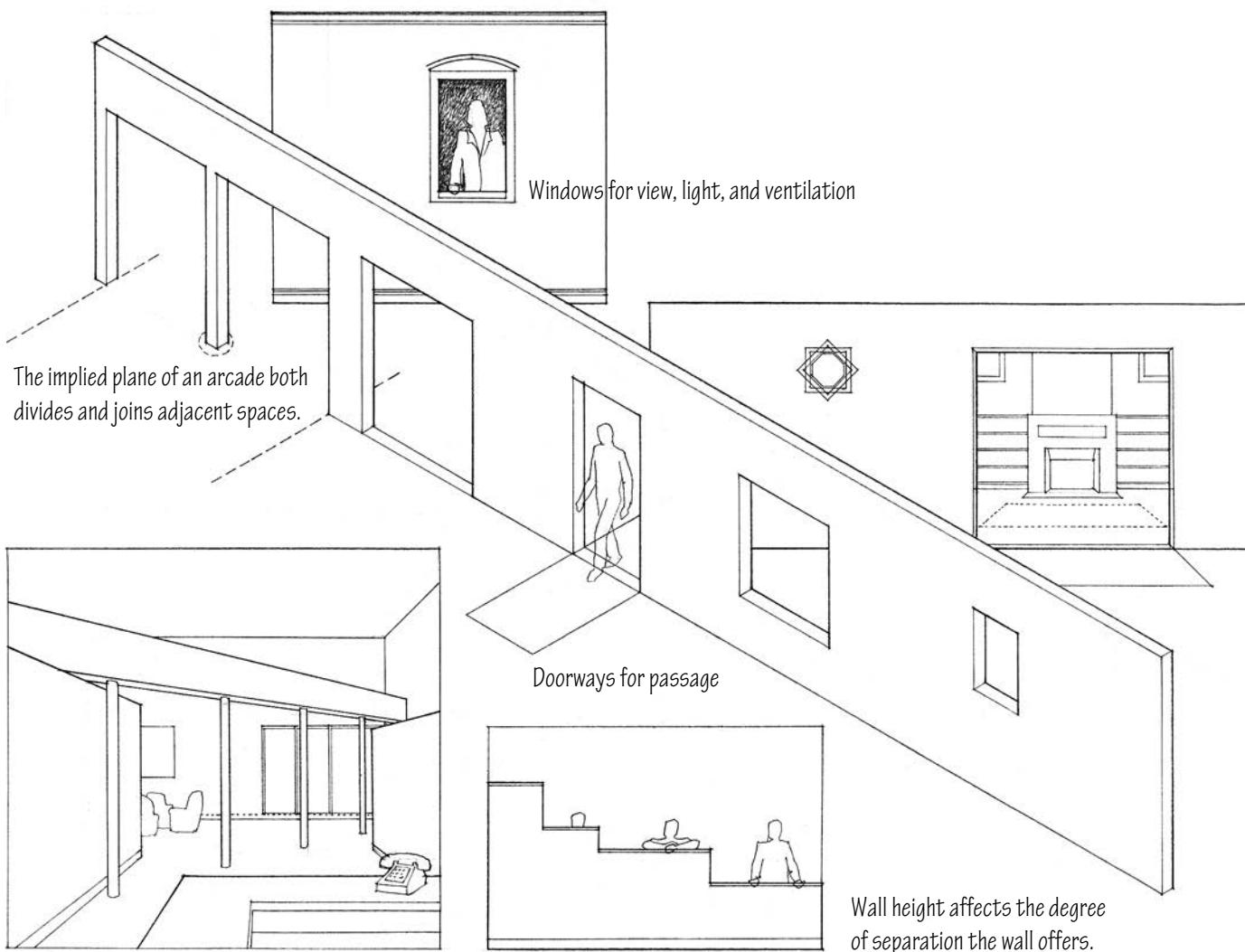
Walls are the primary elements with which we define interior space. Together with the floor and ceiling planes that complete the enclosure, walls govern the size and shape of a room. They can also be seen as barriers that limit our movement. They separate one space from the next and provide the occupants of a space with visual and acoustical privacy.

Rectilinear space defined by flat, rectangular walls is clearly the norm. Wall planes can also be curved, with the amount of curvature being determined in part by the materials and method of construction. The concave aspect of a curved wall encloses, while its convex side expands space.



WALL OPENINGS

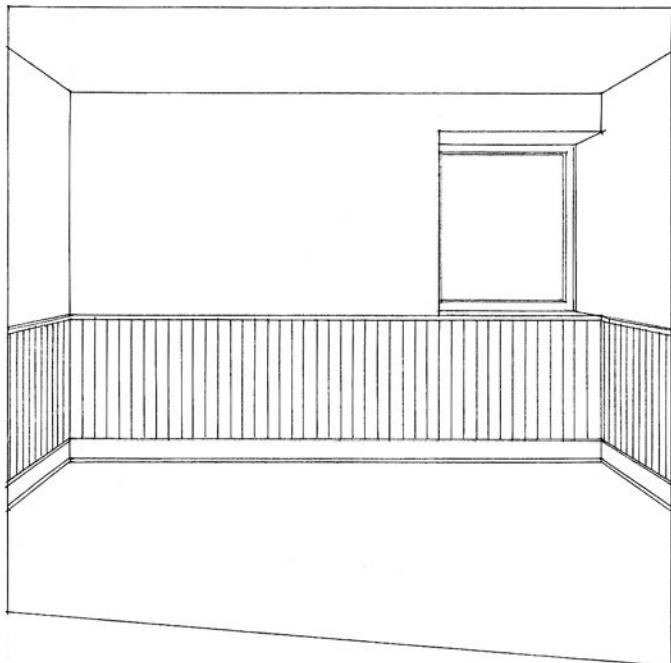
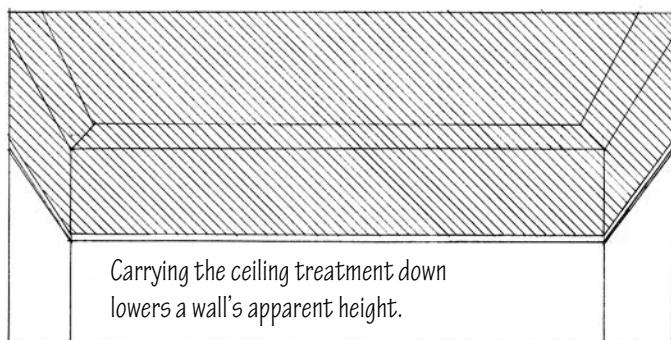
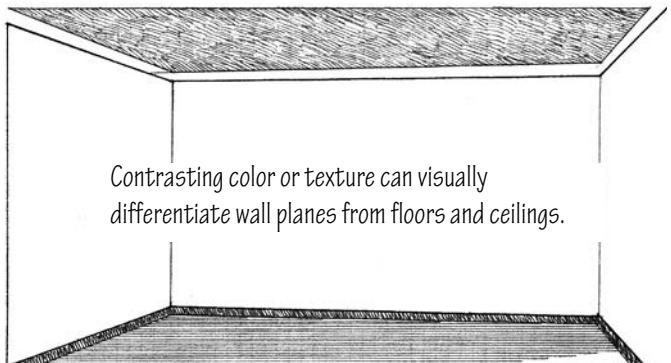
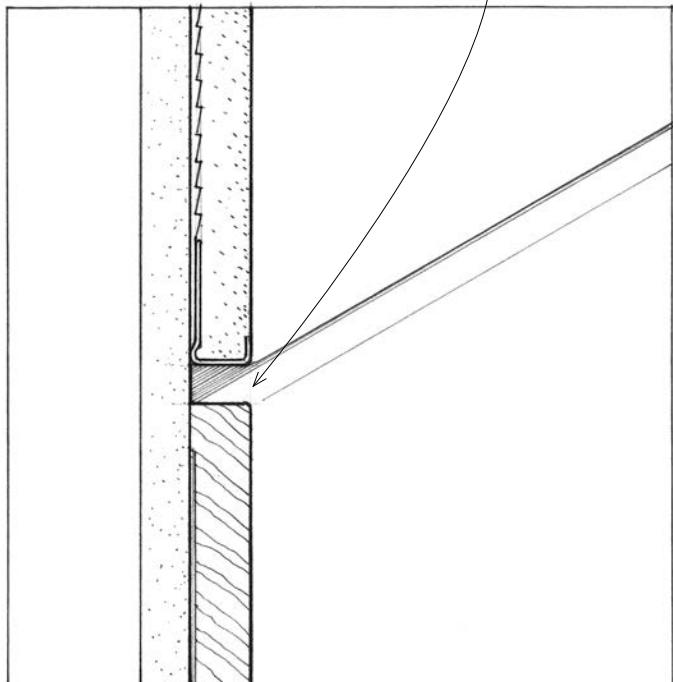
Openings within or between wall planes facilitate continuity and physical movement between spaces, as well as the passage of light, heat, and sound. As they increase in size, the openings begin to erode the sense of enclosure the walls provide and visually expand the space to include adjacent spaces. Views seen through the openings become part of the enclosed space. Enlarging the openings further will result ultimately in an implied separation of space defined by a framework of columns and beams.



A wall can be visually differentiated from either the adjoining wall or ceiling plane by a change of color, texture, or material. The distinction can be made clearer with either trimwork or a reveal.

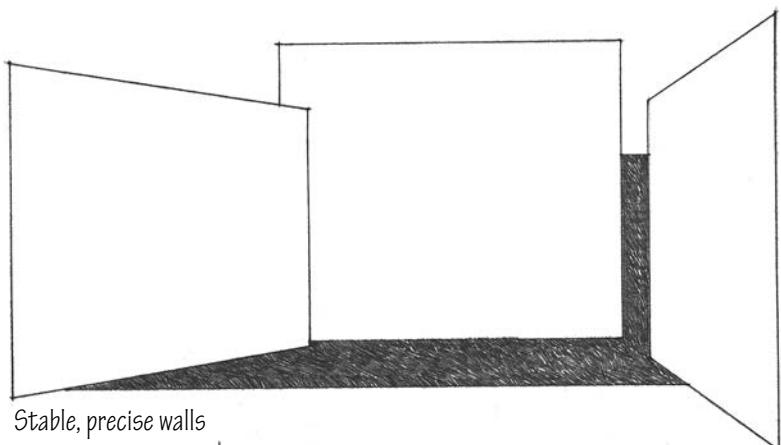
Trimwork, such as base and crown moldings, serves to conceal the unfinished construction joints and gaps between materials and to embellish architectural surfaces. Trim moldings can be simple or complex, depending on their profile and finish. Much of their impact depends on their scale, their color, and the shadow lines cast by their profile.

A reveal is a continuous recess that visually separates the meeting of two planes and articulates their edges by the shadow lines they create. When two planes meet in this manner, their surfaces must have finished or trimmed edges where exposed to our view.

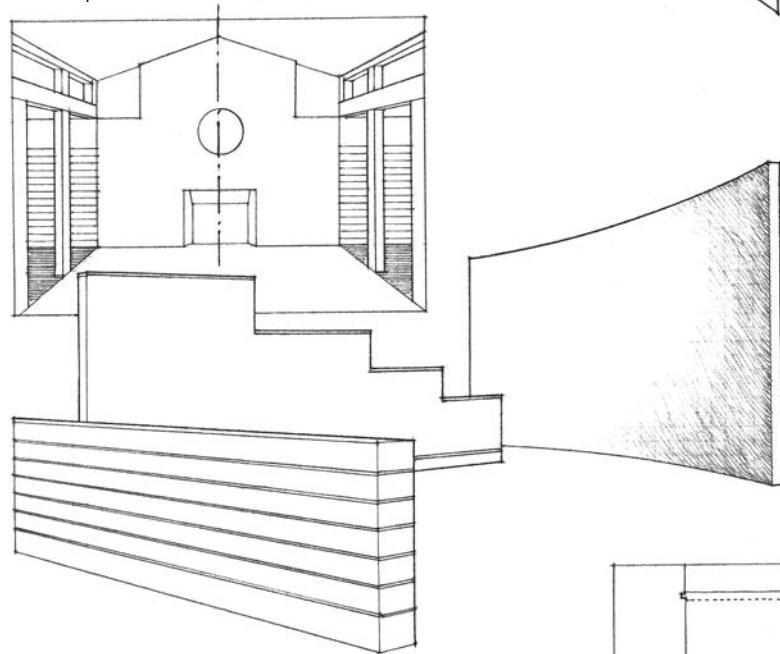


Wainscots or other horizontal bands can reduce the vertical scale of a room's walls.

WALL TEXTURE



Stable, precise walls

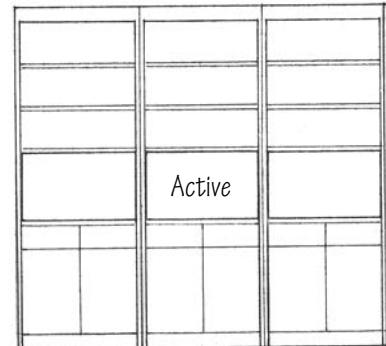
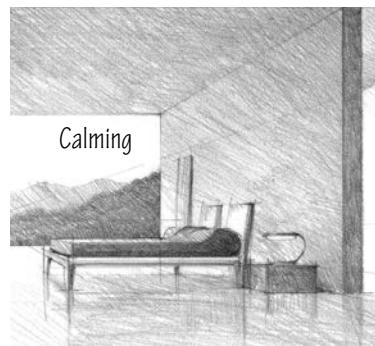
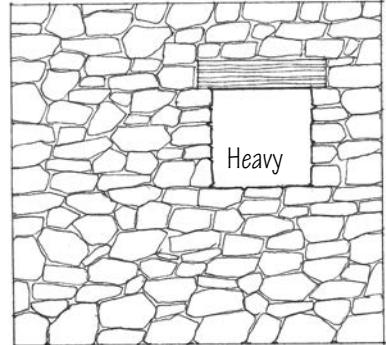
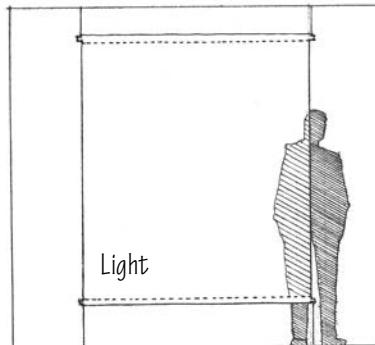


An irregular shape, coarse texture, or strong color can make a wall visually active.

The vertical orientation of walls makes them visually active in our field of vision. In defining the boundaries of a room, they give form and shape to the space and play a major role in determining its character.

Stable, precise, symmetrical walls convey a feeling of formality that can be considerably enhanced with the use of smooth textures. Irregularly shaped walls, on the other hand, are more dynamic. When combined with a rough texture, they can impart an informal character to a space.

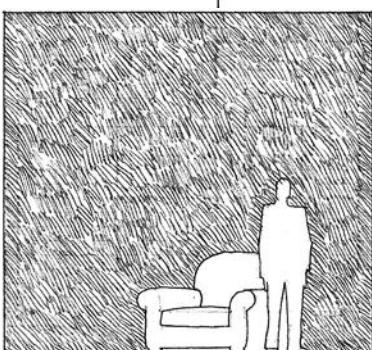
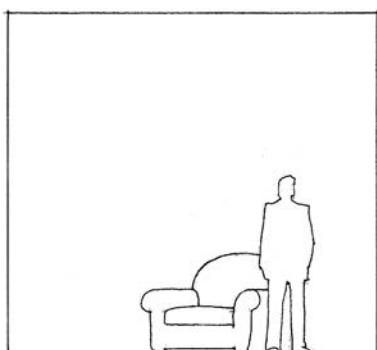
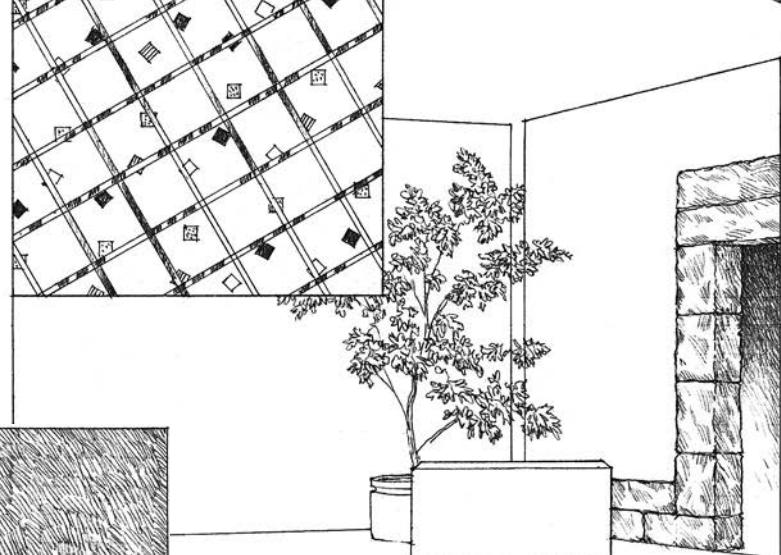
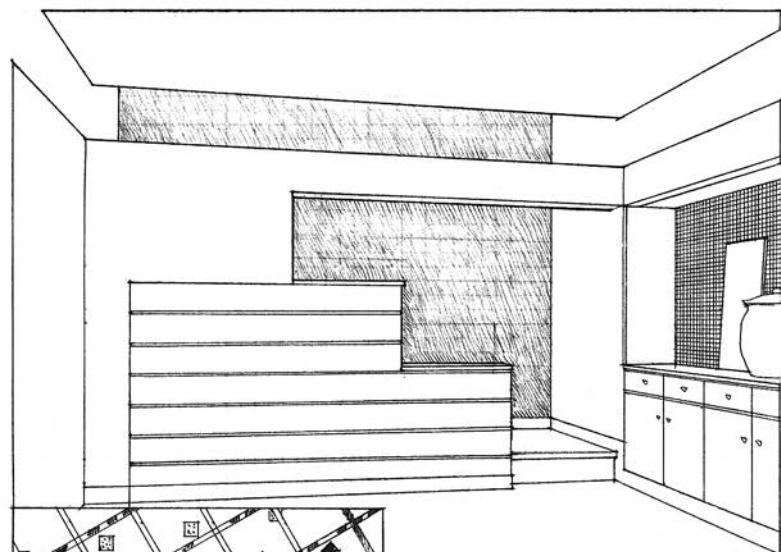
Walls provide a background for a room's furnishings and occupants. If smooth and neutral in color, they serve as passive backdrops for foreground elements. When irregular in shape or given texture, pattern, or vigorous color, walls become more active and compete for our attention.



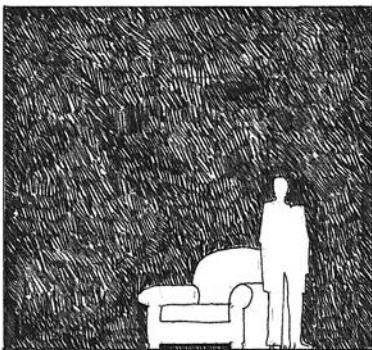
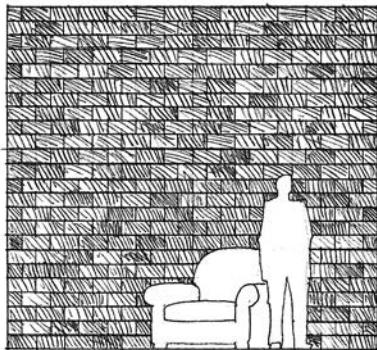
Light-colored walls reflect light effectively and serve as efficient backdrops for elements placed in front of them. Light, warm colors on a wall exude warmth, while light, cool colors increase a room's spaciousness.

Dark-colored walls absorb light, make a room more difficult to illuminate, and convey an enclosed, intimate feeling.

A wall's texture also affects how much light it will reflect or absorb. Smooth walls reflect more light than textured ones, which tend to diffuse the light striking their surfaces. In a similar manner, smooth, hard wall surfaces will reflect more sound back into a space than porous or soft-textured walls.

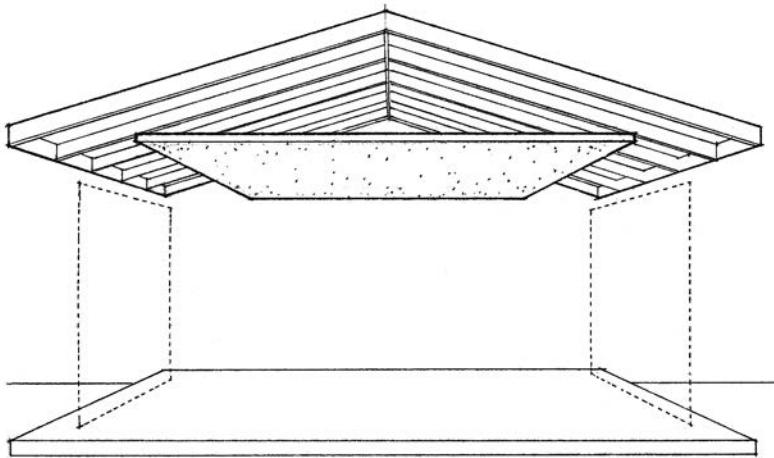


As with color, the juxtaposition of textures enhances both the coarse and the smooth.



Color, texture, and pattern can be used to differentiate one wall plane from the next and to articulate the form of the space.

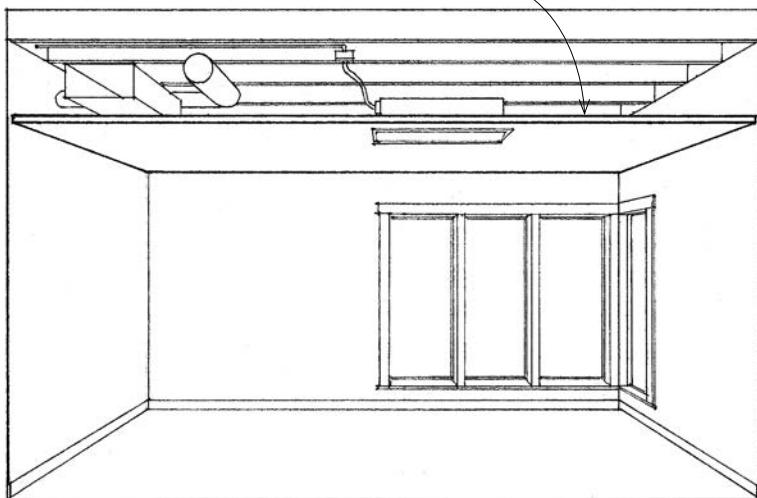
CEILINGS



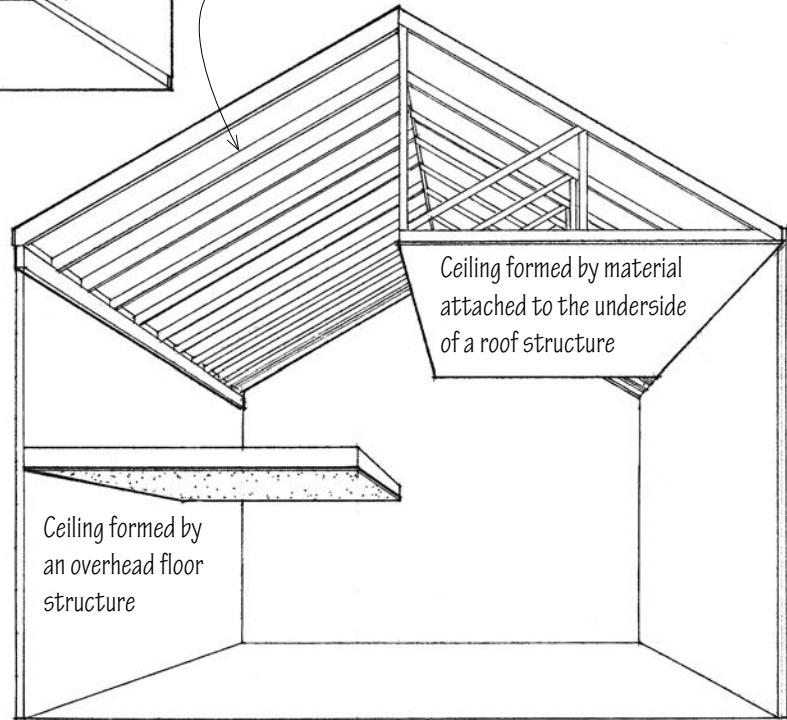
The third major architectural element of interior space is the ceiling. Although out of our reach and not used in the ways floors and walls are, the ceiling plays an important visual role in shaping interior space and limiting its vertical dimension. It is the sheltering element of interior design, offering both physical and psychological protection for those beneath its canopy.

Ceilings are formed by the undersides of floor and roof structures. The ceiling material can be attached directly to the structural frame or be suspended from it. In some cases, the overhead structure can be left exposed and serve as the ceiling.

Ceiling suspended from a roof or floor structure

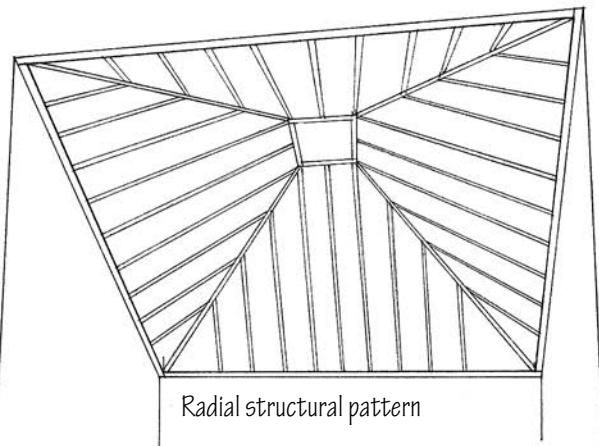
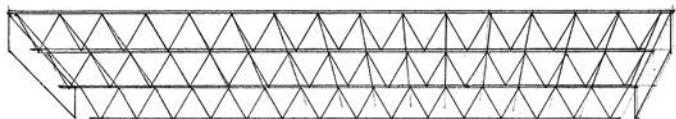


Ceiling defined by an exposed roof structure

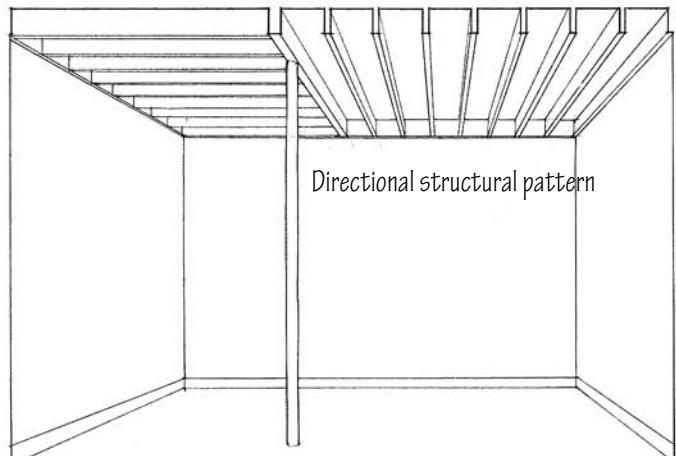


Instead of being surfaced with a smooth, planar material, a ceiling can consist of or express the structural pattern of the floor or roof above. Linear structural members or materials can create parallel, grid, or radial patterns. Any ceiling pattern will tend to attract our attention and appear to be lower than it is because of its visual weight. Since linear patterns direct the eye, they can also emphasize that dimension of space to which they are parallel.

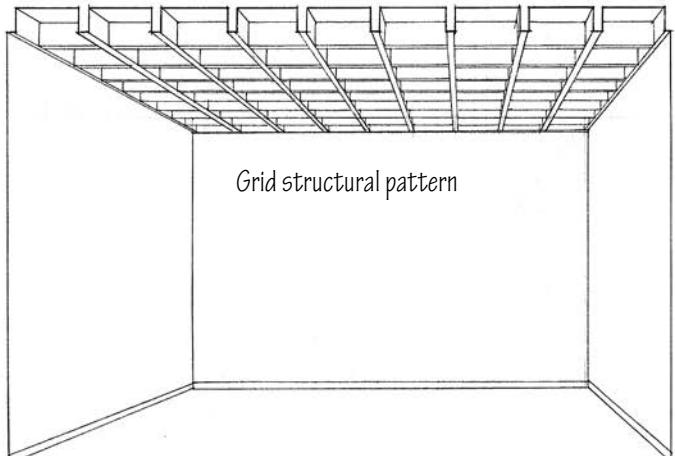
Exposed floor and roof structures provide a ceiling with texture, pattern, depth, and direction. These characteristics attract our attention and are best displayed in contrast to smoother wall planes.



Radial structural pattern

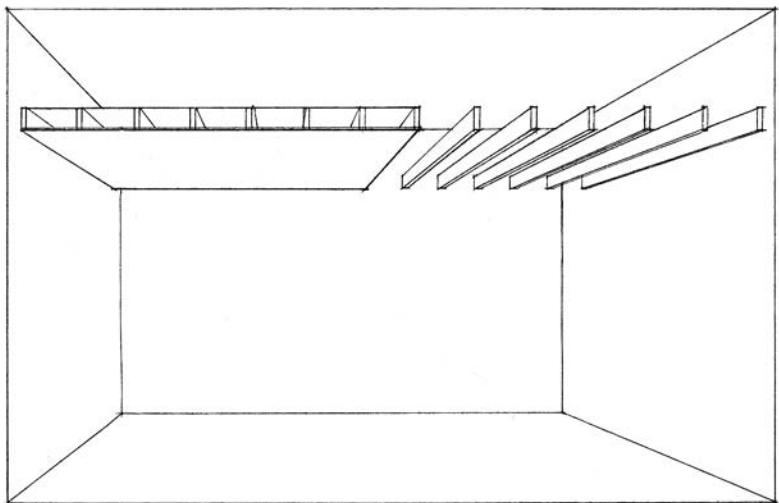


Directional structural pattern



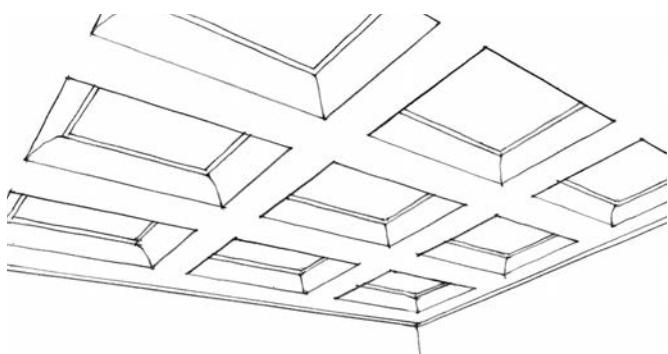
Grid structural pattern

SUSPENDED CEILINGS

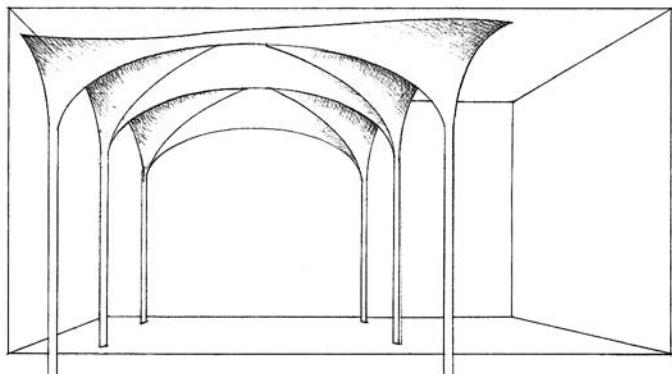


In a room with a high ceiling, all or a portion of the ceiling can be dropped, to lower the scale of the space or to differentiate an area from the space around it. Because a dropped ceiling is usually suspended from the floor or roof structure above, its form can either echo or contrast with the shape and geometry of the space.

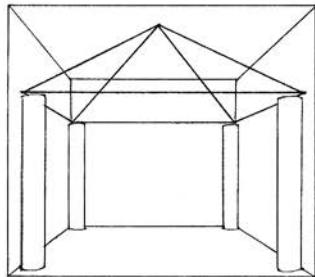
The effect of a suspended ceiling can be created with open framing or with nonstructural elements, such as fabric or a series of suspended lighting fixtures.



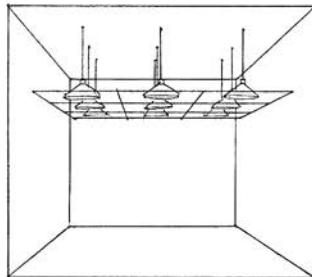
A coffered ceiling adds visual texture to a space.



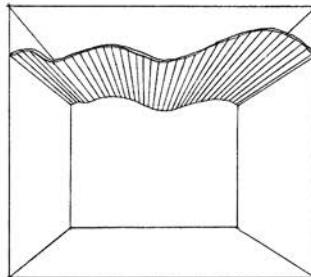
Contrasting space can be created within a larger space.



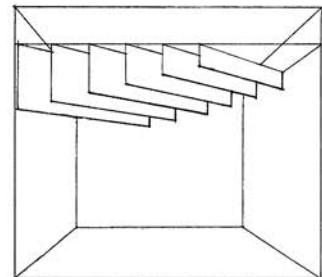
Open frame structure



Suspended light fixtures



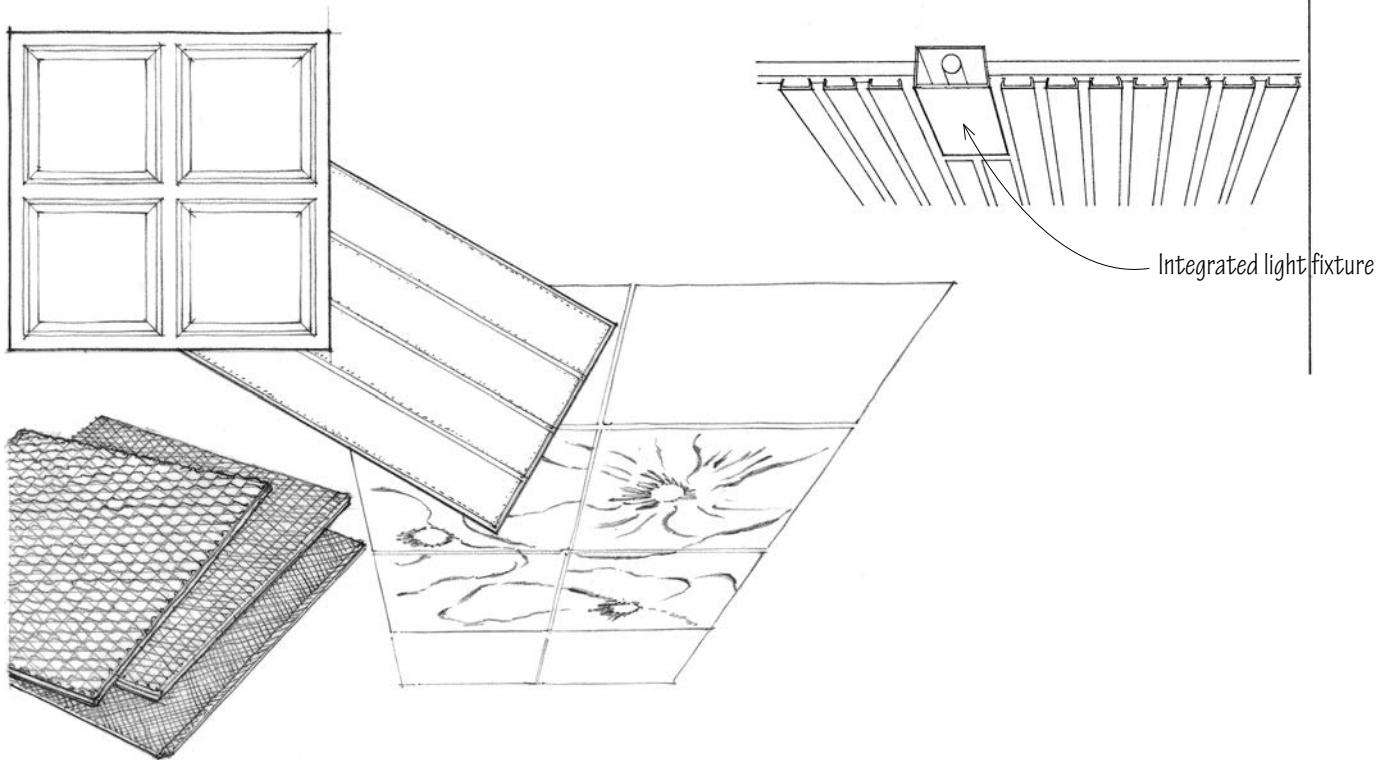
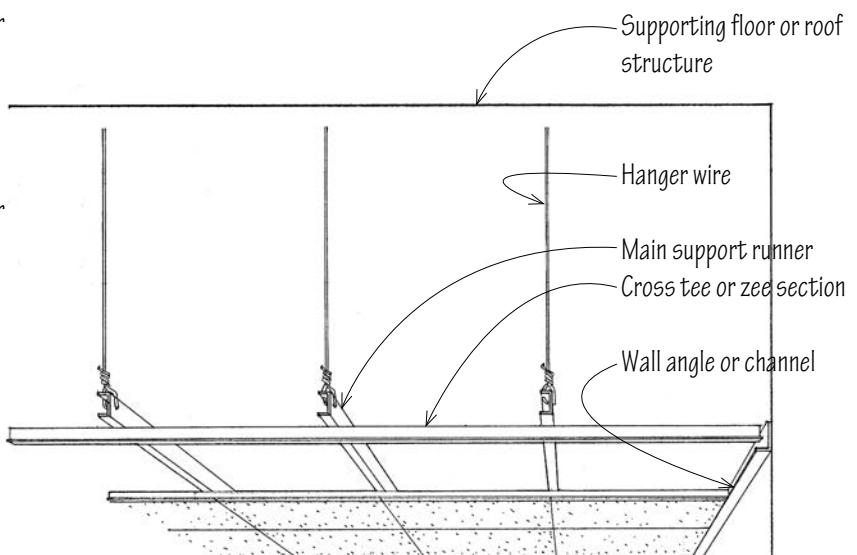
Wood or metal slats



Banners or baffles

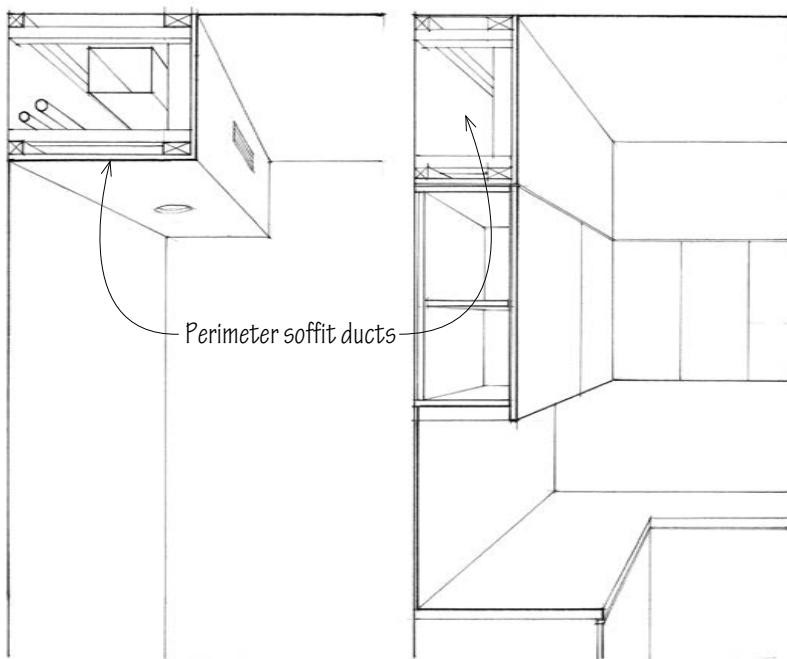
In commercial spaces, a suspended ceiling system is often used to provide a concealed space for mechanical ductwork, electrical conduit, and plumbing lines. Light fixtures, air-conditioning registers, sprinkler heads, and sound systems can be integrated with the grid of modular ceiling tiles or panels. The ceiling membrane can be fire rated and provide fire protection for the supporting overhead structure.

The typical suspended ceiling system consists of modular acoustical tiles supported by a metal grid suspended from the overhead floor or roof structure. The grid may be exposed, using lay-in tiles, or be concealed, using tiles with tongue-and-groove or kerfed edges.



Acoustical tiles are modular units of mineral or glass fiber. Some have wood, vinyl, aluminum, or ceramic faces. The tiles are usually removable for access to the ceiling space.

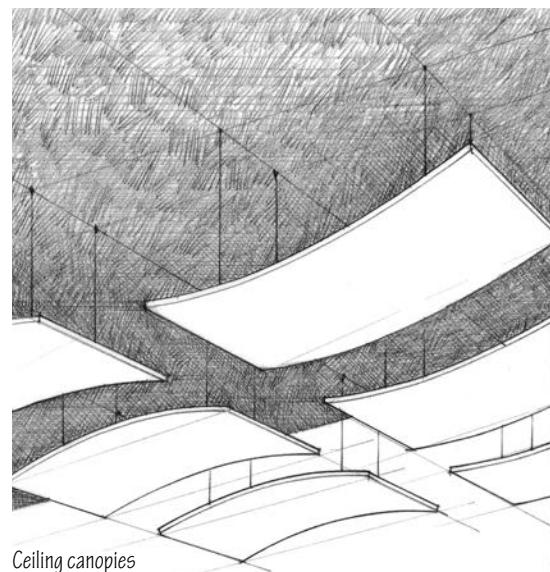
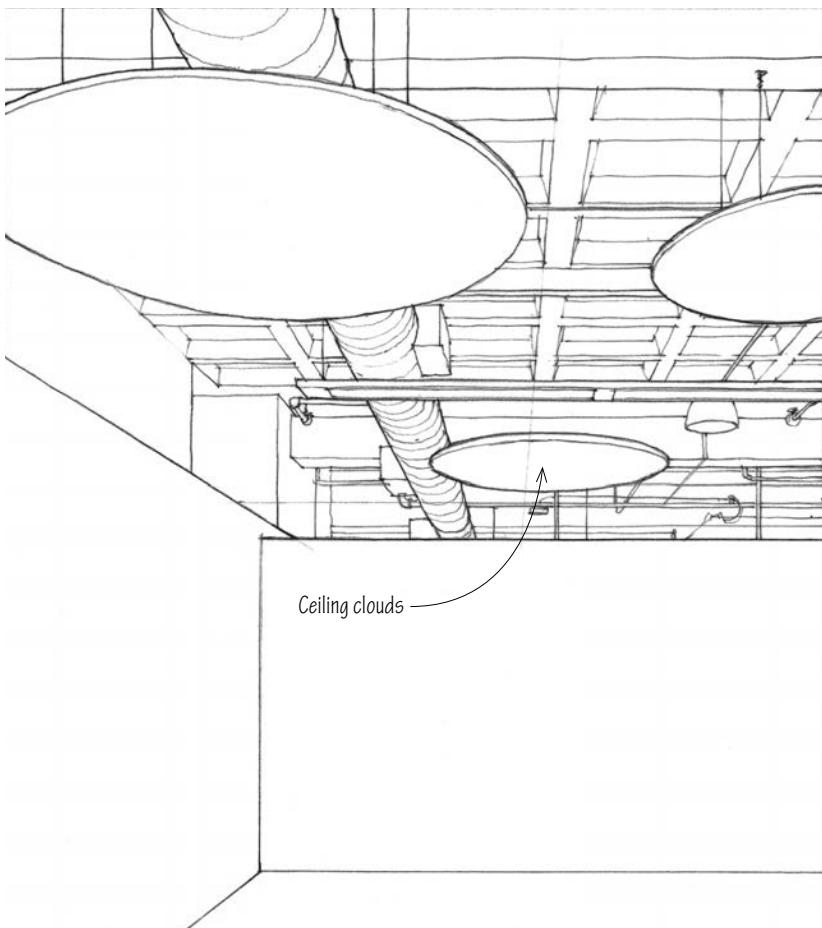
SUSPENDED CEILINGS



Lowering part of a ceiling adds variety and shelters more intimate spaces. Lowered ceiling sections can be treated with acoustical finishes to absorb sound over noisy areas. Soffits built down from ceilings can hide ductwork and other mechanical equipment at the perimeter of a room, or fill spaces above wall cabinets or shelving.

Ceiling canopies and clouds can be made of fabric, acoustical tile, metal, translucent plastic, or other materials. They allow ceilings to be dropped over small areas, even below other ceiling finish materials. Canopies and clouds are suspended from pendants or wires, and usually allow access to equipment on the ceiling above. Clouds tend to have more structured framing systems, and are usually made of acoustic materials, sometimes with a metal finish.

Stretched ceiling systems consist of a lightweight track with vinyl or other lightweight fabric stretched across and clipped to it. Stretched ceilings can be made in almost any shape.

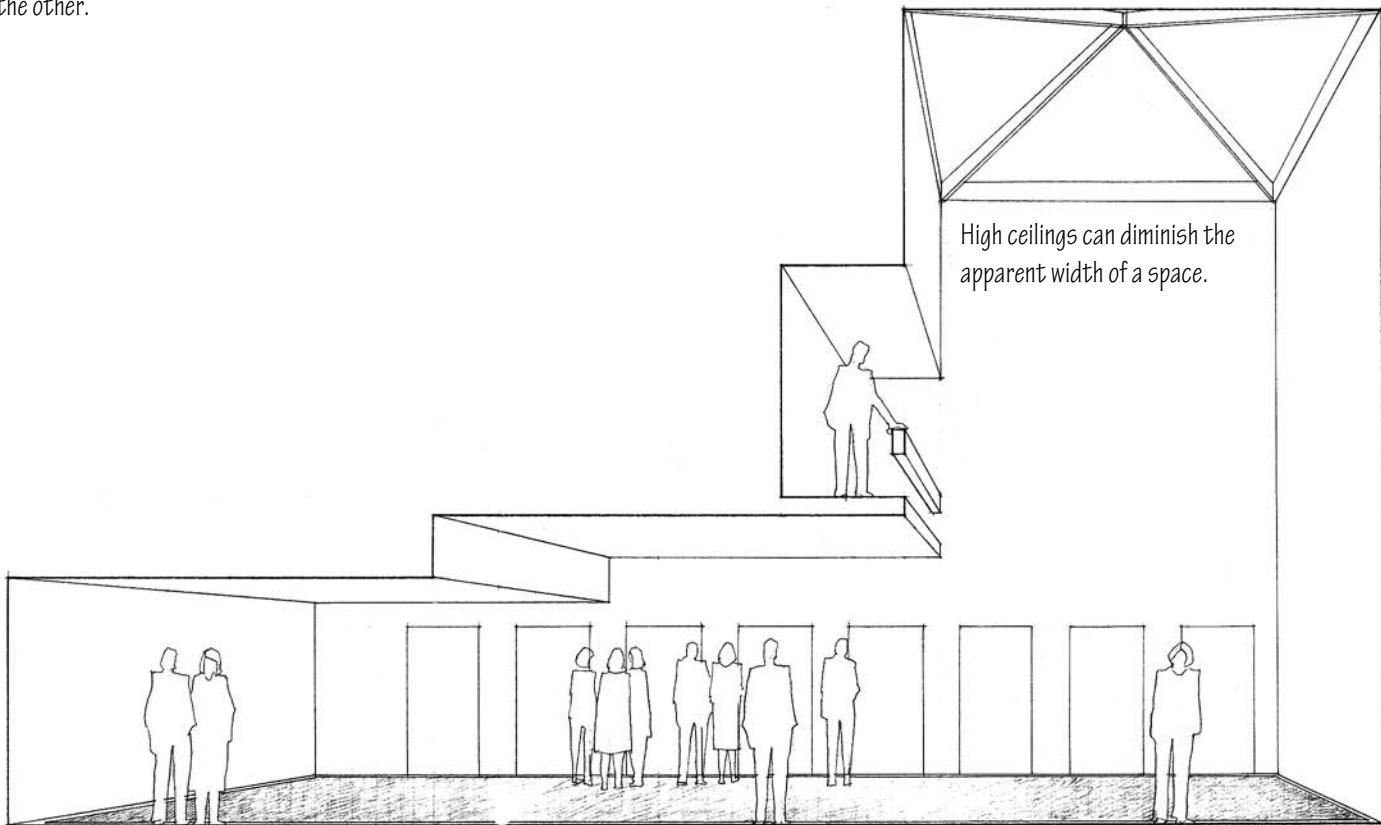


The height of a ceiling has a major impact on the scale of a space. While a ceiling's height should be considered relative to a room's other dimensions and to its occupancy and use, some generalizations can still be made about the vertical dimension of a space.

High ceilings tend to give a space an open, airy, lofty feel. They can also provide an air of dignity or formality, especially when regular in shape and form. Instead of merely hovering over a space, they can soar.

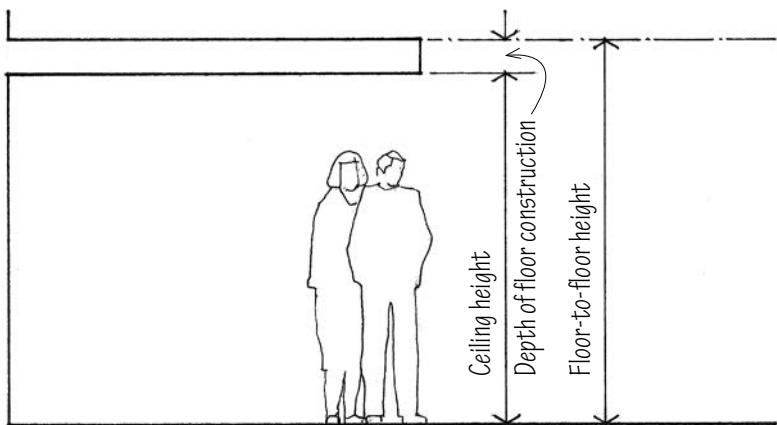
Low ceilings, on the other hand, emphasize their sheltering quality and tend to create intimate, cozy spaces. Low ceilings over large areas may feel oppressive.

Changing the ceiling height within a space, or from one space to the next, helps to define spatial boundaries and to differentiate between adjacent areas. Each ceiling height emphasizes, by contrast, the lowness or height of the other.



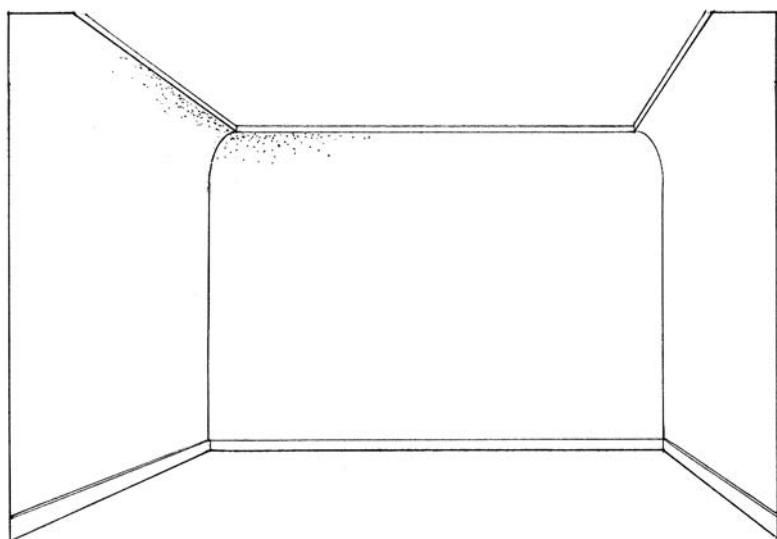
The normal height of a ceiling should be in proportion to a room's horizontal dimensions and to its use.

CEILING HEIGHT AND SCALE



When a flat ceiling is formed by a floor above, its height is fixed by the floor-to-floor height and the depth of the floor construction. Given this fixed dimension, the apparent height of a ceiling can be altered in several ways.

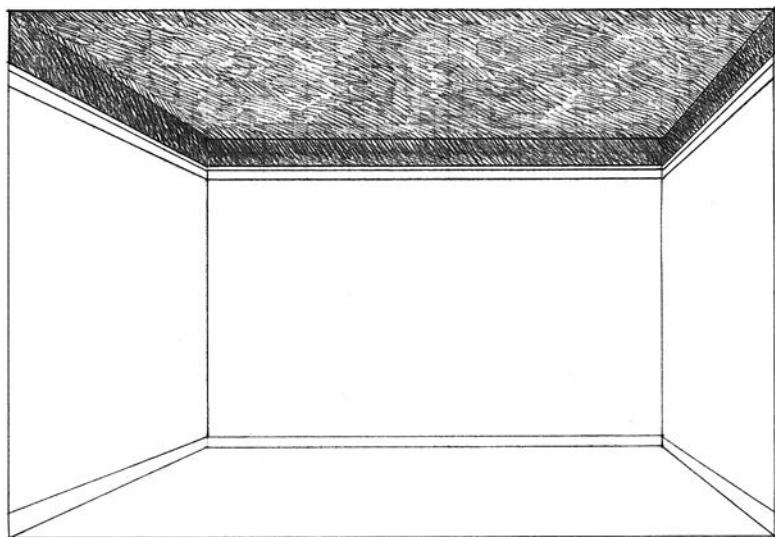
Because light values appear to recede, smooth, light-colored ceilings that reflect light convey a feeling of spaciousness. Carrying the wall material or finish onto the ceiling plane can make a ceiling appear higher than it is, especially when a cove is used to make the transition between wall and ceiling.



The apparent height of a ceiling can be lowered by using a dark, bright color that contrasts with the wall color, or by carrying the ceiling material or finish down onto the walls.

Warm air rises, while cooler air descends. A high ceiling allows the warmer air in a room to rise and cooler air to settle at floor level. This pattern of air movement makes a high-ceilinged space more comfortable in warm weather but more difficult to heat in cold weather. Conversely, a low-ceilinged space traps warm air and is easier to heat in cold weather, but can be uncomfortably warm in hot weather.

Ceiling coves smooth the transition between wall and ceiling.



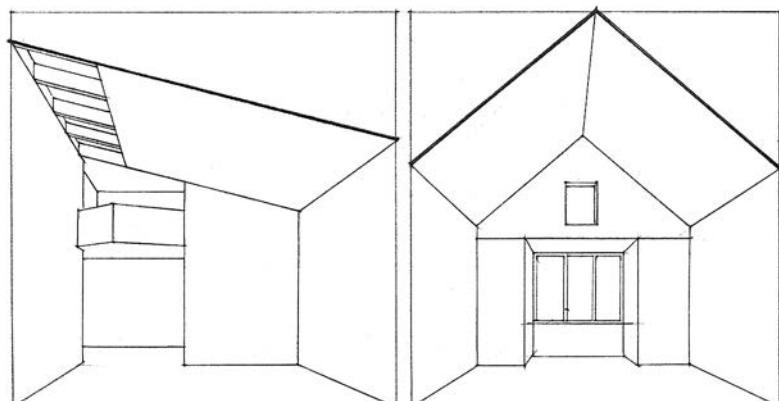
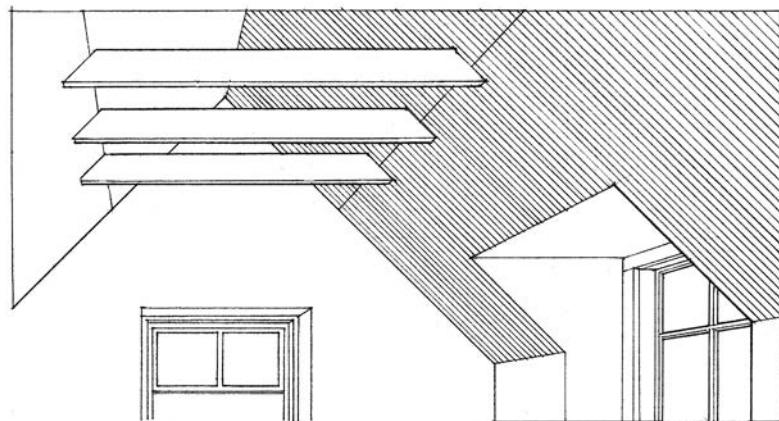
A dark ceiling color carried down onto the walls lowers the apparent ceiling height.

Ceilings supported by a floor structure above are normally flat. When created by a roof structure, however, a ceiling can take on other forms that reflect the shape of the structure, add visual interest, and give direction to the space.

A single-slope or shed form may lead the eye up toward the ridge or down toward the eave line, depending on the location of the daylighting sources within the room.

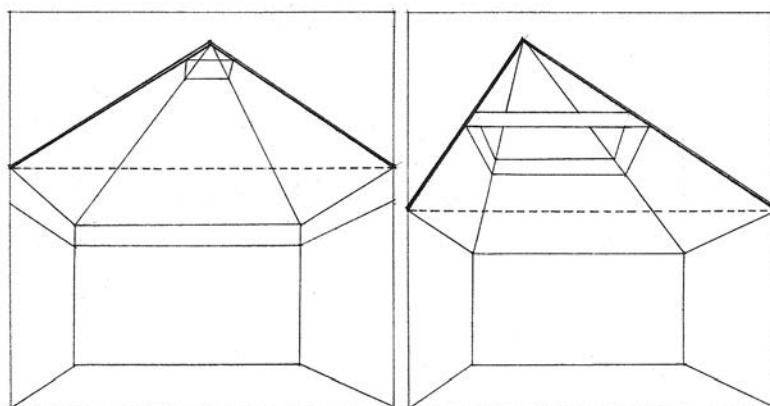
Gabled ceilings expand space upward toward the ridgeline. Depending on the direction of any exposed structural elements, the gabled form may direct our attention to the height of the ridge or to its length.

A pyramid ceiling directs the eye upward to its peak, a focus that can be accentuated further with an illuminating skylight.



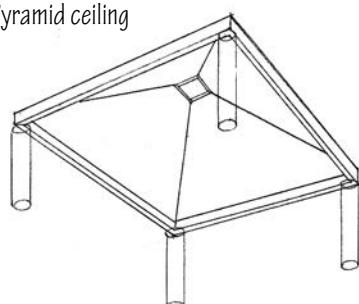
Single-slope ceiling

Gabled ceiling

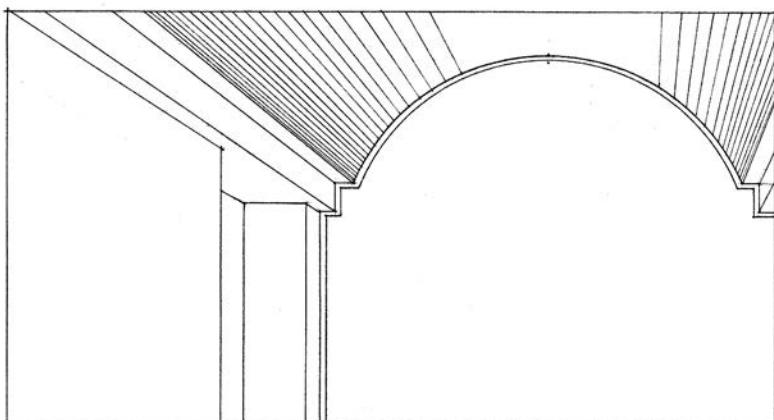


Pyramid ceiling

Off-center pyramid

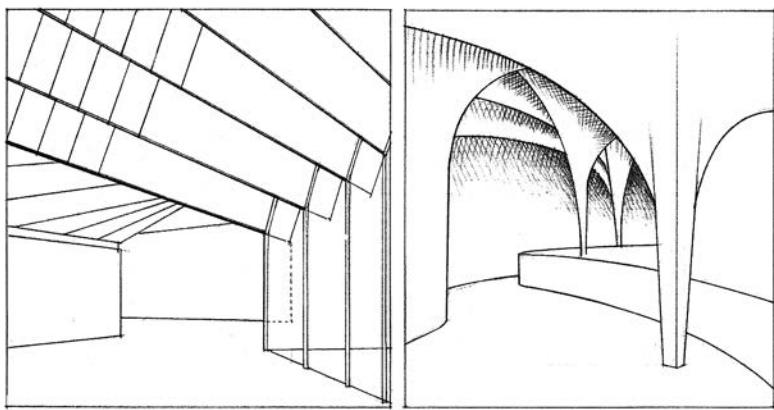


CEILING FORMS



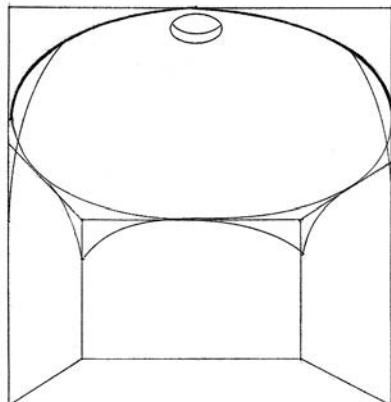
A coved ceiling uses a curved surface to soften its meeting with the surrounding wall planes. The resulting merger of vertical and horizontal surfaces gives the enclosed space a plastic, moldable quality.

Increasing the scale of the cove leads to vaulted and domed ceiling forms. A vaulted ceiling directs our eyes upward and along its length. A dome is a centralized form that expands space upward and focuses our attention on the space beneath its center.



Angular freeform ceiling

Curving freeform ceiling



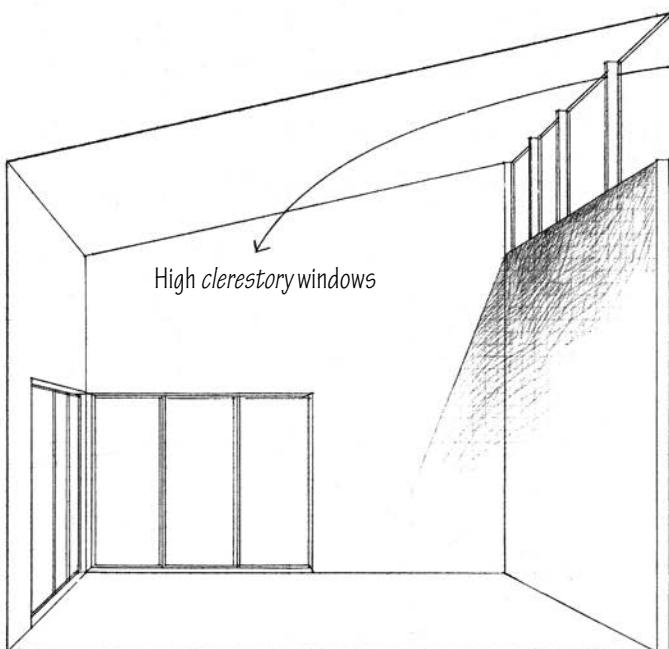
Vaulted ceiling

Domed ceiling

As a functional element, a ceiling affects the illumination of space, its acoustical quality, and the amount of energy required to heat or cool a space.

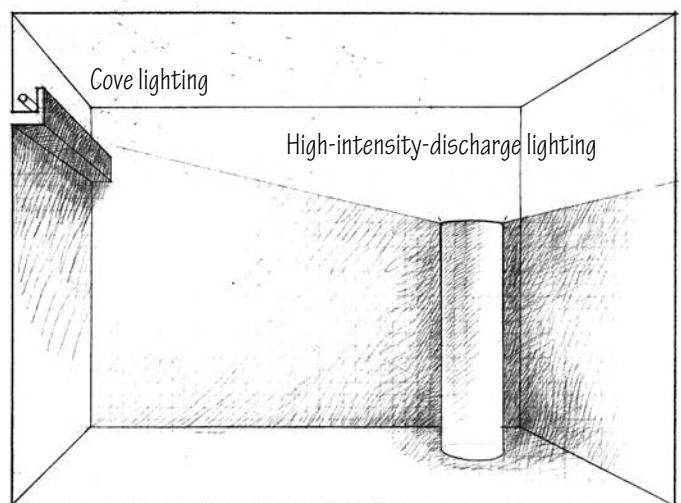
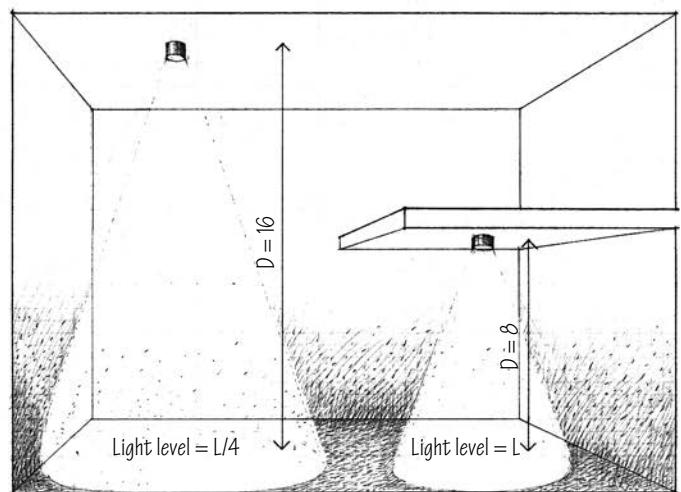
The height and surface qualities of a ceiling affect the light level within a space. Fixtures mounted on a high ceiling must cast their light a greater distance to achieve the same level of illumination as fewer fixtures suspended below the ceiling.

Because it is not usually encumbered with elements that can block the illumination from light sources, a smooth and light-colored ceiling plane can be an efficient reflector of light. When directly lit from below or the side, the ceiling surface itself can become a broad surface of soft illumination.

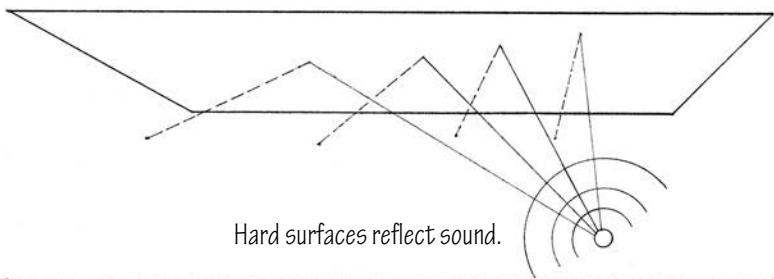


Light-colored ceilings can become sources of illumination when lit by broad sources of light.

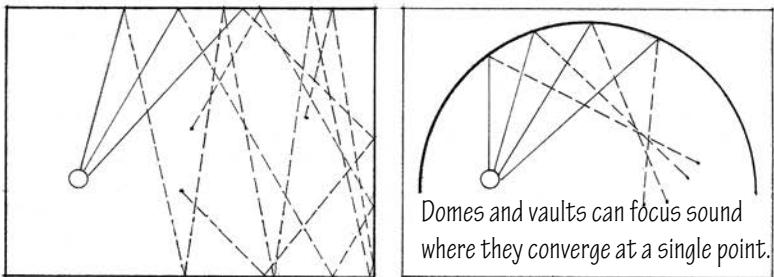
The intensity of light diminishes according to the square of the distance from its source.



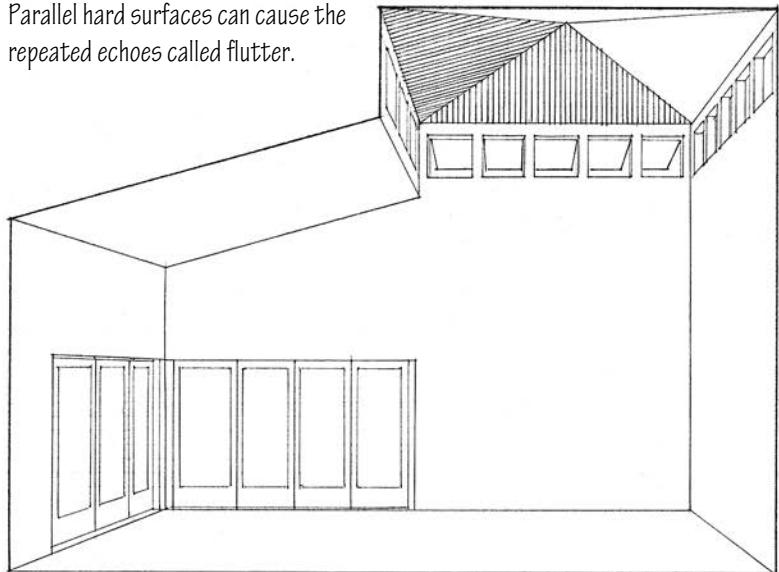
CEILINGS AND ACOUSTICS



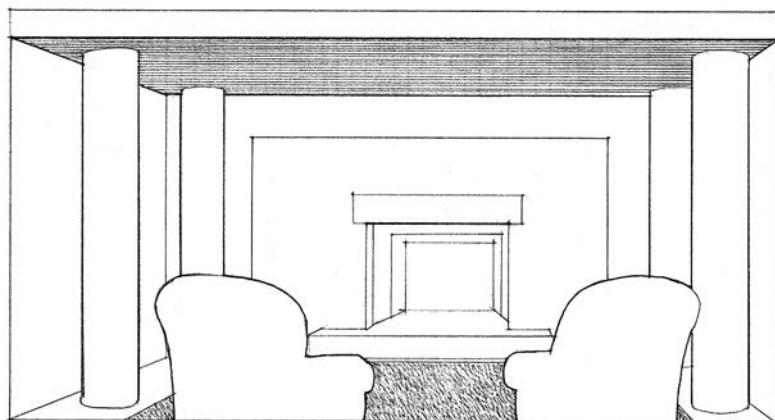
Because the ceiling represents the largest unused surface of a room, its form and texture can have a significant impact on the room's acoustics. Smooth, hard ceiling materials reflect airborne sound within a space. In some situations, this is acceptable since other elements and surfaces in a space can employ sound-absorbing materials. In offices, stores, and restaurants, where additional sound-absorbing surfaces may be required to reduce the reflection of noise from numerous sources, acoustical ceilings can be employed.



Parallel hard surfaces can cause the repeated echoes called flutter.



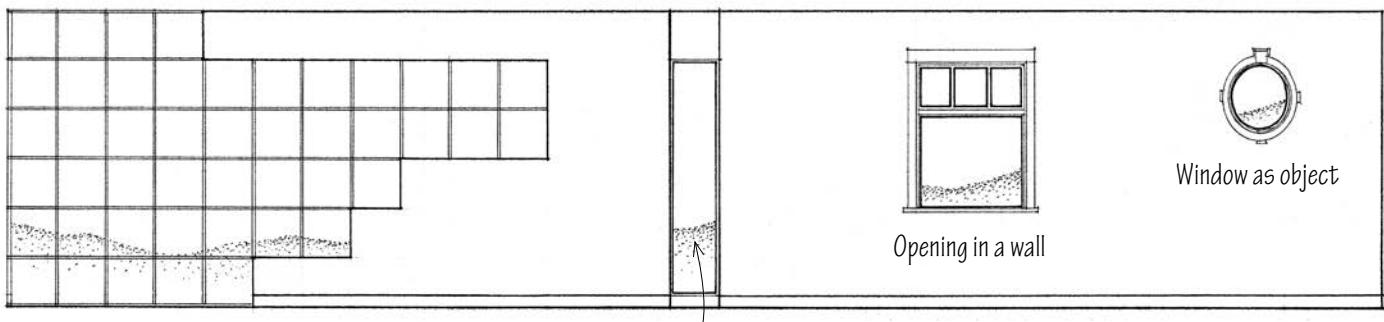
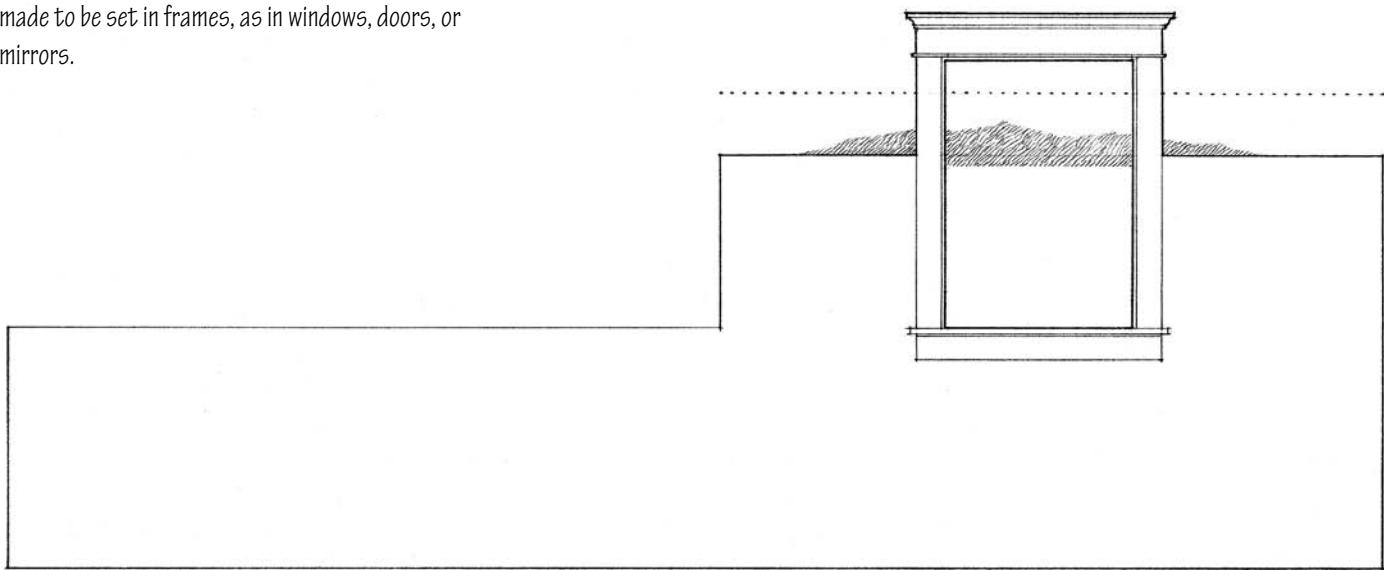
Undesirable flutter within a space results when rapidly repeated echoes traverse back and forth between two nonabsorbing parallel flat or concave planes, such as a shallow dome opposite a hard-surface floor. A remedy for flutter is to add absorbing surfaces. Another is to slope the ceiling plane or use one with a multifaceted surface.



Windows and doorways interrupt the wall planes that give a building its form and give interior spaces their definition. They are transitional elements of architectural and interior design that link one space to another and join inside to outside, both visually and physically.

The size, shape, and placement of windows affect the visual integrity of a wall surface and the sense of enclosure it provides. A window can be seen as a bright area within a wall or a dark plane at night, an opening framed by a wall, or a void separating two wall planes. It can also be enlarged to the point where it becomes the physical wall plane—a transparent window wall that visually unites an interior space with the outdoors or an adjacent interior space.

Fenestration is a term that describes the design and placement of windows in a building. *Glazing* refers to the panes or sheets of glass or other transparent material made to be set in frames, as in windows, doors, or mirrors.



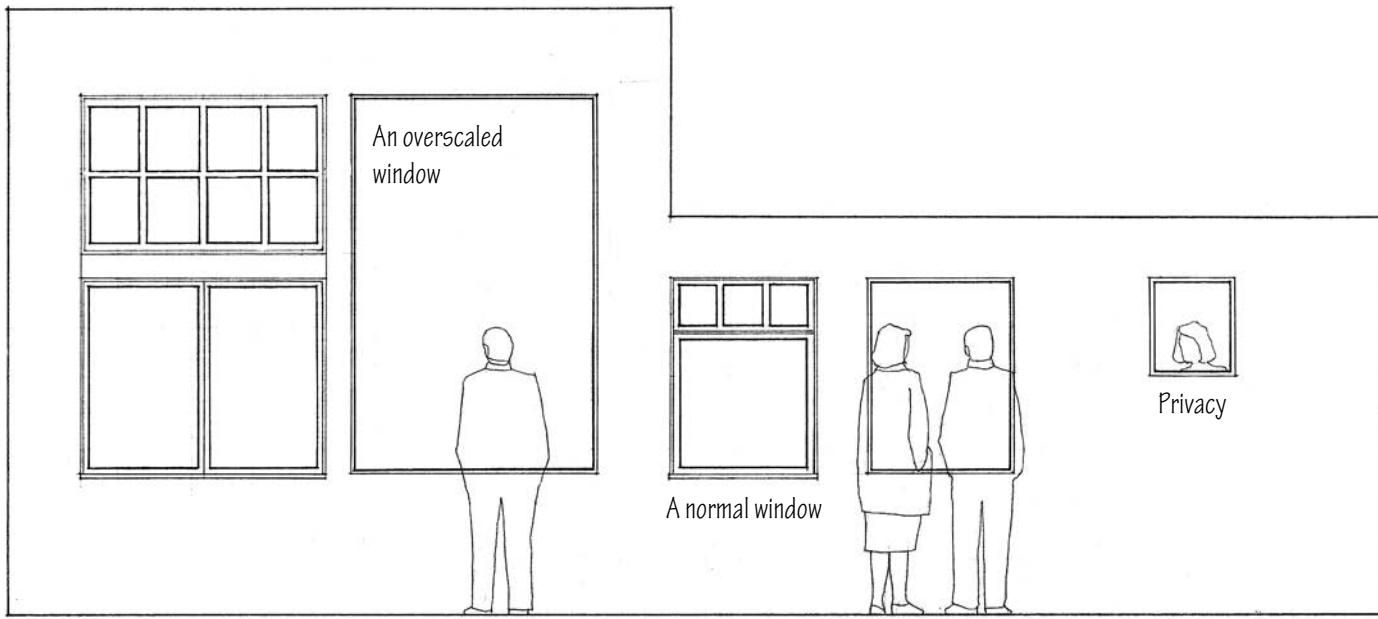
Window framing a view beyond

Window separating two planes

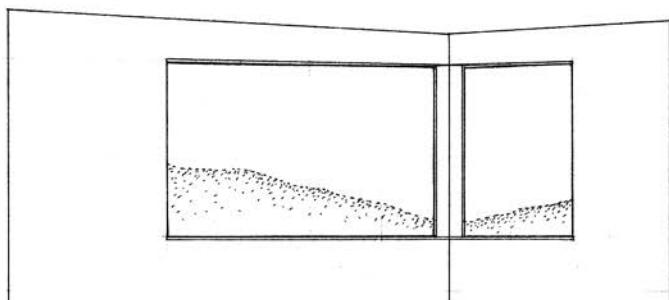
Window as object

WINDOWS

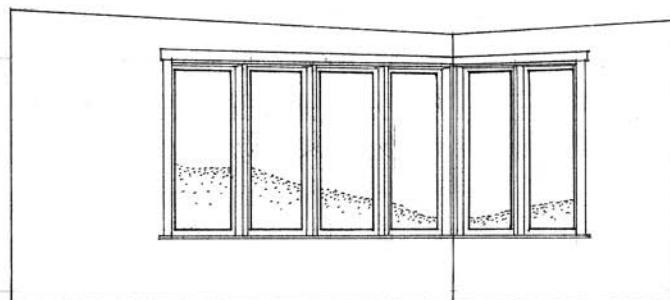
The scale of a window is related not only to the surrounding wall plane but also to human dimensions. We are accustomed to a window head height slightly above our height and to a sill height that corresponds to our waistline. When a large window is used to expand a space visually, broaden its outlook, or complement its scale, the window can be subdivided into smaller units to maintain a human scale.



Varying the scale of window openings



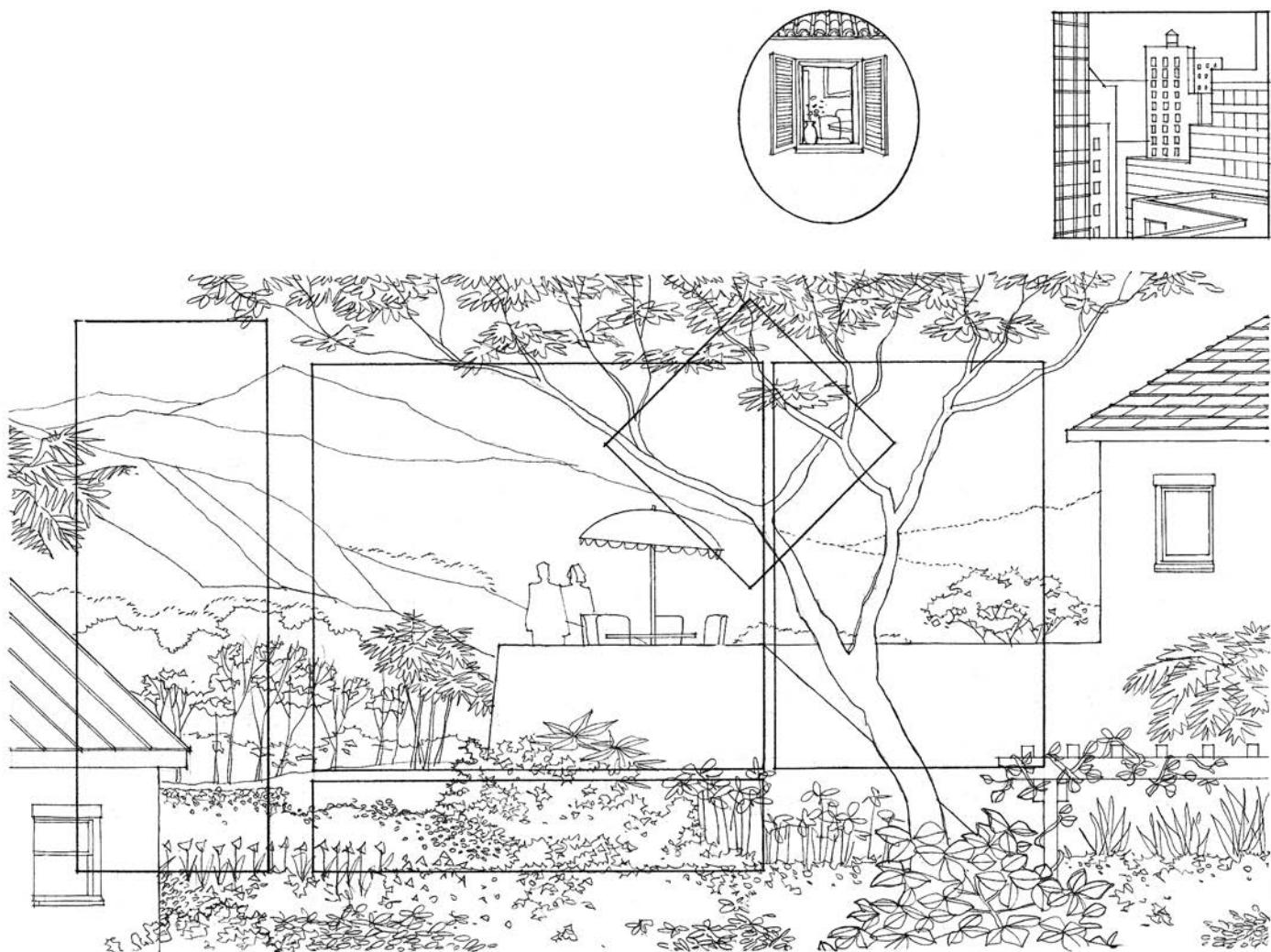
The design and placement of windows in a building is called fenestration.



The fenestration pattern and window trim details affect the sense of enclosure provided by the walls of a room.

Views from windows become an integral part of the fabric of interior space. They not only provide an outward focus from within a room but also convey visual information to us about where we are. They form a connection between inside and outside.

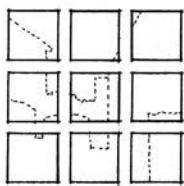
In determining the size, shape, and placement of windows in a room, consideration should be given to what can be seen through the window openings (both from inside and outside), how these views are framed, and how the visual scenes shift as we move about the room.



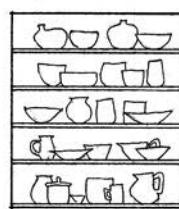
FILTERING VIEWS

Windows do more than simply frame views; they also aid in daylighting a space and providing for its ventilation. Daylight and access to outdoor views are considered important components of sustainable design.

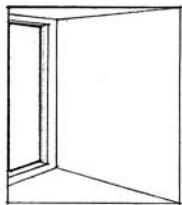
However, a window may expose a less than desirable view. In such a case, the treatment of a window can fragment, filter, or divert our view. Exterior landscaping can also aid in shielding an interior space from an undesirable view or even create a pleasant outlook where none existed. Translucent window glazing and sheer casements can obscure views while allowing some daylight to pass.



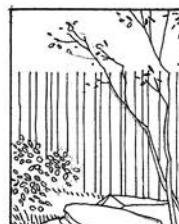
Fragment the view with a grouping of small windows.



Filter the view by setting a collection of objects within the window opening.



Divert attention away from the view.



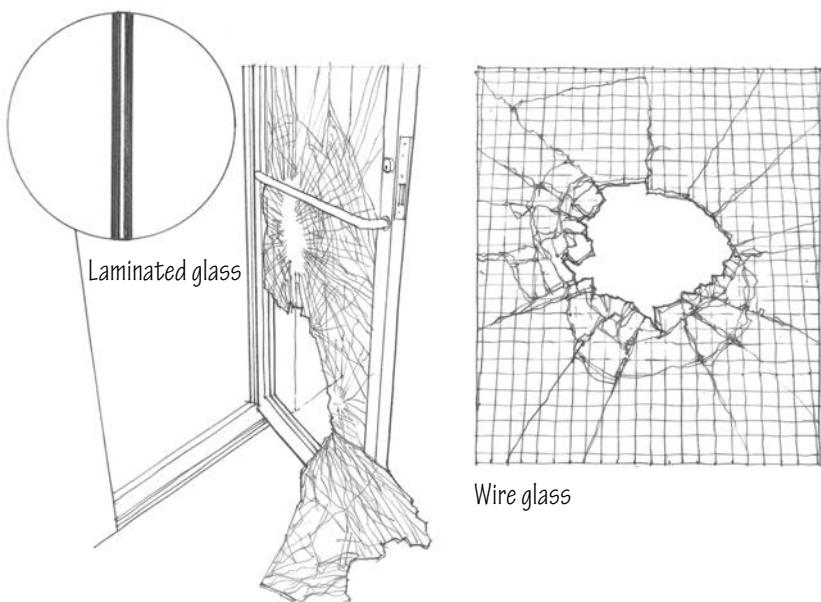
Where no view exists, create a garden or courtyard view.

Ways to Deal with an Unsightly View

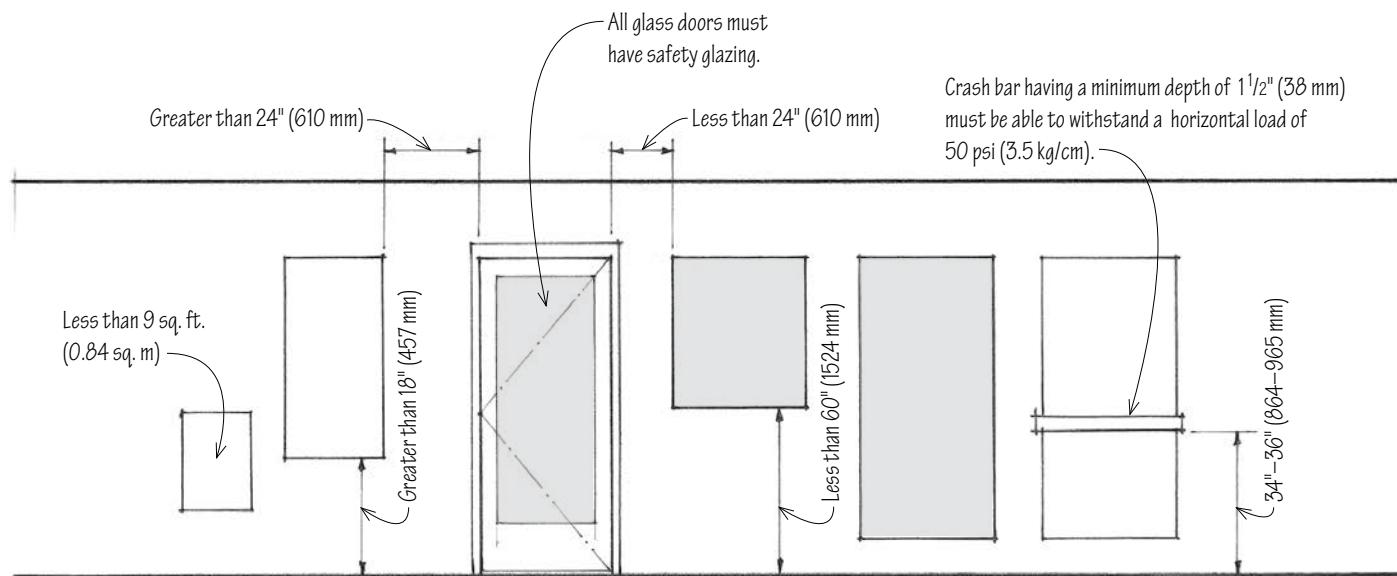
Interior glazing allows light to pass through the building from outside and from one space to another. It opens up and visually connects spaces. Glazed walls and vision panels make it possible to see if an adjoining space is occupied; translucent glazing can be used so that movement can be detected while preserving some privacy.

Safety glazing is required in locations that could be subject to human impact, such as glass in doors, shower and bath enclosures, and glass sidelights in partitions. Generally, tempered glass and laminated glass are considered safety glazing. Building codes set requirements for the use of glazing in fire-resistance-rated assemblies, including some corridors.

Wire glass has wire mesh or parallel wires rolled into the center of the glass sheet. If breakage occurs, the wire helps to hold the glass fragments in the opening, reducing personal injuries.



Wire glass

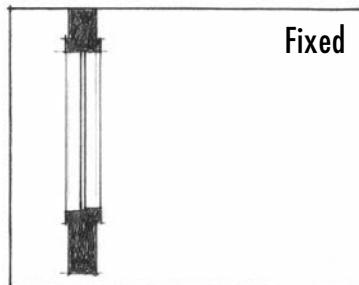
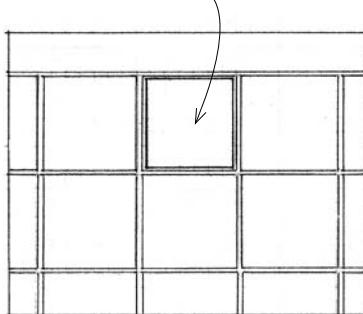


Interior Glazing Conditions

Safety glazing required

WINDOW OPERATION

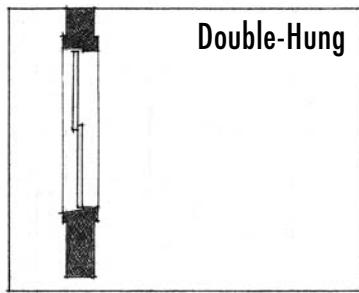
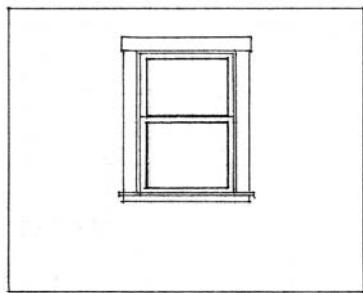
Glazing refers to the panes or sheets of glass set in the frame of a window.



Fixed

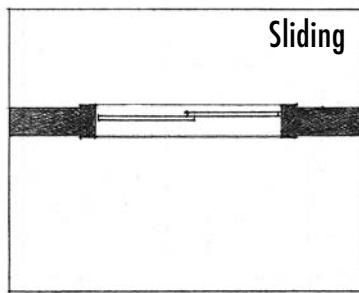
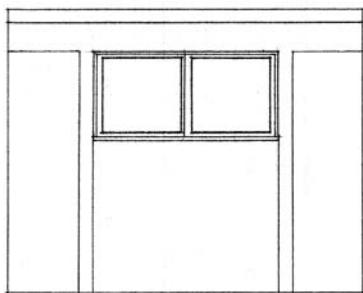
Windows can be categorized into two major groups: fixed and ventilating. Fixed windows cannot be opened and are often used in interiors. Both groups provide interior spaces with light and views, but fixed windows do not allow for the passage of air, as do ventilating windows, which can be opened and closed.

- Frame and glazed sash are stationary.
- No ventilation is possible.
- Hardware or screens are not required.
- Varied sizes and shapes are possible.



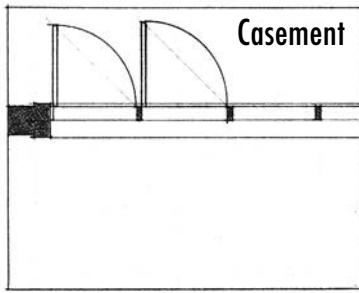
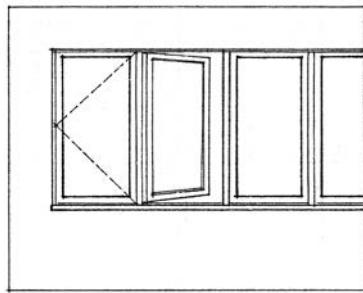
Double-Hung

- Two sashes travel vertically in separate tracks or grooves and are held in the desired position by friction or a balancing device.
- No rain protection is provided.
- Can be weatherproofed effectively.
- May be screened on outside.
- Provide maximum 50% ventilation.
- Difficult to paint and clean without pivoting sash.



Sliding

- May consist of either two sashes, of which one slides horizontally (50% ventilation), or three sashes, of which the middle is fixed while the other two slide (66% ventilation).
- No rain protection is provided.
- Screened on exterior.
- Sliding patio doors are similar to large sliding windows.

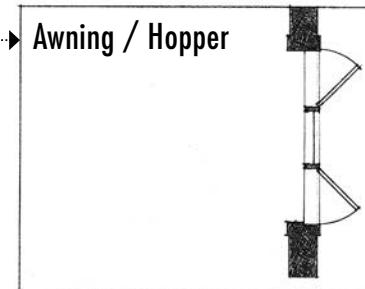


Casement

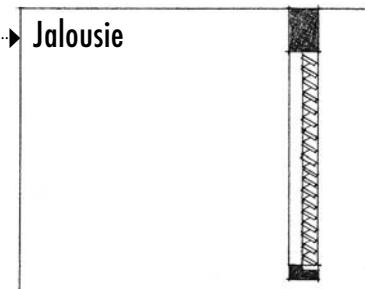
- Operating sash is side-hinged and usually swings outward.
- Provide 100% ventilation; can direct or deflect breezes.
- No rain protection.
- Projecting sash can be an obstruction.

Building codes regulate the minimum size of window openings that provide natural lighting and ventilation for habitable spaces, as well as the size of operable windows that serve as emergency exits from residential sleeping spaces.

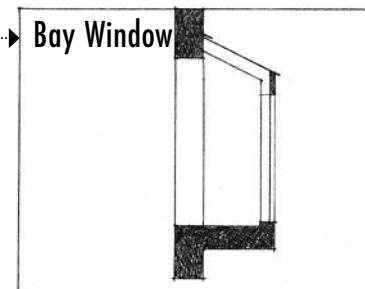
- Similar to casements but hinged at top (awning) or bottom (hopper).
- Provide 100% draft-free ventilation.
- Awning windows provide some rain protection.
- May be difficult to weatherproof.
- Require space for swing of sash.



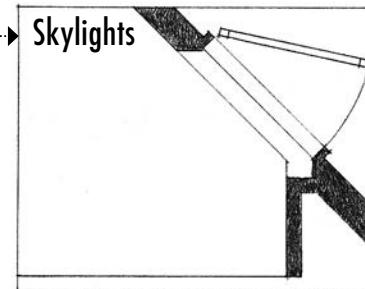
- Similar to awning windows, but with a series of narrow opaque or translucent strips.
- Able to direct flow of incoming air.
- Difficult to clean and weatherproof.
- Used for ventilation along with privacy.



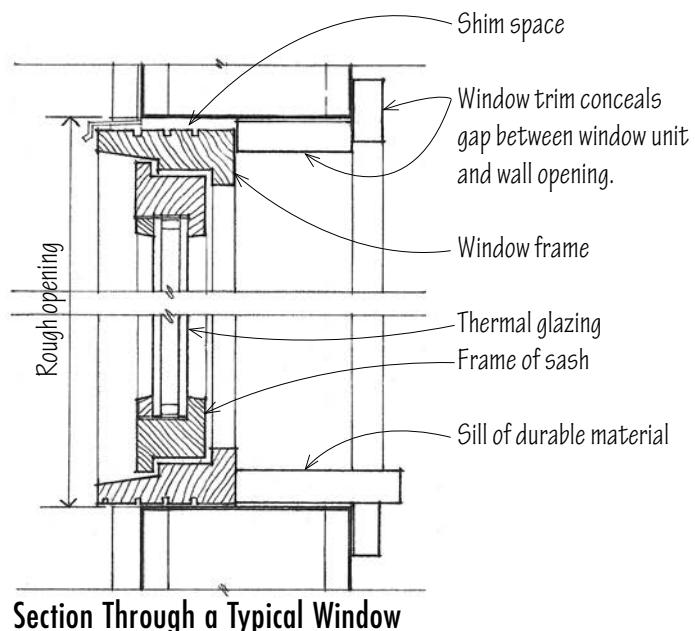
- Use a combination of fixed and operable windows and skylights.
- Project a portion of interior space outward into the surrounding landscape.



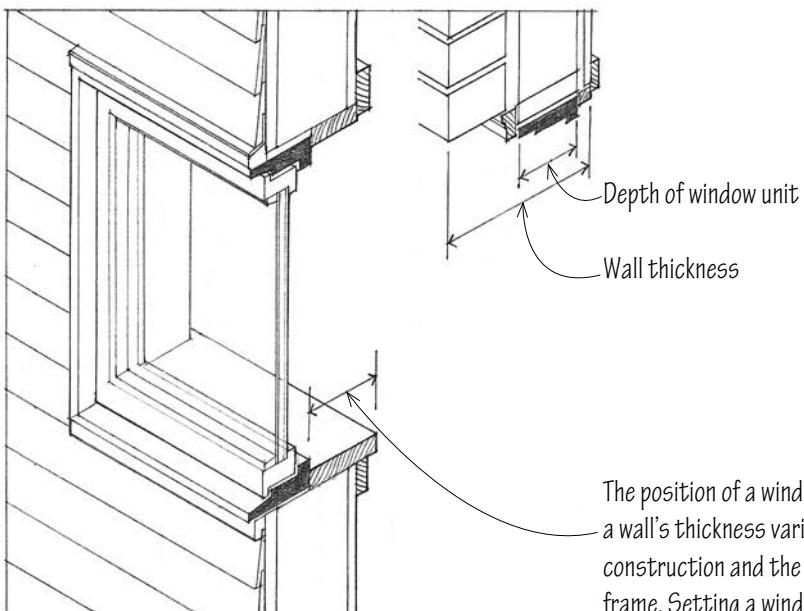
- May consist of fixed or ventilating units.
- Safety glazing is required.
- Provide daylighting.
- Ventilating skylights allow rising hot air to escape in warm weather.



WINDOW CONSTRUCTION



Section Through a Typical Window

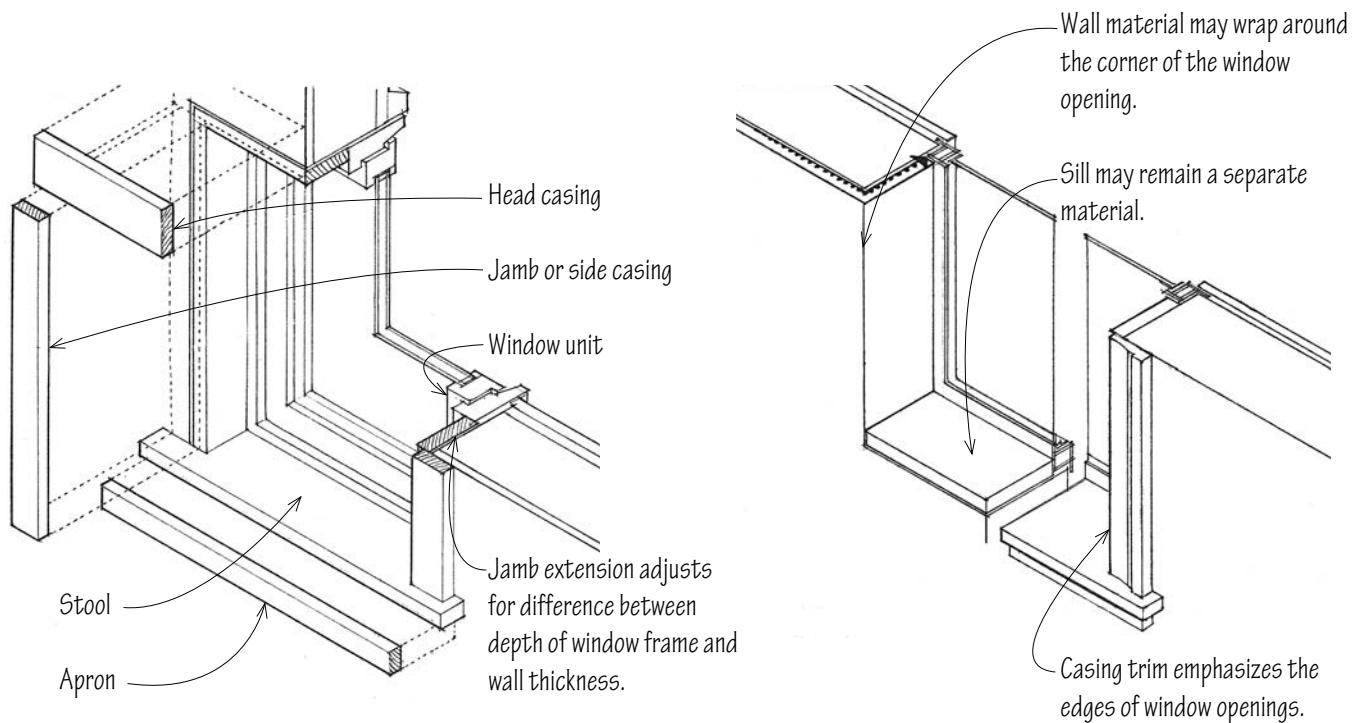


The position of a window unit within a wall's thickness varies with the wall construction and the depth of the window frame. Setting a window unit flush with the exterior face of a wall provides a deeper window opening in the interior.

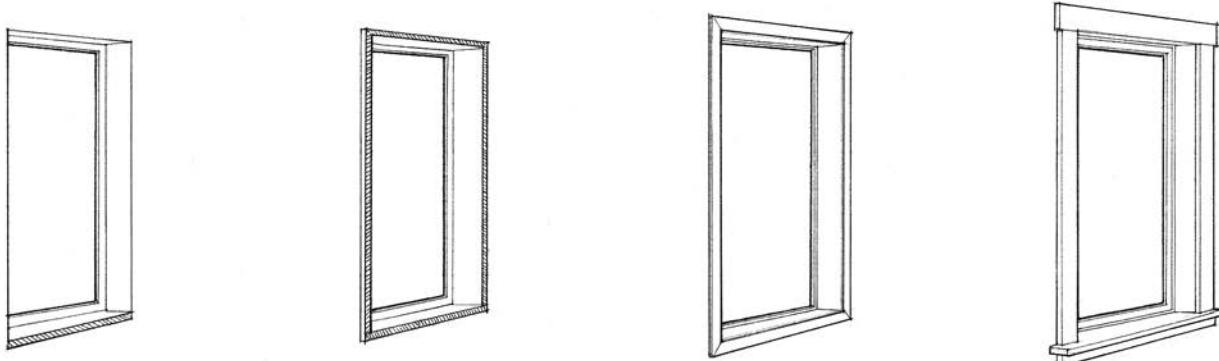
Factory-manufactured windows come in stock sizes, but these vary with each manufacturer. Custom sizes and shapes are available, but often at additional cost.

Rough openings in wall construction usually allow $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (13 to 19 mm) on each side and along the top for leveling and plumbing of the window units. Flashing and caulking on the exterior side of the frames help to make the joints weathertight and minimize the infiltration of air, a major source of building heat loss.

Casing and trimwork are used to conceal and finish the gaps between a window unit and its rough opening. The type of interior trim used contributes significantly to the character of a space.



Interior Window Trim



Minimal Trim:

Wall material wraps around corner of window opening.

Light Trim:

Only edge thickness of window trim is exposed.

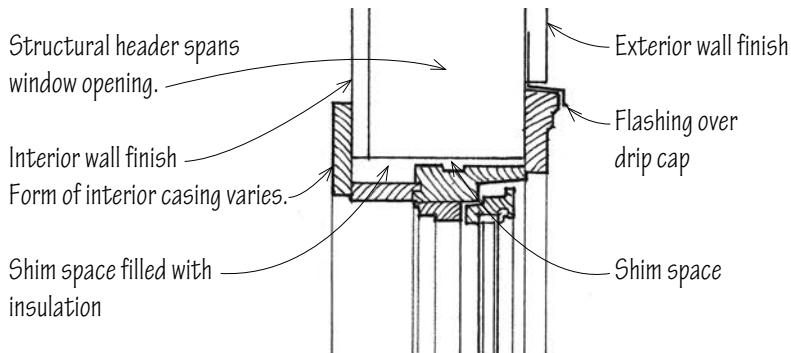
Medium Trim:

Narrow casing trim wraps around entire window opening.

Heavy Trim:

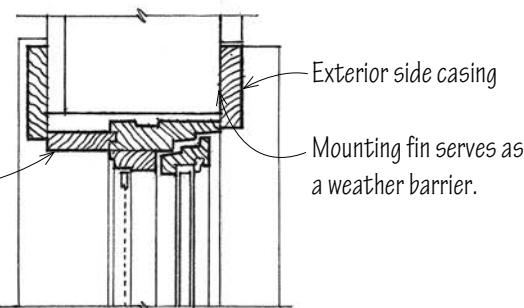
Head, jamb, and sill are differentiated.

WINDOW FRAMES

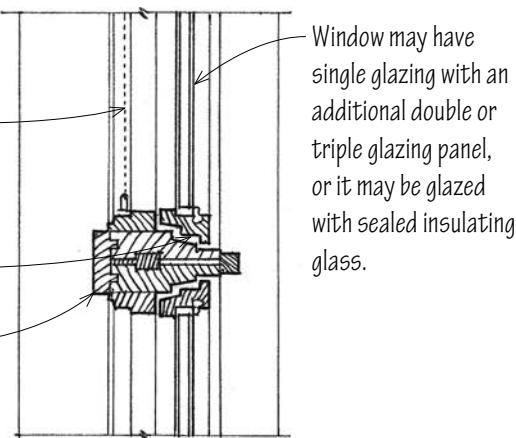


Most windows used today are prefabricated units with frames of wood or metal. Wood frames are generally constructed of kiln-dried, clear, straight-grain wood. They are usually treated in the factory with water-repellent preservatives. The exterior of the frame may be ordered unfinished, stained, primed for painting, or clad with vinyl or with acrylic-coated aluminum for reduced maintenance. The interior of the frame may be ordered unfinished, vinyl clad, or primed for painting.

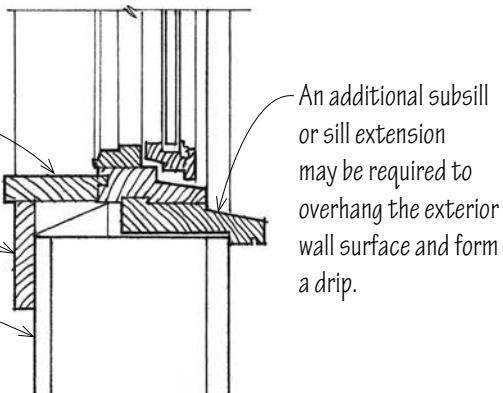
Head



Jamb

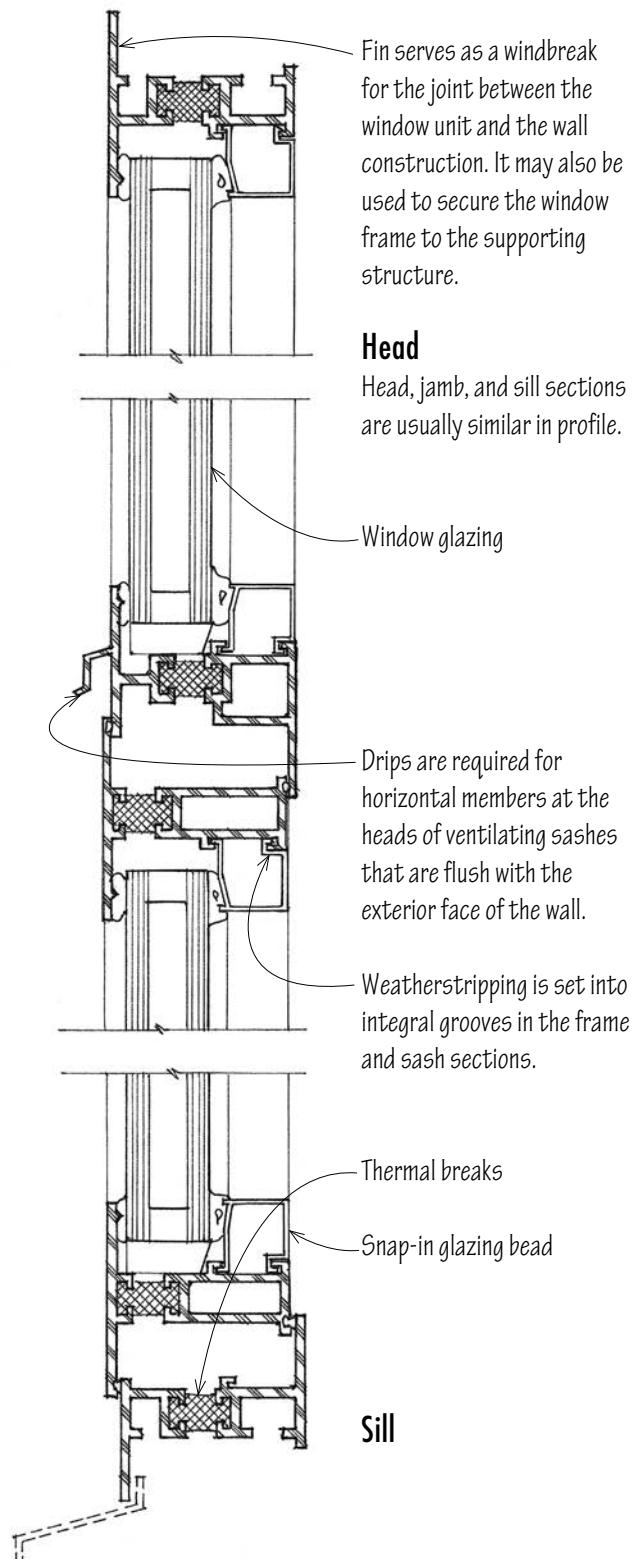


Narrow Mullion



Typical Wood Window

Metal frames are stronger, and therefore usually thinner in profile, than wood frames. Aluminum and steel are the most common types, although stainless steel and bronze window frames are also available. Aluminum frames may have a natural mill finish, or be anodized for additional protection and color. Because aluminum is an efficient conductor of heat, moisture can condense on the inner face of metal sashes in cold weather unless a thermal break is built into their construction. Steel window frames must be galvanized or primed and painted for corrosion resistance.

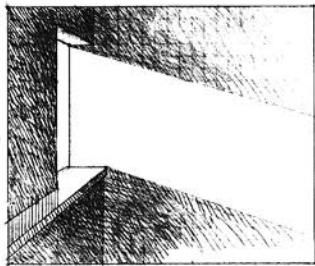


Because aluminum is susceptible to *galvanic corrosion*, anchoring materials and flashing should be aluminum or a material compatible with aluminum, such as stainless steel or galvanized steel. Dissimilar materials, such as copper, should be insulated from direct contact with the aluminum by a waterproof, nonconductive material, such as neoprene or coated felt.

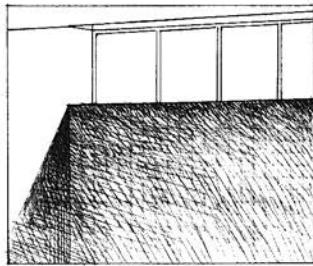
Typical Metal Window

DAYLIGHTING

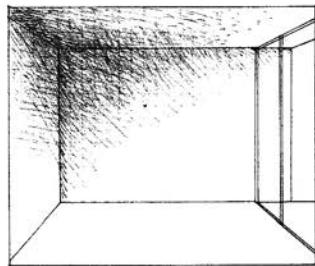
The size and orientation of windows and skylights control the quantity and quality of natural light that penetrates and illuminates an interior space. Window size is obviously related to quantity of light. The quality of light—its intensity and color—is determined by a window's orientation and placement in a room.



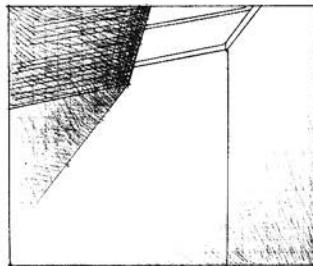
Window



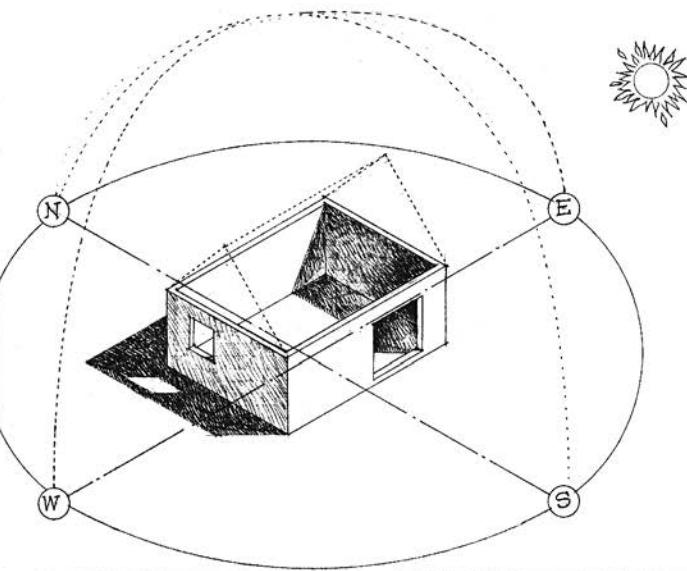
Clerestory



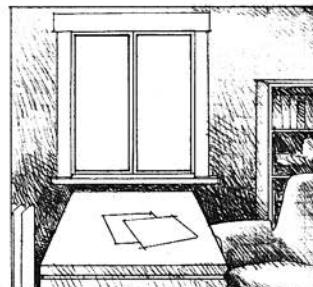
Window wall



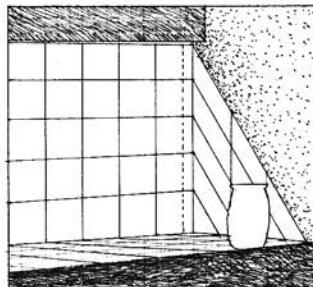
Skylight



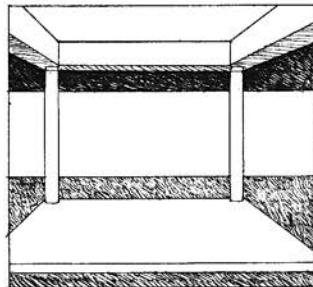
Bright areas of light attract attention.



Indirect daylight can be used effectively as task lighting.



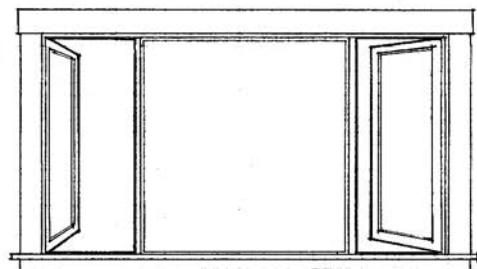
Changing patterns of light and shadow animate space.



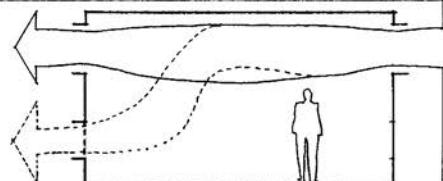
Light can be used to define space.

Natural ventilation relies on the natural movement of air rather than mechanical means, and is an important component of sustainable design. Wind velocity, temperature, and direction are important site considerations in locating windows in all climatic regions. During hot periods, wind-induced ventilation is desirable for cooling by evaporation or conduction. In cold weather, wind should be avoided or screened from windows to minimize the infiltration of cold air into a building. At all times, some degree of ventilation is desirable for good health and the removal of stale air and odors from interior spaces.

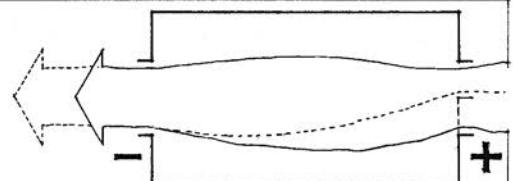
Natural ventilation in interior spaces is generated by differences in air pressure as well as temperature. Airflow patterns induced by these forces are affected more by building geometry than air speed.



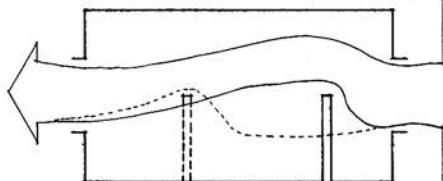
Natural ventilation requires the use of operable windows.



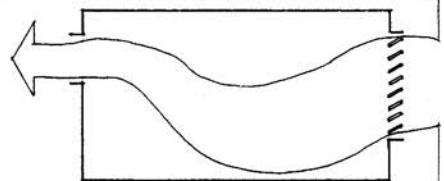
High inlets and outlets produce air movement above our body level. Lowering the outlets does not ameliorate this condition.



Air flows from higher to lower pressure zones. Air flow is accelerated when inlets are smaller than outlets.

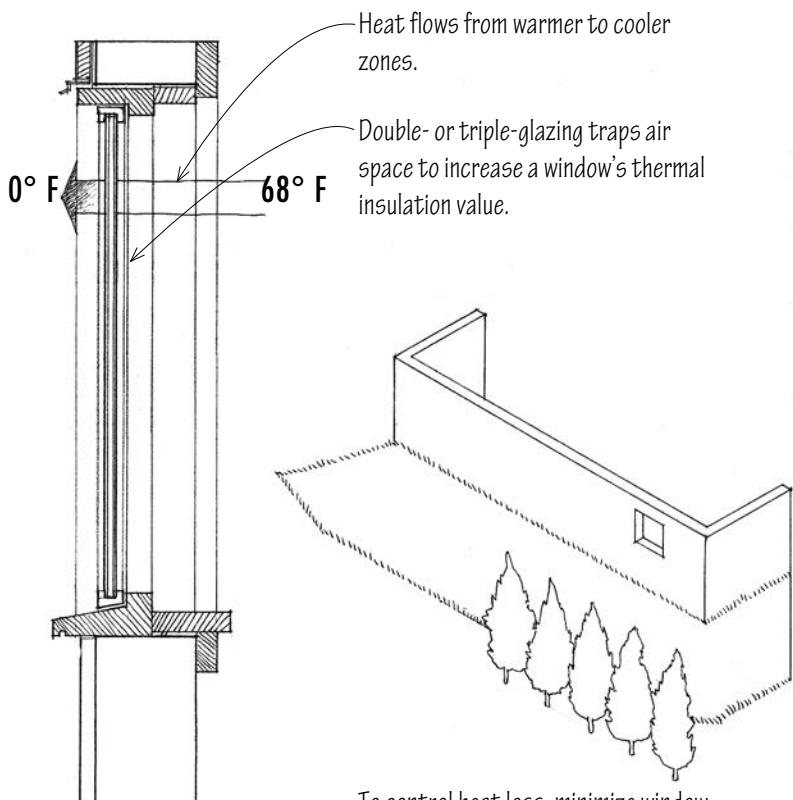


Interior partitions and tall furnishings can adversely affect the pattern of air flow.



Louvers can help direct air flow.

SOLAR HEAT GAIN



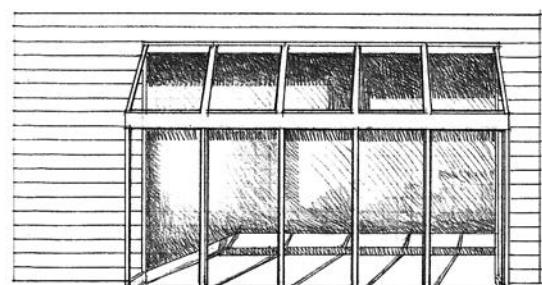
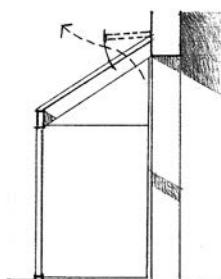
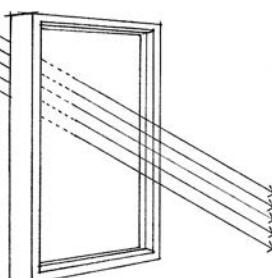
To control heat loss, minimize window openings that face cold winter winds, or buffer them with landscaping elements.

Even when closed, windows are sources of building heat gain and loss. Heat gain helps save heating energy in cold weather but increases cooling energy use in hot weather. Heat gain is due to solar radiation passing through a window's glazing. Heat loss through a window wastes energy in cold weather as a result of the temperature differential between a heated interior space and the colder outside air.

Glass is a poor thermal insulator. To increase its resistance to heat flow, a window can be double- or triple-glazed, so that the trapped air space between the glass panes can be used as insulation. The air space can be filled with an insulating gas, usually argon or krypton, to reduce heat transfer further. For improved thermal efficiency, tinted, reflective, or low-emissivity (low-e) glazing can also be used.



A window's orientation is a more cost-effective factor in controlling solar radiation than is its construction.



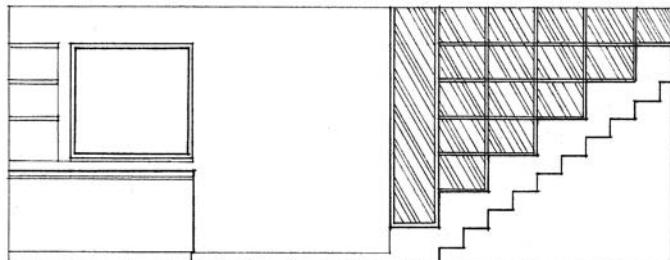
A sunspace is a glazed area oriented to admit large amounts of sunlight. Massive materials store thermal energy for later release. Some operable glazing is necessary to ventilate the space in warm weather.

In addition to their aesthetic impact on the interior environment, windows also influence the physical arrangement of furnishings within a room. Their brightness during daylight hours and the views they offer attract our attention and encourage us to orient a furniture grouping toward them.

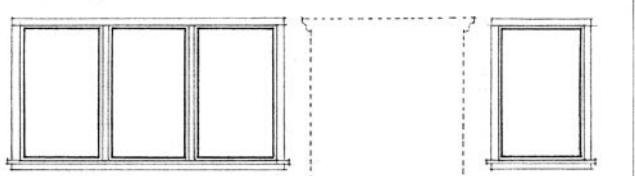
When locating windows, the designer should consider whether the size and proportion of wall segments between them can accommodate the desired furnishings. If wall space is at a premium, clerestory windows and skylights can be considered as alternatives.

The sill height of a window affects what can be placed below it. A low sill height may dictate that the floor area in front of the window be left open, thereby reducing the amount of usable floor space in a room. This is especially pertinent when window walls extend down to the floor to promote visual continuity between interior and exterior space.

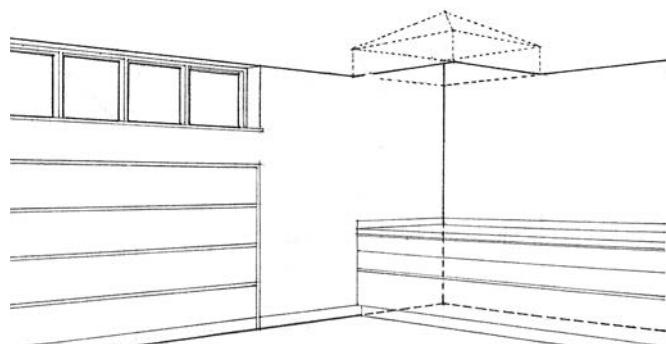
Other considerations in the placement of furnishings near windows include the adverse effect the heat and glare of direct sunlight can have on a room's occupants, and the possible fading and deterioration of its carpet and other furnishings.



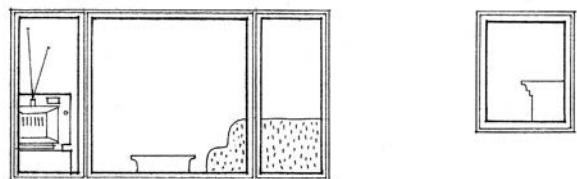
Windows should be coordinated with built-in elements, such as countertops and stairways.



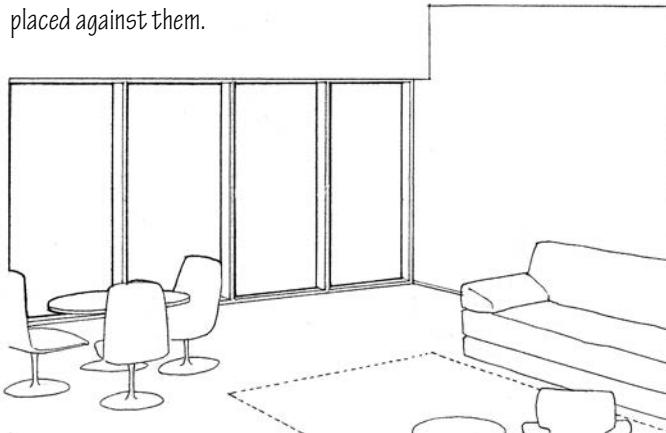
Position windows to consolidate wall space.



Clerestory windows and skylights provide daylight while conserving wall space.



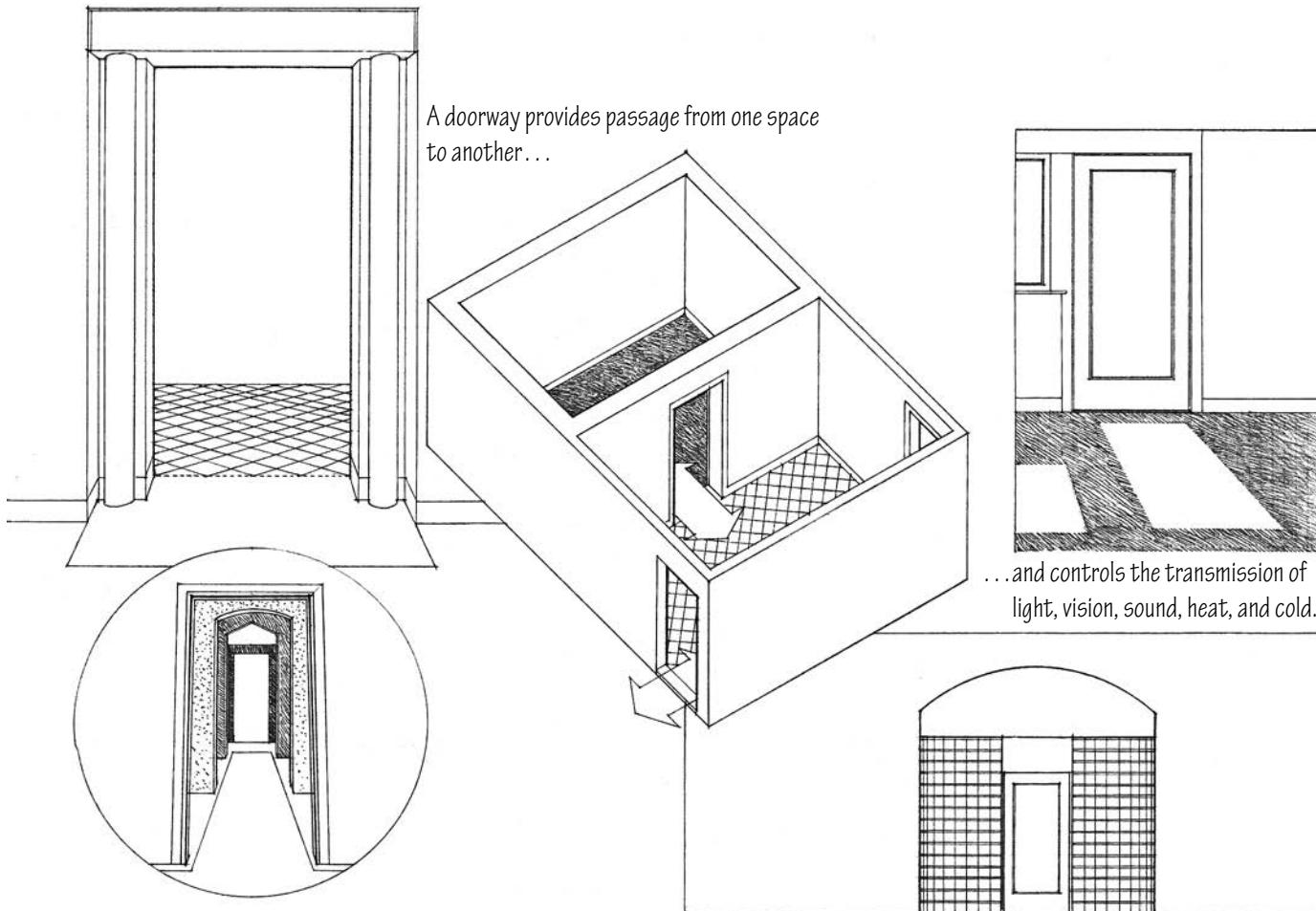
Windows expose the backs of furniture placed against them.



Window walls that extend to the floor inhibit the placement of furniture against them.

DOORS

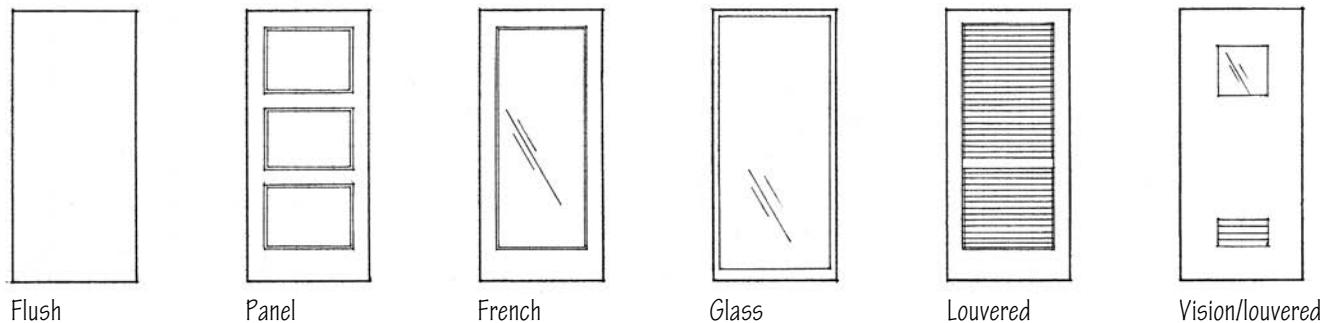
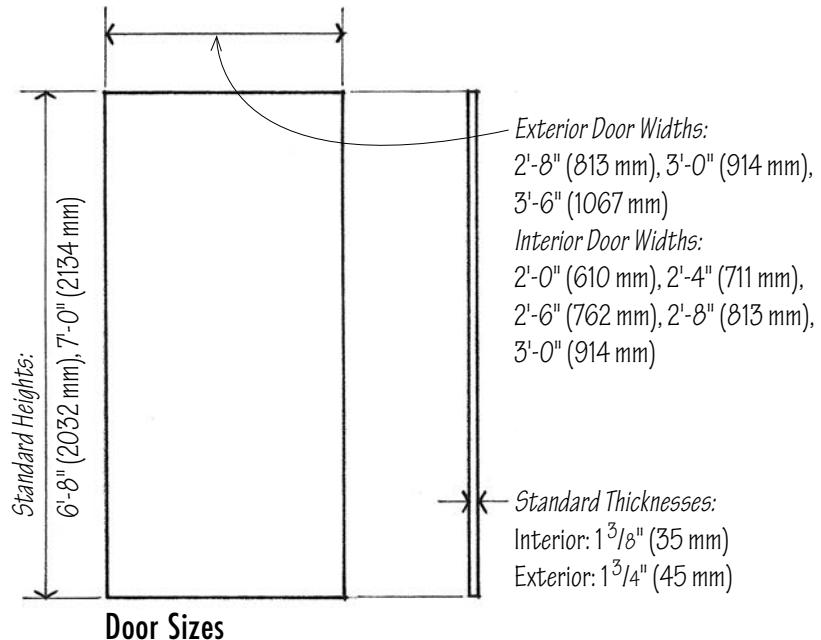
Doors and doorways allow physical access in and out of a building and from room to room, for ourselves, our furnishings, and our goods. Through their design, construction, and location, doors and windows can control the use of a room, the views from one space to the next, and the passage of light, sound, warmth, and air.



Doors may have wood or metal frames. Doorframes may be prepainted, factory-primed for painting, or clad in various materials. They may be glazed for transparency, or contain louvers for ventilation.

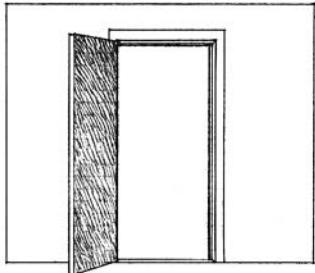
Glass doors are generally constructed of $\frac{1}{2}$ - or $\frac{3}{4}$ -inch (13- or 19-mm) tempered glass, with fittings to hold pivots and other hardware. Jamb frames are not necessary, and the door can be butted directly against the wall or partition.

Special doors include those constructed to have a fire-resistance rating, an acoustical rating, or a thermal insulation value.

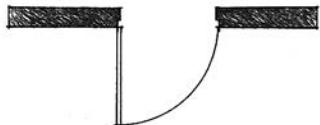


Door Designs

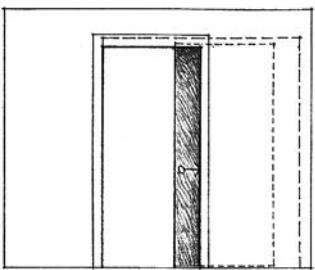
In addition to their design and construction, doors may be categorized according to the way they operate.



Swinging



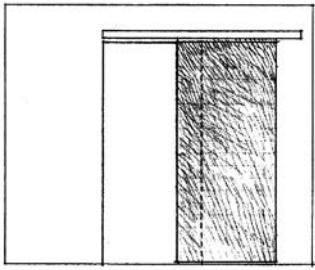
- Hinged on side jamb.
- Heavy or wide doors may pivot at head and sill.
- Most convenient for our entry and passage.
- Most effective type for isolating sound and for weathertightness.
- For exterior and interior use.
- Requires space for swing.



Pocket Sliding



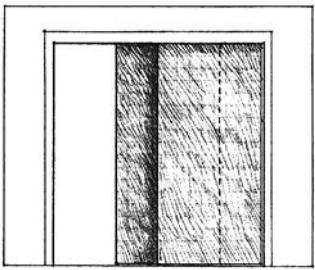
- Door is hung on track, and slides into pocket within width of wall.
- Used where normal door swing would interfere with use of space.
- Presents a finished appearance when open.
- For interior use only.



Surface Sliding



- Similar to pocket door, except that door is surface-hung from an exposed overhead track.
- Primarily for interior use.
- Difficult to weatherproof.

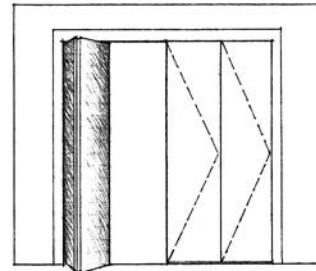
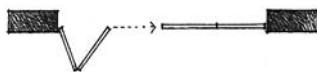


Bypass Sliding

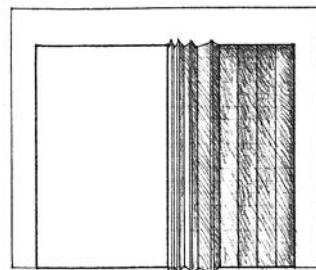


- Doors slide along an overhead track and along guides or a track on the floor.
- Opens only to 50% of doorway.
- Used indoors primarily for visual screening.
- Used on the exterior as sliding glass doors.

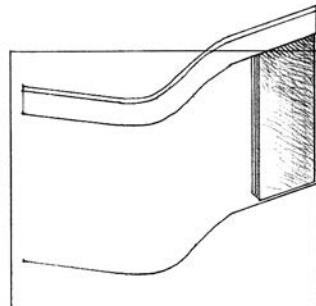
- Consists of hinged door panels that slide on an overhead track.
- For interior use only.
- Commonly used as a visual screen to close off storage and closet spaces.

Bifold

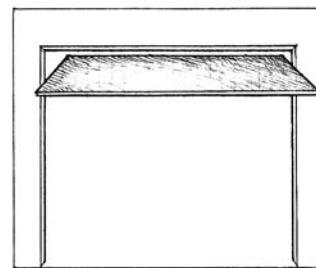
- Similar to bifold doors, except that panels are smaller.
- For interior use only.
- Used to subdivide large spaces into smaller rooms.

Accordion Folding

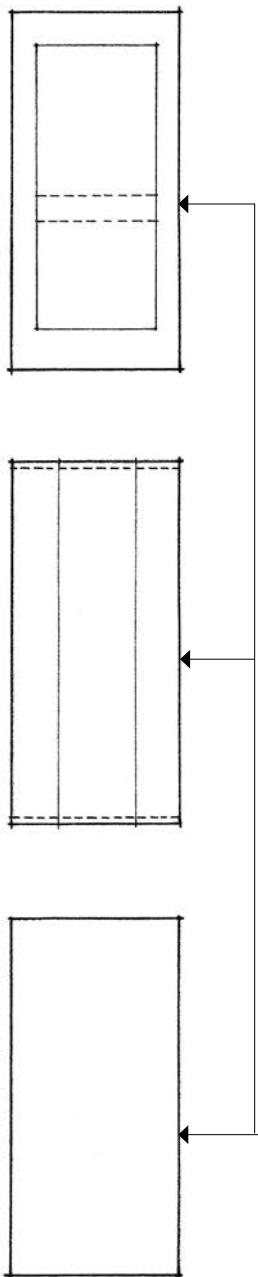
- Door panels slide on overhead tracks.
- Tracks can be configured to follow a curvilinear path.
- Panels can be stored in pocket or recess.
- For interior use.
- Exterior folding glass doors are available.

Special Folding

- Consist of hinged door sections that roll upward on an overhead track.
- Capable of closing off unusually tall or wide openings for exterior or interior use.
- Not for frequent use.

Overhead Doors

DOOR CONSTRUCTION



Hollow metal doors have steel face sheets bonded to a steel channel frame and reinforced with channels. They may have a kraft paper honeycomb, steel-stiffened, mineral, or rigid plastic-foam core. Hollow metal doors are available as flush doors and with full glass, small vision panels, narrow lights, or louvers. Metal doors may be primed or galvanized for painting. They may have a baked enamel finish, be clad in vinyl, or have stainless steel or aluminum skins in polished or textured finishes.

Sheet steel faces are bonded to a steel channel frame and reinforced with channels.

Face may be seamless or show seams of panel construction.

Hollow Metal Doors

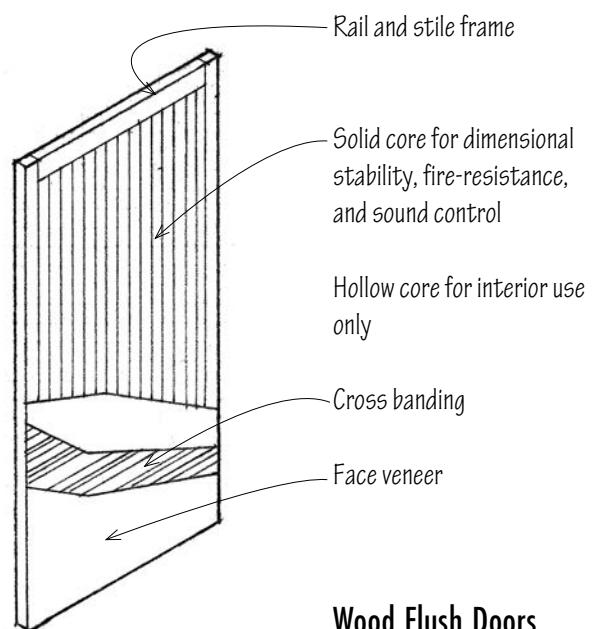
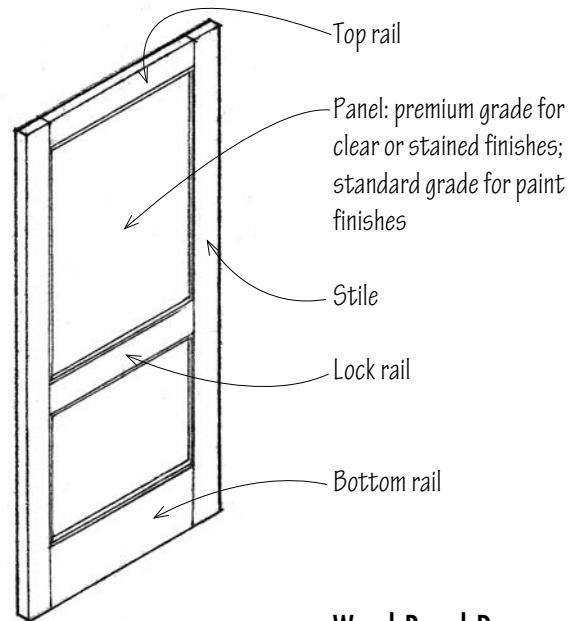
Wood flush doors may have glass inserts or louvers.

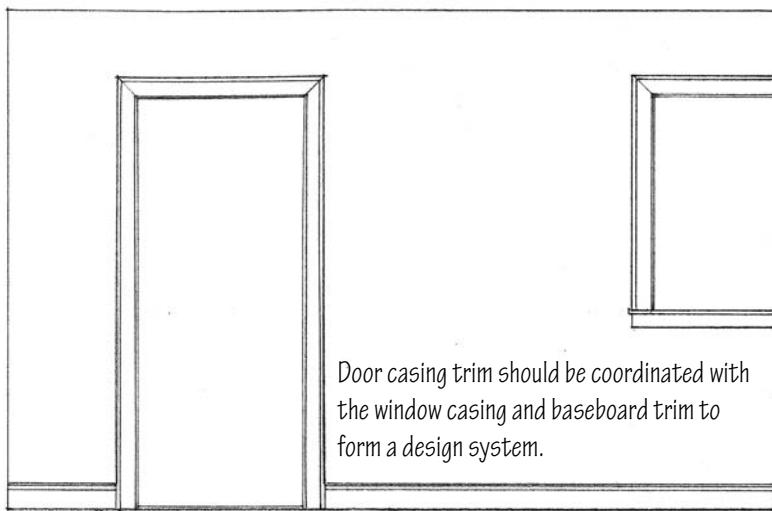
Hollow core doors have a framework encasing a corrugated fiberboard core or a grid of wood strips.

They are lightweight but have little inherent thermal or acoustic insulation value. They are intended primarily for interior use.

Solid core doors typically have a core of bonded lumber blocks, particleboard, or a mineral composition. Solid core doors are used primarily as exterior doors, but they may also be used wherever increased fire resistance, sound insulation, or dimensional stability is desired.

Wood stile-and-rail doors consist of a framework of vertical stiles and horizontal rails that hold solid wood or plywood panels, glass lights, or louvers in place. Various panel designs are available, as well as full-louvered and French door styles.

**Wood Flush Doors****Wood Panel Doors**



Because most doors are manufactured in a number of standard sizes and styles, the treatment of the opening and the design of the casing trim are the areas where the designer can manipulate the scale and character of a doorway.

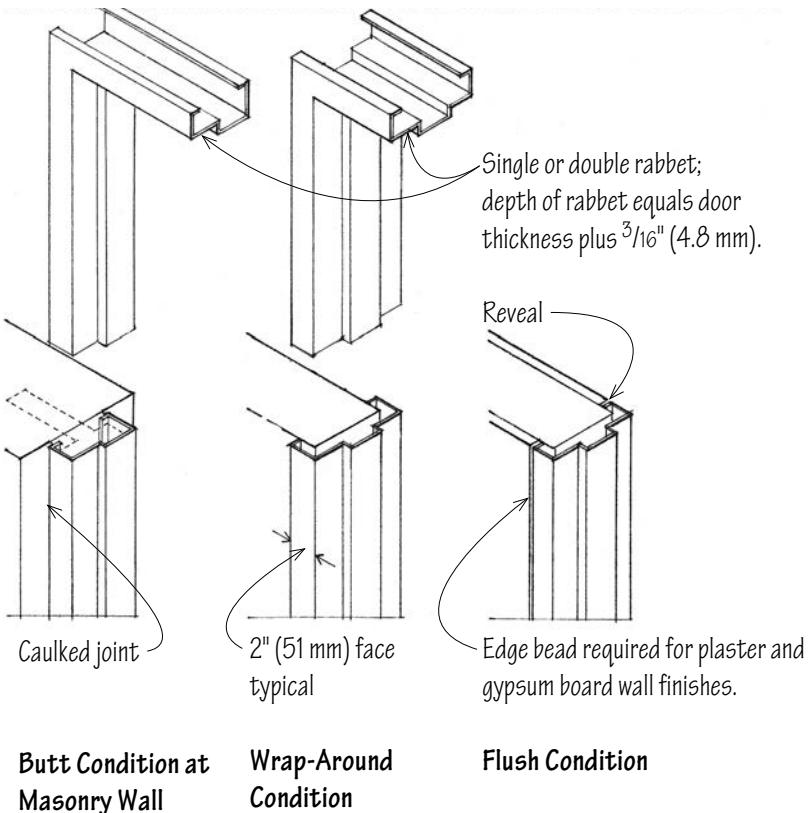
Like doors, doorframes are standard items. Hollow metal doors are hung in hollow metal frames. These may have single or double *rabbets* and may either butt up against or wrap around the wall thickness. In addition to the standard flat face, various styles of trim molding are available.

Wood doors use wood or hollow metal frames. Exterior doorframes usually have integral *stops*, while interior frames may have applied stops. Casing trim is used to conceal the gap between the doorframe and the wall surface. Casing trim can be omitted if the wall material can be finished neatly and butt up against the doorframe.

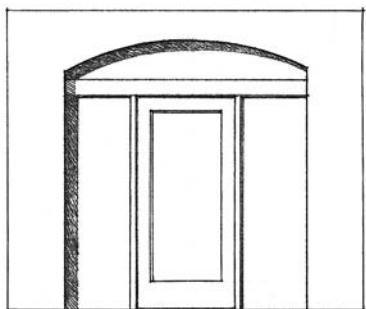
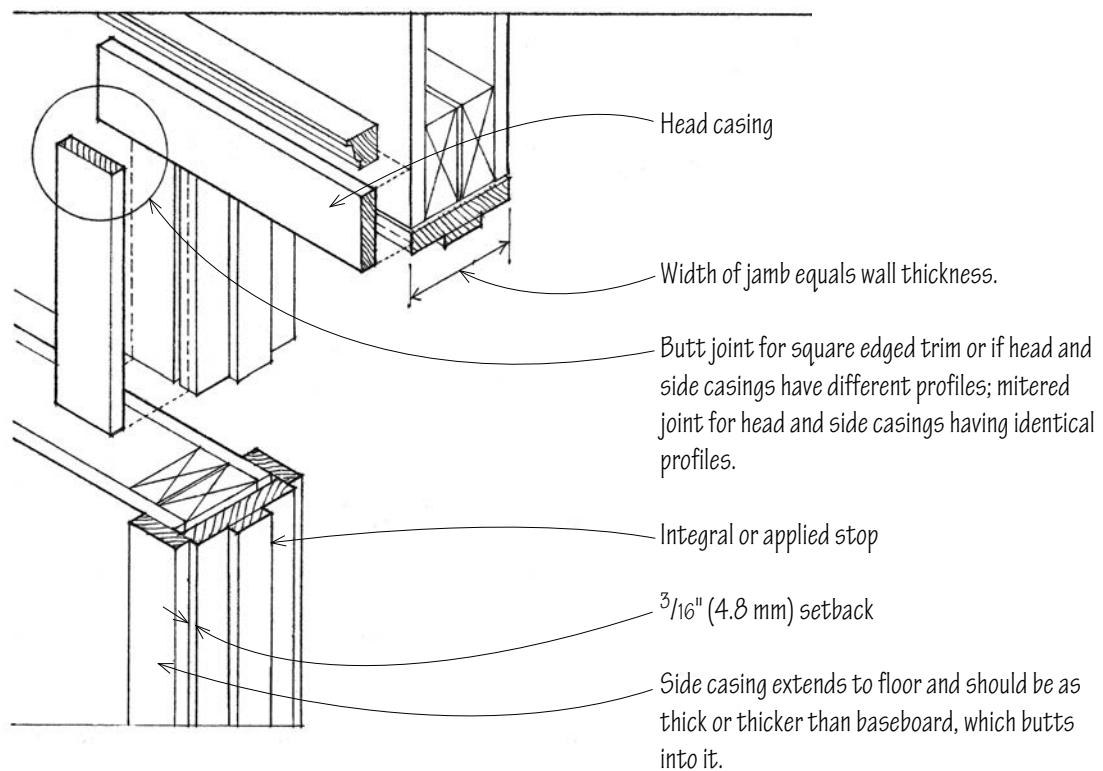
Door casing trim, through its form and color, can accentuate a doorway and articulate the door as a distinct visual element in a space. The doorway opening itself can be enlarged physically with sidelights and a transom above or visually with color and trimwork.

Conversely, a doorframe and trim can be minimized visually to reduce the scale of a doorway or to have it appear as a simple void in a wall.

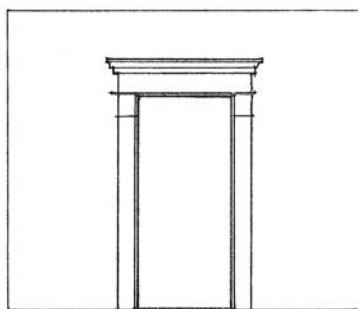
If flush with the surrounding wall, a door can be finished to merge with and become part of the wall surface.



Hollow Metal Doorframes

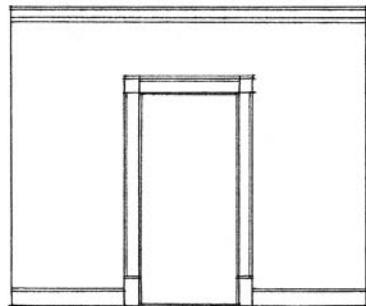


Sidelights and a transom enlarge the scale of the doorway opening.

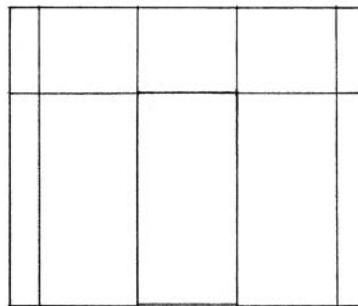


Trimwork elaborates the doorway and can give a hint as to what lies beyond.

Wood Doorframes

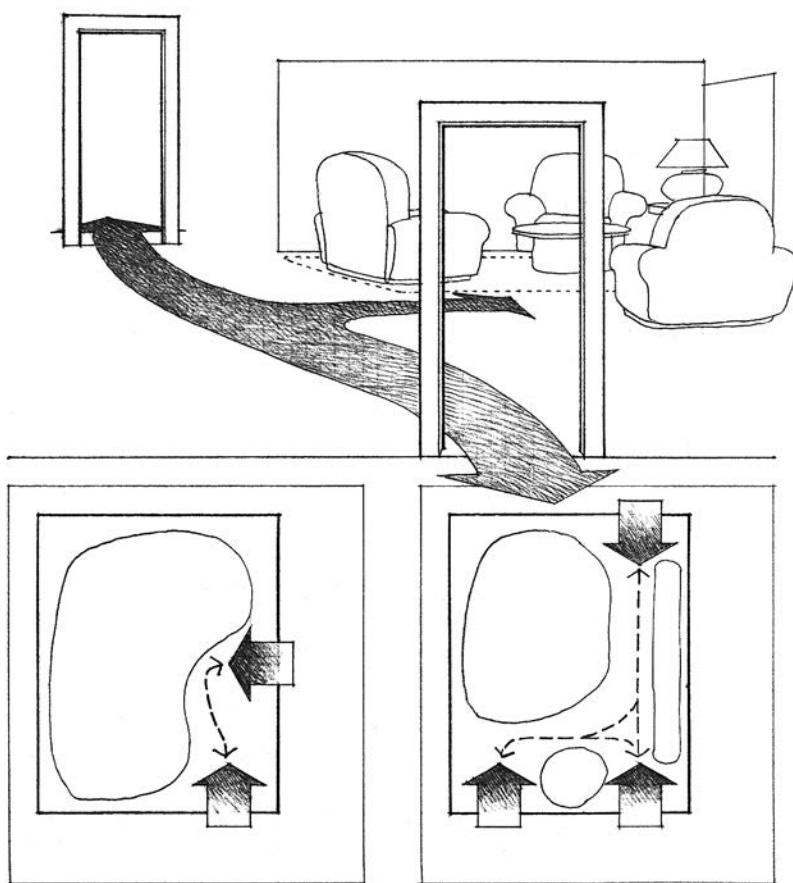


Even simple trimwork can emphasize the opening of a doorway.



A doorway can merge with the surrounding wall surface.

DOORWAYS AND SPACE PLANNING

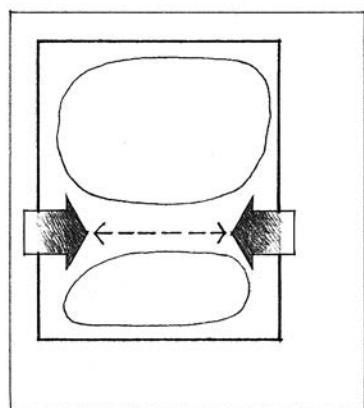


In linking the interior spaces of a building, doorways connect pathways. Their locations influence our patterns of movement from space to space, as well as within a space. The nature of these patterns should be appropriate to the uses and activities housed within the interior spaces.

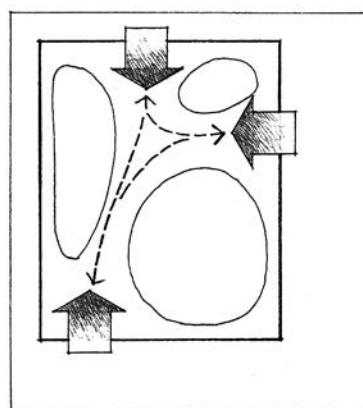
Space must be provided for our comfortable movement and the operation of doors. At the same time, there must also be sufficient and appropriately proportioned space remaining for the arrangement of furnishings and activities.

Two doorways close to each other define a short path that leaves a maximum amount of usable floor space.

Doorways situated at or near corners can define paths that run along a wall of a room. Locating the doorways away from the corners allows furnishings, such as storage units, to be placed along the wall.

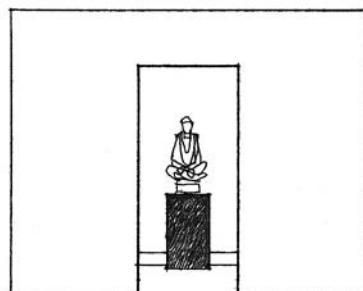
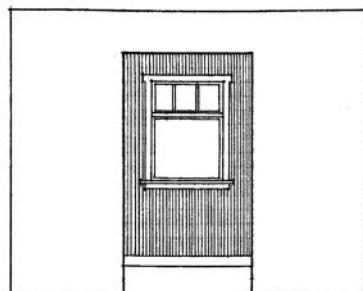
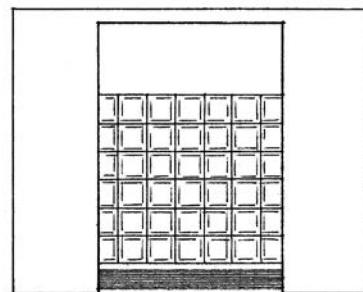
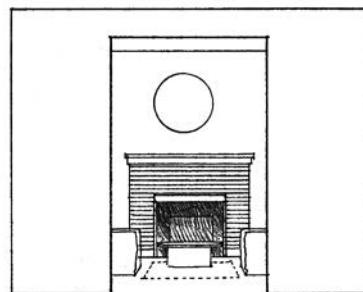


Opposing doorways define a straight path that subdivides a room into two zones.

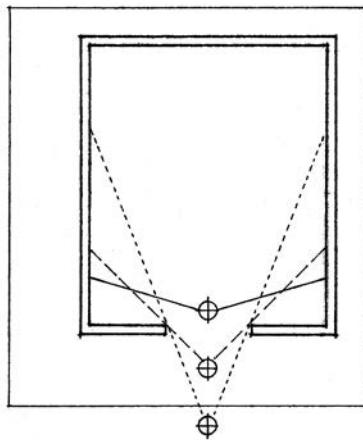
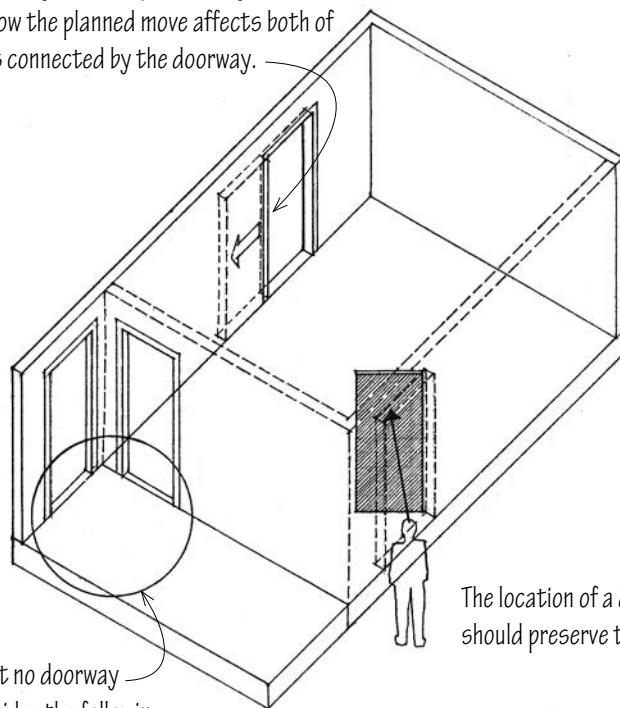


Three doorways on three walls can present a problem if the possible pathways take up much of the floor area and leave a fragmented series of usable spaces.

Another consideration in determining the location of a doorway is the view seen through its opening, both from the adjacent space and upon entering. When visual privacy for a room is desired, a doorway, even when open, should not permit a direct view into the private zone of the space.



When relocating a doorway, the designer should consider how the planned move affects both of the spaces connected by the doorway.



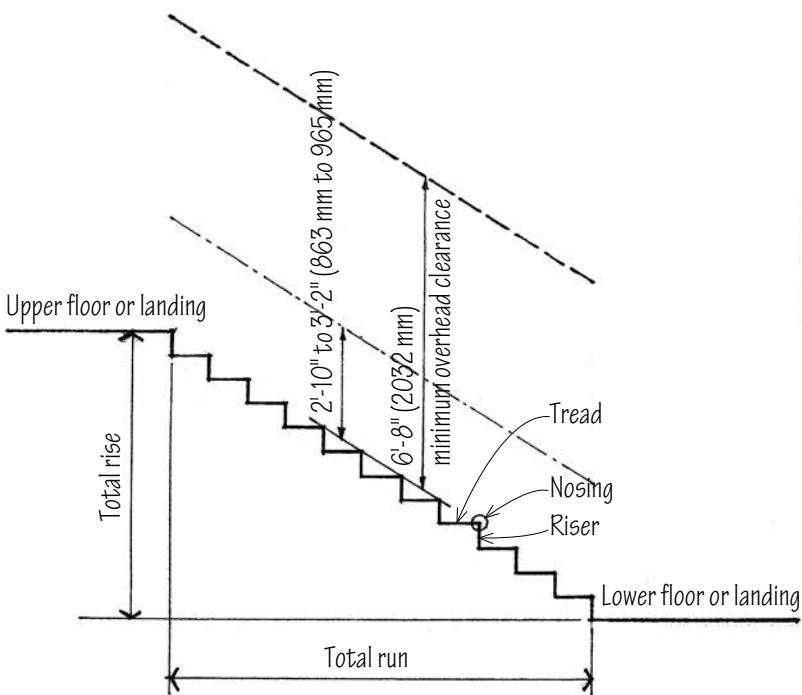
Our view broadens as we approach a doorway and enter a room.

When space is tight but no doorway can be eliminated, consider the following:

- Change the swing of one or both doors.
- Change to a bifold or sliding door.
- If a door is not necessary, remove it and keep the doorway.

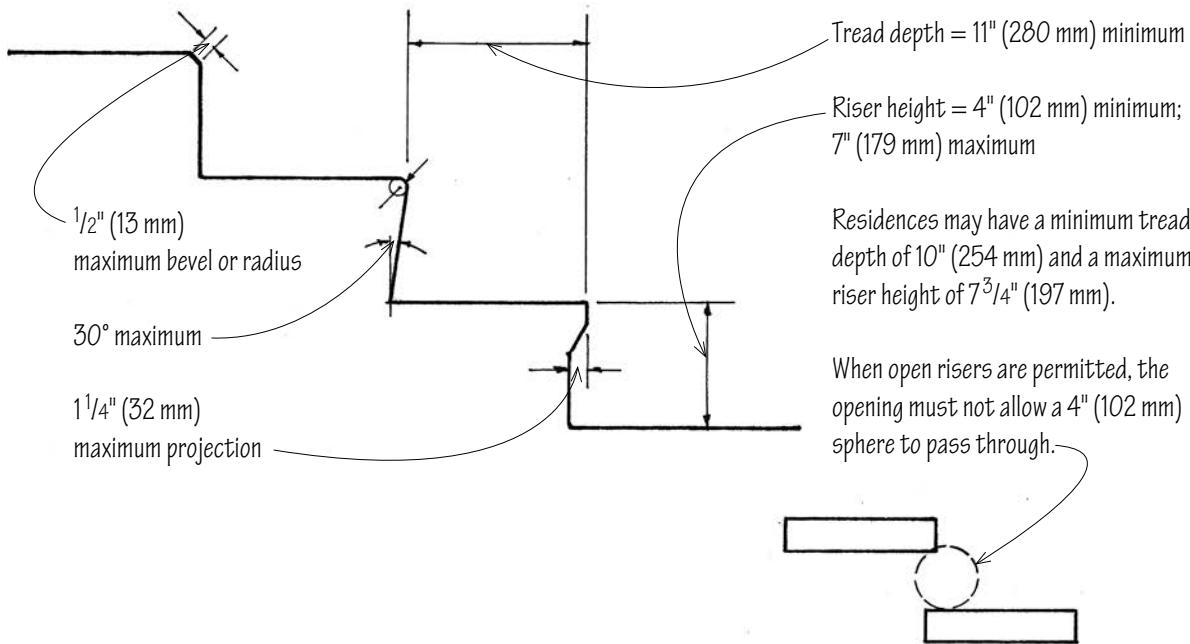
The location of a door and the direction of its swing should preserve the privacy of a personal space.

STAIRS



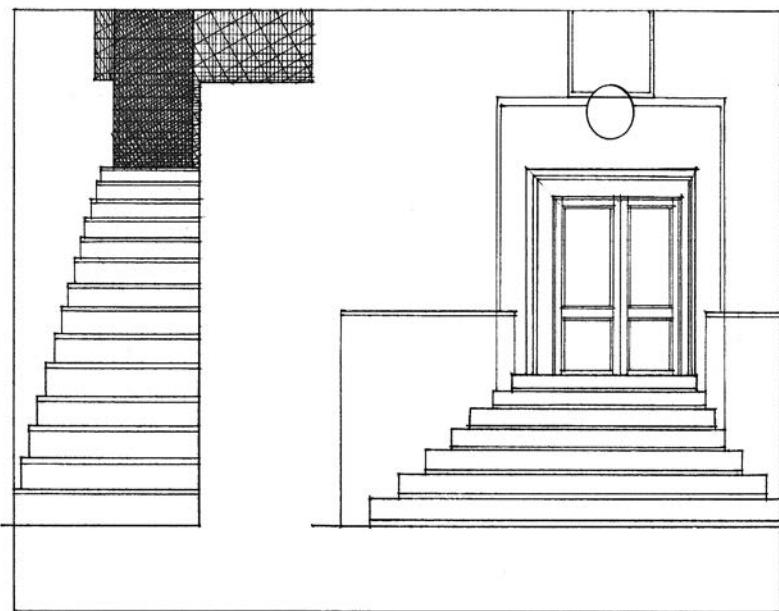
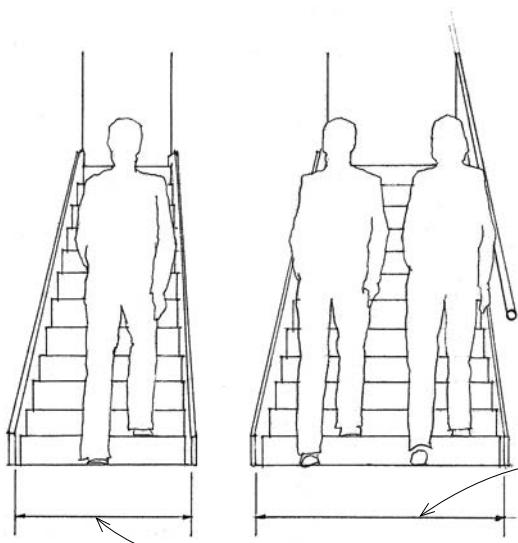
Stairs allow us to move vertically between the various floor levels of a building. The two most important functional criteria in the design of stairs are safety and ease of ascent and descent. The dimensions of a stair's risers and treads should be proportioned to fit our body movement. Their pitch, if steep, can make ascent physically tiring as well as psychologically forbidding, and can make descent precarious. If the pitch is shallow, a stair must have treads deep enough to fit our stride.

Building codes regulate the maximum and minimum dimensions of risers and treads. Risers and treads should be uniform in dimension with a tolerance of $\frac{3}{8}$ inch (9.5 mm) between the smallest and the largest within any flight.



Stair Risers and Treads

A stairway should be wide enough to comfortably accommodate our passage as well as any furnishings and equipment that must be moved up or down the steps. Building codes specify minimum widths based on use and occupant loads. Beyond these minimums, however, the width of a stairway also provides a visual clue to the public or private quality of the stairway.

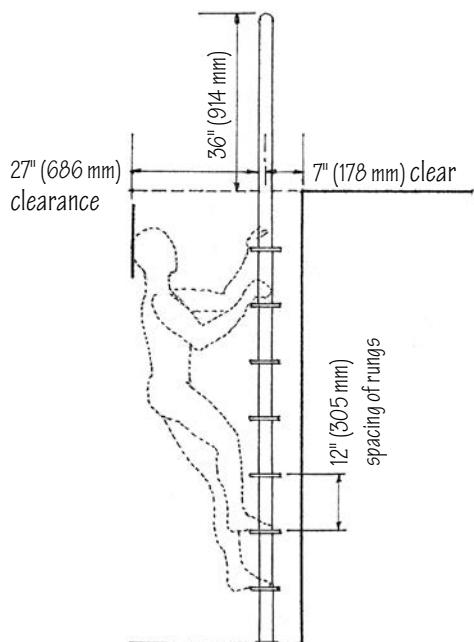


The width and angle of ascent are the variables that determine a stair's ease of use.

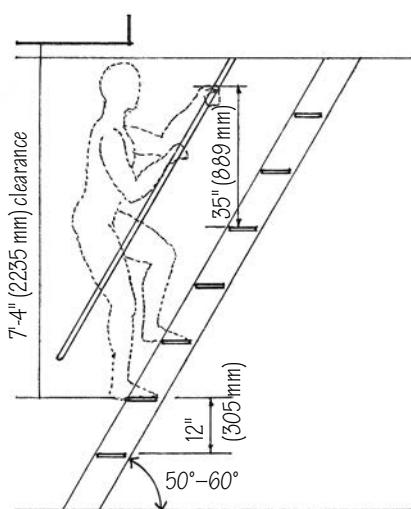
44" (1118 mm) minimum clear width

36" (914 mm) for an occupant load of 49 or less.

In general, handrails may project a maximum of 4 $\frac{1}{2}$ " (114 mm) into the required width.

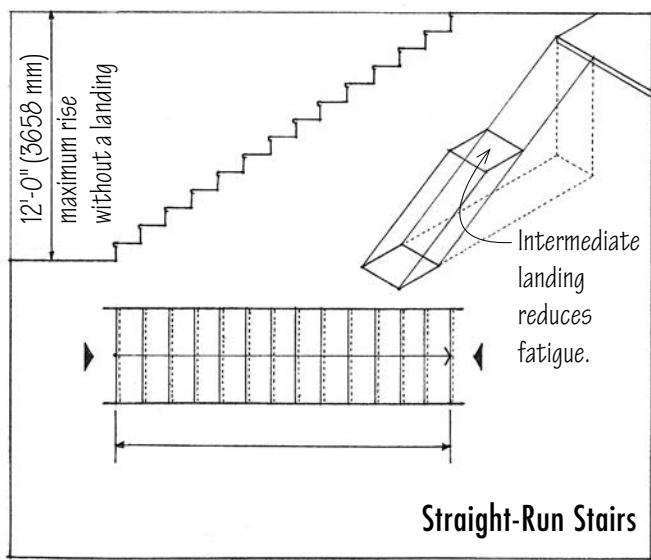


Ladders

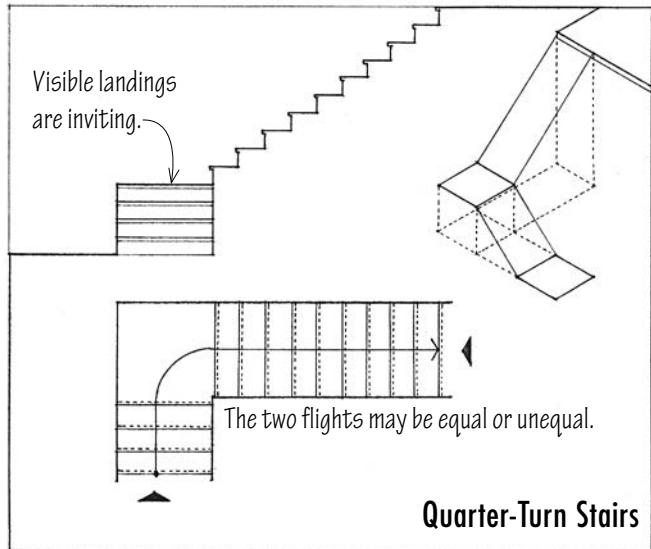


Ship's Ladders

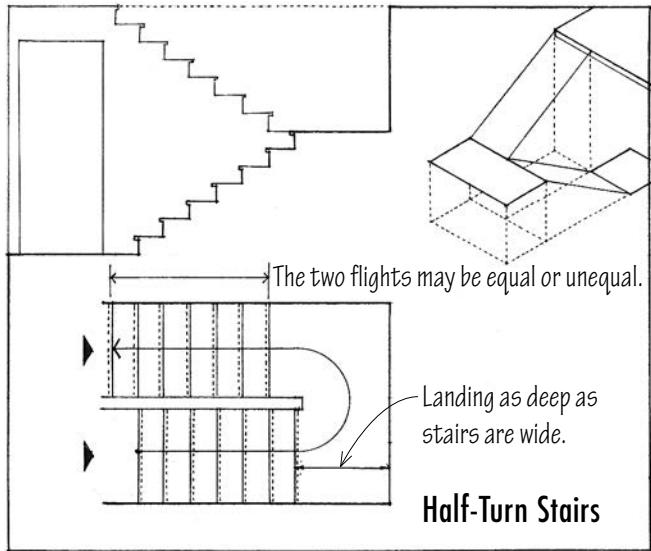
STAIRWAY PLAN TYPES



Straight-Run Stairs



Quarter-Turn Stairs



Half-Turn Stairs

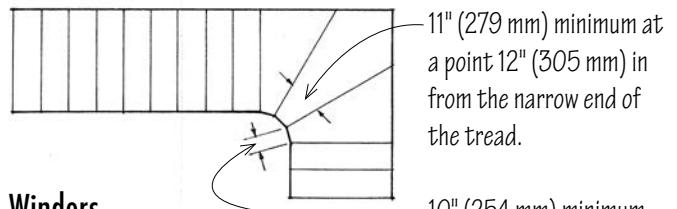
The configuration of a stairway determines the direction of our path as we ascend or descend its steps. There are several basic ways in which to configure the runs of a stairway. These variations result from the use of landings, which interrupt a stair run and enable it to change direction. Landings also provide opportunities for rest and possibilities for access to and outlook from the stairway. Together with the pitch of a stair, the locations of landings determine the rhythm of our movement up or down a stair.

An important consideration in the planning of any stairway is how it links the paths of movement at each floor level. A second consideration is the amount of space the stair requires. Each basic stair type has inherent proportions that will affect its possible location relative to other spaces around it. These proportions can be altered to some degree by adjusting the location of landings in the pattern. In each case, space should be provided at both the top and bottom of a stairway for safe and comfortable access and egress.

Landings should be at least as wide as the stairway width and have a length of at least 44 inches (1118 mm) in the direction of travel. Landings in dwelling units may have a length of 36 inches (914 mm).

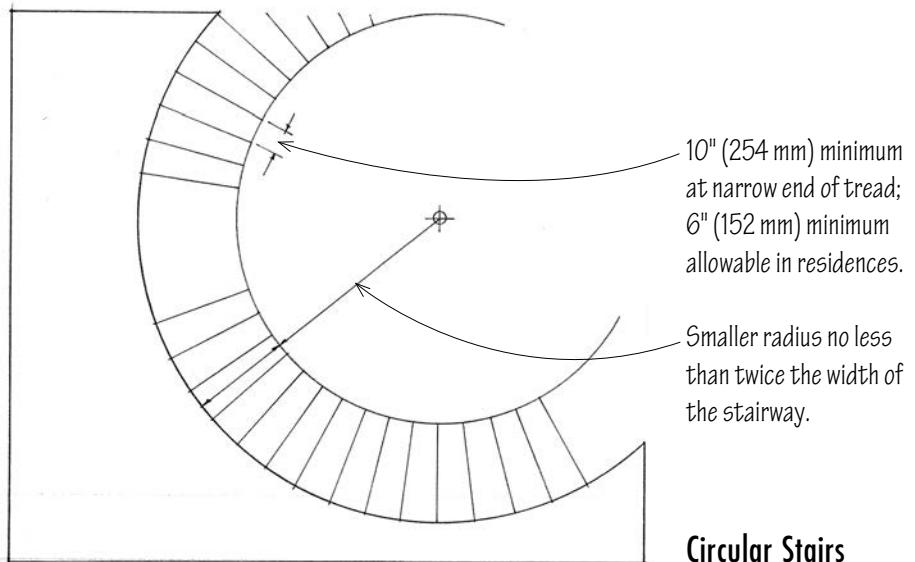
Winders refers to the tapered treads used in circular and spiral stairs. Quarter-turn and half-turn stairways may also use winders rather than a landing to conserve space when changing directions.

Winders can be hazardous because they offer little foothold at their interior corners. Building codes generally restrict their use to private stairs within individual dwelling units.



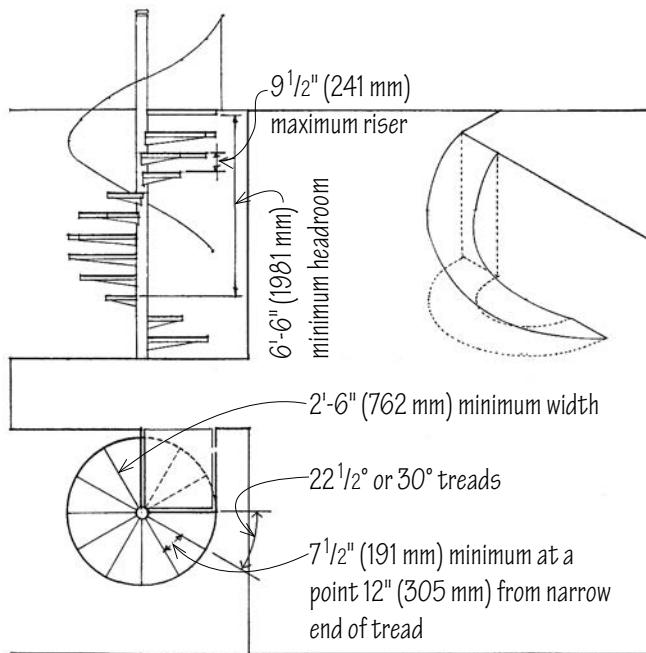
Winders

11" (279 mm) minimum at a point 12" (305 mm) from the narrow end of the tread.
10" (254 mm) minimum at narrow end of tread;
6" (152 mm) minimum allowable in residences.



Circular Stairs

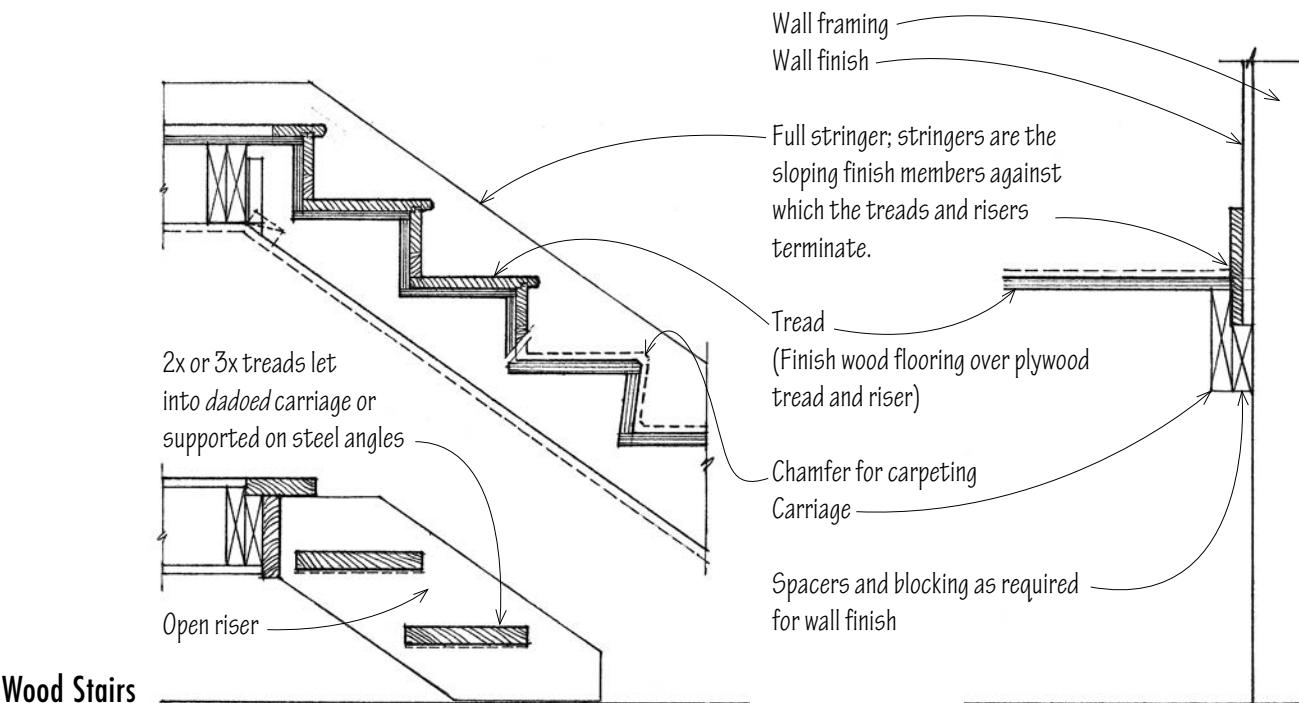
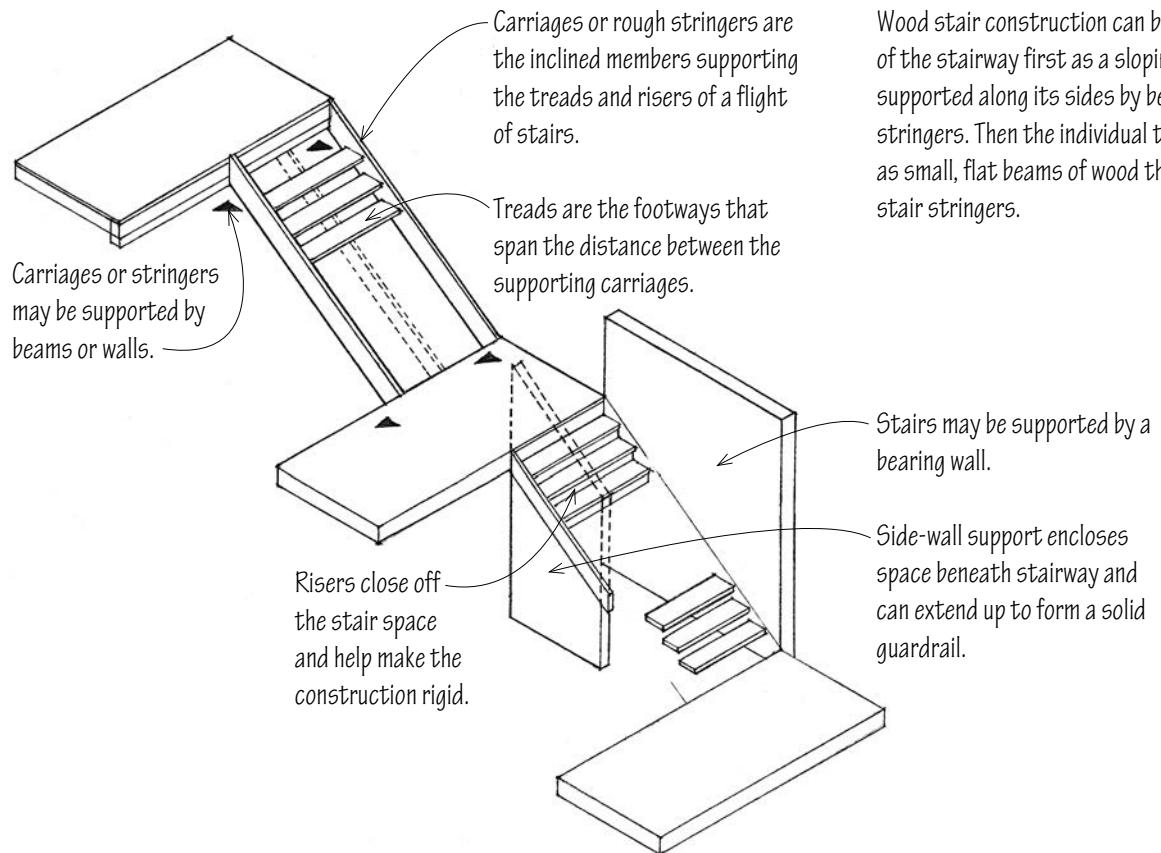
Circular stairs may be used for emergency egress if the inner radius is at least twice the width of the stairway; consult building codes for detailed requirements.



Spiral Stairs

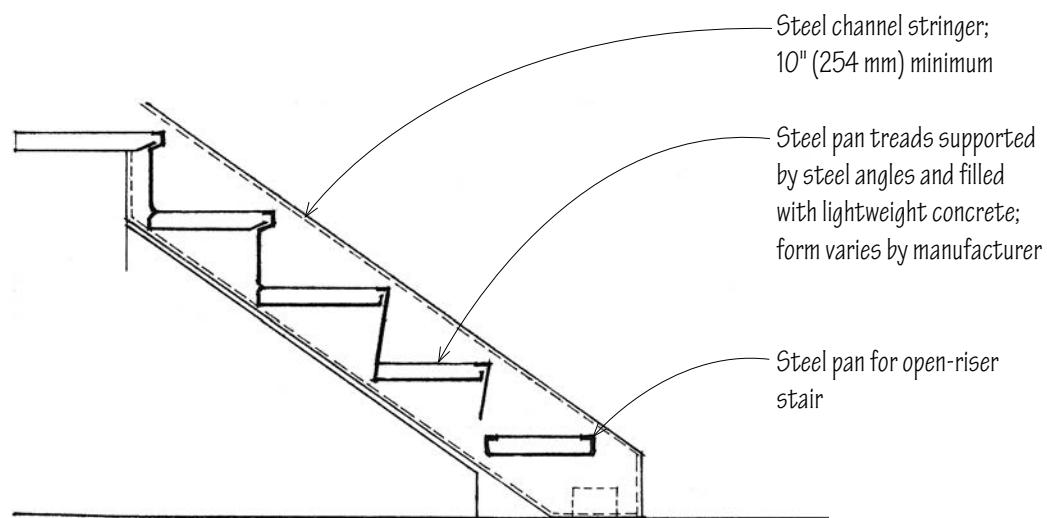
Building codes generally restrict spiral stairs to private use in individual dwelling units.

STAIRWAY CONSTRUCTION



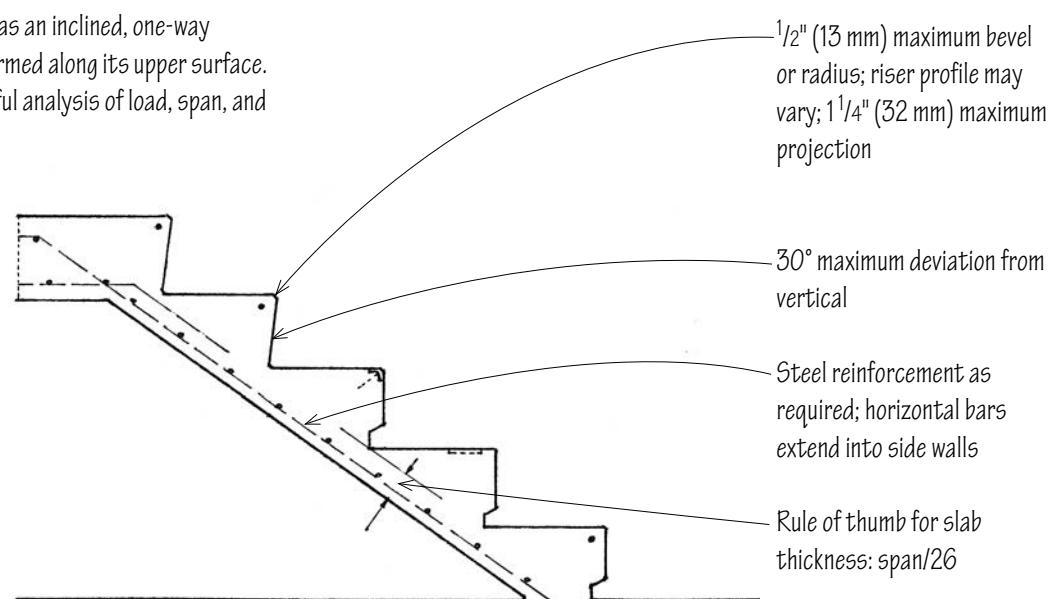
Steel stairs are analogous in form to wood stairs. Steel channel sections serve as carriages and stringers. Stair treads span the distance between the stringers. The treads may consist of concrete-filled steel pans, bar grating, or flat plates with a textured top surface. Steel stairways are typically pre-engineered and prefabricated for a particular job.

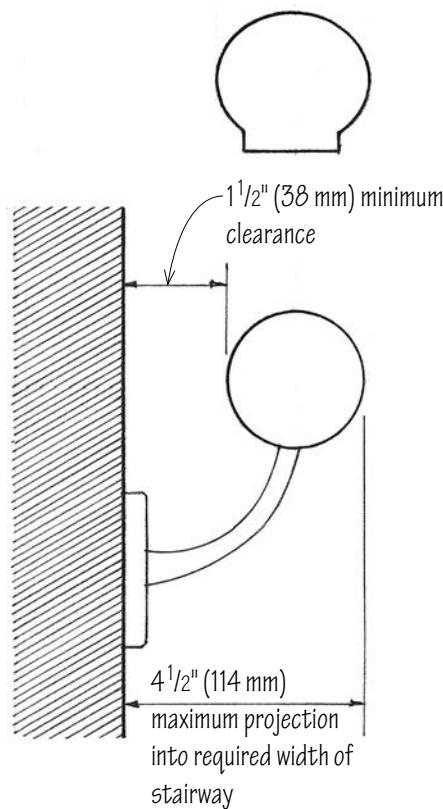
Steel Stairs



A concrete stair is designed as an inclined, one-way reinforced slab with steps formed along its upper surface. Concrete stairs require careful analysis of load, span, and support conditions.

Concrete Stairs



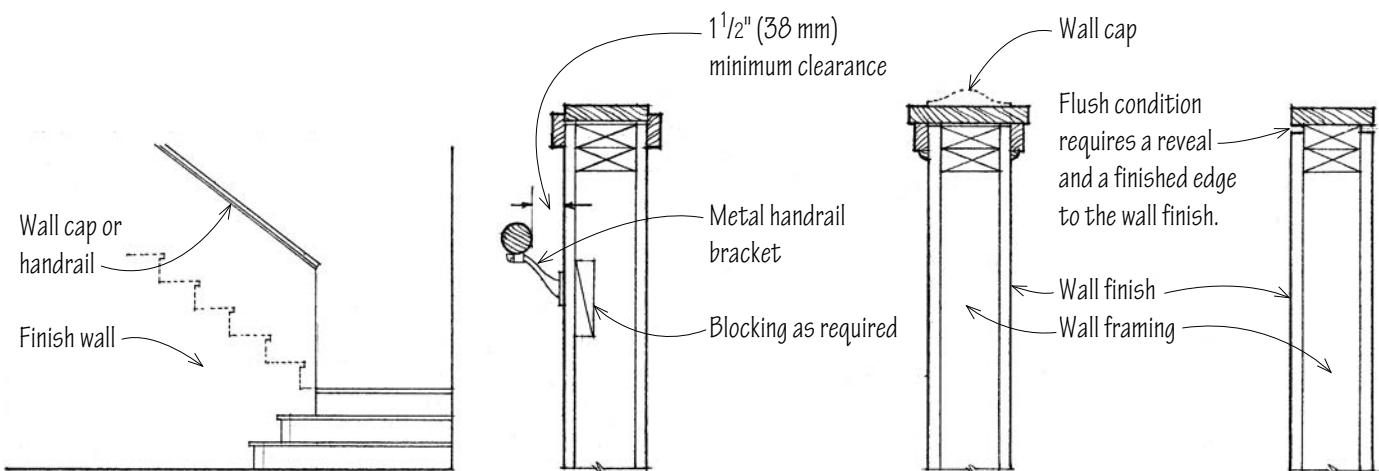


Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) guidelines regulate the minimum and maximum dimensions and the profiles of handrails to ensure their graspability.

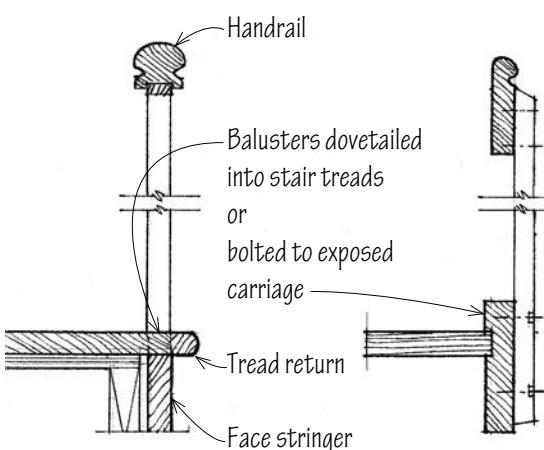
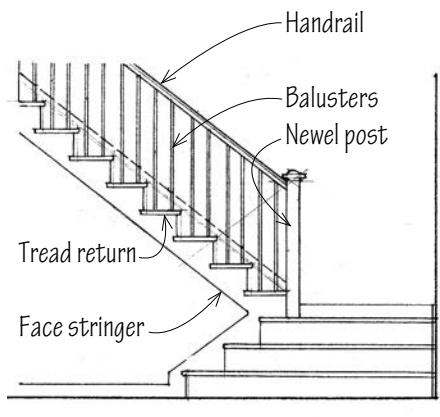
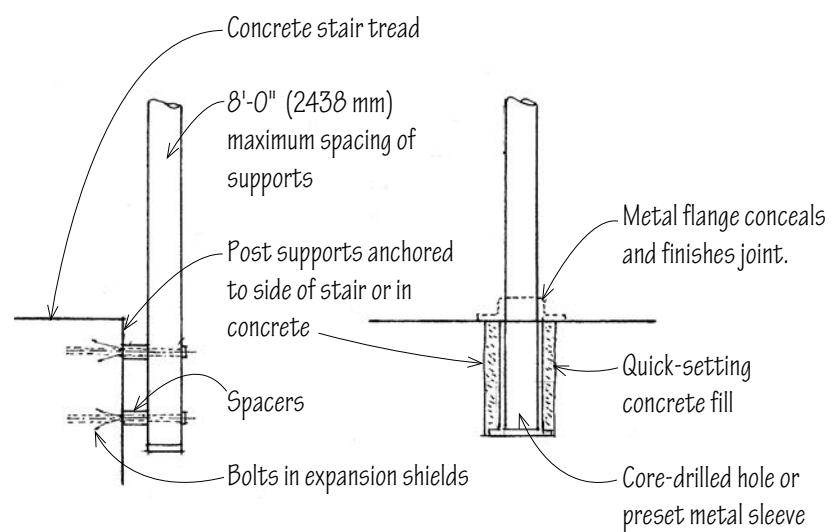
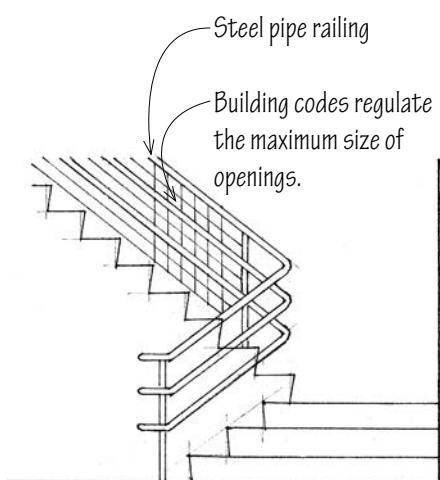
Handrails should be free of sharp or abrasive elements. They should have a circular cross section and a diameter of from $1\frac{1}{4}$ " to 2" (32 to 51 mm); other shapes are allowable if they provide equivalent graspability and have a perimeter of from 4" to $6\frac{1}{4}$ " (102 mm to 159 mm) and a maximum cross section dimension of $2\frac{1}{4}$ " (57 mm).

Building codes and the ADA regulate the minimum height of guards and the maximum size of openings within the railings that protect the open sides of stairways, balconies, and decks.

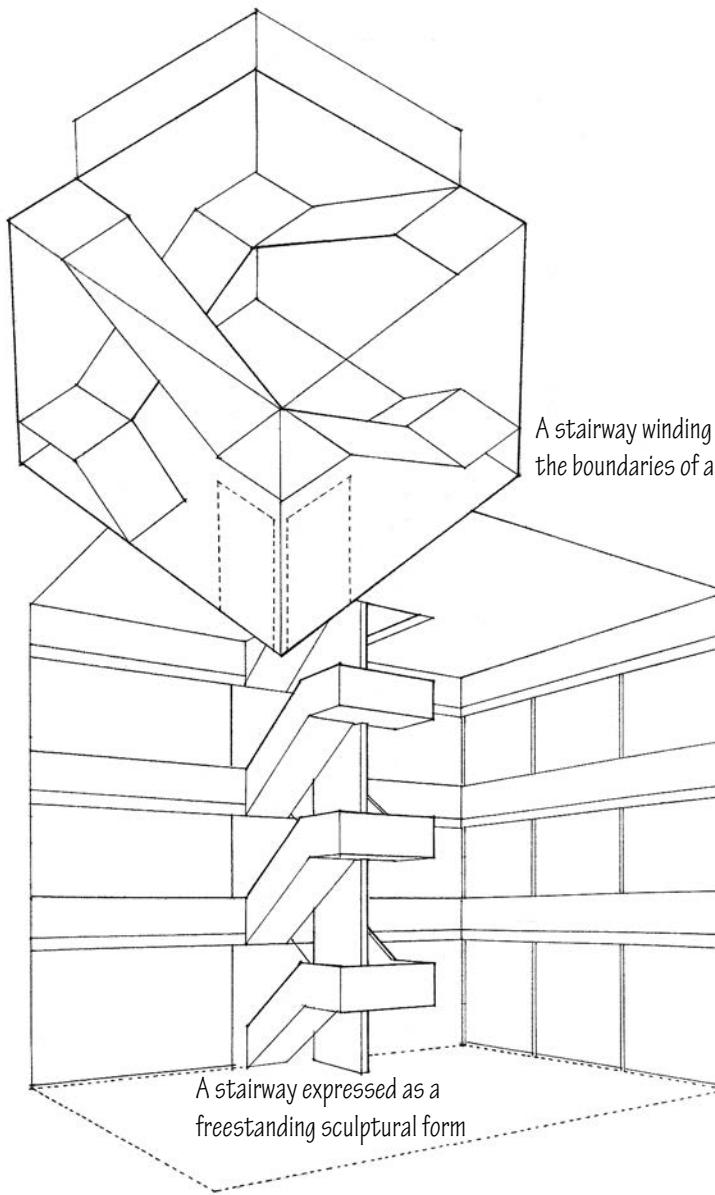
Extend handrails at least 12" (305 mm) horizontally beyond the top tread, and one tread width beyond the bottom tread nosing of each flight.



Solid Rail

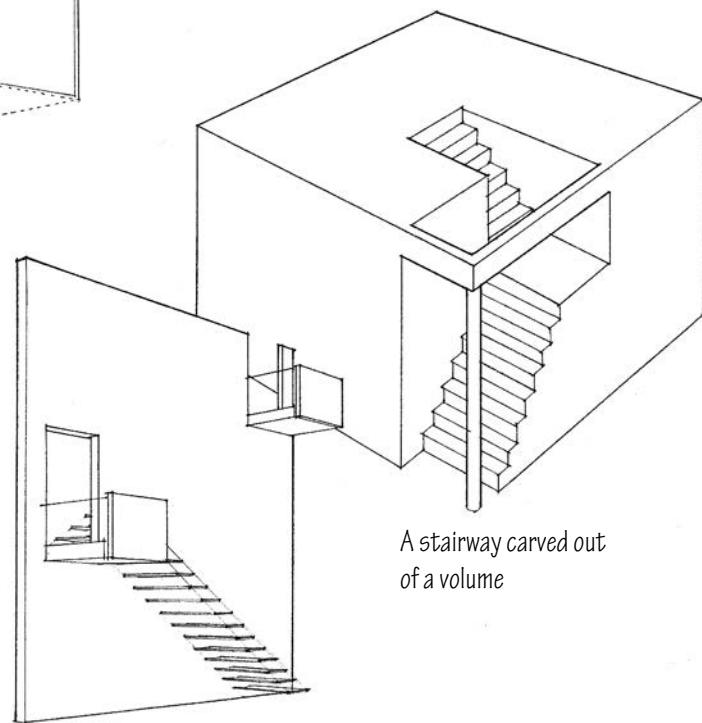
**Open Rail****Steel Pipe Railing**

STAIRWAYS AND SPACE PLANNING



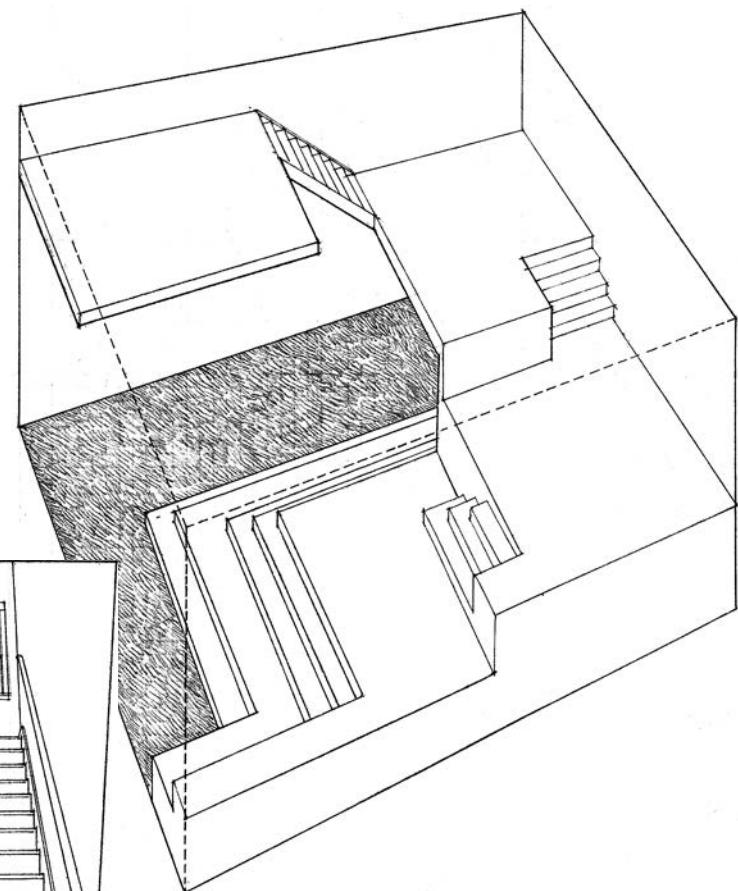
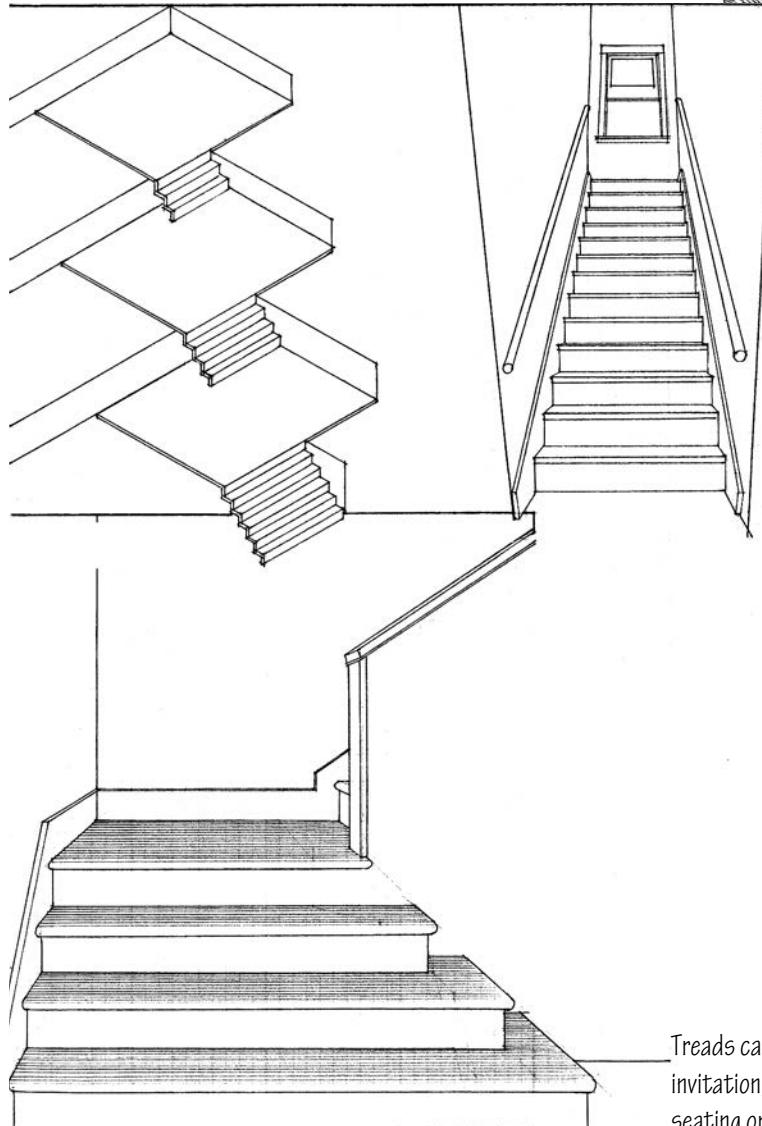
Within the guidelines for a stair's dimensions—as set forth by building codes and the mechanics of our body movement—there is ample opportunity to manipulate the form and treatment of a stairway.

Stairs are three-dimensional forms, just as moving up or down a stairway is a three-dimensional experience. Their three-dimensionality can be exploited when one treats them as sculpture—freestanding within a space or attached to a wall plane. A stairway can be treated as a volumetric solid from which space for movement as well as rest has been carved out, or as a composition of two-dimensional planes.



A stair may interrupt a path or meet it at an angle. In a similar manner, the run of the stair may be parallel, perpendicular, or oblique to the path's direction.

A stair can be an organizing element and knit together a series of spaces at different levels of a building.

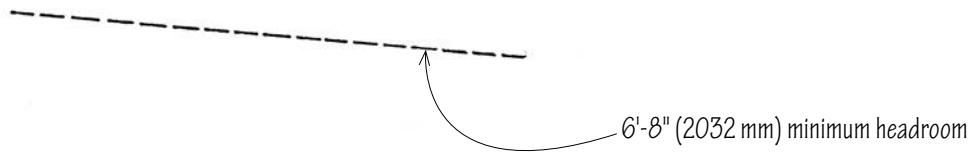


The path of a stair can rise between walls through a narrow shaft of space, or meander through and interweave among a series of spaces. A space can itself become a giant, elaborated stairway.

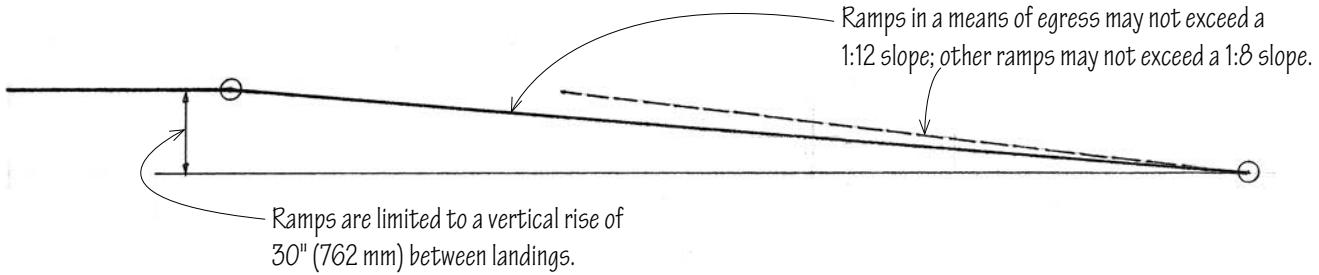
Treads can spill out at the bottom of a stairway as an invitation, or be extended farther into platforms for seating or terraces for activity.

RAMPS

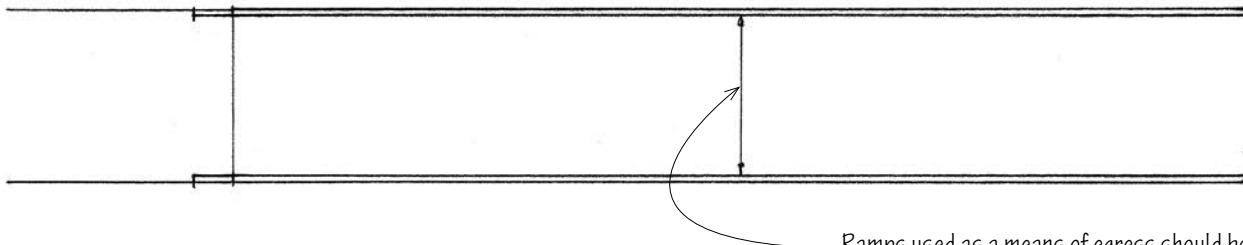
Ramps provide smooth transitions between the floor levels of a building. To have comfortably low slopes, they require relatively long runs. They are typically used to accommodate a change in level along an accessible route or to provide access for wheeled equipment.



Slope



Short, straight ramps act as beams and may be constructed as wood, steel, or concrete floor systems. Long or curvilinear ramps are usually of steel or reinforced concrete.



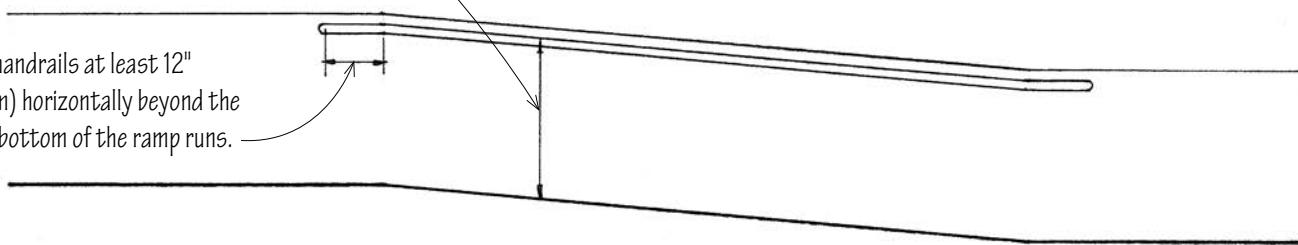
Ramps used as a means of egress should be at least 44" (1118 mm) wide; other ramps should have a minimum clear width between handrails of 36" (914 mm).

Guards and Handrails

Ramps having a rise greater than 6" (152 mm) or a run greater than 72" (1829 mm) should have guards along both sides.

Handrails should be from 34" to 38" (864 mm to 965 mm) above the ramp surface.

Extend handrails at least 12" (305 mm) horizontally beyond the top and bottom of the ramp runs.

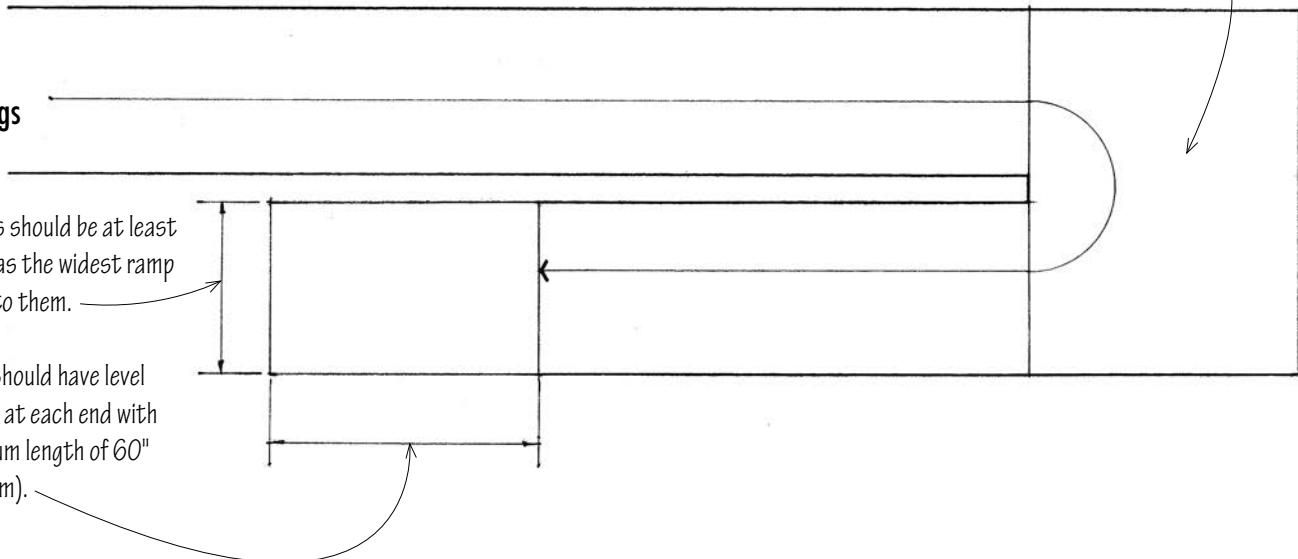


Landings that occur where a ramp changes direction should be at least 60" x 60" (1524 mm x 1524 mm).

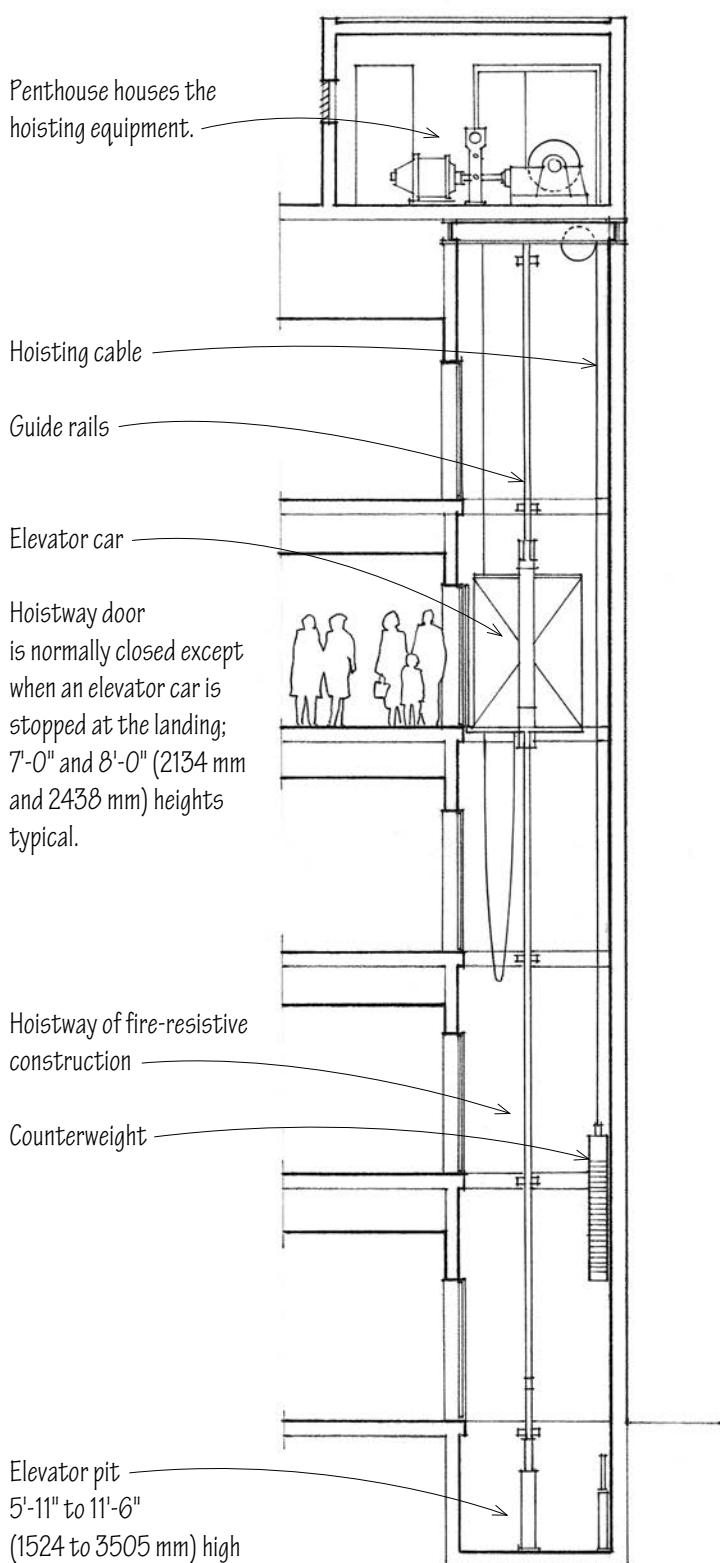
Landings

Landings should be at least as wide as the widest ramp leading to them.

Ramps should have level landings at each end with a minimum length of 60" (1524 mm).



ELEVATORS

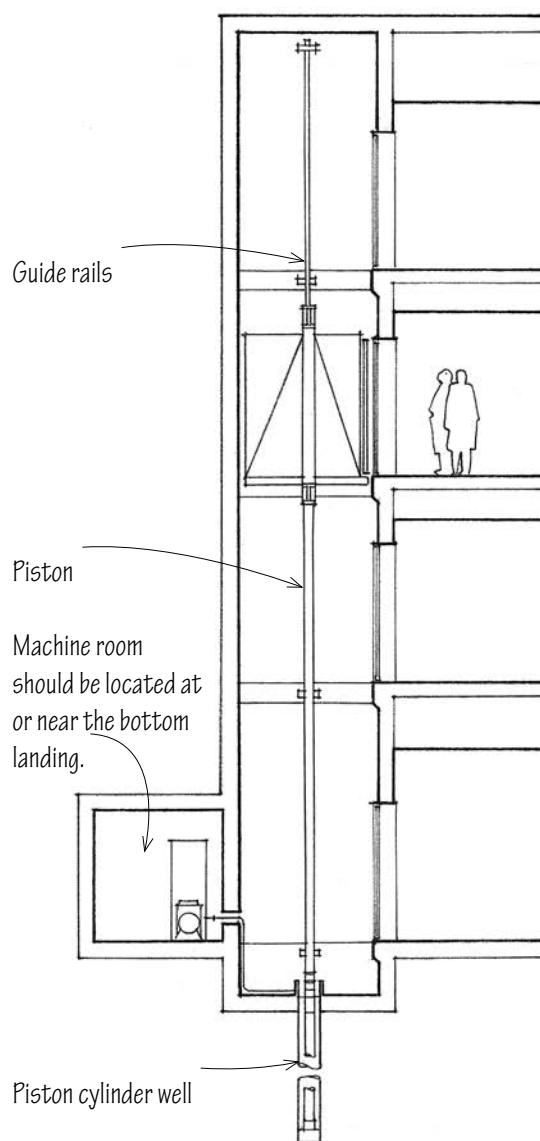


Traction Elevator

Elevators travel vertically to carry passengers, equipment, and freight from one level of a building to another. There are two basic types of commercial elevators: traction and hydraulic elevators.

Traction elevators consist of a car that is mounted on guide rails, supported by hoisting cables, and driven by electric hoisting machinery in a penthouse. Traction elevators operate at medium to high speeds and are used in buildings of all heights.

Hydraulic elevators consist of a car supported by a piston or cylinder that is moved by or moves against a fluid under pressure. A penthouse is not required, but the hydraulic elevator's lower speed and piston length limit its use to buildings up to six stories in height.



Hydraulic Elevator

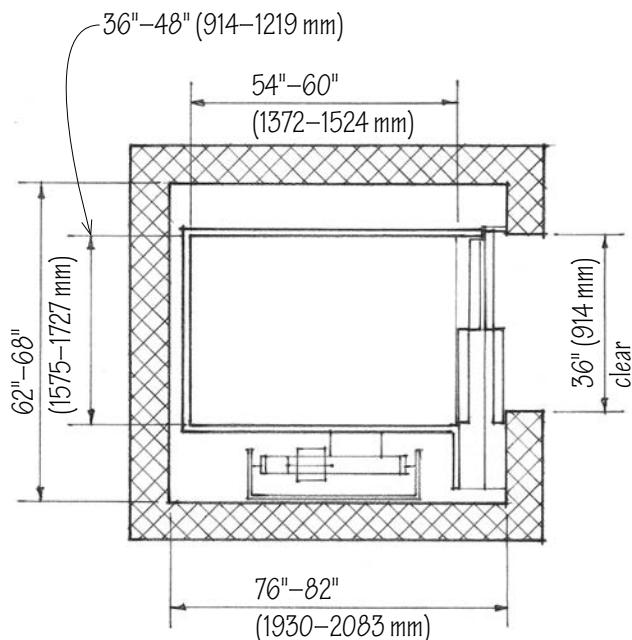
Private residential elevators can be installed only in a private residence or in a single unit in a multiple-unit dwelling. By code, they are limited in size, capacity, rise, and speed.

Fire service access elevators, sized to accommodate an ambulance stretcher, are required for some tall buildings. In addition, occupant evacuation elevators are required for use by occupants for evacuation of very tall buildings.

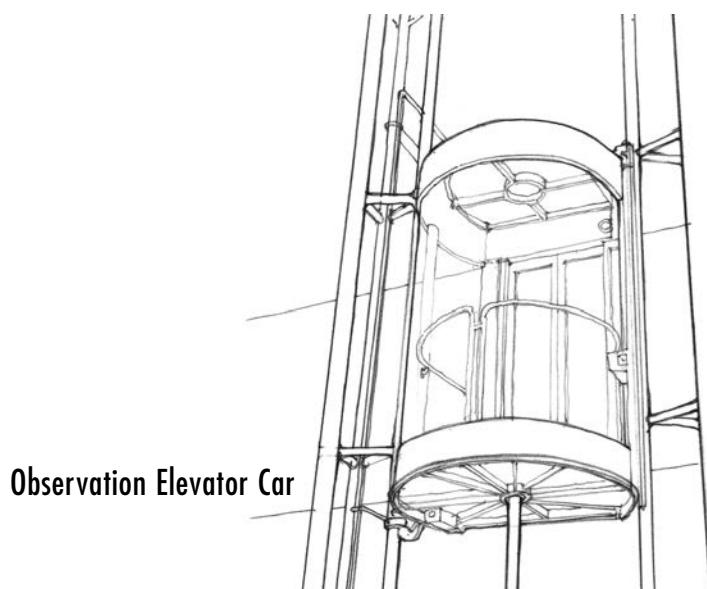
Freight elevators with either traction or hydraulic drive systems usually have vertical bipart doors and special structural support to handle heavy loads.

Observation and glass-back elevator cars travel outside of a hoistway or in a hoistway open on one side, with inconspicuous machinery and a decorative hoistway wall.

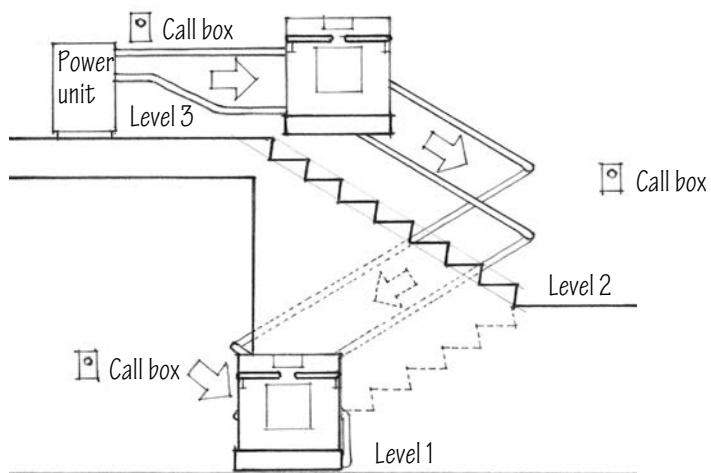
Wheelchair lifts are typically used as retrofits to existing buildings, but may not be permitted as part of an accessible route in new construction. Inclined wheelchair lifts are mounted on stairs, and include both commercial platform lifts and folding seats for residential use. Limited use/limited application (LU/LA) elevators are designed to fill the void between commercial elevators and vertical platform wheelchair lifts.



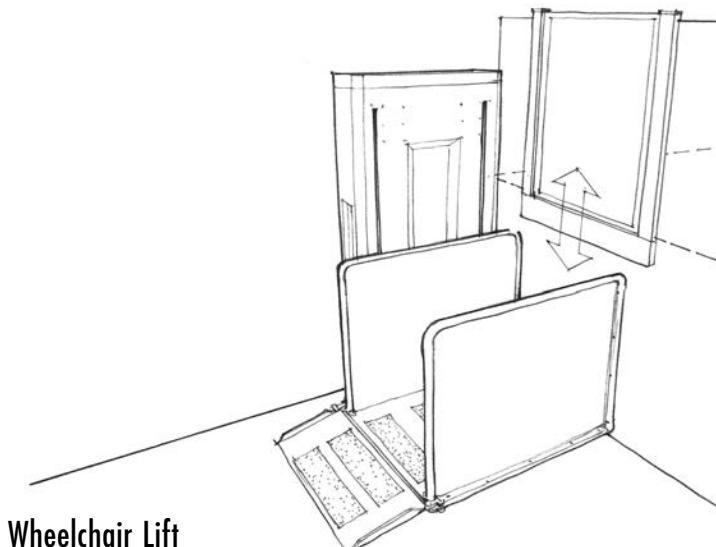
LU/LA Elevator



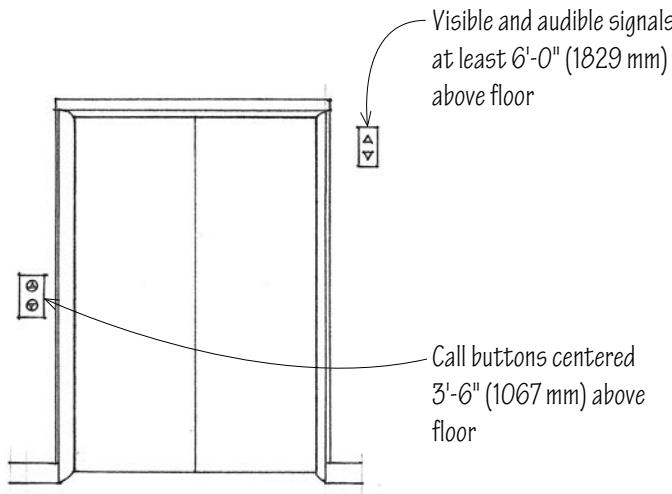
Observation Elevator Car



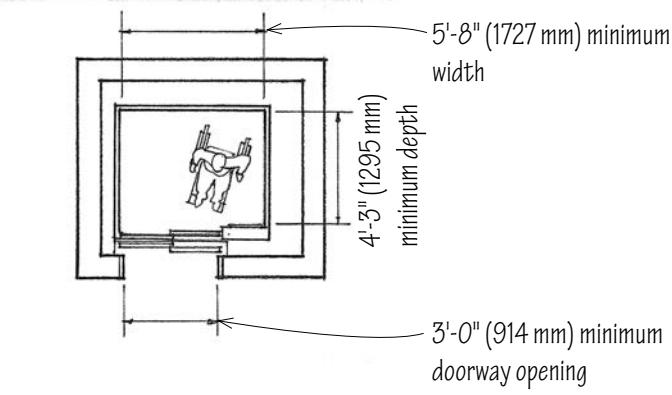
Inclined Wheelchair Lift



Wheelchair Lift



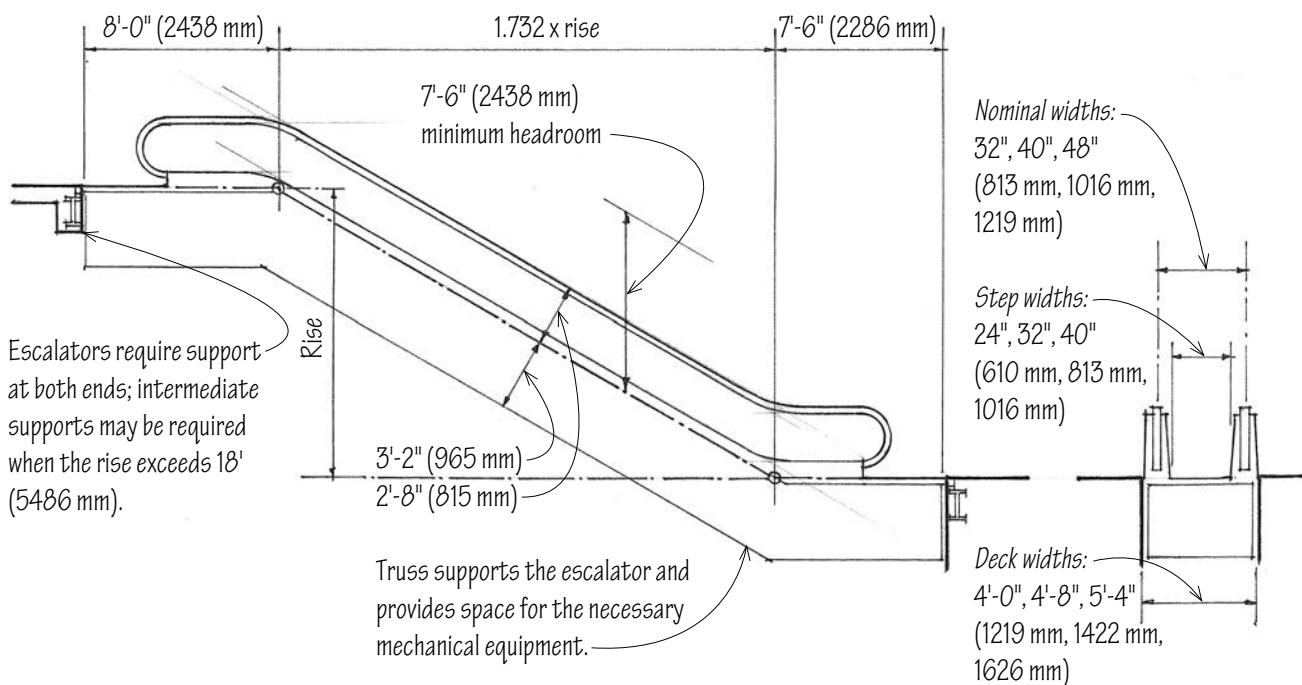
ADA accessibility guidelines for passenger elevators cover the type and location of call signals, lanterns, floor designations, call buttons, and cab controls. Elevator doors should be provided with an automatic reopening device that is activated if the door becomes obstructed by an object or person. Elevator cars should be sized to allow wheelchair users to enter the car, maneuver within reach of controls, and exit from the car.



Interior cab finishes must consider dimensions permitted by cab construction, durability, tamper resistance, and ease of maintenance. Elevator interiors should be fabricated by experienced craftspeople.

Escalators

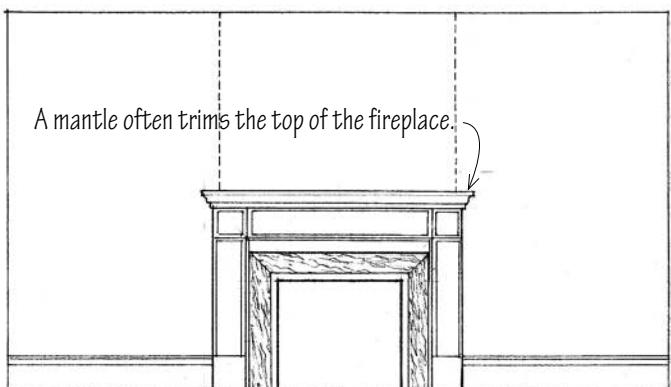
Escalators are power-driven stairways consisting of steps attached to a continuously circulating belt. They can move a large number of people efficiently and comfortably among a limited number of floors; six floors are a practical limit. Because escalators move at a constant speed, there is practically no waiting period, but there should be adequate queuing space at each loading and discharge point.



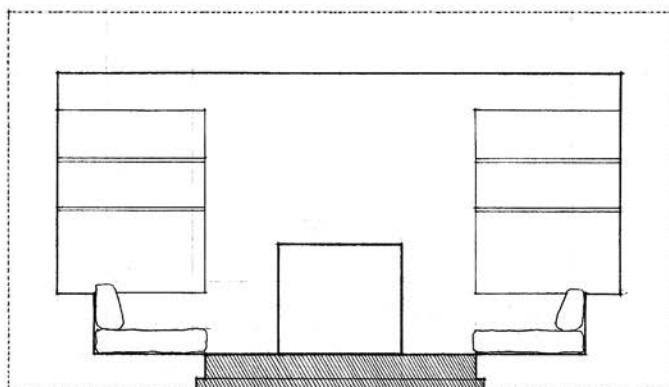
Although a traditional fireplace is not as efficient for heating an interior space as a wood stove, few would dispute the special attraction it holds for people. The warmth and flames of an open fire are like a magnet, enticing people to gather around a fireplace. Even without a fire, a fireplace can be a unique center of interest, and serve as the focal point about which a room can be arranged.

When considering the location of a fireplace, evaluate its effect on a room's proportions and the clearance required if furniture is to be arranged about it.

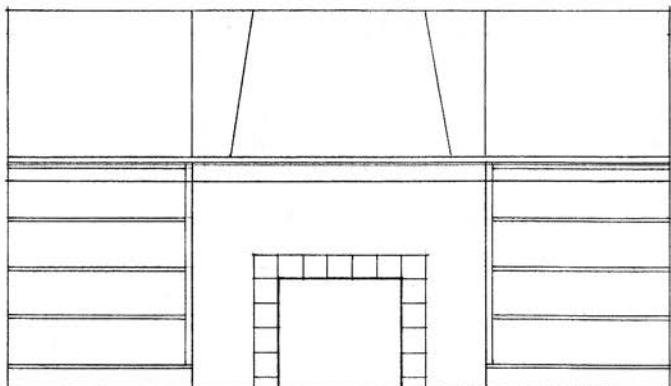
It is important for the interior designer to note the amount of space a fireplace requires and how the face—the opening, surround, and hearth—can be treated. The treatment of the surround visually enlarges the fireplace opening, enhances it as a focal point, and integrates it with the rest of a room's trimwork.



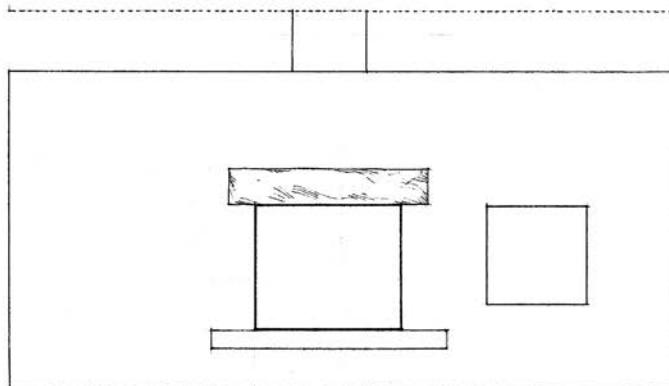
No woodwork is permitted within 6" (152 mm) of the fireplace opening.



The raised hearth of a fireplace can be extended to form a platform for seating. This platform, along with the fireplace, can begin to define an alcove space.



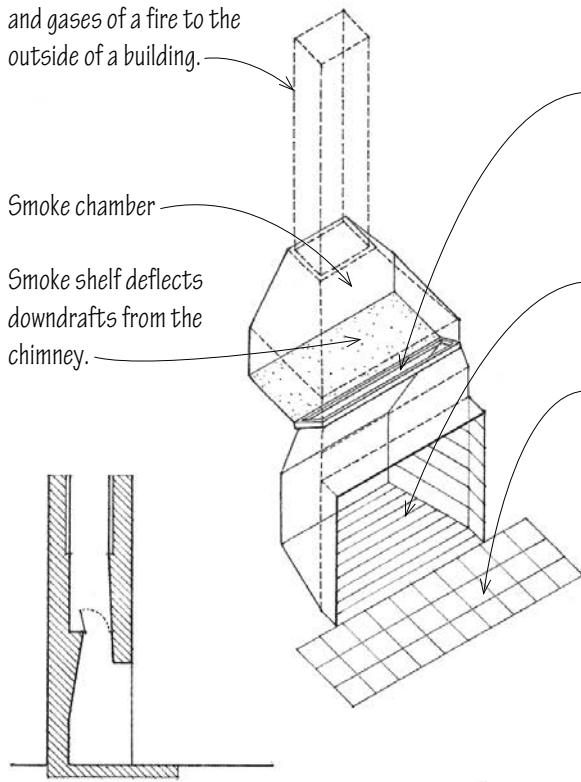
On the wall of the room, the chimneybreast often projects a few inches into the room, forming recesses to either side that can be used for storage.



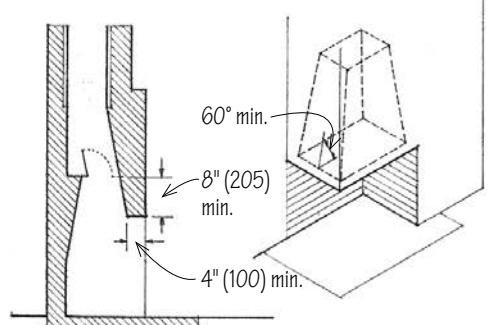
A lintel or beam that spans the fireplace opening in a masonry wall can be exposed and embellished as a visual design element.

FIREPLACES

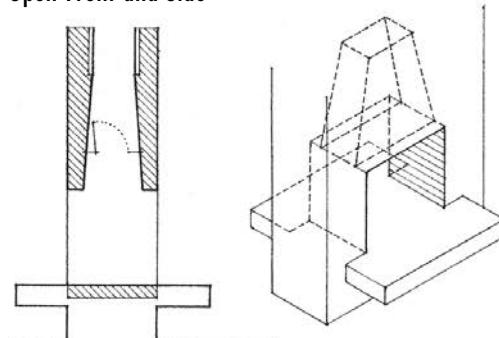
The flue creates a draft that exhausts the smoke and gases of a fire to the outside of a building.



Open Front



Open Front and Side



Open Front and Back

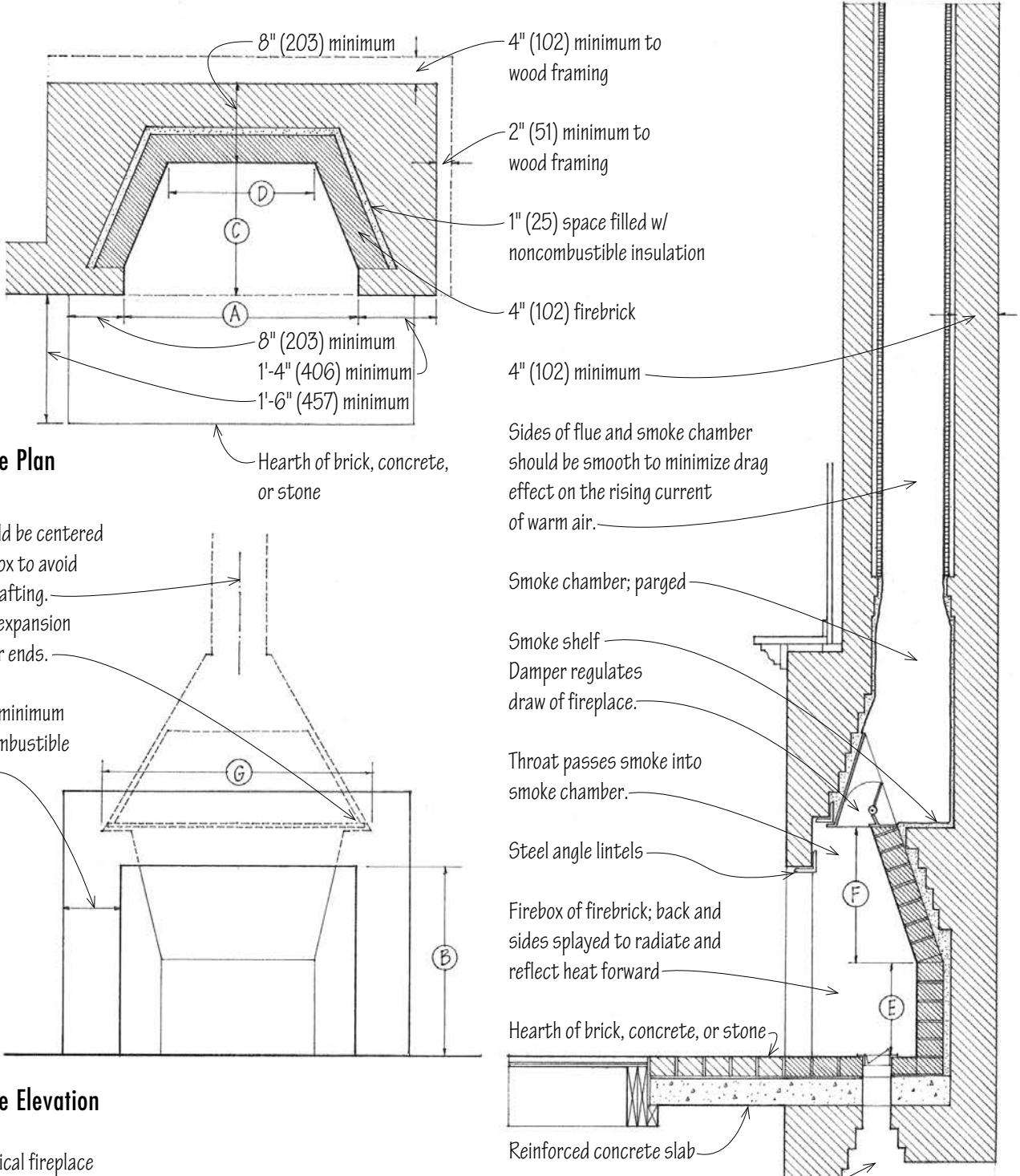
Types of Fireplaces

A fireplace must be designed to draw air for combustion properly, to sustain combustion safely, and to carry smoke away efficiently. Consequently, the proportions of a fireplace and the arrangement of its components are subject to both the laws of nature and the local building code.

Typical Fireplace Dimensions in Inches (mm)

Width (A)	Height (B)	Depth (C)	(D)	(E)	(F)	(G)
Open Front						
36 (914)	29 (737)	20 (508)	23 (584)	14 (356)	23 (584)	44 (1118)
42 (1067)	32 (813)	20 (508)	29 (737)	16 (406)	24 (610)	50 (1270)
48 (1219)	32 (813)	20 (508)	33 (838)	16 (406)	24 (610)	56 (1422)
54 (1372)	37 (940)	20 (508)	37 (940)	16 (406)	29 (737)	68 (1727)
60 (1524)	40 (1016)	22 (559)	42 (1067)	18 (457)	30 (762)	72 (1829)
72 (1829)	40 (1016)	22 (559)	54 (1372)	18 (457)	30 (762)	84 (2134)
Open Front and Side						
28 (711)	24 (610)	16 (406)	Multifaced fireplaces are especially sensitive to drafts in a room; avoid placing their openings opposite an exterior door.			
32 (813)	28 (711)	18 (457)				
36 (914)	30 (762)	20 (508)				
48 (1219)	32 (813)	22 (559)				
Open Front and Back						
28 (711)	24 (610)	16 (406)				
32 (813)	28 (711)	16 (406)				
36 (914)	30 (762)	17 (432)				
48 (1219)	32 (813)	19 (483)				

See following page for plan, section, and elevation drawings of a fireplace, showing the locations of dimensions referenced in this table.



Fireplace Plan

Flue should be centered over firebox to avoid uneven drafting.
Allow for expansion at damper ends.

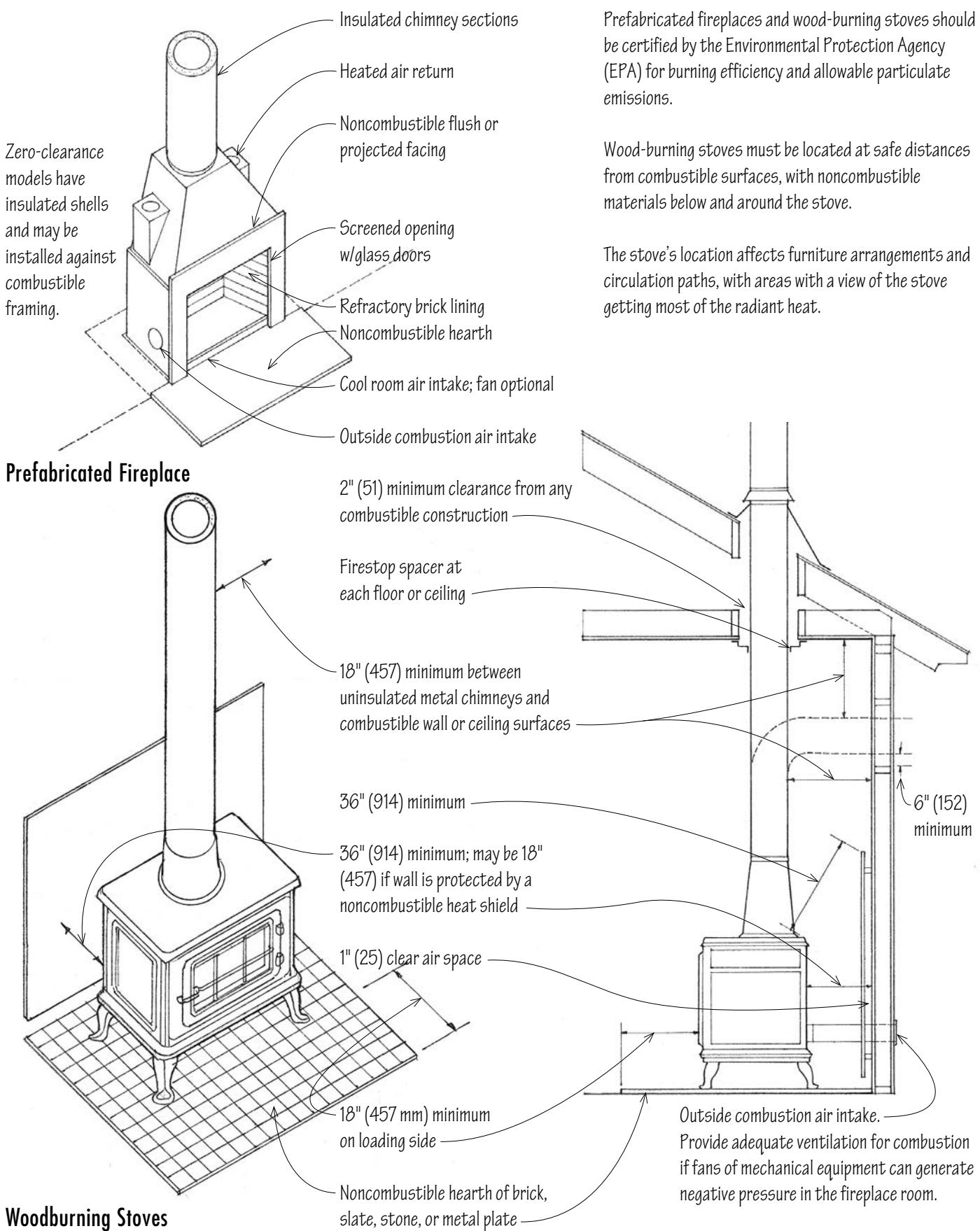
8" (203) minimum
to any combustible
material —

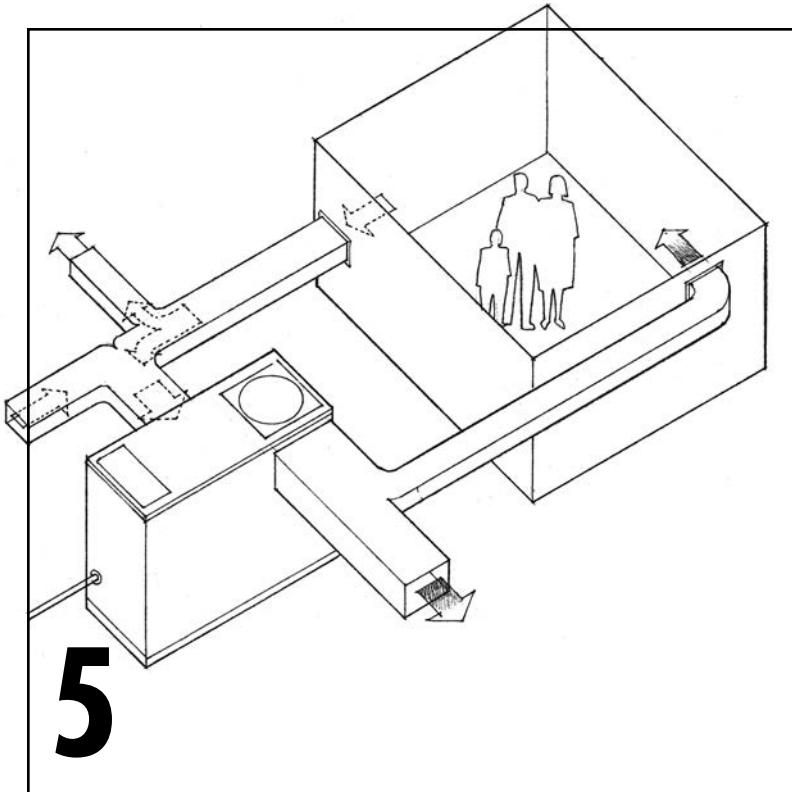
Fireplace Elevation

- For typical fireplace dimensions, see table on previous page.

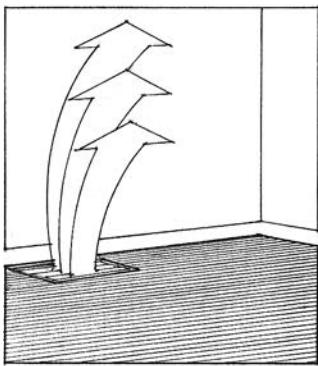
Fireplace Section

WOODBURNING STOVES

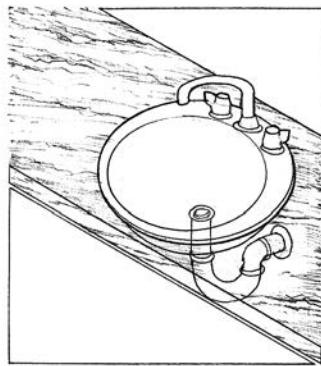




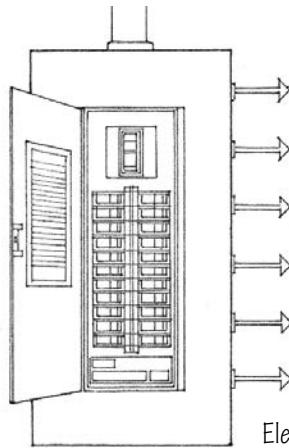
Interior Environmental Systems



Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning



Water supply and sanitary drainage

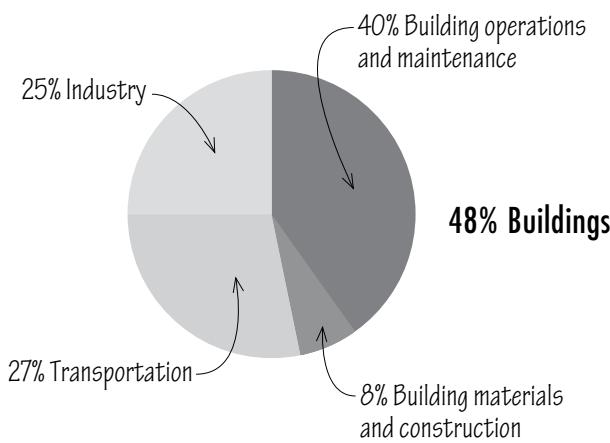


Electrical power supply and distribution

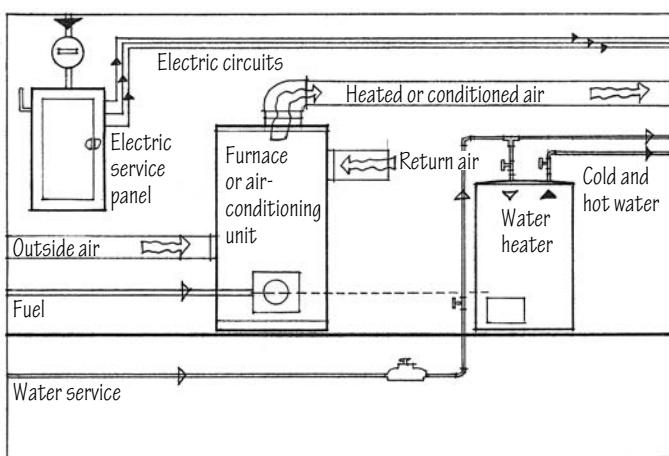
Interior Environmental Systems

Interior environmental systems are essential components of any building. They provide the thermal, visual, auditory, and sanitary conditions necessary for the comfort and convenience of the building's occupants. These systems must be designed and laid out well to function properly. They must also be coordinated with a building's structural system. This requires the knowledge and expertise of professional engineers and architects. Nevertheless, the interior designer should be aware that these systems exist and know how they affect the quality of the interior environment.

Interior environmental systems use substantial amounts of energy. In the U.S., most of this energy (including electricity) is derived from coal and natural gas, with some from oil, nuclear energy, and sustainable sources. Heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) equipment uses energy to maintain thermal comfort; inefficient designs allow heated and cooled air to leak out of buildings. Heat from water used for bathing and washing dishes and clothes usually ends up flushed down the drain. We often forget to shut off power to electrical devices when they are not in use, further increasing building energy use. Reducing this waste is a key factor in sustainable design.

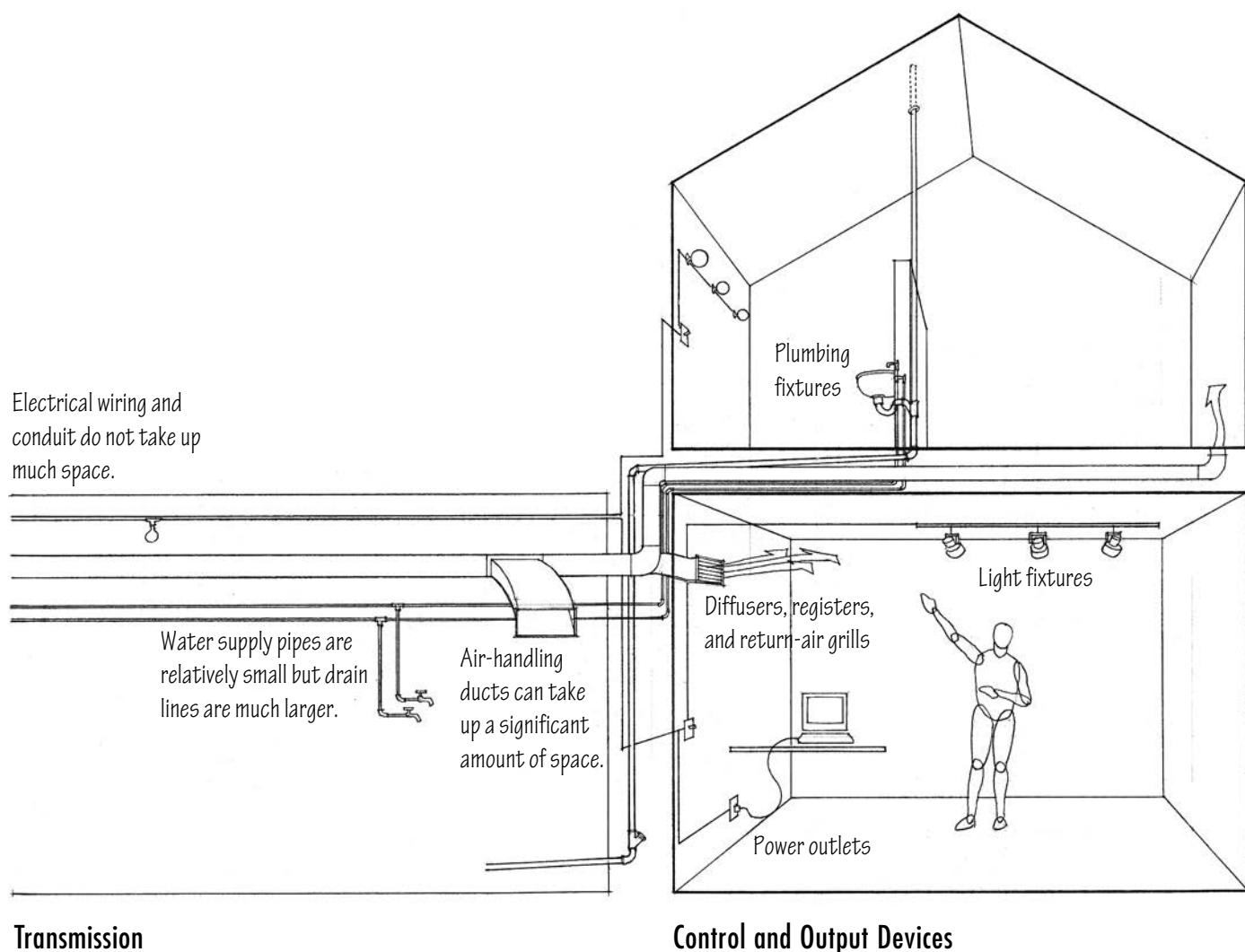


U.S. Energy Consumption by Sector

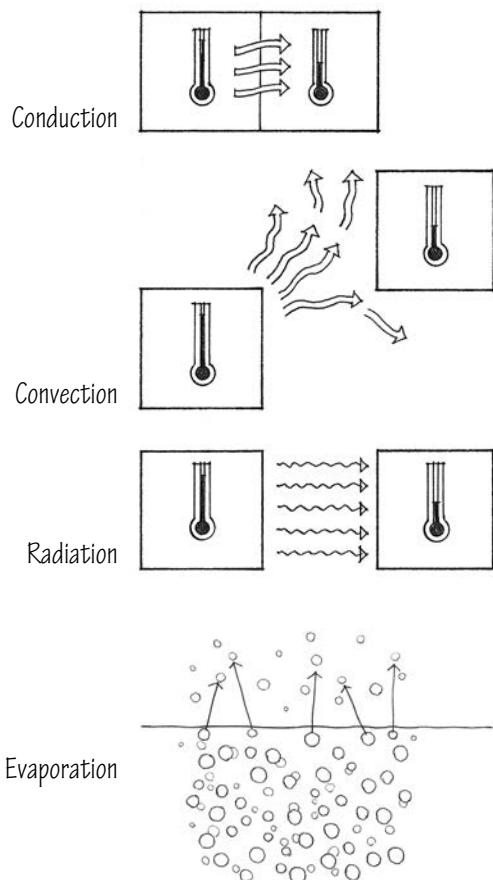


Sources

While the nature of a building's structural system can manifest itself in its interior spaces, the often complex networks of its mechanical and electrical systems are normally hidden from view. Interior designers, however, should be aware of the visible items that directly affect the interior environment, such as lighting fixtures, electrical outlets, plumbing fixtures, and air supply registers and return grills. Also of interest are the space requirements for horizontal and vertical runs of air ducts and electrical and plumbing lines.



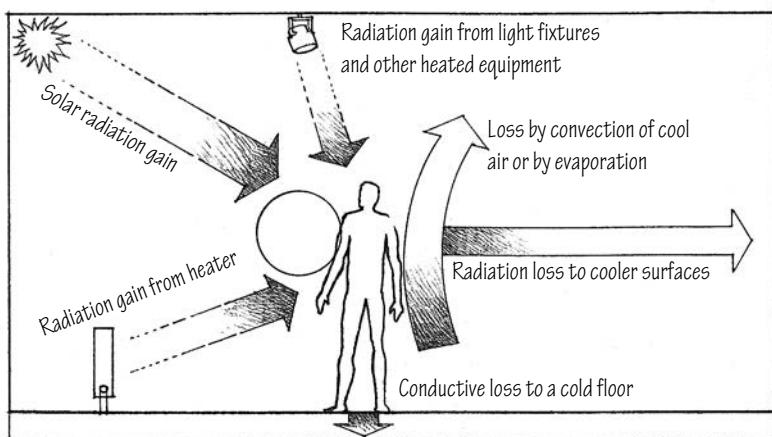
THERMAL COMFORT



Thermal comfort is achieved when the human body is able to dissipate the heat and moisture it produces by metabolic action, to maintain a stable, normal body temperature.

Modes of Heat Transfer

- Radiation:** Heat energy is emitted by a warm body, transmitted through an intervening space, and absorbed by a cooler body; radiant heat is not affected by air motion or temperature.
- Convection:** Transfer is due to the circulatory motion of the heated parts of a liquid or gas.
- Conduction:** Direct transfer occurs from the warmer to the cooler particles of a medium or of two bodies in direct contact.
- Evaporation:** Heat loss is due to the process of converting moisture into a vapor.



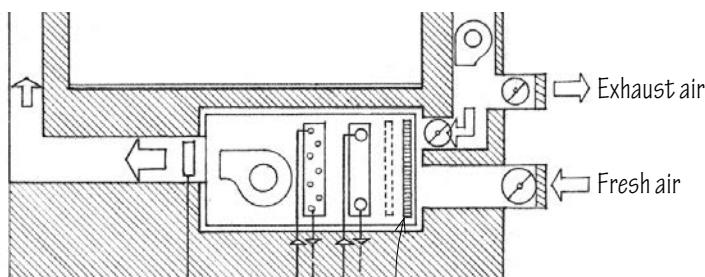
Thermal comfort is dependent not only on air temperature but also on relative air humidity, the radiant temperature of surrounding surfaces, air motion, and air purity. To achieve and maintain thermal comfort, a reasonable balance must be reached among these factors.

- The higher the mean radiant temperature of a room's surfaces, the cooler the air temperature should be.
- The higher the relative humidity of a space, the lower the air temperature should be.
- The cooler the moving air stream, the less velocity it should have.

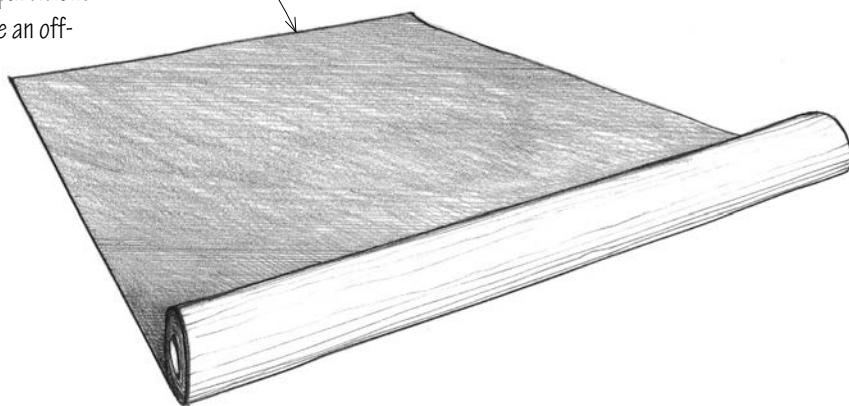
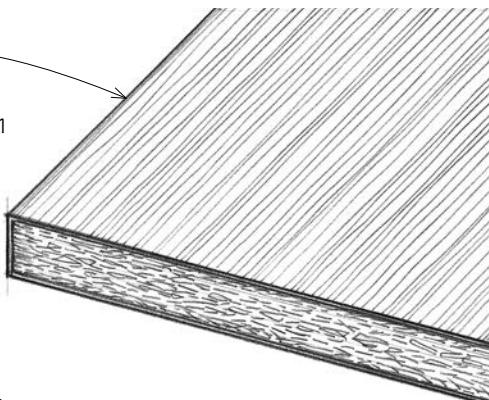
Indoor air-quality considerations affect the type of heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) equipment chosen to control air pressure and provide fresh and conditioned air to the interior spaces of a building. Equipment maintenance also affects the quality of air delivered, because molds and viruses thrive in warm, moist equipment. Filters must be changed often to capture particulates effectively.

Some interior design materials may release volatile organic compounds (VOCs) that may irritate eyes, skin, and respiratory systems. Examples include:

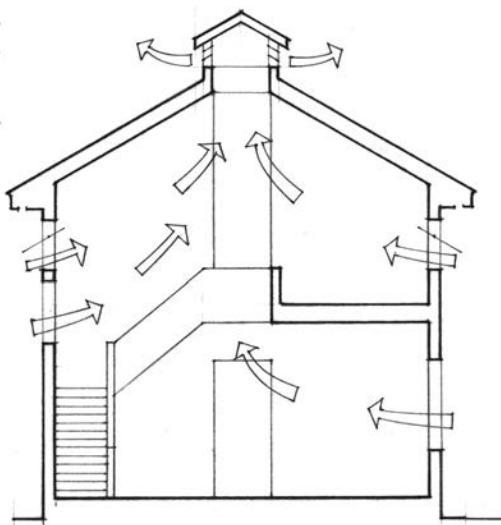
- Formaldehyde in pressed wood products such as particleboard and plywood; products are available without it. If used, seal all surfaces and edges.
- Some carpets and carpet pads and adhesives contain VOCs; select products without them, or provide an off-gassing period after installation.
- Vinyl sheet flooring and wallcoverings owe their flexibility to petroleum-based plasticizers; seek alternative products.
- Paints, stains, and other coatings have VOC levels printed on their labels; select those with lower levels, and ventilate spaces where they are used.
- Some treated fabrics and modular office partitions contain VOC-producing chemicals; provide an off-gassing period if used.



Filters remove suspended impurities from the air supply. Over half of indoor air-quality problems result from inadequate ventilation and filtration. Building codes specify the amount of ventilation required for certain uses and occupancies in air changes per hour or in cubic feet per minute per person.



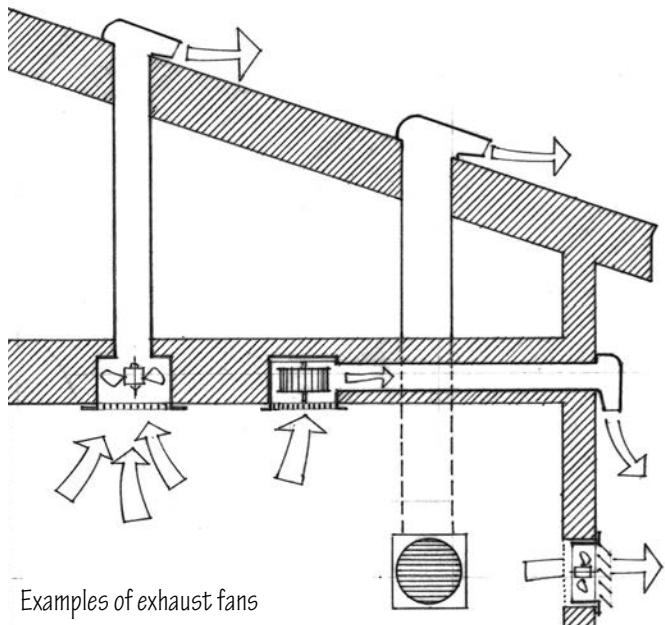
VENTILATION



Buildings need a source of fresh air to replenish the oxygen used by the people and equipment inside and to remove carbon dioxide and other wastes from the air. Buildings designed without operable windows limit the intake of fresh air. Increasing natural ventilation and air distribution is the most energy-efficient and cost-effective way to freshen the air inside most buildings.

Air flows through a building because it moves from higher-pressure to lower-pressure areas. Natural ventilation requires:

- A source of air having an acceptable temperature, moisture content, and cleanliness
- A force—usually wind or thermal convection—to move the air through the inhabited spaces of the building



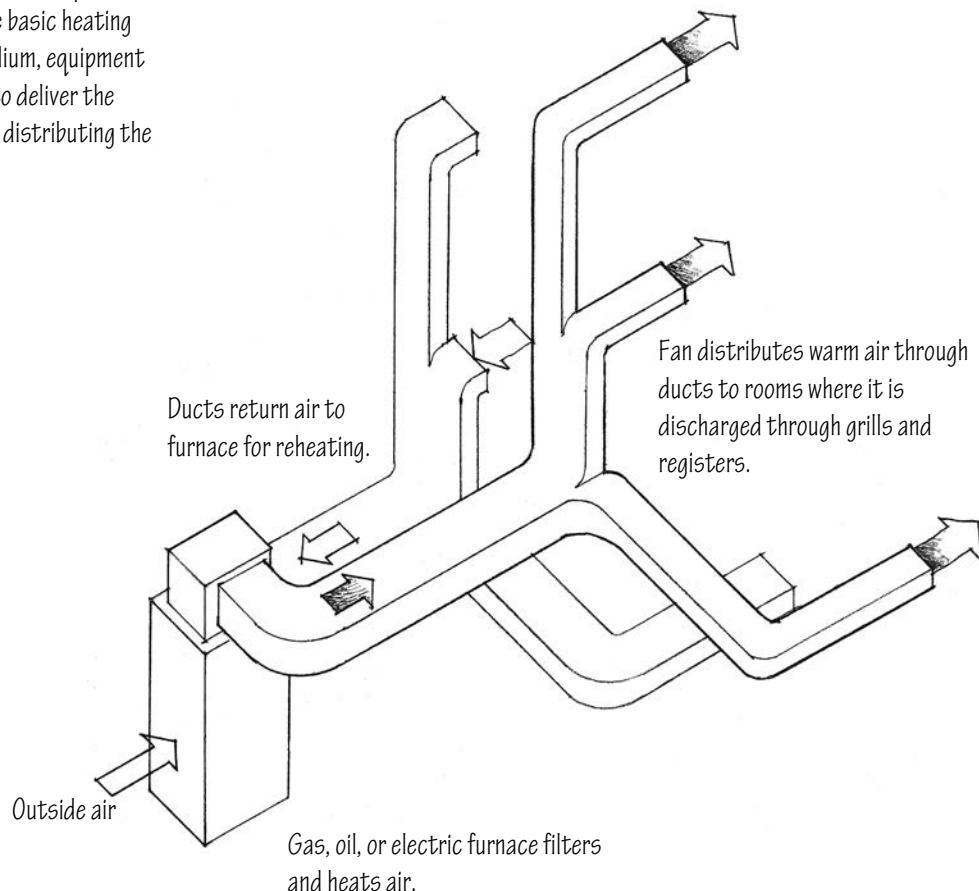
Examples of exhaust fans

Mechanical systems use fans to move air in and out of buildings, and incorporate controls for regulating the volume, velocity, and direction of airflow.

Blowers and fans move the air through ductwork that delivers it to the building's rooms. Registers control the flow of air into interior spaces. Return air grilles take in used air to be cleaned and reused or exhausted from the building.

Infiltration refers to the flow of outside air into an interior space through cracks around windows and doors or other openings in the envelope of a building. Although infiltration may bring fresh air into the interior, these openings can also waste energy by allowing heated or cooled air to escape.

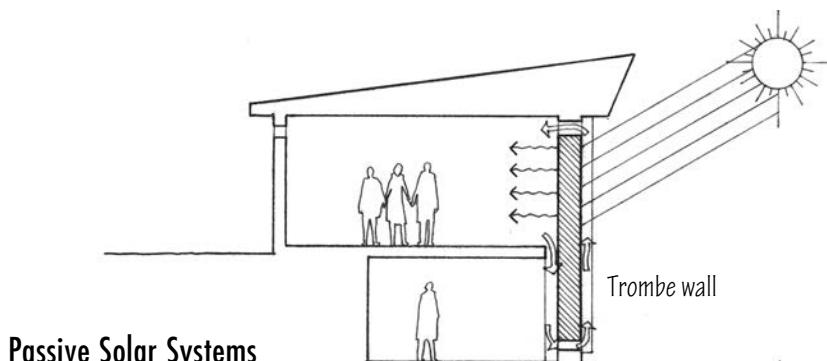
The primary objective of a heating system is to replace the heat lost within an interior space. The basic heating system consists of a heat-producing medium, equipment to convert the medium to heat, a means to deliver the heat to a space, and, finally, a method for distributing the heat within the space.



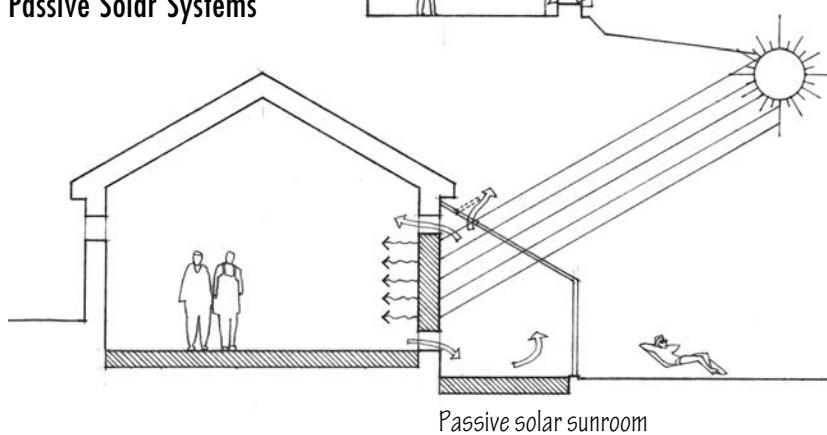
Forced-Air Heating

Forced-air heating is a system that uses air heated in a gas, oil, or electric furnace and distributed by a fan through ductwork to registers or diffusers in inhabited spaces.

The ductwork used for forced-air heating is often concealed by a suspended ceiling; it may also be left exposed or be hidden in a soffit or other interior construction. The locations of ducts and their associated grills and registers will affect the appearance of the ceiling, and should be coordinated with the locations of lighting fixtures, fire-suppression sprinklers, speakers, and other ceiling equipment. Interior designers should collaborate with architects and engineers to ensure a coordinated and attractive ceiling design.



Passive Solar Systems

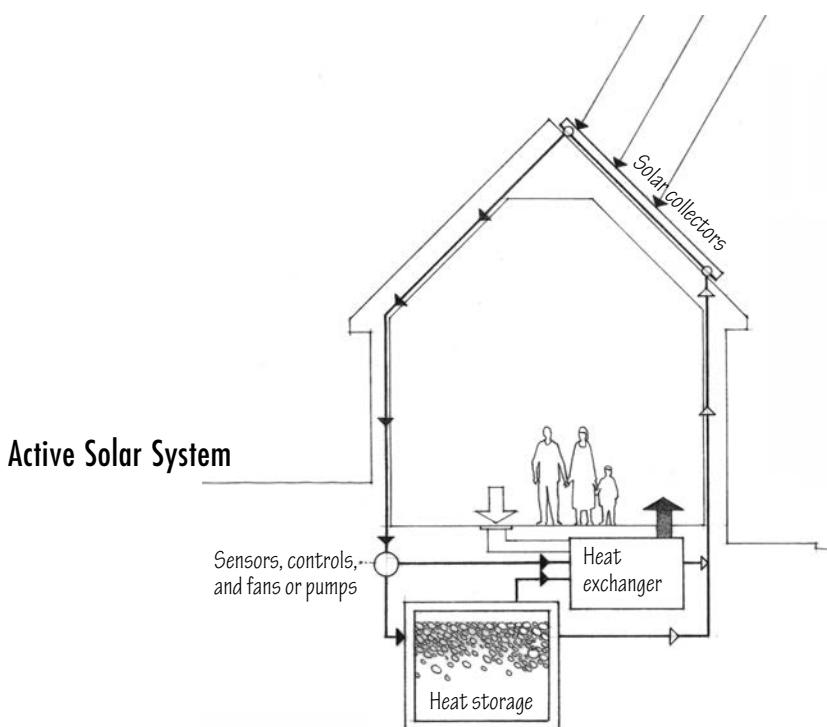


Passive solar sunroom

Solar Heating

The amount of sunlight falling on a building typically has enough energy to keep it comfortable throughout the year. Most solar-heating systems can accommodate 40 to 70 percent of a building's heating load.

A *passive solar-heating system* incorporates solar collection, storage, and distribution into a building's architectural design, with minimal use of pumps or fans. This is accomplished by carefully siting the building and designing the size and type of windows, as well as by using massive materials that can store thermal energy. Overhangs and shading devices are used to avoid glare and overheating.



Active Solar System

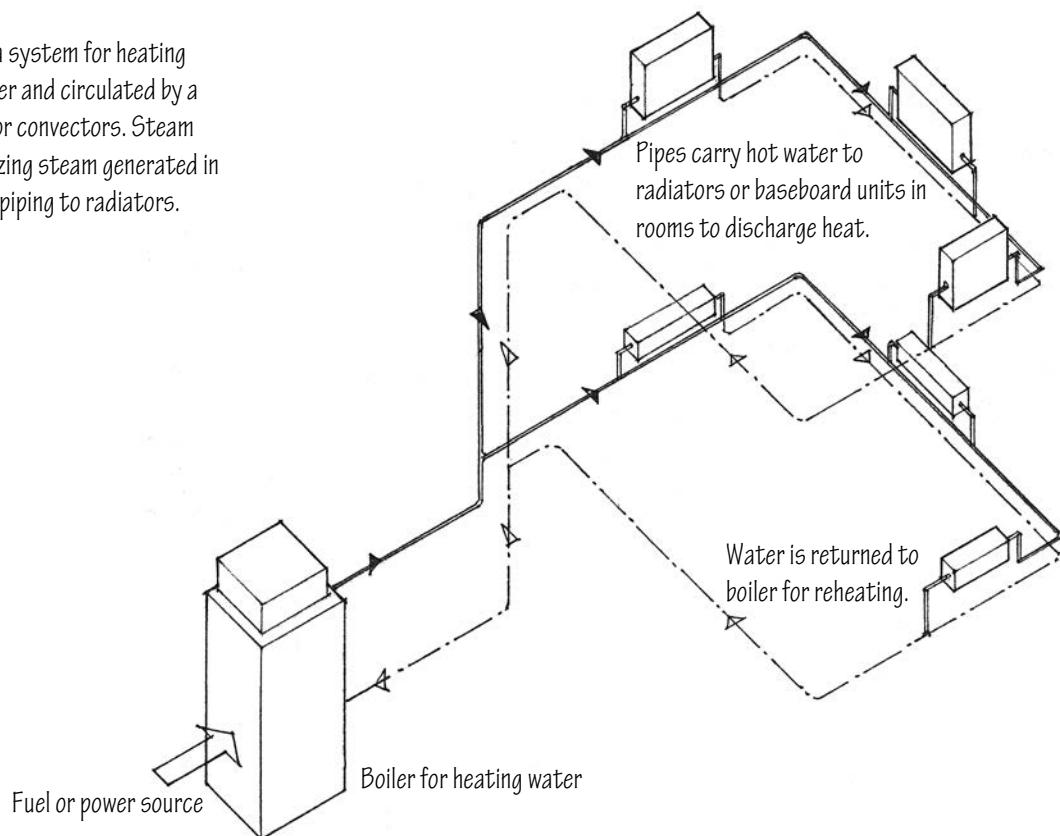
Active solar-heating systems use pumps, fans, heat pumps, and other mechanical equipment to transmit and distribute thermal energy via air or a liquid. They offer better control of the interior environment than passive systems, and can be added onto most existing buildings. Most active systems are operated by electricity.

Many buildings use hybrid systems with passive-solar design features supplemented by electrically driven fans or pumps.

Even an interior that is not designed specifically for solar heating can take advantage of this free heat source in cold weather by absorbing the sun's warmth through windows during the day, and blocking its exit with thermal window treatments at night.

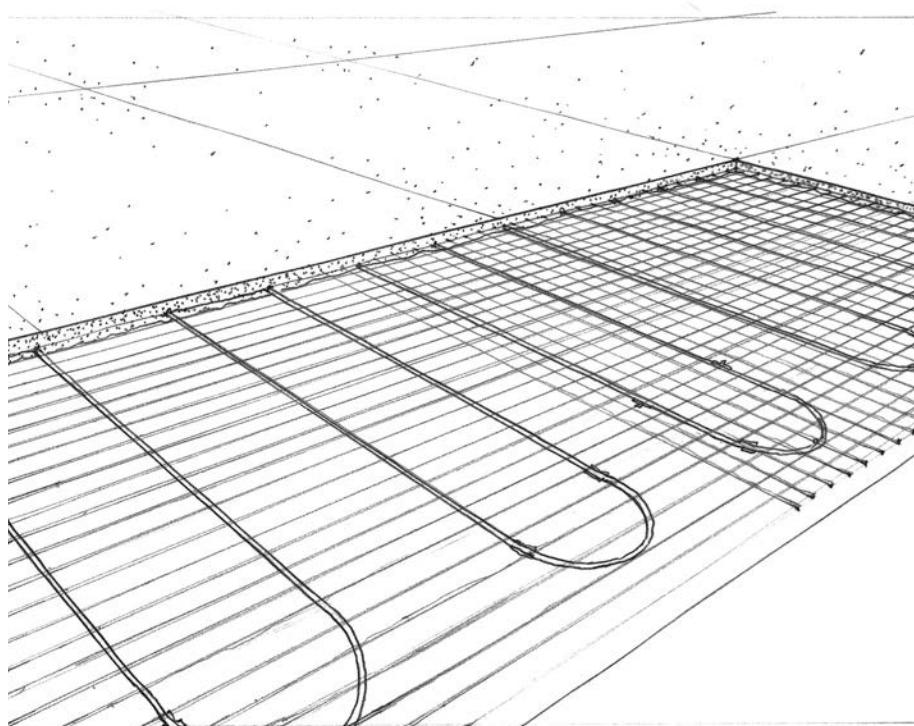
Hot-Water Heating

Hot-water or hydronic heating is a system for heating by means of water heated in a boiler and circulated by a pump through pipes to radiators or convectors. Steam heating is similar in principle, utilizing steam generated in a boiler and circulating it through piping to radiators.



Radiant Heating

Radiant heating systems utilize heated ceilings, floors, and sometimes walls as radiating surfaces. The heat source may be pipes or tubing carrying hot water, or electric-resistance heating cables embedded within the ceiling, floor, or wall construction.

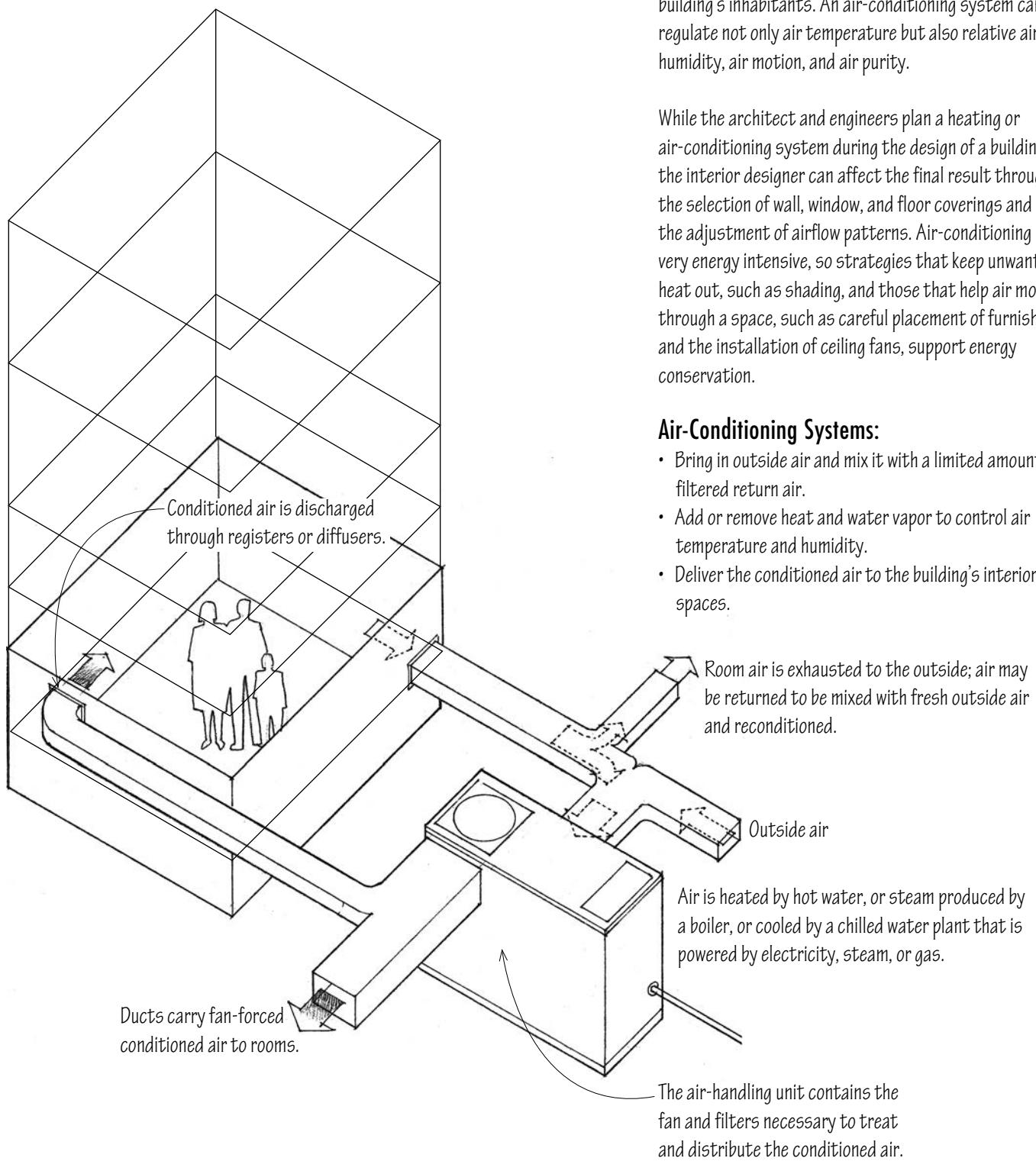


An air conditioner is usually considered to be a means for supplying cooled air. A true air-conditioning system, however, provides all-year climate control by treating air in multiple ways to ensure the thermal comfort of a building's inhabitants. An air-conditioning system can regulate not only air temperature but also relative air humidity, air motion, and air purity.

While the architect and engineers plan a heating or air-conditioning system during the design of a building, the interior designer can affect the final result through the selection of wall, window, and floor coverings and by the adjustment of airflow patterns. Air-conditioning is very energy intensive, so strategies that keep unwanted heat out, such as shading, and those that help air move through a space, such as careful placement of furnishings and the installation of ceiling fans, support energy conservation.

Air-Conditioning Systems:

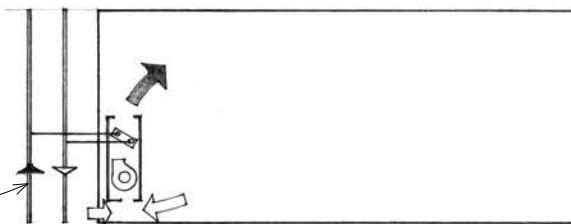
- Bring in outside air and mix it with a limited amount of filtered return air.
- Add or remove heat and water vapor to control air temperature and humidity.
- Deliver the conditioned air to the building's interior spaces.



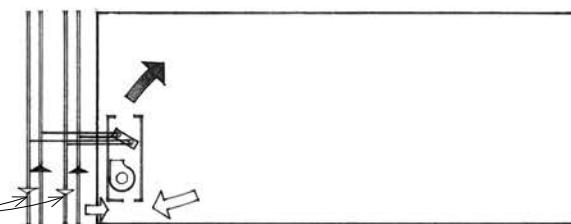
All-Water Systems

Pipes, which require less installation space than air ducts, deliver hot or chilled water to fan-coil units in the served spaces.

A two-pipe system uses one pipe to supply hot or chilled water to each fan-coil unit and another to return it to the boiler or chilled water plant. Fan-coil units contain an air filter and a centrifugal fan for drawing in a mixture of room air and outside air over coils of heater or chilled water and then blowing it back into the space.

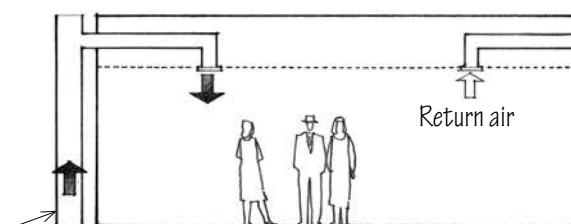


A four-pipe system uses two separate piping circuits—one for hot water and one for chilled water—to provide simultaneous heating and cooling as needed to the various zones of a building.

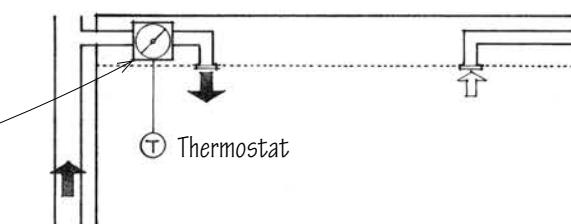


All-Air Systems

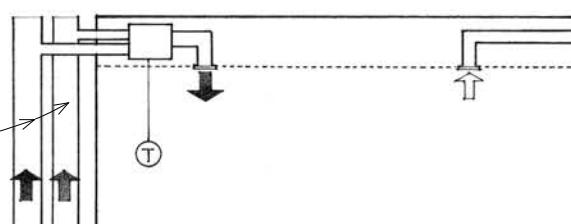
A single-duct, constant-air-volume (CAV) system delivers conditioned air at a constant temperature through a low-velocity duct system to the served spaces.



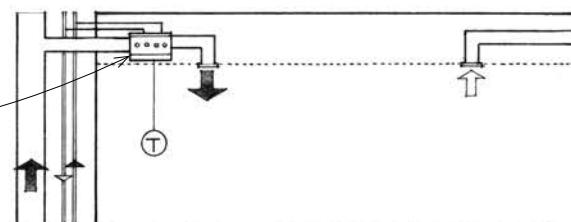
A single-duct, variable-air-volume (VAV) system uses dampers at the terminal outlets to control the flow of conditioned air according to the temperature requirements of each zone or space.



A dual-duct system uses separate ducts to deliver warm air and cool air to mixing boxes, which contain thermostatically controlled dampers. Mixing boxes proportion and blend the warm and cold air to reach the desired temperature before distributing the blended air to each zone or space.

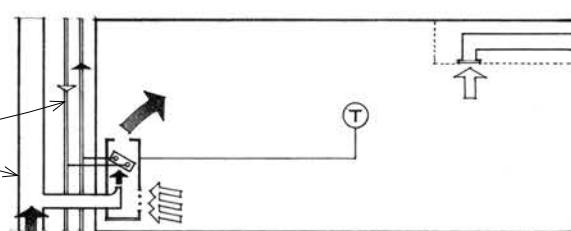


A terminal reheat system offers more flexibility in meeting changing space requirements. It supplies air at about 55°F (12°C) to terminals equipped with electric or hot-water reheat coils, which regulate the temperature of the air being furnished to each individually controlled zone or space.

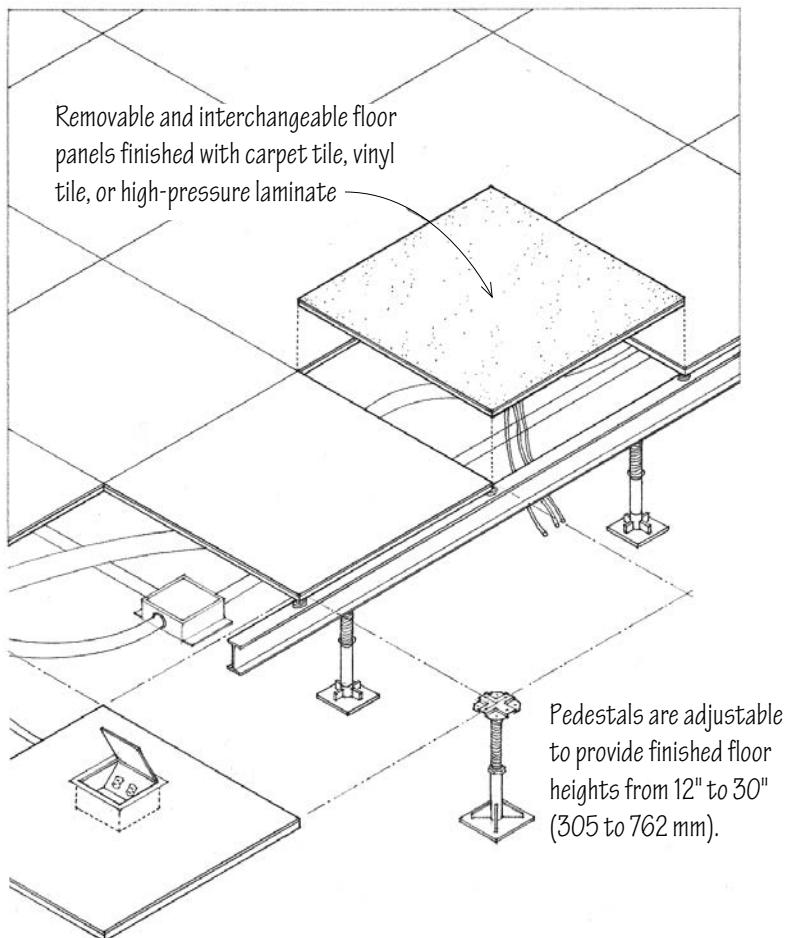


Air-Water Systems

Air-water systems use high-velocity ducts to supply conditioned primary air from a central plant to each zone or space, where it mixes with room air and is further heated or cooled in induction units.



UNDERFLOOR AIR DISTRIBUTION

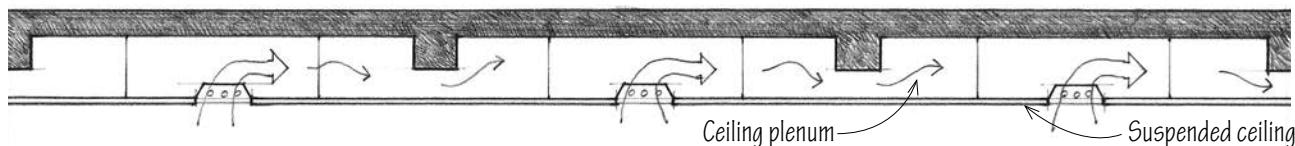


Underfloor air distribution (UFAD) systems are used with raised access flooring to distribute conditioned air in commercial buildings. They improve thermal comfort, and offer more efficient ventilation and better indoor air quality.

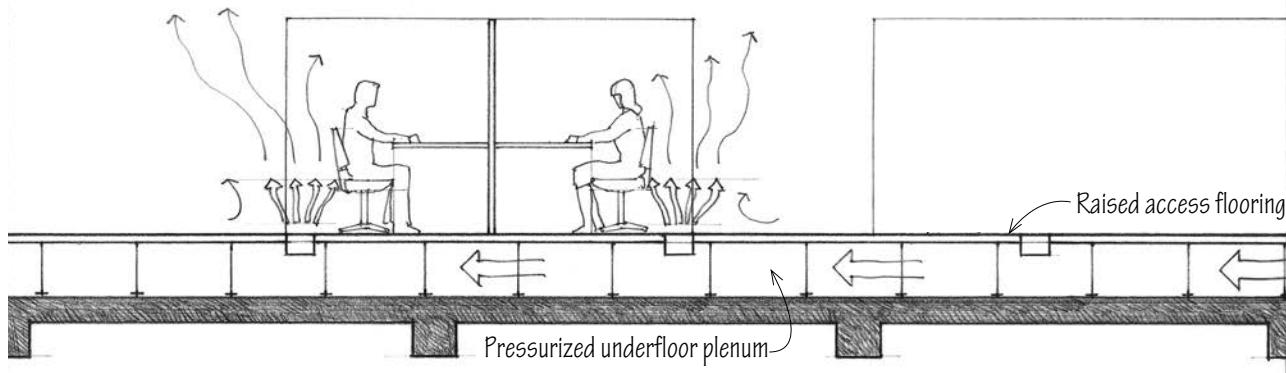
Raised access flooring consists of panels supported by pedestals. The plenum space below the panels can accommodate wiring and communications cabling, as well as air distribution and circulation.

In a UFAD system, conditioned air is typically ducted to the underfloor plenum, and then allowed to flow openly to the air supply outlets. The supply outlets are usually in the floor, but can be in partitions or at desktop level. The air is usually returned at ceiling level, where it travels through an open plenum.

The floor finish is often carpet tile, which allows easy access to equipment below the raised floor panels.



Natural convection moves warmer stagnant air toward the ceiling.

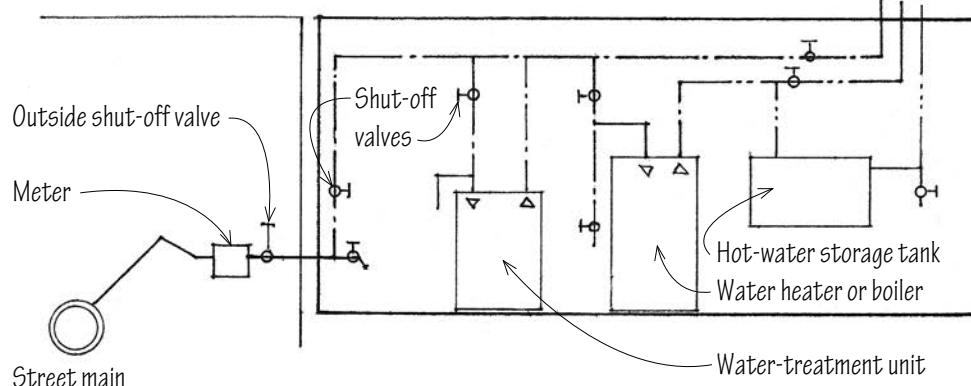
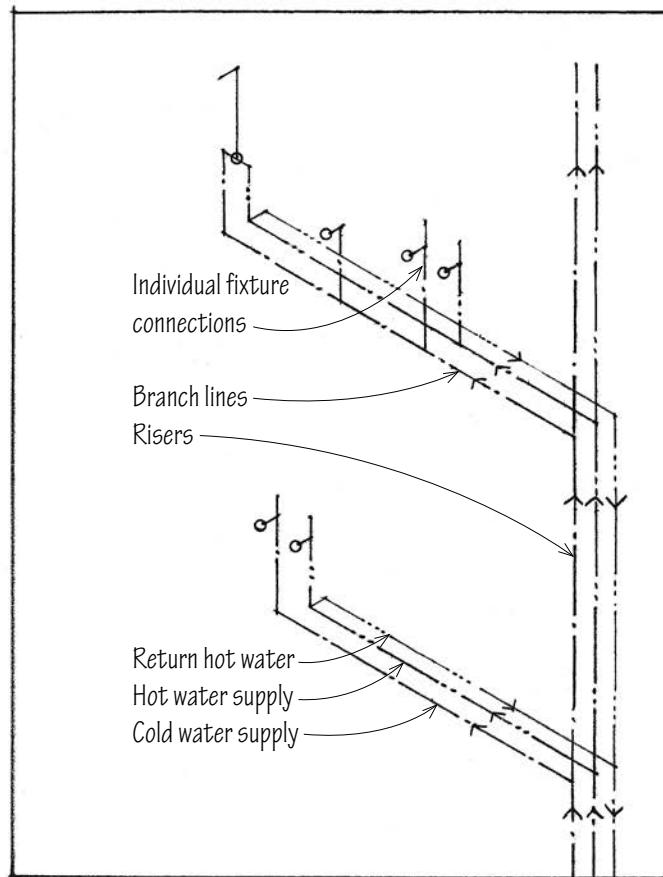


There are two separate but parallel networks in a water system. One supplies potable water for human use and consumption, as well as use by mechanical and fire protection systems. The other disposes of waterborne waste material once the water has been used.

Water is typically supplied to a building under pressure from a water main. The water supply system must overcome the forces of gravity and friction to deliver water up to the various points of use. The pressure required to upfeed water may come from the water main or from pumps within the building. When this pressure is insufficient, water can be pumped to an elevated storage tank for gravity downfeed.

A separate hot water supply system leads from the heater or boiler to each required fixture. Insulating pipes conserves heat as the water travels to its point of use. A solar water heater can supply renewable energy for hot water.

A series of valves is required to control the flow of water at each fixture, as well as to isolate one or more fixtures from the water supply system for repair and maintenance.



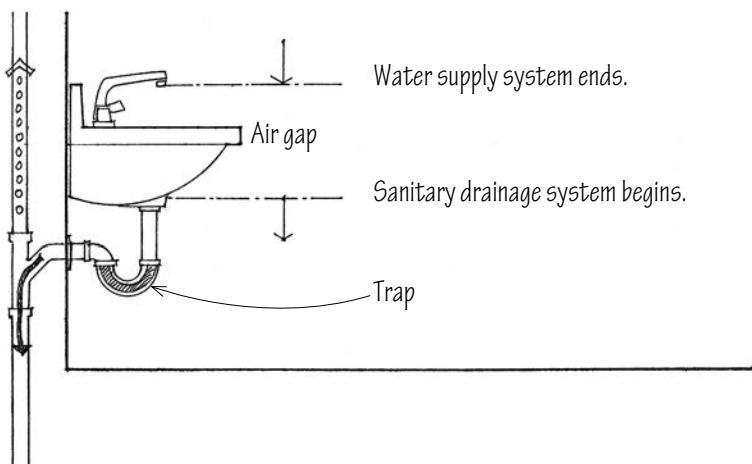
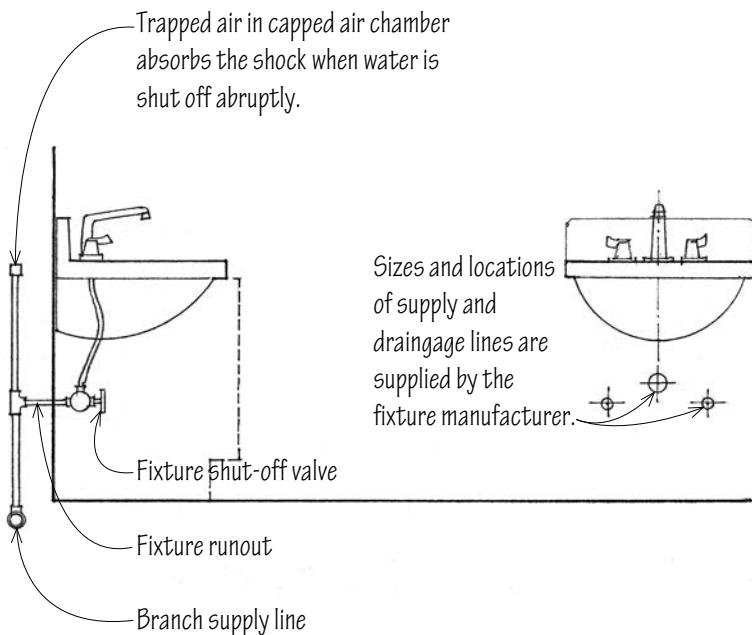
Many places in the world do not have adequate fresh water supplies, and conservation of this finite resource is an important component of sustainable design. Building codes mandate the use of water-efficient fixtures and valves in order to conserve water resources.

Plumbing fixtures receive water from a supply system and discharge the liquid waste into a sanitary drainage system. The two systems are kept separate to prevent contamination. An air gap between the spout of a faucet and the flood level of a receptacle prevents used or contaminated water from being siphoned into a supply pipe.

Shut-off valves allow the water supply to be shut off for repairs or in emergencies.

Access to shut-off valves must be maintained in any interior construction.

A trap is a U-shaped or S-shaped section of a plumbing fixture's drainpipe in which wastewater remains, forming a seal that prevents the passage of sewer gas without affecting the flow of water or sewage through the pipe.



Commonly called a toilet, a *water closet* consists of a ceramic bowl with a detachable, hinged seat and lid and a device for flushing with water. Commercial toilet installations use larger supply pipes with flushometer valves that, when actuated by direct water pressure, supply a fixed quantity of water to flush the fixtures. Water closets have large traps that are forced to siphon rapidly during the flushing process and are refilled with fresh water to retain the seal. A water closet must have a vent located nearby to prevent accidental siphoning between flushes.

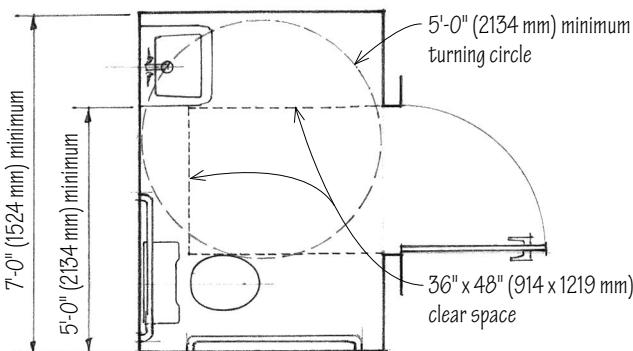
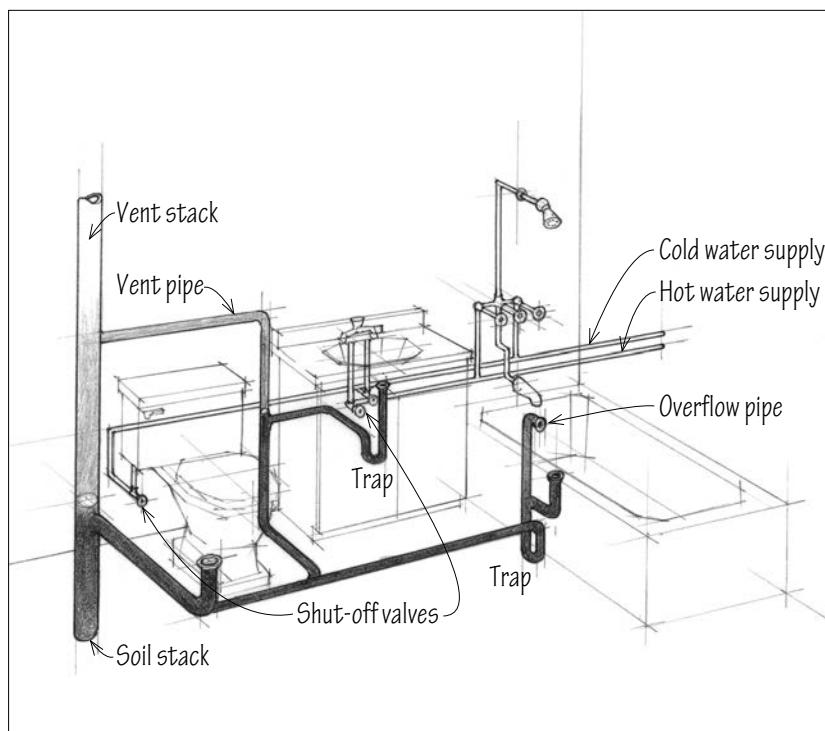
In the U.S., codes limit the amount of water used per flush to 1.6 gallons (6 liters). High-efficiency toilets (HETs) and pressure-assisted toilets are designed to function well with even less water than this. Dual-flush toilet controls allow the user to select a smaller or larger flush within these limits.

A toilet may have a round or an elongated bowl; the latter is required for accessible toilet fixtures. Toilets may be either floor- or wall-mounted. The height to the top of an accessible public toilet seat is mandated by the ADA.

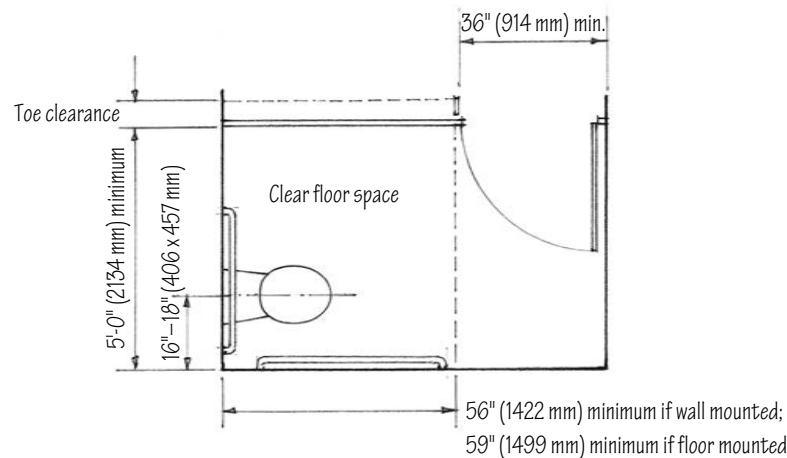
Urinals may be either wall-hung or stall-type installations; the latter are more convenient for young boys and for men in wheelchairs. Waterless urinals save water by using a hygienic liquid layer that allows urine to pass while acting as a barrier to sewer gases.

A bidet is a basinlike fixture designed to be straddled for personal cleansing. A washlet is a type of toilet seat that serves a similar purpose.

Accessibility codes detail the design of toilet stalls and rooms and set requirements for grab bars and minimum dimensions of approaches, turning radii, and clear floor spaces at toilet fixtures.



Accessible Toilet Room



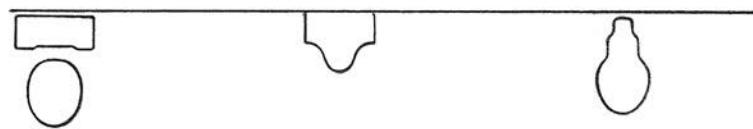
Accessible End Toilet Stall

PLUMBING FIXTURES

Plumbing fixtures may be made of the following materials.

- **Water closets, urinals, and bidets:**

Vitreous china



Water Closet

Width	20"-24" (508–610 mm)
Depth	22"-29" (559–737 mm)
Height	20"-28" (508–711 mm)

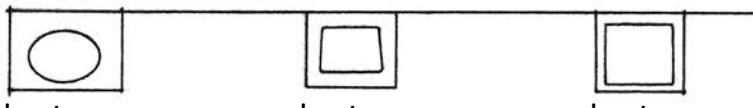
Urinal

Width	18" (457 mm)
Depth	12"-24" (305–610 mm)
Height	24" (610 mm)

Bidet

Width	14" (356 mm)
Depth	30" (762 mm)
Height	14" (356 mm)

- **Lavatories and utility sinks:** Hard, smooth, scrubbable materials, such as vitreous china, resin-based solid surfacing materials, enameled cast iron, enameled steel



Lavatory

Width	30"-36" (762 to 914 mm)
Depth	21" (533 mm)
Height	31" (787 mm) rim height

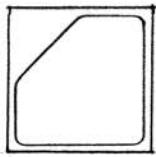
Lavatory

Width	18"-24" (457–610 mm)
Depth	16"-21" (406–533 mm)
Height	31" (787 mm) rim height

Lavatory

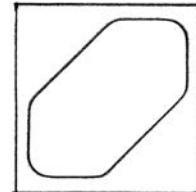
Width	18"-24" (457–610 mm)
Depth	16"-21" (406–533 mm)
Height	31" (787 mm) rim height

- **Shower receptacles:** Terrazzo, enameled steel, fiberglass, acrylic plastic
- **Shower enclosures:** Enameled steel, stainless steel, ceramic tile, fiberglass, acrylic, glass



Shower

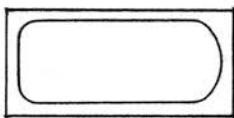
Width	30"-42" (762–1067 mm)
Depth	30"-42" (762–1067 mm)
Height	74"-80" (1880–2032 mm)



Square Bathtub

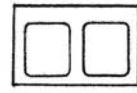
Width	44"-50" (1118–1270 mm)
Depth	44"-50" (1118–1270 mm)
Height	12"-16" (305–406 mm)

- **Bathtubs:** Acrylic, fiberglass, enameled cast iron, cultured marble



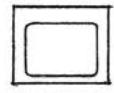
Bathtub

Width	42"-72" (1067–1829 mm)
Depth	30"-32" (762–813 mm)
Height	12"-20" (305–508 mm)



Double Bowl Sink

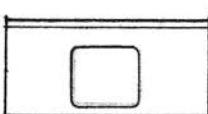
Width	28"-46" (711–1168 mm)
Depth	16"-21" (406–533 mm)
Height	8"-10" (203–254 mm)



Utility Sink

Width	22"-48" (559–1219 mm)
Depth	18"-22" (457–559 mm)
Height	27"-29" (686–737 mm) rim height

- **Kitchen sinks:** Enameled cast iron, enameled steel, stainless steel



Sink with Drainboards

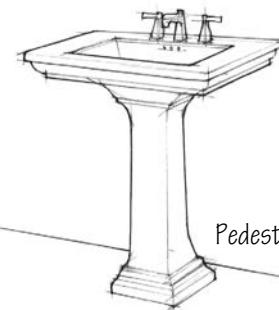
Width	54"-84" (1372–2134 mm)
Depth	21"-25" (533–635 mm)
Height	8" (203 mm)

A **lavatory** is a bowl or basin with running water for washing the face and hands. The term “sink” is used for service sinks, utility sinks, kitchen sinks, and laundry basins.

Wall-mounted lavatories require support and plumbing connections inside the wall. Countertop lavatories, including bowl-like vessel lavatories, are plumbed from below. Pedestal lavatories are freestanding, without a cabinet below.

Showers may be factory-made as a complete unit, installed as a shower pan, or completely built on-site. Where there is more than one shower in a public facility, the ADA requires at least one accessible shower. There are two types of accessible showers, transfer and roll-in; the latter allows the user to remain in a wheelchair while showering.

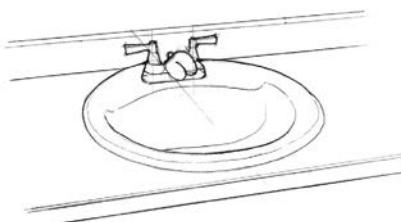
Bathtubs may be recessed into a three-walled alcove or set into a corner. Drop-in bathtubs are mounted on a platform or sunk below floor level. Freestanding bathtubs may be set on legs or installed directly onto the floor. Whirlpool tubs have motorized circulation jets, and are usually installed in a platform.



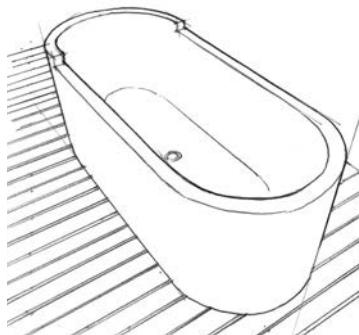
Pedestal lavatory



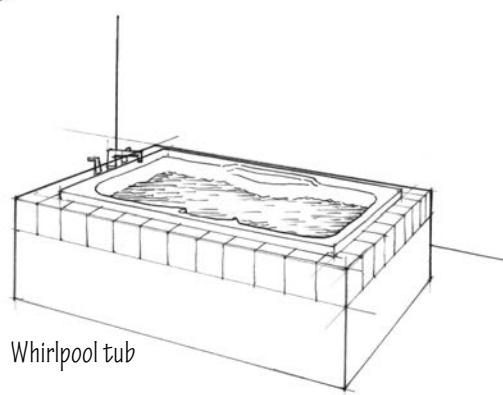
Wall-mounted lavatory



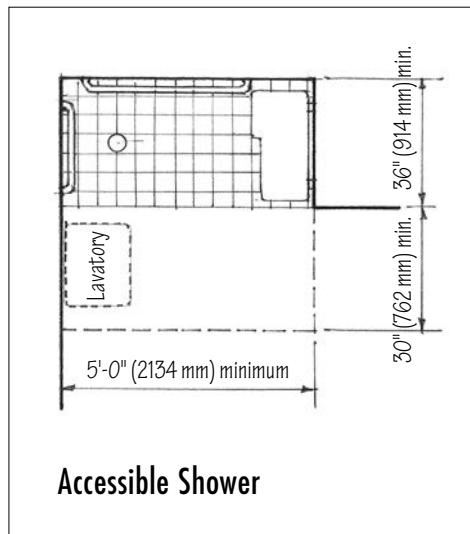
Countertop lavatory



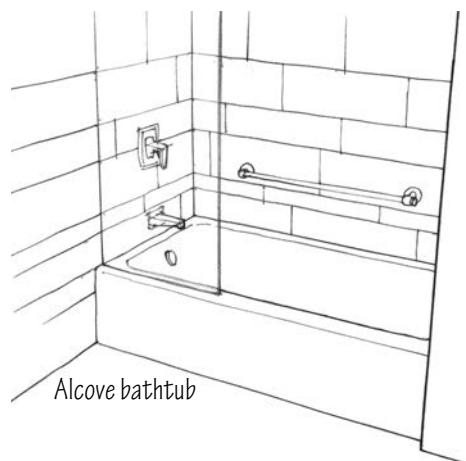
Freestanding bathtub



Whirlpool tub



Accessible Shower



Alcove bathtub

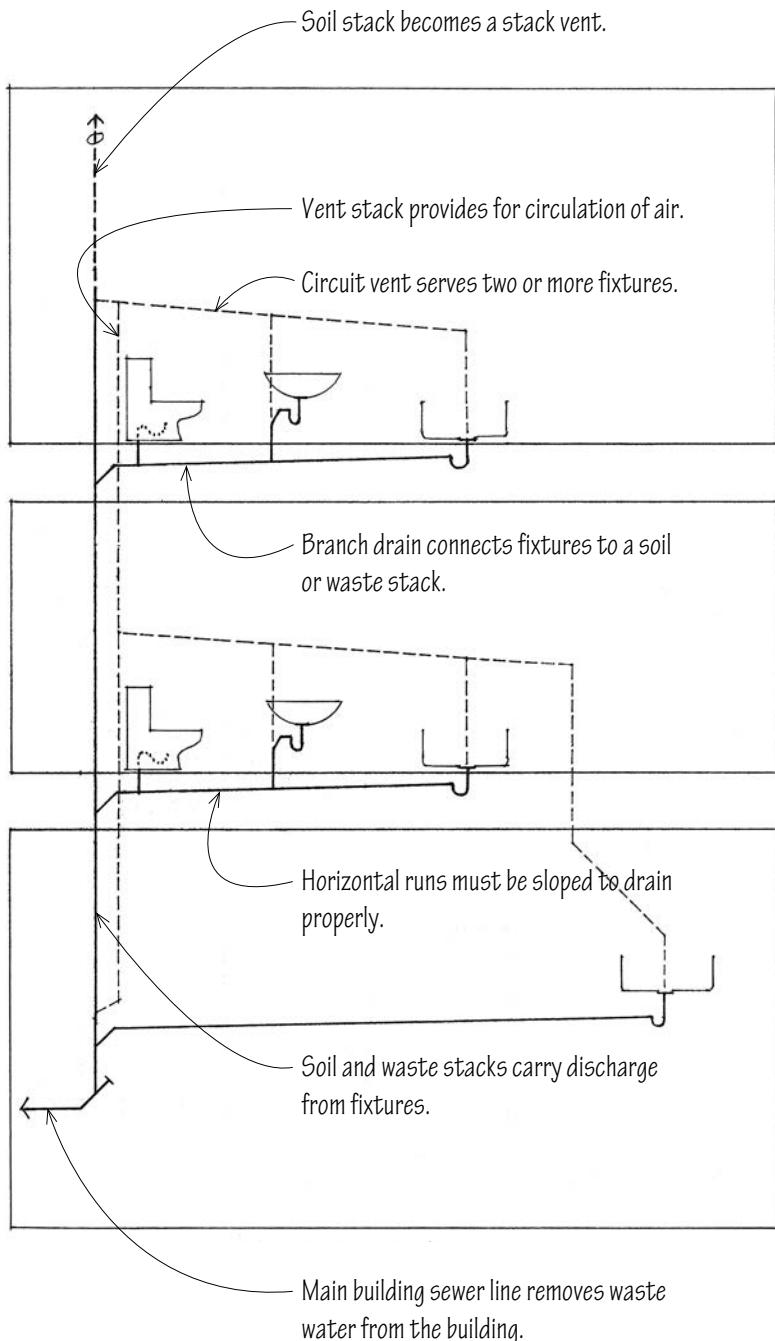
SANITARY DRAINAGE SYSTEMS

The water supply system terminates at each plumbing fixture. After the water has been drawn and used, it enters the sanitary drainage system. The primary objective of this drainage system is to dispose of fluid waste and organic matter as quickly and efficiently as possible.

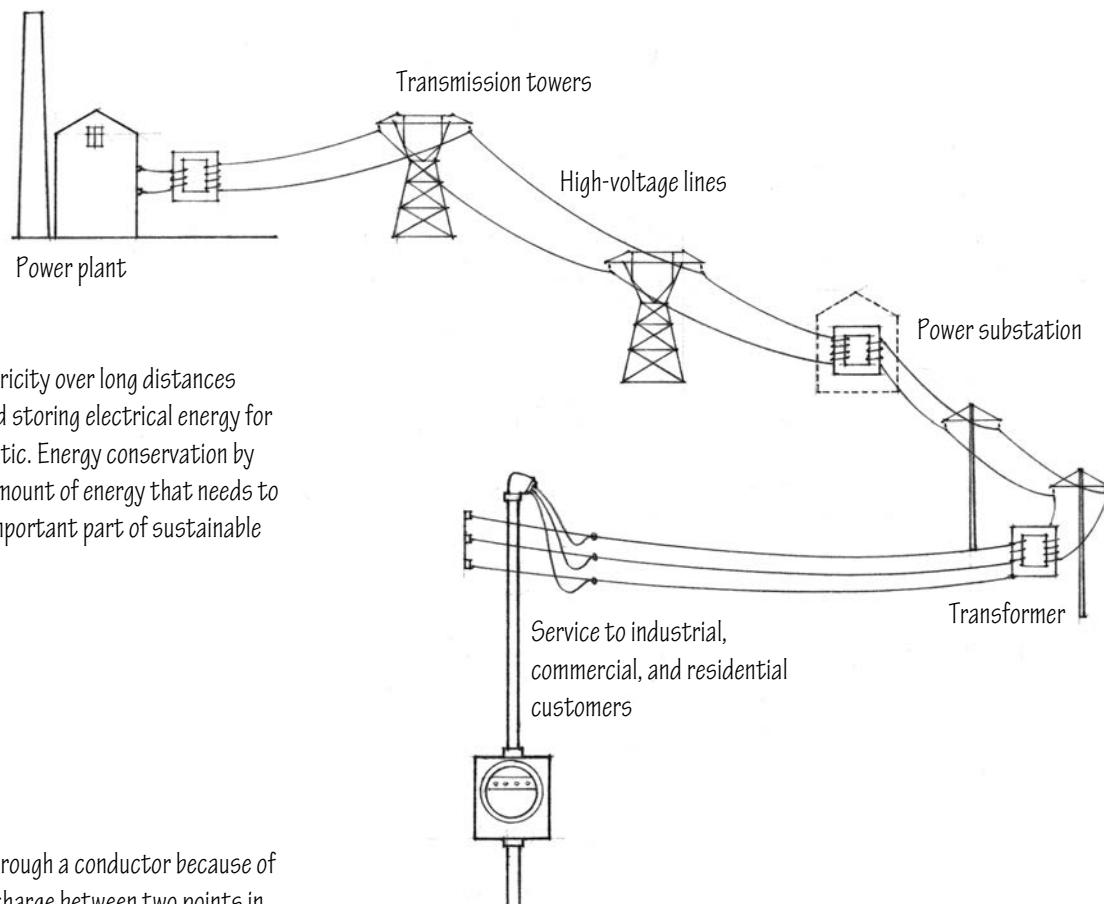
Because a sanitary drainage system relies on gravity for its discharge, its pipes are much larger than water supply lines, which are under pressure. There are restrictions on the length and slope of horizontal runs and on the types and number of turns for drainage pipes.

Gases are formed in drainage pipes by the decomposition of waste matter. To prevent these gases from entering the interior spaces of a building, traps or water seals are required at each fixture.

In addition, the entire sanitary drainage system must be vented to outside air. Venting prevents water seals in traps from being siphoned out and allows air to circulate within the system.



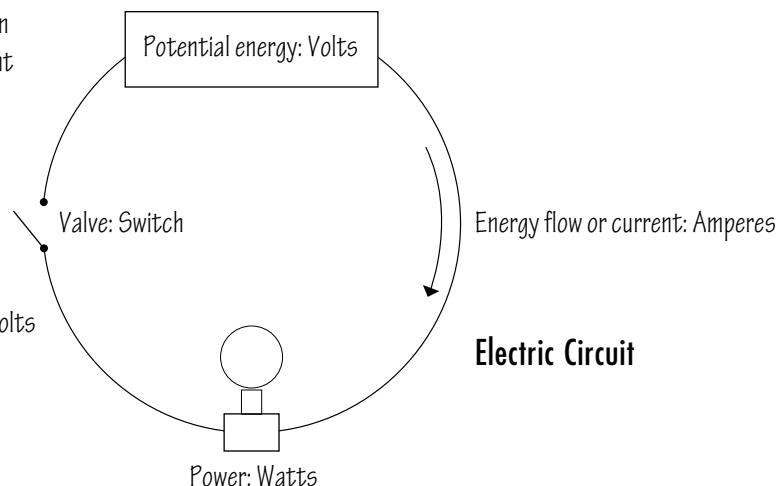
More than half of the electrical energy generated in the U.S. comes from coal, which is a finite fossil fuel source. Deriving energy from coal damages landscapes and produces pollutants, while converting only one-third of its energy potential to electricity. Other existing and developing sources include hydroelectric power, nuclear energy, wind power, solar (photovoltaic) power, natural-gas-powered fuel cells, solid-waste incineration, and biomass fuels.



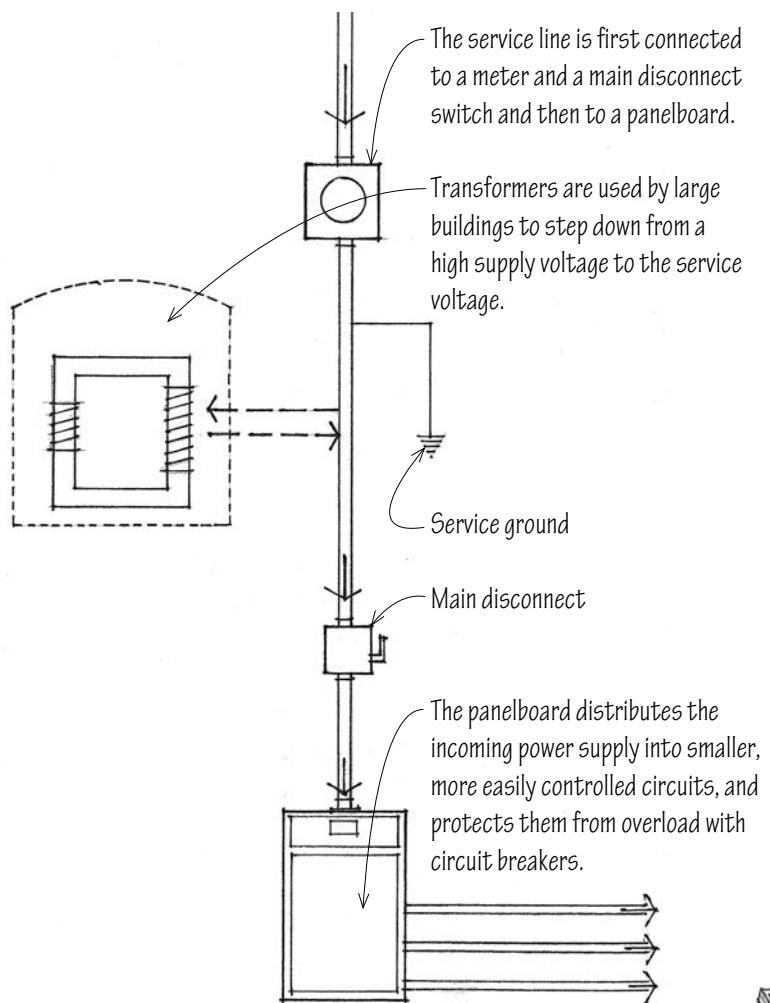
The transmission of electricity over long distances results in energy loss, and storing electrical energy for later use can be problematic. Energy conservation by the user decreases the amount of energy that needs to be generated, and is an important part of sustainable design.

Electrical energy flows through a conductor because of a difference in electrical charge between two points in a circuit. This potential energy is measured in *volts*. The actual amount of energy flow or current is measured in *amperes*. The power required to keep an electric current flowing is measured in *watts*.

$$\text{Power in watts} = \text{Current in amperes} \times \text{Pressure in volts}$$

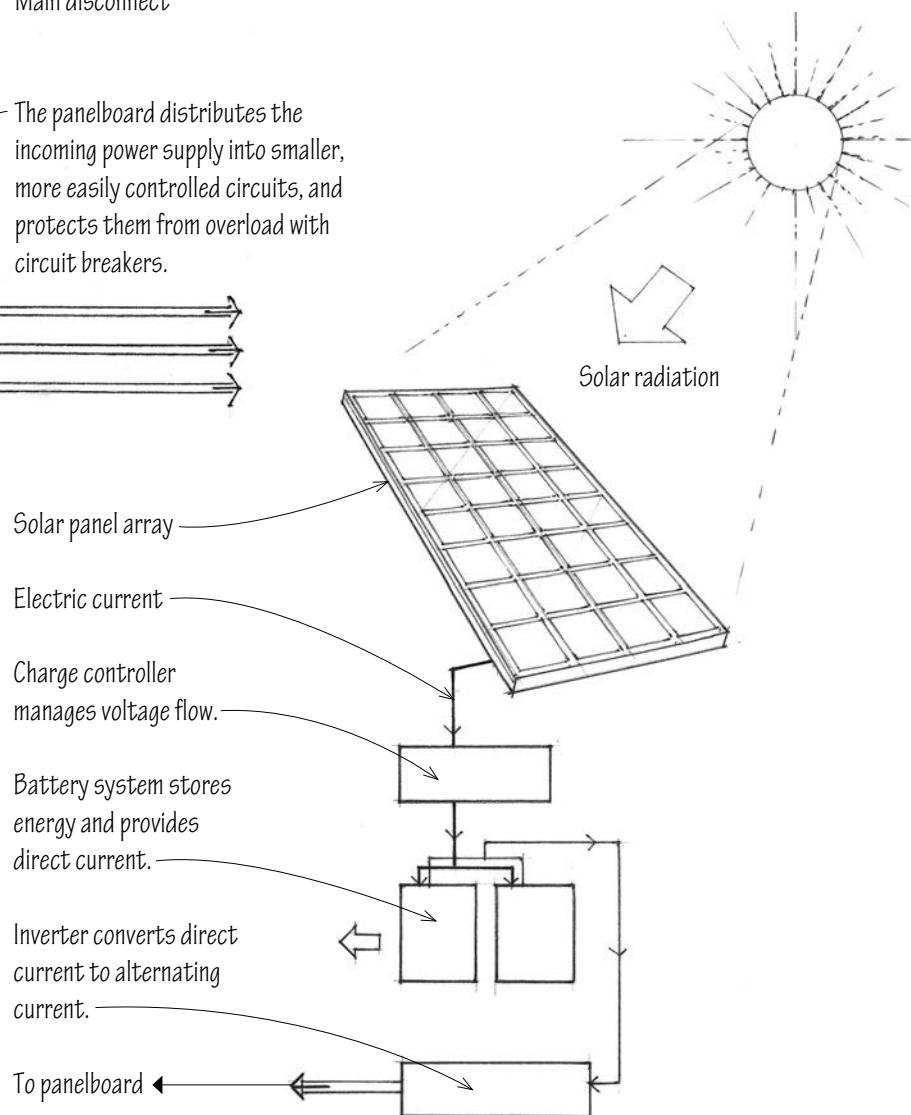


ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS



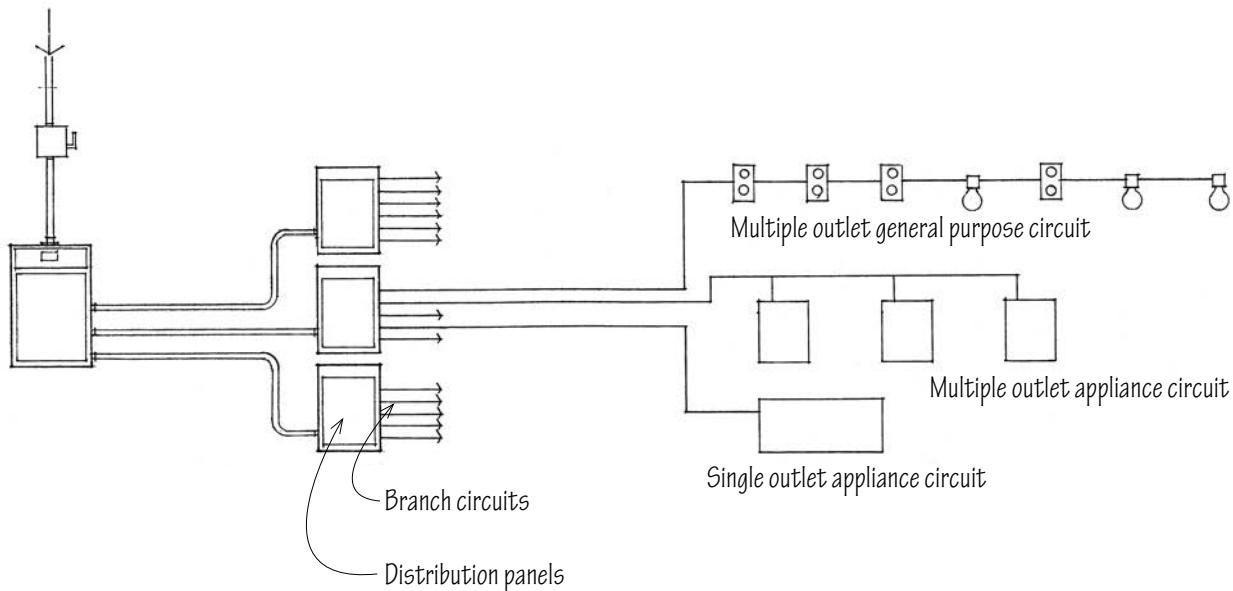
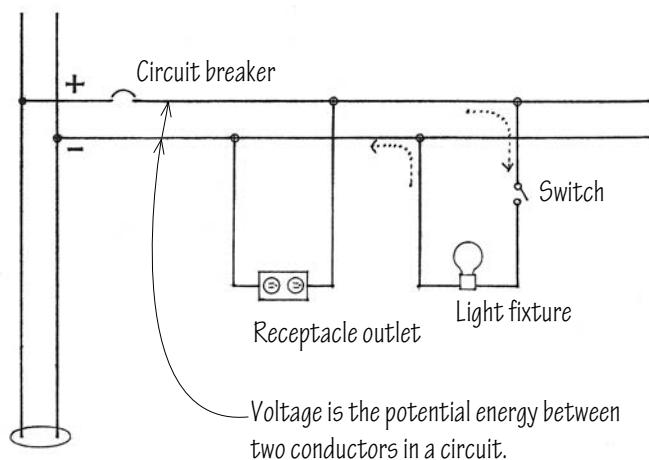
The electrical power system of a building supplies power for lighting, heating, and the operation of electrical equipment and appliances. This system should be installed to operate safely, reliably, and efficiently. A second system of wiring provides connections for data, communications, and control equipment and for security systems.

Power is usually supplied to a building by the electric utility company. Most electric power is used in the form of alternating current (AC); large pieces of machinery use direct current (DC). Photovoltaic (PV) technology converts sunlight directly into electricity. Site-generated PV uses direct current, which is then converted to AC and usually tied into the central electrical energy grid.



For electric current to flow, a circuit must be complete. Switches control current flow by introducing breaks in a circuit until power is required.

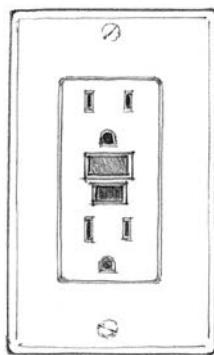
Branch circuits distribute electric power to the interior spaces of a building. The wiring in a circuit is sized according to the amount of current it must carry. A fuse or circuit breaker in the distribution panel disconnects a circuit when too much current is drawn for its wiring.



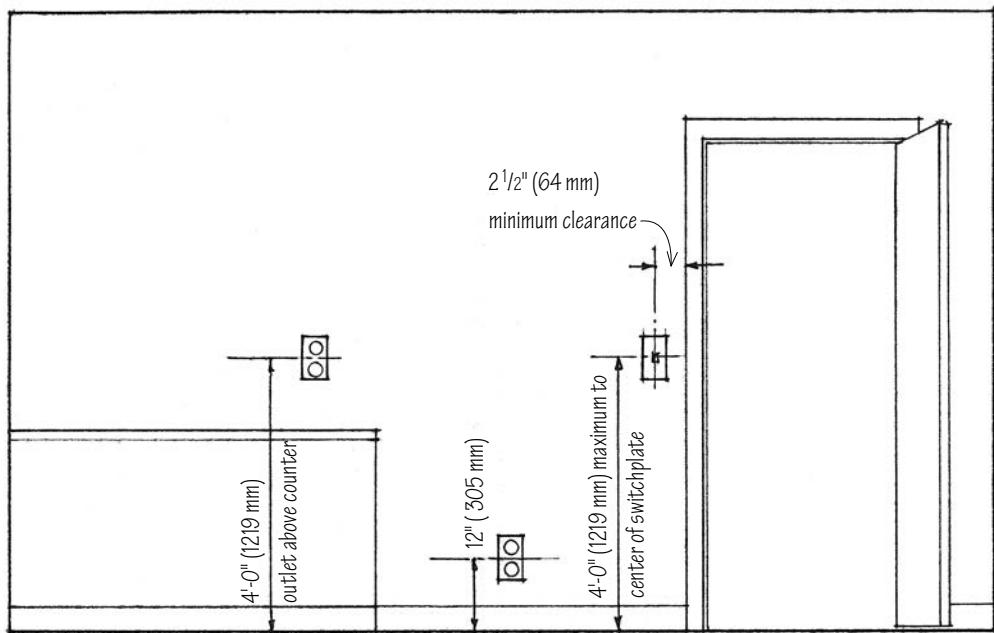
Low-voltage circuits carry alternating current below 50V, supplied by a step-down transformer from the normal line voltage. These circuits are used in residential systems to control heating and cooling systems, window treatments, and remote lighting fixtures. Low-voltage wiring does not require a protective raceway such as conduit.

Electrical systems are designed by electrical engineers. The interior designer often provides information on the location of lighting fixtures, power outlets, and the switches that control their operation. The designer should be aware of the power requirements of an electrical installation so that they can be coordinated with the existing or planned circuits.

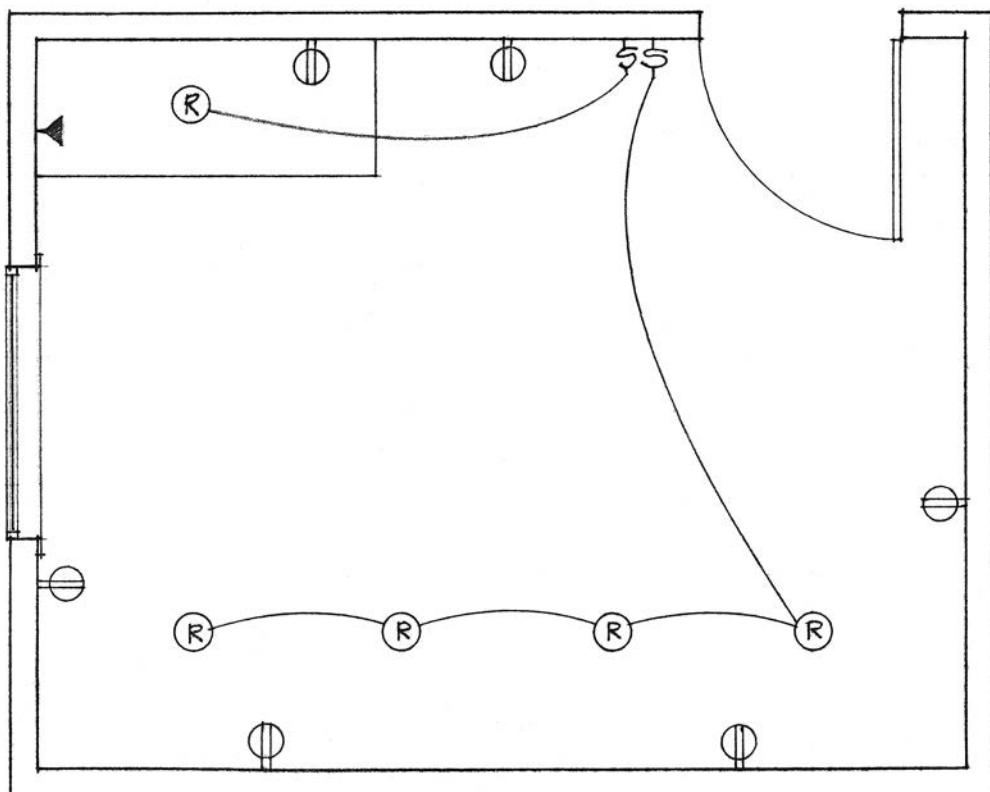
Load requirements for lighting fixtures and electrically powered equipment are specified by their manufacturer. The design load for a general-purpose circuit, however, depends on the number of receptacles served by the circuit and how they are used. The National Electrical Code (NEC) should be consulted for these requirements.



Ground fault circuit interrupters (GFCIs) are required along with circuit breakers in circuits where there is an increased hazard of accidental electrical shock, such as near a bathroom sink. If the GFCI senses any leakage of current from the circuit, it will disconnect the circuit instantly and completely.



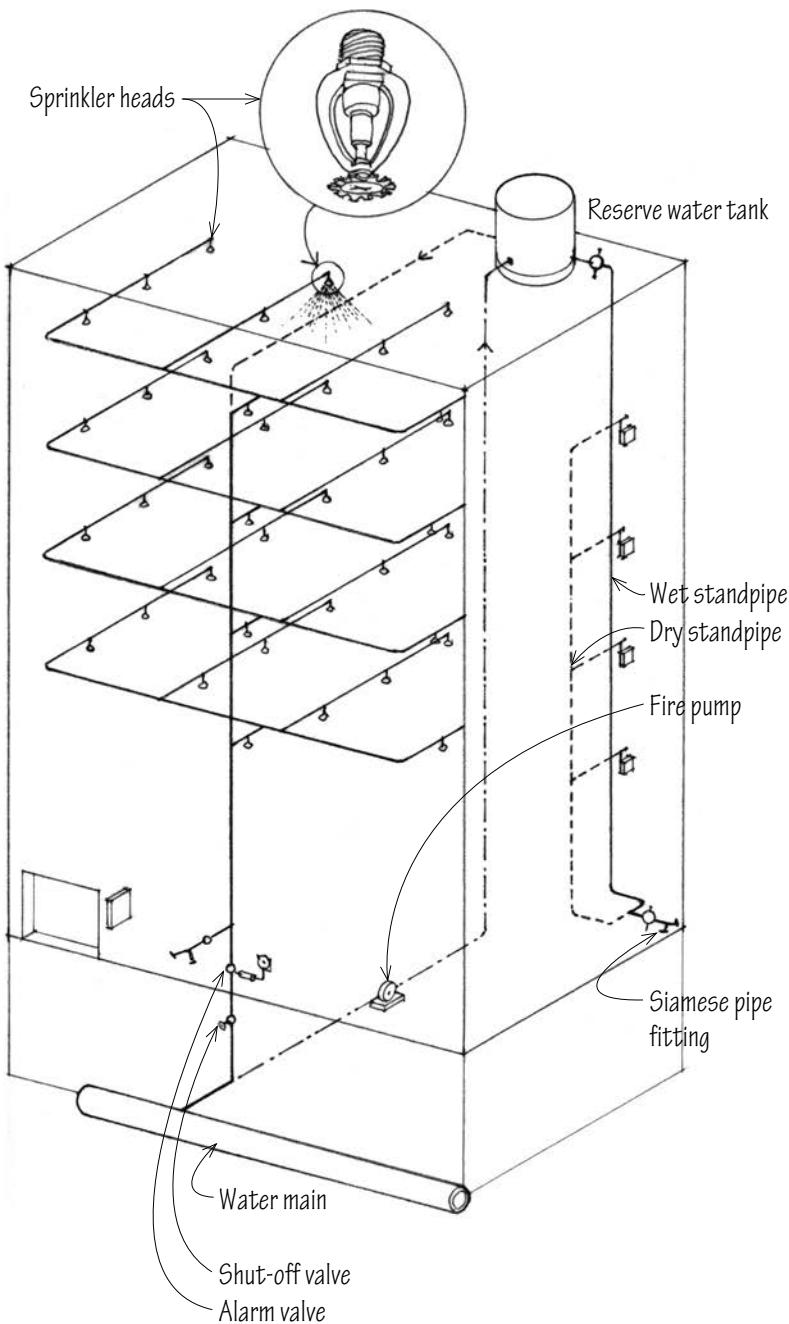
Heights of Switches and Outlets



Typical Electrical and Lighting Plan

Common Electrical Symbols

	Power panel
	Lighting panel
	Transformer
	Generator
	Motor
	Disconnect switch
	Single-pole switch
	Three-way switch
	Switched receptacle
	Dimmer switch
	Duplex outlet
	Floor duplex outlet
	Telephone outlet
	Thermostat
	Fluorescent fixture
	Ceiling incandescent
	Wall incandescent
	Track light
	Recessed light
	Exit light outlet
	Special purpose outlet
	Television outlet
	Chime
	Pushbutton
	Fan receptacle
	Junction box
	Underfloor junction box
	Computer data outlet



Fire alarm and suppression systems connect electrical sensing and annunciation devices to a system that carries water to the location of a fire. Many parts of these systems are highly visible within the finished interior space and must, therefore, be integrated into the interior design while remaining unblocked.

Automatic sprinkler systems are fed from very large pipes that branch out to supply water to grids of sprinkler heads. Sprinkler heads are nozzles for dispersing a stream or spray of water, usually controlled by a fusible link that melts at a predetermined temperature. When the system detects a fire, water sprays out of the closest sprinkler heads to drown the fire. Sprinkler heads are available in upright, pendant, and sidewall types, and can be recessed or capped in finished ceilings. Their locations are dictated by code, and they must not be painted once installed. The interior designer should coordinate ceiling design elements, including lighting fixtures, with the location of sprinkler heads.

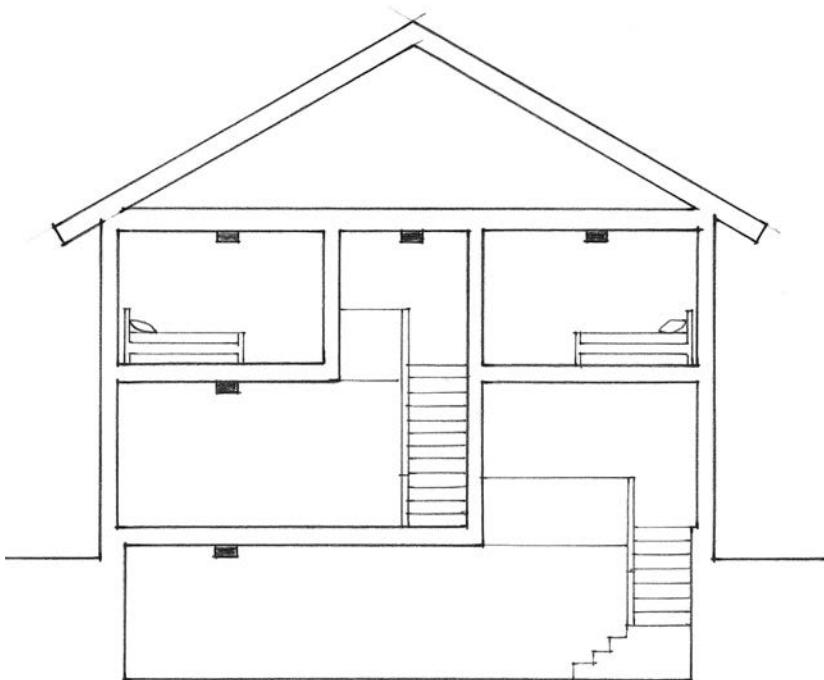
Many buildings have standpipes extending vertically through the building, to supply fire hoses at every floor. A fire pump maintains required water pressure in the standpipe system. A Siamese pipe fitting provides two or more connections through which the fire department can pump water to a standpipe or sprinkler system.

Fire and smoke detectors are categorized by their ability to detect incipient, smoldering, or flaming fires, or abrupt rises in heat. Residential smoke detectors are required outside and adjacent to each sleeping area, in each sleeping room, and at the head of every stair, with at least one detector on every level, including the basement.

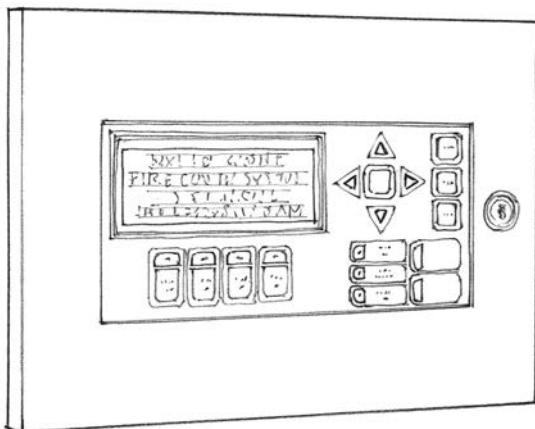
Fire alarms usually include both a flashing light and an audible alarm. Typically, these fire alarms are bright red and conspicuously mounted on walls or ceilings. They are intended to be seen easily by building occupants and may not be concealed or camouflaged.

Annunciator panels may be located at building entrances and other strategic sites to help firefighters identify the location of fires. They are sometimes quite large, bright red, and very conspicuous.

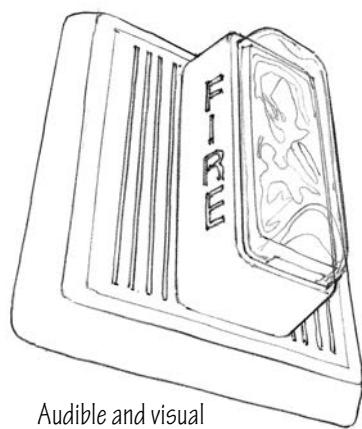
Many buildings are supplied with communications systems designed to alert occupants of conditions during an emergency and to allow firefighters to keep in touch while fighting a fire. Some buildings also have a central emergency desk with controls.



Smoke Detector Locations



Annunciator panel



Audible and visual fire alarm

STANDARDS AND CODES

This section outlines some considerations of a system that, while not immediately visible, affects the design of a building and its interior spaces. This system consists of a variety of laws and regulations enacted by federal, state, and local governments, in an effort to protect the public health, safety, and general welfare.

Zoning regulations control the size, location, and use of buildings. Building codes regulate how a building is constructed and occupied. Many of these regulations incorporate standards established by governmental or independent testing agencies.

While architects and engineers bear the primary responsibility for complying with code requirements, the interior designer should be aware of these regulatory devices and their effect on the design of interior spaces. It should also be remembered that codes often set minimum standards, and mere compliance will not ensure that a building will be efficient, comfortable, or well designed.

The applicable building code usually specifies minimum standards for the structural stability of a building and the quality and design of its materials and construction. When planning the interior of a new building or the remodeling of an existing one, the designer should consult an architect or engineer if any alterations to a building's structural elements are anticipated.

Model Codes and Sponsoring Organizations

International Code Council, Inc. (ICC)
International Building Code
International Residential Code
International Energy Conservation Code
International Plumbing Code
International Mechanical Code
International Existing Building Code

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)
NFPA 1 Fire Code
NFPA 70 National Electrical Code
NFPA 101 Life Safety Code

Organizations That Issue Standards

ANSI	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	American Society for Testing and Materials
FHA	Federal Housing Administration
GSA	General Services Administration
HUD	Department of Housing and Urban Development
NFPA	National Fire Protection Association
NIST	National Institute of Standards and Technology
UL	Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

Fire Safety Codes

Fire safety is a prime area of concern of building codes. Requirements for the noncombustibility or fire resistance of a building's structural elements and exterior walls are specified according to the building's occupancy, floor area, height, and location. In addition, fire-resistant walls and doors may be required, to subdivide a building into separate areas and prevent a fire in one area from spreading to others.

Even when a building's structure would not support combustion, a fire can occur because of its finish materials and contents. This is of particular significance for interior designers when specifying wall, floor, and ceiling finishes and furnishings such as carpet, draperies, and upholstery. Regulations may prohibit the use of materials with a low flash point or set standards for the degree of flame spread and smoke emission allowed.

Sprinkler systems are increasingly being relied on to control fire. In addition, a fire/smoke detector and alarm system is usually required to warn of fire.

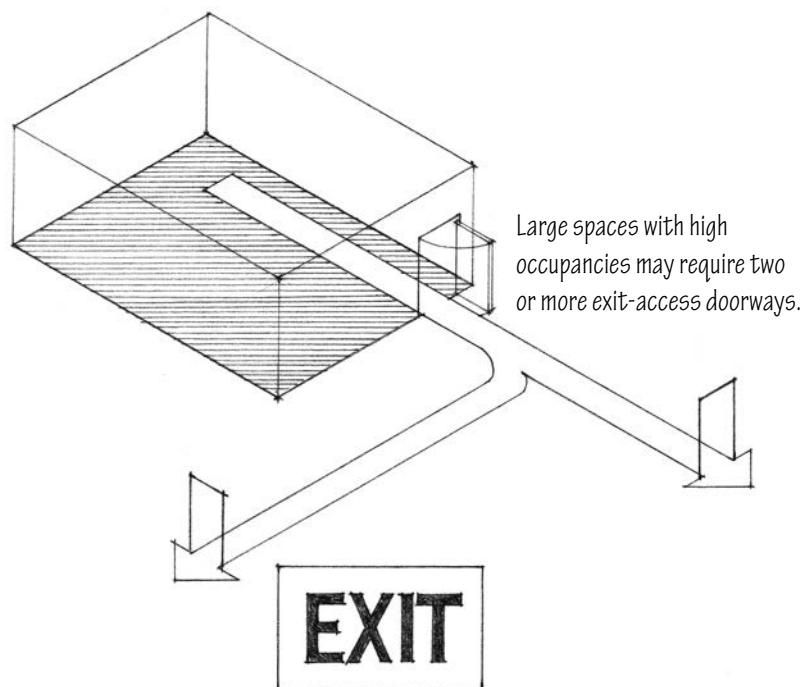
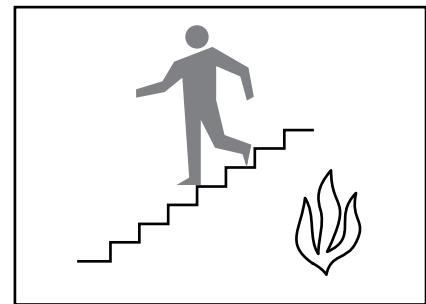
Means of Egress

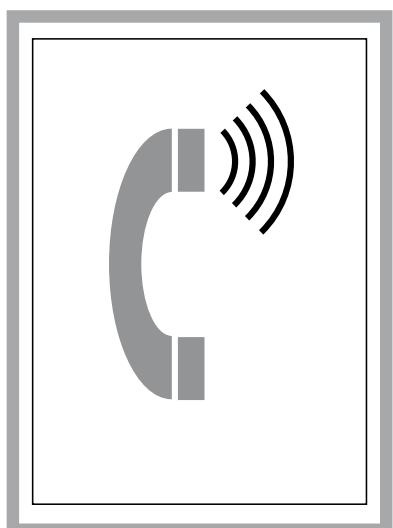
The means of egress requirements of fire codes provide for the safe and efficient evacuation of a building in case of fire or other emergency. These requirements are usually based on a building's size, construction, and type of occupancy. In principle, there should be at least two separate ways of exiting a building from any space, in case one route is cut off by fire or smoke. Exit passages, stairs, ramps, and doorways should be clearly marked, well lit, and wide enough to accommodate the appropriate number of occupants. Exit doors should swing outward in the direction of travel and, in places of public assembly, be equipped with fire exit hardware that will unlatch under pressure.

Health and Safety Codes

In addition to structural and fire safety, general areas of health and safety are dealt with in building codes. These include the design of stairways in terms of allowable riser-to-tread ratios, minimum widths based on occupancy, the use of landings, and requirements for handrails. Restaurants, healthcare facilities, and other interior spaces may have additional health code requirements.

For habitable spaces, natural light must be provided by exterior glazed openings, and natural ventilation by means of exterior openings. These requirements are usually based on a percentage of a room's floor area. For some types of occupancy, artificial light and a mechanically operated ventilating system can be substituted.





Accessibility

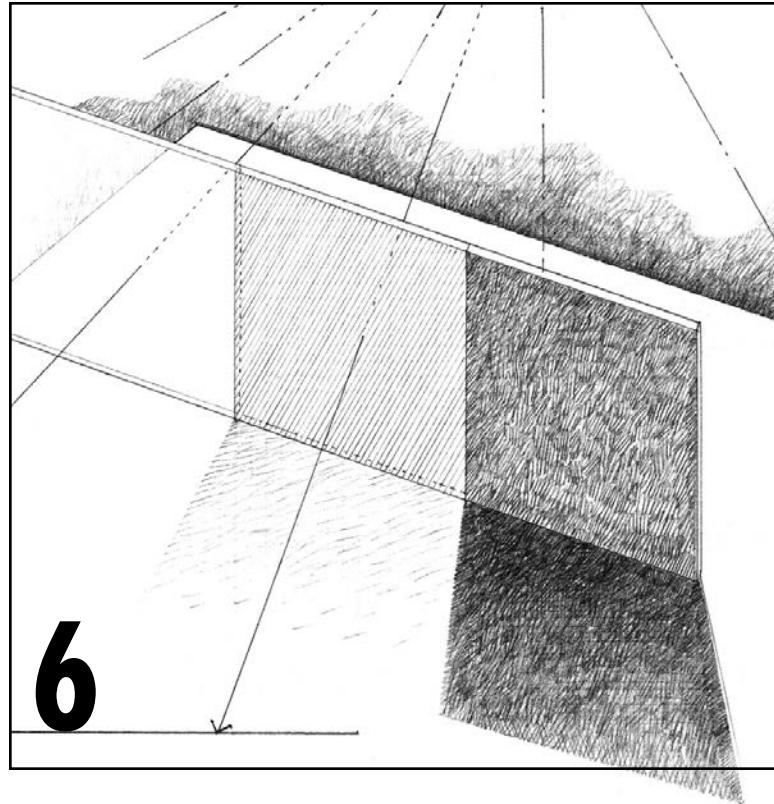
The Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) of 1990 is federal legislation that requires buildings to be made accessible to persons with physical and certain defined mental disabilities, as a civil right. Access is to be provided for people with all types of disabilities, not just for people with mobility impairments. These include people with hearing, vision, speech, and cognitive impairments, as well as persons of short stature and those with limited mobility not necessarily requiring the use of a wheelchair. The ADA also requires that barriers to access be removed from existing buildings where such work is readily achievable.

Specific concerns affecting interiors include accessible routes, plumbing fixtures and facilities, communication elements, and built-in elements. Wheelchair spaces and sight lines for assembly spaces, and clearances for kitchens, medical facilities, and guest rooms are among the considerations for special spaces that are covered by the Act.

Designers should first concentrate on complying with codes and standards adopted locally, and also keep national statutory requirements such as the ADA in mind. It is prudent to review design work against the *2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design* at the same time as the model code review.

Energy Conservation Codes

The International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) contains requirements for energy-efficient design. Many states and local jurisdictions have adopted their own energy conservation codes that may have quite different standards than this model code. Energy conservation codes limit a building's total energy use, including lighting and electrical power and mechanical systems, and require documentation of the design and calculation of the energy loads to ensure compliance. Limits for lighting use are integrated into the total building energy design and can strongly affect the interior designer's work.

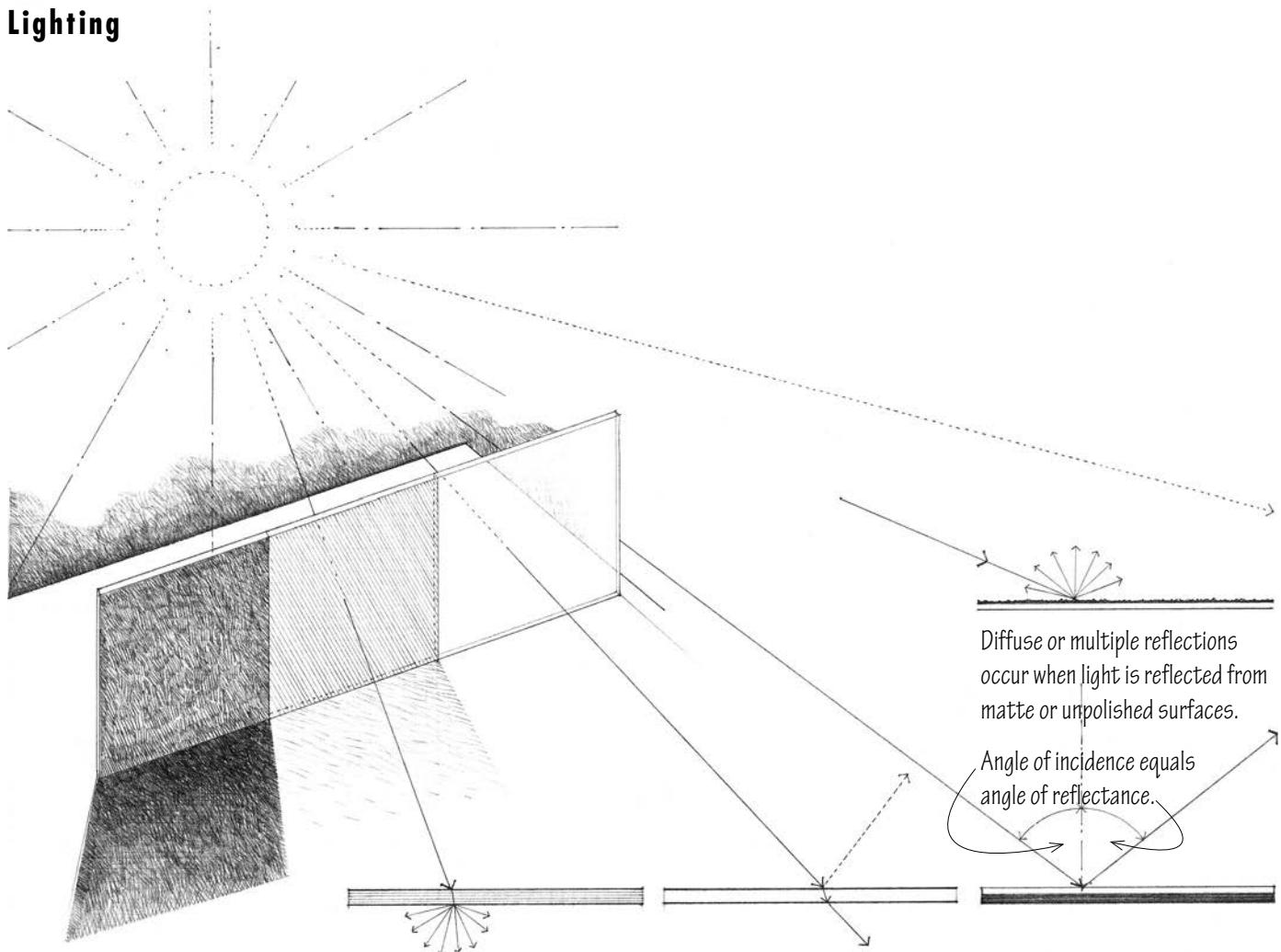


Lighting and Acoustics

Light is radiant energy. It radiates equally in all directions and spreads over a larger area as it emanates from its source. As it spreads, it also diminishes in intensity according to the square of its distance from the source.

As it moves, light reveals to our eyes the surfaces and forms of objects in space. An object in its path will reflect or absorb the light striking its surface, or allow it to pass through.

Lighting



Opaque materials block the transmission of light and cast shadows.

Diffused transmission occurs through translucent materials, such as frosted glass. The light source is not clearly visible.

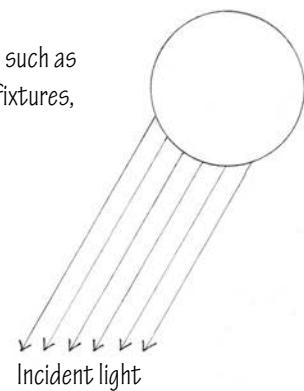
Nondiffuse transmission occurs through clear, transparent materials, such as glass and some plastics.

Specular reflection occurs when light is reflected from a shiny, opaque surface.

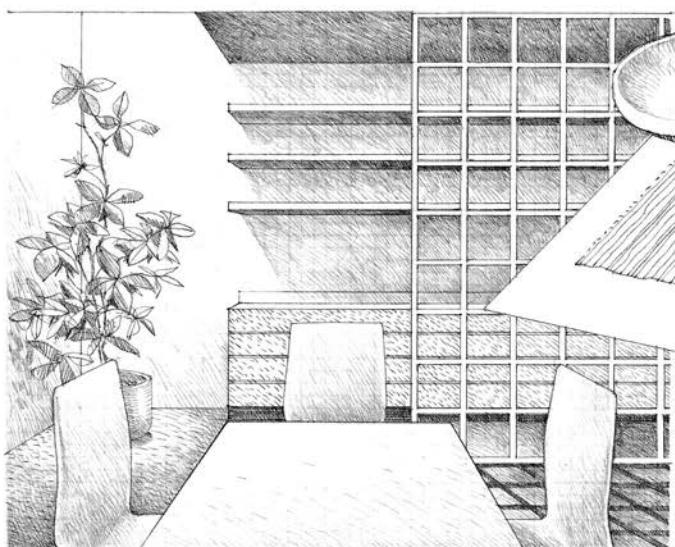
The sun, stars, and electric lamps are visible to us because of the light they generate. Most of what we see, however, is visible because of the light that is reflected from the surfaces of objects. Our ability to see well—that is, to discern shape, color, and texture, and to differentiate one object from another—is affected not only by the amount of light available for illumination but also by the following factors:

- Brightness
- Contrast
- Glare
- Diffusion
- Color

Luminous objects, such as translucent light fixtures, emit light.



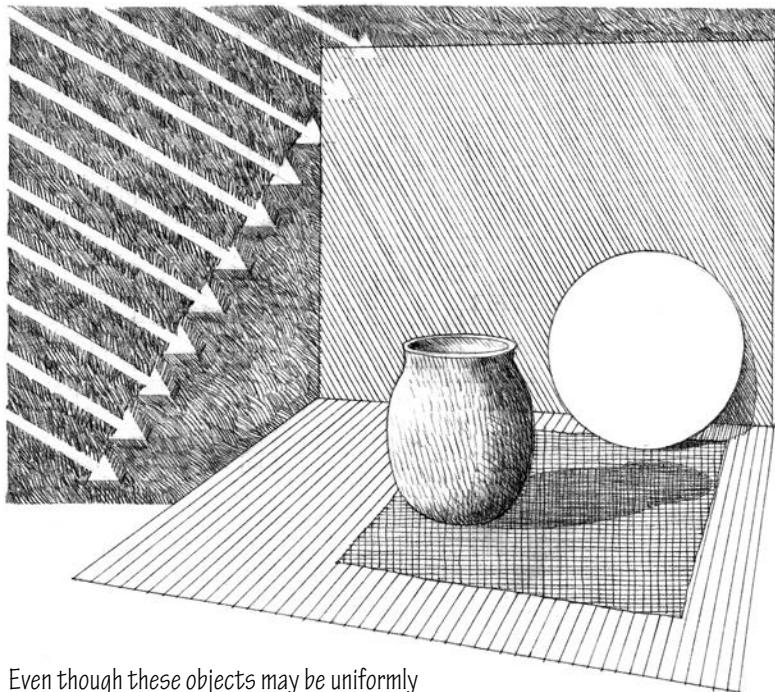
Objects become visible when they are illuminated and their surfaces reflect or transmit incident light.



Light reveals the shape, color, and texture of objects.



BRIGHTNESS

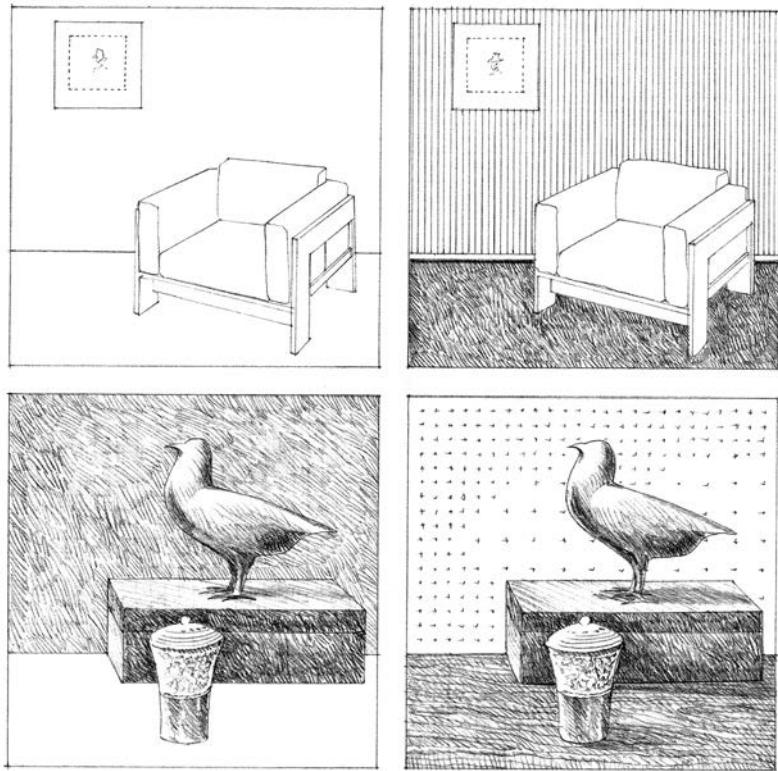


Even though these objects may be uniformly illuminated, their surfaces differ in brightness according to their color value and texture and, consequently, their ability to reflect light.

$$\text{Brightness} = \text{Illumination} \times \text{Reflectance}$$

Brightness refers to how much light energy is reflected by a surface. The degree of brightness of an object, in turn, depends on the color value and texture of its surface. A shiny, light-colored surface will reflect more light than a dark, matte, or rough-textured surface, even though both surfaces are lit with the same amount of illumination.

Generally speaking, visual acuity increases with object brightness. Of equal importance is the relative brightness between the object being viewed and its surroundings. To make its shape, form, and texture discernible, some degree of contrast or brightness ratio is required. For example, a white object on an equally bright white background would be difficult to see, as would a dark object seen against a dark background.

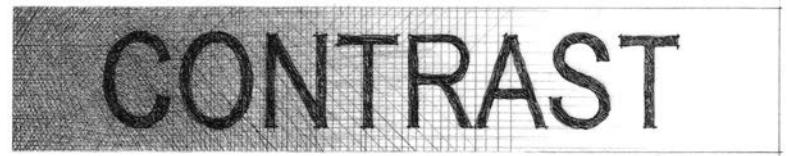


Contrast in brightness aids our perception of shape and form.

Contrast between an object and its background is especially critical for visual tasks that require the discrimination of shape and contour. An obvious example of this need for contrast is the printed page, where dark letters can best be read when printed on light paper.

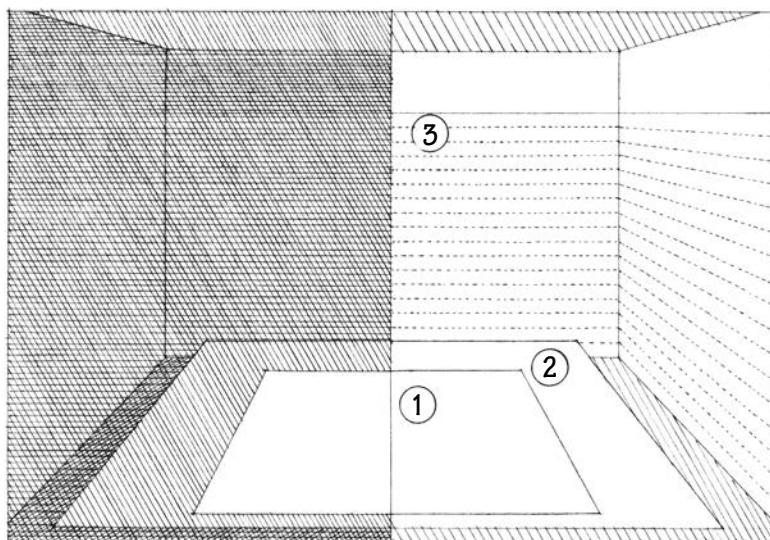
For seeing tasks requiring discrimination of surface texture and detail, less contrast between the surface and its background is desirable because our eyes adjust automatically to the average brightness of a scene. Someone seen against a brightly illuminated background would be silhouetted well, but it would be difficult to discern that person's facial features.

The surface brightness of a task area should be the same as its background, or be just a bit brighter. A maximum brightness ratio of 3:1 between the task surface and its background is generally recommended. Between the task area and the darkest part of the surrounding room, the brightness ratio should not exceed 5:1. Higher brightness ratios can lead to glare and associated problems of eye fatigue and loss in visual performance.



High background brightness is helpful in delineating shape and outline.

To aid in discriminating surface detail, surface brightness must be increased.



Surrounding area (3) should range from $\frac{1}{5}$ to 5 times the brightness of the task area (1).

The maximum recommended brightness ratio between the visual task area (1) and its immediate background (2) is 3:1.

GLARE



Contrasting brightness levels can be desirable in certain situations.

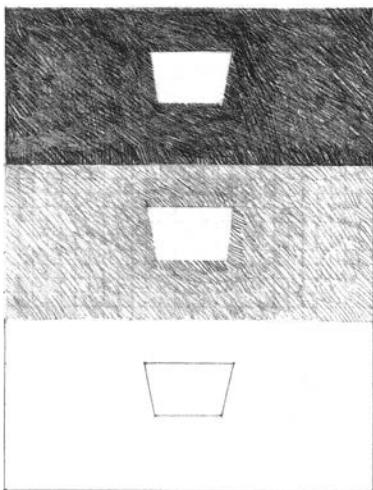


Direct glare is caused by the brightness of light sources within a person's normal field of vision.

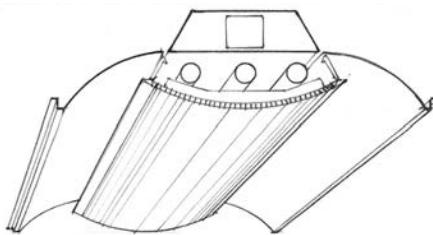
Although our eyes prefer even lighting, particularly between a task surface and its background, our eyes are able to adapt to a wide range of brightness levels. We can respond to a minimum brightness ratio of 2:1 as well as to a maximum of 100:1 or more, but only over a period of time; our eyes cannot respond immediately to extreme changes in lighting levels. Once our eyes have adjusted to a certain lighting level, any sudden significant increase in brightness can lead to glare, eyestrain, and impairment of visual performance.

There are two types of glare, direct and indirect. Direct glare is caused by the brightness of light sources within our normal field of vision. The brighter the light source, the greater is the glare potential. Possible solutions to problems of direct glare include the following:

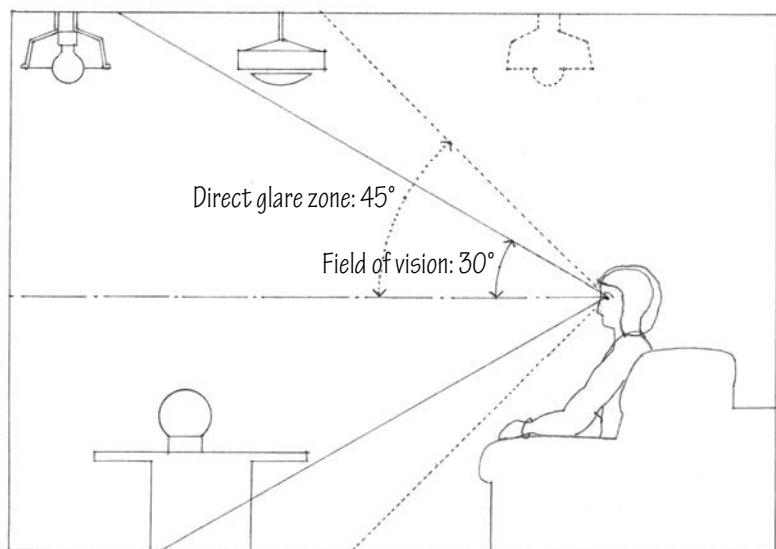
- Locate the sources of brightness out of the direct line of vision.
- If this is not possible, use properly shielded or baffled lighting fixtures.
- In addition, raise the background brightness of the light sources and reduce the brightness ratio.



Reduce the brightness ratio between the light source and its background.



Use well-shielded or baffled light fixtures that minimize a direct view of bulbs or lamps.



Locate light fixtures out of the direct-glare zone.

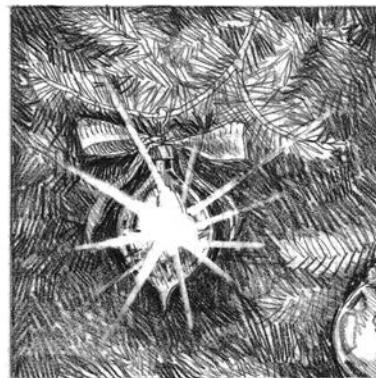
Possible Solutions to Glare

Indirect glare is caused by a task or viewing surface reflecting light from a light source into the viewer's eyes. The term *veiling reflection* is sometimes used to describe this type of glare because the reflection of the light source creates a veiling of the image on the task surface and a resultant loss of contrast necessary for seeing the image.

Indirect glare is most severe when the task or viewing surface is shiny and has a high specular reflectance value. Using a dull, matte task surface can help alleviate—but will not eliminate—veiling reflections.

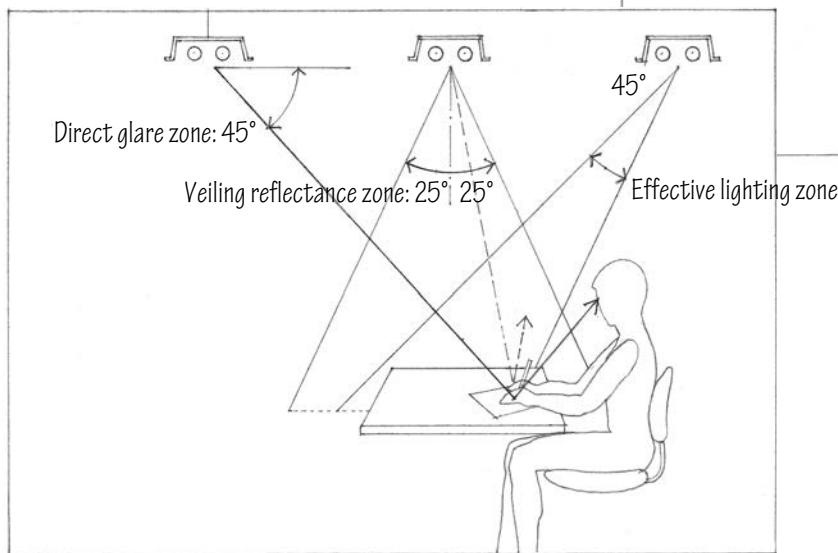
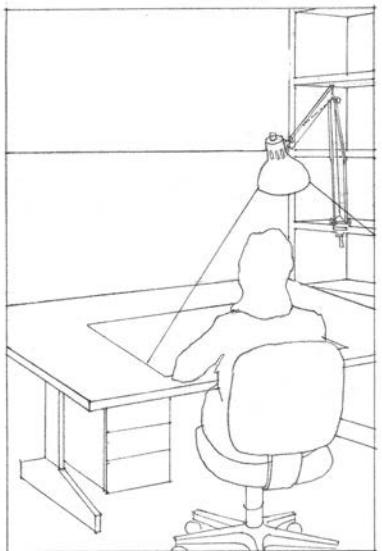
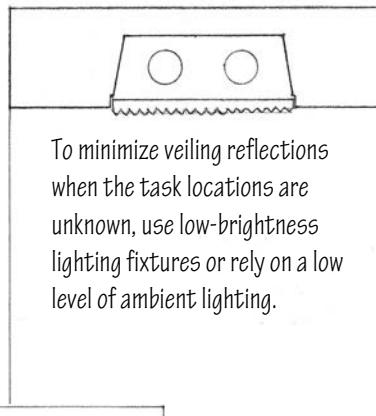
Possible solutions to problems of reflected glare include the following:

- Locate the light source so that the incident light rays will be reflected away from the viewer.
- Use indirect lighting fixtures, or ones with diffusers or lenses that lower their brightness levels.
- Lower the level of general overhead lighting and supplement it with localized task light closer to the work surface.



Glitter and sparkle are desirable types of glare.

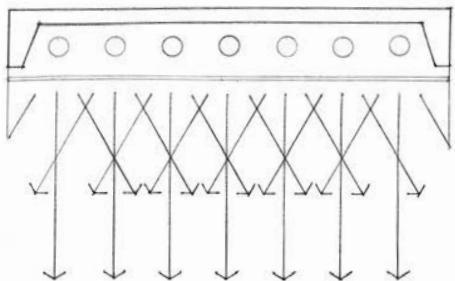
Reflected glare affects our ability to perform critical seeing tasks, such as reading or drawing.



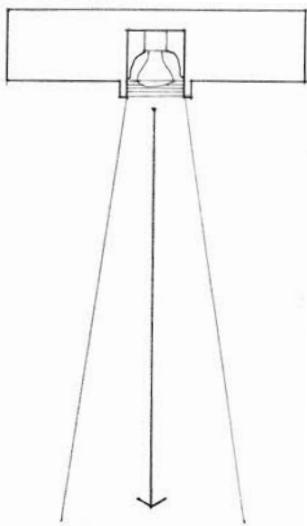
Bright, concentrated light sources above and forward of the task surface can cause veiling reflectances.

Low-level ambient lighting supplemented by individual task lighting, which is adjustable by the user, is a good general-purpose solution.

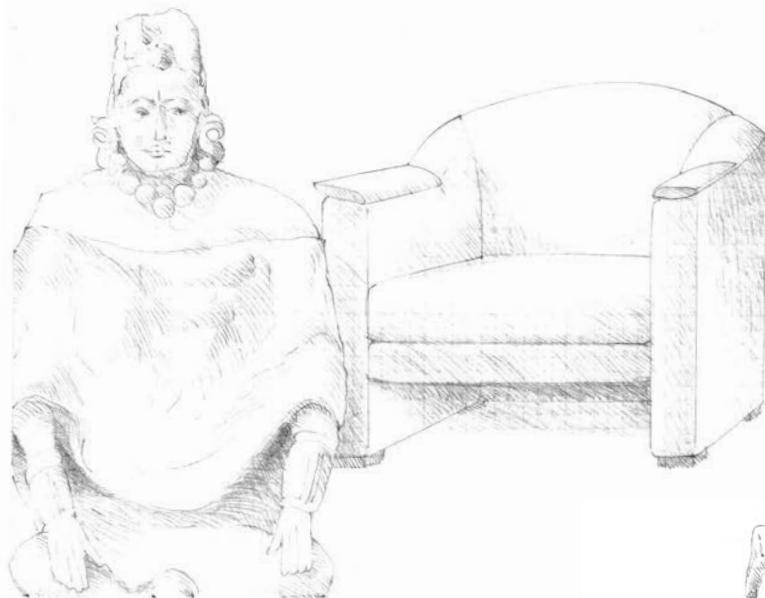
DIFFUSED LIGHTING



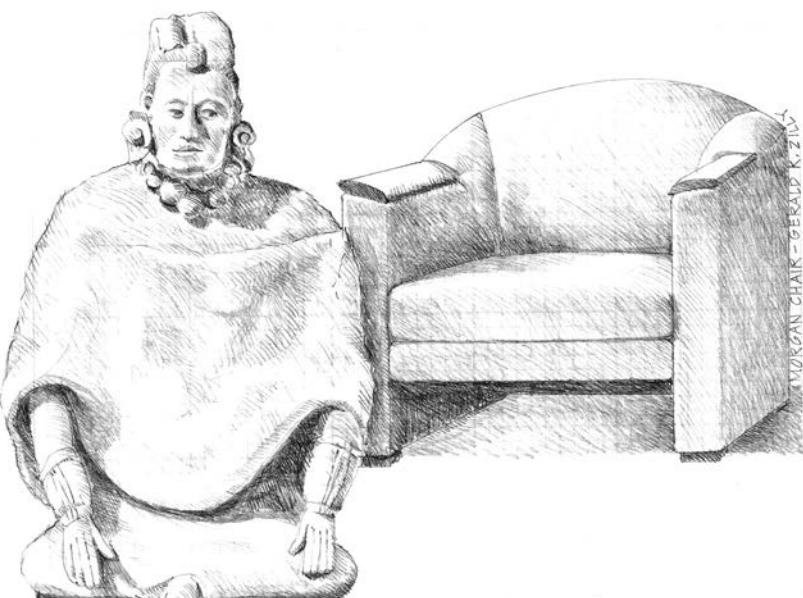
Broad sources of light produce diffused illumination.



Concentrated light sources produce directional lighting.



Diffused illumination minimizes contrast and shadows.



Directional lighting enhances the modeling of form and texture.

Diffuseness is a measure of a light's direction and dispersion as it emanates from its source. This quality of light affects both the visual atmosphere of a room and the appearance of objects within it. A broad source of light, such as direct/indirect fluorescent fixtures suspended below the ceiling, produces diffused illumination that is flat, fairly uniform, and generally glare-free. The soft light provided minimizes contrast and shadows; however, it can make the reading of surface textures difficult.

On the other hand, a concentrated source of light, such as a spotlight, produces a directional light with little diffusion. Directional lighting enhances our perception of shape, form, and surface texture by producing shadows and brightness variations on the objects it illuminates.

Although diffused lighting is useful for general vision, it can be monotonous. Some directional lighting can help relieve this dullness by providing visual accents, introducing brightness variations, and brightening task surfaces. A mix of both diffused and directional lighting is often desirable and beneficial, especially when a variety of tasks are to be performed in a room.

Another important quality of light is its color and the way it affects the coloration of objects and surfaces in a room. We assume most light to be white, but the spectral distribution of light varies according to the nature of its source. Noon daylight is considered to be the most evenly balanced white light; in the early morning hours, daylight can range from purple to red. As the day progresses, it will cycle through a range of oranges and yellows to blue-white at noon, and then back again through the oranges and reds of sunset.

The spectral distribution of electric light sources varies with the type of lamp. For example, an incandescent lamp produces a yellow-white light, while a cool-white fluorescent produces a blue-white light.

The apparent color of a surface is a result of its reflection of its predominant hue and its absorption of the other colors of the light illuminating it. The spectral distribution of a light source is important; if certain wavelengths of color are missing, then those colors cannot be reflected and will appear to be missing or grayed in any surface illuminated by that light.

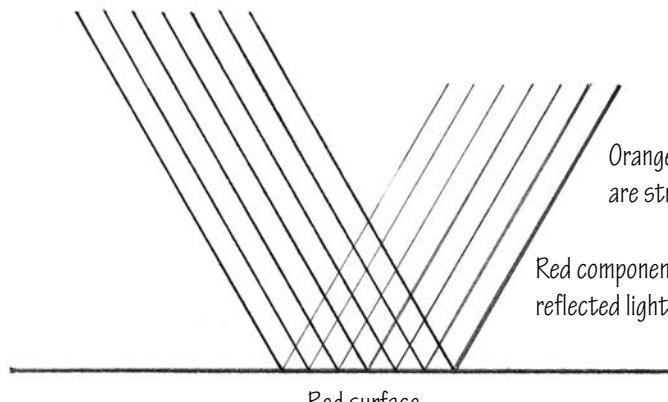
The appearance of a specific light source when lighted is called its color temperature, which is measured in kelvins (K). For example, an incandescent lamp produces light with a color temperature of 2700 K to 3000 K; the light from a cool-white fluorescent lamp has a color temperature of about 4250 K. Generally speaking, the lower the color temperature of a light source, the warmer it will appear.

Color Temperature Scale

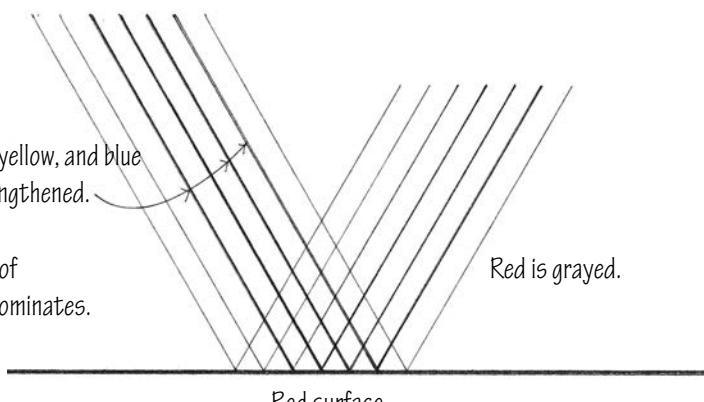
Kelvin Light Source

10000	Clear blue sky (up to 25,000 K)
9000	
8000	North light
7000	
6000	Daylight fluorescent Overcast sky
5000	Noon sunlight Cool-white fluorescent
4000	Daylight incandescent
3000	Warm-white fluorescent
2000	Incandescent lamp Sunrise

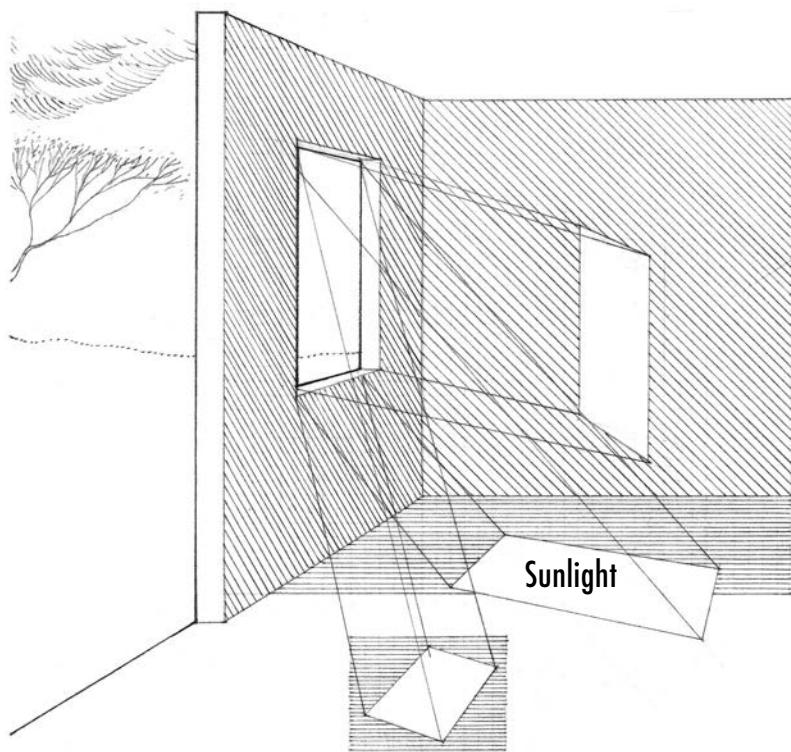
Spectrally balanced white light



Cool-white fluorescent lamp



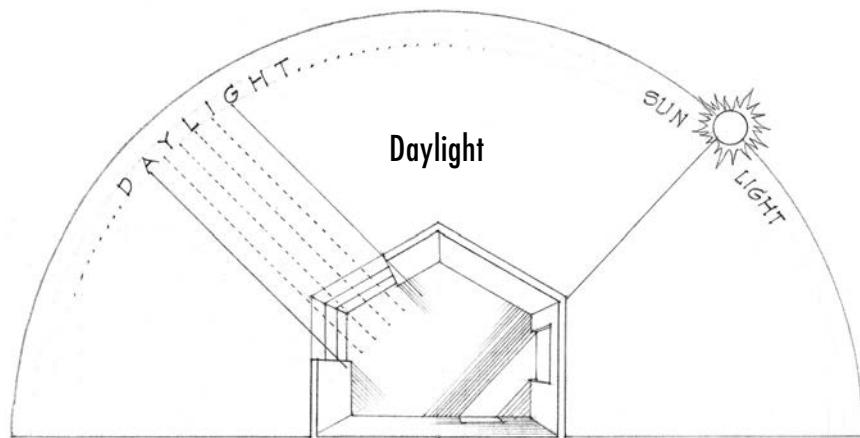
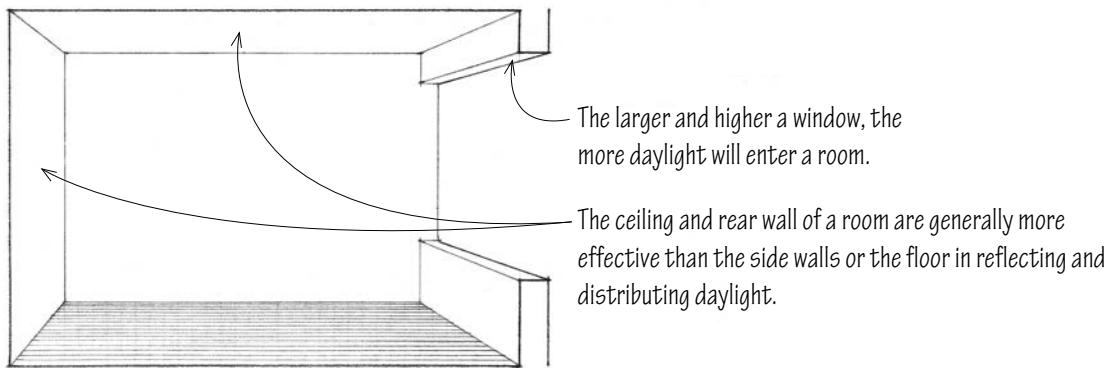
DAYLIGHTING



The source of all natural daylight is the sun. Its intense light varies with the time of day, from season to season, and from place to place. It can also be diffused by cloud cover, haze, precipitation, or any pollution that may be present in the air.

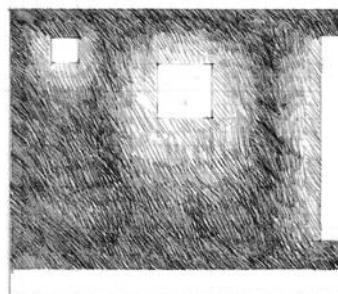
In addition to direct sunlight, two other conditions must be considered when designing the daylighting of a space: reflected light from a clear sky and light from an overcast sky. While direct sunlight emphasizes hot, bright colors, skylight is more diffuse and enhances cool colors.

Introducing sunlight into a building can decrease dependence on artificial lighting, which in turn reduces lighting energy use. Sunlight will also bring solar heat into the building, which may result in energy savings in cold weather but can increase air-conditioning costs in warmer months.

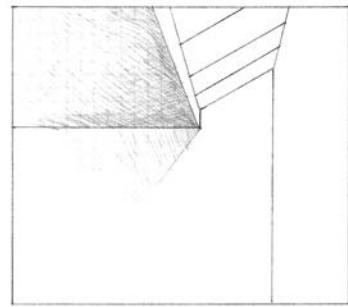
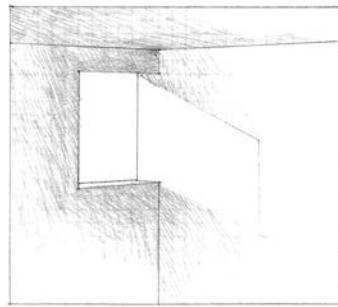
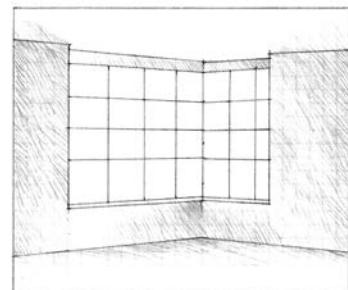
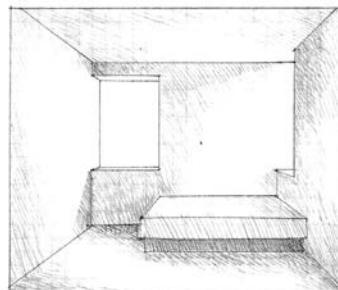
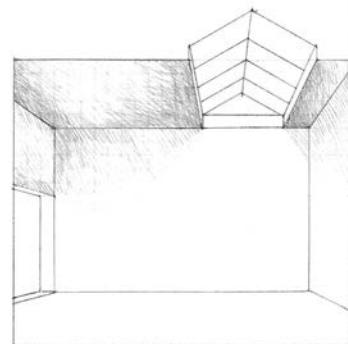
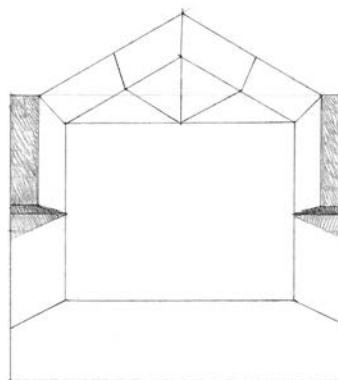


A problem associated with daylighting is glare caused by excessive contrast between the brightness of a window opening and the darker wall surfaces or cast shadows adjacent to it. The placement of windows is as important as their size when dealing with glare. The optimum condition is balanced lighting from at least two directions—from two walls or a wall and the ceiling. Skylights, in particular, can help soften the harshness of direct sunlight.

In rooms with windows close to the floor, glare can be caused by the light reflected off the exterior ground surface. This ground glare can be reduced through the use of shade trees or a screen of horizontal louvers. Interior window treatments can also be used to diffuse or block glare.

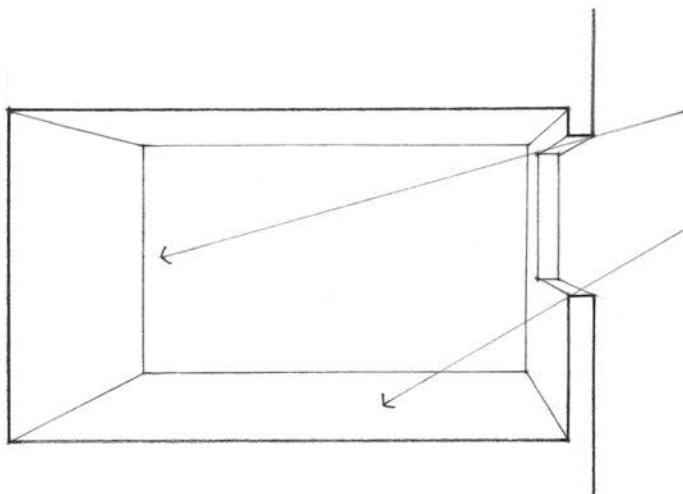


Glare results when our eyes cannot adjust simultaneously to widely contrasting areas of brightness. Our eyes adjust to the brightest light in our field of vision, reducing our ability to discern less brightly lit areas.

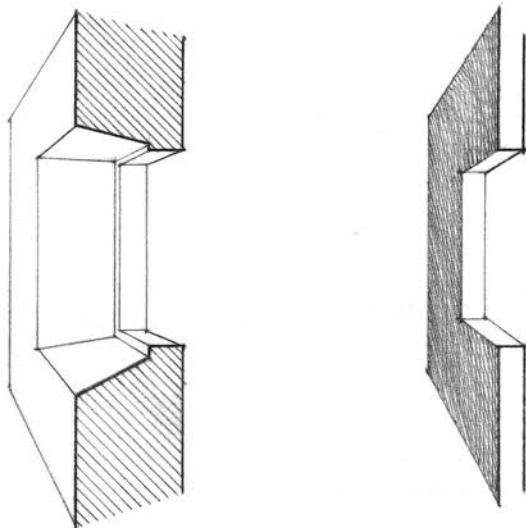


Bidirectional lighting—lighting from two directions—raises the level of diffused light in a space and reduces the possibility of glare.

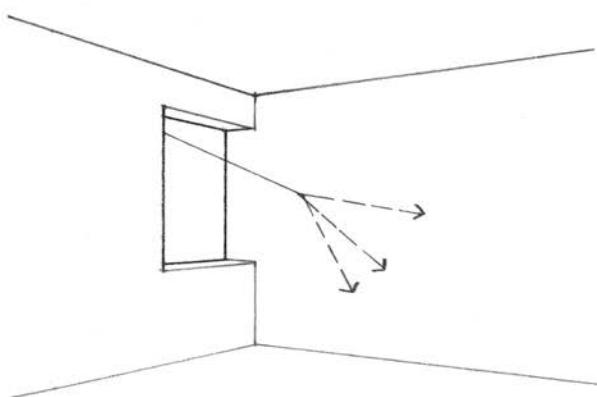
DAYLIGHTING EXAMPLES



High window openings allow daylight to penetrate more deeply into an interior space and help to reduce glare.

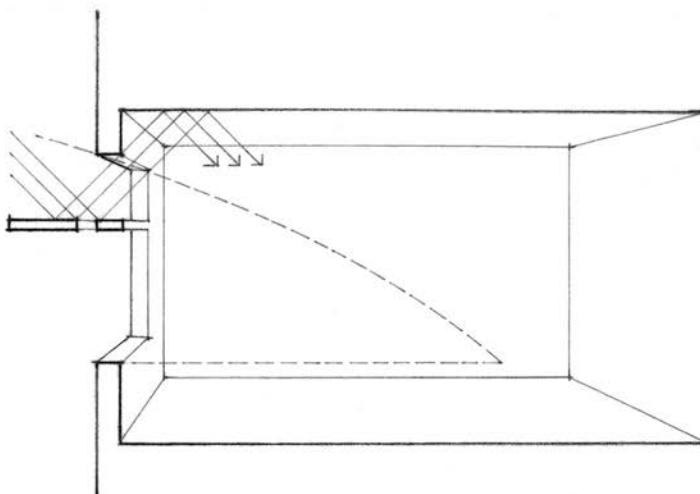


Windows set flush in a wall or ceiling accentuate contrasts between the bright exterior and the darker interior surfaces. Deep-set windows, splayed jambs, and rounded jambs can soften this contrast.



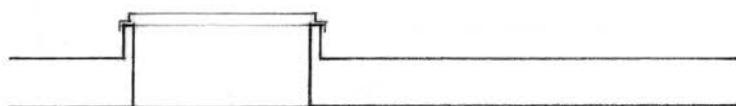
Locating a window adjacent to a perpendicular wall or ceiling surface maximizes the light entering the window. The perpendicular surface is illuminated by the entering light and becomes itself a broad source of reflected light. The use of wall and ceiling finishes with high levels of reflectance, such as white paint, helps to bounce reflected light deeper into an interior space, reducing the amount of electric lighting needed and saving energy.

A light shelf is an exterior horizontal construction located below the head of a window opening and typically just above eye level. The light shelf shades the lower portion of the window from direct sunlight and reflects daylight onto the ceiling of the room, diffusing light deeper into the space.

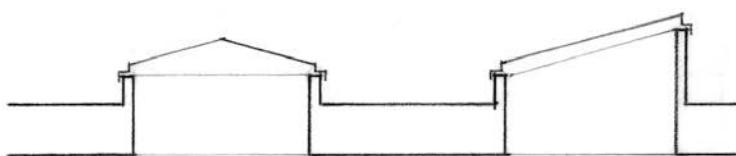


Skylights are glazed with clear, patterned, or translucent glass, or with clear, gray-tinted, or milk-white acrylics. Skylights can be fitted with remote-control window treatments that diffuse light and reduce the transmission of solar heat.

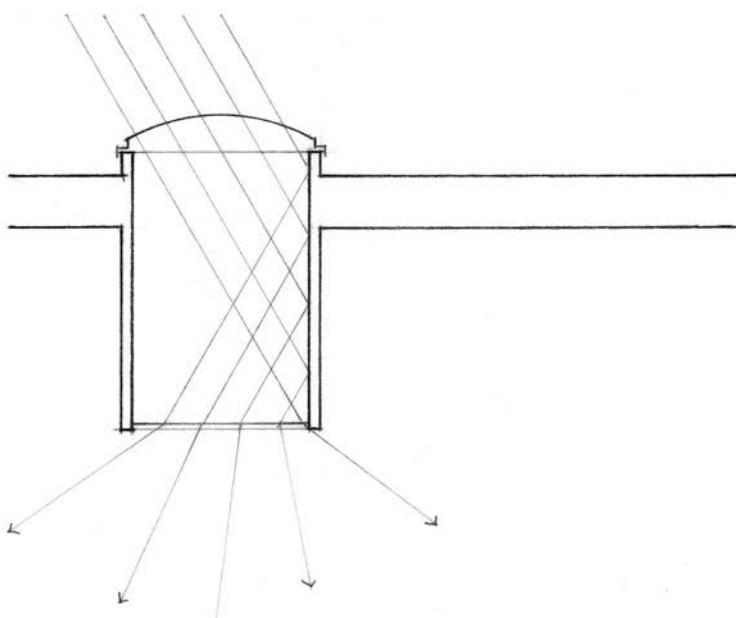
Flat skylights may be prone to leaks and dirt accumulation.



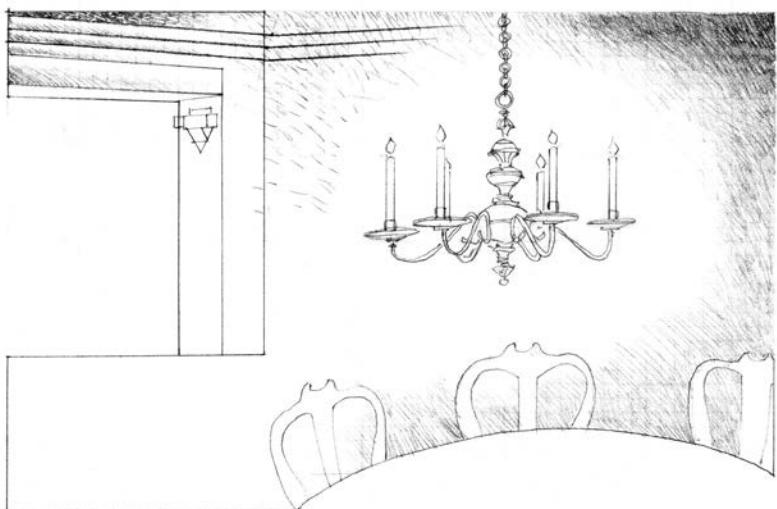
Domed or slanted skylights stay cleaner and tend to leak less.



Tubular skylights (light tubes) collect sunlight through a small, clear acrylic dome on the roof, transmit it through a cylindrical shaft, and disperse it through a translucent diffuser lens into interior spaces.



LIGHTING PRINCIPLES

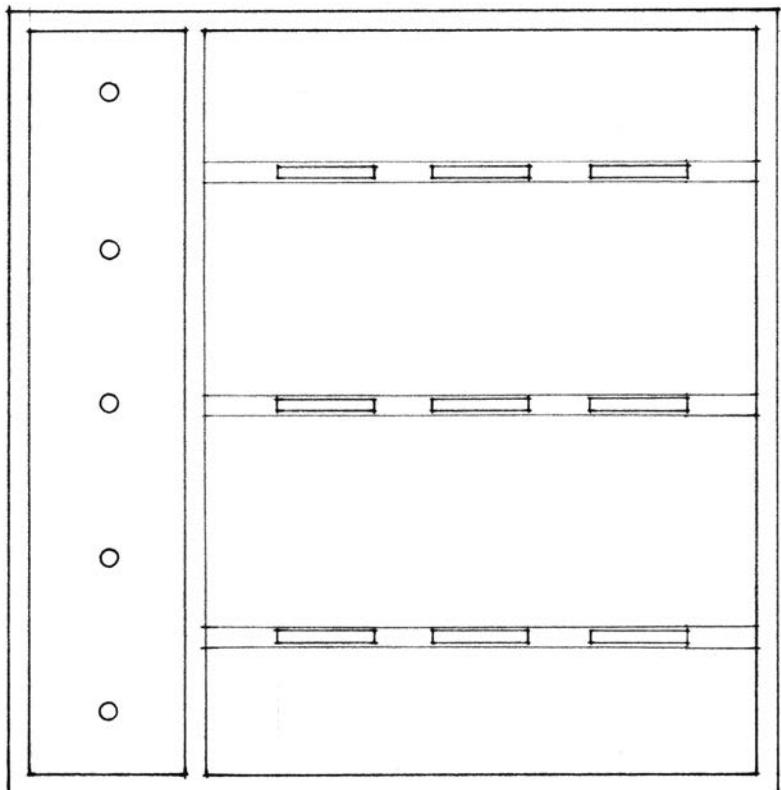


Light is the prime animator of interior space. Without light, there would be no visible form, color, or texture, nor any visible enclosure of interior space. The first function of lighting design, therefore, is to illuminate the forms and space of an interior environment, to enable users to undertake activities and perform tasks with appropriate speed, accuracy, and comfort. Interior lighting can effectively guide the viewer through a space or series of spaces and direct the viewer's gaze to points of interest. Lighting also provides security through the illumination of spaces and any potential hazards.

Interior lighting enables us to see forms, navigate space, and perform tasks. Lighting design is a process of integrating light with the physical structure of the building, the designer's concept for the interior space, and the functional uses of the space.

Lighting Patterns

Poorly placed or irregularly scattered lighting fixtures contribute to distracting visual clutter. Carefully organized lighting patterns emphasize architectural features, provide cues to the use and orientation of the space, and support the designer's intent. Lighting layout drawings coordinate lighting fixture locations with sprinkler heads, air diffusers, return grilles, smoke detectors, loudspeakers, and other ceiling elements.

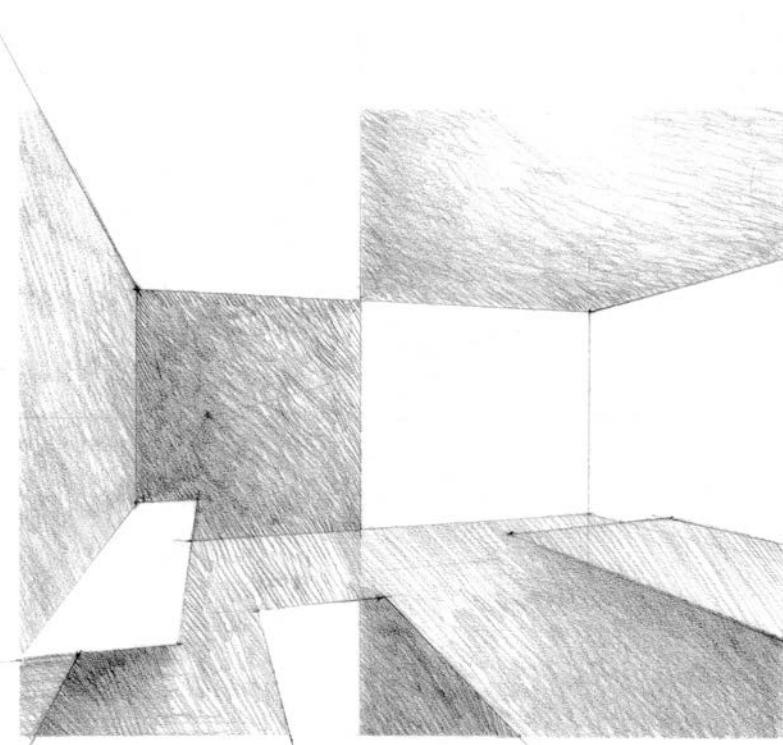


Brightness Balance

Vertical surfaces are the most visually conspicuous features in a space. Lighting should preserve the integrity of vertical planes, highlight special features or finishes, and avoid spatial distortions such as scallops on walls.

Strategies include the following:

- Light opposite walls of a space.
- Wallwashers on one wall can be mixed with nonuniform lighting on the other.
- Balance perimeter illumination of a space with its center.
- Lighting horizontal surfaces within a space emphasizes detail, people, and movement, and de-emphasizes the architecture.
- Illuminate vertical and overhead surfaces to emphasize architectural form.



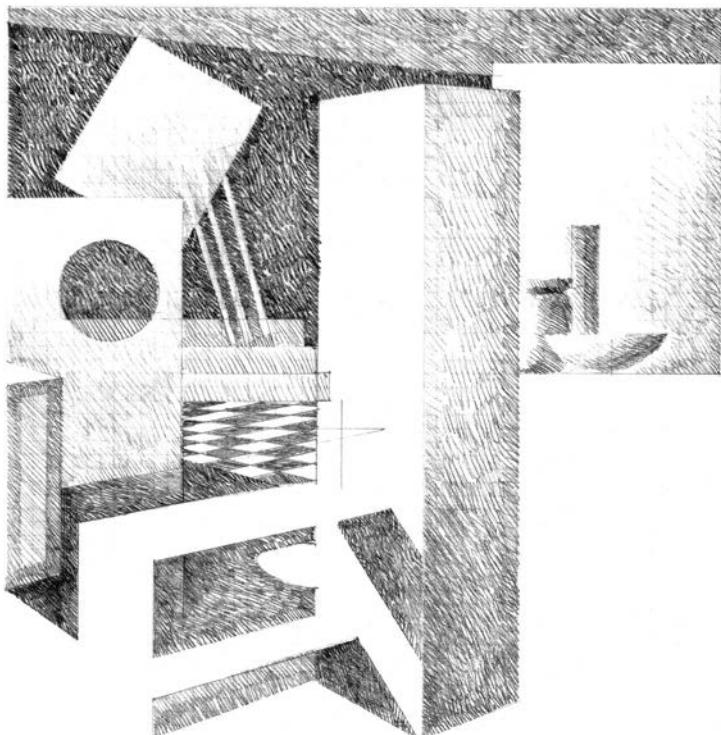
Luminance Ratios

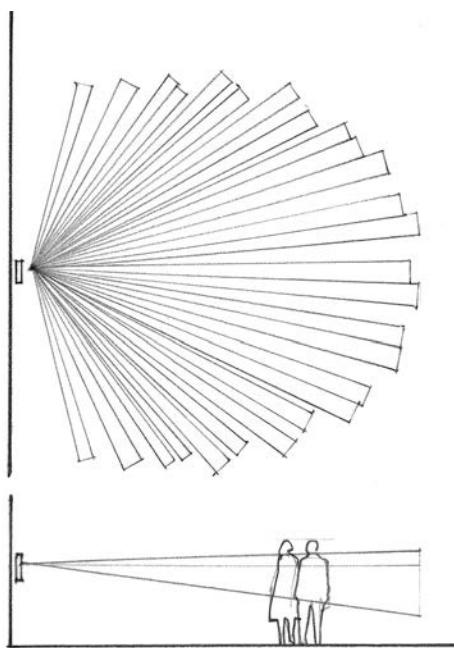
Luminance differences are specified as a ratio between one luminance and another.

- Vary luminances at some points in the space to increase visual interest and prevent eye fatigue.
- Computer screens tend to reflect bright areas, although this is less of a problem than in the past, thanks to brighter screens with better angle adjustments. Indirect lighting fixtures also help with this problem.

Shadows

Patterns of light and shadow create visual interest by rendering the texture and three-dimensional form of objects.





Occupancy sensors detect activity within a certain area and turn lights on automatically when someone enters a room. They reduce lighting energy use by turning lights off soon after the last occupant has left the room.

Energy Efficiency

Lighting accounts for about 20 percent of building energy use. Building codes limit the number of watts available for lighting. Energy conservation criteria are increasingly driving the selection of light sources, the quantity and type of lighting fixtures, and the specification of lighting controls. Consequently, designers must be aware of energy use as they design lighting.

- Use available watts to supply light where and when needed; limit unwanted light.
- Integrate and control daylight in the space.
- Choose light sources carefully, and locate them with discretion.
- Control lighting with dimmers, timers, and occupancy sensors.

Illuminance is the measure of incident light on a surface. Illuminance does not determine how bright a surface will appear; a dark surface will not reflect as much of the light that falls on it as a light one. The conditions of a specific task, as well as the visual acuity of the viewer, determine the required level of illuminance.

- Orientation and simple visual tasks: Illuminance levels are relatively unimportant.
- Common visual tasks: Visual performance is important, but illuminance levels vary with the task.
- Special visual tasks: Higher levels of illuminance are required for tasks that are very small, or that have very low contrast for critical elements.



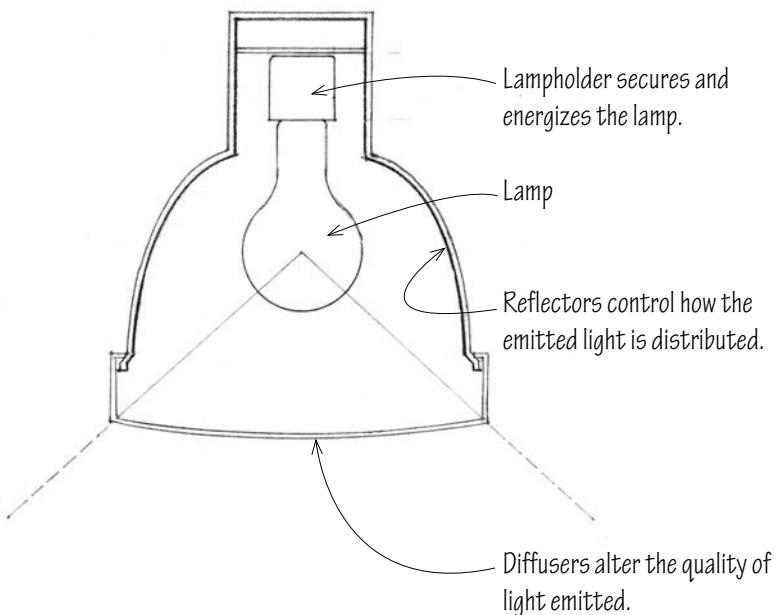
The electric light sources used in lighting fixtures are called lamps. The quantity and quality of light produced differ according to the specific type of lamp used. The light is further modified by the housing that holds and energizes the lamp and any reflector, lens, or baffle used to control how the light is distributed, diffused, or shielded.

The *color rendering index (CRI)* rating is a measure of a lamp's ability to render color accurately when compared with a reference light source of similar color temperature. Manufacturers are working to improve the CRI of all light sources, so that good color rendering can be achieved while maintaining efficiency.

Light sources have traditionally been classified as warm or cool, and specific light sources were often available in only a single color. Today, there are a variety of light sources with a wide range of apparent colors, including fluorescent, metal halide, and LED lamps.

The *correlated color temperature (CCT)* is a reference standard that correlates to a standard color and is identified in kelvins (K). The higher the number, the cooler is the light source, and vice versa.

Efficacy is a measure of the efficiency of a light source, measured in lumens per watt. A *lumen* is a measure of the amount of light emitted by a light source or falling onto a surface, regardless of directionality.



Color Rendering Index (CRI) of Various Light Sources

CRI	Light Source
100	Noon sunlight; average daylight
93	500-watt incandescent
89	Cool-white deluxe fluorescent
78	Warm-white deluxe fluorescent
62	Cool-white fluorescent
52	Warm-white fluorescent

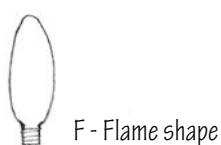
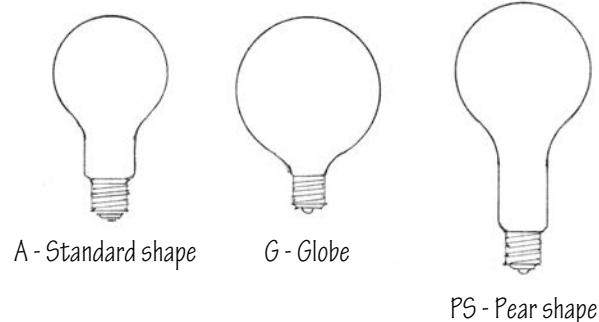
CRI	Light Source
100	Noon sunlight; average daylight
93	500-watt incandescent
89	Cool-white deluxe fluorescent
78	Warm-white deluxe fluorescent
62	Cool-white fluorescent
52	Warm-white fluorescent

Correlated Color Temperature (CCT)

CCT in Kelvins	Light Source
----------------	--------------

CCT in Kelvins	Light Source
2700	Incandescent
3000	Halogen
2700–6500	Fluorescent
3000–4000	Metal halide
2800–6000	LED
5500–7500	Daylight

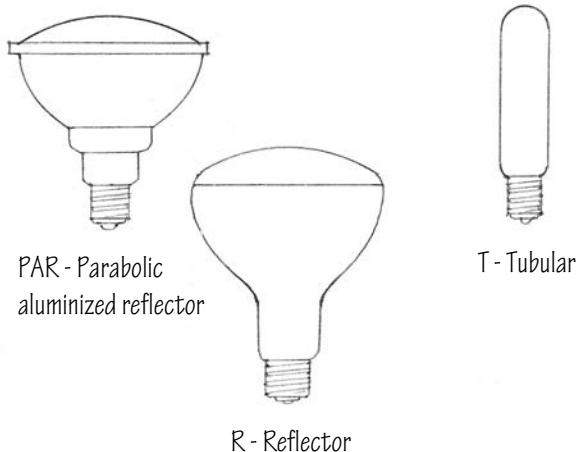
INCANDESCENT LAMPS



Incandescent lamps consist of metal filaments that are heated within a glass enclosure until they glow. Incandescent lamps are available from 6 to 1500 watts, and have a low efficacy rating of from 4 to 24.5 lumens/watt. Only about 12 percent of the wattage used goes toward the production of light; the remainder is given off as heat. They also have a comparatively short life of from 750 to 4000 hours. Because of their energy inefficiency, incandescent lamps are being regulated or phased out in several countries. Incandescent lamps are having trouble meeting energy codes in the United States, as well.

Tungsten-halogen lamps, also known as halogen or quartz lamps, are incandescent lamps with a small amount of halogen gas sealed inside the bulb. They maintain close to their full output over time. Available from 5 to 1500 watts, they produce 10 to 22 lumens per watt.

While standard incandescent lamps operate on standard-voltage circuits, low-voltage lamps, including tungsten-halogen, operate between 6 and 75 volts. Their design offers more precise beam control, higher efficacy, energy savings where focused light is needed, and 1000 to 6000 hours of life. Although they are more efficient than standard incandescent lamps, they still perform less efficiently than fluorescent lamps.



Comparative Lamp Efficiencies

Lamp Type	Lumens/Watt
100-200 W incandescent (230 V)	13-15
100-200-500 W tungsten halogen (230 V)	16-20
5-40-100 W incandescent (120 V)	5-18
4.1 W LED screw base (120 V)	58-83
7W LED PAR20 (120 V)	28
T12 fluorescent tube, electronic ballast	60
9-32 W compact fluorescent	46-75
T8 fluorescent tube, electronic ballast	80-100
Spiral fluorescent tube, electronic ballast	114-124
Metal halide lamp	65-115
High-pressure sodium lamp	85-150

Discharge lamps produce light by the discharge of electricity between electrodes in a gas-filled glass enclosure. A common type is the fluorescent lamp.

Fluorescent lamps are low-intensity discharge lamps that produce light by generating an electric arc that passes through the mercury vapor sealed within their tubes. This produces ultraviolet light that energizes the phosphors that coat the tubes' inner walls, thus emitting visible light. Because fluorescent lamps contain mercury, they require special handling for recycling. The amount of mercury used continues to be reduced, and T5 lamps now have low mercury content.

Fluorescent lamps are more efficient and have a longer life (6,000–24,000+ hours) than incandescent lamps. They produce little heat and are available in a variety of types and wattages. Common lengths range from a 4-watt T5 at 6 inches (152 mm) to a 125-watt T12 at 8 feet (2438 mm). Fluorescent lamps require a ballast to regulate electric current through the lamp. Some lamps have pin bases, while others have screw-in bases.

Fluorescent lamps are now available in a variety of colors, including warm white, cool white, sunlight, cool daylight, and sky white. Approximate CRI ratings range from 50 to 95, and color temperatures from 2700 K to 8000 K. Dimmable fluorescent lamps are available.

T8 and T5 Lamps:

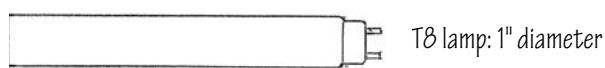
- Better color rendering than standard T12.
- T5 has better lighting efficiency than T8 or T12.
- Smaller tube diameters than T12.
- T5 lamps are smaller than T8, but produce roughly the same amount of light, making glare an issue.

Compact Fluorescent Lamps:

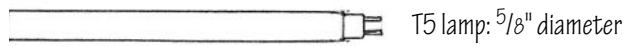
- Available from 5 to 80 watts.
- High efficacy (typically 60 to 72 lumens per watt).
- Good color rendering.
- Very long lives (6000 to 15,000 hours).
- Tubular or spiral types.
- Many are available with built-in ballast and screw bases for direct replacement of incandescent lamps.



T12 lamp: 1 1/2" diameter

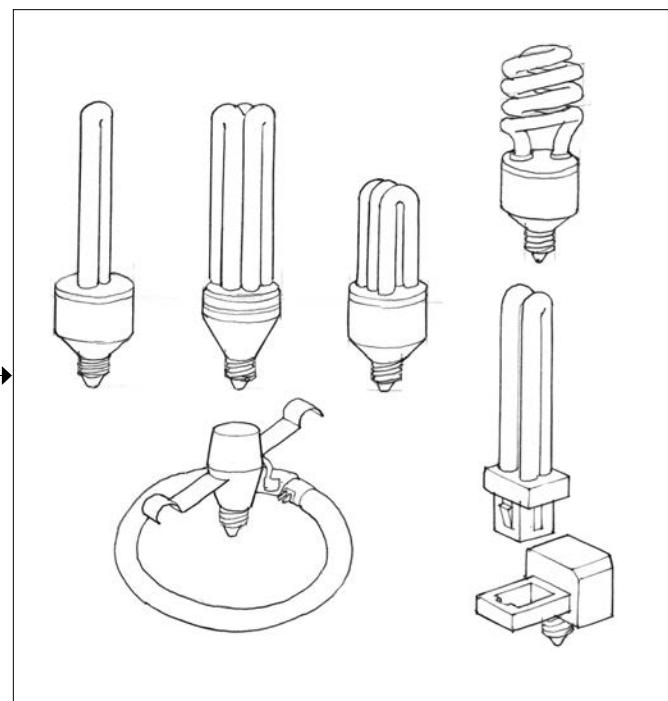
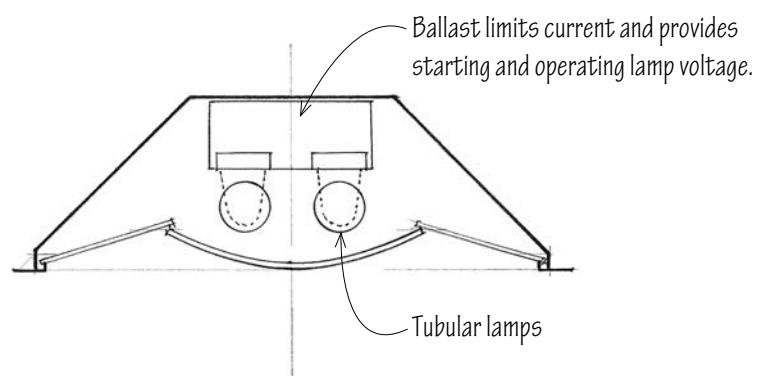


T8 lamp: 1" diameter

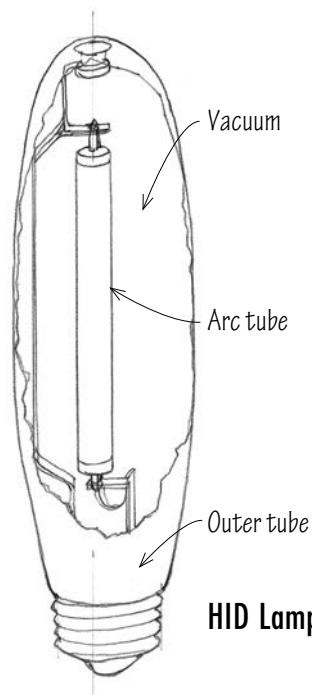


T5 lamp: 5/8" diameter

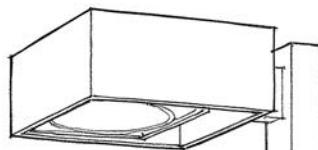
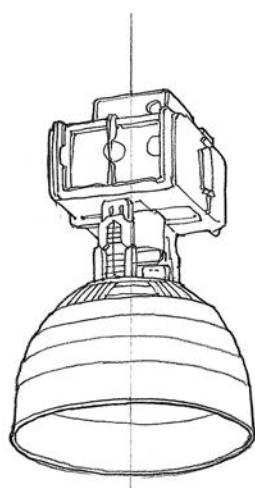
The standard T12 lamp is now considered outdated, replaced by T8 lamps.



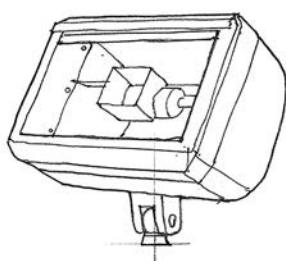
HIGH-INTENSITY DISCHARGE LAMPS



Both metal halide and White SON HPS lamps have ellipsoidal bulb shapes.



Metal Halide Light Fixtures



High-intensity discharge (HID) lamps—mercury vapor, high-pressure sodium (HPS), and metal halide lamps—produce light by passing an electrical current through a gas or vapor under high pressure. These lamps have a long life expectancy and consume little energy to produce a great amount of light from a relatively small source. They take several minutes to warm up. Most HID lamps are used primarily for industrial, commercial, roadway, and security lighting. They typically have low to average color rendering.

Metal halide lamps are used in spaces with high ceilings where lamps are left on for extended periods. Their start times range from 1 to 20 minutes, depending on the type. Metal halide lamps have excellent color, efficacy, and lamp life. CRIs commonly rate 70 to 90, and CCTs range from 2500 K to 5000 K.

High-pressure sodium lamps produce a pinkish orange light when warmed. The White SON lamp is a variation on the HPS with a color temperature around 2700 K and a CRI of 85, similar to that of an incandescent light. White SONs are sometimes used indoors in restaurants. However, they have higher purchase costs, shorter lives, and lower light efficiency than other HPS lamps.

Mercury vapor lamps are primarily used outside for parking and security lighting. They are the least efficient of the HID lamps.

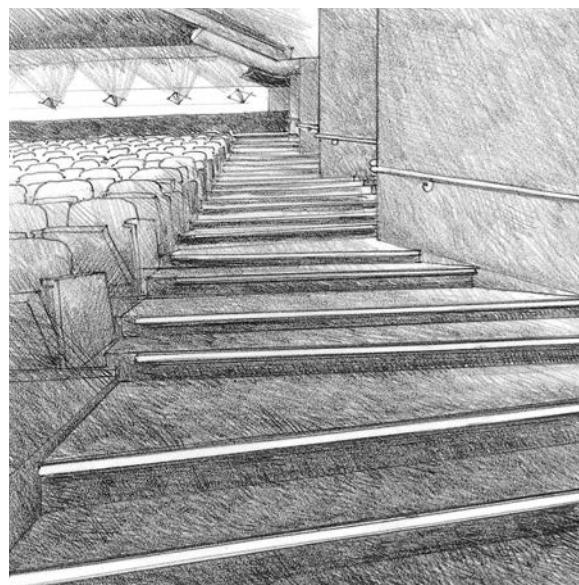
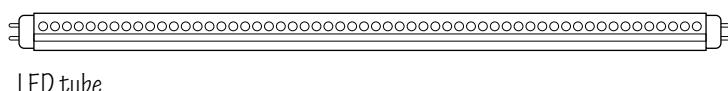
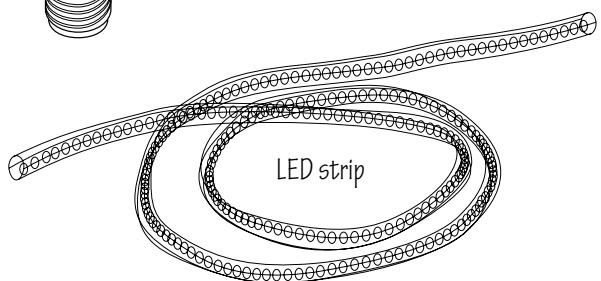
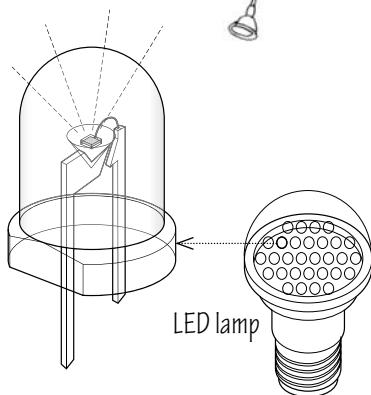
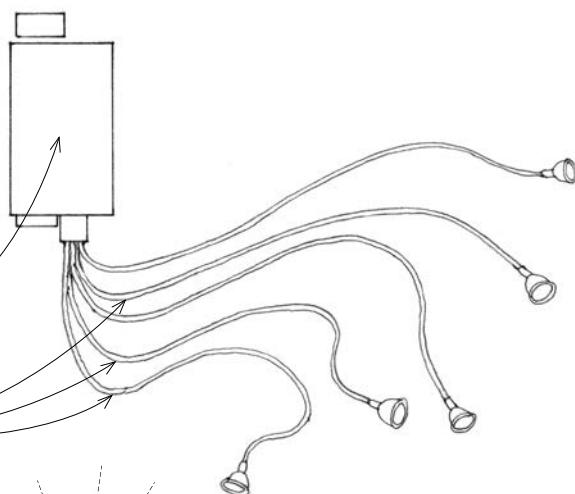
The optical glass or plastic fibers in fiber-optic lighting transmit light from one end to the other by reflecting light rays back and forth inside their cores in a zigzag pattern. Each small-diameter fiber is protected by a transparent sheath and combined with others into flexible bundles.

A typical fiber-optic lighting system includes:

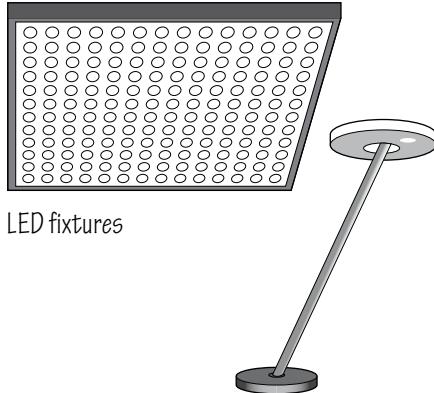
- A light projector, which may have a color wheel
- A tungsten-halogen or metal halide light source
- An optical-fiber harness
- Bundles of optical fibers and their fittings

Light-emitting diodes (LEDs) radiate very little heat and are highly energy-efficient. LEDs have an extremely long life, typically about ten years. High-powered white-light LEDs are used for illumination. They are insensitive to vibration and temperature, are shock resistant, and contain no mercury. The tiny $1/8"$ (3 mm) lamps can be combined into larger groups to mix colors and increase illumination. LEDs operate on DC voltage, which is transformed into AC within the fixture.

LEDs are used for both residential and commercial lighting. They can be designed to focus light, and are widely used for task lights. LED downlights, step lighting, and exit signs are also available.

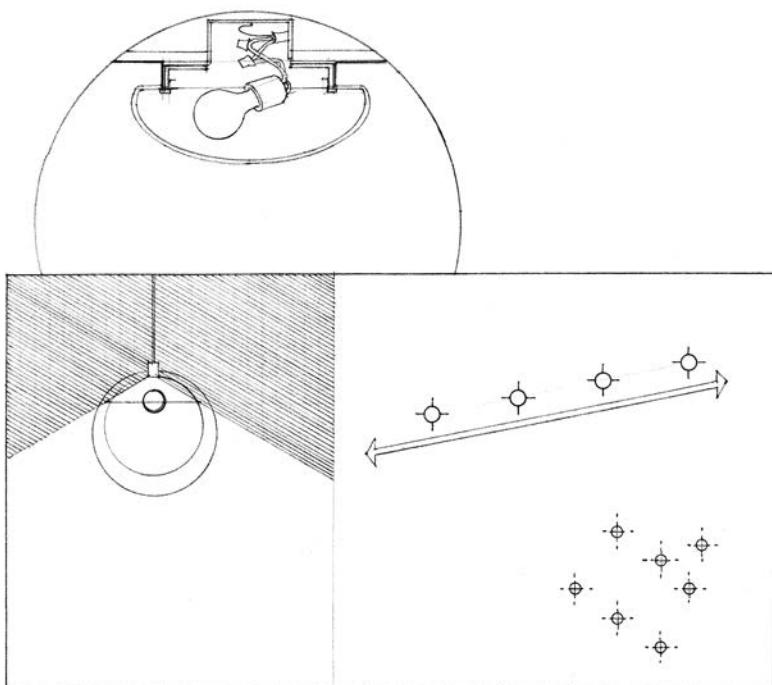


LED step lighting



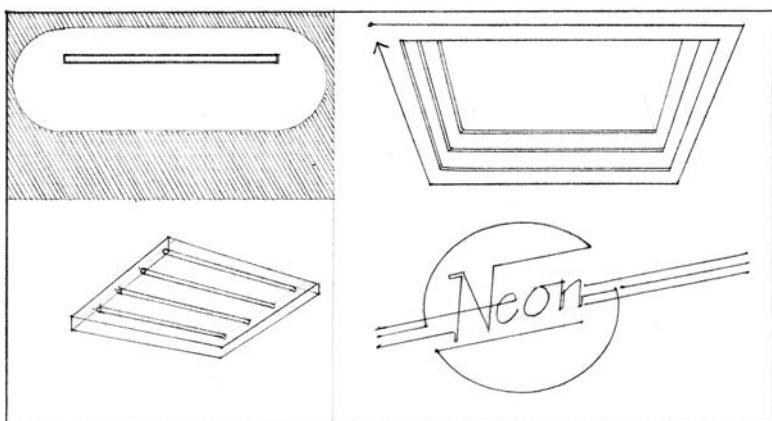
LED fixtures

LIGHT FIXTURES

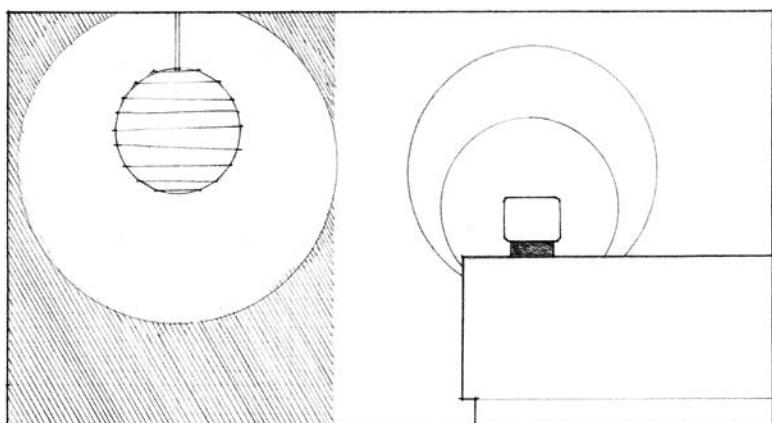


Light fixtures are integral parts of a building's electrical system, transforming energy into usable illumination. Light fixtures require an electrical connection or power supply, a housing assembly, and a lamp.

We are concerned not only with the shape and form of the fixture but also with the form of the illumination it provides. Point sources give focus to a space, since the area of greatest brightness in a space tends to attract our attention. They can be used to highlight an area or an object of interest. A number of point sources can be arranged to convey rhythm and sequence. Small point sources, when grouped, can provide glitter and sparkle.



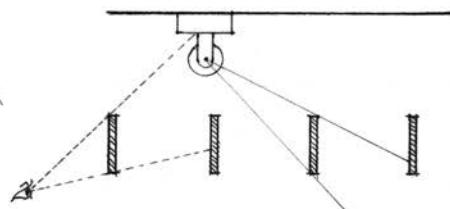
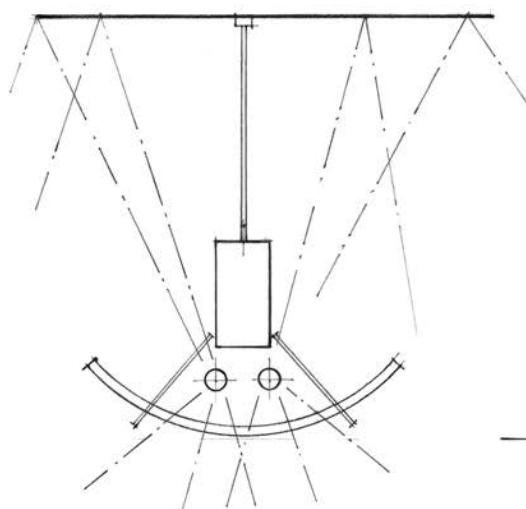
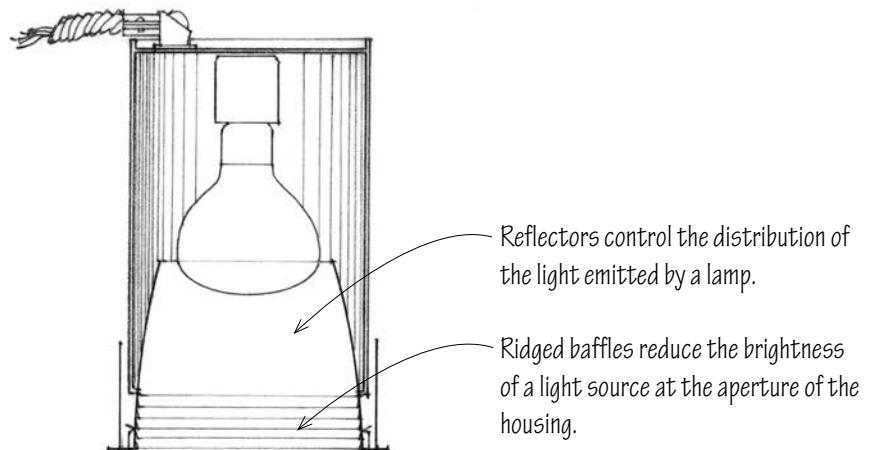
Linear sources can be used to give direction, emphasize the edges of planes, or outline an area. A parallel series of linear sources can form a plane of illumination that is effective for the general, diffused lighting of an area.



Volumetric sources are point sources expanded by the use of translucent materials into spheres, globes, or other three-dimensional forms.

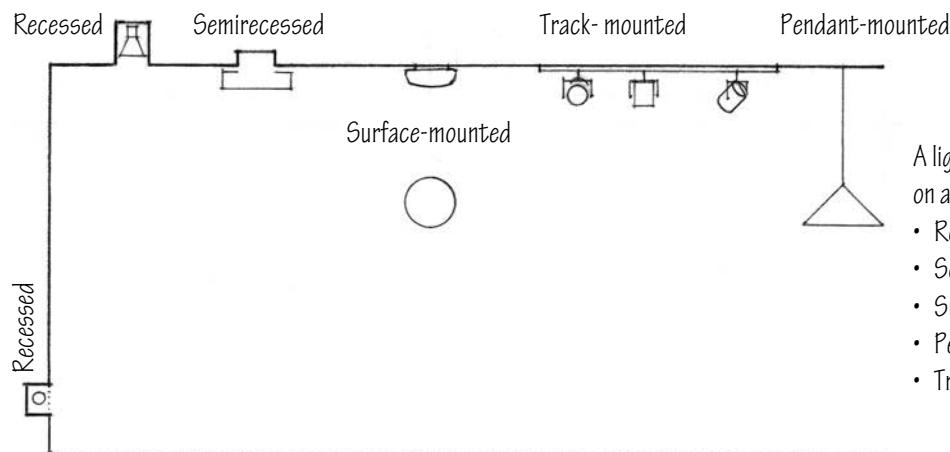
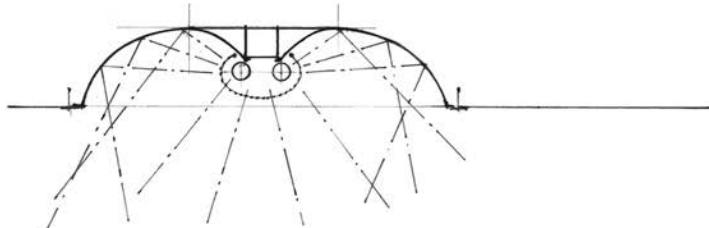
A light fixture consists of one or more electric lamps with all of the necessary parts and wiring for supporting, positioning, and protecting them, connecting them to a power supply, and distributing the light.

Light fixtures can provide direct and/or indirect illumination. The form of distribution depends on the design of the fixture as well as its placement and orientation in a space. Some light sources serve primarily as decorative focal points. Others provide needed light while the fixtures themselves are de-emphasized or hidden.



Baffles, such as louvers and eggcrates, redirect the emitted light and/or shield the light source from view at certain angles.

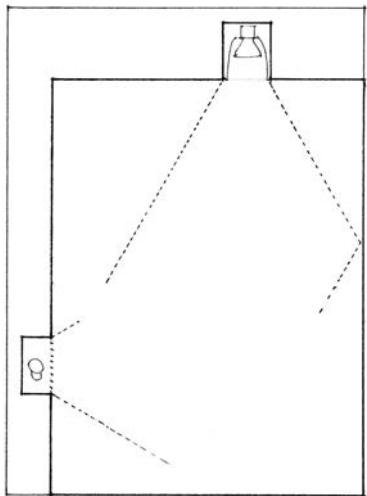
Examples of direct-indirect light fixtures



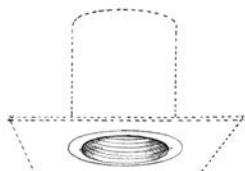
A light fixture's housing may be mounted on a ceiling or wall and be:

- Recessed
- Semirecessed
- Surface-mounted
- Pendant-mounted
- Track-mounted

RECESSED FIXTURES



Lighting fixtures may be recessed in the ceiling or a wall.



Baffled downlight



Adjustable eyeball



Pinhole downlight



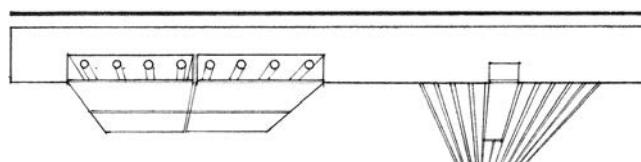
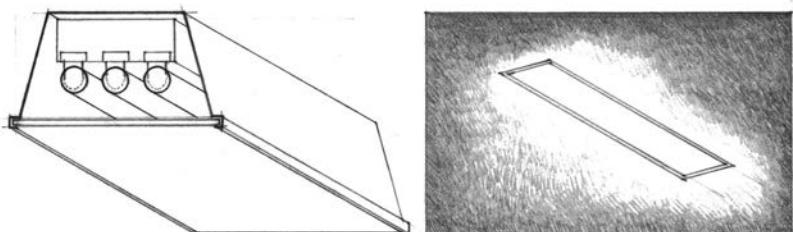
Baffled wall washer

Recessed lighting fixtures are hidden above the finished ceiling and shine light through an aperture in the ceiling plane. They preserve the flat plane of the ceiling.

Recessed lighting fixtures offer an unobtrusive way to bring light to circulation paths within a larger space, or to provide increased light levels in a specific area. When used indiscriminately throughout a space, however, they can create a monotonously even pattern on the ceiling and a uniform but dull level of illumination.

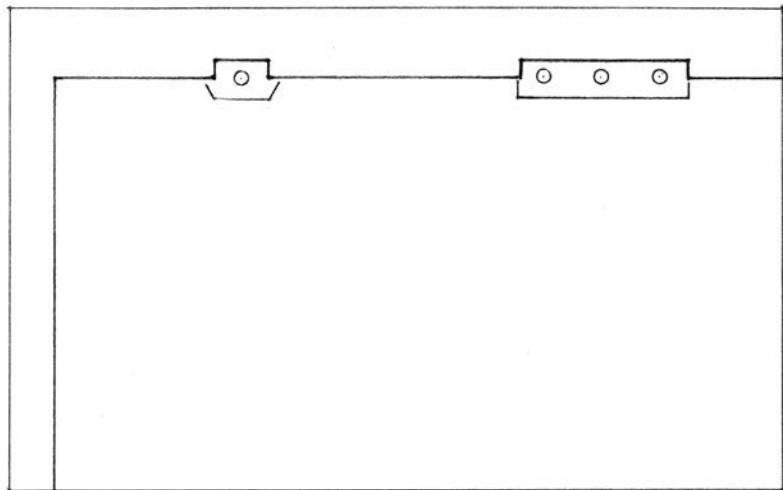
Downlights are used in multiple arrangements to provide ambient light for a large space, or to offer a focal glow on a floor or work surface. Lamps and accessories for recessed downlights are available in a variety of styles, allowing the designer a range of effects. Some recessed fixtures appear as black holes in a light-colored ceiling when they are turned off.

Downlights located too close to a wall can create an unattractive scalloped pattern. Wallwashers are designed to illuminate a matte vertical surface in a more uniform manner. Individual wallwashers should be placed one-third of the wall height away from the wall and an equal distance from each other.



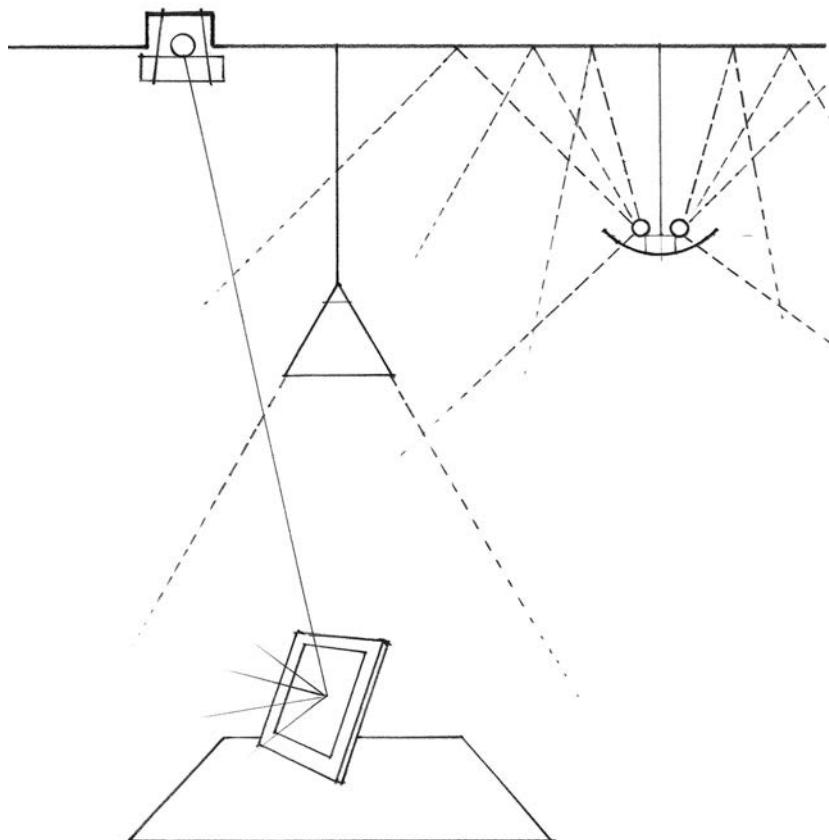
Recessed lighting fixtures often form part of suspended ceiling systems.

The housings of some light fixtures are partially recessed into the ceiling or wall construction, while part of their housing, reflectors, or lenses projects beyond the ceiling or wall surface.

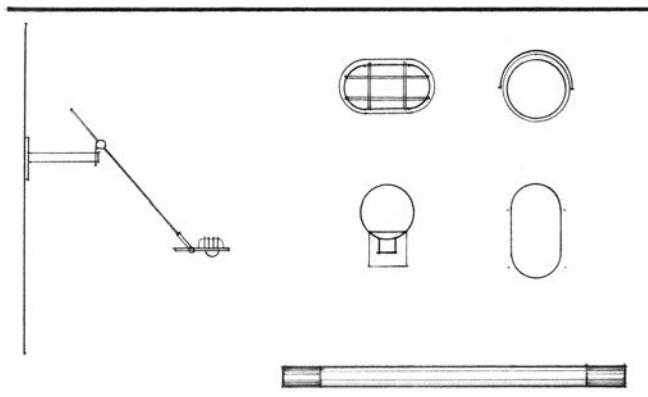


Fixtures that shine down from above can cause glare on computer screens, especially if the lamps are visible or if the fixture creates a bright area in the darker field of the ceiling. This is less of a problem with the brighter, thinner screens now in use, which are easier to adjust to avoid glare.

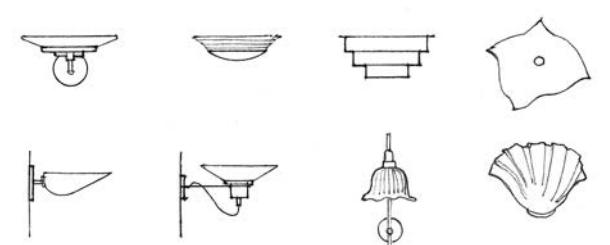
Diffusers provide some protection, but suspended fixtures that bounce light off the ceiling and filter light downward as well do a better job of minimizing glare.



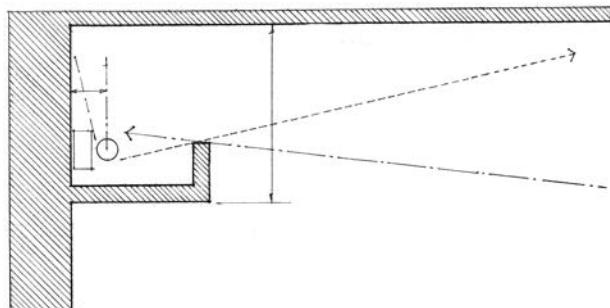
SURFACE-MOUNTED FIXTURES



Surface-mounted light fixtures are mounted on the finished ceiling or wall and are usually attached to a recessed junction box. Light fixtures that are mounted directly on a ceiling are generally positioned above the people and furnishings in the room and can spread their light over a broad area.



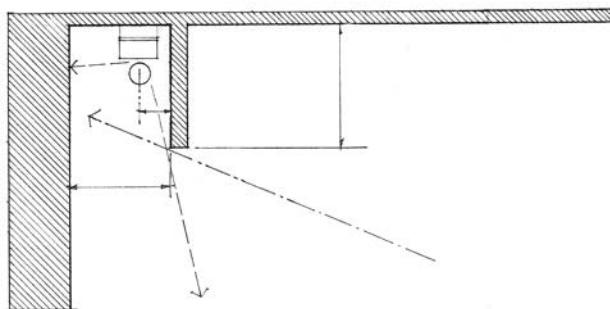
Wall-mounted light fixtures are often decorative and help to create the ambiance of the space. Wall sconces can shine light upward, downward, or sideways, as well as produce a gentle glow from the fixture itself.



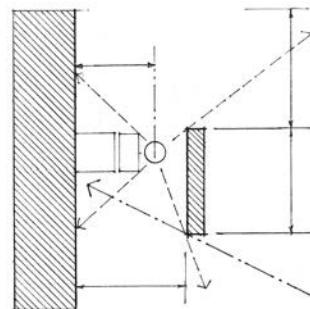
Cove lighting directs the light upward from an interior cornice at the edge of a ceiling.

Wall-mounted fixtures can provide task lighting when their illumination is focused on the task area. When shining on a wall or a ceiling, they add to the general illumination of the space. Their horizontal and vertical positions must be carefully coordinated with windows and furnishings.

Cove, valance, and cornice lighting are all methods for illuminating a space indirectly from within an architectural detail or a manufactured fixture. They give a soft, indirect glow to the area they illuminate and are often used to highlight ceiling details or wall textures.



Cornice lighting directs the light downward from an interior cornice at the edge of a ceiling.

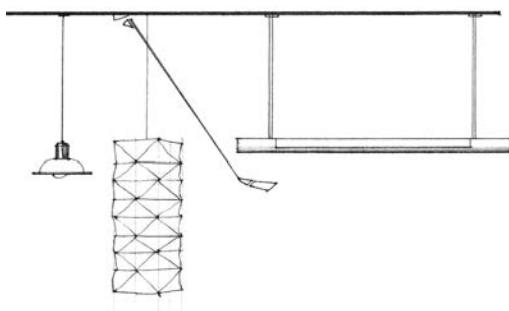
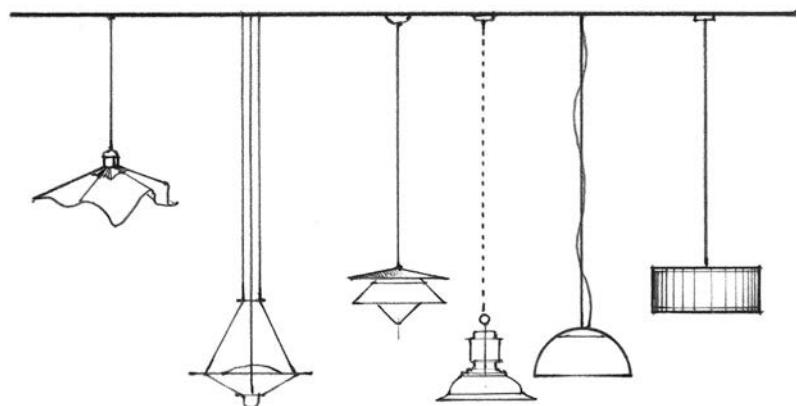


Valance lighting directs the light upward and/or downward from a light source concealed by a horizontal board or band.

Pendant-mounted light fixtures are attached to either a recessed or surface-mounted junction box concealed by a canopy, and hang below the ceiling on a stem, chain, or cord. The fixtures may throw light up, down, or at an adjustable angle.

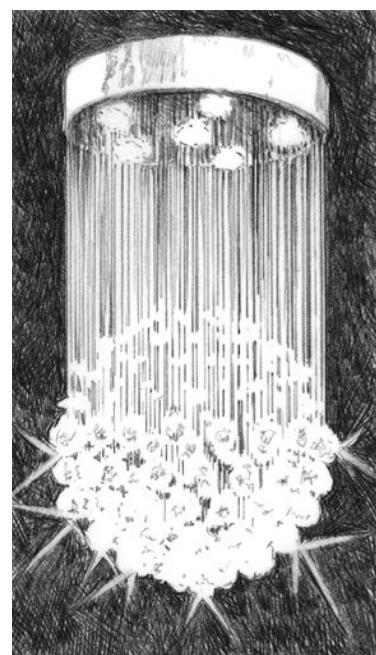
Uplights or indirect lighting fixtures wash the ceiling in light. Some also provide downlight. They may be:

- Suspended from the ceiling
- Mounted on top of tall furniture
- Attached to walls, columns, or floor stands

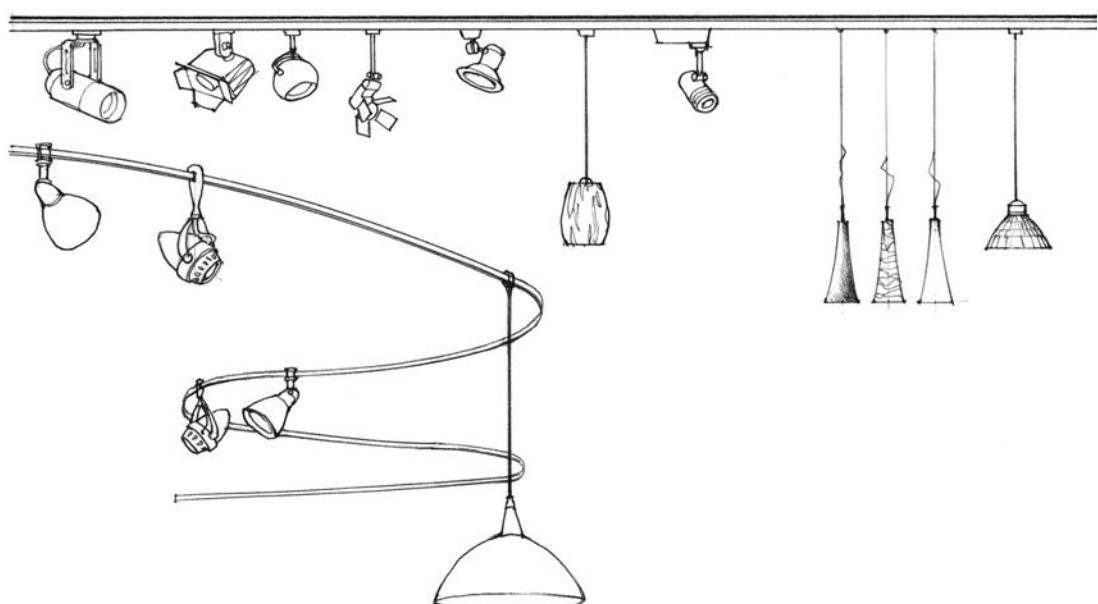


Track-Mounted Fixtures

Track-mounted light fixtures consist of adjustable spotlights or floodlights mounted on a recessed, surface-mounted, or pendant-mounted track through which electrical current is conducted. The light fixtures can be moved along the track and adjusted to shed light in multiple directions. Building energy codes may require that each head on the track be counted as a separate fixture.



Chandeliers often provide more sparkle than illumination and become a focal point in the space.



PORTABLE LAMPS

Decorative lights serve as accents within the space. The light they produce may be secondary to the appearance of the fixture, the glowing surface of which draws the eye. Portable lighting fixtures are commonly referred to as lamps, and their light sources as light bulbs.

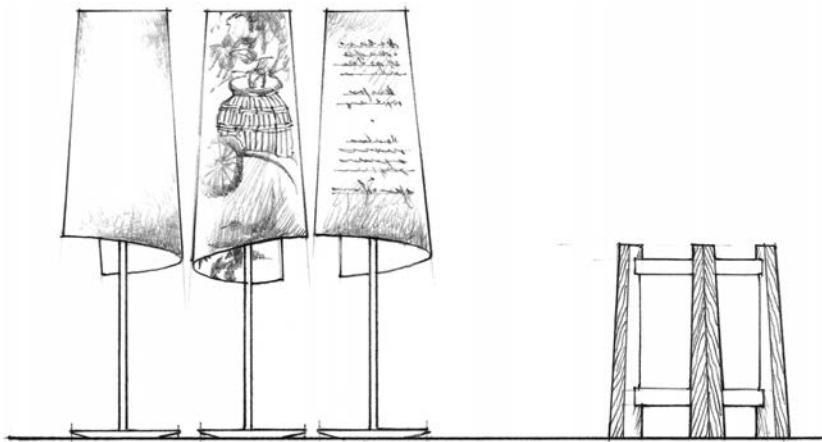


Table Lamps

Desk and task lamps are found in both residential and work spaces. Many are adjustable to accommodate varied tasks and individual preferences. Desk and task lights can help save energy by providing focused light where it is needed, allowing lower levels of ambient lighting.

Table lamps often serve both decorative and practical functions. They become part of the room's décor, while providing either general illumination or task light.

Floor lamps may shine up (torchières), down, or at adjustable angles. Like table lamps, they become part of the décor and can provide either task or general lighting.

Portable lamps help to bring human scale to architectural spaces by creating decorative detail and localized light. They are usually operated at the fixture itself, giving users easy control over their environment.

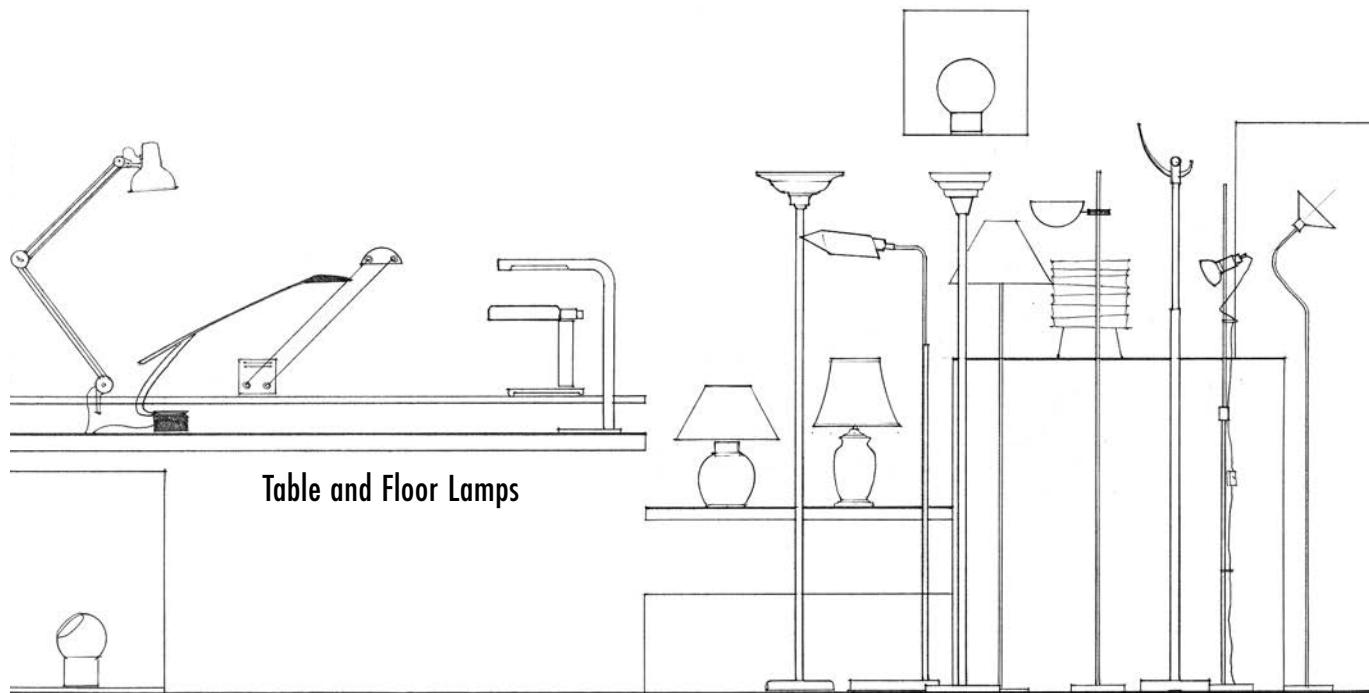


Table and Floor Lamps

The layout of lighting fixtures and the pattern of light they radiate should be coordinated with the architectural features of a space and the pattern of its use. Since our eyes seek the brightest objects and the strongest tonal contrasts in their fields of vision, this coordination can serve to reinforce the architectural features and support the function of the space.

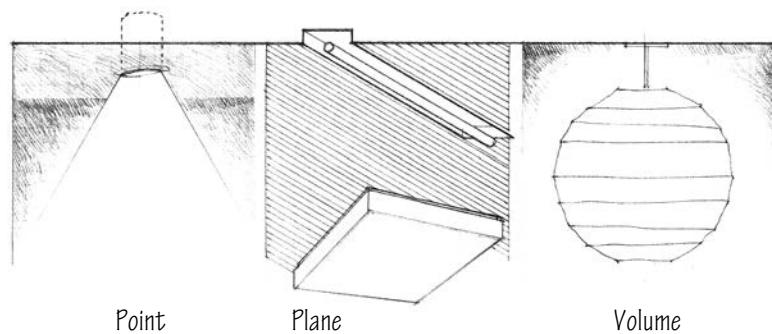
For the purpose of planning the visual composition of a lighting design, a light source can be considered to have the form of a point, a line, a plane, or a volume. If the light source is shielded from view, then the form of the light emitted and the shape of surface illumination produced should be considered. Whether the pattern of light sources is regular or varied, a lighting design should be balanced in its composition, provide an appropriate sense of rhythm, and give emphasis to what is important.

Lighting design manipulates the fundamental elements and qualities of *ambient* and *focal* lighting as well as sparkle:

- Ambient lighting provides a general, shadowless light level that is restful and minimizes interest in objects and people.
- Focal lighting offers a contrast in brightness that is directive and creates a sense of depth. Examples include task and accent lighting.
- Sparkle—such as highlights, scintillating sequins, crystal chandeliers, and twinkling stars—is stimulating and may be distracting, but it is also often entertaining.



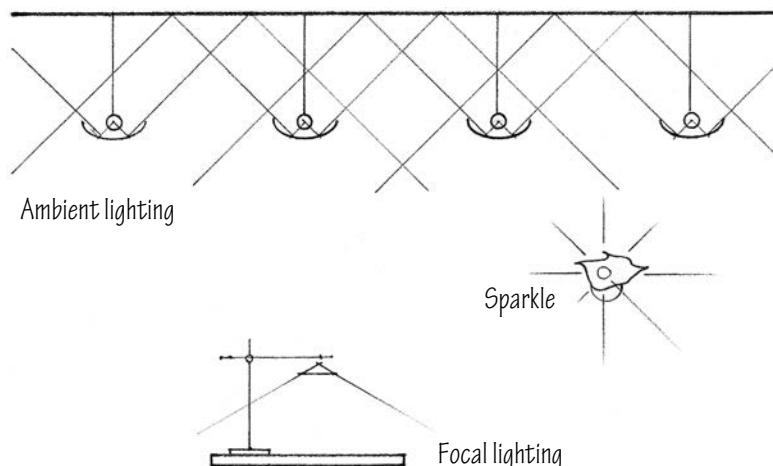
Light animates space and reveals forms and textures.



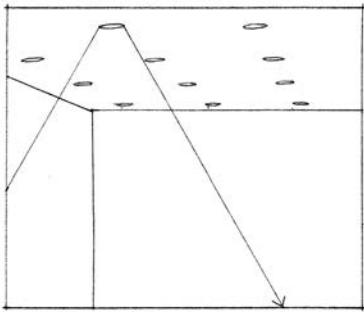
Point

Plane

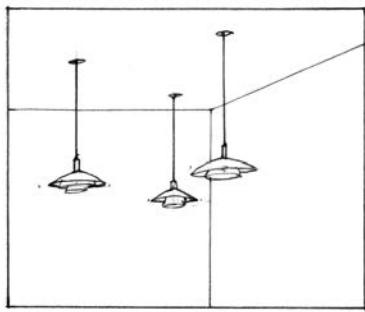
Volume



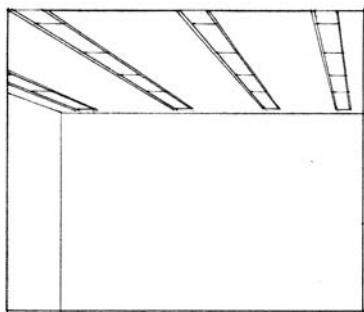
AMBIENT LIGHTING



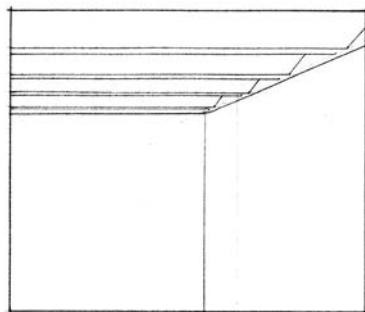
Ambient point sources



Ambient or general lighting illuminates a room in a fairly uniform, generally diffuse manner. The dispersed quality of the illumination can effectively reduce the contrast between task lighting and the surrounding surfaces of a room. Ambient lighting can also be used to soften shadows, smooth out and expand the corners of a room, and provide a comfortable level of illumination for safe movement and general maintenance.

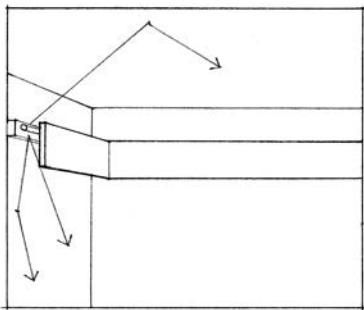


Ambient linear sources

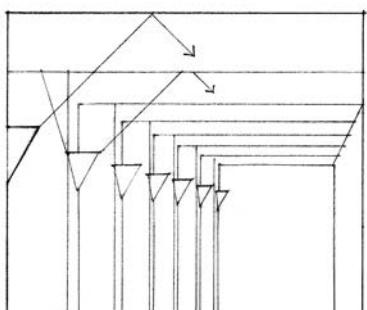
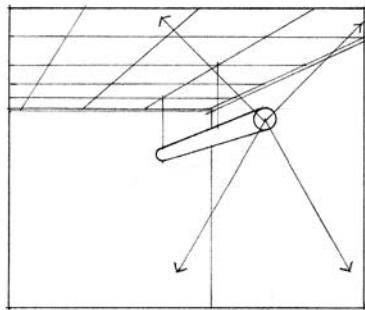


Ambient lighting is appropriate for frequently reconfigured spaces and for areas where the location of tasks varies widely. Ambient fixtures may be direct, direct/indirect, or indirect point or linear sources.

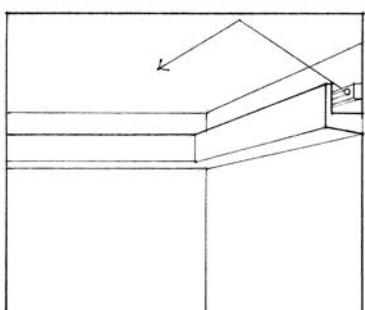
The addition of task lighting to ambient systems provides a higher level of focal lighting for task areas, with surrounding areas illuminated at a lower level. Task-ambient lighting saves energy, improves the quality of lighting, and gives the user more control.



Direct/indirect linear sources



Indirect point sources



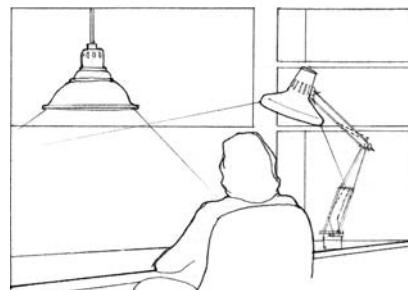
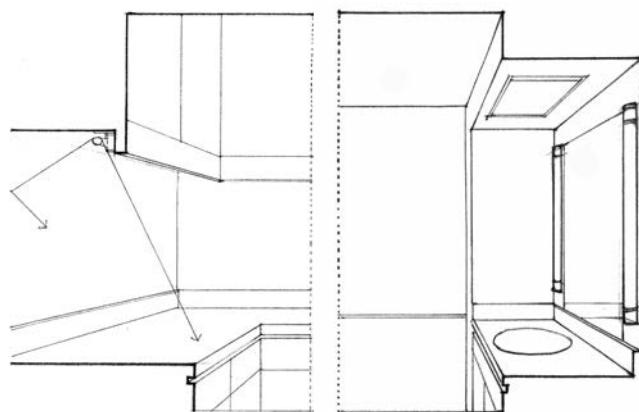
Indirect linear sources

Focal lighting creates brighter areas within the ambient light levels of a space through the use of task lighting and accent lighting.

Task lighting illuminates specific areas of a space for the performance of visual tasks or activities. The light sources are usually placed close to—either above or beside—the task surface, enabling the available wattage to be used more efficiently than with ambient lighting. The lighting fixtures are normally of the direct type, and adjustability in terms of brightness and direction is always desirable.

To minimize the risk of an unacceptable brightness ratio between task and surroundings, task lighting is often combined with ambient lighting. Depending on the types of lighting fixtures used, focal lighting can also contribute to the general illumination of a space.

In addition to making a visual task easier to see, focal lighting can also create variety and interest, divide a space into a number of areas, encompass a furniture grouping, or reinforce the social character of a room.



Desk lighting



Reading lamp

Accent lighting



Accent Lighting

Accent lighting is a form of focal lighting that creates focal points or rhythmic patterns of light and dark within a space. Instead of serving simply to illuminate a task or activity, accent lighting can be used to relieve the monotony of ambient lighting, emphasize a room's features, or highlight art objects or prized possessions.

Sparkle

Lighting can bring out the highlights in the objects that it shines on or introduce sparkle through the brilliance of the fixture itself. Small, tightly focused lamps reflect dancing bits of light off reflective surfaces. Chandeliers often produce little ambient light—they are all about sparkle.



Sparkle



Lighting technology is advancing about as fast as computer technology. The basic principles of lighting design have not changed, but the available tools have. Energy conservation is a major issue for lighting design, and computer software is available to perform the calculations required by codes. The major challenge today is to minimize lighting energy use without sacrificing quality.

Quantitative recommendations that address lighting design standards include *luminance* (brightness), *illuminance* levels, uniformity, and glare. Traditionally, lighting standards have used a quantitative approach of determining how many *footcandles* are needed. These standards do not reflect qualitative issues, and may result in lighting that is overly uniform and less energy-efficient.

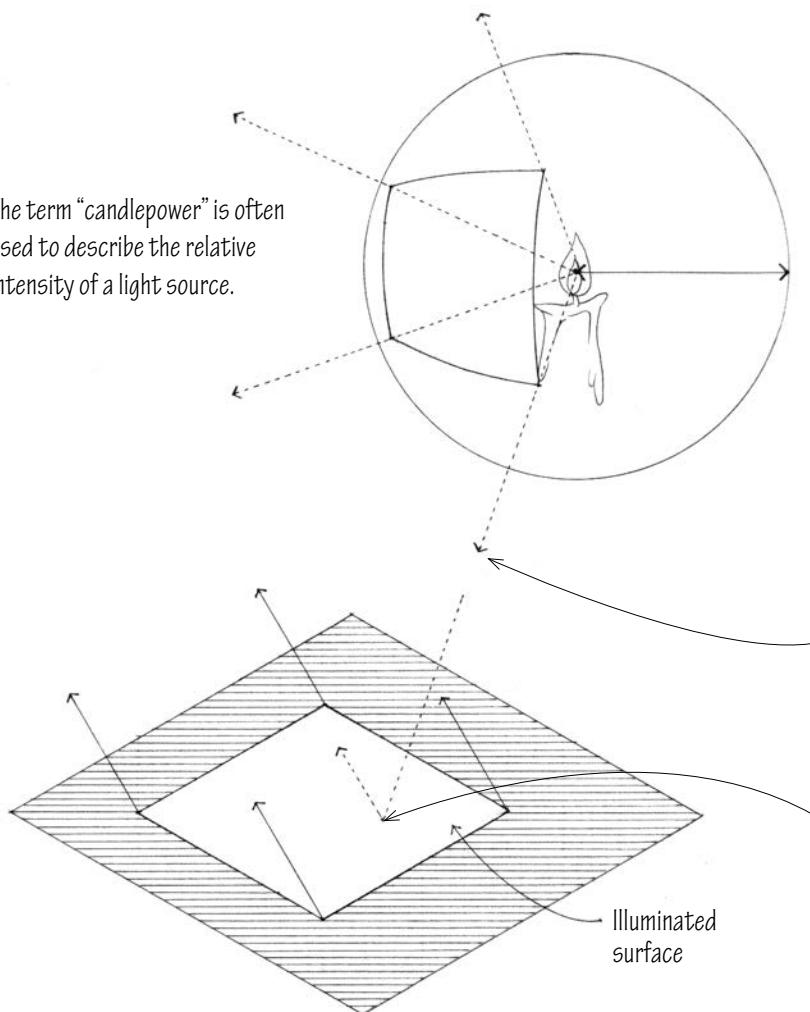
Illuminance is a measure of incident light on a surface. It is measured in lumens per square foot (footcandles) or lumens per square meter (lux). One footcandle is a unit of illuminance equal to one lumen spread evenly over an area of one square foot. This measure of light can be calculated by the lumen method or the point-by-point method, or with a more accurate computer program.

Brightness is our subjective perception of varying degrees of light intensity. Luminance is the amount of light energy that is reflected off a surface and interpreted by our visual system. Interpreting luminance can be technically quite complex, but it is also very intuitive.

Lighting designers are moving toward a new approach that looks at qualitative design issues such as the following:

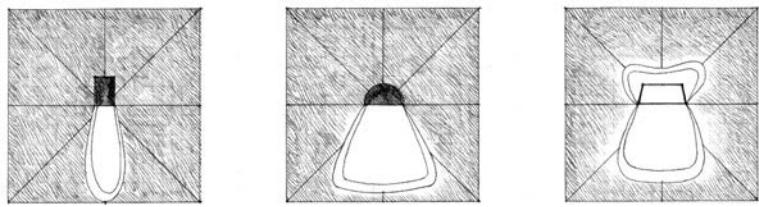
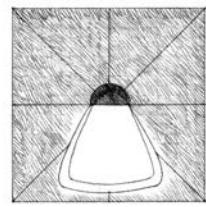
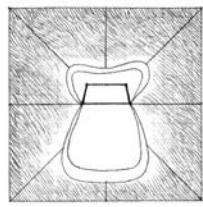
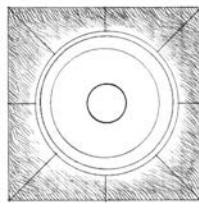
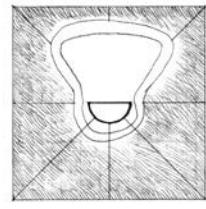
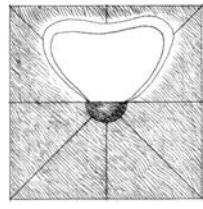
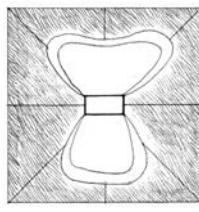
- Desired appearance of the space
- Color and luminance of finishes
- Integration of daylighting
- Glare control
- Light distribution on surfaces and the task plane
- Modeling of people and objects, and shadows
- Focus on points of interest
- Lighting system controls

The term "candlepower" is often used to describe the relative intensity of a light source.



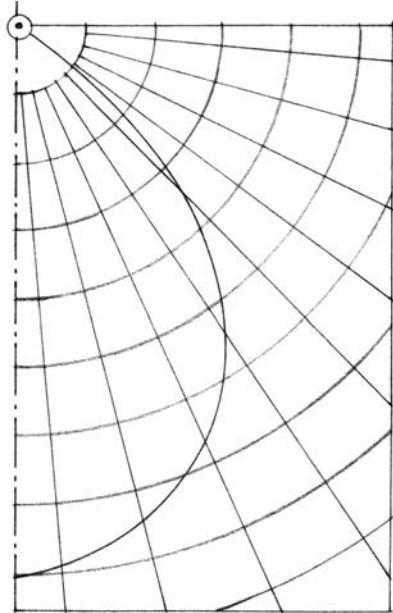
A successful lighting design is determined by the balance of relative luminances, rather than by the quantity of illuminance striking the surfaces of a room. Measurements of illuminance, however, are used to select lamps and lighting fixtures and to evaluate a lighting design. The photometric data to be considered include:

- The luminous intensity distribution curve (LIDC) represents the light pattern produced by a lamp or light fixture in a given direction from the center of the light source.
- The coefficient of utilization indicates the efficiency of a light fixture.
- The light loss factor (LLF) reflects the decrease in luminous output that occurs over the operating life of a lamp, which can be affected by the accumulation of dirt on the surfaces of the light fixture and by the effects of temperature.

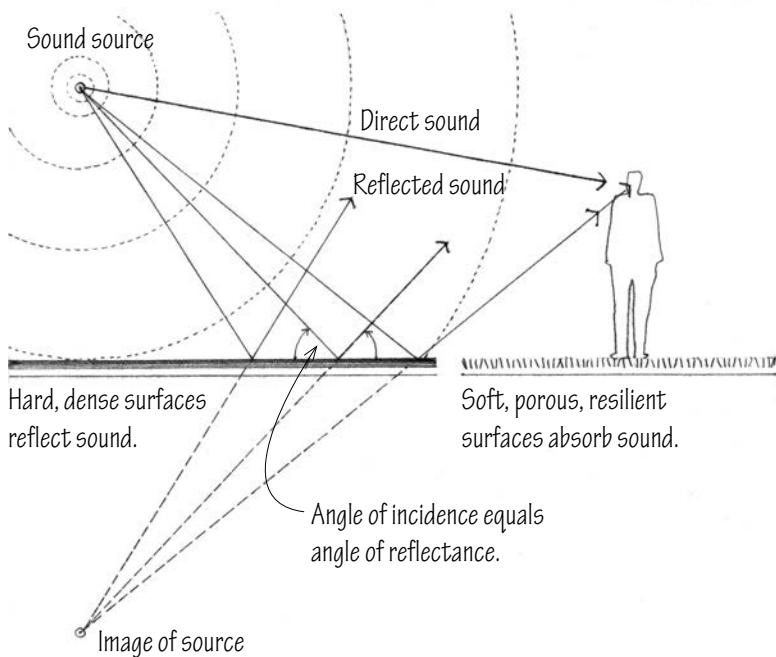
**Direct-Concentrating**0%–10% upward
90%–100% downward**Direct-Spread**0%–10% upward
90%–100% downward**Semidirect**10%–40% upward
60%–90% downward**General Diffuse**40%–60% upward
40%–60% downward**Semi-Indirect**60%–90% upward
10%–40% downward**Indirect**90%–100% upward
0%–10% downward**Direct-Indirect**40%–60% upward
40%–60% downward

Light fixtures may be classified according to the way they distribute the light emitted by their lamps. The basic types shown here are based on the percentage of light emitted above and below the horizontal.

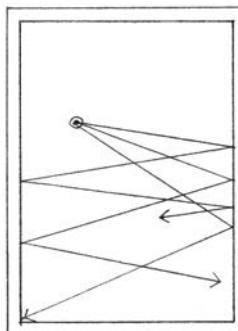
Luminous-intensity distribution curve of a light fixture



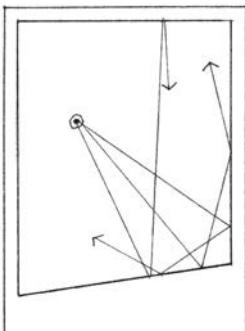
ACOUSTICS



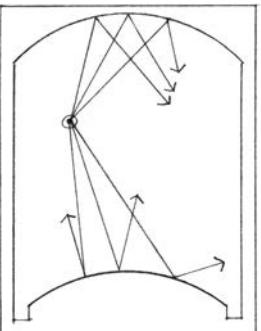
Acoustic Principles



Parallel reflective surfaces can cause echoes and flutter.



Splayed surfaces can help diffuse sound.



Concave surfaces focus sound; convex surfaces diffuse sound.

Acoustics deals with the production, control, transmission, reception, and effects of sound. In interior design, we are concerned with the control of sound in interior spaces. More specifically, we want to preserve and enhance desired sounds and reduce or eliminate sounds that would interfere with our activities.

Sound occurs when energy is transmitted as pressure waves through the air or another medium. A sound wave travels outward spherically from its source until it encounters an obstacle in its path. When a sound wave strikes an object, it is either absorbed or reflected, or a combination of the two.

In a room, we first hear a sound directly from its source and then a series of reflections of that sound. Reflective surfaces are useful when they reinforce desirable sounds by directing and distributing their paths in a room. The continued presence of reflected sounds, however, can cause problems of echo, flutter, or reverberation.

Echoes occur in large spaces when surfaces reflect sound waves that are loud enough and received late enough to be perceived as distinct from the source. In smaller rooms, parallel reflective surfaces can cause a rapid succession of echoes we call flutter.

Reverberation refers to the persistence of a sound within a space, caused by multiple reflections of the sound after its source has stopped. Some music is enhanced with long reverberation times, but speech can become muddled in such an acoustic environment. Altering the shape and orientation of a room's surfaces or adjusting the proportion of reflective and absorbent materials can aid sound clarity.

The requirements for sound level, reverberation time, and resonance vary with the nature of the activity and the types of sounds generated. An acoustical engineer can determine the acoustical requirements for a space. The interior designer should be aware of how the selection and disposition of reflective and absorbent materials affect the acoustical qualities of a room.

Decibel (dB) is a unit expressing the relative pressure or intensity of sounds on a uniform scale, from 0 for the least perceptible sound to about 130 for the average threshold of pain. Because decibel measurement is based on a logarithmic scale, the decibel levels of two sound sources cannot be added mathematically. For example, $60 \text{ dB} + 60 \text{ dB} = 63 \text{ dB}$, not 120 dB.

An equal loudness contour is a curve that represents the sound pressure level at which sounds of different frequencies are judged by a group of listeners to be equally loud.

A sone is a unit for measuring the apparent loudness of a sound.

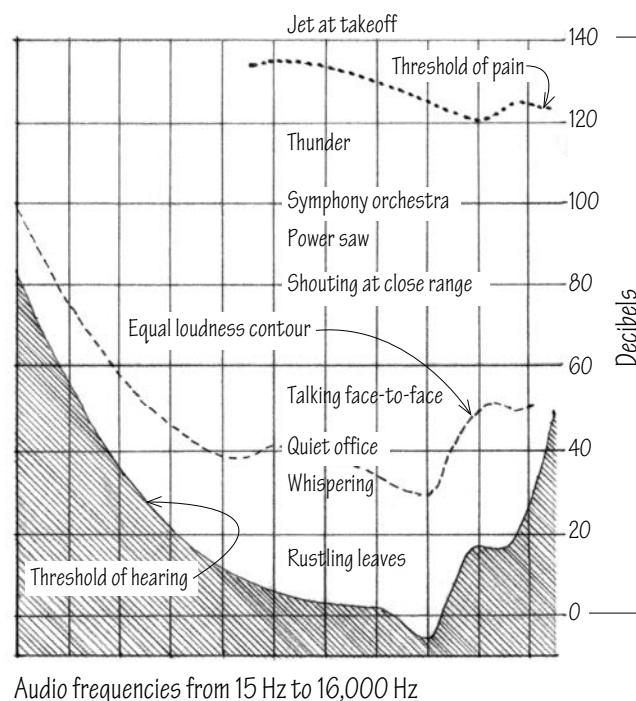
Noise

We refer to unwanted, annoying, or discordant sounds as noise. Noise from outside of a space can be controlled in the following ways:

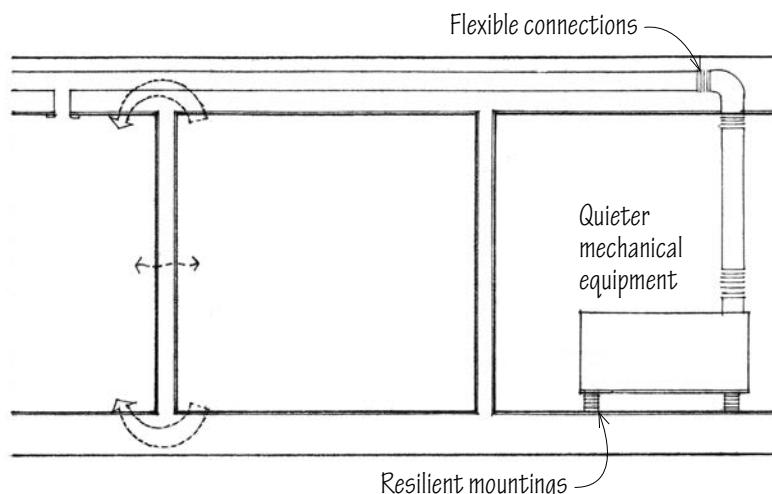
- Isolate the noise at its source.
- Locate noisy areas as far away as possible from quiet areas.
- Reduce the transmission of sound from one space to another.

Isolating Sound

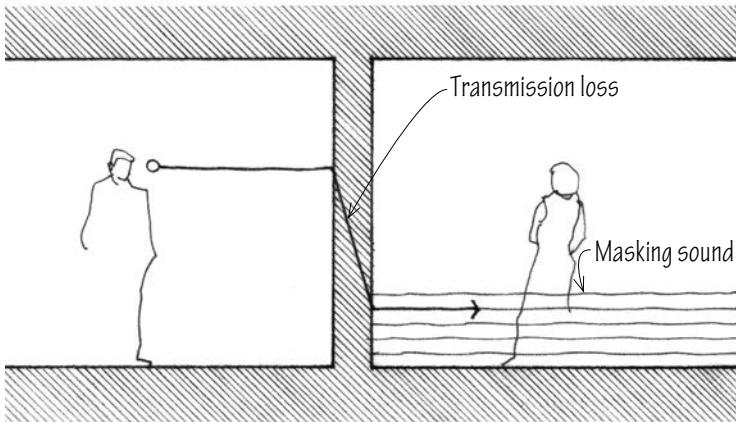
Sound can be transmitted through air as well as through the solid materials of a building's structure. Because structure-borne sounds are difficult to control, they should be isolated at their source whenever possible. Strategies include using quieter mechanical equipment, using resilient mountings and flexible connections to isolate equipment vibrations from the building structure, and eliminating flanking paths along interconnecting ductwork or piping that the noise can take from its source to the space.



Audio frequencies from 15 Hz to 16,000 Hz



NOISE REDUCTION

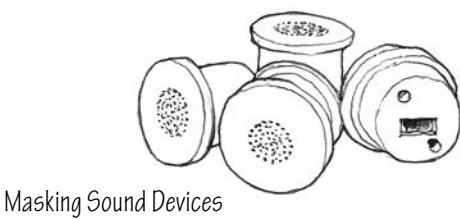


Noise reduction refers to the perceived difference in sound levels between two enclosed spaces. Noise reduction depends on the following:

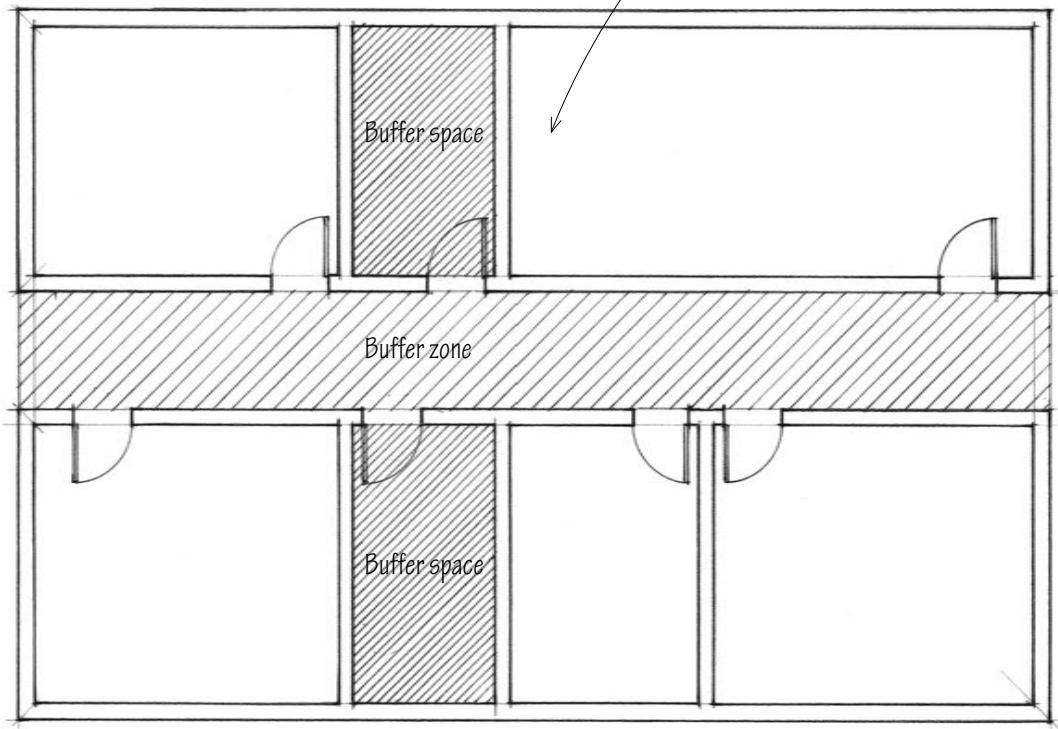
- The transmission loss through the wall, floor, and ceiling construction
- The absorptive qualities of the receiving space
- The level of masking or background sound, which can increase the threshold of audibility for other sounds in its presence

Background or ambient sound from both exterior and interior sources is normally present in an environment. Background sound is not distinctly identifiable by the listener. A type of background sound called white noise is sometimes deliberately introduced into a space to mask or obliterate unwanted sound.

The required noise reduction from one space to another depends on the level of the sound source and the level of sound intrusion that may be acceptable to the listener.

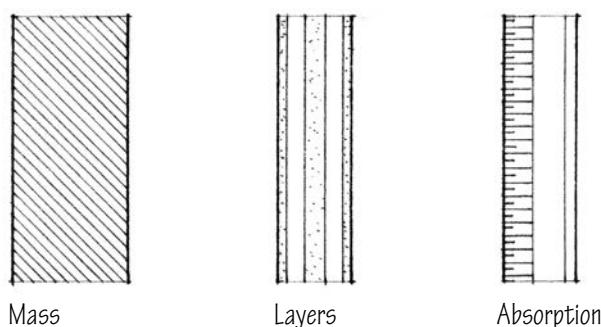


Zone activities according to sound levels, isolating quiet areas from noisier ones or separating them with mass or distance.

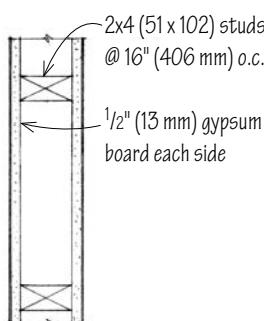
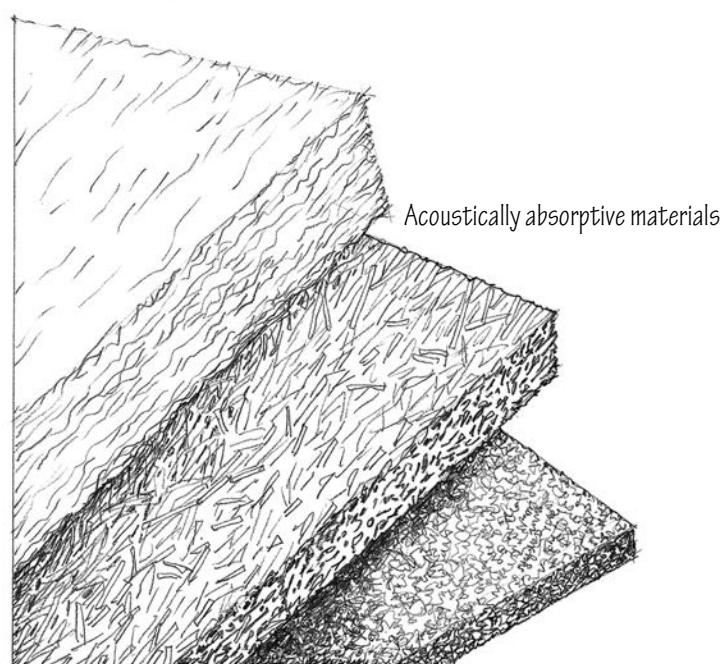


Transmission loss (TL) is a measure of the performance of a building material or construction assembly in preventing the transmission of airborne sound. Three factors enhance the TL rating of a construction assembly:

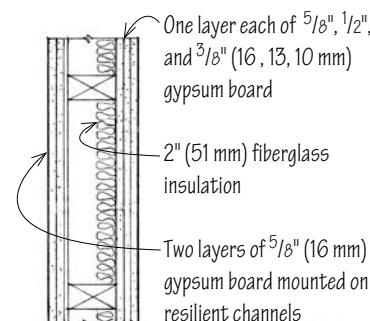
- **Mass:** In general, the heavier and more dense a body, the greater is its resistance to sound transmission.
- **Separation into layers:** Introducing air spaces into the construction assembly disrupts the path through which sound may be transmitted from one space to another.
- **Absorption:** Absorptive materials help to dissipate sound in a room.



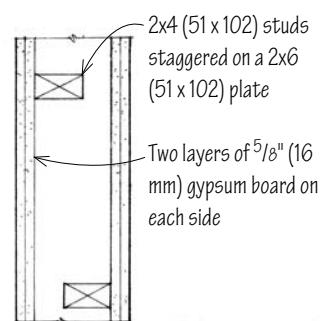
A *sound transmission class (STC)* rating is a single number that combines TL values from many frequencies. The STC provides an estimate of the performance of a partition in certain common sound insulation situations. The higher the STC rating, the greater is the sound-isolating value of the material or construction. An open doorway has an STC rating of 10; normal construction has STC ratings from 30 to 60; special construction is required for STC ratings above 60.



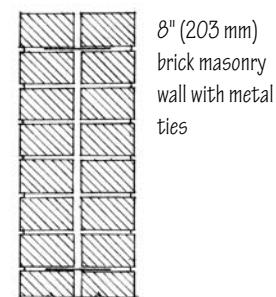
STC: 30–34



STC: 60–64

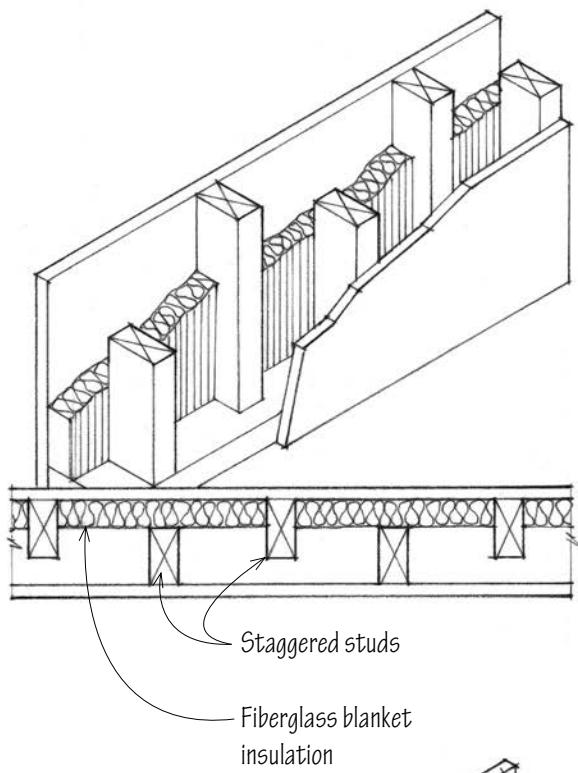


STC: 50–54



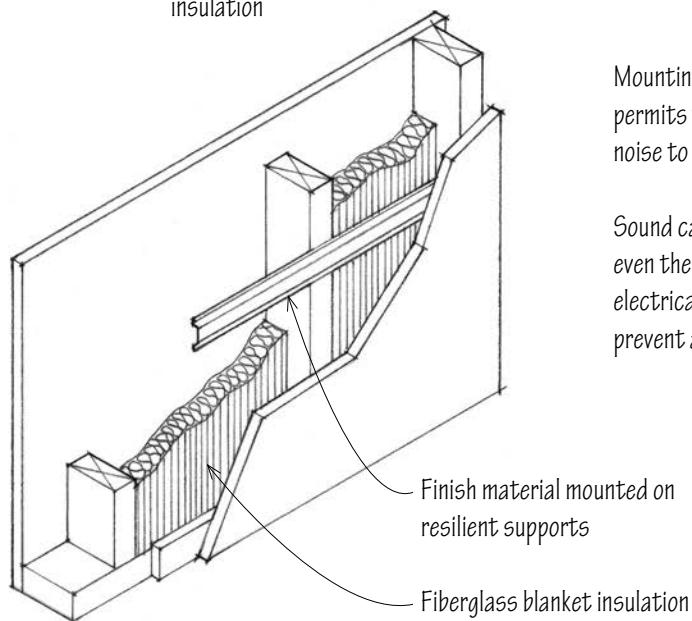
STC: 52

DISCONTINUOUS CONSTRUCTION



Staggering the studs of a wall or partition—forming two separate rows of studs arranged in a zigzag fashion—breaks the continuity of the path through which structure-borne sound can be transmitted.

Installing a fiberglass blanket in between the two rows of studs increases the transmission loss.



Mounting the finish material on resilient channels permits the surface to vibrate without transmitting noise to the supporting structure.

Sound can be transmitted through any clear air path, even the tiniest cracks around doors, windows, and electrical outlets. Careful sealing of these openings can prevent airborne noise from entering a room.

The sound-absorptive qualities of a material depend on its thickness, density, porosity, and resistance to airflow. Fibrous materials allow the passage of air while trapping sound energy, and are therefore often used in acoustic materials such as batts and blankets of fiberglass or mineral fiber.

In a normally constructed room without acoustical treatment, sound waves strike the wall, ceiling, and floor surfaces, which then transmit a small portion of the sound to adjacent spaces. The surfaces absorb another small amount of the sound, but most of it is reflected back into the room.

Absorptive materials can dissipate some of the incident sound energy and reduce the portion of sound transmitted. This is particularly helpful in spaces with distributed noise sources, such as offices, schools, and restaurants.

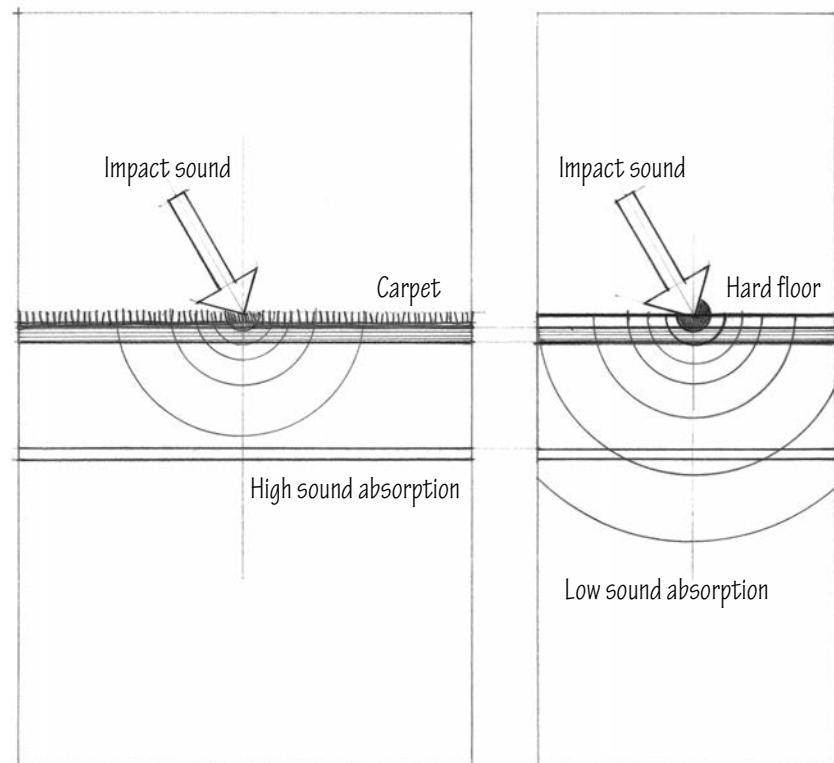
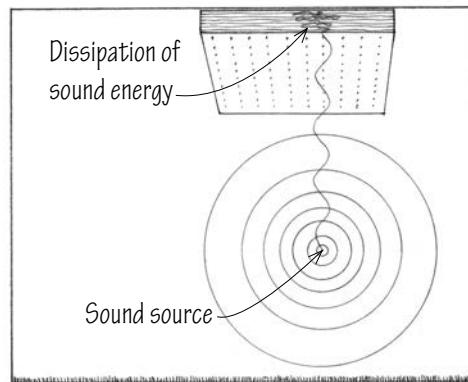
Reducing reverberation from the ceiling plane is usually the most effective approach to sound control in a room. Acoustical ceiling tiles are excellent absorbers of sound. They absorb more sound when mounted in a suspended ceiling system than when attached directly to a surface. Perforated metal ceiling panels with acoustic backing and acoustical ceiling panels made of bonded wood fibers also work well to control noise.

Treating walls and floors also helps to control sound. Acoustical wall panels usually have fire-rated fabric coverings.

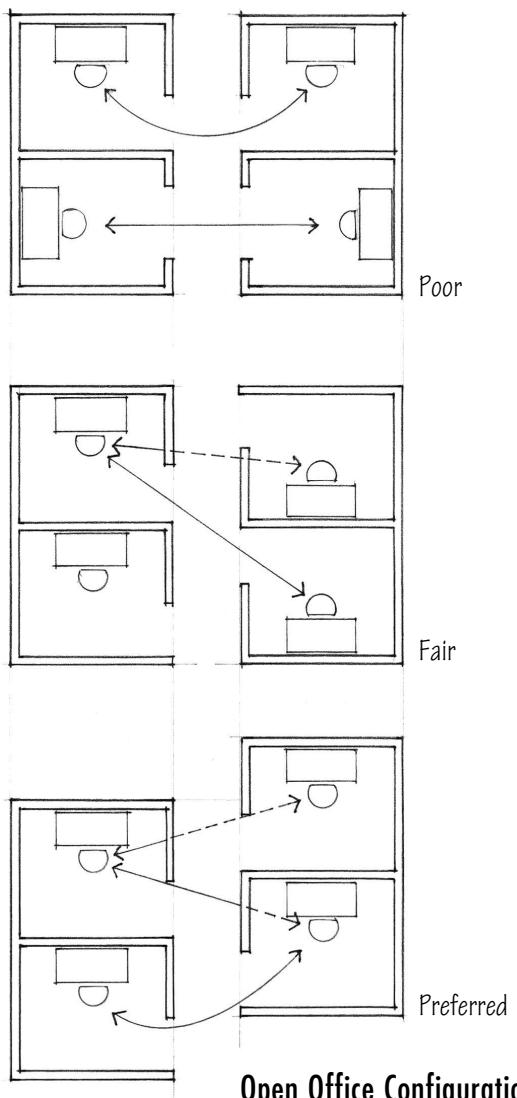
Carpet is the only floor finish that absorbs sound. In addition, it can cushion footfalls and the sounds of furniture movement, thus limiting transmission of impact noise to the space below.

The average coefficient of absorption measures how efficiently materials in a room absorb sound; the lower the rating, the more sound is being absorbed.

The sound absorption average (SAA) is the average of sound absorption coefficients at a range of frequencies. Manufacturers list SAA ratings for acoustic products; some may use older noise reduction coefficient (NRC) ratings, which are similar.



SOUND IN OFFICES



Open Office Configurations

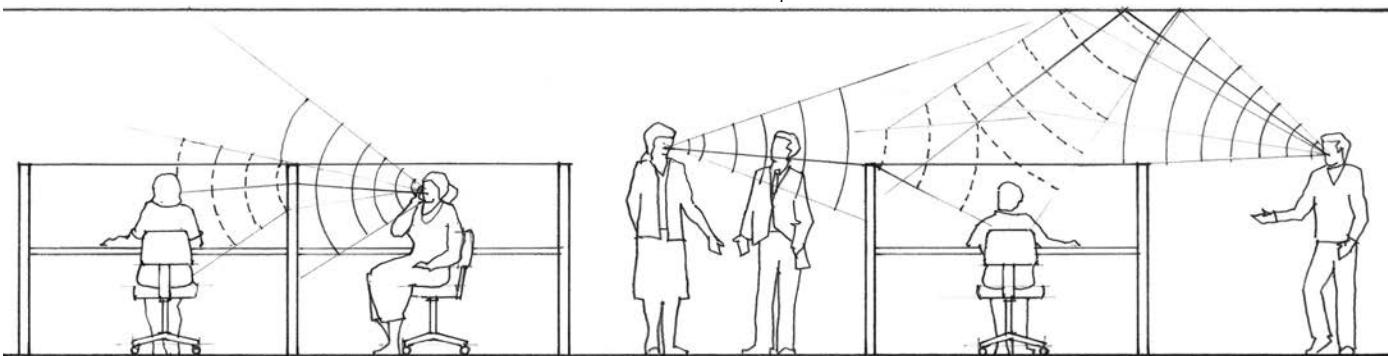
Interior designers are often faced with the need to provide speech privacy in offices. Combining ceiling and wall treatments with careful siting of furnishings helps to keep sounds from spreading.

Office workstations or cubicles do not usually have full-height partitions, and noise can be a problem. Office cubicles often use acoustical material to absorb some of the sound, but sound often travels through cubicle openings and over the tops of low walls. Locating workstations carefully can help to block some of this sound.

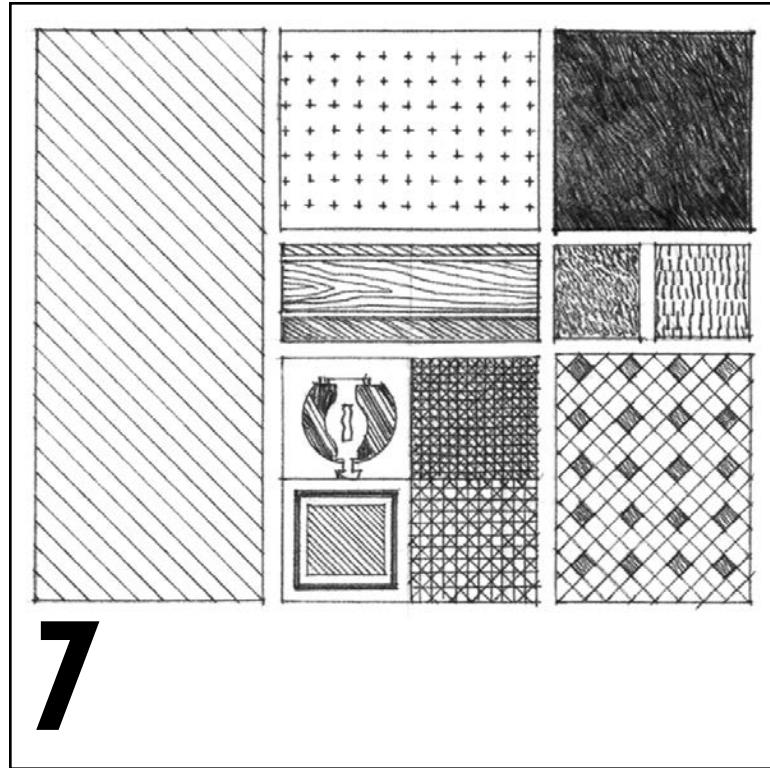
A significant amount of the sound in offices is reflected off the ceiling. A suspended acoustical tile ceiling will absorb unwanted sound. Where an open ceiling is desired, acoustical clouds or canopies over noisy areas will help control sound levels.

The intrusiveness of overheard speech is related to its intelligibility. Electronic sound-masking systems can help to reduce the intelligibility of overheard speech.

Suspended acoustical tile ceilings can absorb unwanted sounds.



Open Office Acoustics

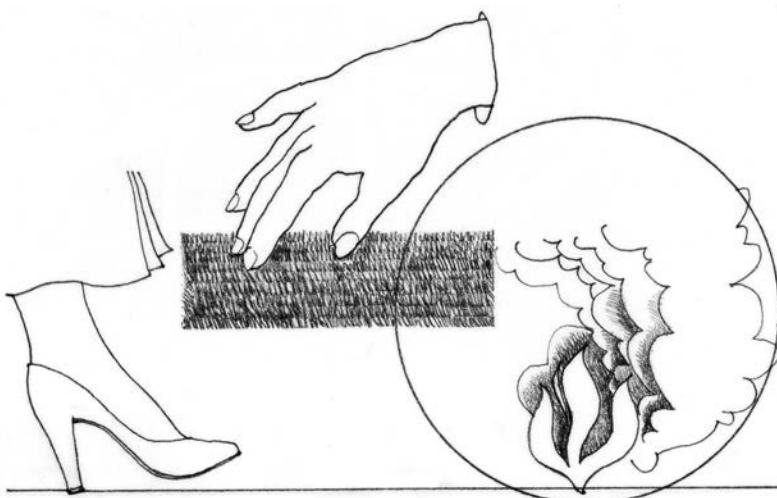


7

Finish Materials

Finish materials may be an integral part of the architectural assemblies that define an interior space, or they may be added as an additional layer or coating to the constructed walls, ceilings, and floors of a room. In either case, they should be selected with the architectural context in mind. Together with furnishings, finish materials play a significant role in creating the desired atmosphere in an interior space.

FINISH MATERIALS



Functional Criteria

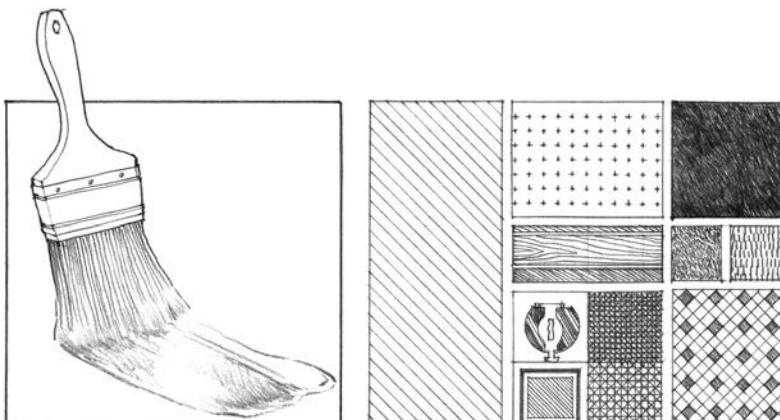
- Safety, health, and comfort
- Durability in anticipated use
- Ease of cleaning, maintenance, and repair
- Required degree of fire resistance
- Appropriate acoustic properties

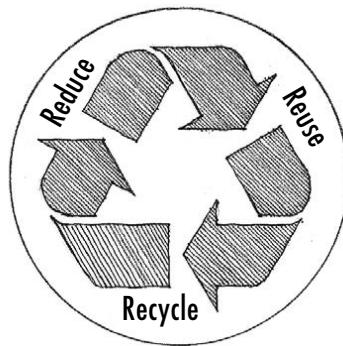
Aesthetic Criteria

- Color, natural or applied
- Texture
- Pattern

Economic Criteria

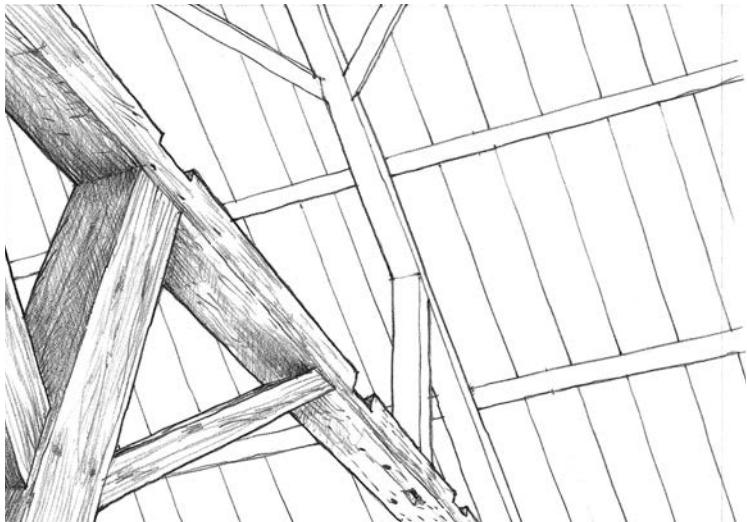
- Initial cost of acquisition and installation
- Life-cycle assessment (LCA) of materials and products, including environmental and health impacts, from acquisition of raw materials through end-of-use recovery





Sustainable Design Criteria

- Minimization of new materials and reuse of existing materials
- Use of materials with recycled content
- Use of rapidly renewable and certified sustainable materials from local sources
- Use of products from manufacturers who use sustainable processes
- Minimization of waste in construction, installation, and packaging
- Durability and flexibility of use
- Reduction of *embodied energy* used in processing and shipment

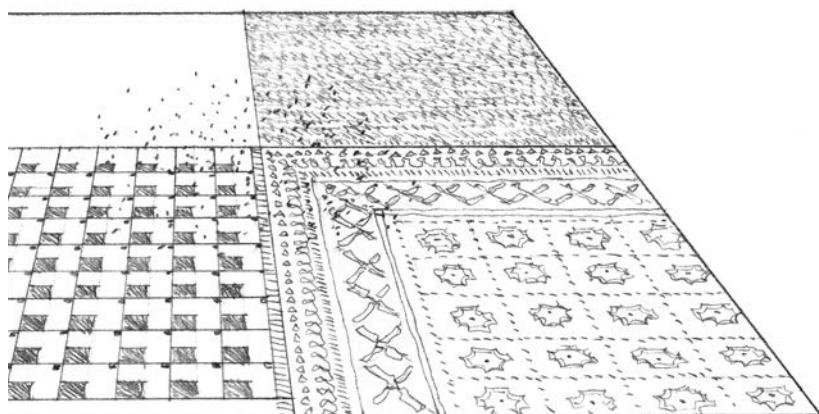


Recycling of timber



Logo of the Forest Stewardship Council

FINISH FLOORING

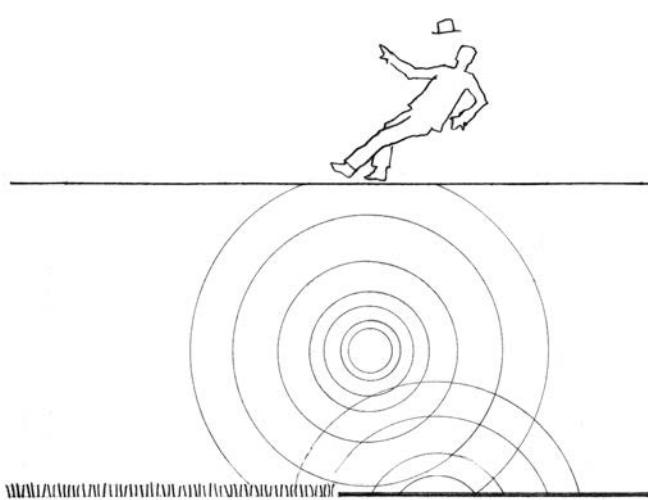
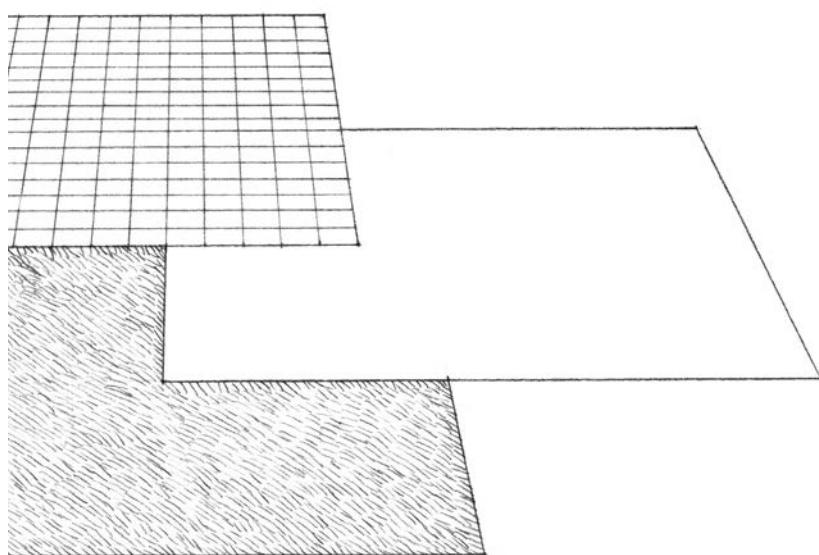


Finish flooring is the final layer of the floor assembly. Because flooring is subject to direct wear and represents a major portion of a room's surface area, it should be selected with both functional and aesthetic criteria in mind.

- **Durability:** Resistance to physical abrasion, denting, and scuffing.
- **Ease of maintenance:** Resistance to dirt, moisture, grease, and staining, especially in work and high-traffic areas.
- **Foot comfort:** This quality is related to the degree of resilience and—to a lesser degree—warmth.
- **Slip resistance:** Avoid hard, slick flooring materials, especially in areas susceptible to wetting.
- **Impact noise:** Resilient flooring can cushion some impact noise. Soft or porous flooring materials reduce impact noise and airborne sound.

The dirt that normally collects on a floor can be disguised by a mixture of neutral colors of middle value, a pattern that camouflages any dirt and surface marks, or a material whose natural color and texture is more noticeable than any dirt on the floor.

The warmth of a floor may be real or apparent. A flooring material may be warmed by radiant heat and kept warm by its own thermal mass or by insulating the floor. The flooring may appear warm if it has a soft texture, a middle-to-dark value, or a warm hue. Of course, in warm climates, a cool floor surface would be more comfortable than a warm one.



The floor can play an active role in determining the character of a space through its color, pattern, and texture.

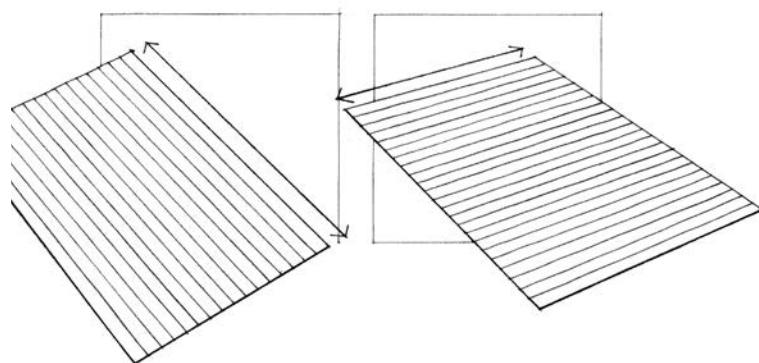
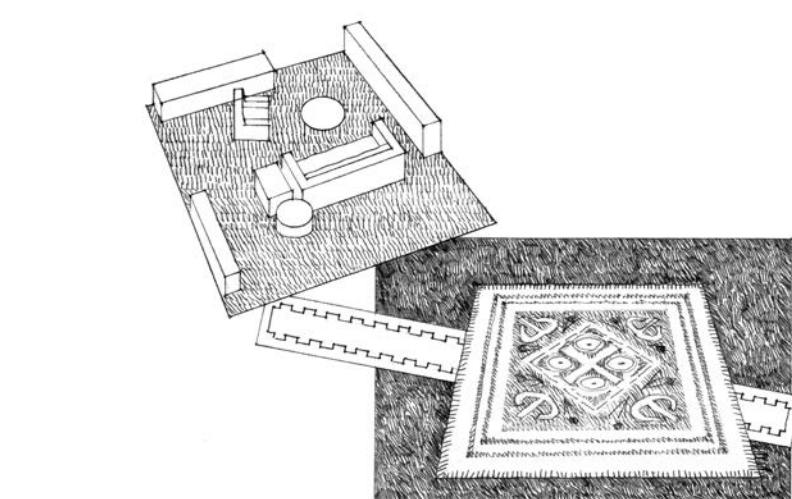
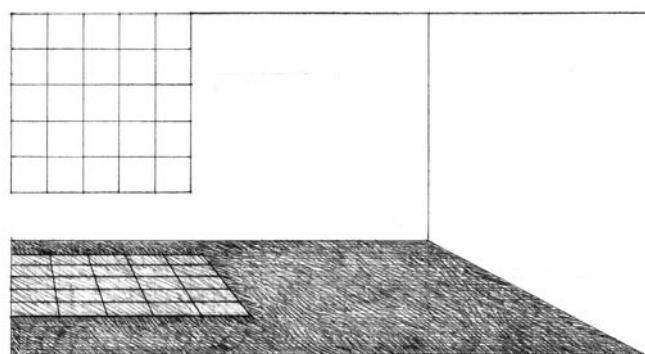
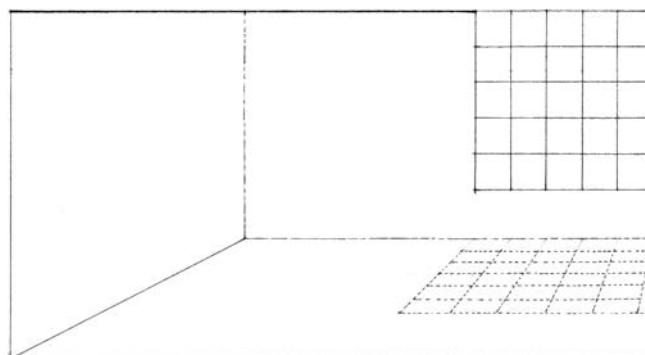
A light-colored floor will enhance the light level within a room, while a dark floor will absorb much of the light falling on its surface. A light color suggests spaciousness and emphasizes the smoothness of polished floors. A dark color gives a floor plane depth and weight.

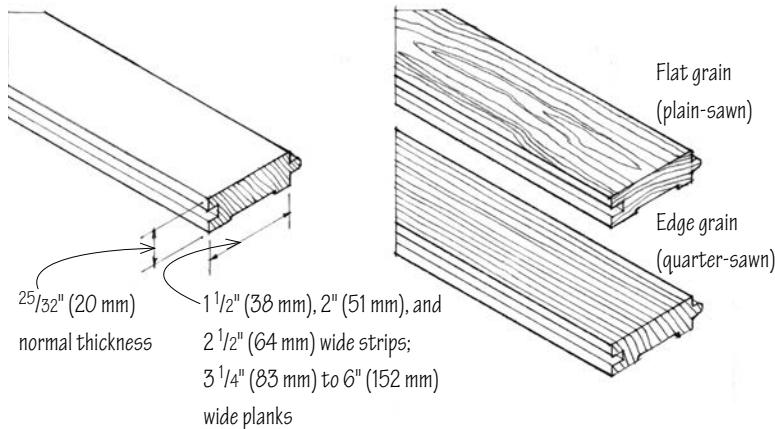
Unlike the wall and ceiling surfaces of a room, a floor transmits its tactile qualities—its texture and density—directly to us as we walk across its surface.

The physical texture of a flooring material and the way it is laid are directly related to the visual pattern created.

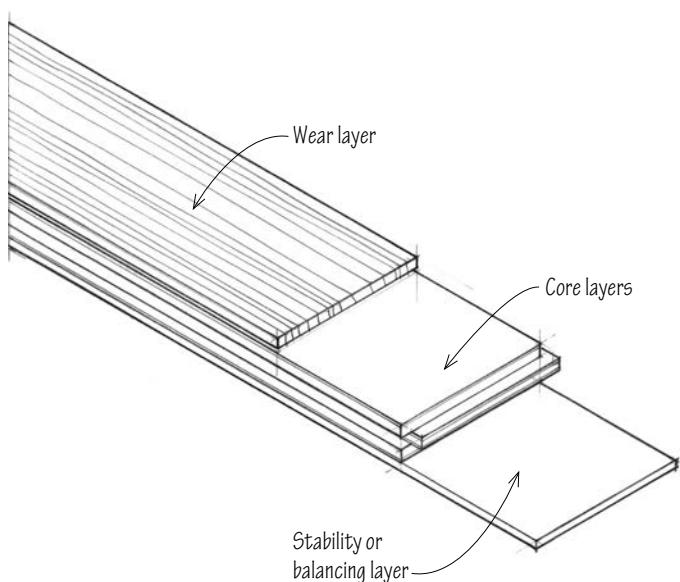
A neutral, patternless floor can serve as a simple background for a room's occupants and furnishings, but through the use of pattern, a floor can also become a dominant element in an interior space. The pattern can be used to define areas, suggest paths of movement, or provide textural interest.

Our perception of a flooring pattern is affected by the laws of perspective. Thus a small-scale pattern may be seen as a fine texture or a blended tone, rather than as a composition of individual design elements. In addition, any continuous linear elements in a flooring pattern will dominate. Directional patterns can affect the apparent proportion of a floor, either exaggerating or foreshortening one of its dimensions.





Solid Wood Flooring



Laminated Wood Flooring

Finish flooring is usually separated into hard flooring such as wood, stone, and tile; resilient flooring such as linoleum or cork; and soft floor coverings, which consist primarily of carpets and rugs. Of the hard floor finishes, wood flooring is admired for its warm, natural appearance and its attractive blend of comfort, resilience, and durability. It is also fairly easy to maintain under moderate use and, if damaged, can be refinished or replaced.

Durable, close-grained species of hardwoods (white and red oak, maple, birch, beech, and pecan) and soft woods (Southern pine, Douglas fir, Western larch, hemlock, and others) are used for wood flooring. Of these, oak, Southern pine, and Douglas fir are the most common. The best grades are clear or select, which minimize or exclude defects such as knots, streaks, checks, and torn grain.

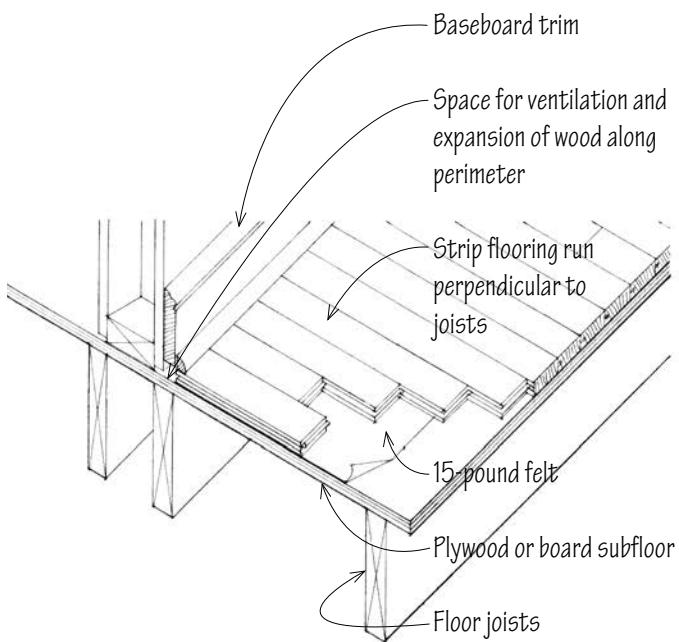
Woods used for flooring should be from certified sustainable sources. Rare or exotic species should be avoided.

Other types of wood used for flooring include bamboo and antique or reclaimed wood flooring. Bamboo is technically a grass, and its ability to regrow quickly after harvesting has earned it a reputation as a sustainable material. Antique or reclaimed wood flooring, retrieved from buildings that are about to be demolished, offers a distinctive character and patina.

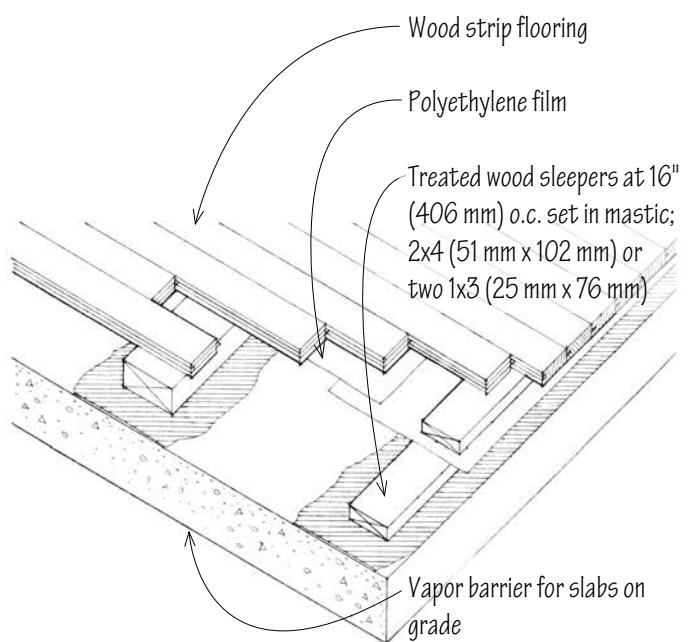
Solid wood flooring is available in strips and planks. Board flooring is usually sold in the form of narrow strips, although planks up to 6 inches (152 mm) wide are also available.

Engineered hardwood flooring is impregnated with acrylic or sealed with urethane or vinyl. Laminated flooring assembles high-pressure laminates, including wood veneers, into durable, acrylic-urethane sealed panels. Bamboo is also laminated under high pressure, milled into planks, immersed in polyurethane, and coated with acrylic polyurethane. Most bamboo products must travel long distances to reach the U.S. market.

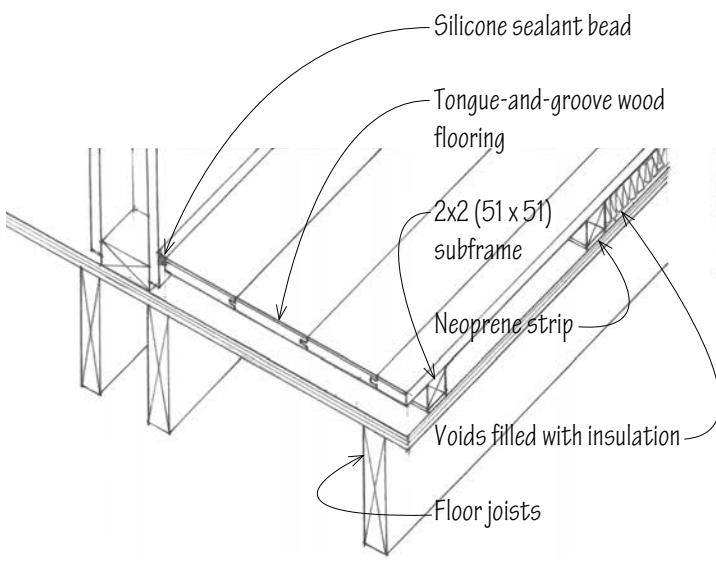
Wood flooring is most often finished with clear polyurethane, varnish, or a penetrating sealer. Finishes can range from high gloss to satin. Ideally, the finish should enhance the durability of the wood and its resistance to water, dirt, and staining, without concealing the wood's natural beauty. Stains are used to add color to the natural color of the wood without obscuring the wood grain. Wood flooring can also be waxed, painted, or stenciled, but painted surfaces require more maintenance.



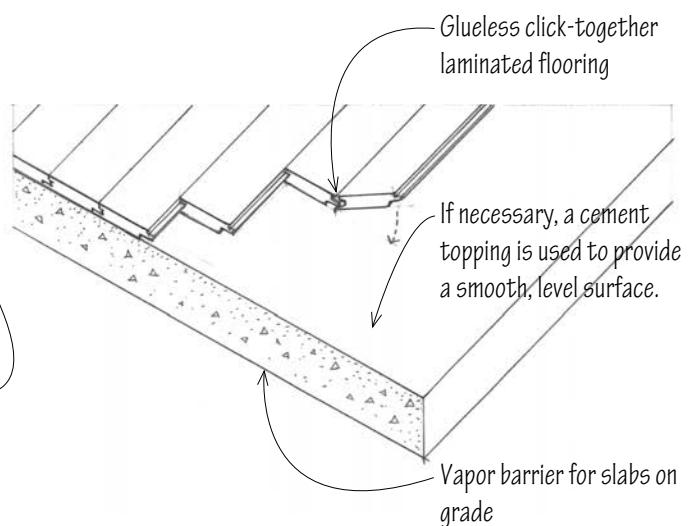
Wood Flooring over a Subfloor and Joists



Wood Flooring over a Concrete Slab

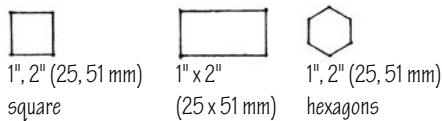


Floating Wood Flooring Installation

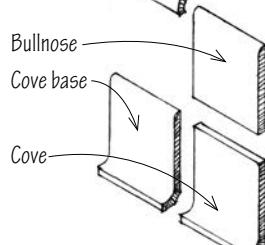
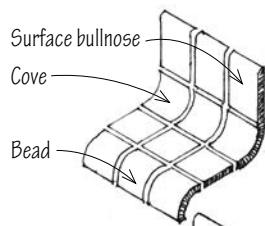
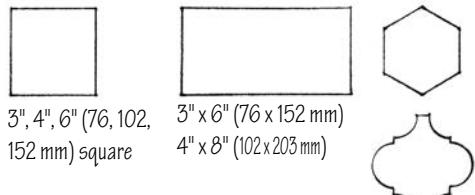


Glueless Laminated Wood Flooring Installation

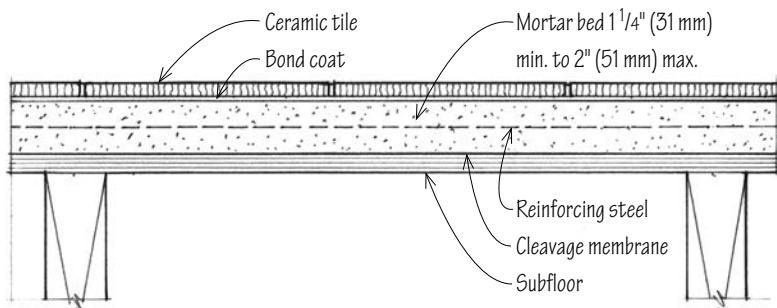
TILE AND STONE FLOORING



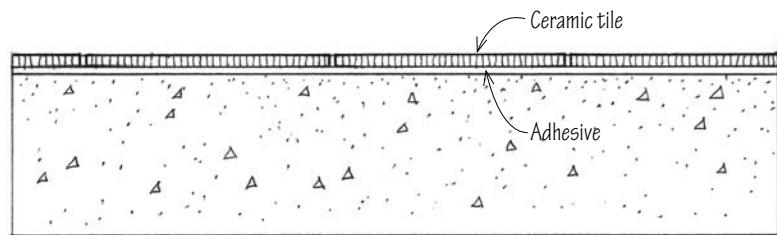
Ceramic Mosaic Tile — $\frac{1}{4}$ " (6 mm) thick



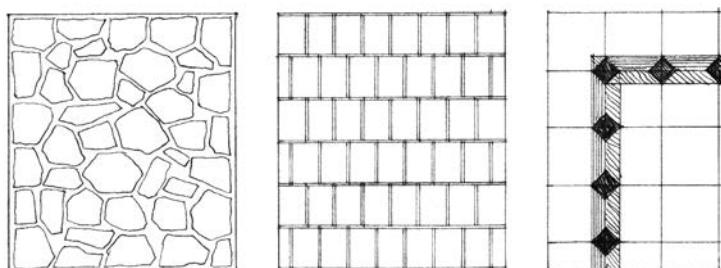
Quarry Tile and Pavers — $\frac{3}{8}$ ", $\frac{1}{2}$ " and $\frac{3}{4}$ " (10, 12 and 19 mm) thick



Thickset Tile Installation



Thinset Tile Installation



Stone Flooring Patterns

Tile and stone flooring materials are solid and durable. Depending on the shape of the individual pieces and the pattern in which they are laid, these flooring materials can have a cool, formal appearance or give a room an informal feeling.

Ceramic mosaic tiles—small, modular units of natural clay or porcelain—are widely used for flooring. The natural clay type is unglazed, with muted earth colors; the porcelains can have bright colors and are *vitreous* (glasslike, dense, and impervious).

Quarry tiles and pavers are larger modular flooring materials. Quarry tiles are unglazed units of heat-hardened clay. Larger-sized ceramic tiles are available in a range of patterns, some of which mimic natural stone, and are practically impervious to moisture, dirt, and stains.

Stone tile flooring materials provide a solid, permanent, and highly durable floor surface. Types of stone commonly used for flooring include:

- **Slate:** Reddish browns, grays, greens, blues, and blacks. Available in square or irregular shapes, can be formal or informal.
- **Marble:** White, pinks, greens, browns. Shaded and striped. Lends itself to high polish and formal elegance.
- **Granite:** Over 200 colors. Polishes well, also honed or thermal finishes.

Tile installations are either thinset or thickset. Thinset installation uses adhesive to attach the tile. Thickset installation is used over floors subject to bending and deflection. The tile is set on a layer of mortar that helps prevent cracking.

Tile or stone flooring is set in grout. Grout is available in a variety of colors and can be selected to blend or contrast with the flooring material.

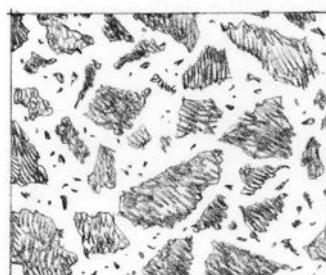
Concrete can be used as a finish floor surface if smooth and level enough. It should be sealed against stains and grease. Concrete can be painted, stained, or integrally colored when cast. An exposed aggregate finish can provide textural interest.

Terrazzo is a special type of exposed aggregate finish with mosaic-like patterns created by marble chips. It is available in poured or precast forms.

Seamless, durable fluid-applied flooring materials are used for commercial, industrial, and institutional installations. The flooring materials are poured over concrete or other rigid substrates. Seamless quartz flooring consists of colored quartz aggregates in clear or colored epoxy.



Standard terrazzo is a ground and polished finish that consists mainly of relatively small stone chips.

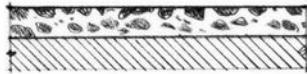


Venetian terrazzo consists mainly of large stone chips, with smaller chips filling the spaces between.

Types of Terrazzo

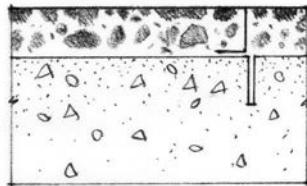
Thinset Terrazzo

$\frac{1}{4}$ " to $\frac{1}{2}$ " (6 to 13 mm) epoxy terrazzo topping is placed over a wood, metal, or concrete subfloor.



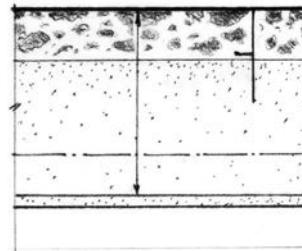
Monolithic Terrazzo

$\frac{1}{2}$ " (13 mm) thick cement matrix terrazzo topping is laid over a rough-finished concrete slab.



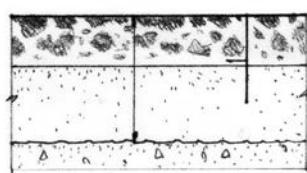
Sand-Cushion Terrazzo

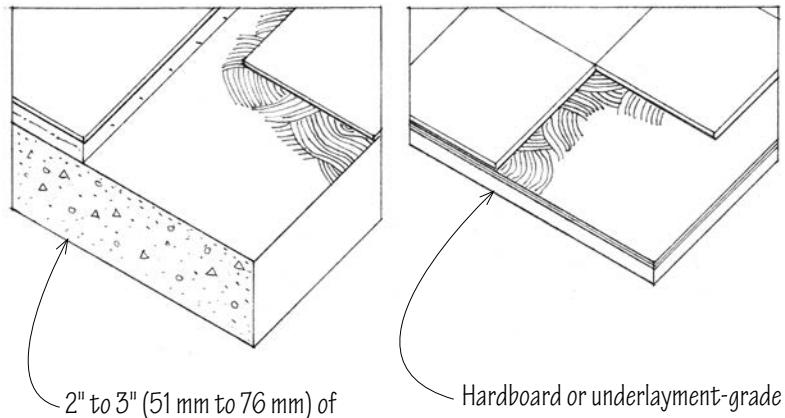
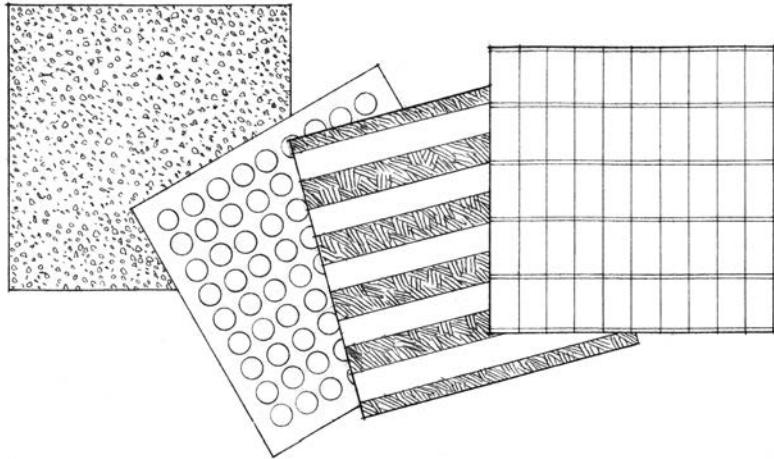
$\frac{1}{2}$ " (13 mm), $\frac{5}{8}$ " (16 mm), or thicker cement matrix terrazzo topping is installed over a reinforced mortar underbed and an isolation membrane of sand to control cracking when structural movement is expected.



Bonded Terrazzo

$\frac{1}{2}$ " (13 mm) thick cement matrix terrazzo topping and a sand-cement underbed are mechanically bonded to a rough-finished concrete slab.





2" to 3" (51 mm to 76 mm) of reinforced concrete topping is required over precast concrete planks.

Hardboard or underlayment-grade plywood

Resilient flooring materials provide an economical, dense, nonabsorbent flooring surface with relatively good durability and ease of maintenance. Their degree of resilience enables them to resist permanent indentation while contributing to their quietness and comfort underfoot. The degree of comfort provided will depend not only on the material's resilience but also on the type of backing used and the hardness of the supporting substrate.

Linoleum and vinyl sheets come in rolls from 6 feet (1829 mm) to 15 feet (4572 mm) wide. They can be cut into patterns in the factory or the field. Resilient flooring materials are available as tiles, typically 12 inches (304 mm) square. While sheet goods provide a seamless floor, tiles are easier to install if the floor outline is irregular. Individual resilient tiles can be replaced if damaged.

Resilient flooring types vary in their performance and sustainability.

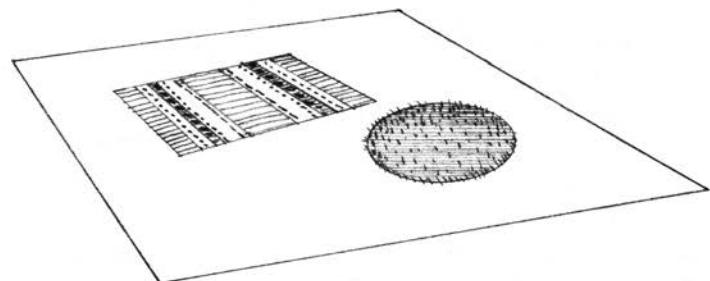
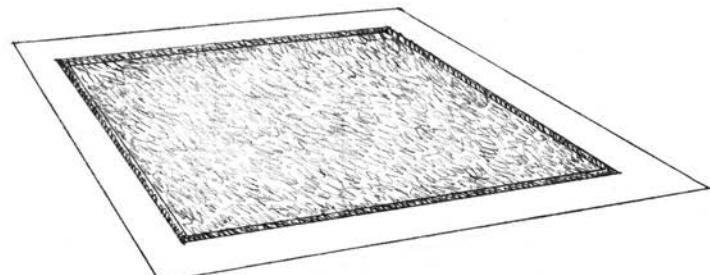
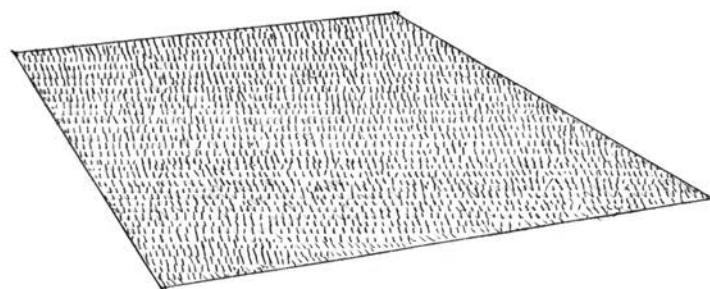
- Rubber tile, vinyl sheet, linoleum, and cork products offer the best resilience.
- Vinyl and linoleum sheets and tiles resist staining, grease, and cigarette burns well.
- Vinyl products, especially sheet materials, are not sustainable materials.
- Natural linoleum and cork are made of renewable materials and have lower VOC levels.
- The pattern on vinyl tiles and sheets can wear off, whereas linoleum and cork have consistent color throughout.
- Leather tiles, which are comparatively expensive, develop an attractive patina with time and use.

The wood or concrete substrate for resilient flooring should be clean, dry, flat, and smooth to prevent any irregularities in the base material from showing through. Resilient flooring materials are not designed to be laid over ceramic tile. Linoleum and cork tiles should not be laid below grade.

There are two major categories of soft floor coverings—carpeting and rugs. These coverings provide floors with both visual and textural softness, resilience, and warmth in a wide range of colors and patterns. These qualities enable carpeting to absorb sound, reduce impact noise, and provide a comfortable and safe surface to walk on. As a group, carpeting is easier to install than hard floor coverings, and is fairly easy to maintain. Most used carpet ends up in landfills or incinerators, but carpet and carpet pad recycling options are improving.

Carpeting is most often manufactured in 12-foot (3658-mm) wide rolls, referred to as broadloom. Some specialty carpet comes in widths up to 18 feet (5486 mm) wide. Woven carpet is also manufactured in 27- to 36-inch (6858- to 9144-mm) widths referred to as narrow goods or runners and typically used in residential installations.

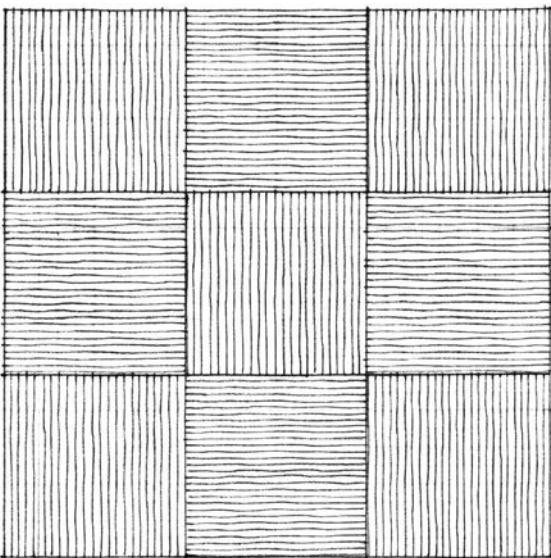
Broadloom carpet is sold by the square foot, cut to fit, and installed over cushion using tackless strips, or glued down using an adhesive. Carpeting normally is installed wall-to-wall, covering the entire floor of a room.



Because carpet is usually fastened to a floor, it must be cleaned in place and cannot be turned to equalize wear. The location of seams, the type of backing, and the technique used to seam carpet can have a substantial effect on the useful lifespan of a broadloom carpet.



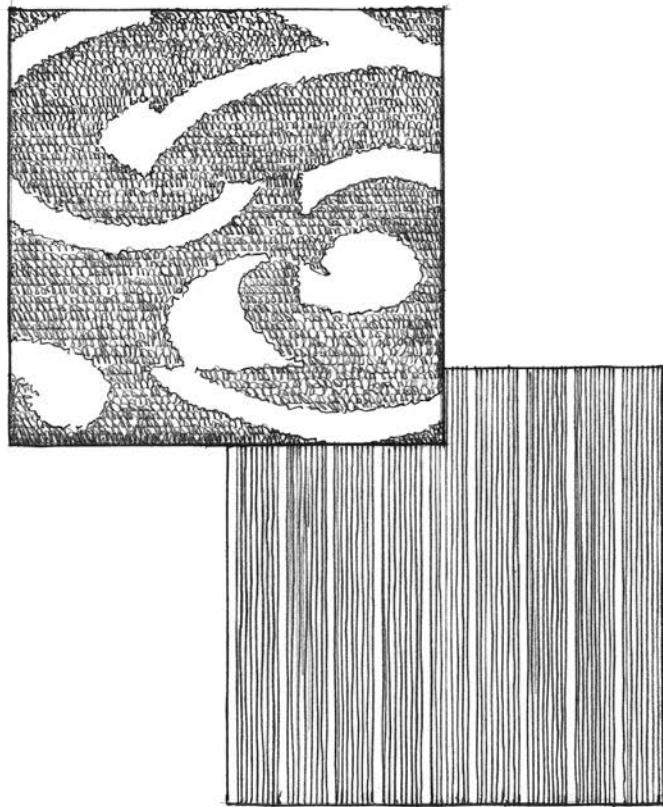
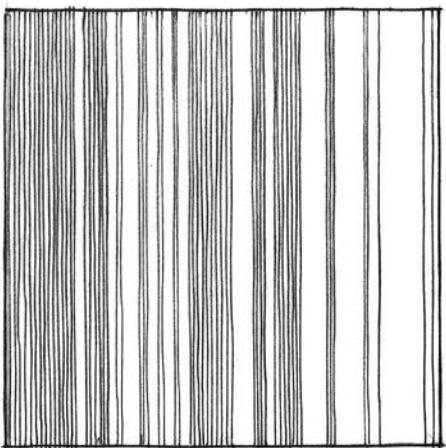
CARPET TILES



Carpet tiles are modular pieces of carpet that can be laid to resemble a seamless wall-to-wall installation or can be arranged in subtle or bold patterns. They are designed to be used in both residential and commercial settings. They are usually constructed by tufting, although some are made by fusion bonding. Carpet tiles offer the following advantages over broadloom carpet:

- They can be easily cut to fit odd-shaped contours with a minimum of waste.
- Individual tiles can be replaced if worn or damaged.
- They can be moved easily and reused.
- In commercial installations, the tiles can be removed for access to underfloor utilities.

Carpet tiles are available in a range of square sizes. Tiles are designed to be free-laid on a subfloor with only the perimeter tacked in place with adhesive, fully glued down, or tacked in place with pressure-sensitive adhesive. Commercial-grade carpet tiles have a backing strong enough to prevent shrinkage or expansion of the tile and to protect the carpet edges from unraveling.



The performance of a carpet depends upon several factors, most importantly the type of fibers used. Each carpet manufacturer offers blends of the generic face fibers that improve on specific characteristics such as durability, soil resistance, cleaning ability, color, and luster.

Carpet Fibers

Nylon has excellent strength and wearing ability, is soil-, mold- and mildew-resistant, and dries quickly. Solution-dyed nylon resists fading from sunlight and chemicals. New soft nylons with smaller-diameter fibers have increased nylon's desirability for residential use.

PET polyester is a durable form of polyester made from recycled plastic containers. It resists soiling, abrasion, stains, and fading.

Olefin (polypropylene) is colorfast and resistant to abrasion, soil, and mildew. Most olefin lacks nylon's resiliency and crush resistance, and is best used for indoor/outdoor carpets. A new type of olefin fiber is specially processed for softness, stain resistance, and durability.

Wool has excellent resilience and warmth, and good soil, flame, and solvent resistance. Wool has an outstanding ability to absorb color. It cleans and maintains well, has superior long-term appearance retention, and ages gracefully.

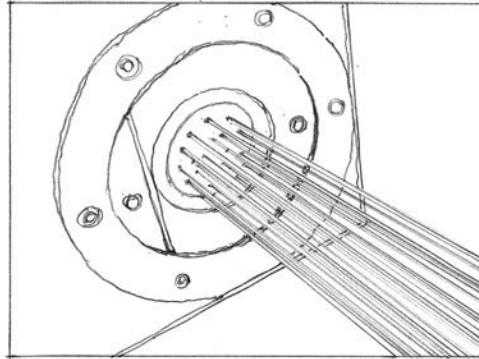
Dye Techniques

Solution dyeing consists of adding dye to synthetic carpet fiber material before the yarn is extruded. This technique is the most colorfast and resistant to chemicals, gasses, bleaches, and sunlight.

Continuous dyeing involves applying dye to the open face of a carpet and setting it by steam injection. This is the least expensive dyeing method, but it is less colorfast and uniform.

Piece or beck dyeing consists of running white carpet with primary backing (called greige goods) through a large, shallow dye vat (beck) before the secondary backing is applied.

Print or contact dyeing can be used on almost any type of pile. This technique produces good colorfastness and penetration.



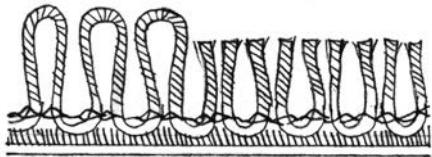
A spinneret is a multi-pored device through which viscous plastic polymer is extruded into cool air or liquid to cool and form fibers.



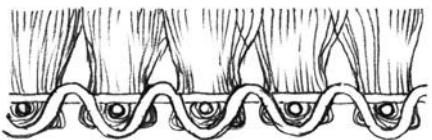
Microscopic view of nylon fibers



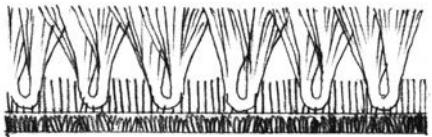
Microscopic view of wool fibers



Tufted carpet



Woven carpet



Fusion-bonded carpet

Tufted Carpet

Most commercial carpet is made by inserting tufts of yarn into a primary backing. A secondary backing may be added as a cushion and for greater dimensional stability.

Woven Carpet

Made on looms, woven carpet is the product of a much slower and more expensive process than tufting. Axminster carpets, which are generally made of 100% wool or 80% wool and 20% nylon, are the most durable and long-wearing carpet type. They are often used in hospitality and residential applications. Wilton carpet is a decorative wool carpet used in homes. Both of these carpet types are woven through the back of the fabric and do not require a secondary backing.

Fusion-Bonded Carpet

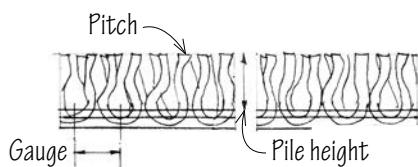
Fusion-bonded carpets are constructed in facing pairs with the pile embedded in the backing on each side, then cut apart to create cut pile. They are used for heavy foot traffic, such as in airport terminals.

Carpet Cushions

Carpet cushions add resilience, lessen impact noises, and can significantly extend the life of a carpet. They are most commonly used with residential carpets. However, some types will compress too easily and are not durable under heavy traffic.

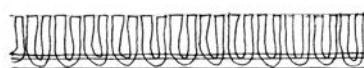
After color, texture is a carpet's prime visual characteristic. The various carpet textures available are a result of the pile construction, the pile height, and the manner in which the carpet is cut. There are three major groups of carpet textures:

- **Cut pile** results when every yarn loop is cut. It can be produced in tufted, woven, or bonded constructions.
- **Loop or uncut pile** is tougher and more easily maintained than cut pile. Loop pile can be produced through tufted, woven, and knitted techniques. It is durable and easy to maintain, and works well with wheeled furniture.
- **Cut-and-uncut pile** adds a degree of softness to all-loop pile with varying proportions of cut and uncut pile. It can be produced in tufted and woven constructions.



Carpet Pile Terms

- Density is a measure of the amount of pile fiber by weight in a given area of carpet. Increased density generally results in better performance.
- Pitch refers to the number of ends of yarn in 27 inches (685 mm) of width of woven carpet.
- Gauge refers to the needle spacing across the width of a tufting machine, expressed in fractions of an inch.
- Face weight is the total weight of face yarns measured in ounces per square yard.



Velvet or Plush

Smooth, finely sheared cut pile shows traffic marks.



Saxony

Multi-ply yarn gives smooth, soft appearance, shows footprints.



Twist or Friezé

Twists are set into yarn to create a heavier, rougher texture.



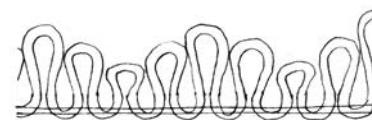
Shag

Textured surface is created with long, twisted yarns.



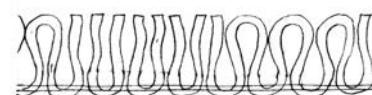
Level Loop

Looped tufts of the same height



Multi-Level or Patterned Loop

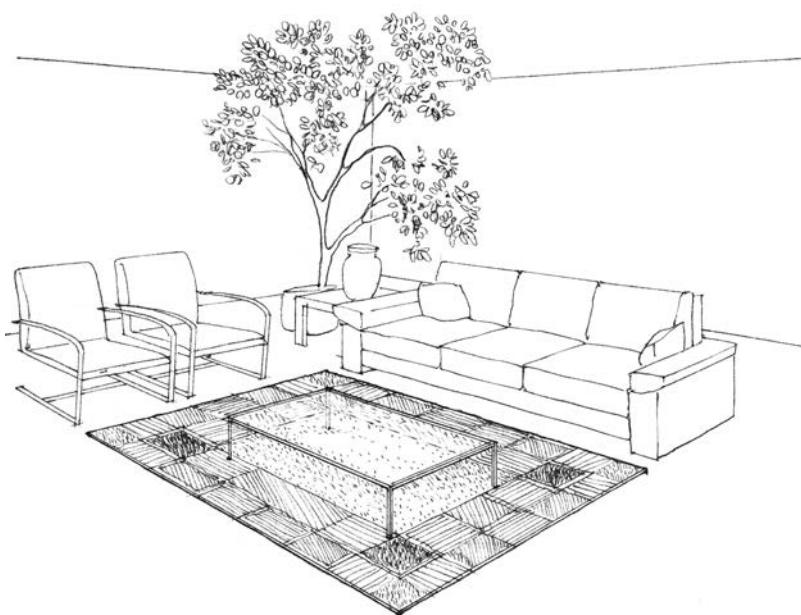
Uncut loops create sculptured patterns.



Cut and Loop

Combination of loop pile with cut pile creates patterns.

RUGS

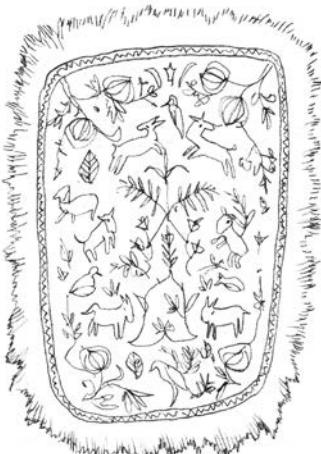


Rugs are floor coverings manufactured or cut to standard sizes, often with a finished border. They are not intended to cover the entire floor of a room and are therefore simply laid over another finish flooring material.

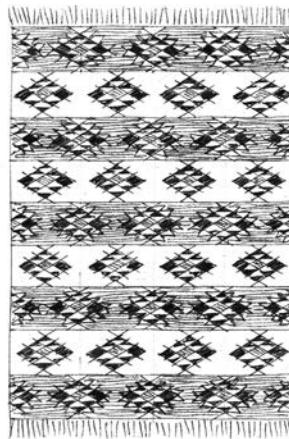
Room-sized rugs cover most of a room's floor, leaving a strip of finish flooring exposed along the room's edges. They approximate the appearance of wall-to-wall carpeting but can be moved if desired, removed for cleaning when necessary, and turned for more even distribution of wear.

Area rugs cover a smaller portion of a room's floor and can be used to define an area, unify a furniture grouping, or delineate a path. Decorative rugs, especially handmade ones, can also serve as a dominant design element and provide a focal point for a room's arrangement.

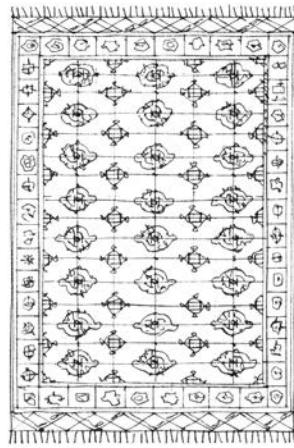
Knotted, hooked, braided, or hand-tufted techniques produce various styles of looped and/or cut yarns that are commonly used for area rugs. Oriental rugs are hand-knotted.



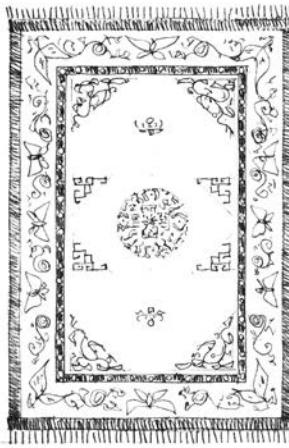
Indian Numdah



Navajo Rug



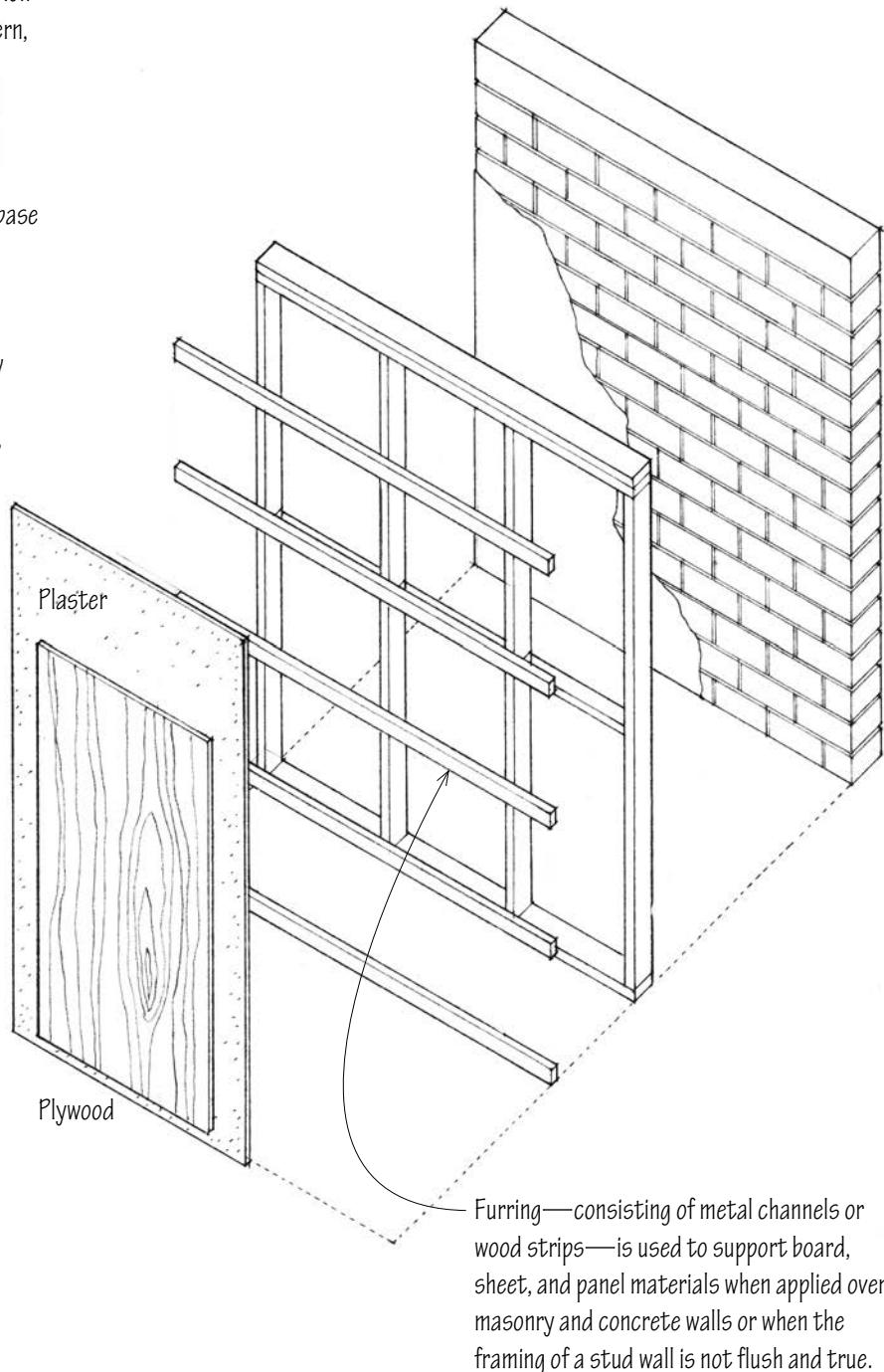
Afghanistan Bokhara



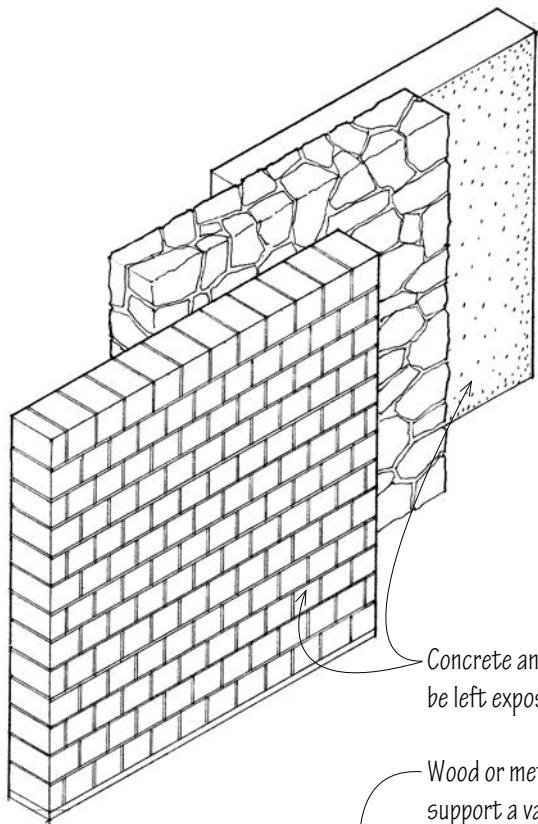
Chinese Bengali

Wall finishes are used to increase a wall's durability, sound absorption, light reflectance, or appearance. Some wall finishes are an integral part of a wall's material structure, some are separate layers attached to the frame of a wall, and still others are thin coatings or coverings that are applied over a wall surface. In addition to aesthetic factors such as color, texture, and pattern, there are functional and economic considerations in selecting a wall material and finish, including the following:

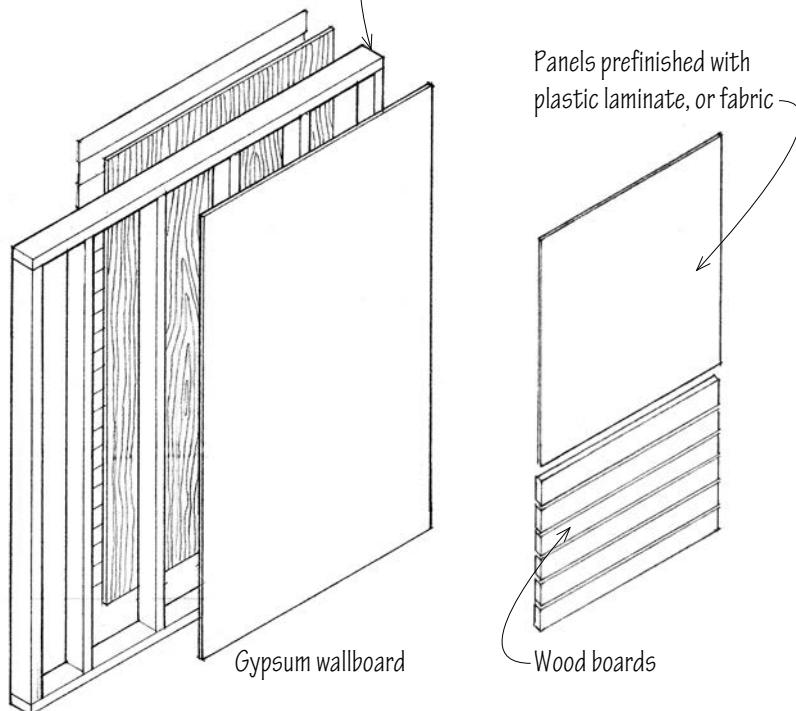
- If it is an applied material, what type of support or base is required?
- What type of finish, coating, or covering will a wall accept?
- How durable must the material or finish be, and how easy is it to maintain?
- What degree of sound absorption, light reflectance, and fire resistance is required?



WALL FINISHES



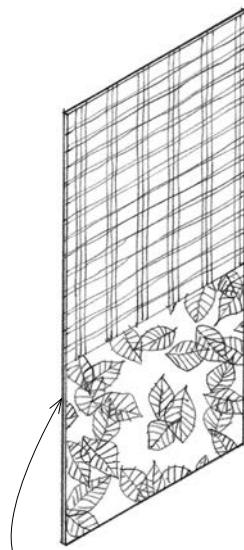
Concrete and masonry walls may be left exposed or plastered.



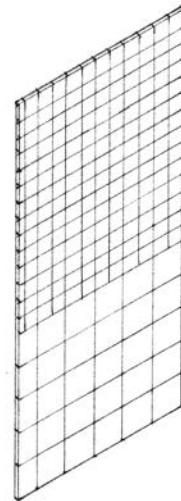
Gypsum wallboard

Wood boards

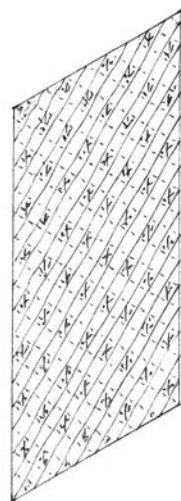
Panels prefinished with plastic laminate, or fabric



Architectural resin panels are available as translucent or clear sheets, with embedded materials and interlayers, and as prepatterned sheets. Some products contain preconsumer recycled resin; panels without embedded materials can be more easily recycled. These panels can be mounted as dividing walls or attached off a wall surface with offset hardware.



Ceramic tile

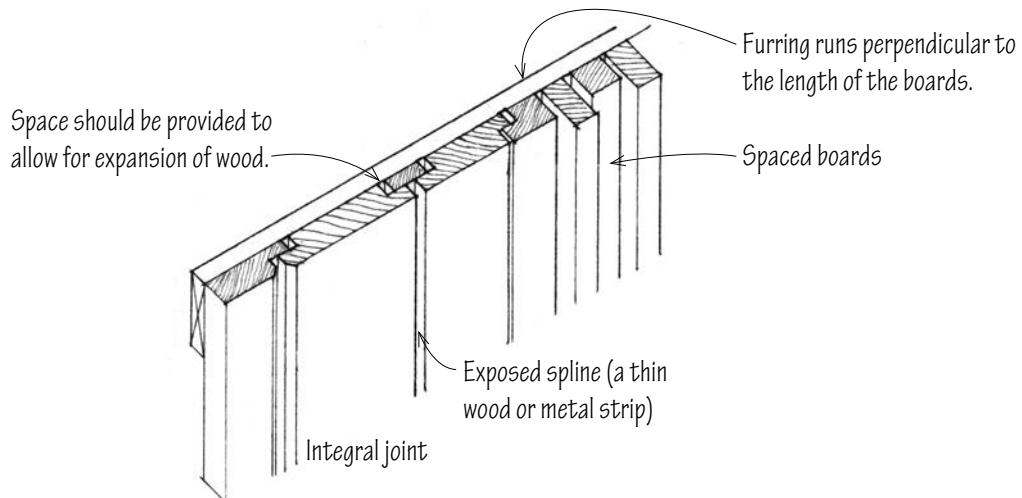
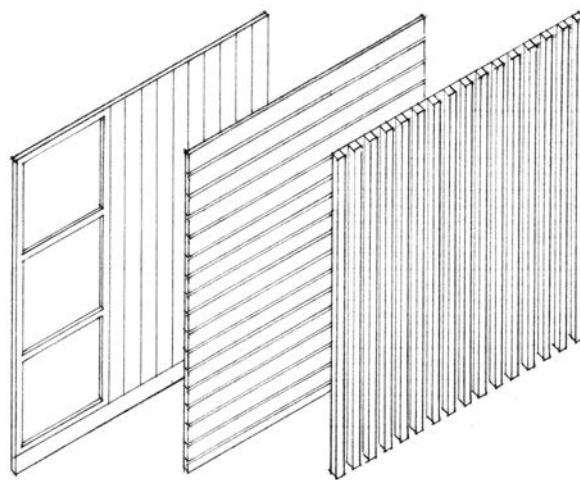


Flexible wall coverings

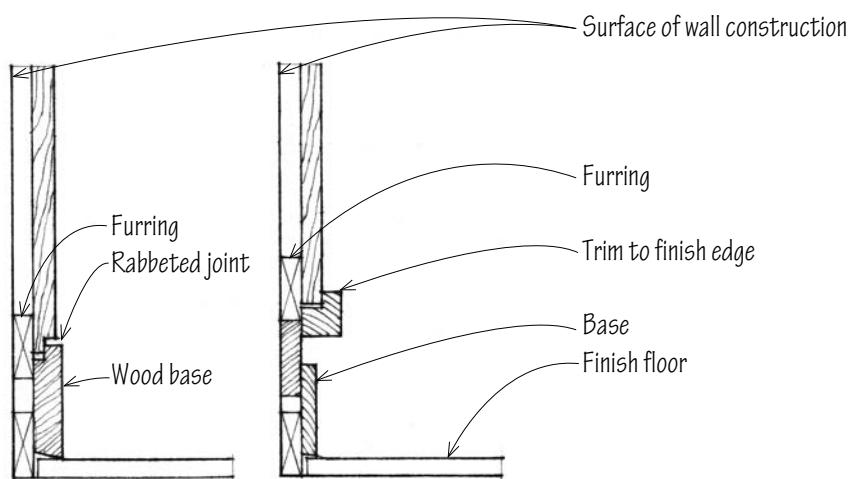
Wood Wall Panels

Wood paneling consists of a series of thin sheets of wood framed together by strips of wood. Vertical strips are called stiles, and horizontal strips are referred to as rails. Wood paneling includes solid lumber paneling, wood veneer paneling, and plastic-laminate faced wood paneling.

Solid wood boards offer durability and create texture. Wall pattern and texture depend on the width, orientation, and spacing of the boards as well as on the joint details. Beadboard consists of tongue-and-groove strips of wood grooved to look like two thin strips; it is used on walls as wainscots and on ceilings.



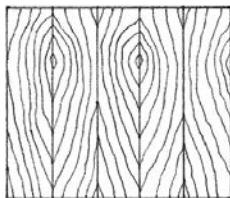
Examples of Joints



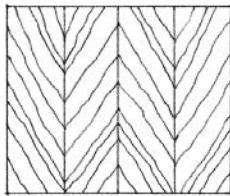
Wood Board Base Details

Details at ceiling can be treated in a similar manner.

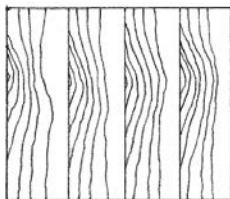
WOOD WALL FINISHES



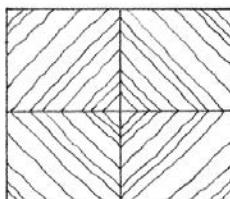
Book matching



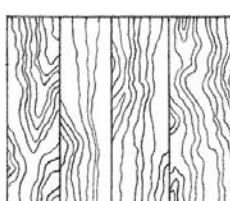
Herringbone matching



Slip matching



Diamond matching

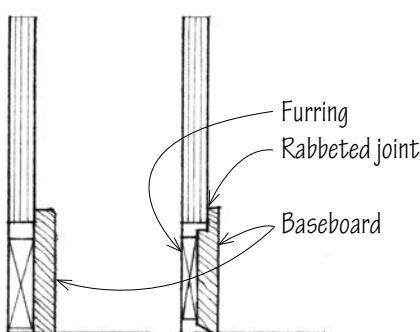


Random matching

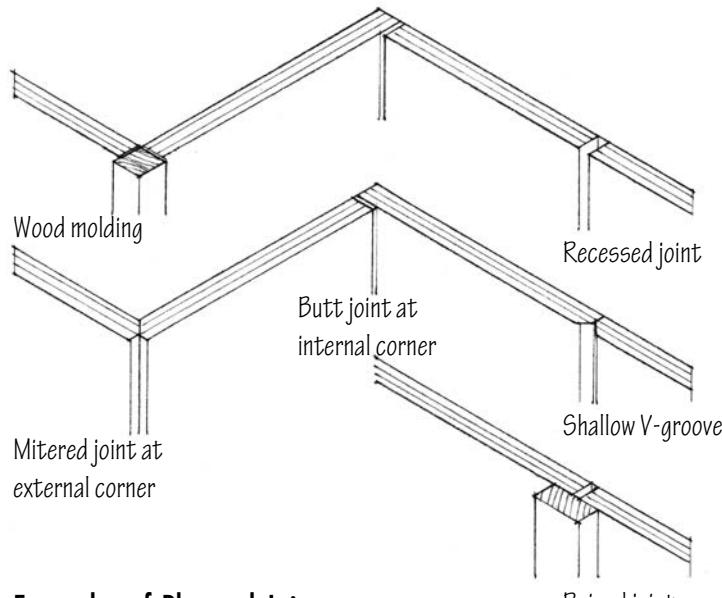
Plywood

Plywood is a wood panel product made by bonding veneers together under heat and pressure, usually with the grain of adjacent plies at right angles to each other. Plywood cores may be made of particleboard, medium-density fiberboard (MDF), veneer core, or lumber core. Some plywood products contain formaldehyde. Panels are typically 4 feet × 8 feet (1219 mm × 2438 mm) and $\frac{1}{4}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (6 mm to 9 mm) thick.

Wood panel products are typically faced with either decorative laminates/overlays or wood veneers. There are two types of wood veneers, hardwood and softwood; hardwood is used for wall finishes. Veneers are sliced in a variety of ways, including quarter slicing, rift cutting, and rotary cutting. Adjacent thin leaves of sliced wood can then be arranged in patterns such as book, herringbone, slip, diamond, and random matching.



Plywood Base Details



Examples of Plywood Joints

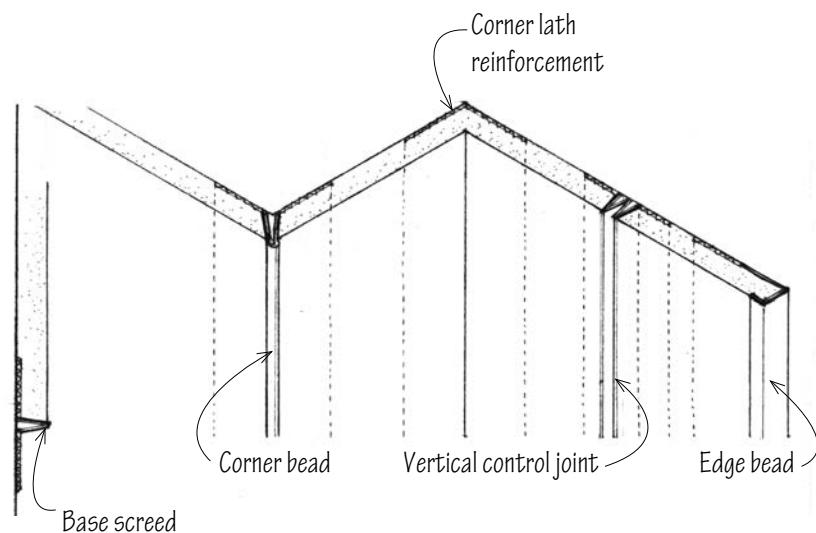
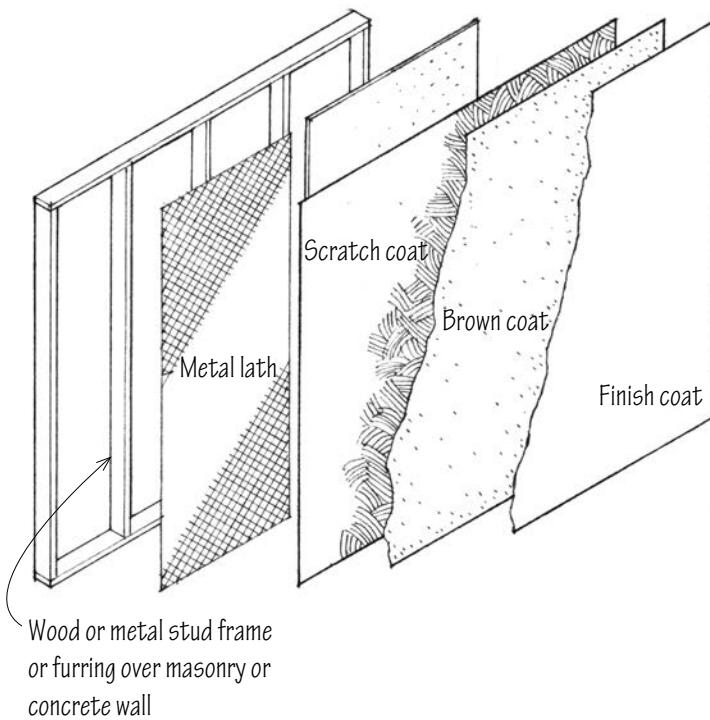
Exposed edges of plywood panels must be finished with a hardwood strip or concealed with trim molding.

Plaster is a composition of gypsum or lime, water, sand, and sometimes other fiber; it is applied in a pasty form to the surfaces of walls or ceilings and allowed to harden and dry. Gypsum plaster is a durable, relatively lightweight, and fire-resistant material that can be used on any wall or ceiling surface that is not subject to moist or wet conditions. Veneer or thin-coat plaster is a ready-mixed gypsum plaster applied as a very thin *skim coat* finish over a veneer gypsum board base, commonly called blueboard.

Plaster is applied in either two or three layers, the number of which depends on the type and strength of base used. Two-coat plaster uses a base coat followed by a finish coat. Three-coat plaster is applied in three successive coats, a scratch coat followed by a brown coat and a finish coat.

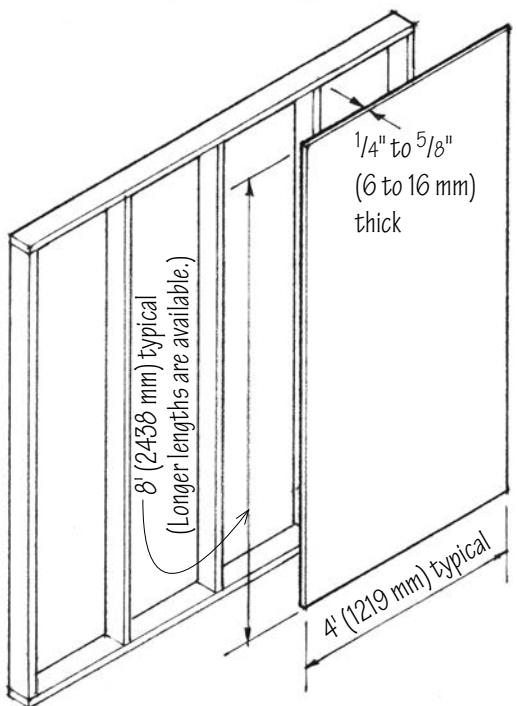
- The scratch coat is the first coat in three-coat plaster. It must adhere firmly to the lath and provide a better bond for the second, or brown, coat.
- The brown coat is a roughly finished, leveling coat of plaster—either the second coat in three-coat plaster or the base coat applied over a gypsum lath or masonry.
- The finish coat of plaster serves as the finished surface or as a base for decoration.
- The total thickness of a plaster finish is from $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ of an inch (12 to 19 mm).

The final appearance of a plaster surface depends on both its texture and its finish. It is usually troweled to produce a smooth, nonporous finish. Plaster may have one or more integral colors, or may be painted either a single color or with multiple layers of paints and glazes. Smooth finishes will accept textile or paper wall coverings.



Metal accessories are required to finish and protect the edges and corners of plaster surfaces.

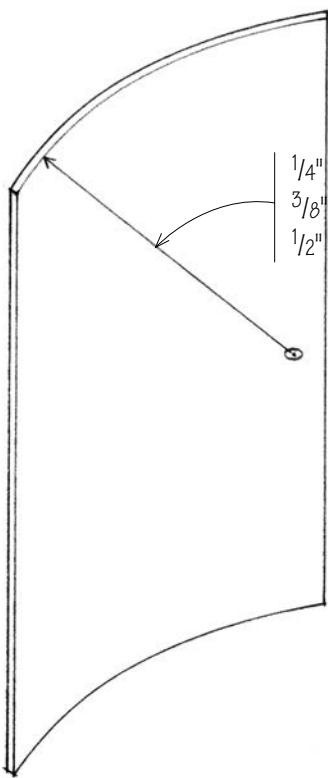
GYPSUM BOARD WALLS



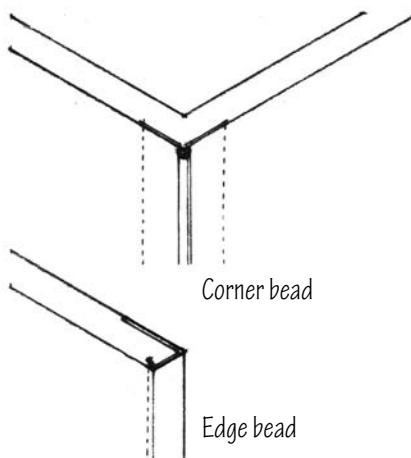
Gypsum board—often called drywall or plasterboard—consists of a gypsum core surfaced with paper or other covering material. It may be finished by painting or by the application of ceramic tile or a flexible wall covering.

Common types of gypsum board include the following:

- Regular gypsum board for interior walls and ceilings
- Moisture-resistant gypsum board used as a backing for ceramic tile in high-moisture conditions
- Fire-resistant (Type X) gypsum board used in fire-resistant construction



Gypsum board may be bent, depending on its thickness.



Metal trim shapes are required to finish and protect the edges and corners of gypsum board surfaces.

Ceramic Wall Tile

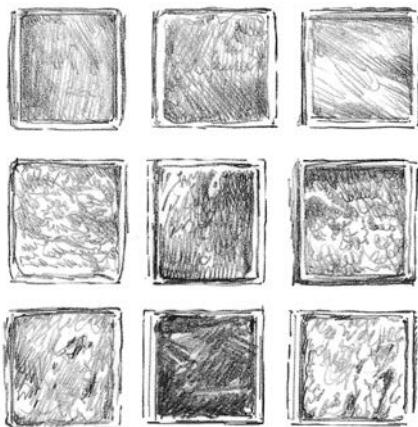
Ceramic wall tiles are modular surfacing units of fired clay and other ceramic materials. They provide a permanent, durable, waterproof surface for interior walls. They are available in bright or matte glazes in a wide range of colors and surface designs.

Specialty tiles include glass tiles, handmade and custom tiles, special sizes, and trim pieces. Grouts for wall tiles are available in a wide variety of colors. Avoid using highly pigmented grouts with contrasting colored tiles, as they may bleed.

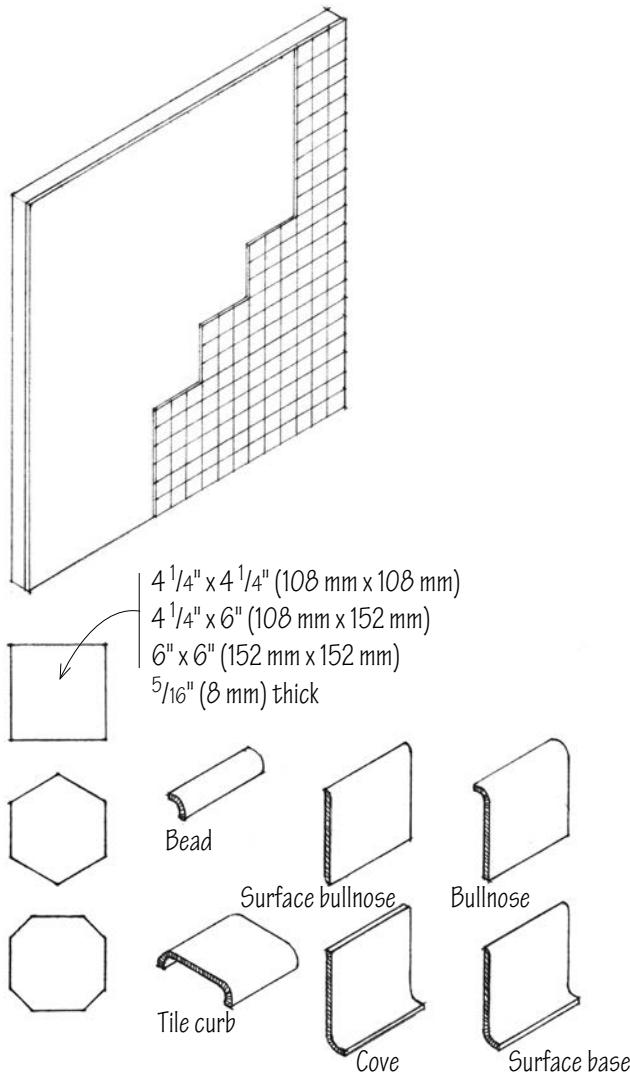
Ceramic tile may be applied with either the thinset or the thickset process.

- In the thinset process, ceramic tile is bonded to a continuous, stable backing of gypsum plaster, gypsum board, or plywood, using a thin coat of dry-set mortar, latex-portland cement mortar, epoxy mortar, or an organic adhesive.
- In the thickset process, ceramic tile is applied over a bed of portland cement mortar. The relatively thick $\frac{1}{2}$ to $\frac{3}{4}$ inch (13 mm to 19 mm) bed allows for accurate slopes and true planes in the finished work. Suitable backings include metal lath over concrete, masonry, plywood, gypsum plaster, and gypsum board; and metal lath over stud framing.

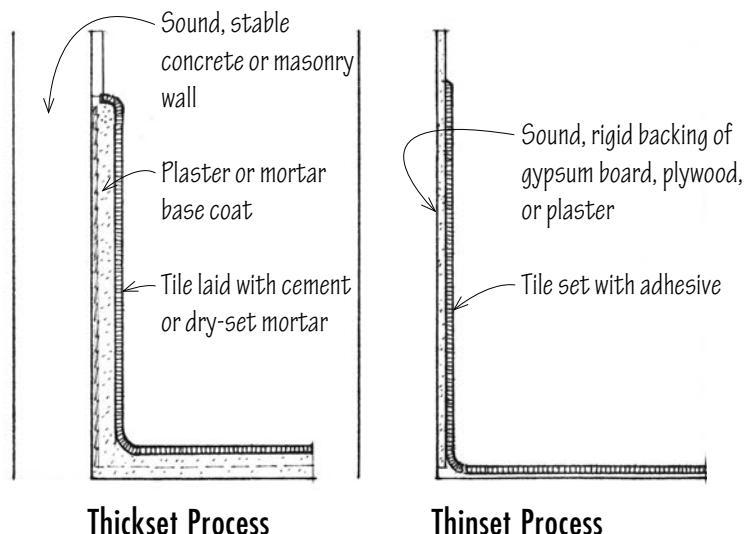
Glass tile can be used on walls, floors, and countertops, both interior and exterior. Manufactured glass tiles with flat surfaces and regular dimensions are easier to install than hand-cut, highly textured tiles. Colored manufactured glass tiles are installed with white thinset adhesive with a latex additive and latex-modified grout.



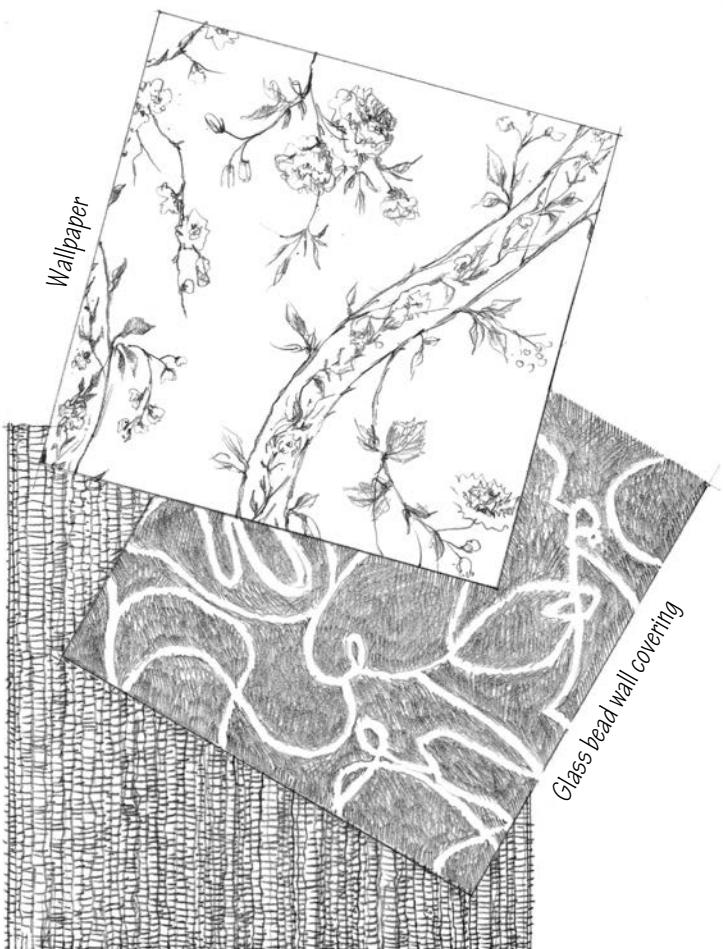
Glass Tiles



Standard and Trim Shapes



FLEXIBLE WALL COVERINGS



Rib weave wall covering



Photographic wall covering

In addition to being painted, smooth plaster and gypsum board surfaces can be finished with a variety of flexible wall coverings that are available in a wide range of colors, patterns, and designs. There are six wall covering categories based on performance:

- I. Decorative only: Untested wallpaper and other residential wall coverings
- II. Decorative with medium serviceability: Tested but primarily for residential use
- III. Decorative with high serviceability: Tested for medium residential use
- IV. Type I commercial serviceability: Tested for heavy consumer and light commercial use, such as private offices and hotel rooms
- V. Type II commercial serviceability: Tested for higher standards and appropriate for public areas such as dining rooms, corridors, and classrooms
- VI. Type III commercial serviceability: Tested for the highest standards and used for high-traffic service corridors

Wallpaper has a paper face and a paper back. It is not commonly used in commercial design, as it is subject to soiling, abrasion, and fading, and is not tested for flame resistance.

Cloth- or paper-backed vinyl wall coverings are designed for serviceability and durability, and are tested for flame resistance as well. They are easily cleaned and resistant to fading and abrasion. However, environmental problems exist in their manufacture, use, and disposal, and alternatives are increasingly used.

Fabrics such as wool, linen, cotton, burlap, and grasscloth require back-coating as a barrier to prevent adhesive from bleeding through to the fabric's face and to improve dimensional stability. They should be treated for soil resistance and may require flame-retardant treatment.

Cork obtained from the renewable bark of the cork oak tree is both durable and resilient. It accepts either wax or polyurethane finishes and possesses excellent acoustical and thermal ratings, but moisture may cause problems.

Paints

Paint is a mixture of a solid pigment suspended in a liquid vehicle and applied as a thin, usually opaque coating.

Paints can decorate, protect, and modify the surface to which they are applied. Primers are paints that improve the adhesion of subsequent coatings. They may also provide a base color and serve as a moisture barrier or a rust inhibitor.

Latex paints are the most commonly used type of interior paints. They are water-based, fast drying, porous, and easy to clean up with water. Alkyd paints are made with solvent-thinned resins that utilize oil-modified polyesters as a vehicle. Use of these paints is being restricted in some parts of the United States for environmental reasons.

Paint Sheens

The sheen or gloss of a paint depends on the size of the particles of pigment and the ratio of pigment to liquid. Although different manufacturers use a variety of names for the levels of gloss, the basic categories are flat, semigloss, and gloss. Some companies sell eggshell, pearl, and/or satin paints that are more washable than flat paints and less shiny than semigloss.

- Flat paints are used for ceilings, and for walls in rooms with low surface contact. Their low sheen can conceal minor surface imperfections. They can be gently washed, but not scrubbed.
- Semigloss paints are used for walls in high-contact areas such as kitchens and bathrooms, and for trim. They are very durable, washable, and scrubbable, and somewhat shiny.
- Gloss paints have a high sheen, and are the most durable for doors, trim, and cabinets. These washable and scrubbable surfaces will show imperfections.

Stains

Stains are translucent or transparent solutions of dyes or pigments applied to penetrate and color a wood surface. They typically do not provide a protective finish.

=

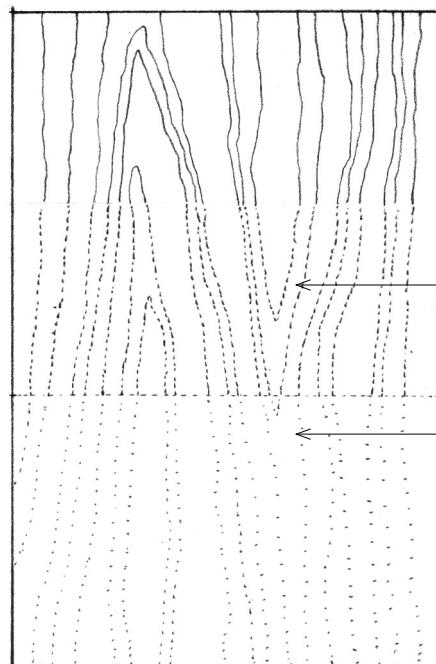
Pigment is a finely ground, insoluble substance suspended in a liquid vehicle to impart color and opacity to a coating.

+

Vehicle is a liquid in which pigment is dispersed before being applied to a surface to control consistency, adhesion, gloss, and durability.

Binder is the nonvolatile part of a paint vehicle that bonds particles of pigment into a cohesive film during the drying process.

Solvent is the volatile part of a paint vehicle that ensures the desired consistency for application by brush, roller, or spray.



Penetrating stains permeate a wood surface, leaving a very thin film on the surface.

Pigmented or opaque stains are oil stains that contain pigments capable of obscuring the grain and texture of a wood surface.



Light Reflectances

The light reflectance of a painted surface depends on both its level of gloss and its color. The relatively higher ratio and larger size of particles of pigment in flat paint diffuse light waves more than do the smaller, fewer particles in gloss paint. As we have already discussed, darker colors absorb light rays more than do light colors. In addition, the greater amount of pigment in darker paints decreases their reflectance.



Trompe l'oeil: Self-Portrait, Gerard Dou, ca. 1650

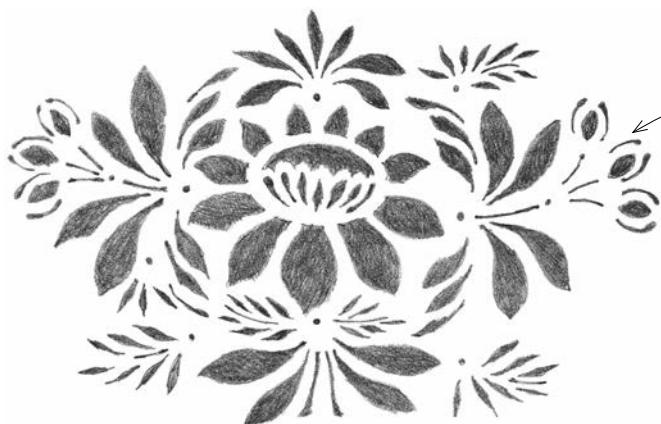
For maximum penetration of daylight, paints with high reflectance should be used on ceilings and walls. High light reflectance levels also help to make the most of the energy used for electrical lighting.

Decorative Paint Finishes

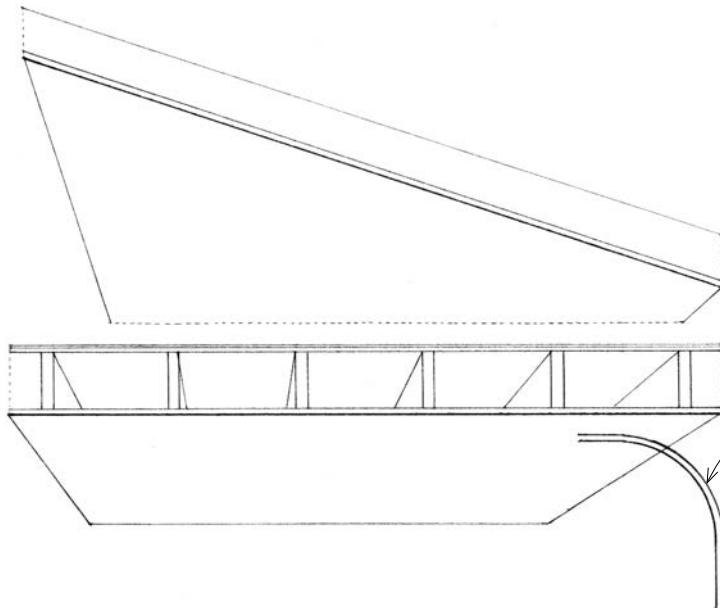
Faux finishes are technically those that imitate natural materials—wood graining and marbleizing, for example—but the term is often used for any decorative painted finish. They are typically made of layers of paint and/or plaster. Special paint finishes also use paint and plaster, but seek to create an original finish rather than imitate an existing material.

There are many types of decorative paint finishes, including the following:

- Transparent paint layers (*glazes*) can be applied in multiple layers to create complex colored surfaces.
- A colored glaze can be applied in a broken pattern with a rag or sponge, dragged with a tool, or painted on as a color wash.
- *Trompe l'oeil*, French for “fool the eye,” uses perspective and shadow to create the illusion of three-dimensional architectural objects.
- Stenciling can be used to apply borders or larger repeating patterns.
- Distressing techniques are used to give a painted surface the appearance of wear and age.



The underside of the floor or roof structure above can be left exposed and serve as the ceiling. More often, however, a separate ceiling material is attached to or hung from a supporting structure. The range of ceiling materials is similar to that for walls, except for those that are too heavy to be hung from an overhead structure.

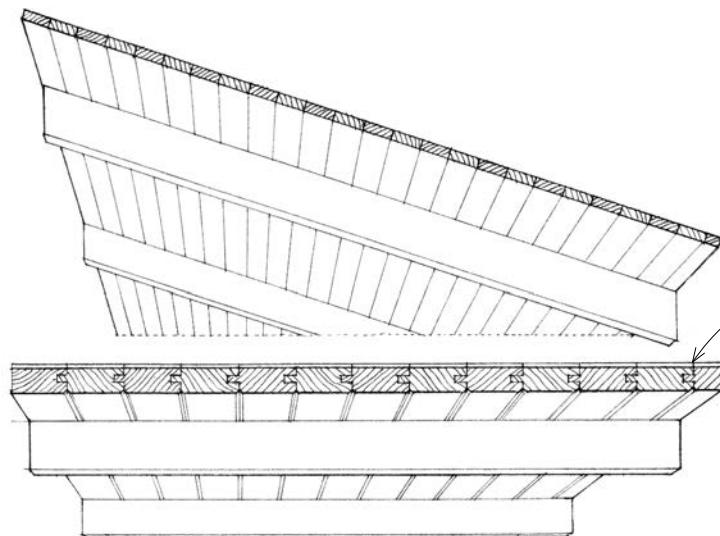


Plaster and Gypsum Board

Plaster and gypsum board provide uninterrupted ceiling surfaces that can be finished smooth, textured, or painted.

Plaster also affords the opportunity for merging ceiling and wall planes with curved coves.

Both plaster and gypsum board require a supporting framework of wood or metal that is attached to or suspended from the roof or floor framing.

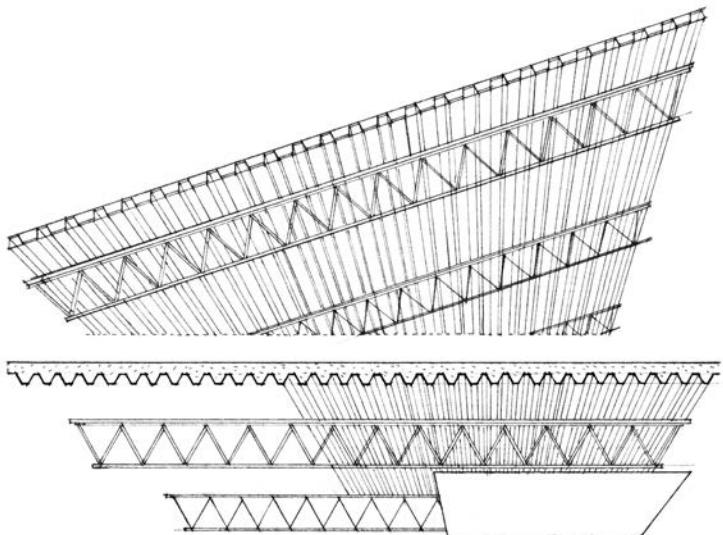


Wood

Wood decking or planks can span the spaces between beams to form the structural platform of a floor or roof. The underside of the planks may be left exposed as the finished ceiling.

Wood planks are normally $5\frac{1}{2}$ " (133 mm) wide and typically have V-shaped tongue-and-groove joints. Channel groove, striated, and other machined patterns are available.

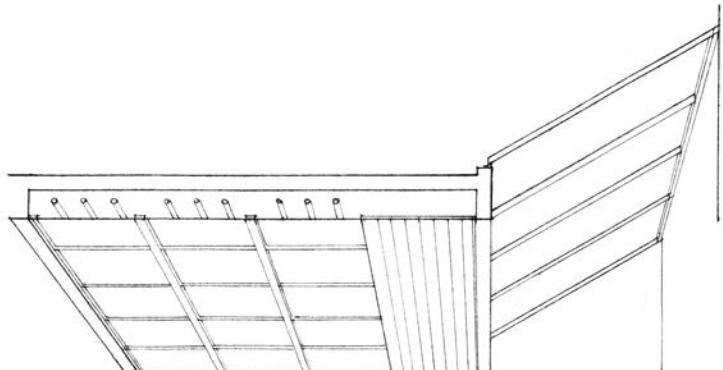
With an exposed wood ceiling system, there is no concealed ceiling space.



Metal

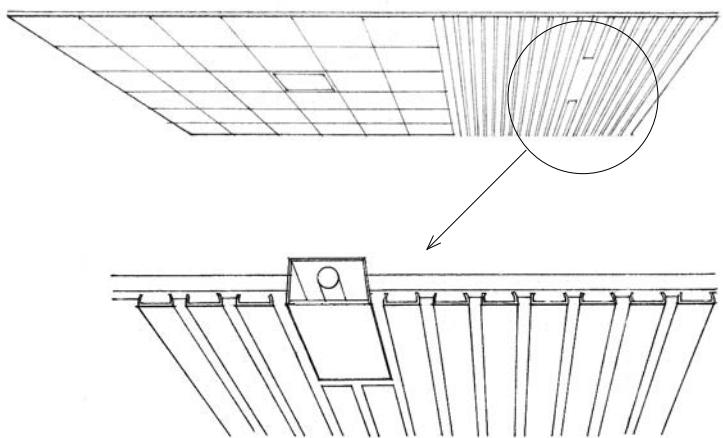
On roofs, corrugated steel decking may form the structural platform for thermal insulation and the roofing material. Cellular or corrugated steel decking also provides permanent formwork and reinforcement for concrete floor slabs.

The underside of steel decking can be left exposed as the ceiling surface. Together with open-web steel joists, steel decking defines ceilings with a linear, textural quality. However, exposed steel decking may transmit impact noise from the floor above.



Modular

Modular ceiling materials are normally supported on a metal grid suspended from a roof or floor structure. Acoustical ceiling tiles form a square or rectangular grid pattern that may be strong or subtle, depending on the tile design.



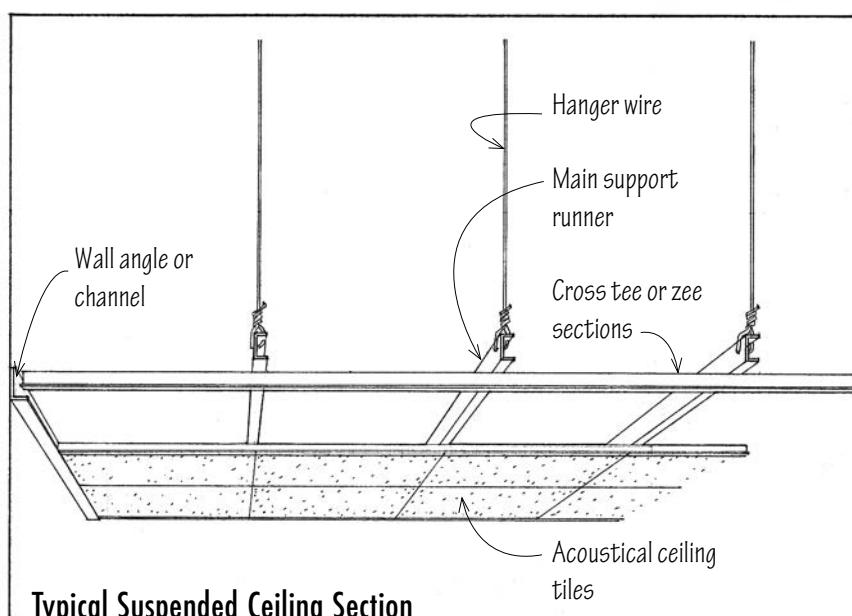
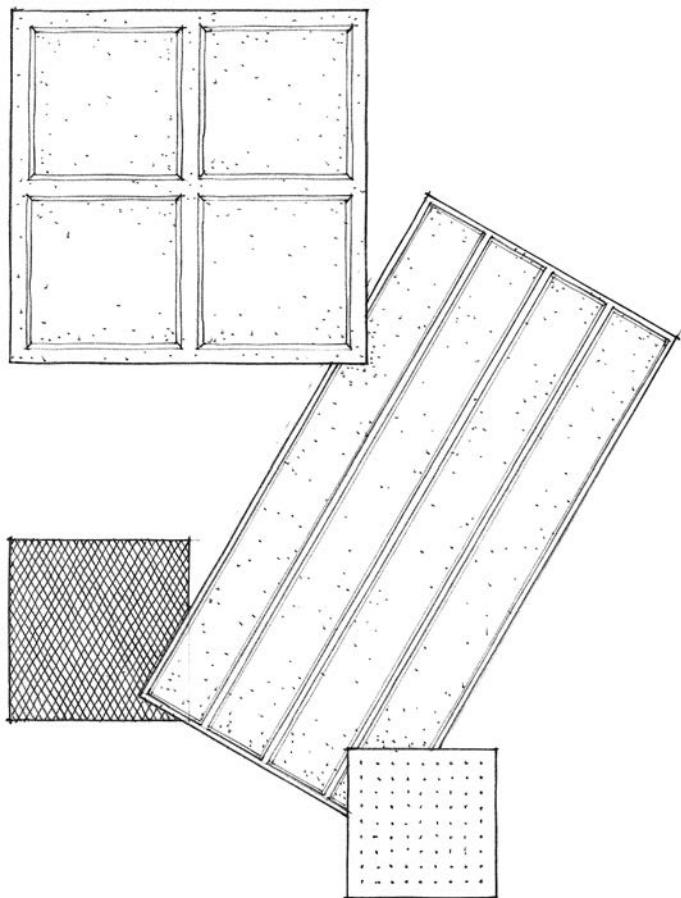
Long, narrow metal panels can be mounted to create gentle curves parallel to their length. In both cases, light fixtures, air diffusers, and other equipment can be integrated into the modular system. Open slots permit sound to be absorbed by a backing of batt insulation.

In commercial spaces, a modular suspended ceiling system is often used to integrate, and provide flexibility in, the layout of lighting fixtures and air distribution outlets. The typical system consists of modular ceiling tiles supported by a metal grid suspended from the overhead structure. The tiles are usually removable for access to the ceiling space.

Acoustical tiles are modular units of fiberglass or mineral fiber. They are available in a variety of square and rectangular styles. Some have aluminum, vinyl, ceramic, or wood faces. Their edges may be square, beveled, rabbeted, or tongue-and-groove. Acoustical tiles come in perforated, patterned, textured, or fissured faces.

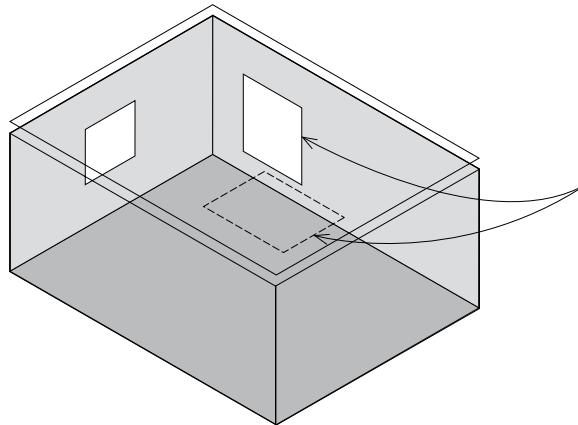
Acoustical tiles are excellent absorbers of sound within a room. Tiles are often fire rated, and some are rated for use in high-humidity areas.

Perforated metal pans backed by fibrous batts are available for use with suspended ceilings. With the acoustic backing removed, they can be used for taking in the return air of an HVAC system.

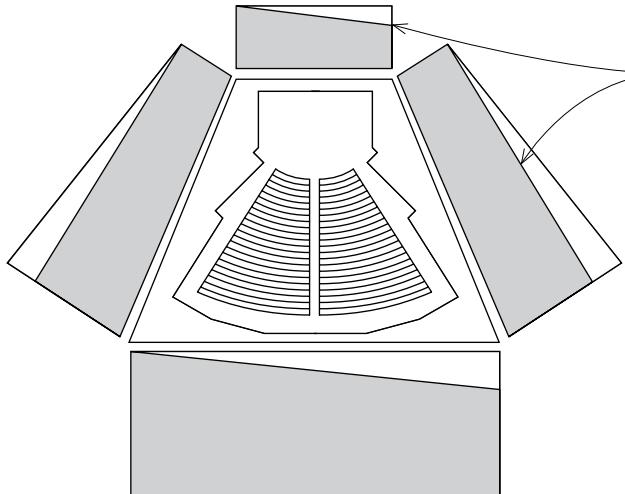


DECORATIONS AND TRIM

Building codes regulate the flame-resistance of suspended decorative materials in assembly buildings, educational facilities, and dormitories. These decorative materials, such as curtains, draperies and hangings, must be flame-resistant or noncombustible. In some institutional occupancies, higher standards apply, even including such items as paintings or photographs.



In assembly buildings, educational facilities, and dormitories, flame-resistant combustible materials are limited to 10% of the area of the specific wall or ceiling to which they are attached.



When auditoriums are equipped with sprinklers, the amount of flame-resistant decorative materials may not exceed 75% of the aggregate area of walls and ceiling.



8

Furnishings



Furnishings

Furnishings are the one category of design elements that lies almost wholly within the realm of interior design. While walls, floors, ceilings, windows, and doors are established in the architectural design of a building, the selection and arrangement of movable interior elements—furniture, window treatments, and accessories—are major tasks of interior design.

Furnishings mediate between architecture and people. They offer a transition in form and scale between an interior space and the individual. Furnishings make interiors habitable by providing comfort and utility in the tasks and activities we undertake.

Interior designers commonly differentiate between residential and commercial furnishings. Furnishings purchased for offices under *furniture, furnishings, and equipment (FF&E)* contracts, such as modular partition systems, chairs, and desks, are sometimes referred to as *contract furnishings*. The distinction may be one of style, durability, or fire resistance. Some pieces serve equally well in either residential or business settings. With the proliferation of home offices, many crossover pieces are now on the market.

Spaces open to use by the public usually have more stringent requirements for fire safety. Requirements for accessibility also affect furnishings in public spaces and at work. Facilities that receive intensive use, such as classrooms, healthcare facilities, and restaurants, require very durable and well-constructed furnishings.

In addition to fulfilling specific functions, furniture contributes to the visual character of interior settings. The form, lines, color, texture, and scale of individual pieces, as well as their spatial organization, play a major role in establishing the expressive qualities of a room.

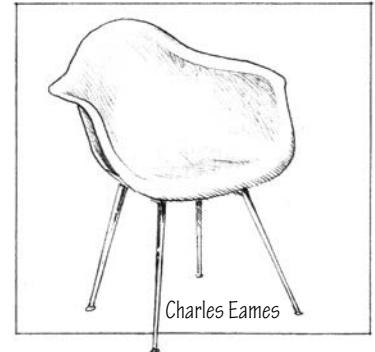
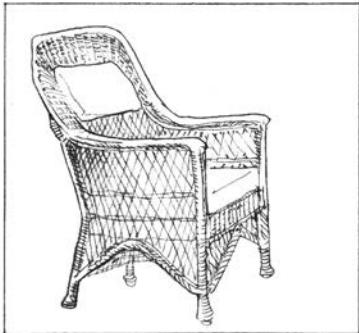
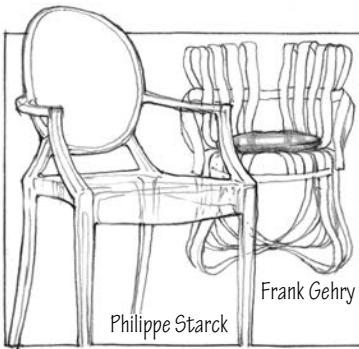
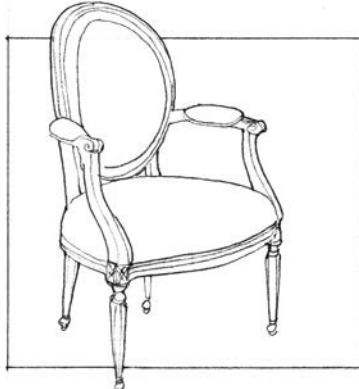
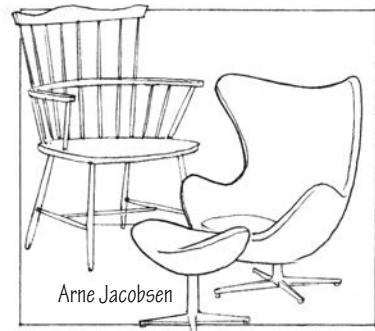
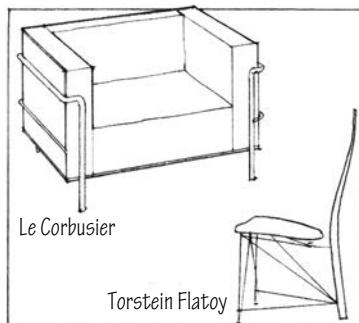
Furniture pieces can be linear, planar, or volumetric in form; their lines may be rectilinear or curvilinear, angular or free flowing. Their proportions can be primarily horizontal or vertical; they can be light and airy, or sturdy and solid. Their texture can be slick and shiny, smooth and satiny, warm and plush, or rough and heavy. Their color can be natural or transparent in quality, warm or cool in temperature, and light or dark in value.

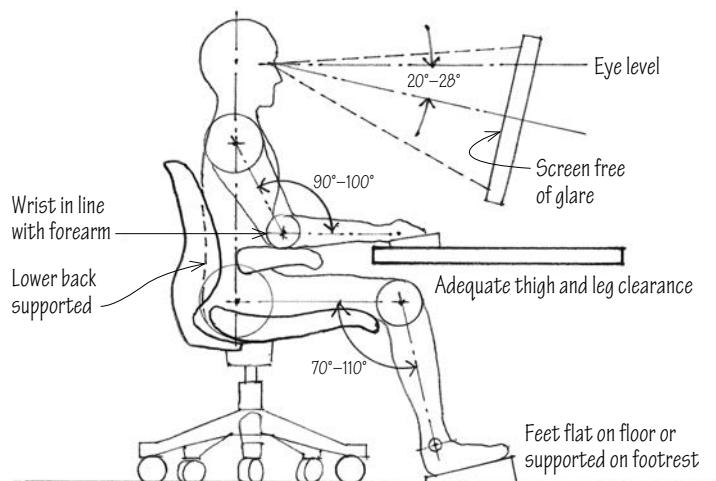
Many designs mix furniture from different historical periods with contemporary pieces. Most designers do not seek to design period rooms, although these are appropriate in historic settings or for a client with a collection of antiques. Historical and cultural references extend to furniture arrangements and the selection of finishes and accessories as well as to pieces of furniture. The designs of the past that endure today are still in production, although some reproductions may lack the quality of the originals in material, craftsmanship, or durability.

Antique furniture is generally recognized as being at least one hundred years old. Antiques are often identified with major cultures, periods, countries, or individuals.

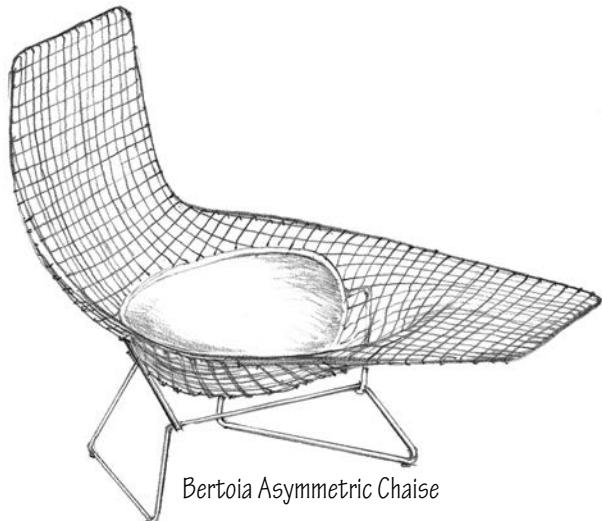
Modern furniture is a term that refers to pieces produced in the late nineteenth and early twentieth century by designers including Michael Thonet, Charles Rennie Mackintosh, and the craftsmen of the Bauhaus movement.

Contemporary furniture encompasses pieces produced today by working designers.





Ergonomic Guidelines

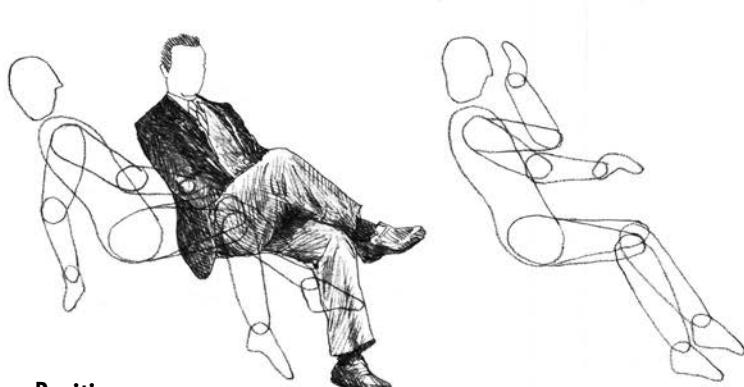


Bertoia Asymmetric Chaise

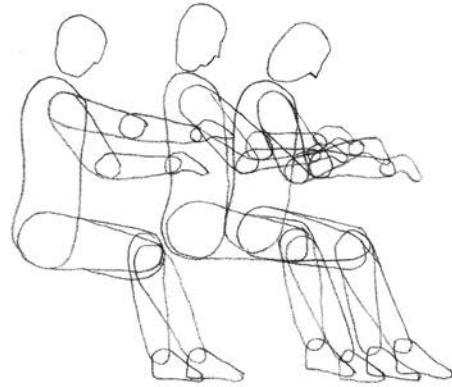
Furniture can, depending on the quality of its design, either offer or limit physical comfort in a real and tangible way. Our bodies will tell us if a chair is uncomfortable or if a table is too high or too low for our use.

Human factors, therefore, are a major influence on the form, proportion, and scale of furniture. *Ergonomics* is the application of human factors to design. To provide utility and comfort in the execution of our tasks, furniture should be designed first to respond or correspond to our dimensions, the clearances required by our patterns of movement, and the nature of the activity we are engaged in.

Our perception of comfort is, of course, conditioned by the nature of the task or activity being performed, its duration, and other circumstantial factors such as the quality of lighting, and even our state of mind. At times, the effectiveness of a furniture element may depend on its correct use—on our learning how to use it.

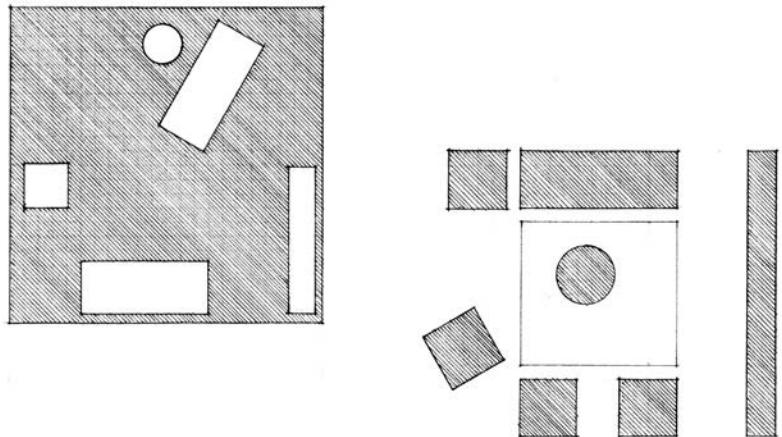


Seating Positions

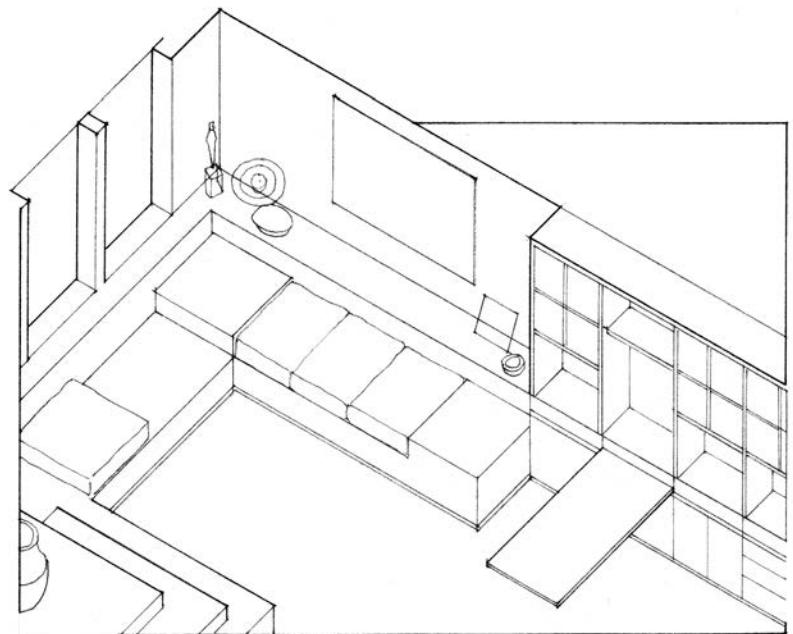


The way furniture is arranged in a room will affect how the space is used and perceived. Furniture can simply be placed as sculptural objects in space. More often, however, furniture is organized into functional groupings. These groupings, in turn, can be arranged to organize and structure space.

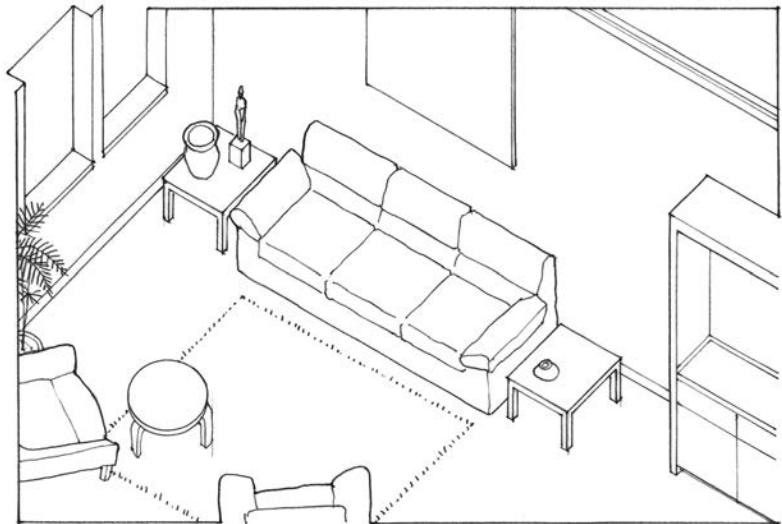
Most furniture consists of individual or unit pieces that allow for flexibility in their arrangement. The pieces are typically movable and may consist of various specialized elements as well as a mix of forms and styles.



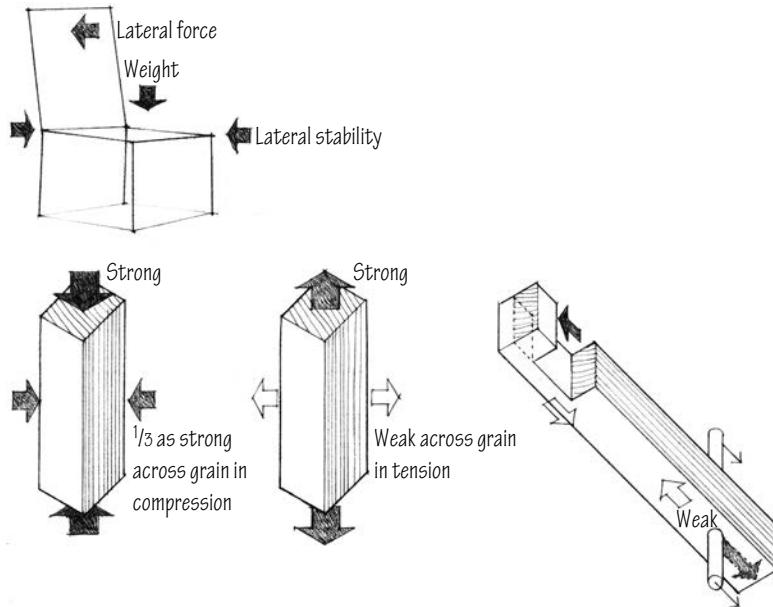
Built-in arrangements of furniture, on the other hand, help retain more open space. There is generally more continuity of form among the furniture elements with fewer gaps between them.



Modular units combine the unified appearance of built-in furniture with the flexibility and movability of individual unit pieces.



Furniture may be constructed of wood, metal, or plastic and other synthetic materials. Each material has strengths and weaknesses that should be recognized in furniture design and construction if a piece is to be strong, stable, and durable in use.



Wood Strength Relative to Grain Direction

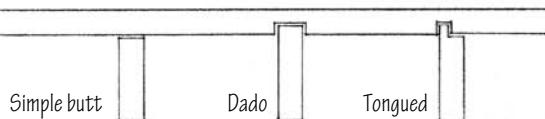
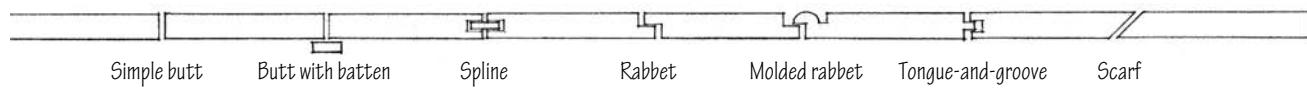
Wood

The direction of its grain determines how wood is used and joined. Wood is strong when compressed with the grain, but can be dented or crushed when loaded perpendicular to the grain. In tension, wood can be pulled in the direction of its grain, but will split when pulled at a right angle to the grain. Wood is weakest in shear along its grain. Wood expands and contracts across its grain with changes in moisture content. All these factors bear on the way wood is configured and joined in furniture construction.

Plywood sheets consist of an odd number of plies (thin sheets) layered at right angles in grain direction to each other, giving strength in two directions. In addition, the quality of the face veneer can be controlled to increase strength in the outer layers, where stresses are greatest.

Particleboard is made by bonding small wood particles under heat and pressure. It is commonly used as a core material for decorative panels and cabinetwork. Adhesives used in both plywood and particleboard may contain formaldehyde; lower-VOC-content products are available.

In-Plane Joints



Types of Intersections

Types of Corners

Types of Wood Joints

Metal

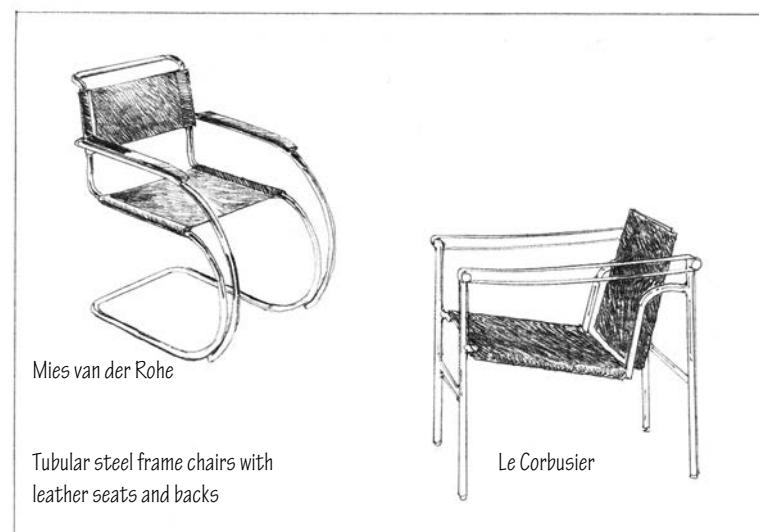
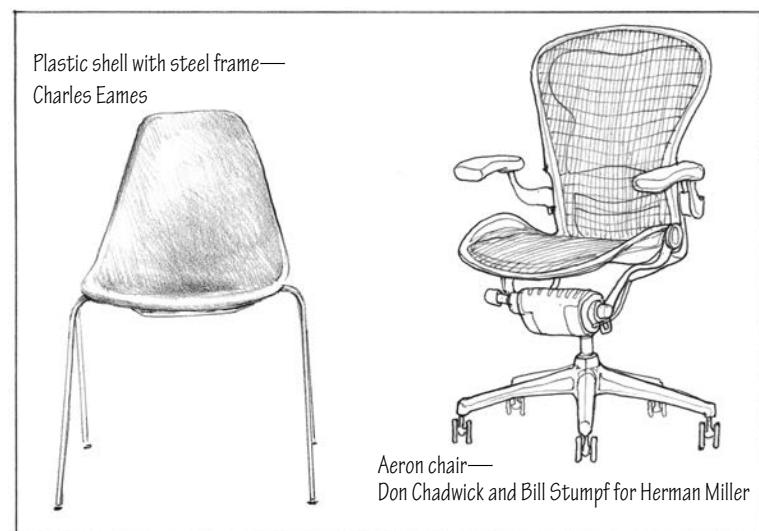
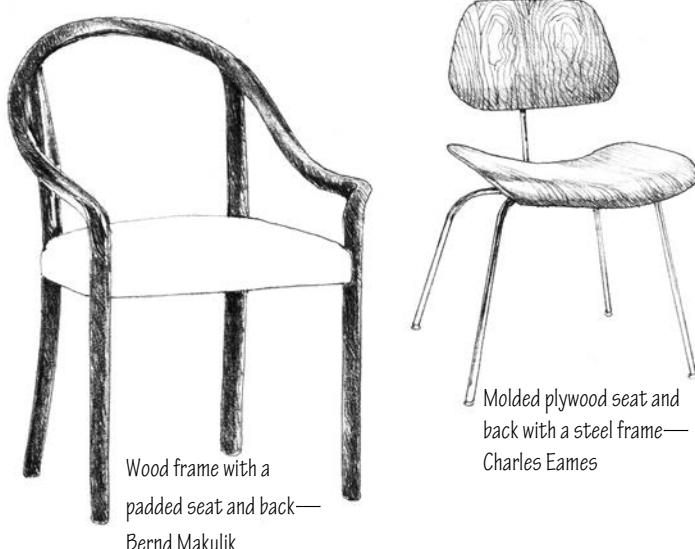
Like wood, metal is strong both in compression and tension, but it does not have a strong grain direction. Metal is *ductile* (capable of being drawn into wire and hammered thin). These factors, along with a high strength-to-weight ratio, enable metal to have relatively thin cross sections and to be curved or bent in furniture construction. Metal can be screwed, bolted, riveted, or welded.

Plastic

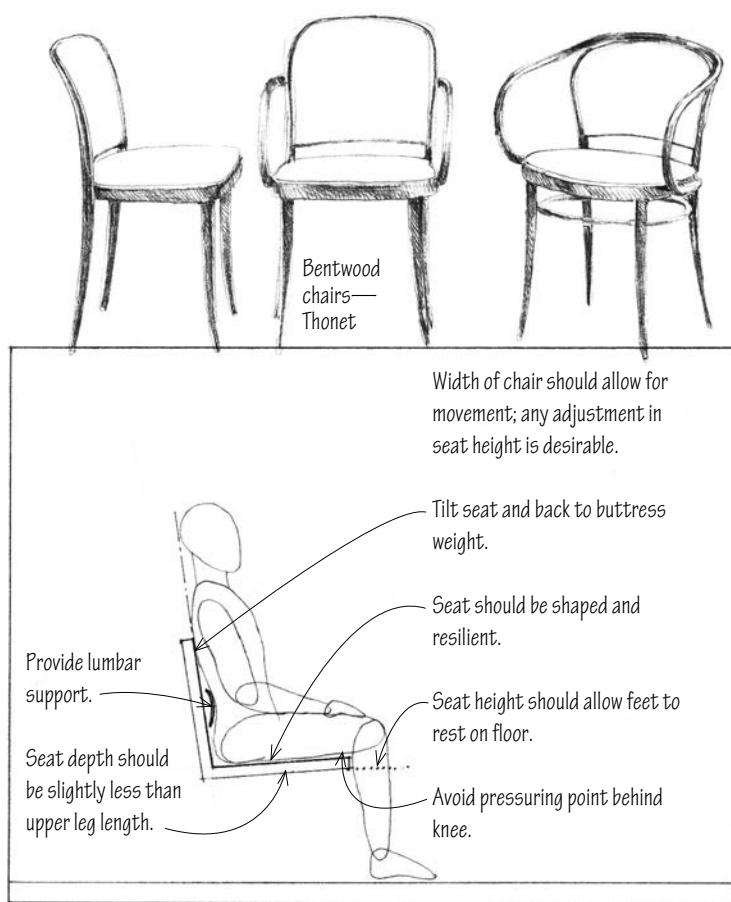
Plastic is a unique material in the ways it can be shaped, formed, textured, colored, and used. There are thousands of types and variations of plastic materials available and under development today. While not as strong as wood or metal, plastic can be strengthened with glass fiber. More significantly, it can be easily shaped into structurally stable and rigid forms. Plastic furniture often consists of a single piece without joints or connections, and furniture made from other materials frequently contains plastic parts.

New textiles combining synthetic fibers and elastomers offer strength with flexibility and the property of returning to their original shape after being stretched. These new materials are stimulating the design of furniture that supports the body without compressing tissues and nerves.

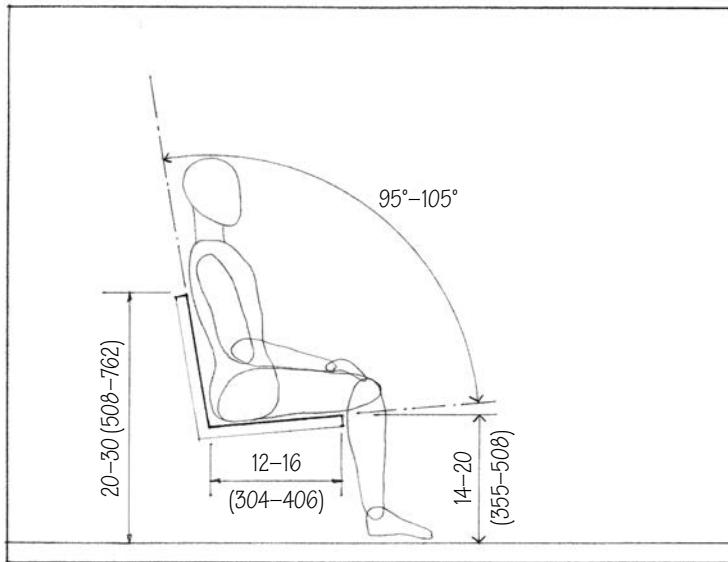
Many pieces of furniture combine a variety of materials, including chairs with wood or metal frames and fabric or plastic seats and backs, dressers with mirrors, and tables with glass tops. Upholstered furniture adds a layer of fabric-covered cushioning to a firmer frame, for comfort and appearance. Some chairs and other furniture are being designed for disassembly and recycling of parts.



SEATING



General Considerations



General Purpose Chair

Seating should be designed to support the weight and shape of the user comfortably. Because of the great variation in body size, however, and the danger of designing too precisely for specific conditions, these illustrations reflect the factors that affect our personal judgment of comfort and a range of dimensions that should serve only as guidelines.

The appropriate dimensions for a chair are determined not only by the dimensions of the human body and the chair's proposed use, but also by cultural factors and matters of scale and style. A relatively uncomfortable, small, hard chair may encourage the customers in a fast-food restaurant to move on. A deeply upholstered lounge chair invites the user to relax.

The comfort factor is also affected by the nature of the activity the user might be engaged in. There are different types of chairs and seating for different uses. Ergonomic design principles are especially important for chairs intended for long periods of use, such as computer desk chairs. Adjustable heights and back supports allow different users to customize their chair's fit. Poorly designed seating is a major cause of health problems among sedentary workers.

Chairs for older users and people with mobility problems should have sturdy arms, relatively high seats, and stable bases. Bariatric seating accommodates very large people, and may perhaps also be shared by an adult and a child. Children's furniture has its own dimensional constraints.

All dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).

Upholstery fabrics should be selected to withstand the normal wear of their intended use. Commercial-grade fabrics are labeled for wear, sun, and fire resistance. Upholstery materials include:

Cotton	Plant fiber with low elasticity and resiliency. Combustible and wrinkles easily. Primarily residential use.
Linen	Derived from stalk of the flax plant. Extremely strong, tends to be brittle, wrinkles easily. Commercial and residential use.
Ramie	Very strong, lustrous natural fiber. Stiff, brittle, nonelastic. Often blended with linen and cotton for commercial and residential use.
Silk	Produced by silk moths. Strongest natural fiber, resistant to solvents but degenerates in sunlight. Typically, only residential use.
Rayon	Manufactured from wood pulp. Viscose rayon blends well with other fibers and takes dyes well. Commercial and residential use.
Acrylic	Mimics silk or wool. Accepts dyes well, may pill. Outdoor use.
Vinyl	Simulates leather or suede. Durable, easy to clean. Not sustainable material. Residential and commercial use.
Polyester	Wrinkle resistant, abrasion resistant, dimensional stability, crease resistant. Commercial use.

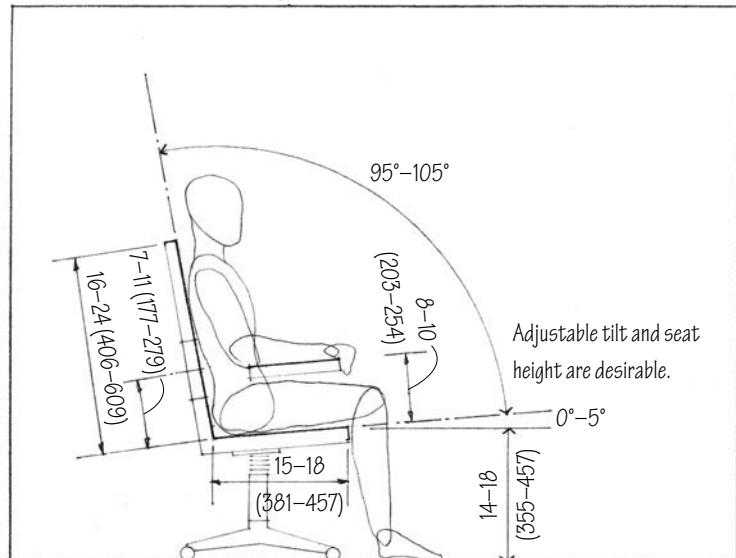
Special Fabrics

Elastomeric fibers (spandex) return to their original shapes after being stretched. Commercial use.

Crypton® is a process for treating a variety of fabrics, such as cotton, linen, silk, wool, acrylic, rayon and polyester, to make them highly durable, stain- and moisture-resistant.

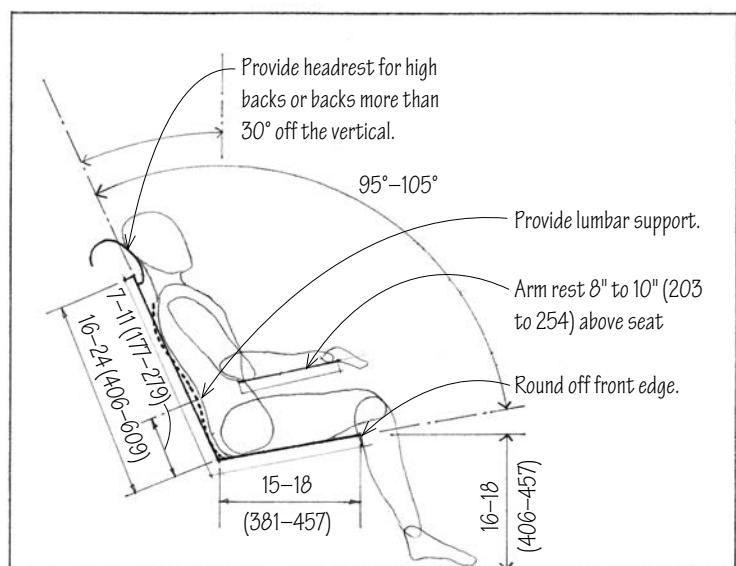


Italian upholstered chair with metal legs, circa 1950s



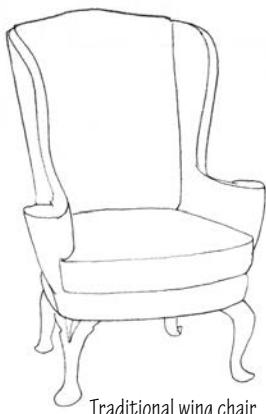
Office Chair

All dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).

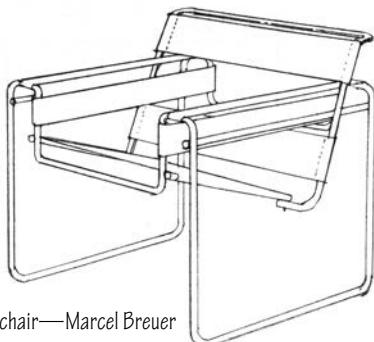


Easy Chair

Chairs



Traditional wing chair



Wassily chair—Marcel Breuer



Arne Jacobsen



Alvar Aalto



Shaker ladderback chair



Hardoy sling chair



Eames lounge chair



Armchairs

Intended for relaxing, conversation, or reading. Fully upholstered; constructed of wood, plastic, steel, or a combination of materials.

Side chairs

Usually lighter and smaller than armchairs; upright backs for dining and studying.

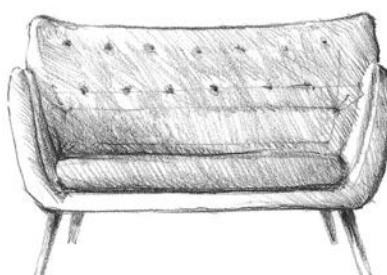
Lounge chairs

For relaxing in a semireclining position, often adjustable. Should be easy to get into and out of, neither too low nor too soft; should provide proper back support.

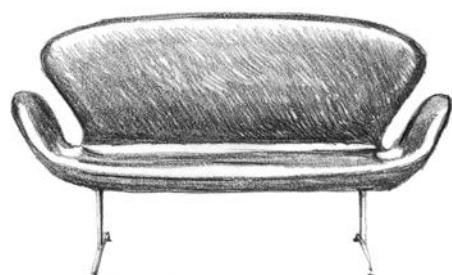
Sofa	Designed for seating of more than two people. Generally upholstered; curved, straight, or angled; with or without arms.
Loveseat	A small sofa with only two seating positions.
Sectional	A sofa divided into separate parts that may be used in various configurations.
Sleeper	A sofa designed to be transformed into a bed.



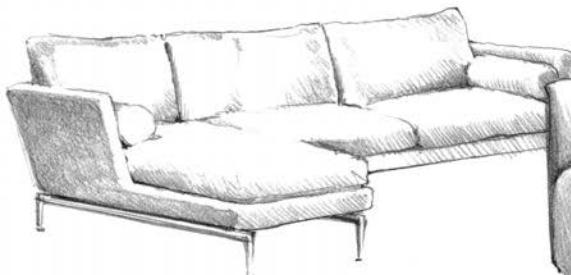
Twilight sleeper sofa—Flemming Busk for Softline



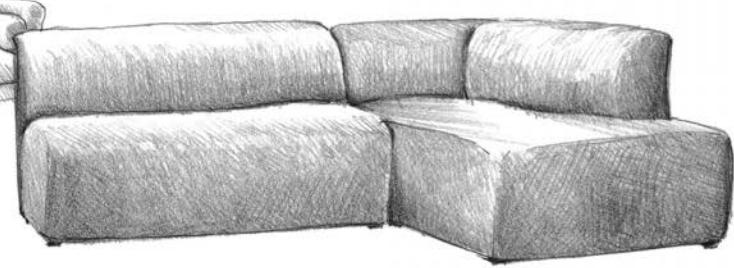
Poet sofa—Finn Juhl, produced by Onecollection



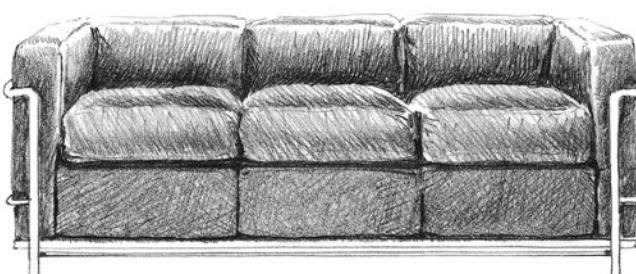
Swan loveseat—Arne Jacobsen for Fritz Hansen



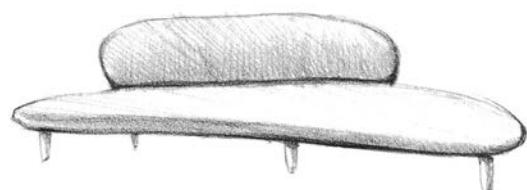
Suita sectional—Antonio Cittero for Vitra



Josie sectional—Mitchell Gold + Bob Williams



Petit Modèle sofa—LeCorbusier, Pierre Jeanneret, and Charlotte Perriand, produced by Cassina



Freeform sofa—Ishamu Noguchi, produced by Vitra

COMMERCIAL SEATING



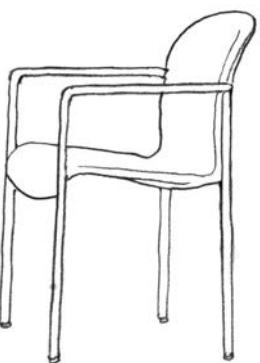
Eames executive work chair—Herman Miller



Ergon 3 chair—Herman Miller



Arne Jacobsen



Side chairs

Designed to be flexible and mobile. Swivel mechanism, rolling casters, arms.

Executive chairs Often designed as status symbols, these allow the user to lean back from the desk. Swivel mechanism. Not appropriate for extended computer use.

Stacking and folding chairs Intended for office visitors or short-term use. Usually small in scale and often armless.

Used for large gatherings of people or as auxiliary seating. Lightweight and modular, often made of steel, aluminum, or plastic. Some are available with arms and with padded seats and backs; some have coupling devices for use in rows.

Restaurant chairs

Must be durably constructed; comfort level is usually selected to match intended service style. Chairs with arms must be coordinated with tabletop heights. Chair size may affect seating patterns.

Stools

Should be selected for stability and ease of movement as well as for appearance.



Restaurant chair

Commercial seating must be durably constructed to support workers without stress throughout the workday. Seating should not be selected solely on the basis of the user's status within the company or enterprise, but rather selected to accommodate the size of the individual user and to provide proper support for the type of activity envisioned.

Desk chairs

Designed to be flexible and mobile. Swivel mechanism, rolling casters, arms.

Executive chairs Often designed as status symbols, these allow the user to lean back from the desk. Swivel mechanism. Not appropriate for extended computer use.

Stacking and folding chairs Intended for office visitors or short-term use. Usually small in scale and often armless.

Used for large gatherings of people or as auxiliary seating. Lightweight and modular, often made of steel, aluminum, or plastic. Some are available with arms and with padded seats and backs; some have coupling devices for use in rows.

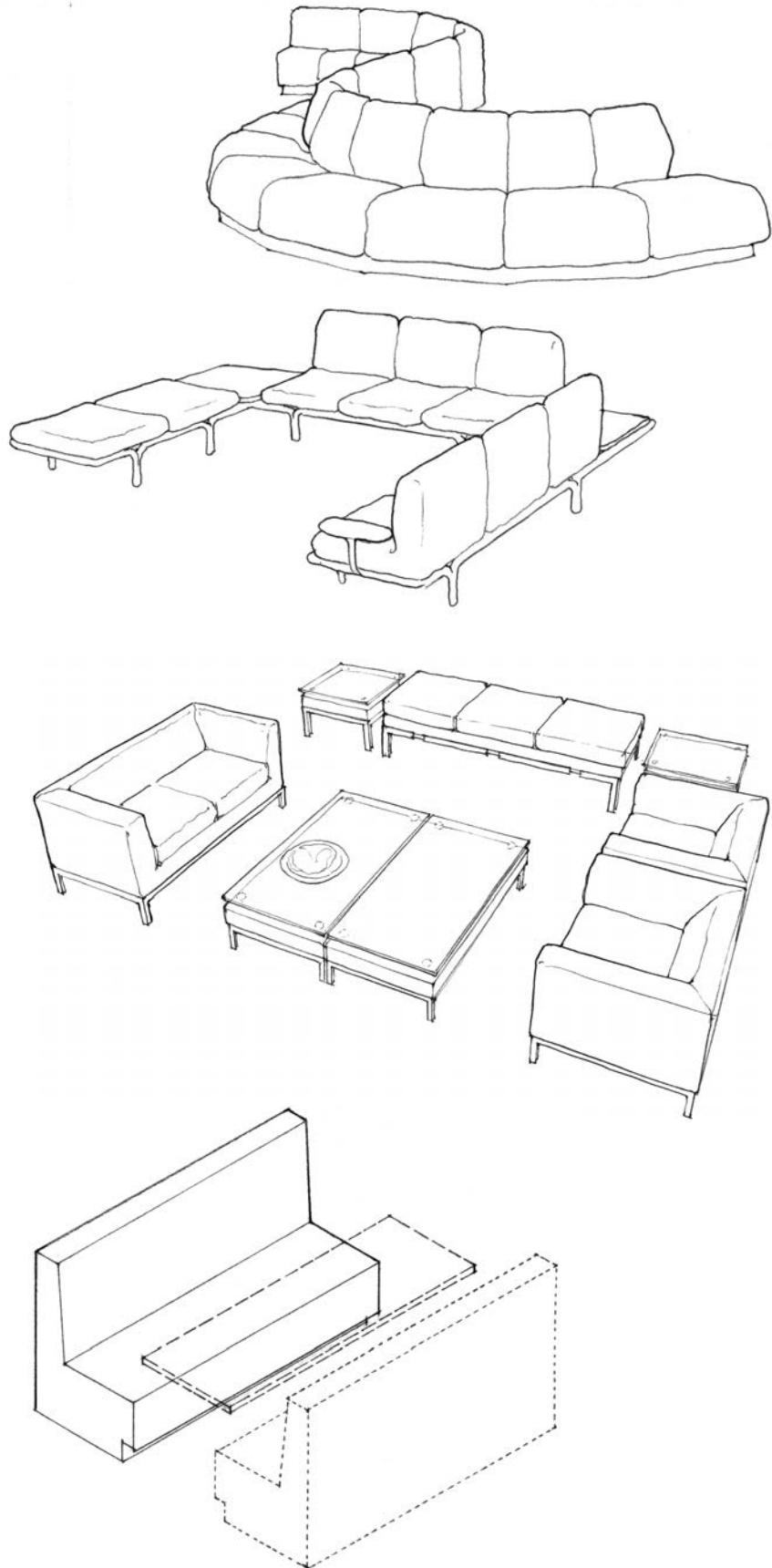
Restaurant chairs

Must be durably constructed; comfort level is usually selected to match intended service style. Chairs with arms must be coordinated with tabletop heights. Chair size may affect seating patterns.

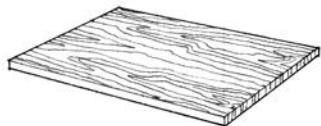
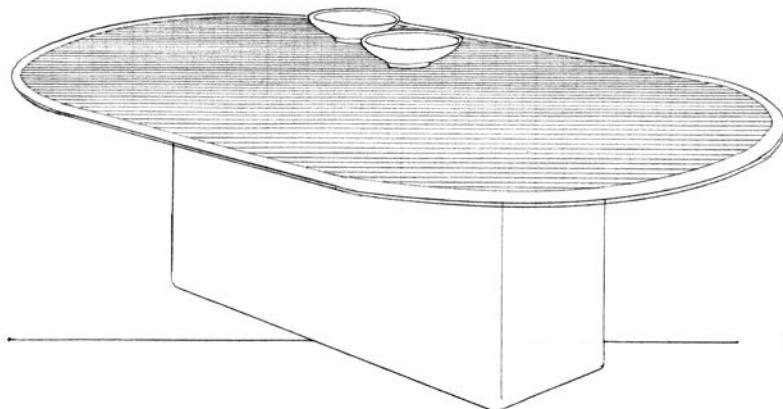
Stools

Should be selected for stability and ease of movement as well as for appearance.

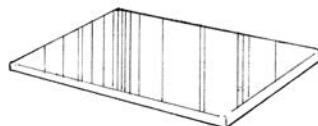
Sofas	Arranged in L-shapes or U-shapes for conversation groups in lobbies, large private offices, waiting areas. Strangers generally sit at opposite ends, leaving center seat empty.
Loveseats	Useful in smaller private offices where they can be used for naps.
Modular or sectional seating	Available armless, with left or right arm only, or as corner piece. Modular seating also refers to seating with a continuous base to which individual seats are attached.
Booths	Commonly designed for two to four persons; larger booths and U-shaped or circular configurations present access problems for central seats. Usually upholstered.
Banquettes	Long, usually upholstered seats facing multiple tables with chairs opposite, allowing tables to be moved along their length and clustered to accommodate varying sizes of groups.
Fixed seating	Used in auditoriums, lecture halls. Provides acoustic absorption as well as seating. Fire safety requirements for materials and arrangements.



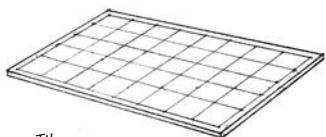
TABLES



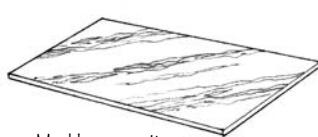
Wood



Glass, metal, or plastic

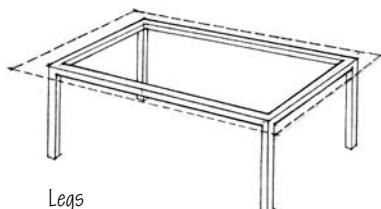


Tile

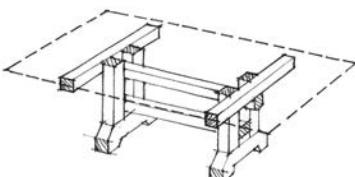


Marble or granite

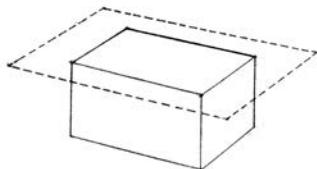
Table Tops



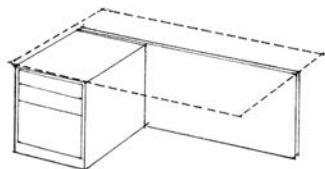
Legs



Trestle



Solid pedestal



Cabinet or casework

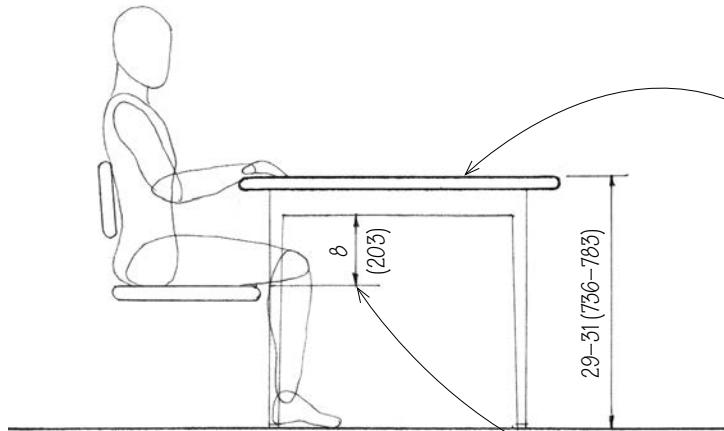
Table Supports

Tables are essentially flat, horizontal surfaces, supported off the floor, and used for dining, working, storage, and display. They should have the following attributes:

- Strength and stability to support items in use
- Correct size, shape, and height off floor for intended use
- Construction of durable materials

Tabletops can be of wood, glass, plastic, stone, metal, tile, or concrete. The surface finish should be durable and have good wearing qualities. The surface color and texture should have the proper light reflectance for the intended visual task.

Tabletops can be supported with legs, trestles, solid bases, or cabinets. They can also swing out or down from wall storage units and be supported by folding legs or brackets. Table bases should relate in scale and size to the tabletop to provide adequate support and stability.



Dining Tables

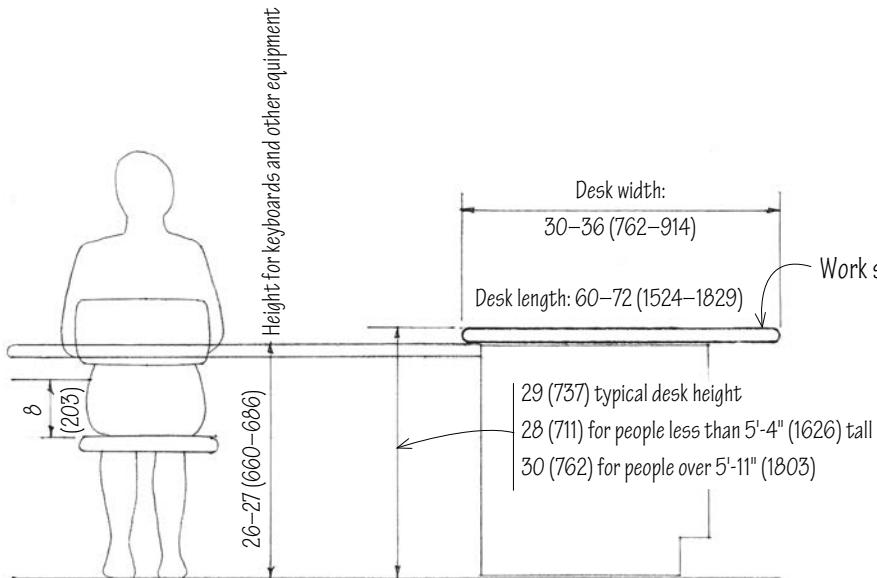
A minimum of 24" (609 mm) should be provided for each person around the perimeter of a dining table.

Table shape should be compatible with the shape of the room.

Surface finish should provide an attractive background for table settings.

For flexibility in accommodating both small and large groups, tables that extend with leaves are desirable.

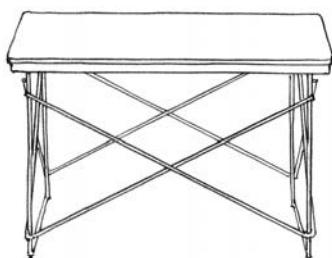
Table supports should not reduce the space for users' knees and legs.



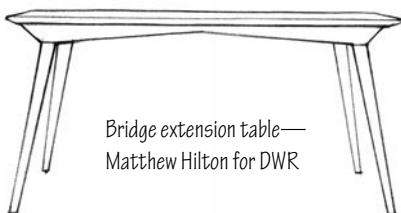
Desks and Work Surfaces

All dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).

TABLE STYLES AND USES



Wire base table—Charles and Ray Eames for Herman Miller



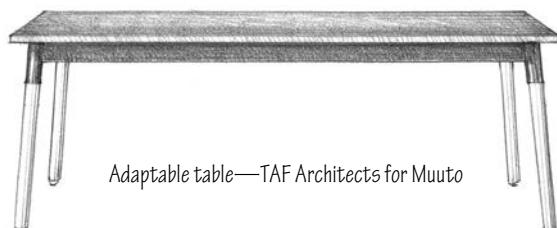
Bridge extension table—Matthew Hilton for DWR

Dining tables

Selected for style, number of seats (with optional leaves for expansion), and fit in room. Both custom and manufactured designs are available.

Occasional tables

Coffee tables are designed to hold books, magazines, and beverages in front of a sofa. End tables provide surfaces for a lamp and other accessories next to a seat. Other small tables hold accessories and help to balance the room's décor.



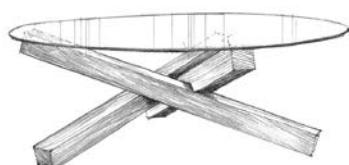
Adaptable table—TAF Architects for Muuto



Saarinen dining table—
Eero Saarinen for Knoll



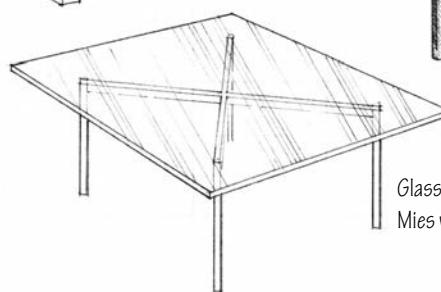
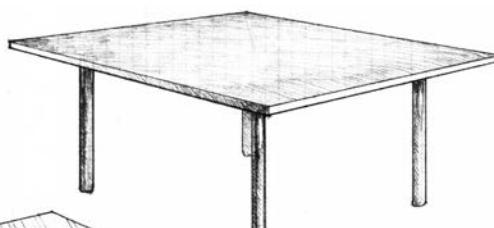
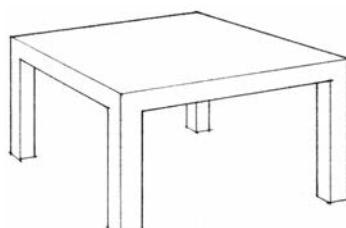
Platner dining table—
Warren Platner for Knoll



Campfire table—Tomek Archer



Kyoto table—Franz van der
Heyden for Birdman Furniture



Glass top and steel base—
Mies van der Rohe

Restaurant tables

Selected for durability, style, number of seats, and fit in space. Center post support; tabletops can be custom or stock. Rectangular "deuces" (tables for two) can be combined for larger parties, circular tables are often used for large groups, and square tables can be oriented on diagonal.

Conference tables

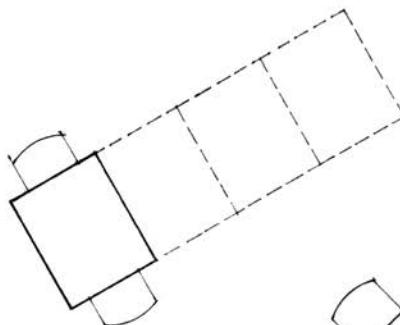
Large single tables with many seats, or smaller tables designed to be reconfigured for conference and seminar rooms. Selected for capacity, flexibility, and appearance.

Boardroom tables

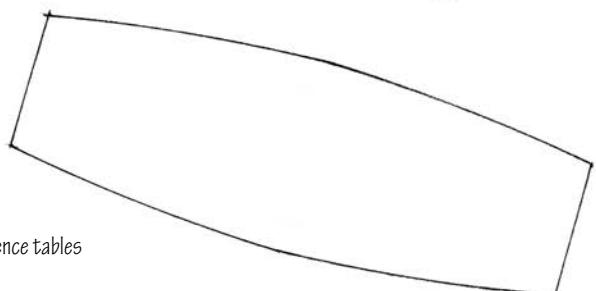
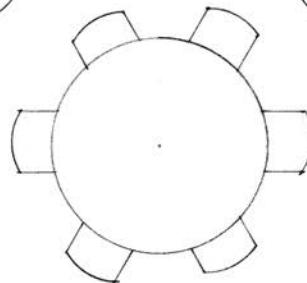
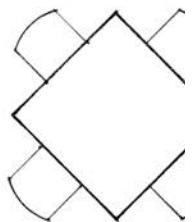
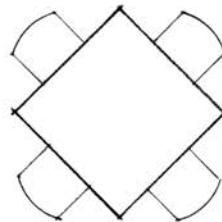
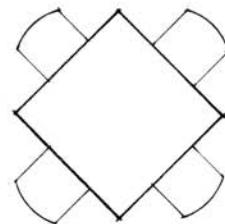
Large tables designed for prestige and style. May have built-in data and communications equipment.

Hotel guest room tables and desks

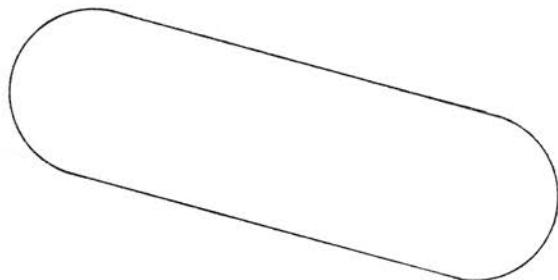
Similar to residential pieces in style, but with commercial quality for durability.



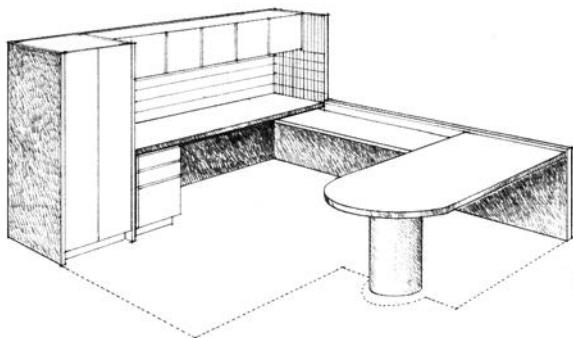
Dining tables



Conference tables

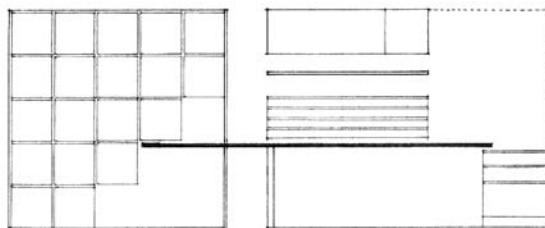


WORKSTATIONS



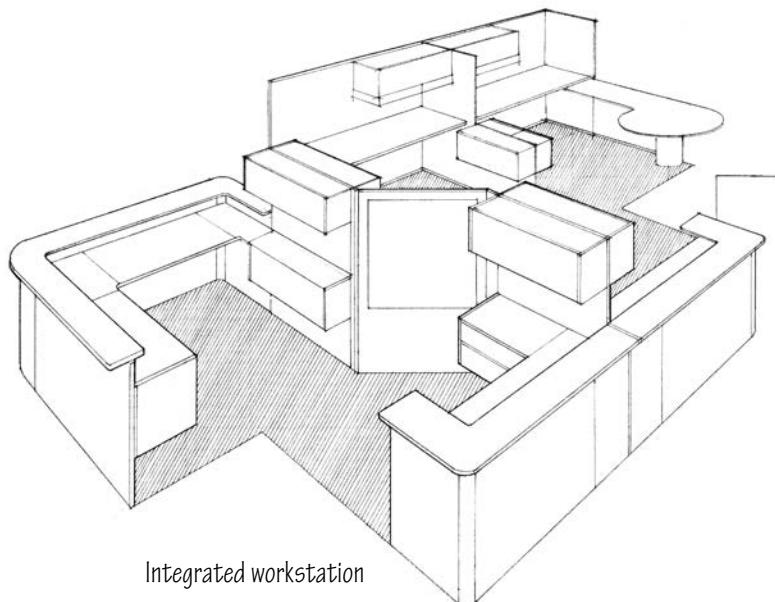
Designers often refer to an individual's work area—comprising a desk, chair, computer and related equipment, and storage as well—as a workstation. The desk and adjacent horizontal surfaces are called work surfaces.

Office environments continue to change, but many people still work in cubicle-based workstations. These systems are still manufactured, and are also available for reuse, which has both economic and sustainability advantages.



For individuals needing a high level of focus for their work, private offices and other acoustically protected spaces are still necessities. Today, these spaces are somewhat more likely to be assigned for the task, rather than for the status of the user.

However, the trend toward home offices and the use of portable computers and wireless communications are creating a market for office furnishings that are flexible in use and easy to move. Seating and work surfaces are now designed for multiple employees who come and go on varied schedules. Furnishings can be clustered for small group work and meetings, then dispersed for individual work. These very open workspaces raise the bar for acoustic privacy issues, and must be carefully planned.



Desks vary in style and function. The traditional desk incorporates drawers and storage into its base. A desk may also consist simply of a freestanding table or work surface supported on a pedestal base with storage. This basic workstation can be extended with additional work surfaces to the side or behind the user.

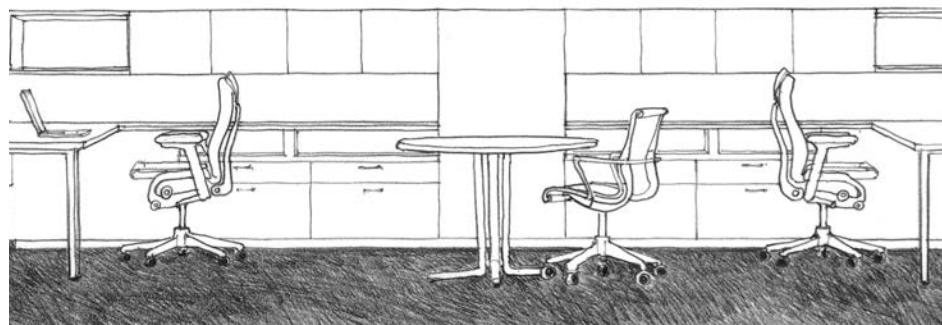
The selection of a desk should consider how it would be used as well as issues of style and status. The size and configuration of the desk should respond to the need to accommodate storage and equipment, including computers and peripherals.

While the private office encloses a workstation within a room, open office environments utilize modular work surfaces and storage units to integrate multiple workstations and enhance user communication and productivity.

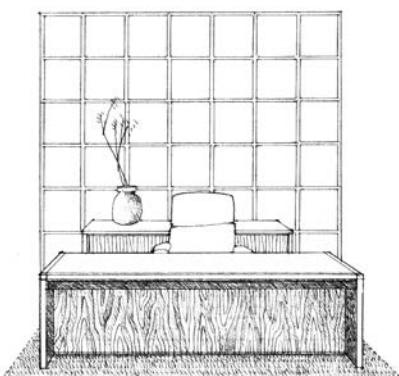
Today, open office environments are more likely to be freestanding than housed in cubicles. As equipment becomes lighter and less wiring is needed, walls are less essential. Short panels provide little or no visual and acoustical separation.

Office workers may find themselves with minimal amounts of real estate. Work surfaces can be arrayed in closely spaced rows. This can aid communication and cooperation, but may create stress and territorial problems for some workers. Whether working in such close quarters increases or decreases productivity and worker satisfaction may depend on individual work-style preferences, the amount of time spent at the workstation, and whether the rest of the space offers other options.

In the past, the commercial office furnishings market was too large-scale and expensive for small home businesses to access. Many of the pieces being designed today can work well in a home office, and manufacturers are beginning to make office furnishings available to this new market.



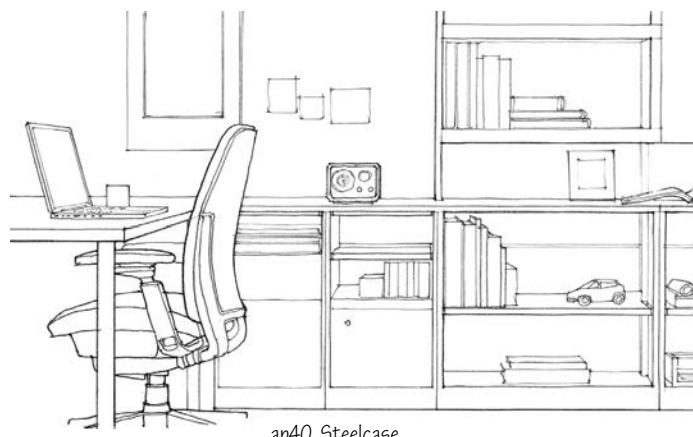
Canvas office landscape, Herman Miller



Traditional Desk and Credenza

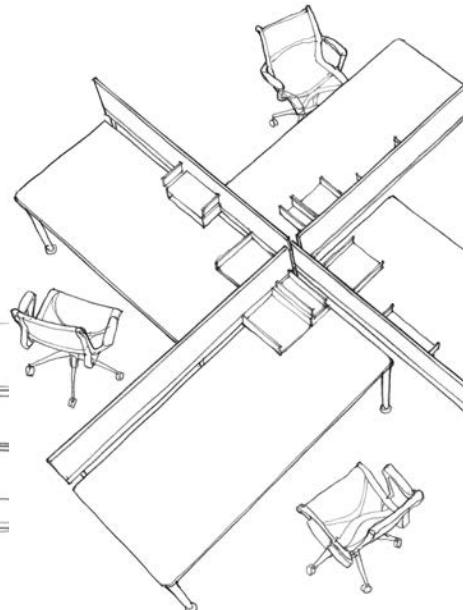


Abak Environments, Herman Miller



ap40, Steelcase

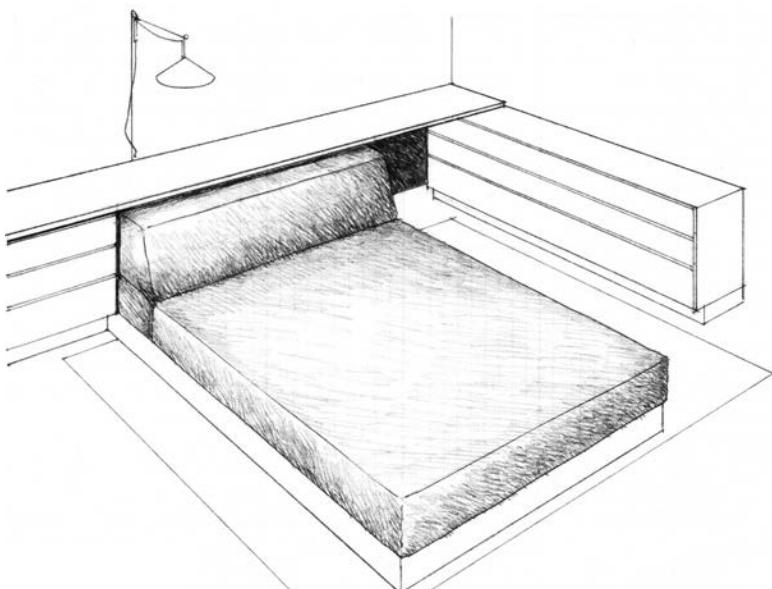
Individual Workstations



Sense desking system, Herman Miller

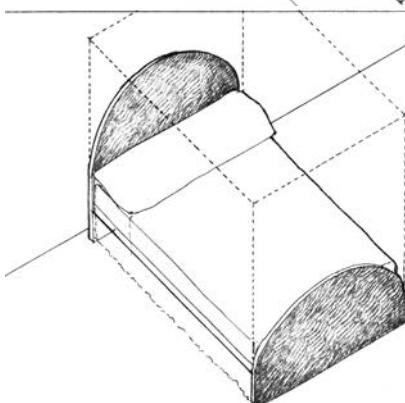
Group Workstations

BEDS

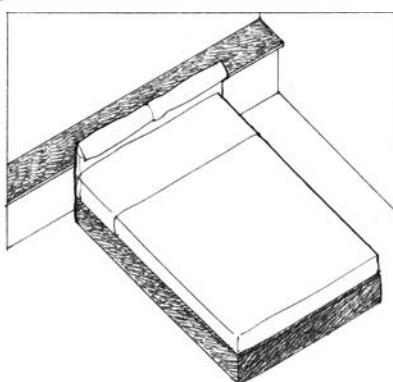


Beds consist of two basic components: the mattress or mattress set and the base or support frame. There are various types of mattresses, each made in its own way to respond to and support the user's body shape and weight. Personal judgment and choice, therefore, are required in the selection of a mattress.

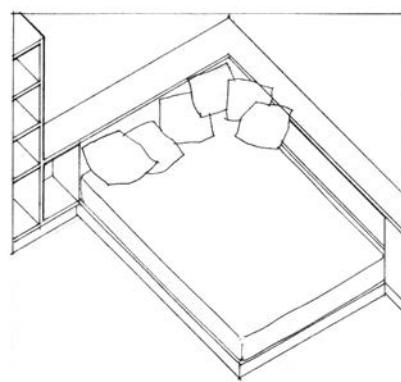
Interior designers are involved in the selection of the base or bed frame, headboard, footboard, canopy, associated tables, storage pieces, lighting, and electronic controls. The designer may also specify bed linens and covers and other room furnishings.



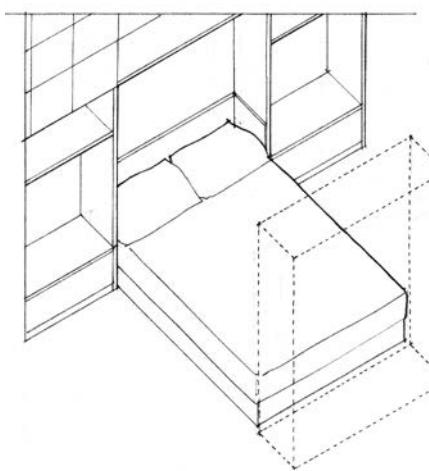
Headboards, footboards, and canopies define the volume of space occupied by a bed.



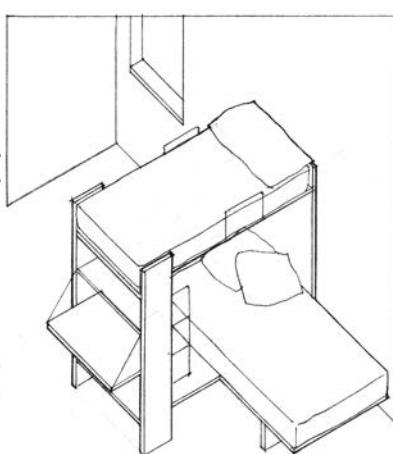
A bed can rest on a platform base, emphasizing the horizontality of the setting.



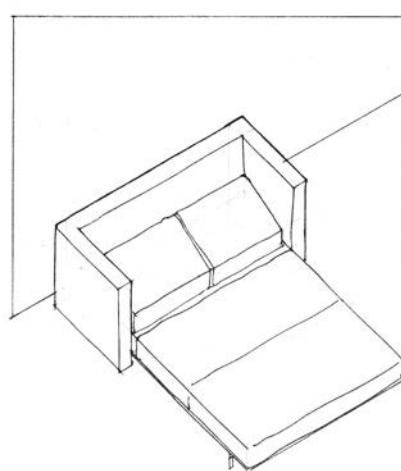
A bed built into a corner or alcove takes up less floor space, but it may be difficult to make.



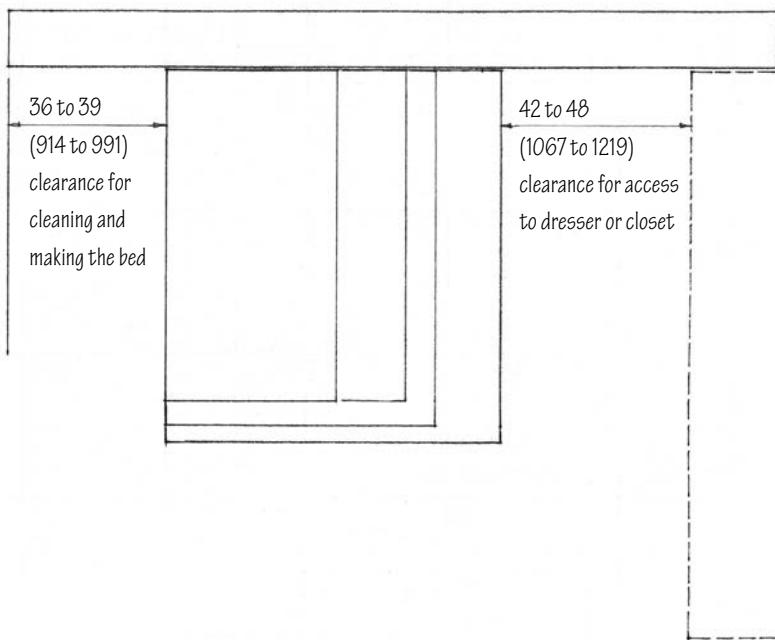
A bed can be integrated into a wall storage system at the head or foot of the bed, or both.



Bunk beds utilize vertical space to stack sleeping levels. Storage and desk surfaces can also be integrated into the system.



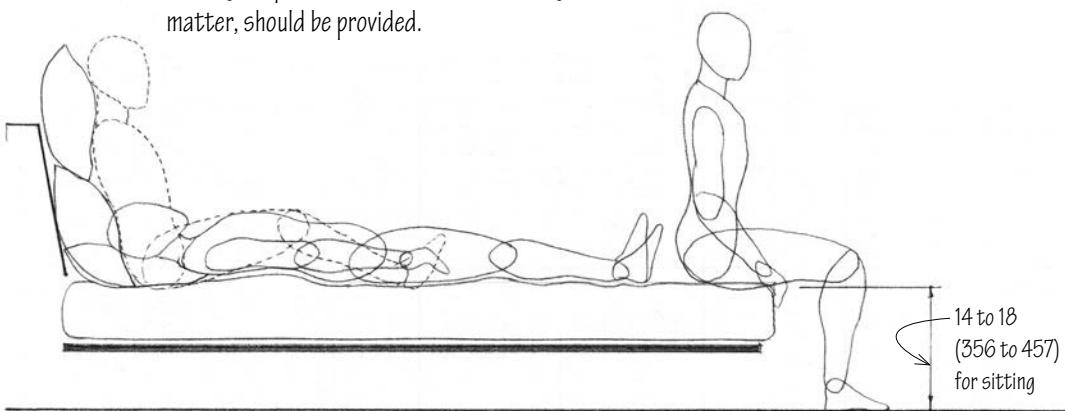
Sofas and armchairs that convert into beds offer convenient short-term sleeping arrangements.



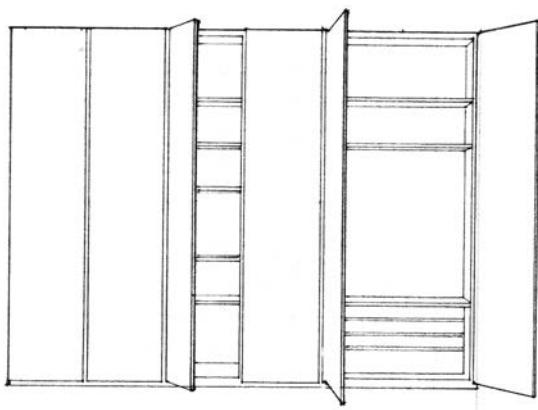
All dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).



For reading in bed, the headboard should support the back and head comfortably. An adjustable reading lamp, able to be focused on reading matter, should be provided.



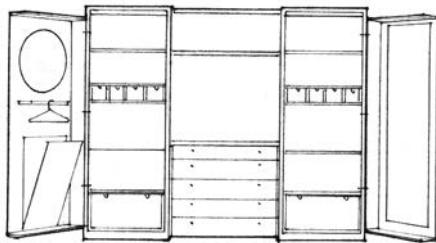
BEDROOM FURNITURE



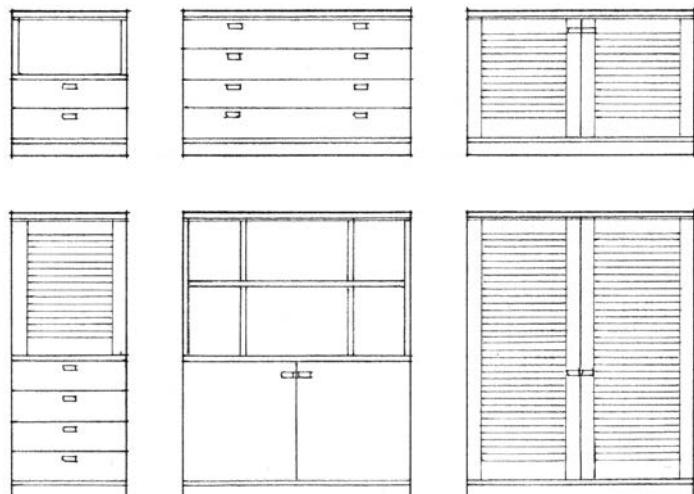
Modular storage system available with plain, glass, or louvered doors

The amount and type of furniture in a bedroom depends on the size of the room, the style of the project, and the needs of the intended user. A bedroom with a separate walk-in closet or dressing room may need fewer pieces of unit furniture for storage. A child's bedroom may double as a playroom or study area, while guest bedrooms may have alternate lives as home offices, sewing rooms, or storage rooms. Bedrooms may include extensive video and audio equipment or computer equipment, requiring special provisions for wiring.

Built-in storage can help to keep the lines of the room clean and avoid clutter. Individual pieces can balance the size and scale of the bed and add style, detail, and useful surfaces.



Armoire—Luigi Massoni



Modular set of chests of drawers and cupboards that can be used singly or in stacked or tandem groupings

Armoires are freestanding closets with doors covering the front, often with drawers inside at the bottom.

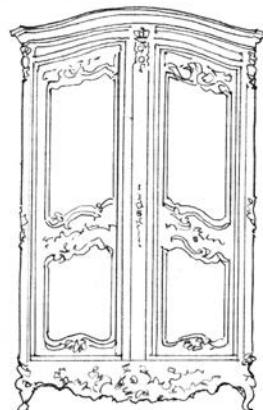
Chests for bedcovers and clothing storage range from simple wood boxes opening at the top to more elaborate pieces with drawers below.

Antique-style court cupboards and press cupboards have drawers or doors in both their upper and lower sections.

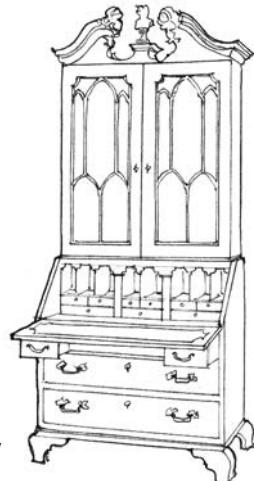
Secretaries, also called escritoires and highboys, have slanting fronts that drop down to create a writing surface with drawers below. They sometimes have bookcases or display cases above.

Dressing tables are designed for the user to sit facing a mirror while applying makeup or jewelry. Dressers hold smaller items of clothing and often include a mirror.

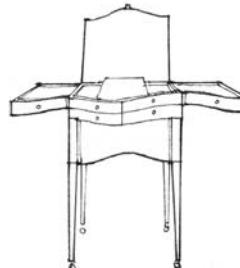
Night tables and nightstands are designed for bedside use.



French Provincial armoire



American block-front secretary



English dressing table



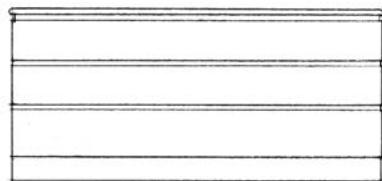
Early American dresser



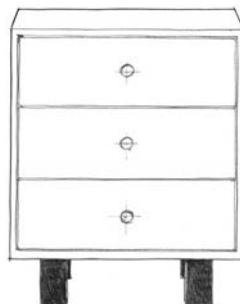
English naval captain's chest



Chinese chest



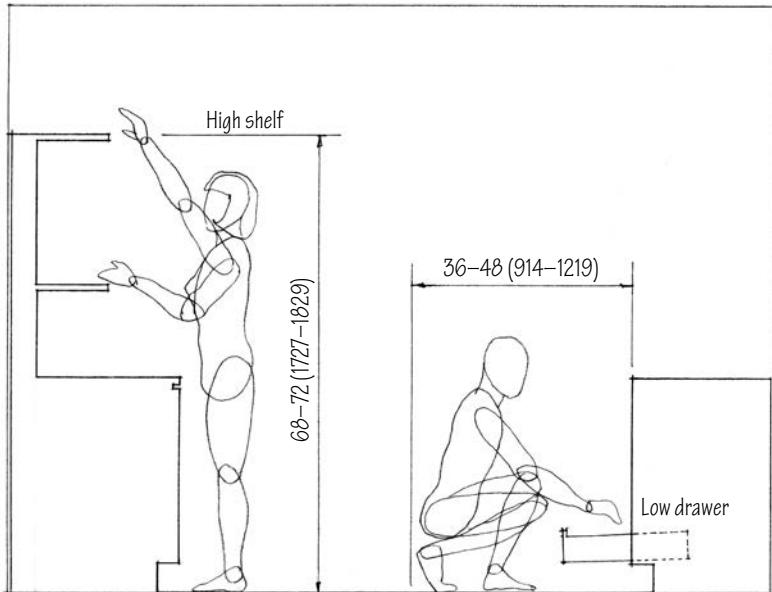
Chest of drawers



BCS 3-Drawer nightstand—
George Nelson for Herman Miller

STORAGE

Providing adequate and properly designed storage is an important concern in the planning of interior spaces, particularly where space is tight or where an uncluttered appearance is desired. To determine storage requirements, analyze the following:

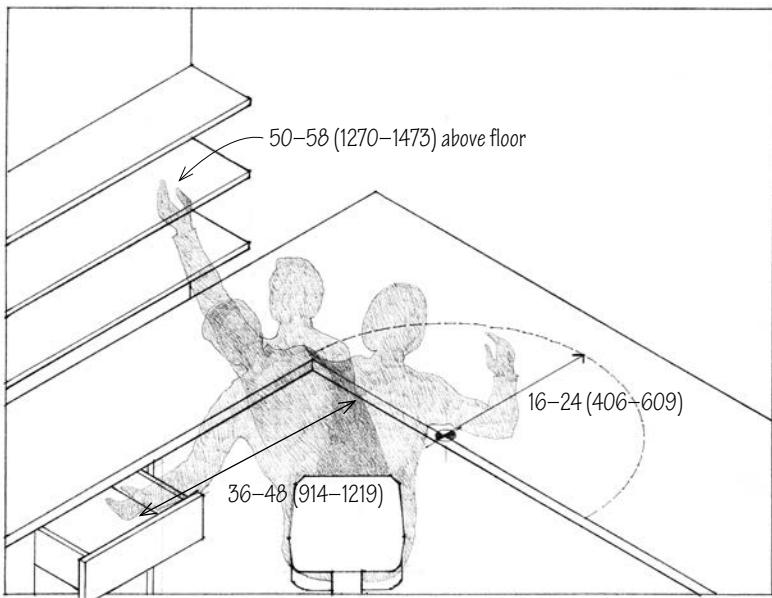


Accessibility: Where is storage needed?

Convenience: What type of storage should be provided? What sizes and shapes of items are to be stored? What is the frequency of use?

Visibility: Are items to be on display, or concealed?

Storage should be distributed where needed. How far we can reach while we are seated, standing, or kneeling should govern the means of access to the storage area. Active storage of often-used items should be readily accessible, while dead storage of little-used or seasonal items can be hidden away.



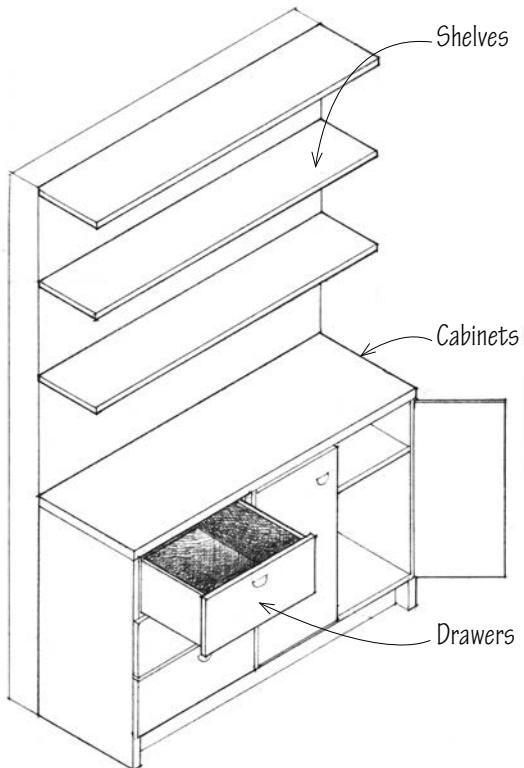
Dimensional Criteria

All dimensions are in inches, with their metric equivalents in millimeters (shown in parentheses).

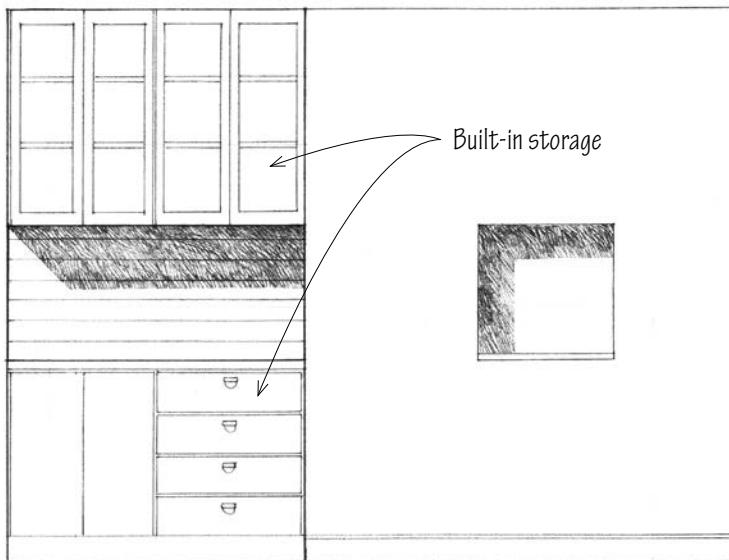
The size, proportion, and type of storage units used depend on the type and amount of items to be stored, the frequency of use, and the degree of visibility desired. Basic types of storage units are shelves, drawers, and cabinets. These may be suspended from the ceiling, mounted on a wall, or simply placed on the floor as a piece of furniture. Storage units can also be built into the thickness of a wall, occupy a niche, or utilize otherwise unusable space such as under a stairway.

Forms of Storage

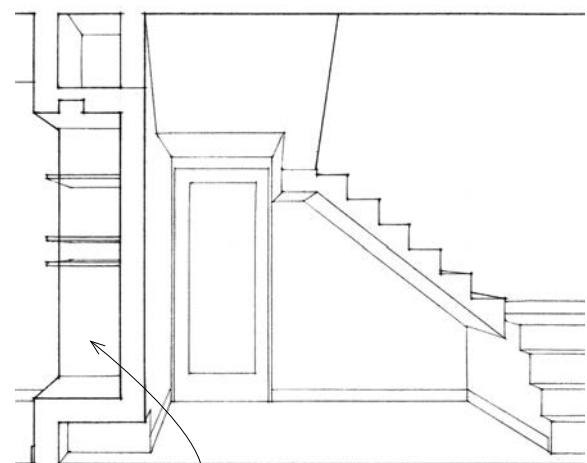
Shallow shelves are best for active storage because items are always in view. In deep storage spaces, little-used items gravitate toward the back, while often-used items migrate toward the front. The term "cabinets" generally refers to the casework built to accommodate shelves and drawers. Drawers are suitable for items that lie flat or for items that can be contained within the drawer compartments.



Basic Types of Storage

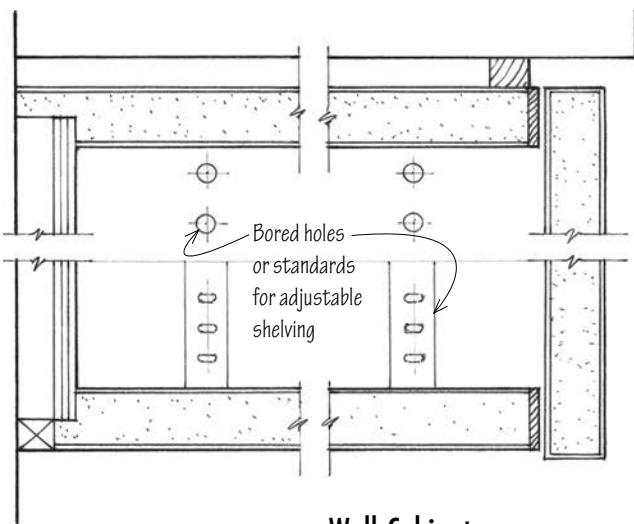


Forms of Storage

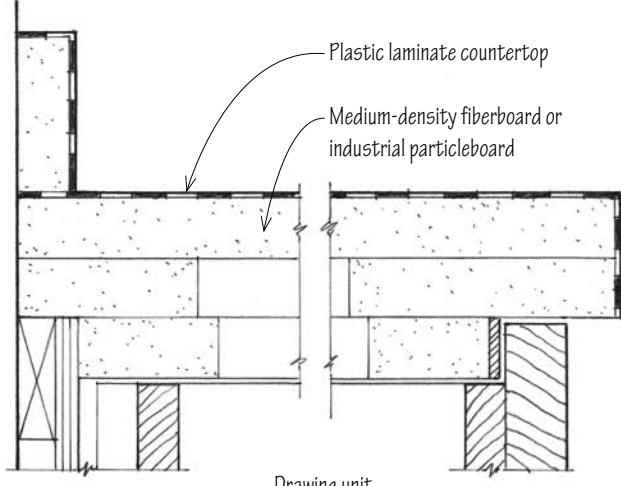


Built-in architectural features, such as wall niches

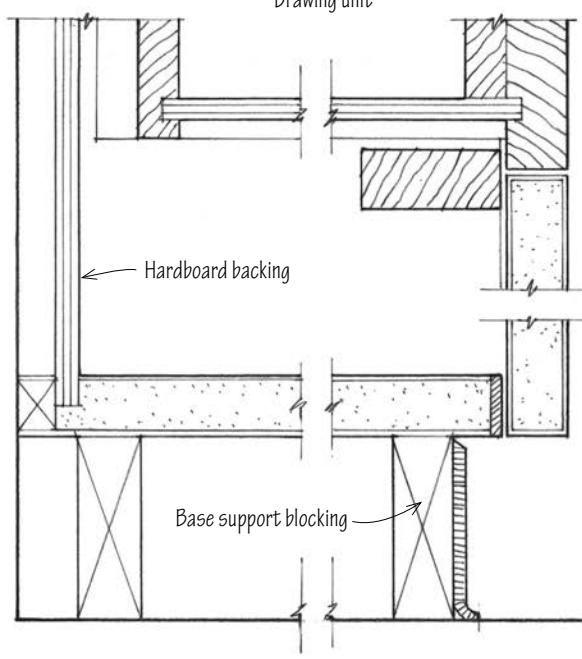
BUILT-IN STORAGE AND CASEWORK



Wall Cabinet



Drawing unit



Base Cabinet

Typical Cabinet Section

In a residence, built-in storage and cabinetry are most common in kitchens, pantries, and bathroom spaces, but can effectively be extended into other spaces as well. Standard-sized bases and wall cabinets are fitted into the kitchen layouts of most homes.

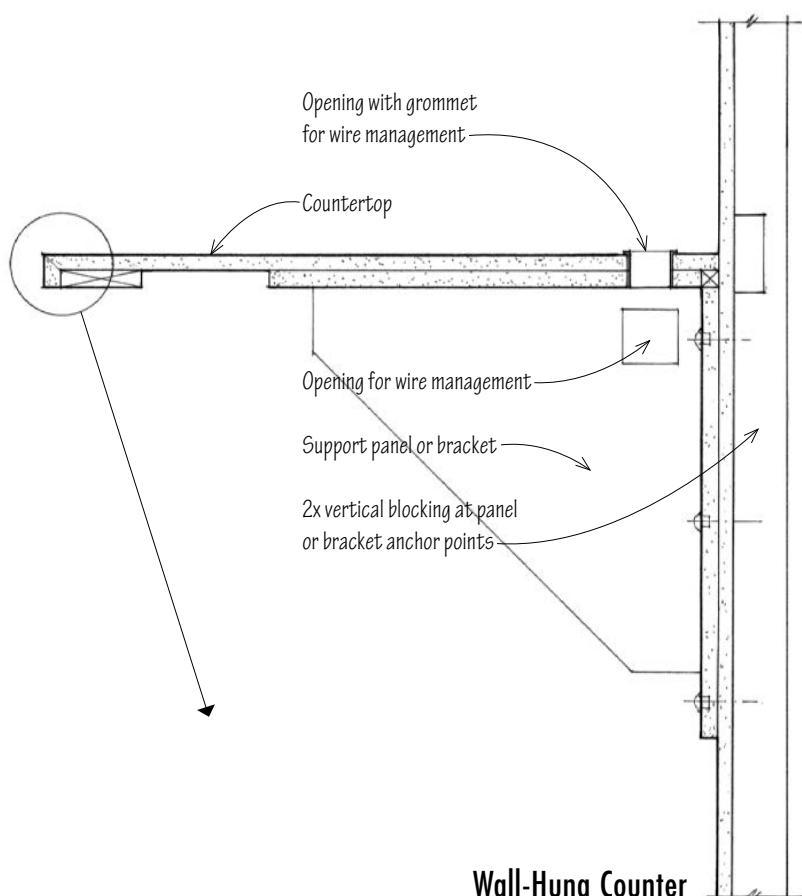
In commercial buildings, the varying demands of offices, schools, research facilities, libraries, retail stores, and other facilities are met by a wide variety of manufactured casework and custom-built pieces.

- Offices often feature bookcases and credenzas for storage and display.
- Reception desks may be custom-designed to project a corporate image.
- Retail display cases may be stock design, corporate standard pieces, or custom designs.
- Food service counters and server lines must accommodate equipment and flow, as well as meet accessibility requirements.
- Hospital nurses' stations and patient room cabinetry must accommodate equipment.

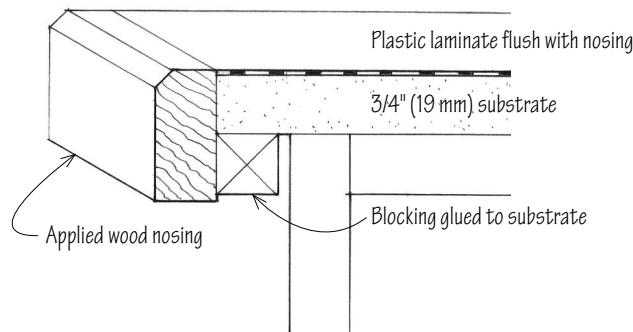
Countertops are used in both residential and commercial projects. Residential countertops are typically found in kitchens and bathrooms, but may also occur in laundry rooms, pantries, and home offices. Commercial countertops may be subject to heavier use, and where food is prepared, materials must meet health codes.

Sustainable options include reuse of existing countertop materials and use of recycled materials. Countertop materials include:

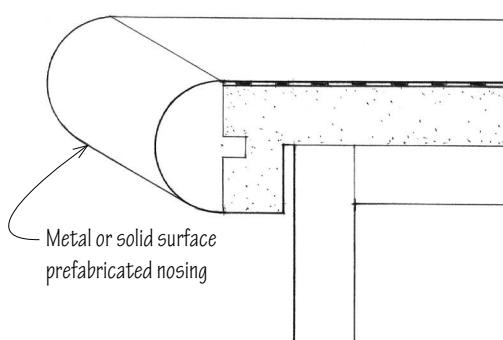
- Plastic laminates: Waterproof, stain resistant, easily cleaned. Not heat resistant; joints may be damaged, scratches are not repairable. Dark edge requires trim.
- Granite: Durable, water resistant, and heat resistant.
- Slate: Water and heat resistant, stainproof, antibacterial.
- Soapstone: Water, heat, and stain resistant; pleasant feel. Bimonthly oil treatment required.
- Marble: Wine will stain, sealer required; heat resistant.
- Solid surfacing: Water and stain resistant; light stains, scratches, scorch marks can be buffed out; may water spot. Integral sinks available.
- Epoxy resin: Durable, poured surface over painted or other surfaces.
- Engineered composite stone: Nonporous; abrasion, stain, and impact resistant. Resinous feel and appearance.
- Concrete: Durable, tactile surface acquires patina from use; may stain and crack; sealer recommended.
- Tile, ceramic: Heat and stain resistant, durable; grout requires maintenance.
- Wood: Water may damage surface; requires monthly application of mineral oil. Light damage can be sanded off.
- Paper composite: Made of paper treated with resin, then pressed and baked into solid sheets. Sanitary, scratch and heat resistant.
- Zinc: Warm metal appearance, easy maintenance. Many finishes available.



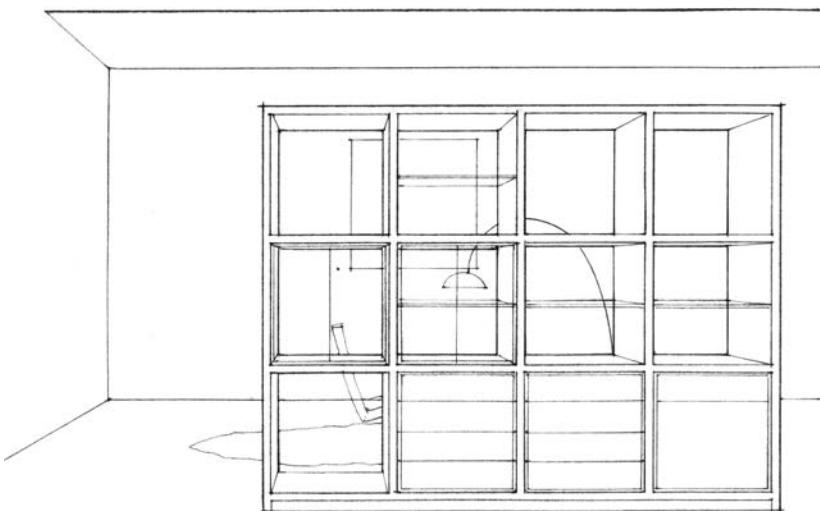
Wall-Hung Counter



Countertop Nosings

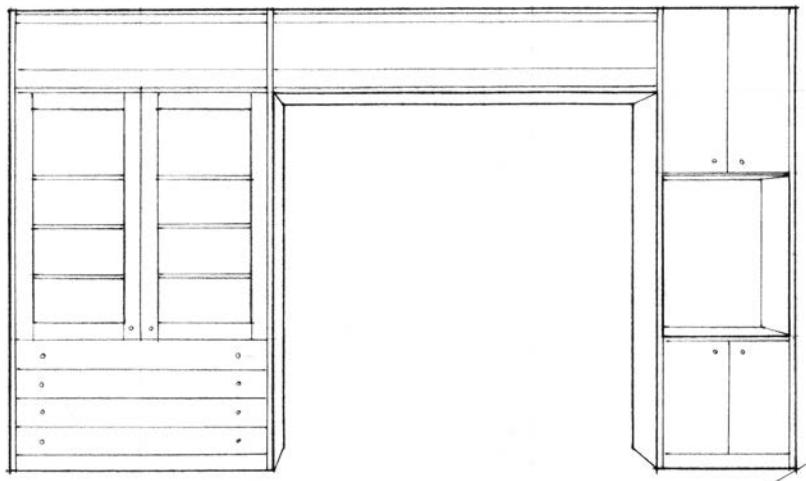


STORAGE UNITS

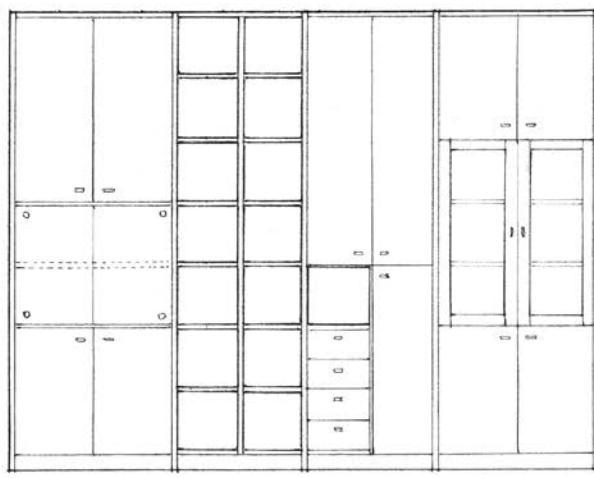
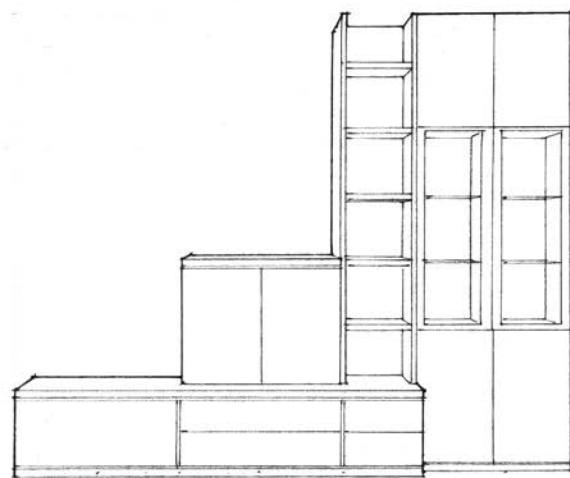


A wall system can serve effectively as a freestanding room divider.

Wall storage systems consist of modular shelving, drawer, and cabinet units that can be combined in various ways to form self-supporting assemblies. The units may have open fronts or be fitted with solid, glass, or louvered doors. Some systems integrate display lighting into their construction.



A wall storage system can form a shallow alcove space.



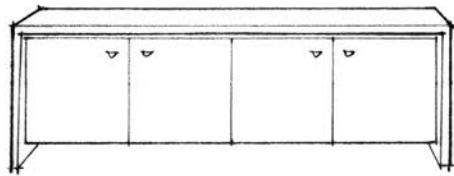
A wall storage system may be a freestanding assembly or be placed into a wall recess.

Offices

Back storage units or credenzas are designed for storing documents, supporting equipment, and displaying work in progress. They eliminate clutter on the desk by containing box drawers, file drawers, doors with shelves, pullout equipment shelves, or bar units.

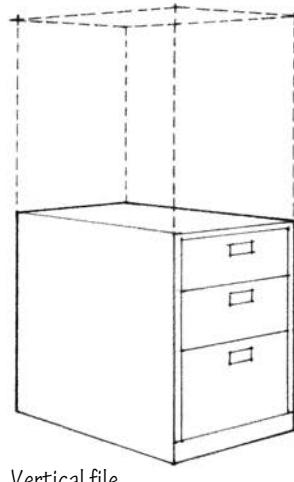
Filing systems should be selected for the client's filing needs, space availability, and quality of workmanship. Vertical files have two to five drawers, usually 15 or 18 inches (381 or 457 mm) wide, and 18 to 29 inches (457 mm to 736 mm) deep.

Lateral files are two to five drawers high and are usually 30, 36, or 42 inches (762, 914, or 1067 mm) wide and 15 or 18 inches (381 mm or 457 mm) deep.

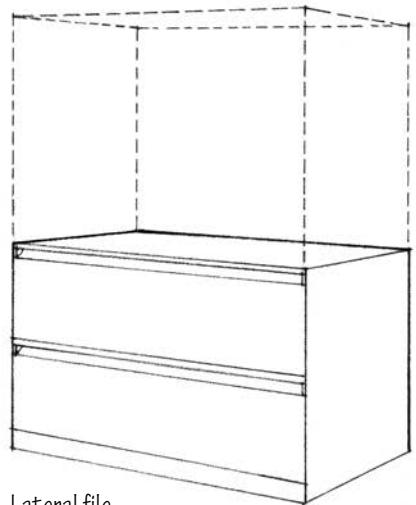


Credenza

29" (736 mm) high
18" to 20" (457 mm to 508 mm) deep

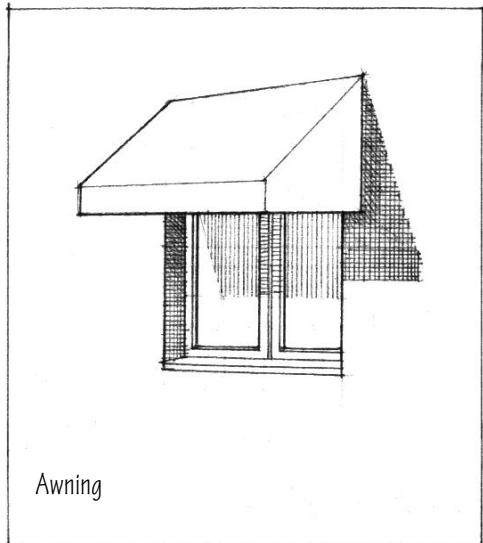


Vertical file

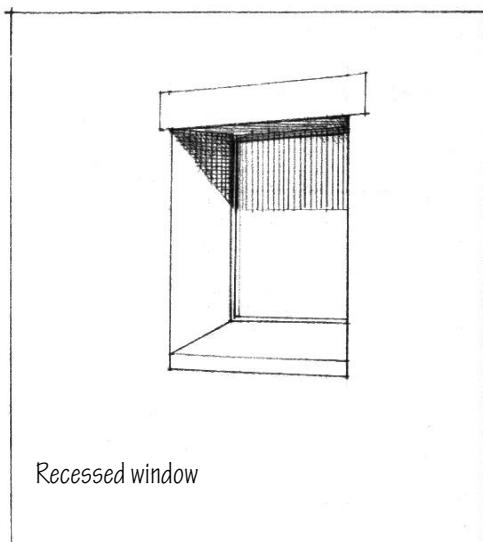


Lateral file

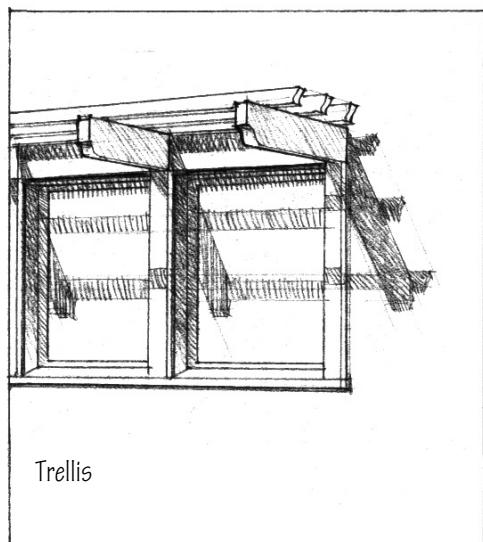
WINDOW TREATMENTS



Awning



Recessed window



Trellis

In the broad category of window treatments are included devices that aid in the control of light, available views, and the passage of air, heat, and cold. Some window treatments can reduce heat loss in the winter and heat gain in the summer. However, window treatments are not effective at reducing air leakage or infiltration; this requires caulking and weatherstripping around windows.

Exterior Window Treatments

Exterior treatments are normally designed as integral elements of a building's architecture. If added to an existing building, such alterations should respect the existing architectural style.

Awnings

Made from water-repellant and mildew- and fade-resistant synthetic fabric stretched over a frame to provide shade. Some are retractable.

Overhangs and recessed windows

Provide protection from sun and rain. If oriented properly, overhangs will allow sunlight in through windows in the winter.

Trellises

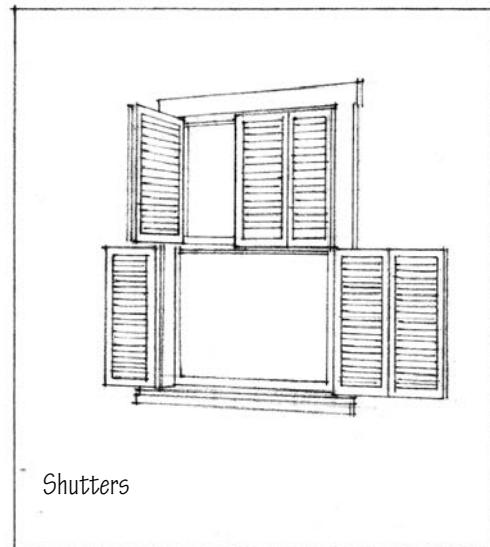
Open framework that filters light and provides support for vines, whose leaves provide summer shade.

Interior Window Treatments

Interior window treatments vary according to how they temper the light, provide ventilation and a view, and alter a window's form and appearance. They play a role in absorbing sound, conserving energy, and enhancing fire safety. Window treatments differ in how they open and close; they should not interfere with a window's operation or restrict access to its hardware.

Shutters

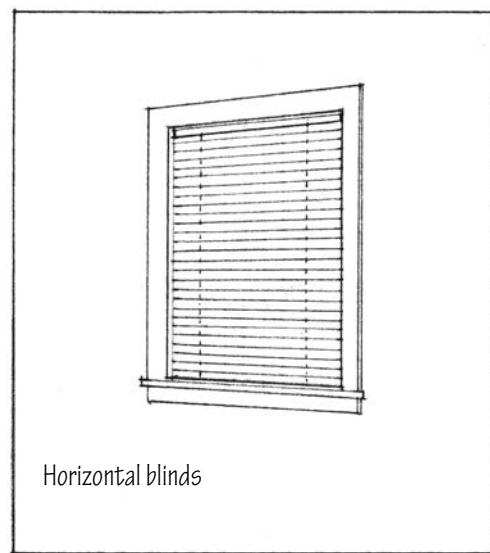
- Rigid panels, usually of wood, are hinged to open and close like miniature doors.
- Panels usually have adjustable louvers so that filtering of light and view can be controlled.
- Shutters provide a clean, precise, uncluttered appearance.
- When closed, shutters enhance a sense of enclosure.
- Louvered shutters work best for summer shading, allowing ventilation and natural daylight to enter, while blocking some solar heat; they are less effective at blocking winter heat loss.



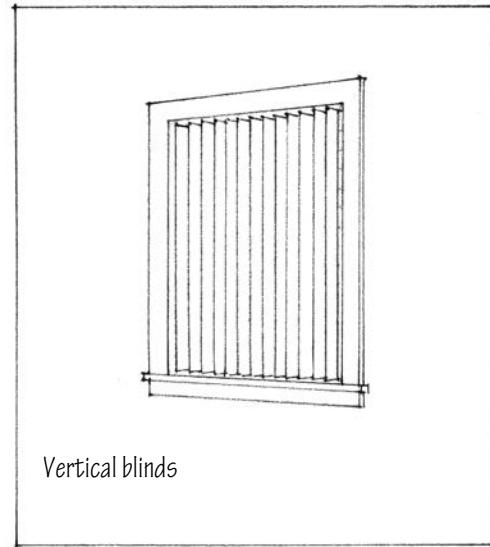
Shutters

Blinds

- Horizontal blinds consist of thin or wide slats of wood or metal.
- The spacing and adjustability of slats provide good control of light and airflow; thin slats obstruct a view less than wide slats.
- Blinds are difficult to clean.
- Thin horizontal blinds inserted between the panes of thermal glazing in a window remove this problem.
- Vertical blinds have slats, generally of opaque or translucent fabric, that pivot at the top and bottom.
- Use only cordless blinds in spaces occupied by infants and young children. Manual or automatic controls are available.
- Blinds are more effective at reducing summer heat gain than winter heat loss.

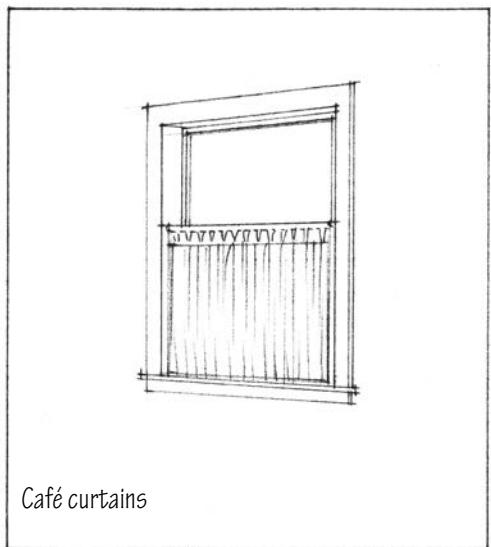
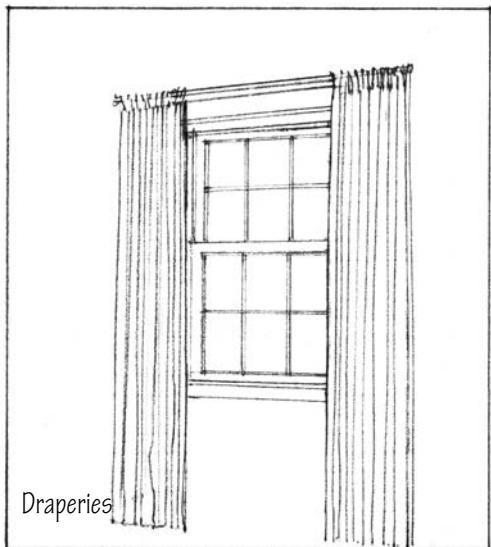


Horizontal blinds



Vertical blinds

SOFT WINDOW TREATMENTS



Fabric window treatments soften the lines of an interior space and add visual stimulation and detail. They can adjust for privacy needs and varying light levels, absorb sound, and provide thermal insulation. Sheer fabric softens and diffuses light, filters the view, and provides daytime privacy. Synthetic drapery fabrics including acetate, polyester, nylon, and acrylic offer better resistance to sun and flame.

Draperies

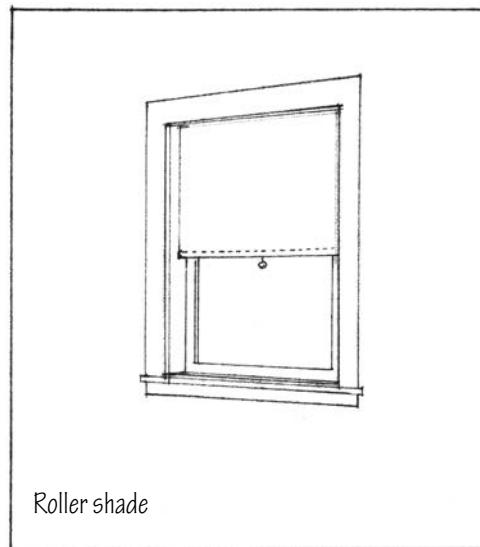
- Draperies are fabric panels made of heavy opaque, partially opaque, or translucent fabrics that are generally pleated, hung on a rod, and pulled to one or both sides of the window.
- Types of drapery pleats include pinch, barrel, box, and pencil pleats.
- Draperies can be full and hung straight, tied back, or gathered into puffs (pouffed). Festoons are fabric swags hanging between two points.
- Draperies can reduce heat exchange or convection when hung close to windows and down to the windowsill or floor, sealed at both sides, and overlapped at the center.
- Drapery color and the use of an open or closed weave fabric also contribute to heat gain and loss.

Curtains

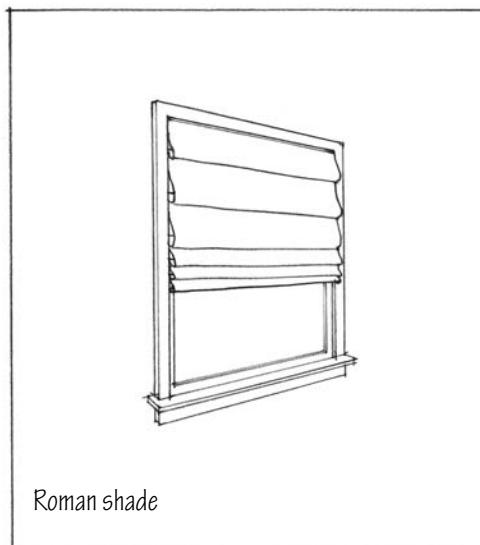
- Curtains are less formal than draperies. They may be stationary or hand operated. Their tops can be looped, Shirred, scalloped, or pleated. There may be a valance at the top.
- Curtains can be hung within the window frame or outside the frame to unify a group of windows.
- Shirred or sash curtains are gathered directly on rods across the sash of a window, and either hang straight down or are fastened to another rod at the bottom.
- Café curtains are made in tiers, either to cover the whole window or only the bottom half.

Shades

- Shades work best to prevent heat loss or gain when mounted close to glass with sides close to wall.
- Shades can be made of translucent, opaque, or blackout fabric. Vinyl, fiberglass mesh, bamboo, or wooden slatted shades are also available.
- Shades usually operate from the top down to cover part or all of a window opening, although bottom-up styles are available. Manual and automatic controls and skylight mountings are available.
- Roller shades have a spring mechanism attached to a length of flexible material.
- Translucent, transparent, or opaque pleated shades fold into a compact accordion shape.
- Cellular or honeycomb blinds are made by bonding two or three layers of polyester fabric with an insulating layer of air. They offer limited thermal insulating properties and varying degrees of translucence. They also stack compactly.
- Roman shades are pulled up into horizontal pleats when raised by cords, and hang flat when extended.
- Austrian shades are made of sheer or semi-sheer fabric gathered vertically into soft horizontal scallops by cords.
- Balloon, pouf, or cloud shades form balloonlike poufs when pulled up with vertical cords.
- Dual shades have a highly reflective white surface on one side and a heat-absorbing dark surface on the other; they can be reversed seasonally, with the reflective side facing the warmer side.
- Quilted roller shades and some types of Roman shades feature layers of fiber batting and sealed edges to provide both insulation and an air barrier.

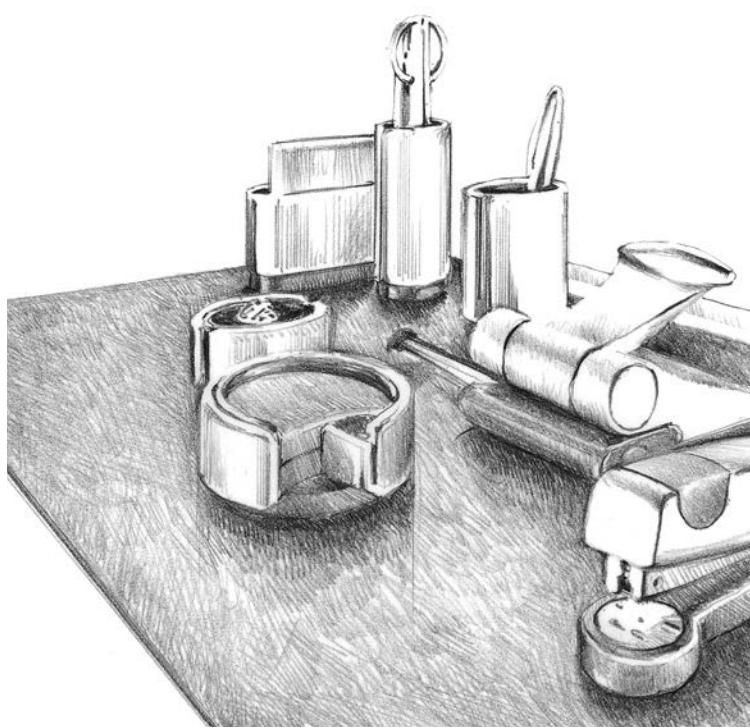
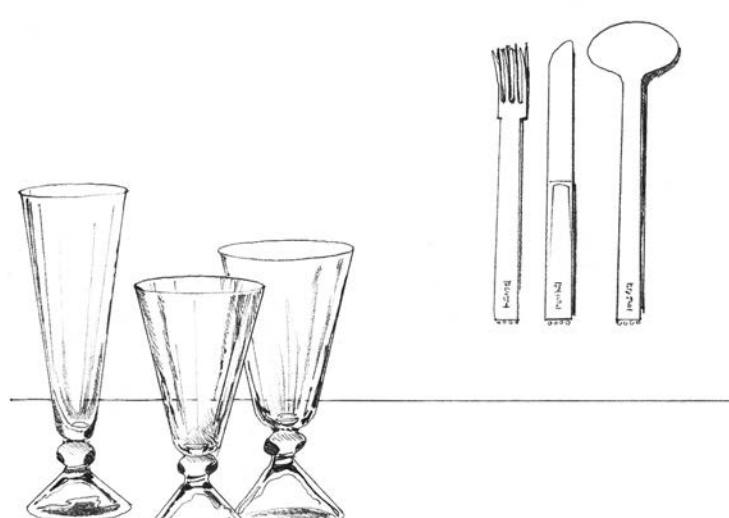
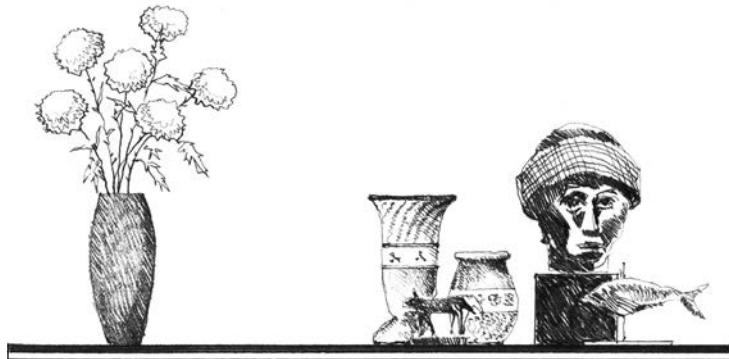


Roller shade



Roman shade

ACCESSORIES



Accessories in interior design are those items that provide a space with aesthetic enrichment and embellishment. These items may provide visual delight for the eye, textural interest for the hand, or stimulation for the mind. Ultimately, accessories—individually or collectively—are the inevitable evidence of habitation.

Accessories help relate architectural interiors to human scale and to differentiate personal, social, and public zones around the human body. They help to identify the intended use of a space and the character of its users.

Accessories should be selected to support the design concept of the space and to reinforce design principles such as rhythm, balance, texture, pattern, and color. They can tie design elements together or function as a focal point.

Accessories that can add visual and tactile richness to an interior setting may be utilitarian or decorative.

Utilitarian Accessories

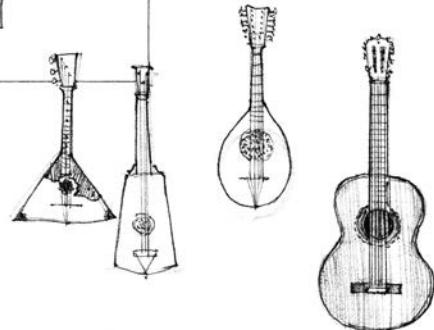
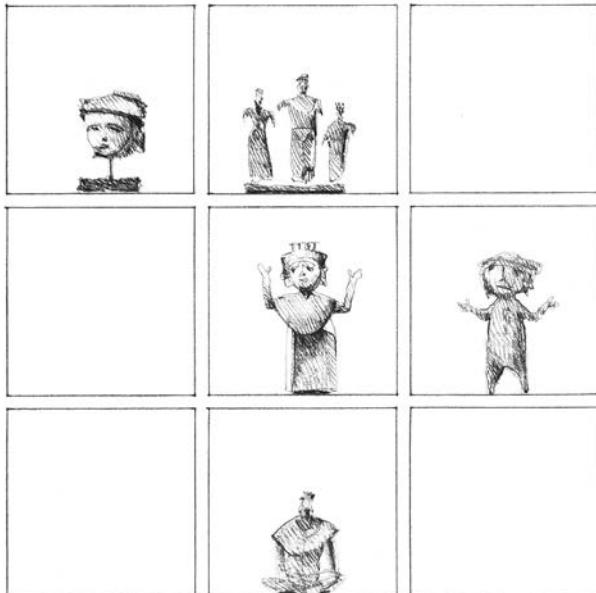
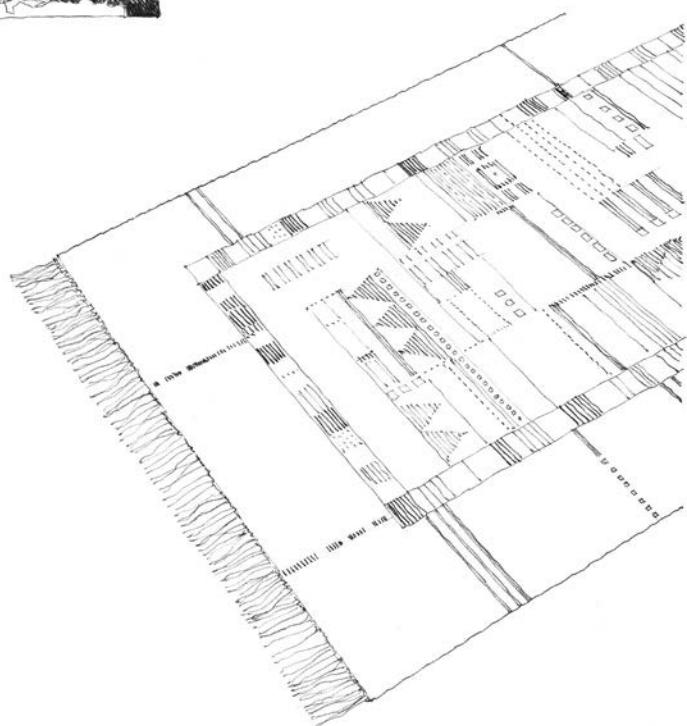
Utilitarian accessories include useful items such as the following:

- Accessories for office use, such as desktop mats, business card holders, paper clip holders, and filing trays, are often sold as sets.
- Tabletop accessories for restaurants support the concept and style of service.
- Guest room accessories express a hotel's concept and level of service.
- Residential cooking, dining, and bathroom accessories are often used for both function and display.

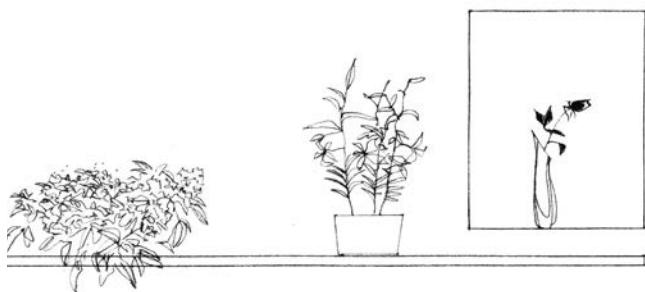
Decorative Accessories

Decorative accessories delight the eye, the hand, or the intellect without necessarily being utilitarian in purpose. Decorative accessories and artwork should be included in the project budget, and provisions must be made for display and lighting. Decorative accessories may include:

- Artwork** The selection and placement of artwork can emphasize strong design elements or alter the perception of the proportions of the space. Artwork may be selected from a client's collection, acquired to start a collection, or commissioned especially for a given project. Art consultants help designers and clients find and acquire appropriate pieces. In addition to paintings, prints, and photos, designers may include sculpture and crafts such as ceramics, art glass, metalwork, and textiles.
- Collections** Collections of objects almost always have personal meaning. Collections often create an opportunity for repetition of form, color, texture, or pattern. Individual pieces may be featured as focal elements.
- Residential** What we choose to display in our homes expresses how we live and what we value. Designers can help clients edit their possessions, select new ones, and display them effectively. Accessories that express individuality are generally more interesting than product lines preselected to coordinate.



PLANTS



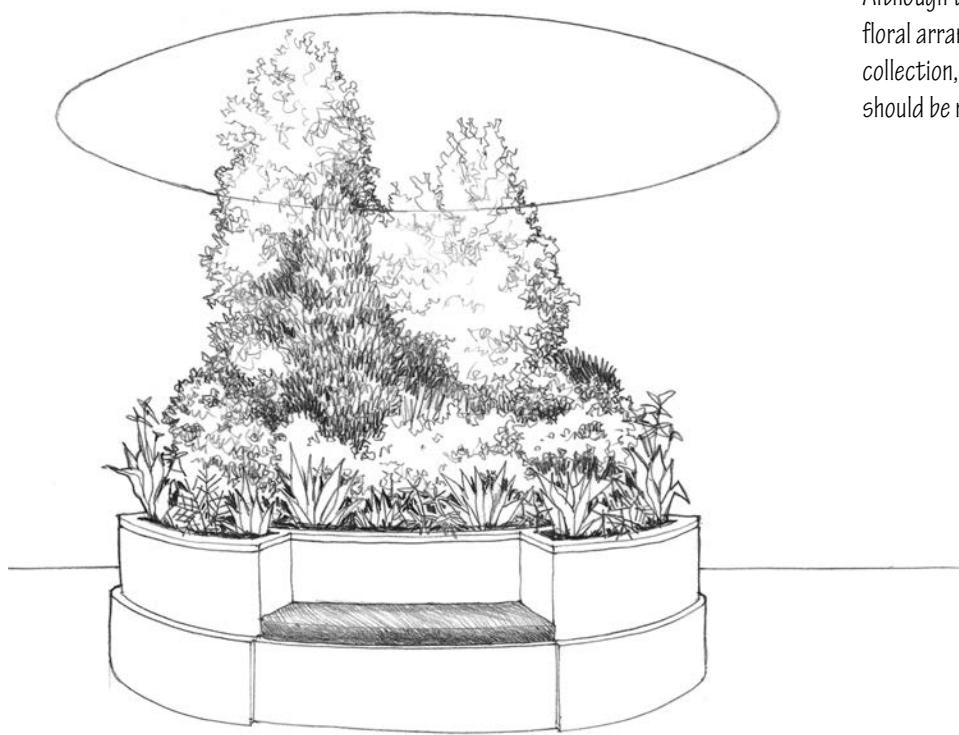
Plants and flowers, as visible signs of nature, bring their expression of life and growth to interior spaces. Plants can improve air quality and raise indoor humidity levels. However, planting materials may shelter insects and other pests and can harbor molds. Plants must be carefully selected for their required levels of light and maintenance, as well as for scale, form, and color. Some businesses hire companies to select, place, maintain, and replace plants on a schedule.

Artificial and preserved plants can closely resemble living plants and can substitute for them where the use of live plants is limited by lack of light or pest control concerns. The use of artificial and preserved plants continues to expand as their quality improves.

Artificial plants are composed of polyester fabric leaves attached to plastic petioles, which are in turn attached to real or composite wood branches and trunks. The leaves are often realistically photo embossed.

Most preserved plants are palms; real leaf sheaths and fronds are attached to artificial trunks. The fronds are treated to stay soft and green, and for fire safety.

Although they do not need irrigation, artificial plants and floral arrangements may be prone to brittleness and dust collection, and, like live plants, require maintenance. They should be replaced when they begin to deteriorate.



APPENDIX

- Interior Rating Systems and Certifications
- LEED for Commercial Interiors
- LEED for Homes

INTERIOR RATING SYSTEMS AND CERTIFICATIONS

U.S. Green Building Council

The U.S. Green Building Council (USGBC) was established in 1993 as a national nonprofit organization, with a voluntary, diverse membership that operates on consensus principles. The USGBC works with its members to incorporate their ideas into the overall organization. The consensus of USGBC members is to work together to promote green building and to foster greater economic vitality and environmental health. USGBC accomplishes this by working with the building construction industry to help bridge ideological gaps, thus providing benefits for the entire construction community.

LEED Rating System

USGBC has established the Leadership in Energy and Environmental Design (LEED) rating system. Launched in 2000, LEED is a voluntary point-based rating system that establishes consistent evaluation criteria for sustainable design projects. LEED serves as a tool to aid integrated sustainable design and to help owners and design teams obtain benefits in the overall health and efficiency of building design. LEED is based on accepted energy and environmental principles. It strikes a balance between known effective practices and emerging concepts.

The 2009 LEED rating system is structured into credit categories, each of which is, in turn, composed of individual credits and prerequisites that, in aggregate, allow a participant to achieve one of four levels of certification as defined by the USGBC. Check with USGBC for the latest information on LEED credits.

LEED for Commercial Interiors

There are several different LEED rating systems for various types of projects. LEED for Commercial Interiors (LEED CI) was developed for interior design projects in existing and new buildings. It is structured into the same credit categories as the other versions, but the requirements have been customized to reflect the scope of work typical in an interiors project.

The site credits and some of the water and energy credits relate to the sustainable building attributes of the base building selected, whereas most of the materials and indoor environmental quality credits relate to sustainable attributes of the interior fit-out. All prerequisites must be met in order to be eligible for a LEED rating.

Innovation credits are available to those projects exceeding the requirements of other LEED credits and can also be used for innovative strategies that were not captured in other credit areas. Innovation credits provide project teams with the opportunity to receive additional points for exceptional performance on other LEED credits (e.g., 50% water use reduction) and/or innovative strategies not specifically addressed by other LEED credits (e.g., a sustainable education program). There are unlimited possibilities for innovation credits.

Regional priority credits were introduced in 2009 for each region in the U.S. to determine which credits receive more weight, depending on regional energy, environmental, and health priorities.

Overview of LEED-CI, Version 2009

Sustainable Sites (SS)		Points
Credit 1	Site Selection (3 points maximum) Select a LEED-certified building or locate the tenant space in a building with the following:	3
Option 1A	Brownfield Redevelopment	1/2
Option 1B	Stormwater Management: Rate and Quantity	1/2
Option 1C	Stormwater Management: Treatment	1/2
Option 1D	Heat Island Reduction: Non-Roof	1/2
Option 1E	Heat Island Reduction: Roof	1/2
Option 1F	Light Pollution Reduction	1/2
Option 1G	Water Efficient Irrigation: Reduce by 50%	1/2
Option 1H	Water Efficient Irrigation: No Potable Water Use or Irrigation	1/2
Option 1I	Innovative Wastewater Treatment Technologies	1/2
Option 1J	Water Use Reduction: 20% Reduction	1/2
Option 1K	Onsite Renewable Energy	1/2 to 1
Option 1L	Other Quantifiable Environmental Performance	1/2 to 3
Credit 2	Development Density and Community Connectivity	1
Credit 3.1	Alternative Transportation: Public Transportation Access	1
Credit 3.2	Alternative Transportation: Bicycle Storage & Changing Rooms	1
Credit 3.3	Alternative Transportation: Parking Availability	1
Possible SS Points		7
Water Efficiency (WE)		Points
Credit 1.1	Water Use Reduction—20% Reduction	1
Credit 1.2	Water Use Reduction—30% Reduction	1
Possible WE Points		2
Energy and Atmosphere (EA)		Points
Prerequisite 1	Fundamental Commissioning	None
Prerequisite 2	Minimum Energy Performance	None
Prerequisite 3	CFC Reduction in HVAC&R Equipment	None
Credit 1.1	Optimize Energy Performance: Lighting Power	3
Credit 1.2	Optimize Energy Performance: Lighting Controls	1
Credit 1.3	Optimize Energy Performance: HVAC	2
Credit 1.4	Optimize Energy Performance: Equipment & Appliances	2
Credit 2	Enhanced Commissioning	1
Credit 3	Energy Use, Measurement & Payment Accountability	2
Credit 4	Green Power	1
Possible EA Points		12

Materials and Resources (MR)

		Points
Prerequisite 1	Storage & Collection of Recyclables	None
Credit 1.1	Tenant Space, Long Term Commitment	1
Credit 1.2	Building Reuse, Maintain 40% of Interior Non- Structural Components	1
Credit 1.3	Building Reuse, Maintain 60% of Interior Non- Structural Components	1
Credit 2.1	Construction Waste Management, Divert 50% from Landfill	1
Credit 2.2	Construction Waste Management, Divert 75% from Landfill	1
Credit 3.1	Resource Reuse, 5%	1
Credit 3.2	Resource Reuse, 10%	1
Credit 3.3	Resource Reuse, 30% of Furniture & Furnishings	1
Credit 4.1	Recycled Content, 10% (post- consumer + 1/2 pre- consumer)	1
Credit 4.2	Recycled Content, 20% (post- consumer + 1/2 pre- consumer)	1
Credit 5.1	Regional Materials, 20% Manufactured Locally	1
Credit 5.2	Regional Materials, 10% Extracted & Manufactured Locally	1
Credit 6	Rapidly Renewable Materials	1
Credit 7	Certified Wood	1
Possible MR Points		14

Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ)

		Points
Prerequisite 1	Minimum IAQ Performance	None
Prerequisite 2	Environmental Tobacco Smoke (ETS) Control	None
Credit 1	Outdoor Air Delivery Monitoring	1
Credit 2	Increased Ventilation	1
Credit 3.1	Construction IAQ Management Plan, During Construction	1
Credit 3.2	Construction IAQ Management Plan, Before Occupancy	1
Credit 4.1	Low-Emitting Materials, Adhesives & Sealants	1
Credit 4.2	Low-Emitting Materials, Paints & Coatings	1
Credit 4.3	Low-Emitting Materials, Carpet Systems	1
Credit 4.4	Low-Emitting Materials, Composite Wood & Laminate Adhesives	1
Credit 4.5	Low-Emitting Materials, Systems Furniture & Seating	1
Credit 5	Indoor Chemical & Pollutant Source Control	1
Credit 6.1	Controllability of Systems, Lighting	1
Credit 6.2	Controllability of Systems, Temperature and Verification	1
Credit 7.1	Thermal Comfort, Compliance	1
Credit 7.2	Thermal Comfort, Monitoring	1
Credit 8.1	Daylight & Views, Daylight 75% of Spaces	1
Credit 8.2	Daylight & Views, Daylight 90% of Spaces	1
Credit 8.3	Daylight & Views, Views for 90% of Seated Spaces	1
Possible EQ Points		17

Innovation and Design Process (ID)	Points
Credit 1.1 Innovation in Design 1	1
Credit 1.2 Innovation in Design 2	1
Credit 1.3 Innovation in Design 3	1
Credit 1.4 Innovation in Design 4	1
Credit 2 LEED Accredited Professional 1	1
Possible ID Points	5

Summary for LEED-CI 2.0

For LEED-CI 2.0, there are 52 possible base points plus 5 points for Innovation in Design, a total of 57 points available. Certification levels for LEED-CI are as follows:

- Certified: 21–26 points
- Silver: 27–31 points
- Gold: 32–41 points
- Platinum: 42 or more points

Overview of LEED for Homes, Version 2008

Innovation and Design Process (ID)

(No Minimum Points Required)

1. Integrated Project Planning

- 1.1 Preliminary Rating
- 1.2 Integrated Project Team
- 1.3 Professional Credential with Respect to LEED for Homes
- 1.4 Design Charrette
- 1.5 Building Orientation for Solar Design

Points

Prerequisite

2.5 Reduce Overall Irrigation Demand by at least 20%

6

3. Local Heat Island Effects

- 3.1 Reduce Local Heat Island Effects

1

4. Surface Water Management

- 4.1 Permeable Lot
- 4.2 Permanent Erosion Controls
- 4.3 Management of Run-off from Roof
- 5. Nontoxic Pest Control
- 6. Compact Development
- 6.1 Moderate Density
- 6.2 High Density (Or SS 6.1, 6.3)
- 6.3 Very High Density (Or SS 6.1, 6.2)

4

1

2

2

Subtotal for SS Category

22

2. Durability Management Process

- 2.1 Durability Planning
- 2.2 Durability Management
- 2.3 Third-Party Durability Management Verification

Prerequisite

Prerequisite

Water Efficiency (WE)

Points

(Minimum 5 SS Points Required)

1. Water Reuse

- 1.1 Rainwater Harvesting System (Or WE 1.3)
- 1.2 Graywater Reuse System (Or WE 1.3)
- 1.3 Use of Municipal Recycled Water System

4

1

3

2. Irrigation System

- 2.1 High Efficiency Irrigation System (Or WE 2.3)
- 2.2 Third Party Inspection (Or WE 2.3)
- 2.3 Reduce Overall Irrigation Demand by at Least 45%

3

1

4

3. Indoor Water Use

- 3.1 High-Efficiency Fixtures and Fittings
- 3.2 Very High-Efficiency Fixtures and Fittings

3

6

Subtotal for WE Category

15

Location and Linkages (LL)

(No Minimum Points Required)

1. LEED for Neighborhood Development (Or LL 2-6)

Points

10

2. Site Selection

Points

2

3. Preferred Locations

- 3.1 Edge Development
- 3.2 Infill
- 3.3 Previously Developed

1 (Or LL 3.1) 2

1

4. Existing Infrastructure

Points

1

5. Community Resources

- 5.1 Basic Community Resources
- 5.2 Extensive Community Resources (Or LL 5.1, 5.3)
- 5.3 Outstanding Community Resources (Or LL 5.1, 5.2)

1 (Or LL 3.1) 2

2

3

6. Access to Open Space

1

1

Subtotal for LL Category

10

Sustainable Sites (SS)

(Minimum 5 SS Points Required)

Points

1. Site Stewardship

- 1.1 Erosion
- 1.2 Basic Landscape Design

Prerequisite

1

2. Landscaping

- 2.1 No Invasive Plants
- 2.2 Minimize Disturbed Area of Site (Or SS 2.5)
- 2.3 Limit Conventional Turf (Or SS 2.5)
- 2.4 Drought Tolerant Plants (Or SS 2.5)

Prerequisite

2

3

2

Energy and Atmosphere (EA)

Points

(No Minimum Points Required)

1. Optimize Energy Performance

- 1.1 Performance of ENERGY STAR FOR HOMES
- 1.2 Exceptional Energy Performance

Prerequisite

34

2. Insulation

- 2.1 Basic Insulation
- 2.2 Enhanced Insulation

Prerequisite

2

3. Air Infiltration

- 3.1 Reduced Envelope Leakage
- 3.2 Greatly Reduced Envelope Leakage
- 3.3 Minimal Envelope Leakage (Or EA 3.2)

Prerequisite

2

3

4. Windows

- 4.1 Good Windows
- 4.2 Enhanced Windows
- 4.3 Exceptional Windows (Or EA 4.2)

Prerequisite

2

3

5. Heating and Cooling Distribution System

- 5.1 Reduced Distribution Losses

Prerequisite

5.2 Greatly Reduced Distribution Losses	2	4.1 Basic Outdoor Air Ventilation (Or EQ 1)	Prerequisite
5.3 Minimal Distribution Losses (Or EA 5.2)	3	4.2 Enhanced Outdoor Air Ventilation	2
6. Space Heating and Cooling System		4.3 Third-Party Performance Testing (Or EQ 1)	1
6.1 Good HVAC Design and Installation	Prerequisite	5. Local Exhaust	
6.2 High-Efficiency HVAC	2	5.1 Basic Local Exhaust (Or EQ 1)	Prerequisite
6.3 Very High-Efficiency HVAC (Or EA 6.2)	4	5.2 Enhanced Local Exhaust	1
7. Water Heating		5.3 Third-Party Performance Testing	1
7.1 Efficient Hot Water Distribution	2	6. Distribution of Space Heating and Cooling	
7.2 Pipe Insulation	1	6.1 Room-by-Room Load Calculations (Or EQ 1)	Prerequisite
7.3 Efficient Domestic Hot Water Equipment	3	6.2 Return Air Flow / Room-by-Room Controls (Or EQ 1)	1
8. Lighting		6.3 Third-Party Performance Test / Multiple Zones (Or EQ 1)	3
8.1 ENERGY STAR Lights	Prerequisite	7. Air Filtering	
8.2 Improved Lighting	2	7.1 Good Filters (Or EQ 1)	Prerequisite
8.3 Advanced Lighting Package (Or EA 8.2)	3	7.2 Better Filters	1
9. Appliances		7.3 Best Filters (Or EQ 7.2)	2
9.1 High-Efficiency Appliances	2	8. Contaminant Control	
9.2 Water-Efficient Clothes Washer	1	8.1 Indoor Contaminant Control during Construction (Or EQ1)	1
10. Renewable Energy Renewable Energy System	10	8.2 Indoor Contaminant Control	2
11. Residential Refrigerant Management		8.3 Preoccupancy Flush (Or EQ 1)	1
11.1 Refrigerant Charge Test	Prerequisite	9. Radon Protection	
11.2 Appropriate HVAC Refrigerants	1	9.1 Radon-Resistant Construction in High-Risk Areas	
Subtotal for EA Category	38	(Or EQ1)	Prerequisite
		9.2 Radon-Resistant Construction in Moderate-Risk Areas (Or EQ1)	1
		10. Garage Pollutant Protection	
		10.1 No HVAC in Garage (Or EQ1)	Prerequisite
		10.2 Minimize Pollutants from Garage (Or EQ1)	2
		10.3 Exhaust Fans in Garage (Or EQ1)	1
		10.4 Detached Garage or No Garage (Or EQ1, 10.2, 10.3)	3
		Subtotal for EQ Category	21

Materials and Resources (MR)

(Minimum of 2 EA Points Required)

1. Material-Efficient Framing	
1.1 Framing Order Waste Factor Limit	Prerequisite
1.2 Detailed Framing Documents (Or MR 1.5)	1
1.3 Detailed Cut List and Lumber Order (Or MR 1.5)	1
1.4 Framing Efficiencies (Or MR 1.5)	3
1.5 Off-site Fabrication	4
2. Environmentally Preferable Products	
2.1 FSC Certified Tropical Wood	Prerequisite
2.2 Environmentally Preferable Products	8
3. Waste Management	
3.1 Construction Waste Management Planning	Prerequisite
3.2 Construction Waste Reduction	3
Subtotal for MR Category	16

Indoor Environmental Quality (EQ)

(Minimum of 2 EA Points Required)

1. ENERGY STAR with Indoor Air Package	
2. Combustion Venting	
2.1 Basic Combustion Venting Measures (Or EQ 1)	Prerequisite
2.2 Enhanced Combustion Venting Measures (Or EQ 1)	2
3. Moisture Control Moisture Load Control (Or EQ 1)	1
4. Outdoor Air Ventilation	

Points

Points	Awareness and Education (AE)	Points
	(No Minimum Points Required)	
1. Education of the Homeowner or Tenant		
1.1 Basic Operations Training	Prerequisite	
1.2 Enhanced Training	1	
2. Education of Building Manager		
2.1 Construction Waste Management Planning	Prerequisite	
2.2 Construction Waste Reduction	1	
Subtotal for AE Category		3

Points

Summary for LEED for Homes, Version 2008

For LEED for Homes, Version 2008, there are 136 available points.

Certification levels for LEED for Homes are as follows:

- Certified: 45–59 points
- Silver: 60–74 points
- Gold: 75–89 points
- Platinum: 90–136 points

GLOSSARY

- accessibility** A property of design describing elements of the physical environment that allow people with disabilities or special needs to use them with safety and dignity.
- active solar-heating system** A heating system that uses mechanical means to collect, store, and distribute solar energy.
- alternating current (AC)** An electric current that reverses direction at regularly recurring intervals.
- ambient lighting** Lighting designed to provide a nondirectional, shadowless light level from all sides.
- Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA)** A federal civil rights law addressing the accessible design and construction of both public and private facilities.
- ampere** A measure of the actual amount of energy flow or current in an electric circuit.
- axonometric projection** A paraline drawing having all lines parallel to the three principal axes drawn to scale, but with diagonal and curved lines distorted.
- balance** The pleasing or harmonious arrangement or proportion of parts or elements in a design or composition.
- bariatric** Relating to or specializing in the treatment of obesity.
- beam** A rigid structural member designed to carry and transfer transverse loads across space to supporting elements.
- brightness** The sensation by which an observer is able to discern how much light energy is reflected by a surface.
- building envelope** The shell of a building, consisting of its exterior walls, windows, doors, and roof, which protect and shelter interior spaces from the exterior environment.
- building information modeling (BIM)** A digital representation of physical and functional characteristics of a building that serves as a shared knowledge resource.
- chroma** The degree by which a color differs from a gray of the same lightness or brightness, corresponding to saturation of the perceived color.
- clerestory** A portion of an interior rising above adjacent rooftops, with windows admitting daylight.
- coefficient of absorption** The percentage of incident sound energy absorbed by a material, divided by 100.
- coffer** A recessed, usually square or octagonal panel in a ceiling, soffit, or vault.
- color rendering index (CRI)** A measure of a lamp's ability to render color accurately when compared with a reference light source of similar color temperature.
- column** A rigid, relatively slender structural member designed primarily to support loads applied at its ends along its axis.
- complementary hues** Those hues directly opposite each other on a color wheel.
- computer-aided design (CAD)** The use of computer technology for the process of design and design documentation.
- contract furnishings** Furnishings purchased for commercial office spaces under a furniture, furnishings, and equipment (FF&E) contract.
- cornice** A continuous molding that crowns or horizontally divides a wall.
- cove** (1) A concave surface at the edge of a ceiling that eliminates the interior angle between the wall and ceiling planes. (2) A concave molding or trim.
- dado** (1) A rectangular groove cut into a member to receive the end of another piece of the joint. (2) The part of a pedestal between its base and its cap. (3) The lower portion of an interior wall, when treated differently from the upper portion.
- decibel (dB)** A unit expressing the relative pressure or intensity of sounds on a uniform scale from 0 for the least perceptible sound to about 130 for the average threshold of pain.
- direct current (DC)** An electric current flowing in one direction only.
- ductile** Capable of being drawn into wire or hammered thin.
- efficacy** The measure of the efficiency of a light source in lumens per watt.

GLOSSARY

elastomers Fibers capable of returning to their original shape after being stretched.	foundation The substructure that forms the base of a building, anchors it to the ground, and supports the building elements and spaces above.	infiltration The flow of outside air into an interior space through cracks around windows and doors or other openings in the envelope of a building.
embodied energy The total energy consumption associated with a particular material, from raw material acquisition and manufacturing through transportation to point of use.	furniture, furnishings, and equipment (FF&E) Term used in commercial design for office furnishings purchased under contract.	interior elevation An orthographic projection of any of the significant interior walls of a building.
emphasis The stress or prominence given to an element in a composition by means of contrast, anomaly, or counterpoint.	furring Wood strips or metal channels attached to a wall to provide a base for lath or a finish material, or to add an air space to composite construction.	joists A series of small, parallel beams for supporting floors, ceilings, or flat roofs.
ergonomics The application of human factors to design.	gable The triangular portion of wall enclosing the end of a pitched roof.	laminated glass Two or more plies of glass bonded to an interlayer that retains the fragments if the glass is broken.
evidence-based design An approach to design that seeks to create better design outcomes by basing decisions on credible research.	galvanic corrosion Deterioration of a metal caused by an electrical current flowing between dissimilar metals through a liquid that conducts electricity.	lamp (1) A device that produces light; a bulb or tube within a lighting fixture. (2) Common name for a plug-in lighting fixture, such as a table lamp or floor lamp.
faux finishes Any of various techniques intended to imitate natural materials, such as wood graining and marbleizing; the term is often used for any decorative painted finish.	girder A large primary beam designed to support concentrated loads at isolated points along its length.	lateral force Any force acting horizontally on a structure.
fenestration The design and placement of windows in a building.	glazing The panes or sheets of glass or other transparent material made to be set in frames, as in windows, doors, or mirrors.	lathe Thin strips of wood or metal attached to framing to provide a substructure for plaster.
Fibonacci series A progression of whole numbers in which each term is the sum of the preceding two.	golden section Proportion between two unequal parts of a whole in which the ratio between the smaller and greater parts is equal to the ratio between the greater part and the whole.	lavatory A bowl or basin with running water for washing the face and hands.
figure-ground The relationship between the outline or exterior surface of a shape or form (figure) and the receding part of a visual field against which the figure is seen (ground).	harmony The consonance or pleasing agreement of elements or parts in a composition.	line A geometric element that conceptually has only one dimension, length. A line's length visually dominates whatever thickness it must have to be visible.
floor plan A drawing representing a section through a building or portion of a building after a horizontal slice is made and the upper part removed.	header (1) A framing member supporting the ends of joists, studs, or rafters to transfer the load to parallel joists, studs, or rafters. (2) A masonry unit laid horizontally in a wall with its end parallel to the surface.	lintel An arch or a short beam that supports the wall load above an opening and allows compressive stresses to flow around the opening to adjacent sections of the wall.
focal lighting Lighting that offers a contrast in brightness that is directive and creates a sense of depth.	high-intensity discharge (HID) lamp A lamp that produces light by the discharge of electricity through a metallic vapor in a sealed glass enclosure.	load-bearing wall A wall capable of supporting an imposed load, as from a floor or roof.
footcandle A unit of illuminance derived from the light produced by a candle at the distance of one foot, equal to 1 lumen incident per square foot.	hue The attribute by which we recognize and describe a color, such as red or yellow.	lumen A measure of the amount of light emitted by a light source or falling onto a surface, regardless of directionality.
form The shape and structure of something, as distinguished from its substance or material.	illuminance The quantity of light striking a surface, measured in footcandles or lux.	luminance A measure of brightness of a light source or an illuminated surface.
		motif A distinctive and recurring shape, form, or color in a design.
		multiview drawings A set of related orthographic projections of an object or construction, including plans, elevations, and sections.

- natural ventilation** Providing fresh air by means of the natural movement of air, rather than by mechanical means.
- oblique projection** The representation of a three-dimensional object with one principal face parallel to the picture plane, created by projecting parallel lines at angles other than 90° to the picture plane.
- off-gassing** The vaporization of chemical compounds into surrounding air.
- orthographic projection** A method of projection in which parallel projectors meet the picture plane at right angles; any element that is parallel to the picture plane remains true in size, shape, and configuration.
- paraline drawing** A drawing in which parallel lines remain parallel to each other rather than converge, as they do in linear perspective.
- partition** A non-load-bearing interior wall dividing a room or part of a building into separate areas.
- passive solar-heating system** A heating system that uses a building's design and the natural flow of heat to collect, store, and distribute solar energy, with minimal use of fans or pumps.
- pattern** The decorative design or ornamentation of a surface that is almost always based on the repetition of a design motif.
- perspective drawing** A drawing that represents three-dimensional objects and spatial relationships on a two-dimensional surface as they might appear to the eye.
- photometric** Measuring the properties of light, especially luminous intensity.
- photovoltaic (PV)** Of or related to a technology that uses a solid-state device capable of converting solar energy into electrical energy, such as that employed by a solar panel to produce an electric current when exposed to light.
- pigment** A finely ground, insoluble substance suspended in a liquid vehicle to impart color and opacity to a coating.
- pilaster** A shallow rectangular projection from a wall, architecturally treated as a column.
- plane** A surface generated by a line moving in a direction other than its intrinsic direction. A plane's width and length dominate whatever thickness it must have to be visible.
- plenum** The space between a suspended ceiling and the floor structure above, or the space below a raised access floor, especially when used for distributing or returning conditioned air.
- point** A dimensionless geometric element marking a location in space. Conceptually, it has no length, width, or depth; commonly manifested as a dot.
- potable water** Water fit for human consumption.
- proportion** The relationship of one part to another or to the whole, or between one object and another.
- rabbet** A channel, groove, or notch cut along or near one edge of a member so that something else can be fitted into it.
- reveal** A continuous recess that visually separates the meeting of two planes and articulates their edges by the shadow lines they create.
- reverberation** The persistence of a sound within a space, caused by multiple reflections of the sound after its source has stopped.
- rhythm** Movement characterized by a patterned repetition or alternation of formal elements or motifs in the same or a modified form.
- riser** (1) The vertical face of a stair step. (2) A vertical pipe, conduit, or duct in a utility system.
- safety glazing** Glazing that meets Consumer Product Safety Commission test requirements, such as tempered glass and laminated glass.
- saturation** The purity or vividness of a hue; the intensity of a color.
- scale** A certain proportionate size, extent, or degree, usually relative to some known standard or recognized constant.
- section** An orthographic projection of an object or structure as it would appear if cut through by a vertical plane to show its internal configuration.
- seismic** Of, pertaining to, or caused by an earthquake or vibration of the earth.
- shade** A relatively dark value of a color, produced by adding black to it.
- shape** The outline or surface configuration of a form or figure, usually with some emphasis on the enclosed area or mass.
- shear wall** A vertical diaphragm acting as a thin, deep cantilever beam in transferring lateral loads to the ground foundation.
- shed roof** A roof having a single slope.
- skim coat** A thin leveling or finish coat of plaster.
- slab** A horizontal, rigid, usually monolithic plate, such as a reinforced concrete slab.
- soffit** The underside of an architectural element, such as an arch, beam, cornice, or staircase.
- sone** A unit for measuring the apparent loudness of a sound.
- sound transmission class (STC)** A single-number rating of the performance of a building material or construction assembly in preventing the transmission of airborne sound.
- stop** The projecting part of a doorframe against which a door closes.
- structure** (1) A stable assembly of elements designed and constructed to function as a whole in supporting and transmitting applied loads safely to the ground. (2) The organization of elements or parts in a complex system as dominated by the general character of the whole.
- substrate** Any material that underlies or serves as a base or foundation for another material.

GLOSSARY

superstructure The structural frame of a building, consisting of columns, beams, and load-bearing walls that support the floor and roof structures.

sustainable design A holistic approach to building design that reduces negative social, economic, and ecological impacts on the environment through conservation and reuse of natural resources, energy, water, and materials.

tempered glass Annealed glass reheated and cooled to increase its resistance to impact and thermal stresses; it breaks into small cubical pieces.

texture The visual and tactile quality of a surface, apart from its color or form; most often used to describe the relative smoothness or roughness of a surface.

tint Lightening a hue's normal value by adding white creates a tint of that hue.

tone An intermediate value of a color between a lighter tint and a darker shade.

transmission loss (TL) A measure of the performance of a building material or construction assembly in preventing the transmission of airborne sound.

tread The horizontal upper surface of a step in a stair, on which the foot is placed.

trompe l'oeil A drawing or painting that uses perspective and shadow to create the illusion of three-dimensional objects.

valance (1) A horizontal board or band used to conceal lighting. (2) A short, ornamental piece of drapery placed across the top of a window.

value The degree to which a color appears to reflect light, corresponding to the lightness of the perceived color.

vault An arched structure forming a ceiling or roof over an enclosed space.

veiling reflection Reflected glare on a task surface that reduces the contrast necessary for seeing details.

veneer (1) A thin sheet of wood used as a facing to wood or bonded with other veneer plies to form plywood. (2) A nonstructural facing of brick, stone, concrete, or tile attached to a backing.

visibility A movement to construct the majority of new homes so that they can be readily lived in and visited by people with impaired mobility.

vitreous Resembling glass in transparency, hardness, brittleness, luster, or imperviousness.

volatile organic compound (VOC)

A hydrocarbon compound that evaporates readily; some VOCs are gases at room temperature.

volt Measure of the potential electrical energy flow through a conductor, in response to a difference in electrical charge between two points in a circuit.

volume The extent of a three-dimensional object or the amount of space that it occupies, measured in cubic units.

water closet A fixture consisting of a ceramic bowl with a detachable, hinged seat and lid and a device for flushing with water; also called a toilet.

watt A measure of the power required to keep an electric current flowing.

winder A wedge-shaped tread used in circular, spiral, and turning stairs.

wire glass Flat or patterned glass having a wire mesh embedded into the center of the glass sheet to prevent shattering in the event of breakage or excessive heat.

BIBLIOGRAPHY

- Allen, Edward, and David Swoboda. *How Buildings Work*. 3rd ed. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Allen, Phyllis Sloan, and Lynn M. Jones. *Beginnings of Interior Environment*. 10th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 2008.
- Bevlin, Marjorie Elliott. *Design Through Discovery: The Elements and Principles*. 6th ed. New York: Wadsworth Publishing, 1993.
- Binggeli, Corky. *Building Systems for Interior Designers*. 2nd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2010.
- Binggeli, Corky. *Interior Designer: A Survey*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2007.
- Binggeli, Corky, and Patricia Greichen. *Interior Graphic Standards*. 2nd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2011.
- Binggeli, Corky. *Materials for Interior Environments*. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2008.
- Birren, Faber. *Principles of Color: A Review of Past Traditions and Modern Theories of Color Harmony*. Revised ed. Atglen, PA: Schiffer Publishing, Ltd., 2007.
- Ching, Francis D. K. *Architectural Graphics*. 5th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2009.
- Ching, Francis D. K. *Building Construction Illustrated*. 4th ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2008.
- Ching, Francis D. K. *A Visual Dictionary of Architecture*. 2nd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2012.
- Hall, Edward T. *The Hidden Dimension*. Reissued ed. New York: Anchor, 1990.
- Karlen, Mark. *Space Planning Basics*. 3rd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2009.
- Pile, John F. *Interior Design*. 4th ed. Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall Press, 2007.
- Piotrowski, Christine M., and Elizabeth A. Rogers. *Designing Commercial Interiors*. 2nd ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2007.
- Tilley, Alvin R., and Dreyfuss Associates. *Measure of Man and Woman: Human Factors in Design*. Revised ed. Hoboken, NJ: John Wiley & Sons, 2001.

INDEX

A

Aalto, Alvar 326
Abak Environments 335
absorption
 materials 17, 283, 285, 297
 sound 282
accent lighting 277
access 28, 32, 58, 60, 63-65, 190, 202
accessibility
 bathing dimensions 56, 235
 doorways 29
 furnishings 318, 342
 reach at counters 54
 requirements 59, 63
 route 210
 seating at tables 53
 standards and codes 246
 toilets 233
accessories 59, 120, 129, 131, 149, 178, 318
 350
accordion folding doors 193
acoustic, acoustical 29, 59, 62, 93, 173, 280,
 288
 ceilings 27, 168, 174
 ceiling tiles and grid 167, 285-286, 314-315
 doors 191
 insulation 154
 materials 17, 285
 privacy 66, 157, 159
 wall panels 285
acrylic 325, 348
active solar-heating system 226
activities 17, 28-29, 32, 36, 38, 48, 148
 ergonomics 320
 floor load 150
 requirements 58-59, 61, 66
 relationships 62-63, 198, 282
Adaptable table 332
addition, spatial 23, 29, 32
additive mixing, color 108
adhesives, wood 322
adjacency 22-23, 33, 62, 160, 169, 199
 diagrams 40, 60
Aeron chair 323

aesthetic
 criteria 122, 288, 290
 quality 36-37, 39, 44-45, 61, 66-67, 84,
 124, 148, 350
Afghanistan Bokhara rug 302
aging-in-place, 29, 31, 49, 324
air
 conditioning 9, 228
 movement 152, 170, 190, 222, 228
 pressure 187
 quality 222, 228
 and water heating system 228
 supply 9
airflow patterns 187
alcove 6, 23, 48, 215, 344
all-air and all-water systems 229
alkyd paints 311
alterations, interior space 23, 34
alternating current (AC) 238
alternatives, interior design process 39, 42
aluminum window frames 185
ambient lighting 275-276
American block-front secretary 339
Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) 206,
 214, 233, 235, 246
amperes (amps) 236
analogous colors 112, 114, 118
analysis 39-41, 60-61, 66, 68, 70
angle
 of incidence 248
 of view, perspective 81
 right 98
 triangles 97
annunciator panels 243
antique
 furniture 319
 wood flooring 292
applied
 pattern 103
 wall finishes 303
arcade 5, 160
Archer, Tomek 332
architect 32, 34, 38, 43, 64, 225, 244

INDEX

architecture, architectural design 3, 36, 38, 49, 63, 65, 92, 94-95, 105-106, 120
drawing 71
firm 38
resin panels 304
area
 requirements 61
 rugs 120, 302
armchairs 326
armoire 338-339
artificial plants 352
artwork 129, 351
ascent 31, 200 *See also* descent
asymmetric roof 21
asymmetrical balance 133, 135-136, 139, 145
Austrian shades 349
average coefficient of absorption 285
awnings 346
awning windows 181
axial symmetry 133 *See also* symmetrical balance
axis 24, 76-77, 116, 133
Axminster carpet 300
axonometric projections 71, 76-77

B

baffles
 ceiling 166
 lighting fixtures 263, 269
balance 67, 84, 97, 120, 122, 131, 135, 139, 350
ballasts 265
balloon shades 349
baluster 207
bamboo 292, 349
banners, ceiling 166
banquette seating 329
bariatric design 49, 324
barstools 328 *See also* stools
base
 board 305-306
 cabinet section 342
 ceramic floor 294
 table 330
bathing, dimensions 56
bathrooms, interior elevations 75
bathtubs 179, 234-235 *See also* tubs
bay windows 181

beadboard 305
beams 143, 151-153, 156, 160, 215
bearing walls 32-33, 157. *See also* load-bearing-walls.
bedroom furniture 338-339
 beds 149, 336
 dimensions 57, 337
bending 10, 308
bentwood chair 324
Bertoia asymmetric chaise 320
bidet 233
bifold doors 193, 199
bilateral symmetry 133
binder, paint 311
binocular vision 79
Birren, Faber 119
blinds 347
blueboard 307
boardroom tables 333
boilers 227
book matching 306
bookcases 342
booth seating 329
border 86, 140
Botta, Mario 97
boundaries 28, 30-34, 153, 155, 162
 lines, interior elevations 75
 spatial 66, 117, 169
 three-dimensional 95, 105
bounding faces, perspective 81
braided rug 302
brainstorming 41
branch circuits 9, 239
Breuer, Marcel 326
Brewster/Prang color wheel 109
brick 155
Bridge extension table 332
brightness 249-252, 261
broadloom carpet 297
buffer spaces, acoustic 282
building 63-64, 105
 codes 179, 181, 200-201, 203, 206-208,
 213, 216, 232, 244, 262, 316
 envelope 9
 loads 8
 sections 74 *See also* sections
 services 8-9, 66

building information modeling (BIM) 20
built-in
 furniture 42, 68, 189, 321
 storage and casework 342
bullnose, ceramic 294
Busk, Fleming 327
by-pass sliding doors 192

C

cabinets 330, 341-342, 344
café curtains 248
calligraphy 95
Campfire table 332
canopies
 bed 336
 ceiling 27, 168, 286
Canvas office landscape 335
carbon dioxide 224
carpet/carpeting 189, 204, 223, 285, 297, 300-301
 fibers 299
 tile 230, 298
carriages, stair 204
casing, door and window 182-183, 196-197
casement
 window treatments 178
 windows 180-181
casework 330, 341
cast-in-place concrete 151
caulking 346
cavities, wall 154-155
ceiling fans 228
ceilings 27, 148, 164-165
 acoustics 174, 282, 285
 daylighting 256
 finishes 60, 313-314
 forms 9, 16, 21-22, 105, 117, 169-172
 planes 6, 11, 18, 28, 33, 94
 reflectance 120, 173, 286
 structure 152, 157
cellular shades 349
cement topping 151
center 21, 24, 27
 of attention, interest 64 88, 133, 215
 of vision in perspective (C) 80-81
 point 88, 96, 134
central axis of vision (CAV) 80

- ceramic tile 294, 304, 309
certified sustainable sources 289, 292
Chadwick, Don 323
chair 19, 48, 84, 129, 324-325
 rail 129
chandeliers 273, 277
chests 339
children's furniture 324, 338
chimneybreast 215
Chinese
 Bengali rug 302
 chest 339
chroma 110, 120 *See also* intensity
chromatic distribution 120
circles 24, 88, 95-96
circuits, electrical 236, 239
circular
 space 24-25
 stair plan 203
circulation 60
Cittero, Antonio 327
clearances, ergonomic 320
clerestory windows 173, 186, 189
client 61-62, 70 *See also* owner; user
closet 338
clouds, ceiling 168, 286
codes 223, 233, 242 *See also* building codes
coefficient of utilization 279
coffered ceiling 166
collections 351
color 16-17, 58, 62, 67, 93, 98, 103, 106-108,
 116-117, 131, 137-138, 141-142, 144, 146,
 161, 163, 249, 288, 290-291, 350
 analysis, electronic 111
 complementary 112-114, 118
 dimensions 109
 light 108, 113, 255
 perception 84-85
 pigments 112
 rendering index (CRI) 263, 265
 samples 108-109
 schemes 42, 109, 118-119
 systems 109-111
 temperature scale 255
 wheel 109-110, 116, 118
columns 3, 8, 10-11, 13, 32-33, 143, 148, 152-3,
 156, 160
commercial spaces 60-61
countertops 343
furnishings 318, 328-329
Commission Internationale l'Eclairage (CIE)
 color system 111
communication 17, 28, 60
compact fluorescent lamps 265
complementary hues 113
composite structural systems, 14-15
computer-aided design (CAD) 20, 70
computer technology 20, 42, 82
 lighting software 278
 screens 108, 111, 261, 271
 3D modeling programs 20-24, 79
concept development 39, 41, 82
concrete
 countertops 343
 floor finishes 295
 stairs 205, 207
 structural elements 151, 293
tabletops 330
topping/underlayment 296
walls 155, 303-304, 307
conduction 187, 222
conference room tables 333
cone 95
 of vision 79, 84
connector/connecting spaces 22, 28-31
constant-air-volume (CAV) system 229
construction 4, 43, 60
 drawings 10, 13, 20-43, 70 *See also* working
 drawings
 joints 161
 manager 38
 materials/assembly 102
contract furnishings 318
contractor 38
contour, linear 89, 91, 95, 139, 141
contemporary furniture 319
continuous dyeing 299
contrast 7, 121, 249-251
 hue color schemes 118
controls 221, 224, 262, 278
convection 222, 224
convectors 227
cool colors and light 113, 116-118, 163
cooling 187-188, 228 *See also* air conditioning
cork finishes 296, 310
cornice lighting 272
correlated color temperature 263
cotton 325
counterpoint 7, 126
countertops 54, 189, 342
coves
 ceiling 170, 172, 313
 lighting 173, 272
 tile floor 294
creating harmony 138
credenza 335, 342, 345
cube 95
cubicles 286, 334-335
curtains 348
curved lines, walls 90, 159
curvilinear 24-25, 95-96
cut pile 301
cylinder 95

D

- dadoed joint 204
data 40, 59
daylighting 16, 28, 33, 47, 58, 63-65, 113, 132,
 171, 186, 255-257, 278. *See also*
 examples 258-259
 windows 30, 178, 181, 189
dead loads 8
decibel (dB) 281
decking, wood 313
decorations and trim 316
decorative
 accessories 351
 paint finishes 312
 lighting 274
deflection 10, 150
density, carpet 301
depth 87, 93
descent 31. *See also* ascent
design 36, 43, 45, 92
 development 42-43
 elements 126, 149
 principles 122
 process 39-40, 82
 vocabulary 83-84

INDEX

design and construction team 38
desk 334-335
chairs 328
dimensions 331
lamps 274
details 42-3, 60, 129, 131, 137-138, 141
diagonal line 90, 125
diagramming relationships 41
diamond veneer matching 306
diffusers
 HVAC 225
 lighting fixtures 271
diffusion, light 249
dimensional
 elements 87, 89
 requirements 29, 48-49, 60, 66, 216, 320.
 See also human factors
 stability, doors 195
dimensions 10, 16
 illustrated and tables 49
 scale 76, 129
 perception 116, 125
 spatial 20, 48, 61, 106
 storage reach 340
dimetrics 71, 76
dimmers 262
dining tables 33, 52-53, 332
direct
 current (DC) 238
 glare 252
 lighting 276
direct/indirect fixtures 254, 269, 271, 276
direction, line 89
disabilities 5
disassembly 47, 323
discharge lamp 265
discontinuous construction 284
display units 59
distressed finishes 32
double-hung windows 180
domes 20-21, 27, 172, 174
doors and doorways 9, 53, 65, 129-130, 148,
 160, 175, 190-191
 construction 194-195
 frames 196-197
 glass 179
 in plan 73

openings 12, 18, 21, 29, 60, 284
operation 192-193, 198
 space planning 198-199
dot 88 *See also* point
double/triple glazing 188
downlights 267, 270
draperies 348
drawers, drawer units 341, 344
drawing 71, 82, 92
dressers, dressing tables 339
dropped ceiling 166 *See also* suspended ceiling,
 soffit
drywall 308 *See also* gypsum board
dual shades 349
ductile 323
ductwork 168, 221, 225, 228 *See also*
 mechanical distribution
durability 44, 46, 59, 150, 288-290, 303
dyes, dyeing 108, 112, 299
dynamic fit 48

E

Eames, Charles and Ray 319, 323, 326, 329,
 332
early American dresser 339
easy chair 325
echoes 17, 174, 280
economic criteria 4, 40, 44, 288
edges 31, 33, 91, 93, 152-153
efficacy 263
elastomeric textiles 323, 325
electrical systems 9, 59, 220, 236-237, 246
 circuits, distribution 154, 167, 239-240
 fixtures 60
 outlets 221, 241, 284
 plan, symbols 241
electromagnetic spectrum 107
elevations, interior 43, 71-72, 105
elevation obliques 71, 76
elevators, escalators, and lifts 212-214
elliptical space 24
embodied energy 289
emphasis 84, 122, 126, 144-146
enclosure 6-8, 11-12, 17, 28-30, 59-60, 62-63,
 65, 80-81, 94, 122, 126, 131, 148, 152,
 159-160, 175-176

energy
 codes 264, 273, 278
 conservation, efficiency 46-47, 58, 173, 220,
 228, 236, 246, 256, 262, 276,
 278, 346
engineer 32, 34, 38, 43, 225, 240, 244, 280
engineered
 composite stone 343
 hardwood flooring 292
English chest, dressing table 339
entrances, entries 6, 31-32, 63-64
envelope, building 9
environmental *See also* sustainable design,
 building services
 impacts, issues 46, 58
 systems 38
Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) 218
epoxy resin countertops 343
equal loudness contour 281
equipment 61, 68, 201
Ergon 3 chair 329
ergonomics 320, 324
escalators 214
Euclid 124
evaluation 39, 42-43
evaporation 187, 222
evidence-based design 41
existing conditions 32, 40, 60-61, 66
exit 63
 signs 267
 standards and codes 245
exposed ceilings 164-165 *See also* ceilings
extending space 23, 32-33
exterior 4, 31
 doors 191, 195
 walls 152, 154
 window treatments 346
eye 108, 129

F

fabric 99, 223, 303, 310
façade 152
face weight, carpet 301
facilities manager 38
fading 189, 348
fans 224-226
faux finishes 312

- fenestration 175-176
 fiber optics and light-emitting diodes 267
 fibers, carpet 299
 fiberglass
 acoustic insulation 284
 mesh shades 349
 Fibonacci series 124
 fibrous materials 285
 figure-ground relationship 18, 67, 85-86
 filing systems 345.
 filtering views 178
 finish materials 38, 42-43, 47, 60, 66, 151,
 288, 290-291. *See also* floor finish
 materials; wall finish materials
 fire and flame
 alarm and suppression systems 9, 242-243
 rating 167, 179, 191
 resistance 195, 288, 303, 308, 316, 348
 safety codes 59, 245, 318
 service access elevator 213
 fireplaces 64, 215-217
 fit 48, 63-65
 fixed
 seating 329
 windows 180
 flat paints 311
 Flatoy, Torstein 319
 flexibility 24, 59, 62-63, 66, 69, 97, 289
 flexible wall coverings 304, 310
 floating floor 293
 floor lamps 274
 floor plans 73, 78 *See also* plans
 floors 3, 6, 8, 11, 28, 74, 120, 94, 105, 148, 150
 construction 151-152, 157, 170, 282
 finishes 16, 292
 structure 33, 156, 164
 fluorescent lamps 113, 263
 flush doors 191, 193
 flutter 174, 280
 focal
 lighting 275, 277
 point 134, 146, 215, 278
 focus 31, 62, 64-65, 96, 84, 133, 145
 folding doors 193
 footcandle 278
 forced-air heating 225
 foreshortening 26, 77-78, 125
 form 6, 17, 24, 45, 48, 58, 60, 84, 87-88, 94,
 103, 105-106, 126, 174, 208
 building 4, 32, 60, 148
 perception 85, 107, 116, 125
 formaldehyde 223, 306, 322
 foundation 8
 foyer 48
 framed assembly 151
 frames, door and window 175, 180, 182-184, 191
 framing views 32, 177
 freeform sofa 327
 freehand sketching 82
 freestanding
 partitions/walls 157-158
 stairs 208
 French
 doors 191, 195
 provincial armoire 339
 Fritz Hansen 327
 fuels 9, 220, 236
 function/functional 28, 36, 41, 44-45, 58, 61,
 66, 68, 148-149, 288, 290, 321
 dimensions 49, 52-57. *See also* dimensional
 requirements; human factors
 requirements/guidelines 4, 37, 39, 122, 143
 furnishings 38, 92, 94, 104, 131, 158. *See also*
 furniture
 arrangement 29, 59-60, 189, 198
 programming, selection 59-61, 66
 furniture 7-8, 17, 25, 42, 111, 120, 125, 128, 150,
 158, 201, 319, 321
 arrangements 17, 51, 67-69
 clearance, fireplace/woodstove 215, 218
 materials 322-323
 furniture, furnishings, and equipment (FF&E)
 318
 furring 155, 303
 fuses 239
 fusion-bonded carpet 298, 300
- G**
- gabled ceiling, roof 27, 171
 gallery 22
 galvanic corrosion 185
 gauge, carpet 301
 Gehry, Frank 14, 319
 geometry/geometric 3, 10, 124, 145, 187
 girders 11
 glare 249, 252, 257, 278
 glass 248
 doors and walls 30, 191
 fiber 323
 table tops 330
 tiles 309
 glazing, windows 175, 178-180, 182, 188, 191
 glazes, paint 312
 gloss paints 311
 glued down carpet installation 297
 glueless laminated wood flooring 293
 goals 39-40, 45
 golden section 124
 grain 99-100, 322
 granite 294, 343
 graphic representation 70, 82
 grid 11, 153, 165
 grills, HVAC 221, 224
 ground fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) 240
 group 62, 64, 139
 furniture 66-67
 workstations 335
 grout 155, 294, 309
 growth 89-90, 96
 guard railing 206, 211
 gypsum
 board 154, 304, 308, 313
 plaster 307
- H**
- half-turn stairs 202-203
 hallways 48
 halogen lamps 264
 hand tufted/knotted rugs 302
 handmade tiles 309
 handrails 201, 206-207, 210-211
 hard flooring 292
 Hardoy sling chair 326
 hardware 29, 180
 hardwoods 292
 harmony 67, 84, 104, 122, 125, 137-139, 146
 head, window 183-185
 health and safety codes 245, 343. *See also*
 standards and codes
 health impacts 46, 288
 hearing 48

INDEX

- hearth 215-216, 218
heat 4, 48, 222
gain/loss, windows 182, 188, 225, 346-347, 349
exchangers/pumps 226
transmission through walls 152, 160, 190
heating systems 225-226
heating, ventilation, and air conditioning (HVAC) 9, 220, 223, 229
height
ceilings 26, 169
human functional dimensions 26, 57
electrical outlets and switches 240
Herman Miller 323, 328, 332, 335, 339
herringbone veneer matching 306
highboys 339
high-efficiency toilet (HET) 233
high-intensity discharge (HID) lamps 173, 266
high-pressure sodium (HPS) discharge lamps 266
Hilton, Matthew 332
hollow
core door 195
metal door and frame 194, 196
home office 318, 334-335
hooked rugs 302
honeycomb shades 349
hopper windows 181
horizon line (HL) 80
horizontal 21, 32-33, 73, 78, 80-81, 90
blinds 347
hotel guest rooms 333, 350
hot-water
heating 227 *See also* hydronic
supply system 231
housing, lighting fixture 263, 269
hue 108-110, 112-119. *See also* color
human dimensions 49-50
human factors 48, 127, 320. *See also* dimensional requirements
human scale 129-130, 176
humidity 227, 352 *See also* relative humidity
hydraulic elevator 212
hydronic 229
hypothesis 40
- I**
- illuminance 262, 278
illumination 113, 145, 173
impact noise 290, 297
incandescent lamps 113, 264
incident light 108, 249
inclined wheelchair lift 213
Indian Numdah rug 302
indirect
glare 252-253
lighting 186, 273, 276
individual
variations 49
workstations 335
indoor air quality (IAQ) 46, 223-224, 352
infiltration 187, 224
infrared (IR) 107
inside to outside 175, 177 *See also* outside to inside
installation 46-47
integral
pattern 103
wall finishes 303
intensity 108, 110, 113, 118
interaction 58, 60
International Code Council (ICC) 244
International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) 246
interior 147-148, 189
doors 191
elevations 75
environmental systems 220-221
glazing 179
walls 152, 154
window treatments and trim 183, 346
interior design 7, 32, 34, 35-37, 49, 86, 95, 105-106, 122
designer 38, 44, 47, 63-64, 70, 108, 240, 242, 244-245
elements 9-10, 16-17, 36, 94, 148
interior space 1, 3-5, 7, 30, 34, 92, 104
International Energy Conservation Code (IECC) 244
International System of Units 127 *See also* metric system
intimate space/zone 51
- isometrics 71, 76-77 *See also* axonometric projections
- J**
- Jacobsen, Arne 319, 326-328
jalousie windows 181
jamb, window 183-184
Jeanneret, Pierre 327
joints 91, 305-306, 322
joists 11-12, 151, 293
Josie sectional 327
Juhl, Finn 327
junction box 272
- K**
- kitchen dimensions, elevations 54, 75
Knoll International 332
knotted rugs 302
Kyoto table 332
- L**
- ladders 201
laminated
flooring 292
glass 179
lamps
light sources 249, 255, 263, 264
portable 274
landings 31, 200, 202-203, 210-211
landscaping 178, 188
lateral
files 345
forces 10, 90, 157
stability 11, 158
latex paints 311
lath 155
lavatories 56, 234-235
layout 7, 36, 156
leasing 60
leather tile 296
Le Corbusier 319, 323, 327
legs, table 330
length 21-22, 26-27, 87, 93, 98, 100
level
loop carpet 301
floor 209-210
life-cycle assessment (LCA) 288

lifts, wheelchair 213
 light 4, 6, 32, 59-60, 62, 84, 100-101, 107, 152, 160, 186, 190. *See also* daylighting
 reflectance/reflectivity 93, 104, 303, 312
 source 108, 275
 window treatments 346, 348
 light-emitting diode (LED) 263, 267
 light loss factor (LLF) 279
 lighting 8, 16-17, 42-43, 66, 131, 149, 158, 248-249, 260-262, 279. *See also* daylighting; electric light sources; lighting fixtures
 energy use, codes 47, 121, 246
 equipment 9, 59
 fixtures 9, 132, 167, 173, 221, 225, 252-253, 268-269, 337
 plan 241
 Light Loss Factor (LLF) line, form, 85, 87-88
 light shelves 259
 light tubes 259 *See also* skylights
 Limited use/limited application (LU/LA)
 elevators 213
 line 3, 87-91, 105, 139-140
 linen 325, 336
 lines, drawing 72, 82, 85, 89, 93
 linear 14, 22, 91-92, 140, 142, 145, 319
 light sources 268, 275-276
 metal ceiling panels 314
 structural systems 10-11, 15
 linoleum 296
 lintel 12, 33, 215
 loads 8, 33, 152
 electrical circuits 240
 heating and cooling 256
 structural 8, 13, 150-151, 205
 load-bearing walls 12, 32-33, 152-153, 155-156
 local symmetry 134
 loop/uncut pile 301
 loose fit 68-69 *See also* fit
 lounge chairs 52, 326
 louver
 doors 191, 195
 exterior 257
 ventilation 187
 loveseats 327, 329
 low-emissivity (low-e) glazing 188
 low voltage 240
 lumen 263

luminance 278. *See also* brightness
 ratio 261
 intensity distribution curve (LIDC) 279

M

Mackintosh, Charles Rennie 319
 maintenance 59, 102, 223, 288, 290, 352
 Makulik, Bernd 323
 manufacturing process 46-47, 58
 mantle 215
 marble 294, 343
 masking sound 282
 masonry wall 13, 155, 196, 215, 303-304, 307
 mass 105, 188, 283
 Massoni, Luigi 338
 mathematical proportioning systems 124
 materials 14, 24, 42, 45, 60, 84, 93, 99, 102, 137
 sustainable 46-47, 58
 matrices 40
 matte surfaces 101
 mattress 336
 meaning 44-45, 122
 means of egress 245 *See also* egress
 measuring illumination 279
 measurement, scale 127
 mechanical
 scale 127
 systems 9, 57, 60, 152, 154, 167
 membrane structures 20
 mercury
 in fluorescent lamps 265
 vapor discharge lamps 266
 merging space 23
 metal
 ceiling materials 166, 314
 furniture materials 323, 330
 stud walls 304
 window frames 183, 185
 metal halide discharge lamps 263, 266
 metric system 127
 microwaves 107
 Mies Van der Rohe, Ludwig 319, 323, 332
 mirrors 175
 Mitchel Gold + Bob Williams 327
 mobility impairments 5

model
 building 20
 codes 244
 modern furniture 319
 modification of interior space 7, 11, 16, , 23, 32-34, 60
 modular
 furniture 68-69, 321, 329 *See also* furniture partition systems 318 *See also* cubicles suspended ceiling system 167, 314-315 *See also* acoustical tiles/panels
 moisture 152, 155, 308
 moldings 161
 monochromatic color schemes 118
 mortar 294, 309
 motif 103
 movement 17, 22 28-29, 31, 33, 48, 51, 60, 62, 89, 92, 96-97, 140, 143, 159-160
 paths 64-65, 198, 202
 mullion 184
 multilevel/patterned loop carpet 301
 multiview drawings 71-72, 79
 Munsell color system 110

N

narrow goods or runners 297
 National Electrical Code (NEC) 240
 National Fire Protection Association 244
 natural
 lighting 181, 245 *See also* daylighting
 shapes 95
 ventilation 28, 30, 47, 58, 63, 181, 187, 224, 245
 Navajo rug 302
 needs, group/individual 58
 negative/neutral element 86 *See also* ground
 Nelson, George 339
 neutral color schemes 120
 niche 341
 night tables and nightstands 339
 Noguchi, Isamu 327
 noise 281 *See also* acoustics
 noncombustible construction 155
 non-load-bearing, nonbearing, or nonstructural walls 9, 11, 16, 32, 153, 156-157
 nonobjective shapes 95

INDEX

nosing 200, 206, 343
nylon 299, 348

O

object colorants 112
oblique projections 71, 76 *See also* axonometric projections
observation elevator car 213
occasional tables 332
occult/optical balance 135
occupancy sensors 262
office
 furnishings 325, 342, 345, 350
 layouts 55
olefin fibers 299 *See also* polypropylene
olfactory 48
one-point perspective 71, 80
opaque 108, 248
open
 office environments 286, 335
 stair railings, risers 200, 204, 207
 frame ceiling 166
openings 28, 32-33, 284
operable windows 181, 187-188
optical mixing 115
orientation 62, 98, 137-138, 145, 162
 building 60
 daylighting 186, 188
 furniture 67, 131
orthographic projections 71-75, 105
outlets, electrical 240
outlook 64-65, 202
outside to inside 5, 29, 62, 175 *See also* exterior/interior
overhead doors 193
owner/client 38 *See also* client
oxygen 224

P

packaging 46-47
paints and coatings 108, 111, 112, 118, 223, 292, 307, 311-312
panel doors 191
panelboard, electrical 9, 238
paneling 305
Pantone color system 111
paper composite countertops 343

paraline drawings 71, 76, 79
particleboard 322
partitions 9, 11, 16, 32, 152-153, 156, 179, 187
passage 52, 190
passive solar heating 226
paths 198, 209
pattern 6, 17, 27, 58, 63, 67, 84, 91-93, 103, 122, 141-142, 149, 163, 165, 198, 260, 288, 291, 350
 three-dimensional 37, 66
pavers 294
pen and pencil drawings 70, 82 *See also* sketching
pendant-mounted lighting fixtures 273
perception 37, 120-121
perforated metal ceiling pans 315
performance of materials 46
Periand, Charlotte 327
peripheral vision 79, 84
personal space 48-49, 51, 58
perspective 26, 93
 drawings 71, 79
PET polyester 299
Petit Modele sofa 327
photovoltaic (PV) 238
physical texture 99, 101
picture plane (PP) 72, 76-81
piece/beck dyeing 299
pigments 108, 112, 114, 311
pilasters 12
piping, waste 236
pitch, carpet 301
plans 21, 43, 73, 66-69
 drawings 71-72, 105
plan obliques 71, 76, 78 *See also* oblique projections
planar 14-15, 93-94, 319
 light source 275
 structural systems 11-13
plane 3, 87-88, 90, 93, 95, 100, 105, 120, 150
planks, wood 313
planning 36
plants 352
plaster
 ceilings 313
 walls 307
plasterboard 308 *See also* gypsum board
plastic
 furniture materials 323, 330
 laminate 304, 343
platform lift 213
Platner, Warren 332
pleats 348-349
plenum 230
plumbing 59, 167
 fixtures 9, 60, 221, 232-235
plywood 151, 154, 296, 306, 322
pocket sliding doors 192
Poet sofa 327
point 3, 87-90
 of emphasis 144-145
 of view 78, 86, 132
 light sources 268, 275
polyester 325, 348
polygonal shapes 95, 97
polyurethane 292
porcelain 294
porch 5, 31
portable lamps 274
Portland cement mortar 309
positive element 86 *See also* figure
posts 33
post-occupancy evaluations 43
potable water 47, 231
precast concrete planks 151
prefabricated fireplace 218
prefinished wall panels 304
preliminary plans and designs 42, 70
presentation 42, 70
preserved plants 352
pressure-assisted toilets 233
primary hues 109
primers 311
print/contact dyeing 299
printed colors 108
prism 107
privacy 63, 66, 68, 152, 157, 176, 179, 181, 199, 334-335, 348
private office 334
problem, design 39, 42
program, programming 39-40, 58-62, 64
proportion/ proportional 6, 10, 16, 21-22, 36, 39, 60-61, 63, 84, 87, 93, 98, 122-123, 126-127, 131, 169, 16
systems 124-125

public/private entrance 31
pumps 231
purchasing 43
pyramid 95
ceiling/roof 21, 27, 171

Q

qualities, 36, 62
quarry tile 294
quarter slicing 306
quarter-turn stairs 202-203
quartz lamps 264
quilted shades 349

R

rabbet 196
radial 133-134, 165
radian
heating 218, 227, 290
temperatures 222
radiation 222
radiators 227
radio waves 107
radius 24, 203
ragging 312
railings 48, 143, 206-207, 305
raised access flooring 230
ramie 325
ramps 210-211
random matching 306
ratio 124
raw materials 46-47
rayon 325
reach dimensions 49
receptacles, electrical 9
reception desk 342
recessed lighting fixtures 270
reclaimed wood flooring 292
rectangles 97-98
rectangular spaces 22-23, 159
rectilinear geometry shapes 95
red light 108
reduce, reuse, recycle 46, 47, 58, 60, 220, 289,
297, 343
reflectance
ceiling 173
wall 163, 258

reflected ceiling plans 262 *See also* lighting
layout drawings
reflection
light 108, 249
sound 174, 280
reflective glazing 188
reflectors, lighting fixtures 263, 269
refurbished materials 47
registers, HVAC 9, 221, 224-225, 228
reinforced concrete 13, 151, 155
relative humidity 222
renewable materials 47
repetition 137, 140, 142-143
research 41
residential 61
codes 245
built-in countertops, storage 342-343
elevators 213
entrances 5
furnishings 318, 326-327, 351
stairs 203
resilient
channels, acoustic 284
flooring 292, 296-297
resin 304
resource recovery 46
restaurant chairs and tables 328, 333
retail 60, 342
reveals 91, 161
reverberation 280, 285
rhythm 67, 84, 122, 140-143, 350
rift cutting 306
rise, ramp 211
right angles 98
risers, stairs 200, 204
roller shades 349
Roman shades 349
roof 3, 8-9, 20-21, 27, 74, 94, 105, 148, 152,
156-157, 164, 171
room 48, 62, 65, 159, 344
rotary cutting 306
rough opening 182
rubber flooring 296
rugs 297, 302. *See also* carpeting and rugs
runs, ramp 210-211

S

Saarinen, Eero 332
safety glazing 179, 181
salvaged materials 47
samples 108, 110
sanitary drainage, waste 9, 220, 232, 236
sash 180-181
saturation, color 109, 114, 116-117
Saxony carpet 301
scale 4, 6, 20, 24, 26-27, 32, 67, 84, 86-87,
100, 102-104, 106, 122, 127, 130, 169,
176
dimensions 20, 77
human 350
people 74
schematic design 41
sconce 272
screen 180
sculptural stairs 31
seating 59, 129, 149, 158, 320, 324
plan dimensions 52
Seconda chair 97
secondary hues 109
sectional 327, 329
secretaries 339
section
drawings 43, 71-74, 105
fireplace 217
window 182, 184-185
security 9, 58-59, 62
seismic 8, 152
selective absorption, color 108
self-centering, circle 96
semigloss paints 311
semirecessed lighting fixtures 271
Sense desking 335
senses 99
sewer gases 236
shades
of color 119
window 112, 349
shading 228, 257
shadows 101, 161, 186, 248, 261, 278
shag carpet 301
Shaker ladderback chair 326

INDEX

- shape 41, 61, 67, 86-87, 91, 95, 103, 107, 131, 135, 137-138, 141-142, 144, 146, 156
perception 84-85, 116
- shear walls 11
- shed roof/ceiling 171
- sheens, paint 311
- sheer window treatments 348
- shell, building 7, 16
- shelter 6, 9, 36, 164
- shelving 158, 168, 341, 344
- shiny 101, 104
- ship's ladders 201
- showers 56, 179, 234-235
- shutters 347
- Siamese pipe fitting 242
- side chairs 326, 328
- sidelights 179, 196-197
- siding 154
- silhouetting 251
- silk 325
- sill, window 176, 182, 184-185, 189
- simultaneous contrast, color 114-115
- single-slope ceiling 171
- sinks 47, 234-235
- site 4, 23, 60-61, 64
- size 41, 86, 98, 127, 129, 131, 138, 141, 144, 156
in perspective drawings 79
perception 84-85, 93, 117, 123
- sketching 20, 70
- skim coat 307
- skylights 33, 64-65, 171, 181, 186, 189, 257, 259
- slabs, structural 11-13
- slate 294, 343
- sleeper, floor 327
- sleeping dimensions 57
- sliding doors, windows 180, 192, 199
- slip
matching 306
resistance 290
- slope, ramps 210
- smoke alarms 243
- soapstone 343
- social distance/zone 48, 51, 60, 66
- sofas 327, 329, 336
- soffits 27, 168
- soft
flooring 292, 297
window treatments 348-349
- softwoods 292
- solar
glare 189
heat gain 188, 256
panels 238
radiation 188
water heater 231
- solid
core doors 195
rail 206
surfacing 343
void 18, 106
volume 105
wood flooring 292
- solution dyeing 299
- solvent 311
- sone 281
- sound 280-281, 286. *See also* acoustics
absorption 174, 285, 303, 346, 348
absorption average (SAA) 285
masking systems 286
reduction 195, 282 *See also* noise reduction
systems 167
transmission 152, 160, 190
transmission class (STC) 283
- sources, local 47
- space 2-5, 22, 30, 32, 61, 105-107. *See also*
interior space
frames 20
planning 60, 198
- span 10, 20, 92, 156, 205
- sparkle 253, 275, 277
- spatial 4, 6, 17-20, 26, 28-29, 31-32, 41, 63, 66, 117, 121, 143
- speaker systems 225
- specifications 43
- spectral distribution 255
- spectrum of visible light 107-108
- specular reflection 248, 253
- speech privacy 286 *See also* privacy
- sphere 88, 95
- spinneret 299
- spiral stairs 203
- split complementary color schemes 118
- sponging 312
- spotlight 254
- sprinkler systems 167, 225, 242, 245
- square 21-23, 95, 97-98
- stability 90, 96-98
- stacking and folding chairs 328
- staggered studs 284
- stains 108, 223, 311
- stairs and stairways 21, 31, 33, 44, 129, 143, 148, 189, 200, 204-205, 208-209, 341
dimensions 201, 208
interior elevations 75
plan types 202-203
standards and codes 244-246
- standpipes 242
- static fit 48
- station point (SP) 79
- steam heating 227
- steel
structural 20, 151, 314
doors and window frames 185, 194
stairs and railings 205, 207
- Steelcase 335
- stenciling 312
- step
construction 5, 31
of design process 39
lighting 267
- stile and rail 195, 305
- stone 99
tabletops 330
tiles 294
- stool
seating 329
window 183
- stops, door frame 196
- storage 149, 215, 340-341
furniture 59, 198, 338, 344-345
- straight-run stair plan 202
- stretched ceiling systems 168
- stringers, stair 204
- structural systems 10-11, 14, 16-17, 20, 32, 34, 49, 92, 97, 120, 140, 143, 148, 220. *See also* construction materials/assembly
- framework 153, 156-157, 164
- loads 8, 13
- structuring space 8-9

- stucco 154
 stud walls 154, 303, 307
 Stumpf, Bill 323
 style 4, 44-45, 62, 149
 subcontractor 38
 subfloor 151, 293, 298
 substrate 295-296
 subtraction
 color mixing 108
 spatial 23
 Suita sectional 327
 sunroom, sunspace 6, 188
 supervision, construction 43
 surface sliding doors 192
 surround, fireplace 215
 suspended
 ceilings 16, 164, 166-168, 270, 315
 lighting fixtures 166
 suspension system structures 20
 sustainable
 design 4, 30, 46-47, 58-59, 178, 187, 220,
 232, 289
 materials 45, 58, 343
 Swan loveseat 327
 swinging doors 192
 switches, electrical 239-240
 symbols 95, 241
 symmetry/symmetrical balance 133-134, 136,
 145
 synthesis 39, 41
 synthetic fabrics 348
 systems furniture 335
- T**
 tables 19, 49, 59, 129, 149, 330, 331-333, 350
 tackless strips 297
 tactile 9, 93 *See also* touch
 TAF Architects 332
 task lighting 186, 253, 267, 272, 274, 276-277
 tempered glass 179, 191
 tension 90
 tensile stresses 10
 terrace 31
 terrazzo 295
 tertiary hues 109
 territorial space 51, 58
 textiles 111, 115, 323 *See also* fabrics
- texture 16-17, 27, 62, 67, 84-85, 89, 91, 93,
 98-104, 106-107, 131, 135, 137-138, 141-
 142, 144, 174, 288, 291, 350
 floors 297
 walls 155, 161-163
 thermal 48 *See also* heat
 break 185
 comfort 220, 222
 environment 62
 insulation 154-155, 188, 191, 348
 thickset and thinset installation 294, 309
 Thonet, Michael 324
 three-dimensional (3D) 13, 67, 94-95, 99, 105,
 123, 132, 140, 208
 drawings 71-72, 79
 three-point perspectives 71
 tight fit 68 *See also* fit
 tile *See also* ceramic tile, stone tile
 tabletops 330
 wall materials 309
 tint 112, 119
 tinted glazing 188
 toilet
 accessible dimensions 56
 fixtures 47, 233
 stalls 233
 tone/tonal 62, 72, 82, 85-86, 112, 119, 121
 torchieres 274
 touch 48, 99
 track-mounted lighting fixtures 273
 traction elevator 212
 transformers 238
 transitional spaces 30
 translucent 248
 glass 178-179
 transmission
 devices 221
 light 248
 loss (TL), sound 282-284
 transom 196-197
 transparency 30, 248
 traps, plumbing fixture 232, 236
 treads 200, 203-206, 209
 trellis 346
 trestle table base 330
 triadic color schemes 118
 triangle 95, 97-98
- trim, trimwork 91, 140, 161, 182-183, 196-197
 fireplace 215
 tile 309
 window 176
 trimetrics 71, 76 *See also* orthographic projections
 trompe l'oeil 312
 trusses 20, 151
 tufted carpet 298, 300
 tungsten-halogen lamps 264
 turning radius, wheelchair 50
 Twilight sleeper 327
 twist/frieze carpet 301
 two-dimensional forms 208
 two-point perspective 71, 81
 type X gypsum board 308 *See also* fire resistance
- U**
 U.S. Customary System 127
 underlayment 151
 ultraviolet (UV) 107
 unit furniture pieces 321
 unity and variety 67, 84, 96, 122, 125, 137-139,
 146
 underfloor air distribution (UFAD) 230
 upholstered furniture 323
 upholstery fabrics 325
 uplights 273 *See also* indirect lighting fixtures
 urinals 233
 user requirements 40, 44, 49, 58, 60-61
 utilitarian accessories 350
- V**
 valance
 lighting 272
 window treatments 348
 value, color 108-110, 113-116, 118-121, 135, 137,
 141, 144, 146
 valves 231-232
 van der Heyden, Franz 332
 vanishing points 81
 vapor retarder 154
 vaulted ceiling/roof 27, 172, 174
 vehicle, paint 311
 veiling reflection 253
 velvet/plush carpet 301

INDEX

- veneer
 wood 306
plaster 307
Venetian terrazzo 295
vents 232, 236
ventilating windows 180
ventilation 9, 160, 187, 178, 224 346. *See also*
 heating, ventilation, and air conditioning
 (HVAC), natural ventilation
natural 28, 30, 64
woodstove 218
vents, plumbing 9
vertical 26, 32-33, 78, 80, 90, 261
 blinds 347
 files 345
 dimensions in drawings 74
 transportation 9, 213
viewing distance 100, 125
views 28, 33, 47, 58, 60, 81, 113
 doors 190, 199
 windows 30, 64, 175, 177-178, 346
vinyl
 fabrics 325
 flooring materials 223, 296
vision panel door 179, 191
visibility 5, 29, 31
visible spectrum 107
visual 27-29, 37, 79, 84-85, 93, 95, 98-99,
 100-101, 107, 128, 131, 135, 137, 140-142,
 144, 146, 165, 250, 132-133
privacy 66, 159
tasks 251, 262 *See also* task lighting
Vitra 327
vitreous 294
void 18-19, 105, 106, 175, 196
volatile organic compounds (VOCs) 47, 58, 223
volt 236
volume 3, 18, 87-88, 91-92, 94, 105
volumetric 14-15, 208, 319
 light sources 268, 275
- W**
- wainscots 161
wall 3-5, 9, 11, 16, 18, 21, 25, 28-29, 32, 94,
 108, 120, 148, 152-153, 159, 161-162,
 182-183, 256, 282
- wall (continued)
 cabinets, section 342
cap, stair 206
coverings 304, 307, 310
detail drawings 42
finishes 60, 154, 258, 303-304
height 160-161
-hung counter 343
interior elevations 75
load-bearing 8, 12
non-load-bearing 11
 openings 12, 28, 33, 160
wallpaper 310
wallwashers 270
Walt Disney Concert Hall 14
Ward Bennett Designs/Brickel Associates
warm colors and light 113, 116, 118, 163
washlet 233
Wassily chair 326
waste
 disposal 58
 minimization 289
 plumbing 231
water 8
 closet 233
 conservation 47, 58, 232
 heater 9, 231
 supply 220, 231
 vapor passage 152, 155
watt 236
wavelength, light 107-108, 255
weatherstripping 185, 346
weave, texture 99
wheelchairs. *See also* accessibility; standards
 and codes
 dimensions 50
 doorways 29
 lifts 213
whirlpool tubs 235
white
 light 107-108, 113
 noise 282
 SON lamp 266
width 20-22, 26-27, 87, 93, 98, 100
 door 191
 escalator 214
 stairs 201
- Wilton carpet 300
wind 8, 187, 224
winders, stair 203
windows 5, 9, 18, 30, 33, 60, 63-65, 130, 148,
 175-178, 188-189, 190
 construction 182-183
 daylighting 186, 256
 details, drawings 42, 73
 frames 30, 184-185
 openings 12, 181, 284
 operation 180-181
 placement 21-22, 257, 258
 sills 129
window treatments 226, 257, 318, 346-348
window wall 186, 189
wing chair 326
wire
 base table 332
 glass 179
wood 99, 292, 304
 beams, joists, studs, and trusses 20, 151,
 154, 304
 ceiling and floor materials 166, 204, 292-
 293, 313
 countertops 343
 doors, windows, and frames 184, 195, 197
 furniture materials 322
 stairs 204
 wall finishes, base 305-306
woodburning stoves 218
wool fibers 299
work surfaces 59, 149, 158, 331, 334
working drawings 70 *See also* construction
 drawings
workstations 55, 286, 334
woven carpet 300
wythes 155
- X**
- x-rays 107
- Z**
- Ziehmer, Kurt
zinc 343
zones, zoning 64-65, 198, 350